Purchase includes free e-book

SECOND EDITION

PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

An Interpersonal Approach

Jeffrey S. **Jones**
Joyce J. **Fitzpatrick**
Vickie L. **Rogers**
EDITORS

SPRINGER PUBLISHING COMPANY

PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

An Interpersonal Approach

JEFFREY S. JONES, DNP, RN, PMHCNS-BC, CST, LNC, is an American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC) board-certified psychiatric clinical nurse specialist; an American Association of Sex Educators, Counselors and Therapists (AASECT) board-certified sex therapist; an American Bar Association (ABA)-approved legal nurse consultant; and entrepreneur. He is past president and owner of Pinnacle Mental Health Associates, Inc., a private practice, consulting/contracting firm in Mansfield, Ohio. He received his DNP in 2007 from Case Western Reserve University in Cleveland, Ohio, and most recently was visiting faculty at the University of Akron in Akron, Ohio. He is a contributing author to two Springer Publishing books *Foundations of Clinical Nurse Specialist Practice*, Second Edition and *Advanced Practice Psychiatric Nursing: Integrating Psychotherapy, Psychopharmacology, and Complementary and Alternative Approaches*. He has served on the Richland County Mental Health Board, The Ohio Board of Nursing—Standards and Practice Committee, and as a content expert on psychiatric nursing for the ANCC. Dr. Jones has provided service to the mentally ill in hospital settings, outpatient clinics, prisons, and in private practice. He currently works for the Department of Veterans Affairs.

JOYCE J. FITZPATRICK, PHD, MBA, RN, FAAN, is the Elizabeth Brooks Ford Professor of Nursing, Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing at Case Western Reserve University in Cleveland, Ohio, where she was dean from 1982 through 1997. She has received numerous honors and awards including the *American Journal of Nursing* Book of the Year Award 20 times. Dr. Fitzpatrick is widely published in nursing and health care literature, and serves as editor of three nursing journals. Her most recent Springer books are *Theory in Nursing: Application to Research and Practice*, coedited with Geraldine McCarthy, *Encyclopedia of Nursing Education*, coedited with Mary Jane Smith and Roger Carpenter, and *Concept Analysis*, coedited with Geraldine McCarthy. She also coedited, with Kathleen R. Tusaie, the Springer Publishing book, *Advanced Practice Psychiatric Nursing: Integrating Psychotherapy, Psychopharmacology, and Complementary and Alternative Approaches*.

VICKIE L. ROGERS, DNP, RN, joined the faculty at Texas Christian University (TCU) in August 2014, where she teaches Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing. She received her DNP from Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio, and her MS and BS in nursing from the University of Southern Mississippi. Dr. Rogers has previously held faculty appointments at various schools of nursing in Mississippi and Connecticut. Additionally, Dr. Rogers has international teaching experiences in the Caribbean. She is a contributing author of a chapter in the book, *Giving Through Teaching: How Nurse Educators Are Changing the World*. She has worked in psychiatric clinical nurse specialist and management roles in the past. Research interests include the use of the Internet as a format to provide individual therapy to young adults. Dr. Rogers has presented her work internationally, and has published on this topic.

SECOND EDITION

PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

An Interpersonal Approach

Jeffrey S. Jones, DNP, RN, PMHCNS-BC, CST, LNC
Joyce J. Fitzpatrick, PhD, MBA, RN, FAAN
Vickie L. Rogers, DNP, RN

SPRINGER PUBLISHING COMPANY
NEW YORK

Springer Publishing Company, LLC
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036
www.springerpub.com

Acquisitions Editor: Margaret Zuccarini
Composition: Newgen KnowledgeWorks

ISBN: 978-0-8261-3128-7
E-book ISBN: 978-0-8261-3129-4

Student materials are available for download from springerpub.com/jones-2e.

Qualified instructors may access instructors' materials at textbook@springerpub.com.

16 17 18 19 20 / 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Jones, Jeffrey S. (Jeffrey Schwab), editor. | Fitzpatrick, Joyce J., editor. | Rogers, Vickie L., editor.
Title: Psychiatric-mental health nursing : an interpersonal approach / [edited by] Jeffrey S. Jones, Joyce J. Fitzpatrick, Vickie L. Rogers.
Other titles: Psychiatric-mental health nursing (Jones)
Description: Second edition. | New York, NY : Springer Publishing Company, LLC, [2017] | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2016000234 | ISBN 9780826131287
Subjects: | MESH: Psychiatric Nursing | Nurse-Patient Relations | Mental Disorders—nursing
Classification: LCC RC440 | NLM WY 160 | DDC 616.89/0231—dc23
LC record available at http://lccn.loc.gov/2016000234

Printed in the United States of America by Bradford & Bigelow.

This book is dedicated to
Hildegard Peplau and Joyce Travelbee.

Their models in structuring the practice of psychiatric nursing
from an interpersonal/relationship-based perspective are
timeless, relevant, and invaluable.
We are pleased to honor their legacy with this text
so that new generations of nurses can be inspired
and guided by their pioneering work.

BRIEF CONTENTS

Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing:

Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing: An Interpersonal Approach, Second Edition, uniquely focuses on interpersonal relationships as the foundation for therapeutic practice in psychiatric nursing and satisfies the most current competencies.

- **Complimentary Faculty Resources**
- **Complimentary Student Resources**
- **Free E-book**

CHAPTER 12

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the common disorders affecting mood
2. Discuss the history and epidemiology of mood disorders
3. Analyze current theories related to the etiology of bipolar and related disorders, including proposed neurobiological and psychodynamic theories
4. Identify the controversial aspects of psychopharmacology as applied to this population
5. Discuss suicide and its relation to bipolar and related disorders

An Interpersonal Approach, Second Edition

Why Use *Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing, Second Edition*?

- Explores psychiatric-mental health nursing through the lens of relationship-based care
- Integrates the concept of the nurse's role in research and education throughout all chapters
- Weaves information about pscyhopharmacology throughout the text in relevant clinical chapters
- Discusses behavior, cognitive, and electroconvulsive therapies in applicable clinical chapters
- Covers several non-substance addictions, including pathological gambling
- Assessment content is woven throughout the book in clinical chapters covering individual conditions
- Explains mental health trends and the historical role of the psychiatric-mental health nurse

BIPOLAR AND RELATED (MOOD) DISORDERS

6. Describe common nursing assessment strategies for individuals with mood disorders
7. Demonstrate effective therapeutic use of self and application of the nursing process when caring for an individual with mood disorders and experiencing suicidal thoughts
8. Explain various treatment modalities including those that are evidence-based practice (EBP) for the person demonstrating signs and symptoms of mood disorders and/or is suicidal

KEY TERMS

Depression
Hypomania
Mania
Melancholia
Mood
Serotonin syndrome
Suicidal ideation

Chapter Feature Boxes »

Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing:
An Interpersonal Approach, Second Edition *(Continued)*

Chapter Feature Boxes:

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA lists the key symptoms of a disorder for consideration when making a diagnosis. Features ***DSM-5*** and ***NANDA-I*** **2015–2017 guidelines.**

Major depressive disorder is a leading cause of disability in the United States, affecting greater numbers of women than men.

DIAGNOSTIC ASPECTS AND KEY FEATURES

Major Depressive Disorder

A patient with major depressive disorder has experienced a change from previous functioning with evidence of a depressed mood or decreased interest or pleasure in his or her usual activities. This change in mood lasts most of the day for more than 2 weeks. The patient can report this mood change or it can be observed by others. The change in mood can be so severe and prolonged that it begins to affect daily functioning, and work, school, and personal/family life begin to suffer. Hopelessness can set in, which can lead to suicidal ideation, or the thoughts of ending one's own life, in an effort to stop the emotional pain (American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013).

bipolar because it has a cycle and ranges significantly from one extreme to the other. This individual may be stable for several weeks or several months. The cycle usually begins with a shortening of the sleep cycle until the individual is full of energy and requires very little if any sleep. They may be up for days. As they become manic they may begin doing bizarre things such as booking trips to Mexico at 3:00 a.m. or deciding to re-wallpaper their whole house on the spur of the moment. They may become hypersexual and engage in reckless behavior. They may spend money impulsively and put themselves and family in a financially compromised position. Then the mania passes (usually after 3–7 days) and the depression sets in. Now, filled with remorse and embarrassment and feeling a sense of being out of control, the person swings into a deep depression, so profound that he or she usually cannot even function. The person may not go to work or school and may literally shut himself or herself in the bedroom for days until the depressed episode passes (APA, 2013).

Bipolar II Disorder

Bipolar II disorder is characterized by recurring/chronic depressive episodes and at least one hypomanic (not a full-blown mania) episode. The patient has never experienced symptoms that meet the criteria for [illegible]anic or mixed

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 12-1: INTERNET THERAPY

STUDY

Rogers, V., Quinn Griffin, M., Wykle, M., & Fitzpatrick, J. (2009). Internet versus face-to-face therapy: Emotional self-disclosure issues for young adults. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 30,* 596–602.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This study was one of the first to explore preferences for treatment for young adults. Additionally, the study provided information about young adults' willingness to disclose emotional issues with their therapist in both formats, with F2FT participants demonstrating an increase in self-disclosure. This ability for self-disclosure has been linked with positive outcomes in therapy.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *Which of the two methods would you prefer and why?*
2. *What consequences might occur with the use of IT?*

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE offers a relevant study, with study summary and outcome, application to practice, and questions to ponder.

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 12-1: TAKING ANTIDEPRESSANTS

- Avoid use of alcohol and illicit substances as they can interact with your medication.
- Take the medication exactly as prescribed.
- If you miss a dose, do not double up on the next dose.
- Do not stop the drug suddenly because you might experience withdrawal symptoms.
- Use sugarless hard candy or gum or frequent sips of water if you experience dry mouth.
- Avoid activities at first that require you to be alert, such as driving, because you may experience drowsiness or dizziness until you see how the medication affects you.
- Check with your prescriber before taking any other medications, including over-the-counter medications and herbal preparations.
- Be alert for signs of worsening depression, mania, or suicide. Call your prescriber immediately if you experience any of these.
- Keep appointments for follow-up care and any lab testing that is scheduled.
- Be aware of national and local support groups for patients and family members.

PLAN OF CARE offers interventions for a specific nursing diagnosis and includes the rationales for each intervention.

DRUG SUMMARY lists the common drugs used in the treatment of a disorder and their implications for nursing care. An appendix lists the Canadian equivalents of discussed drugs.

DRUG SUMMARY 12-1: COMMON ANTIDEPRESSANTS USED TO TREAT AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
COMMON TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS (TCAs)	
amitriptyline (Elavil) amoxapine (Asendin) clomipramine (Anafranil) desipramine (Norpramin) doxepin (Sinequan) imipramine (Tofranil) maprotiline (Ludiomil) nortriptyline (Aventyl, Pamelor)	■ Urge the patient to take the prescribed drug at bedtime to reduce the risk of injury related to sedation ■ Offer suggestions for the patient to combat anticholinergic effects, such as dry mouth (using sugarless hard candy or gum) and constipation (high fiber intake and moderate physical activity) ■ Advise the patient to change positions slowly to minimize the effects of orthostatic hypotension ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 12-1: A PATIENT WITH BIPOLAR II DISORDER

There's an undeniable stigma associated with a psychiatric illness. It's never easy for someone with such a diagnosis to admit it or talk about it, but I feel that the only way health care professionals can truly understand and treat people with psychiatric illnesses is to hear from people like me directly. I have type II bipolar disorder and have been in treatment for 20 years. In that time, I've been on several medication regimens and have been both well controlled and not so well controlled. For the last 10 years, I've been on one medication that keeps my bipolarity well controlled. This medication, coupled with therapy, has allowed me to live as normal a life as someone with my diagnosis can. Over the past few years I've become quite comfortable discussing my illness and how I treat it. It's human nature to be curious, so I want to share my experiences to help you understand how I live with bipolar disorder. I like to think that I live a relative[illegible] in school, and you; a fear that you'll always be labeled as "crazy." Thankfully, I've been able to live my life well, albeit making some modifications to accommodate my diagnosis. I have a very understanding wife (a doctoral candidate in psychology no less) who lets me know when I'm slipping back into old habits. She's the only person I can really listen to when I'm hypomanic or depressive. I trust her judgment and when she tells me she's taking me to the psychiatrist, I go without hesitation. I've taken myself off of medication twice in my life, and both times were disastrous. My backslides into bipolarity sans medication were more insidious than I could have imagined. I became the person I always feared I would and pushed those I cared about away from me. Thankfully, my wife convinced me to restart my regimen and got me back on track. I know that I'll never be able to be off my medication and I've come to terms with it. In order for me to live the life I [illegible]

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE gives a first-hand account of what it's like to live with a particular disorder.

Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing:
An Interpersonal Approach, Second Edition *(Continued)*

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 12-1:
A PATIENT EXPERIENCING SUICIDAL IDEATION

M. is a young adult male who has been diagnosed with major depression. He is admitted to the acute care unit of the psychiatric facility. The nurse is interacting with him to establish his risk of self-harm.

Nurse: "Are you having thoughts of suicide or harming yourself?"	Asking direct assessment question
M.: "Yes, I think about it all the time."	
Nurse: "It must be scary to have these thoughts."	Empathizing with the patient and exploring underlying feelings behind statement
M.: "Yes, these thoughts scare me and are the reason my doctors suggested I come here."	
Nurse: "Do you have a plan to harm yourself or a method to harm yourself?"	Further assessing for plan and, if present, lethality of plan
M.: "[illegible] have a plan	

THERAPUTIC INTERACTION provides an exemplar therapeutic dialogue between nurse and patient with rationales for the nurse's interaction methods.

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? presents case scenarios followed by critical thinking questions and concepts applications.

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 12-1:
A PATIENT WITH DEPRESSION AND SUICIDAL THOUGHTS

Carol is a 24-year-old female being admitted to the acute care psychiatric unit. She has been diagnosed with bipolar I disorder. Carol has no medical conditions or illnesses. During the nursing assessment, Carol states she was treated for bipolar I disorder when she was 18 but did not require hospitalization. Carol was prescribed lithium but stopped taking it about a year ago. She reports that she recently moved to the city to teach secondary school, has a limited support system, and lives alone. Approximately 3 weeks ago, she experienced a burst of energy and was not able to sleep for several days. She states she then started feeling sad, worthless, hopeless, lonely, and guilt about leaving her parent's home. Carol has a blunted affect, is unkempt, and her clothes are dirty. She frequently bursts into tears during her intake. Carol has lost 11 pounds over the past 2 weeks, has no appetite, and has difficulty sleeping. She has missed several days of work this past week due to her not having the "energy to get out of bed." Carol admits to recurrent thoughts of hanging herself but is afraid if she commits suicide she will "go to hell." You are assigned to provide care to Carol.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *H[illegible]ibe what Carol is experien[illegible]*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 12-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Based on the findings from the assessment, Carol appears to be experiencing a depressive episode that followed what appeared to be a manic episode as evidenced by not sleeping, burst of energy, then her crying, loss of weight and appetite, difficulty in sleeping, and missing work. Her statement about having no energy provides further evidence of depression. In addition, Carol is verbalizing thoughts of suicide. The assessment findings reveal her recurrent thoughts of "hanging herself"; statements of feeling lonely, hopeless, and worthless, and her unkempt appearance, suggest a lack of interest in herself, which helps to support the diagnostic criteria for bipolar I depressive disorder.

The priority for Carol at this time is addressing her suicidal thoughts and ensuring her safety because she is at risk of self-directed violence.

APPLYING THE CONCEPTS offers interventions for a specific nursing diagnosis and includes the rationales for the interventions.

Includes **Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)** considerations.

Nurses need to vigilantly monitor the patients with suicidal thoughts or suicidal behavior as antidepressant medications begin to exert their effect, providing the patient with the necessary energy to follow through with the task.

New Section

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care. Evaluating how the patient presented on admission and where the patient is as discharge approaches is important. During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse and the patient should reflect on the progress made toward reaching the patient's goals. Point out positives to the patient and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) Aspects

Obviously, caring for someone who is depressed and potentially suicidal carries with it multiple responsibilities. If you think about a client who is depressed as someone who is in pain and who may be potentially suicidal as a means to end the pain, then the following QSEN nursing behaviors apply:

- *Assess presence and extent of pain and suffering*
- *Assess levels of physical and emotional comfort*
- *Elicit expectations of the patient and family for relief of pain, discomfort, or suffering*
- *Initiate effective treatments to relieve pain and suffering in light of patient values, preferences, and expressed needs (Cronenwett et al., 2007)*

This also correlates well with Travelbee's continuum of suffering (see Chapter 2) and helps you conceptualize where your client is in terms of his or her discomfort.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. Which statement by a patient with bipolar disorder would indicate the need for additional education about his prescribed lithium carbonate therapy? "I will:
   a. drink about 2 L of liquids daily"
   b. restrict my intake of salt"
   c. take my medications with food"
   d. have my blood drawn like the doctor ordered"

2. A patient has been severely depressed and expressing suicidal thoughts. She was started on antidepressant medication 4 days ago. She is now more energized and communicative. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do?
   a. Allow the patient to have unsupervised passes to her home
   b. Encourage the patient to participate in group activities
   c. Increase vigilance with the patient's suicidal precautions
   d. Recognize that the patient's suicidal potential has decreased

3. A group of nurses in the emergency department (ED) are discussing a patient who has been admitted almost every holiday with suicide ideation. One of the nurses stated that the patient is not serious about hurting himself and should not be admitted the next time he comes in. Which response by the charge nurse would be most appropriate?
   a. "Telling him we cannot see him may be the answer to stop this behavior."
   b. "Each episode must be individually evaluated and all options explored."
   c. "He obviously needs support that he is not getting elsewhere."
   d. "We should avoid showing any emotion to him the next time he comes in."

4. A group of nursing students are reviewing the different classes of antidepressants. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify sertraline as exerting its action on which neurotransmitter?
   a. Serotonin
   b. Dopamine
   c. Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)
   d. Norepinephrine

5. Which statement would the nurse expect a newly admitted married patient with mania to make? "I can:
   a. not do anything right anymore"
   b. manage our finances better than any accountant"
   c. understand why my spouse is so upset that I spend so much money"
   d. not understand where all our money goes"

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

NCLEX-Prep questions at the end of each chapter evaluate the reader's comprehension and help predict performance on related questions in an NCLEX exam. Answers with rationales appear in the complimentary Student Resources.

Carolyn A. Baird, DNP, MBA, RN-BC, CARN-AP, CCDPD, FIAAN
Co-occurring Disorders Therapist/Consultant, Counseling and Trauma Services, LLC, Canonsburg, Pennsylvania

Audrey Marie Beauvais, DNP, MSN, MBA, RN, CNL
Associate Dean and Assistant Professor, Marion Peckham Egan School of Nursing and Health Studies, Fairfield University, Fairfield, Connecticut

Karen P. Black, BA, MSN, APRN, PMHNP-BC
Assistant Professor, University of Louisville School of Nursing, Louisville, Kentucky

Katherine R. Casale, PhD, MS, RN
Sacred Heart University, Fairfield, Connecticut; and Anna Maria College, Paxton, Massachusetts

Angie S. Chesser, PhD, RN, PMHCNS-BC (Retired)
The Ohio State University Medical Center, Columbus, Ohio

Barbara Cohen, PhD, JD, RN
Professor, Health Services Management, Berkeley College, New York; and Section Instructor, Nursing@Simmons, Simmons College, Boston, Massachusetts

E. J. Ernst, DNP, MBA, APRN, FNP-BC, CEN
California State University, Carson, California

Daniel B. Fisher, MD, PhD
Adjunct Professor of Psychiatry, University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, Massachusetts; and Chief Executive Officer, National Empowerment Center (NEC), Lawrence, Massachusetts

Joyce J. Fitzpatrick, PhD, MBA, RN, FAAN
Elizabeth Brooks Ford Professor of Nursing, Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio

CONTRIBUTORS

Loraine Fleming, DNP, APRN, PMHNP-BC
Director of Behavioral Health, The Queen's Medical Center; and Faculty,
Walden University, Honolulu, Hawaii

Patricia A. Galon, PhD, PMHCNS-BC
The University of Akron, Akron, Ohio

Marianne Goldyn, MSN, PMHCNS-BC
Clinical Nurse Specialist, Community Support Services, Inc., Akron, Ohio

Vicki P. Hines-Martin, PhD, RN, FAAN
Professor and Director, Office of Health Disparities and Community Engagement,
University of Louisville School of Nursing, Louisville, Kentucky

Áine Horgan, PhD, MSc, BNS, Dip. PN, RPN
School of Nursing and Midwifery, Brookfield Health Sciences Complex,
University College Cork, Cork, Ireland

Emily K. Johnson, DNP, APRN, PMHNP-BC
Mayo Clinic, Rochester, Minnesota

Jeffrey S. Jones, DNP, RN, PMHCNS-BC, CST, LNC
Department of Veterans Affairs, Mansfield Outpatient Clinic, Mansfield, Ohio

Bonnie M. Kaput, MSN, PMHNP-BC
Murtis Taylor Human Services System, Cleveland, Ohio

Betty Jane Kohal, DNP, PMHCNS-BC
Walden University, Minneapolis, Minnesota

David S. Kwon, DNP, PMHNP-BC
The Centers for Families and Children, Cleveland, Ohio

Melanie S. Lint, MSN, RN, PMHCNS-BC, CARN-AP
Mount Carmel Medical Center, Columbus, Ohio

Patricia Smythe Matos, DNP, RN, NEA-BC
Chief Nursing Officer, UCLA Resnick Neuropsychiatric Hospital,
Los Angeles, California

Declan McCarthy, RMN, H. Dip, MA, MSc, Humanistic and Integrative Psychotherapist (MIAHIP)
A/Assistant Director of Nursing, Adult Mental Health Services Cork,
Health Service Executive, St. Finbarr's Hospital, Cork, Ireland

Geraldine McCarthy, PhD, RGN, Fellow RCSI
Emeritus Professor, Chair of South/South West Hospital Group,
University College Cork, Cork, Ireland

Kimberly S. McClane, RN, PhD
Adjunct Nursing Professor, Sentara College of Health Sciences, Chesapeake, Virginia

James O'Mahony, PhD, MSc, Pg Dip CBT, BSc, RANP, MBABCP
North Lee Mental Health Services, Health Service Executive, Cork, Ireland

Diane Oran, MN, RN, PMHCNS-BC, PMHNP-BC
Resnick Neuropsychiatric Hospital at UCLA, Los Angeles, California

Patricia Hart O'Regan, DNP, ARNP, ANP-C, PMHNP-BC, LMHC
Private Practice, Port Richey, Florida

Kathleen L. Patusky, MA, PhD, RN, CNS
Associate Professor, Rutgers School of Nursing, Newark, New Jersey

Patrice E. Rancour, MS, RN, PMHCNS-BC
Psychiatric/Mental Health Clinical Nurse Specialist,
Clinical Assistant Professor, The Ohio State University Wexner Medical Center,
Integrative Medicine, Columbus, Ohio

Vickie L. Rogers, RN, DNP
Faculty, Texas Christian University, Harris College of Nursing and
Health Sciences, Fort Worth, Texas

Lynn Pebole Shell, PhD, PMHNP, CARN-AP
Assistant Clinical Professor, Rutgers School of Nursing, Newark, New Jersey

Karen Singleton, MSN, RN, CNS
Assistant Professor, University of Louisville School of Nursing, Louisville, Kentucky

Jennifer Spies, PMHNP
Psychiatric Mental Health Nurse Practitioner, Canton, Ohio

John F. Sweeney, PhD, MSc, Dip. ANS, RNT, RNID, RPN, CNT, TNurs Dip. N (Lond. Pt. A)
Educational Advisor, Nursing & Midwifery Board of Ireland, Dublin, Ireland

Amanda Alisa Townsend, DNP, APRN, FNP-C
Gulf Coast Mental Health Center, Gulfport, Mississippi

Kathleen R. Tusaie, PhD, APRN-BC
Professor/Lead Faculty Psychiatric-Mental Health NP Track,
The University of Akron School of Nursing, Akron, Ohio

Mark P. Tyrrell, PhD, MEd, BNS, Cert DCM, RGN, RPN, RNT
Specialist Consultant in Dementia (Nursing), B&D Healthcare,
Oaklodge Nursing Home, Cork, Ireland

CONTENTS

There is an old saying "what goes around comes around." This textbook returns to life the promise of the Peplau work of 1952. When Peplau wrote *Interpersonal Relations in Nursing* in 1950 to 1951, she was clear that the relationship between the nurse and the patient was the core of all nursing practice. In that book, she clearly demonstrated the key elements of that practice. Herein were also the roots of all specialty practice in psychiatric mental health nursing. I once asked Peplau if she had considered revising and publishing a new edition; her answer was direct and to the point. She said that, if and when there was something new to be added, she might consider it but nothing had appeared on the horizon to contradict the material presented in the book. She went on to say that, if the concepts and ideas presented in the book had merit, they would still be relevant even after 50 years. And she was right of course…they still have merit. In this textbook, the editors and contributors have eloquently and persuasively rendered much of the wisdom found in the 1952 book. They also use the complementary work of Joyce Travelbee, who in the same time period pursued ideas very similar to those of Peplau.

I have been a nurse for more than 50 years. I have witnessed the shifting sands of my profession as it follows fads and trends. In psychiatric nursing, we have typically followed the trends in psychiatry. Therefore, in the late 1960s, when what was thought to be the "magic bullet" for the treatment of serious mental illness was discovered, with the advent of Thorazine and the subsequent explosion of interest in and demand for the psychotropic drugs, nursing followed. Then, when the "decade of the brain" was announced in the 1990s, nursing followed. Now, when current research informing best practices suggests that the "talk therapies" are equal to and often have better outcomes, nursing is rediscovering its power in the practice of the relationships that help and heal. This textbook is a major step in that direction. The editors and contributors are to be congratulated for their clear effort to bring some degree of correction to the singular emphasis on pharmacotherapy found in many advanced practice work roles as well as in general psychiatric care. While it is clear that pharmacotherapy has a role to play in treatment, it is equally clear that the use of relationships as therapy has an equal if not more important role to play. It is just this point that this text makes in compelling fashion.

However, a word of caution to the reader is in order on this point. One should not try too hard to impose the

FOREWORD

phases on the relationship as Peplau described them. The stages are merging and overlapping and often can take place in a short interval of time. Or they may take place over a long period of time, in which case they are often more easily discernable. What was most important was that the nurse and the patient began as strangers and would be engaged for a time-limited period and that those limits should be understood by both the nurse and the patient.

There are several other features of this text that commend it to the student and the nurse seeking a review or a refresher course. First, the authors have done an excellent job in noting historical context. Understanding where and how these ideas and practices have had their origin allows the reader to appreciate the growth and development of information. This information, when tested in practice/experience, leads to knowledge. Hopefully, it also encourages the idea that there is more to know as well as to appreciate in the developmental nature of information.

Second, the authors have made extensive use of the current research literature and have well used the nursing research literature. The embedded web links will allow the reader to easily explore the treasure trove to be found inside the wonderful world of the "www."

In short, I would wish that, with this text and your clinical experience, together with the teachers who will guide that experience and the excellent role models you will see in practice, you will appreciate the rewards of practicing in psychiatric mental health nursing. If not that, I am certain that the knowledge gained from these experiences will be a central part of your practice in all the other areas of nursing. I am often asked: "What is the one thing I would say about my many years of experience?" My reply is always the same: "I have never been bored, not even for a minute!"

May you never be bored, and have fun with the challenges!!!

Grayce M. Sills, PhD, RN, FAAN
Emeritus Professor
College of Nursing
The Ohio State University
Columbus, Ohio

This second edition of the textbook continues our journey to reestablish the interpersonal relationship as the core component of psychiatric-mental health nursing. The practice theories of Hildegard E. Peplau and Joyce Travelbee are again emphasized throughout each chapter so that the student can develop an understanding of the nature of the nurse–client relationship, how to relate to others, and how to practice relationship-based care.

The book is divided into six sections. **SECTION I: THE PRACTICE OF PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING** lays the groundwork for understanding the history and nature of this specialty area. The theories of Peplau and Travelbee are introduced. Additional chapters in this section focus on therapeutic use of self and boundary management in nursing practice along with self-care in regard to the phenomenon of compassion fatigue. **SECTION II: HEALTH PROMOTION AND ILLNESS PREVENTION** continues to build the fundamental skill set by presentation of topics such as critical thinking, clinical decision making, and counseling interventions. Also, crisis intervention and the case management role are discussed. System and group dynamics are emphasized as key to understanding various mental health treatment modalities. This section also provides an overview of theories of mental health disorders, information about known risk factors for select illnesses, and related nursing interventions.

SECTION III: ACUTE AND CHRONIC ILLNESS provides detailed discussion of the most common mental health disorders. This updated section explores aspects of various common disorders with the appropriate nursing focus on *caring* for clients rather than *diagnosing/curing* them. This section also includes important content about mental health care of the physically ill person. Key to this section and unique to this book are the integration and application of the Peplau/Travelbee theories to the four-step assessment, planning/diagnosing, implementation, and evaluation (APIE) nursing process. North American Nursing Diagnosis Association (NANDA) examples of treatment-planning strategies are highlighted. Included in this second edition is Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) content, which is key to safe practice. Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) strategies and recovery-model concepts are new elements.

SECTION IV: GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT AND MENTAL HEALTH CONCERNS ACROSS THE LIFE SPAN covers essential nursing concerns related to care for children, adolescents, the elderly, and victims of abuse.

SECTION V: MENTAL HEALTH CARE SETTINGS details psychiatric nursing across the continuum of care. Special content on vulnerable populations and alternate settings and roles, that is, forensics, for the psychiatric mental health nurse are highlighted.

SECTION VI: CULTURAL, ETHICAL, LEGAL, AND PROFESSIONAL ASPECTS OF MENTAL HEALTH CARE covers integral aspects to providing competent care from a culturally and globally sensitive perspective. Essential ethical and legal components are delineated for safe practice.

The second edition again contains features such as NCLEX preparation questions, clinical scenarios with "what would you do" questions, and consumer perspectives on what it is like to live with a specific illness. Also again included and updated are evidence-based practice summaries from the psychiatric mental health nursing and related research literature. Updated for this second edition are student digital adjuncts, including PowerPoints, allowing the student to further explore chapter content via summaries and hyperlinks to videos, blogs, and films that illustrate key content of each chapter. For the faculty, the digital adjunct resource has also been updated with similar hyperlink/video content to use in the classroom that complements the student version. The PowerPoints have been completely updated and a test bank, separate from the NCLEX prep questions, is new to this edition.

The role of the professional psychiatric nurse and the power to heal individuals suffering from mental illness from a relationship perspective remain timeless and relevant. Biological theories come and go, but the nurse–patient relationship remains the constant. This second edition continues to assist the beginning professional nurse in the development of knowledge of the interpersonal relationship and the skill in using this process in assisting patients in their journey toward health.

Jeffrey S. Jones, DNP, RN, PMHCNS-BC, CST, LNC
Joyce J. Fitzpatrick, PhD, MBA, RN, FAAN
Vickie L. Rogers, DNP, RN

SECTION I

The Practice of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

MENTAL HEALTH TRENDS AND THE HISTORICAL ROLE OF THE PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSE

Joyce J. Fitzpatrick
Jeffrey S. Jones

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify key events that helped to shape the current view of psychiatric-mental health care
2. Describe the early role of the psychiatric nurse
3. Identify the changes in the field of mental health that correlate with the evolution of psychiatric-mental health nursing
4. Define interpersonal relationships as being the foundation for clinical practice
5. Delineate between the roles and functions of basic and advanced practice in psychiatric-mental health nursing

KEY TERMS

Deinstitutionalization
Interpersonal models
Milieu management
Process groups
Psychoeducational groups
Psychopharmacology
Somatic
Therapeutic communication

Professional nursing originated from the work of a visionary leader, Florence Nightingale, who identified a need to organize the profession into a respectable discipline with its own body of knowledge and practice skill sets. As professional nursing evolved, so too did the practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing. This evolution paralleled the development in the field of mental health care. Subsequently, mental health care and psychiatric-mental health nursing practice have progressed from a poorly understood and poorly organized area of concern to a highly specialized area of health care.

This chapter provides an overview of the key historical events associated with the evolution of mental health care and their influence on psychiatric-mental health nursing. It also describes the current status of psychiatric-mental health nursing, focusing on the scope of practice for the two levels of psychiatric-mental health nursing practice: basic and advanced. This chapter emphasizes the interpersonal models of practice as the standard of care across the full range of settings and client groups. Relationships, interactions, and environment are important components of these models. This focus was selected to enhance this crucial element of nursing practice, the nurse–patient relationship, and, in particular, to establish interpersonal relations as the cornerstone of psychiatric-mental health nursing practice to assist patients in meeting their needs.

HISTORICAL OVERVIEW OF MENTAL HEALTH AND MENTAL ILLNESS CARE

History reveals that mental illness has been around since the beginning of time. However, it was not until the late 18th century when the view of mental illness became that of a disease requiring treatment and humane care. Overall, the views of mental health and mental illness closely reflect the sociocultural climate of the time.

The Earliest Years

Mental illness is a complex experience, with different values and meanings worldwide. Although some cultures considered mental illness in a negative light, attributing it to possession by spirits or demons, other cultures considered mental illness somewhat differently, even as an exceptional state; one that would prepare that person to become a healer as, for example, in shamanism. However classified or viewed, the complexity of mental illness has prompted treatment, from ridding the person of spirits or demons to enabling the person to explore the possibility that he or she is a potential healer. For the former, magical therapies such as charms, spells, sacrifices, and exorcisms were used. For the latter, various initiation rituals were used.

In the West, however, the prevailing view of mental illness involved possession. A person who exhibited an odd or different kind of behavior without identifiable physical injury or illness was seen as possessed, specifically by an evil spirit or demon, and the patient's behavior was the result of this state of possession. In response, treatments such as magical therapies were commonplace. Physical treatments such as bleeding, blistering, and surgically cutting into the skull to release the spirit also were done. If the patient was not disruptive, he or she could remain in the community. However, if the patient's behavior was violent or severe, the patient often was ostracized and driven from the community.

During the Middle Ages and the Renaissance period, the view of mental illness as demonic possession continued. Witch hunts and exorcisms were common. In addition, the strong religious influences at that time led to the belief that mental illness was a punishment for wrongdoings. Persons with mental illness were inhumanely treated, being placed in dungeons or jails and beaten.

The 18th and 19th Centuries

The early to middle 18th century laid the groundwork for future developments in the latter half of this century and the next, especially in the United States. Society was beginning to recognize the need for humane treatment, which led to a gradual reshaping of the view of mental illness. Treatment, rather than punishment, exorcisms, and magical therapies, was becoming the focus. During this time, public and private asylums, buildings specially constructed to house persons with mental illness, were developed. Individuals with mental illness were removed from their homes and placed in these institutions.

This need for treatment prompted the development of institutions where care could be provided. For example, in 1751, Benjamin Franklin established Pennsylvania Hospital in Philadelphia. This was the first institution in the United States to provide treatment and care for individuals with mental illness. As the late 18th century approached, medicine began to view psychiatry as a separate branch. At that time, mental illness embraced only such medical interventions as bloodletting, immobilization, and specialized devices such as the tranquilizer chair both in the United States and abroad. These practices continued until the very late 18th and early 19th centuries. Through the work of

Dr. Benjamin Rush in the United States, the focus of treatment began to shift to supportive, sympathetic care in an environment that was quiet, clean, and pleasant. Although humane, this care was primarily custodial in nature. Moreover, individual states were required to undertake financial responsibility for the care of people with mental illnesses, the first example of government-supported mental health care.

A key player in the evolution of mental health and mental illness care during the 19th century was Dorothea Dix. A retired schoolteacher, Dix was asked to teach a Sunday school class for young women who were incarcerated. During her classes, she witnessed the deplorable conditions at the facility. In addition, she observed the inhumane treatment of the women with mental illness. As a result, she began a crusade to improve the conditions. She worked tirelessly for care reform, advocating for the needs of the mentally ill through the establishment of state hospitals throughout the United States. Unfortunately, these state institutions became overcrowded, providing only minimal custodial care. Although she was a nurse, her impact on the evolution of mental health and mental illness may be overlooked because her work was primarily humanitarian.

Dorothea Dix was instrumental in advocating for the mentally ill. She is credited with the development of state mental hospitals in the United States.

The 20th Century

The 20th century ushered in a new era of ideas regarding mental health and illness. Scientific thought was coming to the forefront. In the beginning of the 1900s, two schools of thought about mental illness were prevalent in the United States and Europe. One school viewed mental illness as a result of environmental and social deprivation that could be treated by measures such as kindness, lack of restraints, and mental hygiene. The other viewed mental illness as a result of a biological cause treatable with physical measures such as bloodletting and devices. This gap in thinking—deprivation on one end of the spectrum and biological causes on the other end—led to the development of several different theories attempting to explain the cause of mental illness.

One such theory was the psychoanalytic theory developed by Sigmund Freud. His theory focused on a person's unconscious motivations for behaviors, which then influenced a person's personality development. Freud, a neuropathologist, examined a person's feelings and emotions about his or her past childhood and adolescent experiences as a means for explaining the person's behavior. According to Freud, an individual develops through a series of five stages: oral, anal, phallic/oedipal, latency, and genital. He considered the first three of these five stages (oral, anal, and phallic) to be the most important. If the person experiences a disruption in any of these stages, experiences difficulty in moving from one stage to the next, remains in one stage, or goes back to a previous stage, then that individual will develop a mental illness. Freud's views became the mainstay of mental health and mental illness care for several decades.

The development of **PSYCHOPHARMACOLOGY**, the use of drugs to treat mental illness and its symptoms, also changed treatment for mental illness. The intent was control of symptoms through the use of drugs to allow individuals to be discharged from institutions and return to the community where they could function and live productive lives. Subsequently, the numbers of persons requiring hospitalization dramatically decreased. Moreover, psychopharmacology provided a lead into the future for deinstitutionalization and for addressing the underlying biological basis for mental illness.

Research into the proposed causes or factors associated with mental illness exploded during the 1990s, which was dubbed "the decade of the brain." Interest in neurotransmitters and their role in influencing mental illnesses was explored. New medications were developed based on proposed theories of how medications may regulate neurotransmitter reuptake. Along with the burgeoning pharmaceutical industry and the embracing of the biological model of illness by physicians, this era led to a major shift away from more humane, less-invasive forms of therapy, such as counseling, as the main psychiatric treatment to one involving medical-somatic options as first-line intervention (Whitaker, 2011).

Governmental Involvement and Legislation

Governmental involvement in mental health care took on an expanded role during the 20th century. In the United States at the time of World War II, individuals were rejected for military service due to psychological problems. Additionally, those returning from combat were often diagnosed with emotional or psychological problems secondary to the effects of the war. The view that anyone could develop a mental illness was beginning to take root. As a result, the National Mental Health Act was passed in 1946. This act provided governmental funding for programs related to research, mental health professional

training, and expansion of facilities including state mental health facilities, clinics, and treatment centers. It also called for the establishment of a National Advisory Mental Health Council and a National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), which was formally established in 1949. NIMH focused its activities on research and training in mental health and illness.

In 1955, the Mental Health Study Act was passed, which called for a thorough analysis of mental health issues in the nation. This resulted in a Joint Commission on Mental Illness and Health, which prepared a major report titled *Action for Mental Health*. The report established a need for expanded research and training for personnel, an increase in the number of full-time clinics as well as supplemental services, and enhanced access to emergency care and treatment. In addition, the report recommended that consumers should be involved in planning and implementing the delivery systems and that funding would be shared by all levels of government.

The impact of psychopharmacology coupled with the social and political climate of the 1960s led to the passage of the Mental Retardation Facilities and Community Mental Health Centers Act. This act was designed to expand the resources available for community-based mental health services. It called for the construction of mental health facilities throughout communities to meet the needs of all those experiencing mental health problems. The result was to ease the transition from institutionalized care to that of the community. The ultimate goal was to provide comprehensive humane treatment rather than custodial care. This legislation was part of President John F. Kennedy's New Frontier program and led to the **DEINSTITUTIONALIZATION** (the movement of patients in mental health institutions back into the community) of many who had been in state-run and other mental health facilities that had provided long-term mental health care and treatment.

At this time, the NIMH expanded its service role and assumed responsibility for monitoring the community mental health centers programs (National Institutes of Health [NIH], 2010). Unfortunately, the number of community mental health centers grew slowly and often were understaffed. Care was fragmented and inadequate. Thus, the demands resulting from deinstitutionalization became overwhelming.

In the late 1960s, care of the mentally ill began to shift to community clinics.

The overwhelming demands faced by the community mental health centers continued. In addition, society was changing. Population shifts, a growing aging population, changes in family structures, and increased numbers of women in the workforce further complicated the system. In 1980, the Mental Health Systems Act was passed in response to the report findings of the President's Commission on Mental Health. This act was designed to establish research and training priorities and address the rights of patients and community mental health centers. However, the election of a new president led to dramatic changes in focus. In 1981, the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA) was passed, which provided a set amount of funding for each state. Each state would then determine how to use these funds. Unfortunately, mental health care was not a priority for the majority of states and, subsequently, mental health care suffered. Individuals with chronic mental illness often were placed in nursing homes or other types of facilities. In an attempt to address the issues associated with OBRA, Congress passed the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1987, which was to provide a means for ensuring that the chronically mentally ill would receive appropriate placement for care. However, the political climate of concern for an ever-widening federal budget deficit led to a significant decrease in funding for mental health care.

In 1992, NIMH joined the NIH as one of the institutes that continues today to fund research on mental health and illness. NIMH also serves as a national leadership organization for mental health issues (NIH, 2010).

As a result of the changes in society and the political climate of the times, mental health care suffered once again. In response, Surgeon General David Satcher issued *The Surgeon General's Report on Mental Health* in 1999. This was the first national report that focused on mental health. The report included recommendations for broad courses of action to improve the quality of mental health in the nation as follows: continuing the research on mental health and illness to build the science base; overcoming the stigma of mental illness; improving public awareness of effective treatment; ensuring the supply of mental health services and providers; ensuring delivery of state-of-the-art treatments; tailoring treatment to age, gender, race, and culture; facilitating entry into treatment; and reducing financial barriers to treatment (Satcher, 1999). Subsequently, mental health care was brought to the forefront.

Current Perspectives

Following publication of *The Surgeon General's Report on Mental Health* in 1999, another key report focusing on

children's mental health was published. *The Report of the Surgeon General's Conference on Children's Mental Health: A National Action Agenda* called for:

- *Improved recognition/assessment of children's mental health needs and promotion of public awareness of children's mental health issues*
- *Continued development, dissemination, and implementation of scientifically proven prevention and treatment services*
- *Reduction and/or elimination of disparities in access to mental health services and increased access and coordination of quality mental health services (U.S. Public Health Service, 2000)*

This report further emphasized the need for improved mental health care.

Continued problems in the mental health system prompted the launch of the President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health in 2001. Its goal was to promote increased access to educational and employment opportunities for people with mental health problems. This commission was specifically targeted with reducing the stigma associated with mental illness, lifting the financial and access barriers to treatment, and addressing the system fragmentation. The report, *Achieving the Promise: Transforming Mental Health Care in America*, was issued in 2003 with several recommendations for service delivery. It identified the need for changing the current system to one that is more consumer and family driven and that underscored the need for mental illnesses to receive the same attention as other medical illnesses. Many of these changes are in the process of being implemented on the national and state levels (President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health, 2003).

Mental health, which first appeared as a major priority area in the *Healthy People 2000* objectives, continued to be a priority for *Healthy People 2020* (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2016). In December 2010, the *Healthy People 2020* objectives were released. As in 2010, mental health and mental disorders were a priority concern. The *Healthy People 2020* objectives for mental health and mental disorders are highlighted in **Box 1-1**.

BOX 1-1: *HEALTHY PEOPLE 2020* OBJECTIVES

MENTAL HEALTH AND MENTAL DISORDERS

1. Reduce the suicide rate.
2. Reduce the rate of suicide attempts by adolescents.
3. Reduce the proportion of adolescents who engage in disordered eating behaviors in an attempt to control their weight.
4. Reduce the proportion of persons who experience major depressive episode.
   - 4.1. Adolescents aged 12–17 years.
   - 4.2. Adults aged 18 years and older.
5. Increase the proportion of primary care facilities that provide mental health treatment onsite or by paid referral.
6. Increase the proportion of children with mental health problems who receive treatment.
7. Increase the proportion of juvenile residential facilities that screen admissions for mental health problems.
8. Increase the proportion of persons with serious mental illness who are employed.
9. Increase the proportion of adults with mental health disorders who receive treatment.
   - 9.1. Adults aged 18 years and older with serious mental illness.
   - 9.2. Adults aged 18 years and older with major depressive episode.
10. Increase the proportion of persons with co-occurring substance abuse and mental disorders who receive treatment for both disorders.
11. Increase depression screening by primary care providers.
    - 11.1. Increase the proportion of primary care physician office visits that screen adults aged 19 years and older for depression.
    - 11.2. Increase the proportion of primary care physician office visits that screen youth aged 12–18 years for depression.
12. Increase the proportion of homeless adults with mental health problems who receive mental health services.

From the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (2010).

EVOLUTION OF PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

The evolution of the nursing profession and the evolution of mental health care have striking similarities. **Figure 1-1** depicts a timeline of events, highlighting significant events in the evolution of mental health care in conjunction with significant events in the evolution of psychiatric-mental health nursing. As seen in the timeline, as mental health care evolved, so too did psychiatric-mental health nursing.

Nurses have always been available to care for the mentally ill. At first, this care occurred in sanitariums, where the focus of care was custodial. From the 1890s to after World War II, nurses did things *to* and *for* patients, rather than *with* patients. Mental illness was poorly understood and the role of the nurse was focused on making the environment comfortable, safe, and amenable to healing. Although there was a body of knowledge regarding practices that were unique to nursing, this was a new and developing field. Thus, many of the nursing activities were focused on the carrying out of medical regimes.

Early Emergence of the Profession

The early beginnings of psychiatric-mental health nursing can be traced back to Florence Nightingale, who first identified the need to view the patient holistically. Her focus was not mental illness; she was an advocate for patient self-care, believing that when a patient developed independence, he or she would be better able to face illness with lessened anxiety.

Specialization for psychiatric-mental health nursing arose along the same time that humane treatment for mental illness was coming to the forefront. Linda Richards, the first nurse trained in the United States, opened a training school for psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs) in 1882. Although the training primarily consisted of meeting the patient's physical needs, Richards strongly emphasized

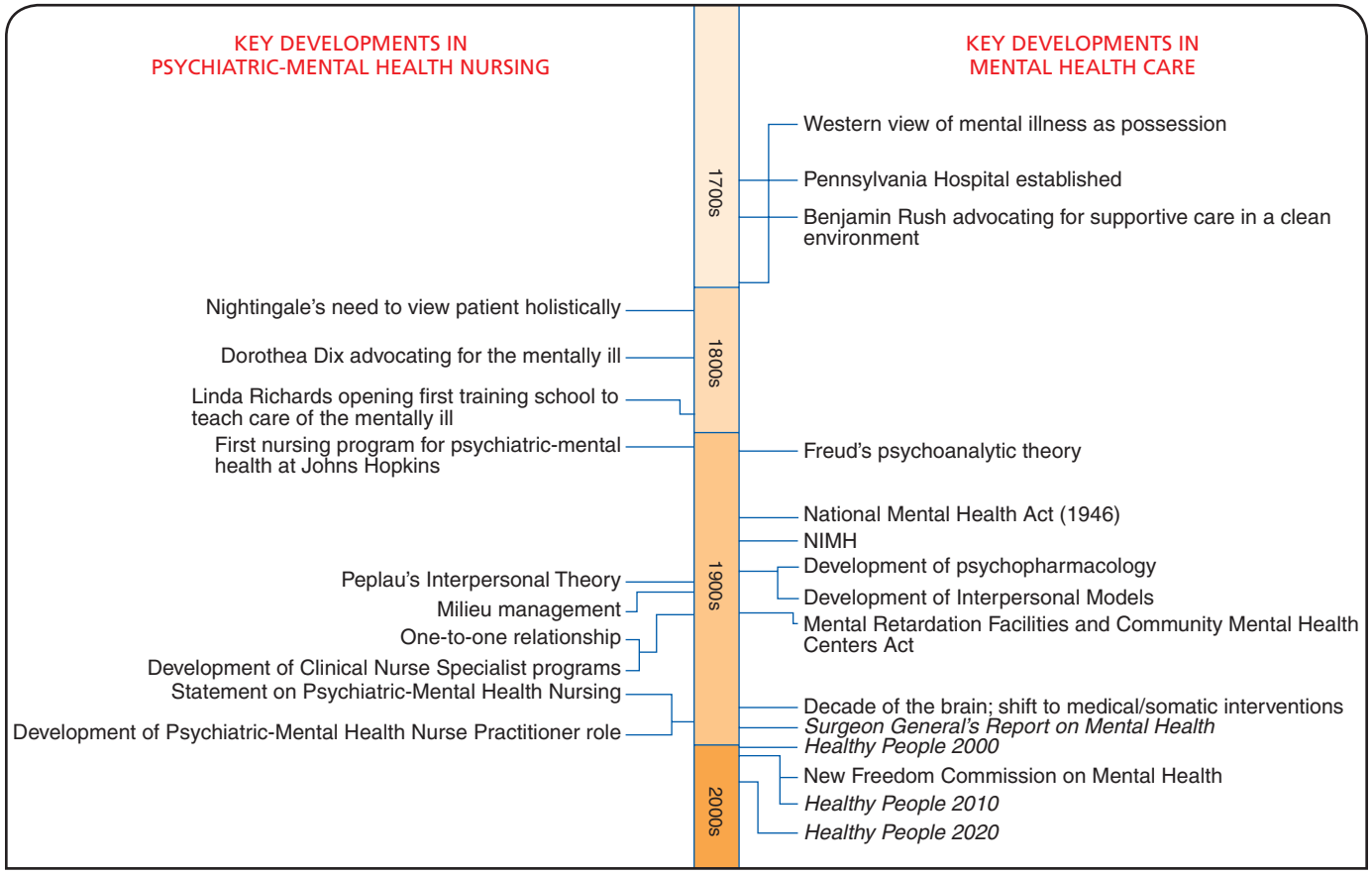


Figure 1-1 *Evolution of mental health care and psychiatric-mental health nursing.* Events listed at the right identify key developments associated with mental health care. Events listed at the left identify key developments associated with psychiatric-mental health nursing. Note how significant events in mental health care parallel those in psychiatric-mental health nursing.

the need to assess a patient's physical and emotional needs. Thus, she is credited as being the first American psychiatric nurse.

Approximately 40 years later, the first nursing program for psychiatric-mental health nursing was established by Effie Taylor at Johns Hopkins Phipps Clinic. Taylor, like Nightingale, emphasized the need to view the patient as an integrated whole. She also believed that general nursing and mental health nursing were interdependent. This was the first time that a course for psychiatric-mental health nursing was included in a curriculum.

Continued Evolution

During the first half of the 20th century, the mental health field continued to evolve through the discovery of new therapies and theories. With the introduction of these new therapies, PMHNs were required to adapt the principles of medical-surgical nursing care to the care of psychiatric patients. In 1920, the first textbook of psychiatric-mental health nursing was written by Harriet Bailey. This book primarily focused on procedure-related care by nurses.

Continued involvement with the use of therapies resulted in a struggle for PMHNs to define their role. However, the social climate of the time promoted a view of women as subservient to men. This view also carried over into the realm of nursing.

Near the middle of the 20th century, **INTERPERSONAL MODELS** (those that focus on the interaction of the person with others) by leaders such as Harry Stack Sullivan and others began to emerge. Sullivan believed that personality was an observable reflection of an individual's interaction with other individuals. Thus, a person's personality, be it healthy or ill, was a direct result of the relationship between that person and others. Sullivan also identified two key needs: the need for satisfactions (biological needs) and the need for security (state of well-being and belonging). Any block to satisfactions or security results in anxiety (Sullivan, 1953).

Again, the emergence of interpersonal models paralleled a shift in nursing practice as interpersonal models of nursing practice were being developed. Interpersonal systems became prominent in mental health around 1945 and then in nursing practice in 1952. Both the field of mental health and the field of nursing flourished during this time period with an abundance of theorists contributing to their respective disciplines.

Nursing as a profession began to again refine itself with the emergence of theorists such as Hildegard Peplau (1952), who defined nursing as "*a significant, therapeutic, interpersonal process. It functions cooperatively with other human processes that make health possible for individuals and communities. Nursing is an educative instrument, a maturing force that aims to promote forward movement of personality in the direction of creative, constructive, productive, personal, and community living*" (p. 16). Nurse educators thus began to emphasize the importance of interpersonal relations and integrated relevant content in the curricula. Peplau further clarified the PMHN's role as that of counselor, differentiating PMHNs working as general staff nurses from those who were expert practitioners with advanced degrees. According to Peplau, "psychiatric nursing emphasizes the role of counselor or psychotherapist. . . . From my viewpoint, a psychiatric nurse is a specialist and at this time specialist status can be achieved by two routes—experience and education" (Peplau, 1962, p. 51). (For a more in-depth discussion of Peplau, see Chapter 2.)

As a result, nurses were being educated in modes of **THERAPEUTIC COMMUNICATION** (patient-focused interactive process involving verbal and nonverbal behaviors), which were seen as integral parts of the patient's recovery. It was not uncommon for nurses to carry a case load of patients and to spend significant portions of their shift having one-to-one, planned, structured conversations. These conversations were then recorded in the nursing record and their content was processed by the psychiatrist and other health professionals in their evaluation of progress in treatment. (For a more in-depth discussion of therapeutic communication, see Chapter 3.)

MILIEU MANAGEMENT, which developed after 1950, was adopted by psychiatric care facilities. Milieu management refers to the provision and assurance of a therapeutic environment that promotes a healing experience for the patient. This treatment approach is reflected in everything from the physical attributes of the mental health unit such as wall color and choice and arrangement of furniture, to source and levels of lighting. Nurses became the managers of the milieu, responsible for recognizing that they themselves were part of the milieu and thus had to conduct themselves in a manner conducive to supporting a therapeutic environment. This required an ever-conscious focus on dress, body language, tone, and style of verbal interaction, as well as vigilant awareness of surroundings and environment. For example, it would not be unusual for a nurse who was mindful of milieu management therapy to sense that the unit was tense and volatile and to respond by slowly and subtly adjusting the level of light or noise to produce a more relaxed environment. As much thought was spent on how to manage the unit as on how to manage any individual patient.

Nurses also conducted therapy groups. Sometimes these were with a psychiatrist or other psychiatric staff member. Nurses led **PSYCHOEDUCATIONAL GROUPS** (groups designed at imparting specific information about a select topic such as medication) and co-facilitated **PROCESS GROUPS** (more traditional form of psychotherapy where deep feelings, reactions, and thoughts are explored and processed in a structured way). Regardless of the treatment modality, the energy expended by the nurse in the delivery of psychiatric care revolved around the development and maintenance of a therapeutic relationship and the promotion of a therapeutic environment.

From 1954 onward, the discovery and use of antipsychotic medications such as chlorpromazine (Thorazine) impacted the care for the severely mentally ill. It signaled a change of course for both nursing and mental health care. Medication administration and monitoring were now added to the nurse–patient experience. Because of the usage of newer longer acting medications (such as haloperidol [Haldol] and fluphenazine [Prolixin]), the 1960s were a time of care transition from hospital setting to community setting. However, the one-to-one nurse–patient relationship still remained important in nursing (Doona, 1979).

During the 1960s, the Division of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing Practice of the American Nurses Association (ANA) published the Statement on Psychiatric Nursing Practice. This was the first document to address the PMHN's holistic view of the patient. It emphasized involvement in a wide range of activities addressing health promotion and health restoration. Since its initial publication, the document has been updated three times, expanding and clarifying the roles and functions of the PMHN to reflect the status of the current society.

By the 1990s, the biological movement had so firmly been embraced by medicine that along with their alliance with the pharmaceutical industry, a major shift in both mental health care and nursing practice occurred, and medical **SOMATIC** (referring to the body) interventions became the primary focus of treatment (Whitaker, 2011).

Inpatient stays became shorter and funding for mental health treatment began to diminish both at the in-patient and community levels. The role of the psychiatrist changed from the provider of therapy and medication to that of diagnostic and pharmacological expert as schools of medicine no longer offered psychotherapy as part of physician training. Therapy was also now seen as the domain of the PhD-prepared psychologist and other independent providers such as social workers and to a lesser extent advanced practice psychiatric nurses. With less time, less money, and less integrated service lines, the generalist psychiatric nurse's role shifted to more of case manager of care. Duties were now more focused on admission and discharge proceedings, medication administration and monitoring, community linkage, and crisis management. Less time was spent on one-to-one therapeutic nurse–patient relationship modes of treatment. These changes are still evident today.

CONTEMPORARY PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING PRACTICE

Psychiatric-mental health nursing is "a specialized area of nursing practice committed to promoting mental health through the assessment, diagnosis, and treatment of human responses to mental health problems and psychiatric disorders" (ANA, 2007, p. 14). A major component of this specialized practice is the therapeutic use of self in conjunction with theoretical and research-based foundations from the various scientific disciplines. Psychiatric-mental health nursing occurs across a continuum of care encompassing a wide variety of settings (**Box 1-2**).

Scope and Standards of Practice

Initially developed in 1973, and with the second edition published in 2014, the Scope and Standards of

BOX 1-2: SETTINGS FOR PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING PRACTICE

- Crisis intervention services
- Emergency psychiatric services
- Acute inpatient care
- Intermediate and long-term care
- Partial hospitalization programs
- Intensive outpatient treatment programs
- Residential services
- Community-based care: home, work sites, clinics, health maintenance organizations, shelters, schools, and colleges
- Assertive community treatment (ACT) programs
- Primary care
- Integrative programs
- Telehealth
- Self-employment
- Disaster response

Practice delineate the specific responsibilities for psychiatric-mental health nursing. The standards are divided into two areas: Standards of Practice and Standards of Professional Performance. The Standards of Practice address six major areas: assessment, diagnosis, outcomes identification, planning, implementation, and evaluation. The Standards of Professional Performance address nine areas: quality of practice, education, professional practice evaluation, collegiality, collaboration, ethics, research, resource utilization, and leadership. Each area includes specific criteria for use in measuring achievement of the standard.

Phenomena of Concern

The psychiatric-mental health practice division of the ANA has developed a list of 13 specific areas or "phenomena of concern." The phenomena provide the focus of patient care for PMHNs. These areas reflect the holistic view of the patient including the needs of the patient, family, group, and community. Therefore, when providing care to patients, PMHNs focus on the following:

- *Health promotion (optimal mental and physical health and well-being) and prevention of mental illness*
- *Impaired ability to function*
- *Alterations in thought, perception, and communication*
- *Potentially dangerous behaviors and mental states*
- *Emotional stress*
- *Management of symptoms, side effects, or toxicities related to treatment*
- *Treatment barriers*
- *Changes in self-concept, body image, and life process; issues related to development and end of life*
- *Physical symptoms associated with changes in psychological status*
- *Psychological symptoms associated with changes in physiological status*
- *Effects of interpersonal, organizational, sociocultural, spiritual, or environmental aspects*
- *Issues related to recovery*
- *Societal factors (ANA, 2007)*

Levels of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing Practice

Two levels of psychiatric-mental health nursing currently are recognized: basic and advanced. The levels are distinguished by the educational preparation, complexity of practice, and specific nursing functions (ANA, 2007). The American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC) certifies both basic and advanced practice psychiatric nurses through an examination and credential review process.

Basic-level PMHNs are registered nurses who have graduated from an accredited nursing education program and are licensed to practice in their state. In addition, basic-level PMHNs possess specialized knowledge and skills to care for patients with mental health issues and psychiatric problems. They apply the nursing process through the use of the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship, therapeutic interventions, and professional attributes such as self-awareness, empathy, and the therapeutic use of self (ANA, 2007). The ANCC recognizes the baccalaureate degree in nursing as the preferred level of educational preparation.

Advanced practice PMHNs are educated at the master's or doctorate level of education in the specialty and have achieved certification in this specialty by the ANCC. Advanced practice focuses on the "application of competences, knowledge, and experience to individuals, families, or groups with complex psychiatric-mental health problems" (ANA, 2007, p. 19). Mental health promotion, collaboration, and referral are key components of the advanced practice PMHN.

When graduate programs in psychiatric-mental health nursing were first introduced, the focus was on preparing educators to teach in basic nursing programs. Faculty members were also prepared to integrate psychiatric-mental health concepts throughout the undergraduate nursing curricula. Components such as communication skills, process recordings, and understanding of the emotional dimensions of physical illness were integrated into all nursing courses. The first psychiatric advanced practice role was the psychiatric clinical nurse specialist implemented by Hildegard Peplau. During the mid-1960s, more clinical nurse specialist (CNS) programs were introduced, emphasizing the preparation of specialists both for psychiatric-mental health nursing direct care roles and for teaching, consultation, and liaison with other nurses in clinical practice. The core focus of CNS practice today emphasizes three spheres of influence: organizational and systems; nursing practice; and client (patient). The CNS seeks to improve patient outcomes by influencing nursing practice via research and mentorship, influencing organizational systems via consultation or through direct care to individuals or communities (Fulton, Lyon, & Goudreau, 2010). Most psychiatric CNSs have training in individual psychotherapy, group psychotherapy, organizational consultation and liaison work, and research. More recently, some psychiatric CNSs have opted to add prescriptive authority to their set of services.

TABLE 1-1: FUNCTIONS OF PMHNs

BASIC LEVEL	ADVANCED PRACTICE LEVEL (CNS/NP)
Establishment of the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship	*In addition to basic level functions:*
Use of the nursing process	Collaboration
Participation as a key member of the interprofessional team	Referral
Health promotion and health maintenance activities	Primary psychiatric-mental health care delivery
Intake screening, evaluation, and triage	Comprehensive psychiatric and mental health evaluation (assessment and medical diagnosis)
Case management	Prescription of psychopharmacological agents (if allowed by state)
Milieu management	Integrative therapy interventions
Administration of psychobiological treatments and monitoring and evaluation of response and effects	Psychotherapy
Crisis intervention and stabilization	Complex case management (individual or population based)
Psychiatric rehabilitation	Consultation/liaison
	Clinical supervision
	Program development and management

CNS, clinical nurse specialist; NP, nurse practitioner; PMHN, psychiatric-mental health nurse.

In the early 1960s the nurse practitioner (NP) role was introduced in rural areas of the United States. By the late 1990s, the psychiatric-mental health NP role was introduced. Traditionally, this role has been seen as a provider of common physician services such as direct patient care for complex diagnosis and management of medical illnesses with medication prescription. More recently, the development is the blending of the CNS and NP roles for preparation of advanced practice nurses (APNs) in psychiatric-mental health nursing. The challenge to educators, however, is how to combine the two roles while preserving the uniqueness of each (Jones, 2010). The American Psychiatric Nurses Association (APNA) and the International Society of Psychiatric Nurses (ISPN), two professional psychiatric-mental health nursing organizations, have reviewed the standards for credentialing for future psychiatric-mental health nursing practice at both basic and advanced levels. According to ANCC, the current plan is to eliminate the title and role of the psychiatric CNS in favor of a psychiatric family NP model. This clinician would no longer be a specialist in any one area of psychiatric-mental health nursing, but would see clients from childhood through elderly age groups (Jones & Minarik, 2012).

Psychiatric nursing is practiced at two educational levels: generalist practice (ADN, Diploma, BSN) and advanced practice (MSN, DNP, PhD). Advanced practice nurses are clinical nurse specialists (CNSs) and nurse practitioners (NPs).

Roles and Functions of the PMHNs

Both basic and advanced practice PMHNs are guided by the Scope and Standards of Practice developed by the ANA. However, specific standards and criteria used for measurement are expanded for the advanced practice PMHN. **Table 1-1** highlights the key functions for each level of practice.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Early views of mental illness in the West focused on demonic possession with treatment consisting of charms, spells, witch hunts, and exorcisms. As the late 18th century approached, medical interventions such as bloodletting, immobilization, and specialized devices were used to treat mental illness. These practices were eventually stopped as the focus changed to supportive, sympathetic care in a quiet, clean environment.
- Dorothea Dix was instrumental in the care of the mentally ill in the United States, advocating for their needs through the establishment of state hospitals.
- During the 20th century, Freud's psychoanalytic theory and the development of psychopharmacology played key roles in the treatment of mental illness. The passage of the National Mental Health Act in 1946 provided funding for research, mental health professional training, and facility expansion programs, and established the National Advisory Mental Health Council and a National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). Mental health was beginning to gain focus as an important area of health.
- In the 1960s, deinstitutionalization occurred. However, community mental health centers were not equipped to deal with the large numbers of persons who were deinstitutionalized. Care became fragmented and inadequate.
- In 1999, the surgeon general issued the first national report that focused on mental health that called for improving the quality of mental health in the nation. In 2001, the President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health was created and led to recommendations for changing the current system to one that is more consumer and family driven and emphasizing the need for mental illnesses to receive the same focus of attention as medical illness.
- Although not a psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN), Florence Nightingale first identified the need to view the patient holistically, advocating for self-care. Linda Richards, credited as being the first American psychiatric nurse, emphasized the need to assess a patient's physical and emotional needs. Forty years later, the first psychiatric-mental health nursing program was established.
- With the evolution of the mental health field, PMHNs were required to adapt the principles of medical-surgical nursing care to those of psychiatric patients. The emergence of interpersonal models in the fields of psychiatry and nursing led to a refinement in the nurse's role. Hildegard Peplau and Joyce Travelbee emphasized the importance of interpersonal relations and the need to integrate this relevant content into the curricula.
- Publication of the American Nurses Association's (ANA) Statement on Psychiatric Nursing Practice was the first document to address the PMHN's holistic view of the patient and emphasized involvement in a wide range of activities addressing health promotion and health restoration.
- The "decade of the brain" shifted the focus of care to medical somatic interventions.
- Two levels of psychiatric-mental health nursing are recognized: basic and advanced. Basic-level PHMNs apply the nursing process through the use of the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship, therapeutic interventions, and professional attributes such as self-awareness, empathy, and the therapeutic use of self. Advanced practice PMHNs have a master's or doctoral degree and have received certification by the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC). Mental health promotion, collaboration, and referral are key components of advanced practice.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nursing instructor is preparing a class discussion about the development of mental health care over time. Which of the following would the instructor include as occurring first?
   a. Development of psychoanalytic theory
   b. Establishment of the National Institute of Mental Health
   c. Use of medical treatments such as bloodletting and immobilization
   d. Emphasis on supportive, sympathetic care in a clean, quiet environment

2. A group of nursing students are reviewing information related to the development of psychiatric-mental nursing. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which person was emphasizing the use of the interpersonal process?
   a. Florence Nightingale
   b. Linda Richards
   c. Dorothea Dix
   d. Hildegard Peplau

3. A psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) is preparing a presentation for a group of student nurses about psychiatric-mental health nursing. Which statement would the nurse include in the presentation about this specialty?
   a. A PMHN needs to obtain a graduate-level degree for practice.
   b. Advanced practice PMHNs can engage in psychotherapy.
   c. Basic-level PMHNs mainly focus on the patient's ability to function.
   d. PMHNs primarily work in acute inpatient settings.

4. When describing the results of integrating interpersonal models in psychiatric-mental health nursing, which of the following would be least appropriate to include?
   a. Therapeutic communication
   b. Milieu management
   c. Psychopharmacology
   d. Process groups

5. Deinstitutionalization occurred as a result of which of the following?
   a. Mental Retardation Facilities and Community Mental Health Centers Act
   b. National Mental Health Act
   c. Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA)
   d. The Surgeon General's Report on Mental Health

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Nurses Association, American Psychiatric Nurses Association, International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses (ANA). (2007). *Psychiatric-mental health nursing: Scope and Standards of Practice*. Silver Spring, MD: American Nurses Association Publishing Program.

Doona, M. E. (1979). *Travelbee's intervention in psychiatric nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Fulton, J. A., Lyon, B. L., & Goudreau, K. A. (2010). *Foundations of clinical nurse specialist practice*. New York, NY: Springer.

Jones, J. S. (2010). Credentialing and psychiatric clinical nurse specialist practice—Current issues. *Clinical Nurse Specialist: The Journal for Advanced Nursing Practice, 24*(1), 38–40.

Jones, J. S., & Minarik, P. (2012). The plight of the psychiatric clinical nurse specialist: The dismantling of the advanced practice nursing archetype. *Clinical Nurse Specialist: The Journal for Advanced Nursing Practice, 26*(3), 121–125.

National Institutes of Health (NIH). (2010). National Institute of Mental Health. Retrieved from www.nih.gov/about/almanac/organization/NIMH.htm

Peplau, H. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. P. Putnam.

Peplau, H. (1962). Interpersonal techniques: The crux of psychiatric nursing. *American Journal of Nursing, 62*(6), 50–54.

President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health. (2003). *Final report to the president*. Retrieved from http://mentalhealth.about.com/library/free/blFullReport-05.htm

Satcher, D. (1999). *Mental health: A report of the surgeon general*. Retrieved from http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/mental-health/home.html

Sullivan, H. S. (1953). *The interpersonal theory of psychiatry*. New York, NY: W. W. Norton.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *Healthy People 2020 objectives*. Retrieved from http://www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/overview.aspx?topicid=28

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2016). Retrieved from http://www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topics-objective

U.S. Public Health Service. (2000). *Report of the Surgeon General's Conference on children's mental health: A national action agenda*. Retrieved from http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/topics/cmh/childreport.html#sum

Whitaker, R. (2011). *Anatomy of an epidemic: Magic bullets, psychiatric drugs, and the astonishing rise of mental illness in America.* New York, NY: Broadway Books.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define interpersonal relationships
2. Identify the two predominant interpersonal models in psychiatric nursing
3. Discuss the stages of the interpersonal process as described by Hildegard Peplau
4. Explain the six roles that nurses may assume during Peplau's interpersonal process
5. Correlate Peplau's stages of the interpersonal process with the steps of the nursing process
6. Identify the three key concepts associated with Joyce Travelbee's Human-to-Human Relationship Theory

CHAPTER 2

INTERPERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS: THE CORNERSTONE OF PSYCHIATRIC NURSING

Jeffrey S. Jones
Joyce J. Fitzpatrick

7. Discuss the five phases of Travelbee's model
8. Describe the importance of these theories in the professional practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing
9. Apply Peplau's and Travelbee's theories to patient care delivery in the clinical setting
10. Incorporate the models of interpersonal relationships in professional psychiatric nursing practice

KEY TERMS

Emerging identities
Empathetic linkages
Empathy
Exploitation phase
Hope
Human being
Identification phase
Interpersonal relationship
Orientation phase
Original encounter
Rapport
Resolution phase
Suffering
Sympathy

An **INTERPERSONAL RELATIONSHIP** (often referred to as an IPR) is the connection that exists between two or more individuals. Observation, assessment, communication, and evaluation skills serve as the foundation for an interpersonal relationship. Development of any interpersonal relationship requires the individual to have a basic understanding of self and what that individual brings to the relationship. The second most important skill is that of communication, including both verbal and nonverbal communication.

The relationship that nurses have with their patients is considered the cornerstone of all other components of nursing. Regardless of the patient's health status—ranging from well individuals living in the community to patients who are critically or terminally ill—establishing a nurse–patient relationship is one of the nurse's primary goals. It is this relationship that is reflected and integrated into the plan of care for any patient of any age, culture, or socioeconomic background.

The interpersonal relationship in nursing is often considered to be the one-to-one relationship between the nurse and patient. However, the nurse also needs to develop interpersonal relationships with the patient's family and key individuals in the patient's environment.

Interpersonal relationships form the basis of nursing interventions for psychiatric-mental health nursing. To do this, nurses must learn how to build the relationship and develop the skills for enhancing the interaction among the nurse, patient, family, and other important individuals in the patient's life.

This chapter provides an introduction to interpersonal relationships, which serves as the foundation for the rest of the book. Several interpersonal models have been developed in nursing. Two prominent nursing theories that specifically address the interpersonal relationship as the core concept are described. These are the theories of Hildegard Peplau and Joyce Travelbee.

Interpersonal relationships are the connections between two or more people. Skillful management of interpersonal relationships is essential to psychiatric-mental health nursing.

HILDEGARD E. PEPLAU

Hildegard E. Peplau is considered the founder of psychiatric-mental health nursing theory and professional practice. She has been referred to as the "mother" of psychiatric nursing and, in an authorized biography by Callaway (2002), as the psychiatric nurse of the century. She is well known within the national and global nursing communities, not only for her contributions to psychiatric nursing but also for her activism throughout nursing. During her professional career, she served as president of the American Nurses Association (ANA) and subsequently, as the ANA executive director. She also served as a board member of the International Council of Nurses (ICN). In 1997, she received the highest award from this organization, the Christine Reimann Prize.

Peplau was always a staunch supporter of professional education for nurses and of specialization for post-basic preparation. She was responsible for developing the first master's degree clinical nurse specialist psychiatric-mental health nursing program at the Rutgers University School of Nursing in New Jersey.

Peplau is considered the founder of psychiatric-mental health nursing.

Biographical Background

Hildegard E. Peplau was born September 1, 1909, in Reading, Pennsylvania; she died in 1999 at the age of 89 years (**Figure 2-1**). She was the second in a family of five children. Her parents had immigrated to the United States from Poland before any of the children were born. Throughout her school years, Peplau excelled; she decided on a career in

Figure 2-1 *Hildegard E. Peplau.*

nursing to advance her education and to provide a means for making her own way in the world. She graduated from the Pottstown Hospital School of Nursing in 1931 and from the Bennington College in 1942 with a bachelor of arts degree with a major in interpersonal psychology.

While studying at Bennington, Peplau was exposed to the work of Harry Stack Sullivan. Sullivan's theory described personality as behavior in relation to others. He identified a person's need for satisfaction and security with the development of anxiety if these needs are not met. Sullivan's work greatly influenced Peplau who also emphasized basic needs and anxiety.

Peplau served in the Army Nurse Corps as a first lieutenant in World War II. Following her service, she received a master's degree from Columbia University in 1947 and a doctorate in education in 1953.

Peplau was a dedicated nurse and scholar and quickly rose to the top of her profession. She directed the graduate program in psychiatric nursing at Columbia Teachers College from 1948 to 1953. It was during this time that she wrote the seminal text: *Interpersonal Relationships in Nursing: A Conceptual Frame of Reference for Psychodynamic Nursing.* Although the book was completed in 1948, it was not published until 1952 (Peplau, 1952). Her book was considered most unusual in nursing because it was one of the first nursing books written by a nurse without a physician as coauthor. In fact, the 3-year delay in publication was because the book was considered too revolutionary for a nurse to publish (O'Toole & Welt, 1989).

Peplau's Theory of Interpersonal Relationships

Peplau viewed nursing as an interpersonal process between two or more persons directed toward a therapeutic goal. Therapeutic goal attainment is achieved by the nurse's deliberate actions that occur along a sequence of phases.

The environment also plays a key role in human development (Peplau, 1992). The environment included factors such as culture, adult presence, economic status, and prenatal environment, as well as the interactions between the patient and the others, that is, family, parents, or nurse.

Anxiety is another key component of Peplau's theory. (See Chapter 13 for a more in-depth discussion of anxiety.) Drawing on the work by Sullivan and his interpersonal theory, she identified different levels of anxiety and their effects on an individual. Peplau emphasized the need for nurses to recognize anxiety and intervene accordingly to improve the individual's state.

Peplau believed that the interpersonal competencies of nurses are essential to assisting patients to regain health and well-being. These interpersonal competencies are based on the nurse's ability to understand his or her own behavior. Peplau stressed the need for nurses to be able to feel within themselves the feelings that others are communicating verbally or nonverbally. Most commonly, these feelings are anxiety or panic. Nurses then integrate this understanding and self-awareness to assist others in identifying their problems. (See Chapter 3 for more information on developing self-awareness.)

According to Peplau, nurses integrate an understanding of their own behaviors and self-awareness to assist patients in identifying problems and in working toward achieving health and well-being.

Phases of the Interpersonal Process

Initially, Peplau described four phases in the interpersonal process: the orientation phase, identification phase, exploitation phase, and resolution phase (Peplau, 1952, 1991). Later, these four stages were condensed into three stages: orientation phase, working phase, and termination phase (Peplau, 1988, 1997). The four-stage model is described in **Figure 2-2**.

Orientation

The first phase of Peplau's interpersonal process is the **ORIENTATION PHASE**. This phase includes the initial contact the nurse has with the patient. During this phase, the patient seeks assistance. The nurse identifies himself or herself and the purpose and nature of the relationship. It is in this orientation phase that the nurse also communicates the temporal dimension of the relationship to the patient; that is, he or she informs the patient about the time frame available for the therapeutic interaction.

Peplau emphasizes that the patient is the focus of the communication. Personal information about the nurse is not needed. The patient conveys his or her needs, asks questions, and shares information. The nurse observes the patient and makes assessments of the patient's status and needs during this phase of the relationship. Acting as a participant observer, the nurse uses his or her knowledge about influencing factors and takes into account the

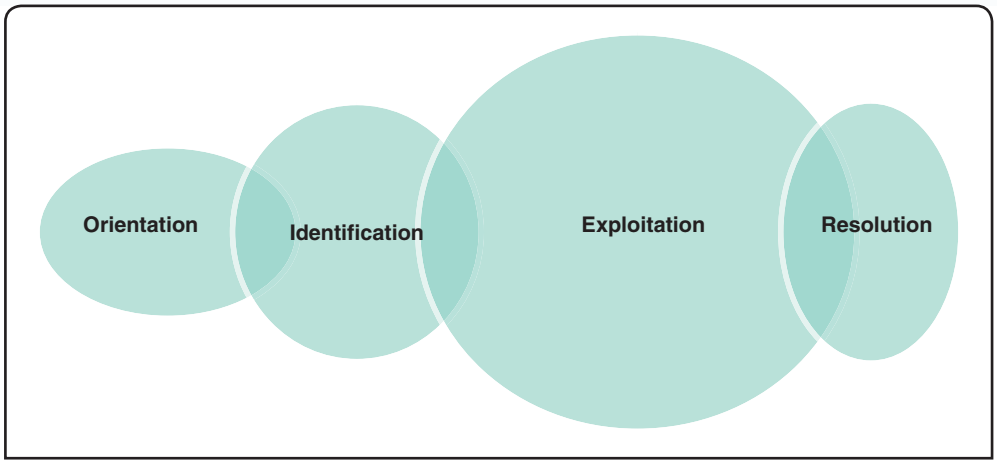


Figure 2-2 *Peplau's model of interpersonal relationships.* Peplau initially identified four phases of the interpersonal process as orientation, identification, exploitation, and resolution. Note that the exploitation phase is the largest because the majority of work occurs at this time. In follow-up research, Peplau combined the phases of identification and exploitation, calling it the "working phase." As conceptualized by J. Jones.

patient's previous experiences, values, beliefs, culture, and expectations. The nurse also is cognizant of his or her own previous personal experiences, values, beliefs, culture, preconceived ideas, and expectations; assesses his or her own self; and determines how these may influence the nurse–patient relationship. This knowledge of self is an important factor in the relationship.

At the beginning of the orientation phase, the nurse and the patient meet as strangers, but as the relationship is developed, the problem is identified. The nurse explains routines, roles, and expectations to elicit the full participation of the patient. Subsequently, the patient begins to develop a sense of belonging and the ability to deal with the present difficulties. The patient and the nurse are ready to move to the next phase of the relationship.

Identification

In the **IDENTIFICATION PHASE**, the patient recognizes the health care needs for which the nurse can provide assistance. The patient views the nurse as a skilled provider of care capable of helping the patient to meet these needs and accepts the nurse's help. The nurse, in turn, senses that the patient has identified the needs and has cast the nurse in the role of the care provider. Additionally, the nurse identifies personal knowledge, attributes, and skills that he or she can bring to the relationship when providing nursing care. Together, the patient and nurse develop mutual goals and begin working together to address the patient's needs. Expression and exploration of the patient's feelings are key during this time.

Exploitation

During the **EXPLOITATION PHASE**, the bulk of the work in the nurse–patient relationship is accomplished with the patient taking full advantage of the nursing services offered. This phase encompasses all of the therapeutic activities that are initiated to reach the identified goal. Throughout this phase, the nurse and the patient must continue to clarify expectations and goals and to define the work to be done based on identification of patient needs. **Evidence-Based Practice 2-1** highlights a research study that applies Peplau's theory to women with depression.

Open communication is essential during this time and requires a trusting relationship between nurse and patient. Without this trust, the work essential to meeting the therapeutic goals cannot be completed.

The relationship between the nurse and the patient during this phase is intense as the patient begins to take responsibility for his or her own health goals. This shift in responsibility from the nurse to the patient characterizes this phase. However, this transition to greater responsibility may be the most difficult point in the nurse–patient relationship. The exploitation phase requires that the nurse begins to foster independence in the nurse–patient relationship and starts the process of "letting go" in preparation for the next phase. Health care providers, including nurses, sometimes have difficulty in relationships when their clients are not dependent on them. This may indicate a boundary issue. (For more information on health boundary management in therapeutic relationships, see Chapter 4.) Although the patient may initially be dependent on the nurse, as the exploitation phase progresses the patient develops independence.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 2-1: DEPRESSION AND PEPLAU'S THEORY

STUDY

Peden, A. R. (1993). Recovering in depressed women: Research with Peplau's theory. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 6*(3), 140–146.

SUMMARY

Depression is a significant problem among women. This study was guided by Peplau's theory of nursing. The author conducted in-depth interviews of seven women who at one time had been hospitalized for depression and were now recovering. The findings indicated that the process of recovering consisted of three phases: (a) a turning point and professional support; (b) determination, support of family and friends, and successes; and (c) self-esteem and maintaining balance. The participants described recovery as a dynamic process, with movement among phases.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Nurses need to understand the dynamic nature of the recovery process and help individuals who have experienced depression move through the phases of recovery. This can be accomplished through the interpersonal process described by Peplau.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How prevalent is the problem of depression among women?*
2. *What are the phases of the recovery process from the perspective of the women in this study and how do the women describe their experiences of recovery?*
3. *Describe the role that the professional nurse can play in the recovery process based on Peplau's theory.*

Resolution

The **RESOLUTION PHASE** of the relationship occurs when the patient's needs have been met through the collaborative work of nurse and patient. The nurse's evaluation of the patient's readiness to move through termination of the relationship is crucial to resolution. During a successful termination, the patient moves away from the nurse and understands that he or she can manage independently. The patient assumes the power to meet his or her needs and set new goals. However, if the relationship is terminated prematurely, the patient may relapse and thus require a rebuilding of the therapeutic relationship.

The four phases of the interpersonal process as identified by Peplau are the orientation phase, identification phase, exploitation phase, and resolution phase. Later, Peplau condensed these phases into three phases: orientation phase, working phase, and termination phase.

Roles

Peplau defined six primary roles that the nurse assumes throughout the interpersonal process to assist the patient in meeting his or her needs (Tomey & Alligood, 2006). These roles, described in **Table 2-1**, may overlap and occur at any time during any phase of the nurse–patient relationship. She also identified other roles that the nurse may assume, such as consultant, tutor, mediator, administrator, researcher, and observer. However, she did not define these roles specifically but rather left them up to the reader to define (Peplau, 1952).

Nurses may find themselves in any or all of six roles (stranger, resource person, teacher, leader, surrogate, or counselor) when working with patients.

Application to Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing Practice

The nurse must integrate the use of therapeutic communication and interviewing skills while helping the patient through the phases of the interpersonal relationship. Peplau (1997) describes the need for participant observation, which consists of the following three foci: the nurse, the patient, and the relationship. Thus, the nurse must be ever vigilant about himself or herself and others and the interaction between himself or herself and the patient. The nurse must be cognizant of all of the messages, verbal and nonverbal, communicated to patients.

As a component of the observation required in the nurse–patient interaction, Peplau describes **EMPATHETIC LINKAGES**, the ability to feel in oneself the emotions experienced by another person in the same situation. It is the nurse's role to reframe the observed feelings into verbal communications.

Peplau (1997) noted several challenges in the interpersonal relationships that develop between nurses and patients. These may include avoiding rather than dealing with the patient's anger or one's own anger, avoiding discussion of emotionally laden topics, and competing with the patient on some dimension. As these challenges test the competence of the nurse, it is important for the nurse to identify them and their effect on the nurse–patient relationship.

Peplau understood that patients want relationships with others, including therapeutic relationships with nurses. The connectedness developed through the interpersonal

TABLE 2-1: ROLES OF THE NURSE

ROLE	DESCRIPTION AND CONSIDERATIONS
Stranger	Usually during orientation phase Need for a climate of courtesy and acceptance as the nurse and patient are strangers to each other; facilitation of identification phase No prejudgment of patient
Resource person	Nurse as a valuable source of information Nurse responsible for determining how best to answer questions: Are there larger issues that need to be addressed? How much information can the patient handle at this point in his or her illness? Is the patient ready to hear the response to be given?
Teacher	Occurrence along many points throughout the relationship Decision as to what mode best fits the situation: brief instructional moment with review of printed material; experiential meeting with demonstration More likely advantageous during exploitation phase
Leader	Direction for understanding therapeutic goals Accomplishment of therapeutic activities with cooperation and active participation
Surrogate	Clients seeing those who care for them as they would others who have cared for them in their lives, that is, mother, father, sister, wife Assistance to help patient develop awareness of mindset and understand differences from recalled person
Counselor	Emphasis on therapeutic communication strategies Awareness of therapeutic use of self in patient encounters Expected outcome of patient being able to integrate the illness into his or her life rather than see it as a separate experience

relationship helps decrease the anxiety that is a predominant emotion in many patients' experiences. The relationship further serves as a means to decrease the space between persons.

Application to the Nursing Process

Peplau's four phases of the nurse–patient relationship closely parallel the steps of the nursing process. Both focus on the therapeutic relationship and occur sequentially, with each phase dependent on the previous phase. Peplau's orientation phase is similar to the assessment phase. In each, the nurse and patient meet for the first time as strangers because of a need on the patient's part. Information is collected and problems are identified. During planning and Peplau's identification phase, outcomes and goals are established and actions are set forth to meet these goals. Her exploitation phase, which correlates to implementation, provides the opportunity to put the plan into motion, using the necessary interventions and therapeutic activities to meet the established goals. The patient is an active participant in his or her care with the nurse facilitating and promoting increasing patient independence. Lastly, Peplau's resolution phase, like evaluation, occurs with the achievement of the patient's goals and the patient's ability to resume his or her own care independently. Chapter 5 describes the nursing process in greater detail.

Use of Peplau's Theory in Practice

Consider the following scenario. As a student nurse, you will have a chance to interact with patients on a mental health unit. This may be your first time caring for someone with a psychiatric disorder. In this situation, a female patient is diagnosed with panic disorder (recurrent, unexpected periods of intense discomfort accompanied by physical signs and symptoms such as palpitations, sweating, shaking, and shortness of breath) with agoraphobia (anxiety about being in places or situations from which escape may be difficult or embarrassing or in which help may not be available). When you walk into the room to meet the patient for the first time, what should you expect? What will someone with panic disorder look like, act like? What should the patient expect? Should you smile or be serious? Should your body posture be relaxed or stiff? Should you introduce yourself with a handshake or let the patient make the first move? All of these questions are important ones to consider as you prepare to engage with your first patient.

When you meet the patient, you are a stranger. In this first phase,"orientation,"the goal is to engage the patient in such a way that you and the patient begin to identify with each other. If the patient can perceive you as trustworthy, knowledgeable, and helpful, then you will have progressed into the identification phase.

In the identification, you and the patient will begin discussions focusing on what his or her health situation is, what problems he or she is having, and how he or she can benefit from mutual goal setting. You and the patient decide to focus on his or her awareness of triggers for the panic attacks. Moving into the phase of exploitation provides you with the opportunity to function in the roles of counselor, teacher, and resource person. You may have helpful printed material about panic disorder and ways that patients can learn to become aware of triggers for the condition and begin to manage the anxiety with self-relaxation techniques. You may meet several times with this patient to review the material, teaching him or her these techniques, offering suggestions to reduce his or her exposure to the triggers, and providing support through active listening. These actions are focused on achieving the mutual goal. As your time on the unit as a student comes to an end, you now need to disengage from and terminate the relationship. You meet with the patient and review her accomplishments so far and the gains that she has made in treatment. Your actions foster independence in the patient. Subsequently, you have now experienced resolution to the relationship.

JOYCE TRAVELBEE

Joyce Travelbee viewed nursing as an interpersonal process that assists individuals, families, or communities to prevent or cope with illness and suffering with the goal of finding meaning in these experiences (Travelbee, 1971). Her Human-to-Human Relationship Theory focuses on caring and the therapeutic use of self.

Biographical Background

Joyce Travelbee was born in 1926 and received a diploma in nursing from Charity Hospital School of Nursing in New Orleans in 1946 (**Figure 2-3**). She then obtained a baccalaureate degree in nursing (BSN) from Louisiana State University in 1956 and a master's degree in nursing (MSN) from Yale University in 1959. She had just begun a doctoral program in Florida at the time of her death in 1973. Travelbee began her nursing career in education, teaching psychiatric nursing in New Orleans in 1952. She also taught psychiatric nursing at schools of nursing and universities in New York and Mississippi (Tomey & Alligood, 2006).

Figure 2-3 *Joyce Travelbee.*

Travelbee's Human-to-Human Relationship Theory

Travelbee's Human-to-Human Relationship Theory developed from a convergence of three significant influences. The first influence was her experiences in practice. She felt that what she witnessed was a lack of compassion on the part of her colleagues and that the time was right for professional nursing to undergo a "humanistic revolution" (Tomey & Alligood, 2006).

A second influence was that of Ida Jean Orlando, another nurse theorist. Orlando was one of Travelbee's instructors at Yale University and was in the process of further developing and teaching her Nursing Process Theory (1958–1961). Orlando's work focused on medical–surgical patients, not psychiatric-mental health patients. However, she emphasized the need for nurses to view the patient as a whole, not just a disease entity.

The writings of Victor Frankl, a philosopher, were a third influence on Travelbee. Frankl was a survivor of Nazi concentration camps and developed the theory of logotherapy based on observations of others and his experience of suffering (Tomey & Alligood, 2006). Logotherapy is founded on the belief that it is the striving to find a meaning in one's life that is the primary, most powerful motivating and driving force in humans. Frankl, an existentialist, felt that all life, even the most desperate of situations, had meaning and it was these situations that gave a person a reason to live.

Major Concepts

In her theory, Travelbee identified three main concepts: **HUMAN BEING**, **SUFFERING**, and **HOPE** (Travelbee, 1971). She defined a human being as "*a unique irreplaceable individual, a one-time being in this world, like yet unlike any person who has ever lived or ever will live*" (Travelbee, 1971). This individual is continuously evolving, changing, and becoming. Human being referred to any person. The nurse and the patient both would be considered human beings.

Suffering is defined as "*a feeling of displeasure which ranges from simple transitory mental, physical, or spiritual discomfort to extreme anguish, and to those phases beyond anguish, namely, the malignant phase of despairful not caring, and the terminal phase of apathetic indifference*" (p. 62).

One of the main functions of nursing is to relieve suffering, be it physical or emotional suffering. Physical pain and suffering are often easy to assess and address for a variety of reasons. Consider the example of a wound. A nurse can often see the wound and have a clinical frame of reference about its severity and the probable level of pain associated with it. The patient also may be able to report the level of pain on a scale that correlates to the nurse's concept of pain given the injury. The nurse then has a variety of protocols available, such as analgesics, repositioning, and massage to alleviate the patient's suffering.

Conversely, emotional pain and suffering are more difficult to assess, understand, and treat because of its inherent subjective nature. The nurse often has to rely on the patient's statements to assess the level of suffering.

Travelbee described suffering using four levels, which can be depicted as a continuum (**Figure 2-4**). The first level is simple transitory mental, physical, or spiritual discomfort. All human beings have experienced this discomfort. For example, something goes wrong in your life, you have an argument with a friend, you get a lower grade on an examination than you expected, or your seasonal allergies flare up due to a high pollen count. As the name implies, the suffering is short-lived. Although unpleasant and uncomfortable, it is usually self-resolving. The person can usually return to a previous state of equilibrium.

Sometimes a more serious stressor impacts a person's life, such as a serious physical injury (broken leg or slipped disc), or an emotional trauma (loss of a pet or the ending of a romantic relationship). These are examples of events possibly triggering extreme anguish. Most individuals have also experienced this level of suffering. Although potentially self-resolving, this phase may lead to the next level of suffering if intervention does not occur.

If extreme anguish is left unattended, despairful not caring may emerge. As the term *despair* implies, this phase is characterized by the patient who has suffered extreme anguish without intervention or relief of symptoms for such a long period of time that he or she is now experiencing angry feelings of pending hopelessness. Loss of a spouse,

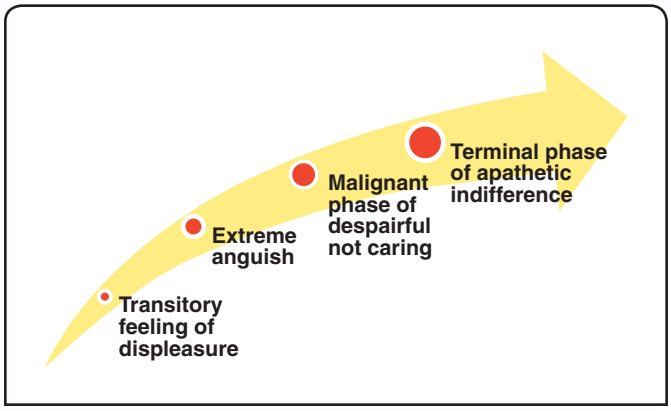


Figure 2-4 *Continuum of suffering.* (Conceptualized by J. Jones, based on Travelbee's definitions.)

loss of a child, or other catastrophic events may trigger this level of suffering.

The prolonged unrelenting suffering of anguish can lead to despair as well. If left without intervention, the person progresses to the terminal phase of apathetic indifference. This level is characterized by the person experiencing utter hopelessness. Nurses and other health care professionals describe patients as having lost their will to live (Travelbee, 1971). In psychiatric-mental health nursing, despairful not caring is considered to be an interpersonal emergency that requires immediate intervention to prevent the development of apathetic indifference.

Hope, according to Travelbee, is "*a mental state characterized by the desire to gain an end or accomplish a goal combined with some degree of expectation that what is desired or sought is attainable. Hope is related to dependence on others, choice within, trust and perseverance, and courage, and is future oriented*" (p. 77). One of the most powerful interventions a nurse can provide to a patient is the instillation of hope.

Human being, suffering, and hope are the three main concepts of Travelbee's Human-to-Human Relationship Theory.

Phases and the Nurse–Patient Relationship

Travelbee defined the nurse–patient relationship as a human-to-human relationship. The human-to-human relationship in nursing is the means through which the purpose of nursing is accomplished. She stressed that interpersonal relationships are primarily an experience between the nurse (a human being) and recipient of the care (another human being). The major characteristic of these experiences is that the nursing needs of the individual (or family) are met. Travelbee (1971) felt that "*the human-to-human relationship is established when the nurse and the recipient of care have progressed through four interlocking phases. The phases are the original encounter, emerging identities, empathy, and sympathy*" (p. 119). Progression through these phases culminates in a fifth phase, rapport (**Figure 2-5**).

- **ORIGINAL ENCOUNTER** *is the first phase of the nurse–patient relationship. It is characterized by first impressions by the nurse of the ill person and by the ill person of the nurse. Both the nurse and the ill person perceive each other in stereotypical or traditional roles.*
- **EMERGING IDENTITIES** *phase is characterized by the nurse and the ill person perceiving each other as unique individuals. The bond of a relationship is beginning to form.*
- **EMPATHY** *phase is characterized by the ability to share in the other person's experience. It is "an intellectual process and, to a lesser extent, emotion comprehension of another person" (Travelbee, 1964, p. 68). The result of the empathic process is the ability to predict the behavior of the individual and to "perceive accurately his thinking and feeling" (Travelbee, 1964, p. 68). Empathy is necessary to develop sympathy.*
- **SYMPATHY** *goes beyond empathy and occurs when the nurse desires to alleviate the cause of the patient's illness or suffering. This phase requires a combination of the disciplined intellectual approach combined with the therapeutic use of self. The nurse creates a helpful nursing action as a result of reaching a phase of sympathy.*
- **RAPPORT** *is characterized by nursing actions that alleviate an ill person's distress. The nurse and ill person are relating as human being to human being. Rapport includes a "concern for others and an active interest in them, a belief in the worth, dignity, uniqueness, and irreplaceability of each individual human being, and an accepting, nonjudgmental approach" (Travelbee, 1963, p. 71). The ill person exhibits both trust and confidence in the nurse.*

The five phases of Travelbee's nurse–patient relationship are original encounter, emerging identities, empathy, sympathy, and rapport.

Application to Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing Practice

Travelbee's theory has been applied most easily and readily when working with patients who are suffering from

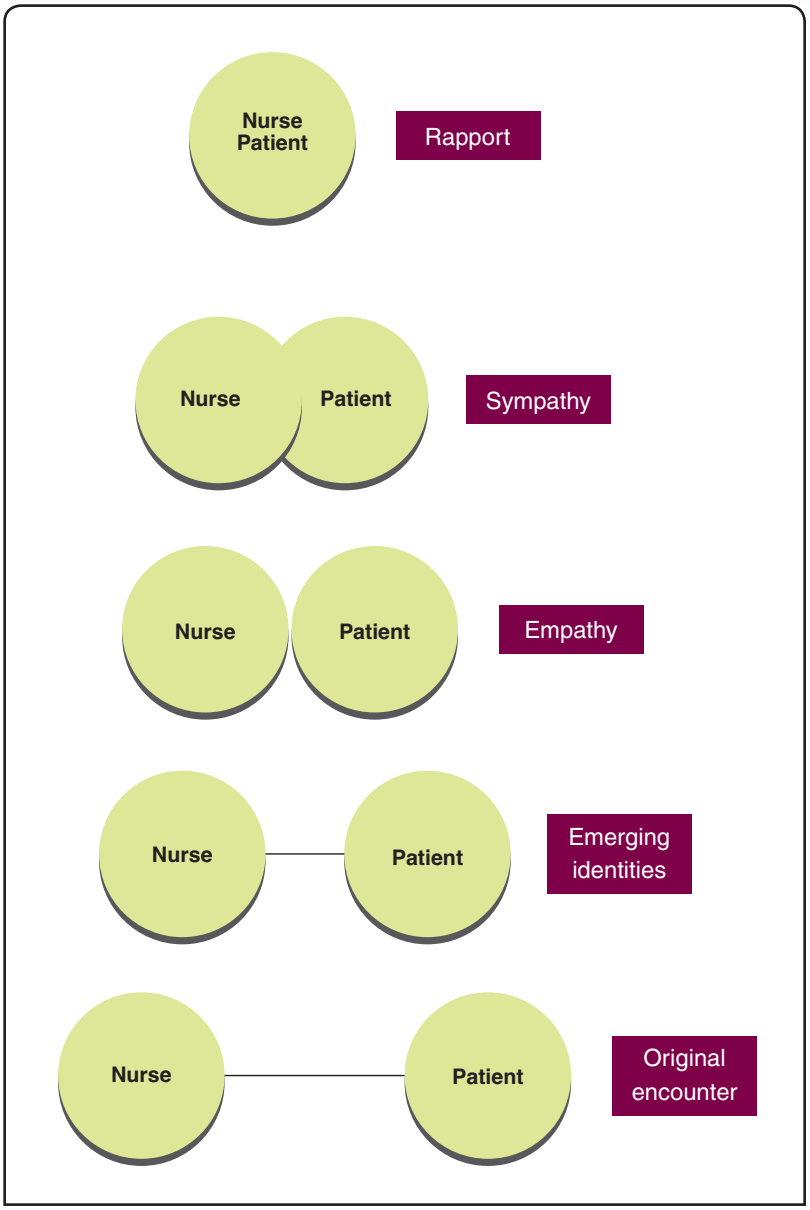


Figure 2-5 *Phases of Travelbee's nurse–patient relationship.*

Adapted from Tomey and Alligood (2006).

depressive disorders. It also has been used by hospice nurses when caring for terminally ill patients.

Application to the Nursing Process

Travelbee's theory can be integrated within the nursing process. The assessment phase of the nursing process would correlate to Travelbee's first and second phases, the original encounter and emerging identities. During the original encounter/emerging identities, the nurse forms a first impression of the patient and the patient, in turn, forms a first impression of the nurse. The nurse and the patient are just beginning to get a mutual sense of what the problems are as the nurse collects information about the patient and the problems at hand (assessment). The empathy phase most closely correlates to the diagnosis/planning in the nursing process. The nurse has now experienced an emotional sense of the patient's situation and has begun to consider interventions based on this perspective. The next phase of Travelbee's model, sympathy, involves the nurse now actively wanting to alleviate the patient's suffering and correlates to the implementation phase of the nursing process in that the actions designed in the plan of care during empathy are now implemented. During rapport, the nurse and the patient enjoy a close human-to-human relationship where the nurse has opportunities, along with the patient, to evaluate the effectiveness of the interventions; this phase reflects the evaluation aspect of the nursing process. The patient now demonstrates trust and confidence in the nurse and the actions being implemented.

Use of Travelbee's Theory in Practice

Consider the following scenario that is typical in psychiatric care delivery. It deals with the issue of depression and suicide. You are working on the afternoon shift as a nurse at the local mental health unit. You have been informed that a new admission has just been triaged from the emergency department and has been cleared for admission to the unit. You are assigned this person as part of your caseload. You prepare the room as the patient is brought into the unit by the emergency department staff.

Applying Travelbee's model, you know that the *original encounter* will occur the moment you greet the patient. You may have some preliminary information about the patient (54-year-old Caucasian female diagnosed with depression who is suicidal) and she may have some preliminary information about nurses (are generally nice and caring).

The patient arrives on the unit and you and the patient are now alone in the room as you begin your admission assessment. You are now entering the emerging identities phase. You are getting to know the patient as a human being and she is getting to know you as a human being. You hear her story and the circumstances leading to her admission and you may begin to feel something emotionally toward the patient. She, too, is mentally forming an impression of you, for example, based on how you are asking the questions, the tone of your voice, your body posture, and your attitude. She is deciding if you are trustworthy, caring, and competent.

You skillfully navigate the sensitive issues around suicidality, which allows the patient to feel comfortable enough to disclose information. Details of the emotional pain leading to her suicide attempt have touched you and you recognize that you have now entered the *empathy* phase of the relationship. You may actually experience a brief sense of your own mood shifting as you navigate this phase.

You return to the nursing station to document your assessment and begin the plan of care. As you put the information together and start your work, you may next experience *sympathy*. Developing a plan of care with goals of safety, restoration of internal control, reduction of depressive symptoms, and instillation of hope indicates that you desire to provide nursing interventions that alleviate the cause of the patient's illness and reduce her suffering. It may also occur to you that this patient was probably experiencing at least prolonged extreme anguish or likely despairful not caring, as viewed by Travelbee's continuum of suffering.

As the days pass, you and the patient meet regularly during your shift. You have meaningful conversations that allow her to express her feelings and explore solutions to the circumstances that led to her admission. She uses her time with you productively and you have been able to relate to each other, human being to human being. Subsequently, you have now established *rapport*. This is where the bulk of the work and healing is done in the nurse–patient relationship.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Interpersonal relationships form the basis of nursing interventions for psychiatric-mental health nursing. Observation, assessment, communication, and evaluation skills serve as the foundation.
- Development of an interpersonal relationship requires an individual to have a basic understanding of himself or herself and what he or she brings to the relationship.
- Hildegard E. Peplau is considered the founder of psychiatric-mental health nurse theory and professional practice, and is often referred to as the "mother of psychiatric nursing."
- Peplau's theory of interpersonal relationships views nursing as an interpersonal process between two or more persons directed toward goal achievement. Nurses need interpersonal competencies (based on the nurse's ability to understand his or her own behavior) to assist patients to regain health and well-being.
- Peplau identified four phases in the interpersonal process: orientation, identification, exploitation, and resolution. Later, these four stages were condensed into three: orientation, working, and termination phases. Her phases closely parallel those of the nursing process.
- Peplau identified six primary roles assumed by the nurse in the interpersonal process: stranger, resource person, teacher, leader, surrogate, and counselor.

(*cont.*)

SUMMARY POINTS (*CONT.*)

- Joyce Travelbee viewed nursing as an interpersonal process assisting individuals, families, or communities to prevent or cope with illness and suffering in an attempt to find meaning in these experiences. She identified three main concepts: human being, suffering, and hope. She described suffering using four levels: simple transitory discomfort; extreme anguish; despairful not caring; and apathetic indifference.
- According to Travelbee, the nurse–patient relationship consisted of five phases: original encounter, emerging identities, empathy, sympathy, and rapport.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nurse who will be providing care to a psychiatric-mental health patient is in the orientation phase of the relationship. The nurse would most likely assume which role?
   - **a.** Counselor
   - **b.** Teacher
   - **c.** Stranger
   - **d.** Surrogate
2. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about Peplau's phases of the nurse–patient relationship and how they apply to the nursing process. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of Peplau's phases as correlating to the implementation step of the nursing process?
   - **a.** Orientation
   - **b.** Identification
   - **c.** Exploitation
   - **d.** Resolution
3. Travelbee identifies three major concepts for her theory. Which concept provides the nurse with the most powerful intervention?
   - **a.** Hope
   - **b.** Suffering
   - **c.** Human being
   - **d.** Empathy
4. A nurse is integrating Travelbee's theory of the nurse–patient relationship into the care being provided to a patient. Which of the following is demonstrated when the nurse implements actions to alleviate the ill person's distress?
   - **a.** Emerging identities
   - **b.** Empathy
   - **c.** Sympathy
   - **d.** Rapport
5. During the orientation phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse focuses communication on which of the following?
   - **a.** Reason for the patient seeking help
   - **b.** The patient as a whole
   - **c.** Expected routines
   - **d.** Time frame for interaction
6. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about the interpersonal theorists, Peplau and Travelbee. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which person as a key influence on Peplau?
   - **a.** Harry Sullivan
   - **b.** Victor Frankl
   - **c.** Ida Orlando
   - **d.** Sigmund Freud

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Callaway, B. J. (2002). *Hildegard Peplau: Psychiatric nurse of the century*. New York, NY: Springer.

O'Toole, A. W., & Welt, S. R. (1989). *Interpersonal theory in nursing practice: Selected works of Hildegard E. Peplau.* New York, NY: Springer.

Peplau, H. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. P. Putnam.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. P. Putnam.

Peplau, H. E. (1992). A theoretical framework for application in nursing practice. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 5*(1), 13–18.

Peplau, H. E. (1997). Peplau's theory of interpersonal relations. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 10*(4), 162–167.

Tomey, A. M., & Alligood, M. R. (2006). *Nursing theorists and their work* (6th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Mosby.

Travelbee, J. (1963). What do we mean by rapport? *American Journal of Nursing, 63*(2), 70–72.

Travelbee, J. (1964). What's wrong with sympathy? *American Journal of Nursing, 64*(1), 71.

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 3

THE VALUE OF THE USE OF DIALOGUE AND SELF IN RECOVERY

Daniel B. Fisher
Declan McCarthy
John F. Sweeney

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define the term *self*
2. Define components of recovery
3. Identify the principles of dialogue
4. Describe ways to develop greater self-awareness
5. Define *therapeutic communication*
6. Discuss the key concepts of therapeutic communication
7. Explain the significance of therapeutic communication to establish and maintain therapeutic nurse–patient relationships
8. Identify techniques of therapeutic communication
9. Describe barriers to effective therapeutic communication
10. Describe the foundations of Emotional Connection, emPowerment, and Revitalization (eCPR)
11. Describe the five intentions of eCPR

KEY TERMS

Active listening
Attitudes
Communication
Dialogue
Empathy
Process recording
Recovery
Resonating
Self
Self-awareness
Self-disclosure
Self-reflection

In this chapter, we describe the role of nurses in helping relationships. We integrate three important trends in mental health care: use of self, the recovery paradigm, and the dialogical practice.

DIALOGICAL RECOVERY OF LIFE

Before the emergence of the voice of the person with lived experience, the focus was on the actions of the helper in the recovery context. Today we propose that the focus needs to shift to the capacity of the person in distress to experience his or her power to heal and recover. We are calling this Dialogical Recovery of Life (Fisher, 2015). This means that all actions by the person assisting need reframing in light of how well they enhance empowerment and vitality in the person who is distressed. We call this implementation of Dialogical Recovery of Life, Emotional CPR (eCPR).

Dialogical Recovery of Life is a synthesis of the uses of dialogical practice (Seikkula et al., 2006), recovery principles (Fisher, 2008), a trauma-informed approach (Mollica, 2009), and uses of self (see the following discussion). Taking a Dialogical Recovery of Life approach to healing not only benefits the person who is experiencing extreme emotional states (clinically described as psychosis), but also aids the growth and healing of those around him or her as well as the practitioners. This also applies to people experiencing states of lesser emotional distress, as well as to conditions of addiction. The following is a summary of ways that taking the Dialogical Recovery of Life approach can be of assistance to everyone who is emotionally distressed:

DIALOGUE is a uniquely suited process for bringing recovery to self and others. Dialogue enables people to see their world, and the world around them, through a new construct. This refreshingly broadened point of view enables them to hope, dream, and plan for the future.

Trauma is any process that interferes with these life-sustaining dialogues and interferes with the life. Trauma cuts people off from intimate relationships, and the nourishment of personal growth. When personal growth is impeded by trauma, recovery becomes challenging. To protect themselves, people often retreat to safety within. If, after prolonged retreat, they still feel unsafe, they only consider one version of reality—their own—and fall into a more negative place. They become psychotic, and/or suicidal, either passively by withdrawing from life, or actively by attempting to end their lives.

Drugs and medications are a temporary way out of this crisis situation. However, an overreliance on medication can lead to overdependence and a deceleration of personal development.

People need to connect with others who can support or identify with them. This human dialogue is the key to interpersonal relationships and can often sit extremely well with the initial crisis where one is taking medication.

A combination of eCPR and the Open Dialogue is well suited to reestablishing connections between the person in distress and his or her natural network. Just as eCPR helps a person to connect one-to-one with another person, Open Dialogue helps a person connect with his or her network. Many people with experience in dialogical practices have noted their own increased clarity of thought through their engagement with others in this process. Open Dialogue can expand options and points of view by enabling participants to become aware of new dimensions to their lives. In the interplay of dialogue, new meanings are generated that the participants had never previously dreamt of. This brings new ideas to life, which can then infuse lives with renewed meaning. This weaving together of different worlds goes beyond a single personal perspective and opens new horizons. By thinking more complexly, a person in distress can think beyond delusions.

Recovery research has shown that someone needs to reach the deepest self of the person in distress. It often takes someone who has been there and found a way through. It takes someone else with a strong sense of empathy to bestow hope to the person in despair. It takes a very human person who can fully believe in the other's capacity to recover his or her life. This is the essence of eCPR. This is why it is called heart-to-heart resuscitation.

SELF

SELF is defined as the entire person of an individual; an individual's typical character and an individual's temporary behavior; and the union of elements (body, emotions, thoughts, and sensations) that constitute the individuality and identity of a person (Merriam-Webster, 2011a, 2011b). An awareness of a sense of the self is core to a human being's personal identity (Gallop & O'Brien, 2003). From an early age, individuals become aware of physical, psychological, social, and cultural similarities with others. Insights into these similarities and dissimilarities emerge as individuals begin to understand the unique, interactive, and shared experiences of themselves and others that occur across one's life span. The sense of self develops from early childhood experiences and continues as the individual transitions from family, school, social, and work life toward old age. **SELF-REFLECTIONS** are triggered by the developmental and incidental encounters with others as the individual moves along in life. Whether joyful, neutral, or painful, the processes of feedback from others, self-discovery, learning, experience, travel, and memory forge insights into the complexity of life as an individual and shared reality. This experience of the self represents a lifelong journey of discovery of personal identity.

The concept of self refers to a person's entirety that develops throughout the life span as the person experiences similarities and differences with others and gains insight into his or her identity.

CARL ROGERS

Carl Rogers, although not a nurse, is one theorist who addressed the concept of self. Rogers is known as the founder of person-centered counseling. He contends that when listening to another, some major conditions are imperative in supporting development in the other. These core conditions are as follows:

- *Congruence (the mind being in tune with the body)*
- *Empathy (being able to put yourself in the other person's shoes emotionally)*
- *Unconditional positive regard (not judging anyone and having a positive and supportive attitude to them; Rogers, 1951)*

According to Rogers, these elements, when present in the therapeutic relationship, would lead patients to develop these conditions in themselves. Contemporary psychiatric-mental health nursing understandings, skills, and treatment approaches have been influenced by his philosophies.

Carl Rogers, the founder of person-centered counseling, identified three core conditions needed to support development of the other person: congruence, empathy, and unconditional positive regard.

OTHER THEORISTS

It is one thing to become more aware of one's own self, and it is altogether another to be able to assist others to explore the dimensions of their own sense of self, reality, and connection to the world. The term *therapeutic use of self* primarily came from the work of three theorists writing about the one-to-one nurse–patient relationship, namely Hildegard Peplau, June Mellow, and Ida Jean Orlando (Lego, 1999). Lego synthesized the work of these early theorists to provide a seminal definition of the concept therapeutic use of self as:

> The relationship between a psychiatric nurse and his/her patient, formed for the purpose of brief counselling, crisis intervention, and/or individual psychotherapy. The emphasis is on the interpersonal relationship between the nurse and the patient, with all its vicissitudes, as opposed to physical care of the patient. (1999, p. 4)

Peplau's theory (see Chapter 2 for more information) developed over a 40-year period and was enhanced by research focused on barriers to interpersonal closeness and her reflections on clinical observations (Coatsworth-Puspoky, Forchuk, & Ward-Griffin, 2006; Lego, 1999). Drawing on Peplau's theory, Karen Lee Fontaine defined the therapeutic use of self as "using one's personhood to provide psychiatric nursing care" (Fontaine, 2009, p. 168). Fontaine notes that a distinction has to be drawn between the therapeutic use of self in a one-to-one nurse–patient relationship and its use within a specialized milieu that focuses on the shaping of group behaviors within a therapeutic community.

In addition to Peplau, other nursing theorists such as Joyce Travelbee (1971), Annie Altschul (1972), and Phil Barker (1998, 2001b) have described the nurse–patient relationship. Still others have suggested that psychiatric-mental health nurses define the development of a therapeutic relationship with their patients as a foundational aspect of nursing care (O'Brien, 2001).

IMPORTANCE OF THE THERAPEUTIC USE OF SELF

A phenomenological study (a study designed to describe the lived experience) by Moyle (2003) recounts two aspects of an effective therapeutic relationship valued by patients during treatment for depression. These are "being with the patient" and "the need for comfort," in contrast to two alternative approaches perceived as nontherapeutic—"focusing on the physical" and "lack of comfort" (Moyle, 2003). These alternative approaches were experienced as avoidance of emotional engagement through the nurse's business and emotional coolness within the context of maintaining professional boundaries. While subscribing to a positive view of the therapeutic use of self as nurturing, caring, insight developing, and behavior challenging, Moyle suggests that overinvolvement can be detrimental.

In the 21st century, the term *patient* began to be replaced with terms such as *client*, *service user*, *person with lived experience*, or *survivor of psychiatric-mental health services* as a result of a gradual paradigm shift from a biomedical to a social psychiatric viewpoint that placed greater emphasis on increased patient autonomy. Before this shift in viewpoint, the more medical model approach resulted in patients being disempowered. With this greater emphasis on patient autonomy, patient involvement and collaborative care planning were taking place.

COMPASSION FATIGUE

Being there for someone and being involved and supporting people through mental distress and emotional challenges are not easy. Many find it tiring and exhausting and a very adequate amount of supervision is required. The term *compassion fatigue* was first introduced by Joinson in 1992 (Hunsaker, Chen, Maughan, & Heaston, 2015). Of course, this work can also at times be stressful. As miners often work underground in dusty environments, they are therefore at risk of developing lung diseases. Therefore, it is not an unreasonable hypothesis that psychiatric nurses would be at risk of burning out in their practice, given their constant exposure to emotional distress. In a paper that reflects on student nurses' mental health, Morrissette (2004) contends that being in stressful psychological environments can be psychologically damaging. Work on terms such as *burnout, staff engagement,* and *work engagement* is currently increasing. People are slowly realizing that if individuals are not supported in their work, that is, they are not given adequate resources, then they are more likely to suffer from burnout and disengagement, and this is not good for either the patient or the staff. A leading nurse academic, Jean Watson, spoke about the curative factors, identifying that there were key themes involved in the caring process (Watson & Woodward, 2010).

CONCEPT OF RECOVERY

The consumer/survivor movement in the English-speaking countries in the 1970s and 1980s laid the foundation for recovery through empowerment (National Empowerment Center [NEC], 2006). Instead of an emphasis on illness, there is a shift to the capacity of the person in distress to use his or her crises as growth opportunities. The terms *mental health* and *recovery* (a view that encompasses the whole person) are coming to the forefront. For example, in Ireland, new inpatient units are being renamed as mental health and recovery units instead of psychiatric units. Such a change initiates a gentler and more embracing sense of a unique personal recovery journey, thus transforming a pure biomedical model of care into one focusing on dialogue and a shift in patient–therapist power relations. In the United States, recovery, too, is a major focus. The Executive Summary of the President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health cited a need for transforming mental health service delivery with recovery as the goal of this transformation (President's New Freedom Commission, 2003). The Commission also emphasized that the transformation to a recovery-based system needs to be driven by persons with lived experience of recovery. In addition, the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA) in their National Consensus Statement described "mental health recovery as a journey of healing and transformation enabling a person with a mental health problem to live a meaningful life in a community of his or her choice while striving to achieve his or her potential" (NEC, 2006). Thus, the term *recovery* is now used more frequently.

RECOVERY is a process that includes a person's lifestyle, work, and aspirations. It is about the person's quality of life, not about the illness. SAMHSA has identified 10 fundamental components of recovery:

- *Self-direction*
- *Individualized and person centered (based on unique strengths and resiliencies, needs, preferences, experiences, and cultural background)*
- *Empowerment (authority to choose from a range of options and to participate in all decisions)*
- *Holistic (mind, body, spirit, and community; all aspects of life)*
- *Nonlinear (continual growth, occasional setbacks, and learning from experience)*
- *Strengths based*
- *Peer support*
- *Respect*
- *Responsibility*
- *Hope (NEC, 2006)*

Barker's (2001a) Tidal Model provides a meaningful way of empowering the nurse and the patient to work therapeutically toward recovery (Buchanan-Barker & Barker, 2006, 2008). Barker's Tidal Model is the first mental health recovery model developed conjointly by psychiatric-mental health nurses and people who have used mental health services. It is the first recovery-focused model of psychiatric-mental health nursing recognized internationally as a significant middle-range theory of nursing (i.e., a theory more concrete and less abstract in scope). This model has been used as the basis for interdisciplinary mental health nursing.

To establish a meaningful interpersonal relationship, the nurse needs role competence (skills for practice), role support (effective supervision), and a commitment to engage therapeutically (Lauder, Reynolds, Reilly, & Angus, 2000). In other words, claims suggesting it is someone else's job, there is not enough time, no one supports or coaches me, or no one values my efforts will inhibit the nurse from engaging or taking professional accountability for the quality of the therapeutic relationship that he or she has with a patient.

The therapeutic use of self can be burdensome. For some, the notion of the emotional burden of nursing suggests that the therapeutic use of self as a nursing intervention may be problematic (Smith, 1988, 1989; Smith & Gray, 2001a, 2001b; Smith & Lorentzon, 2005). The therapeutic use of self can be burdensome if the nurse does not receive adequate support and clinical supervision. For example, a psychiatric-mental health nurse may often experience an emotional burden from his or her sharing one's presence with a person rather than by retreating into task activity

or psychological distancing of the self; that is, not getting involved with the person's issues at times of personal painful distress (Finfgeld-Connett, 2006). Also, establishment and maintenance of an effective interpersonal relationship require skilled personal disclosure by the nurse where appropriate, in which the therapeutic use of self is akin to Smith's understanding of the emotional labor of mental health nursing (Smith, 1989; Smith & Gray, 2001a; Smith & Lorentzon, 2005). Mitchell and Smith (2003, p. 109) suggest that "the concept of emotional labor provides a means of describing and understanding the often invisible work employed, among others, by those in the caring professions. It involves using emotions and the appearance of emotions to provide security and confidence in others." Trying to meet the needs of patients in distress over a prolonged period can take its toll on the psychiatric-mental health nurse. In short, the emotional labor of psychiatric-mental health nursing requires resources of resilience, perseverance, compassion, and access to clinical support.

Clinical supervision provides an objective view crucial to therapeutic relationships. Without adequate support and clinical supervision, the nurse may experience role strain and uncertainty about what he or she is likely to encounter in the clinical setting and may feel overwhelmed. One way in which such role strain may be manifested is by physical and emotional distancing from the person through activities such as being too busy, engaging in tasks, or avoiding accompanying the person through the painful episodes of distress. Using the four stages of Peplau's interpersonal theory, Forchuk investigated the behavior of nurses and patients during the outcomes of each stage. The results showed that psychiatric-mental health nurses were competent and did assist patients therapeutically to traverse the four stages of the nurse–patient relationship as described by Peplau (1952; Forchuk, 1991a, 1991b, 1992, 1994; Forchuk & Brown, 1989; Forchuk et al., 1989).

Another study by Welch (2005) demonstrated that psychiatric-mental health nurses experienced "trust," "sharing of power," "mutuality," "self-revelation," "congruence," and "authenticity" as their true self at pivotal moments of a therapeutic relationship. The psychiatric-mental health nurses interviewed gained a sense of mastery of the essential art of interpersonal nursing (Welch, 2005). There is evidence that mental health service users can articulate what they seek and value from psychiatric-mental health nurses in the context of a therapeutic relationship.

Patients have expressed a desire for the nurse to be able to "relate to me," "know me as a person," and "get to the solution" (Shattell, Starr, & Thomas, 2007). To be effective, patients wanted a nurse to treat them compassionately with respect, sensitivity, caring, and support. They wanted to be listened to and provided with companionship and to have confidence in the nurse's skills to interact effectively with them. Specifically, it meant providing emotional support; having appropriate knowledge, training, and experience; and having a capacity to challenge verbal and nonverbal cues honestly and congruently (Shattell et al., 2007). To relate in a human-to-human manner, to know a person intimately, and to apply the therapeutic use of self require the psychiatric-mental health nurse to assess the professional boundaries between the patient and the nurse.

Despite shorter admissions, an individual's journey through a period of mental distress toward recovery can be lengthy. This requires that the nurse be skilled with focused compassion and a willingness to challenge and support a person through a period of mutually disconcerting exploration. These existential challenges affect one's ways of knowing how to relate to others and events and turn them into new ways of relating to self, others, and the world (Shattell et al., 2007).

SELF-AWARENESS is a necessary component of the therapeutic use of self. A self-awareness program for undergraduate nursing students was devised to assist in the development of therapeutic relationships with their patients (Kwaitek, McKenzie, & Loads, 2005). The course was developed, drawing on the work of Benner and Wrubel (1989), on the primacy of caring in professional nursing and on Dawn Freshwater's (1999) work on psychotherapeutic application of emotional intelligence of the psychiatric-mental health nurse described in the following. It used the exploration of clinical vignettes to focus on four key themes: "knowing self," "knowing others," "unknowing," and "presencing." Through exploration of these dimensions of the self, particularly related to what was unknown about self or others, participants gained insights into their personal **ATTITUDES** and conscious and unconscious ways of human relating. The development of capacity to reflect on the self and the personal impact on others form part of what is referred to as "emotional intelligence" (Freshwater & Stickley, 2004). This realization is key to understanding one's unconscious ways of responding to others that are complementary to, yet distinct from, intentional, interpersonal interactions. The notion of "doing for" a person and the conscious experience of "being with" a person at times of mental anguish or distress need to be cultivated in the nurse to facilitate a therapeutic healing process. Recognition of the nurse's own unconscious need for approval, respect, and love through the caring process constitutes a necessary, if at times painful, journey of self-discovery, without which the nurse will be unable to relate empathetically to others (Freshwater & Stickley, 2004).

This sense of unknowing is explored in the deliberate creation, valuing, and usage of inter- and intrapersonal space in the therapeutic relationship (Stickley & Freshwater, 2006). It is cultivated through experiential learning using art, creative therapies, role modeling, and clinical supervision as an alternative to propositional knowledge. Failure to acknowledge interpersonal space by being busy with

tasks creates the risk that the nurse may compound alienation, prejudice, and the replacement of meaningful dialogue. What is termed "phatic" conversation or social chit chat, though of benefit in the early stages of a professional relationship, may be overused at the expense of authentic, shared interaction (Bloor & Fonkert, 1982).

Dealing with a patient's distress could become unidimensional unless considered from the patient's perspective of a therapeutic nurse–patient relationship. Early attempts by psychoanalysts to delve into the chaotic existence of a patient tended to rely on the techniques and expertise of the therapist to shape the reframing of mental distress (Shattell et al., 2007). This gave way to the later human-to-human theories developed by psychiatric nurses such as Hildegard E. Peplau and Joyce Travelbee. Both advocated for greater power equity in the therapist–patient relationship. A warm, secure, trusting, and companionable relationship is the type sought by contemporary service recipients in a mental health setting (Shattell et al., 2007). Specific characteristics in the nurse valued by patients included a capacity to relate to the patient as a person rather than as a patient, the instillation of hope, and the building of authentic rapport. Although the art of effective listening, mutual understanding, touch, and self-disclosure were prized, these could be undermined if a nurse withheld the commitment to time, presence, and genuine effort to understand the person's needs and perspectives (Shattell et al., 2007). This then leads to the following question: What could be the indicators of an effective therapeutic relationship? A number of writers (Dziopa & Ahern, 2009; Stockmann, 2005) have identified the qualities or constituents of such a relationship. These are identified in **Table 3-1.**

It is one thing to identify the constituents of the therapeutic relationship, but altogether another to attempt to define the role of the psychiatric-mental health nurse and the needs and preferences of the patient for such an encounter. **Table 3-2** links the stages of Peplau's (1952, 1997) interpersonal process with contemporary views of patients and the interventions identified through clinical studies. It provides exemplars drawn from the wide body of research that has engaged with and explored the application of Peplau's theory in the everyday practice of the psychiatric-mental health nurse over the past 50 years since it was first formulated. In general, contemporary views of patients reveal that they want and feel the need to be in control of their own recovery. They feel positive when being listened to and when given a choice of treatments if appropriate.

Different skills need to be applied by the psychiatric-mental health nurse as he or she accompanies the patient through the therapeutic journey across the four stages of Peplau's interpersonal therapeutic relationship.

Positive Components of the Self

Therapeutic interaction is facilitated by certain components. The most important component the nurse brings to any interpersonal relationship is self. This is body and mind and unique life experience. Patients view the relationship as the cornerstone of inpatient care (Forchuk & Reynolds, 2001). Three factors are thought to contribute to the development of the professional relationship: (a) caring characteristics of the nurse, (b) how the relationships were conducted, and (c) implementation of the goals during the therapeutic meetings.

EMPATHY is often another core principle highlighted in relationship literature. Empathy is not simply active listening but more a recognition of the person hearing what the other is saying while being able to occupy a shared space. Empathy can be defined as putting yourself in the other

TABLE 3-1: CONSTITUENTS AND QUALITIES OF A THERAPEUTIC RELATIONSHIP

EXEMPLIFYING CONSTRUCTS[a]	DEMONSTRATED QUALITIES IN A NURSE[b]
Conveying understanding and empathy	Empathy
Accepting individuality	Openness
Providing support	Hope, forgiveness
Being there/available	Presence, unconditional positive regard
Being genuine	Congruence
Promoting equality	Empowerment, self-esteem building
Demonstrating respect	Respect, trust
Maintaining clear boundaries	Patient-centered goals and objectives setting, value clarification
Demonstrating self-awareness	Self-disclosure, self-awareness

[a]*From Dziopa and Ahern (2009).*
[b]*From Stockmann (2005).*

TABLE 3-2: A COMPARISON OF PEPLAU'S INTERPERSONAL PROCESS WITH CONTEMPORARY VIEWS

INTERPERSONAL PROCESS	CONTEMPORARY VIEWS	
Phases of the Interpersonal Process (Peplau 1952, 1991, 1997)	Client Preference (Coatsworth-Puspoky, Forchuk, & Ward-Griffin, 2006; Langley & Klopper, 2005; Moyle, 2003; Shattell, Starr, & Thomas, 2007)	Nursing Interventions (Dziopa & Ahern, 2009; Stockmann, 2005; Welch, 2005)
Orientation	"To relate to me";"being with the patient" and"the need for comfort";"trust";"a glimmer of hope"	Listening attentively with openness—trying to understand Conveying understanding and respect Authenticity—congruence, consistency Building self-esteem Relating nonjudgmentally Using touch appropriately Showing warmth—holding and caring Developing trust—instilling hope Acknowledging reality of client's experience Presence—being available, accessible Pacing development
Identification	"To know me as a person";"not focusing on the physical"	Seeing beyond the diagnosis Providing emotional care and support Containing focus on strengths, reality Timing, pace, consistency of input Promoting equality and mutuality Using self-disclosure Encouraging self-exploration Setting and maintaining boundaries
Exploitation	"A working relationship";"focus"; "exploring";"problem solving"	Exploring the person behind defensive strategies—rejection, splitting, transference, sabotage Sharing of power—defining responsibility, choices, decision-making responsibility Enlisting support—working alliance Empowering—allowing mistakes Setting person-centered goals
Resolution	"To help me get to a solution";"carrying on"; "constancy and commitment";"saying goodbye"	Validation of experience Questioning, speaking plainly, confronting, and challenging assumptions Giving information and self-revelation Monitoring progress, eliciting feedback Applying insights learned experientially Using creative solutions to augment verbal and nonverbal strategies Using clinical supervision to stay on track

person's shoes, or seeing the world through the other person's eyes.

When trying to access what a person is feeling, it is important not to complicate things. Rather, it should be kept simple. Six emotional expressions have been recognized at the core: feeling shock, anger, sadness, awe, elation, and disgust (Ekman, Friesen, & Ancoli, 1980). Other words—such as *confused, bothered,* and *agitated*—camouflage the core emotions. It is important to remember that feelings are never right or wrong. They exist and are the raw materials that nurses engage with when involved with patients therapeutically. No judgments should be afforded to them. A psychiatric-mental health nurse might find it impossible to have had the type of experience that gives rise to the emotional responses in the patient. As a result, the nurse may feel personally inadequate. However, listening attentively and empathetically can enable the person to recognize that, although out of the realm of the nurse's personal experience, the nurse is genuine in the attempt to engage and comprehend the person's emotional turmoil.

For a therapeutic relationship, the psychiatric-mental health nurse must develop empathy, the ability to put himself or herself in the patient's shoes or see the world through the patient's eyes.

All engagement with others, especially in the domain of feelings, carries a certain risk of misunderstanding. This is an element of being human and sometimes mistakes are made. However, these times afford opportunities for reflection and learning for the nurse and the patient. How did I misinterpret this person's intentions, body language, or expressed emotion? Many people encountered in clinical practice will experience uncertainty around a major transition in their life or health. There is a human temptation to try to fix or rescue a person in distress as part of therapeutic communication. However, giving reassurance before grappling with the underlying emotional pain or distress can lead to frustration in the person, who may feel misunderstood or patronized, both of which could serve as blocks to recovery of the healthy self.

THERAPEUTIC COMMUNICATION

COMMUNICATION refers to the transmission of information or a message from a sender to a receiver. The sender initiates the interaction and encodes the message, which is conveyed through channels. These channels can be auditory (spoken), visual (sights, observations, and perceptions), and kinesthetic (via touch). The receiver then translates and interprets the message and makes the appropriate response. The receiver demonstrates that the message has been received through feedback. This feedback returns to the sender, thus making communication a reciprocal process. Therapeutic communication refers to the interaction between a nurse and a patient that is focused on the patient, based on the patient's needs, and geared to promoting the patient's health and well-being and positive outcomes. The patient shares personal information about himself or herself and the nurse shares information about his or her role as a professional. Therapeutic communication is the basis for the nurse–patient relationship. It is different from social communication, which focuses on the individuals sharing information often similar in type and quantity to meet mutual needs and achieve mutual benefits.

Communication typically is in the form of verbal and nonverbal communication. Verbal communication, as the term implies, refers to information that is spoken. It also includes the written word. Nonverbal communication refers to information that is sent without words. **Box 3-1** highlights major elements of nonverbal communication.

BOX 3-1: ELEMENTS OF NONVERBAL COMMUNICATION

- Body language
- Facial expressions
- Gestures
- Posture
- Reflexes
- Body motions/gait
- Eye contact
- Sounds
- Voice tone, inflection, rate
- Groaning, laughing, crying, grunting
- Touch
- Space/proximity (comfort zone)
- Appearance
- Clothing
- Makeup, jewelry
- Grooming, hygiene

Communication involves a sender, message, receiver, and feedback. With therapeutic communication, the patient is the focus of the interaction.

The key to successful therapeutic communication is to ensure that the verbal message is congruent to the nonverbal message. In other words, body language, posture, and tone of voice must correspond to and match the words being spoken. Otherwise, conflicts in the message occur. For example, a nurse tells a patient that they have all morning to talk about the patient's problem, but as the nurse and patient begin to talk, the nurse continuously looks at the wall clock. The patient will most likely receive the message that the nurse is in a hurry and uninterested in spending time with him or her.

Therapeutic Communication Techniques

Numerous verbal communication techniques can be used with patients. These include silence, giving recognition, offering general leads, sequencing events in time, encouraging descriptions and/or comparisons, restating, reflecting, exploring, clarifying, validating, and voicing doubt, to name a few. If, for example, patients appear angry or are shouting or visibly upset, then offer time and support. Create a therapeutic environment and space for patients to express themselves and be heard. Perhaps, the most important communication technique is active listening.

Active Listening

ACTIVE LISTENING refers to a concentrated effort on the part of the nurse to pay close attention to what the patient is saying, both verbally and nonverbally. The nurse focuses on the words being spoken and the meaning of the message being sent. The nurse demonstrates acceptance of the patient, thereby resulting in the establishment of trust. Trust facilitates open, honest expression by the patient.

A number of indicators for active listening have been identified as key hallmarks of noncompetitive, purposeful, and active attending to another person with congruence between body language and spoken words in the nurse (Stickley & Freshwater, 2006). Furthermore, there must be a synergy between spoken and nonverbal cues, as illustrated in the following.

To enable active listening and attending to the patient, Egan (2003) developed a model for positioning oneself. This model is a valuable tool for framing the therapeutic part of ourselves (physical) in relation to others. The model is based on the acronym SOLER:

- *S = Sit squarely with the nurse facing the patient*
- *O = Open posture with legs and arms uncrossed*
- *L = Lean slightly forward to convey interest and involvement in the interaction*
- *E = Eye contact to demonstrate interest and willingness to listen*
- *R = Relax*

In addition to applying the model just described, psychiatric-mental health nurses use open-ended questions to allow the patient to guide the direction of the interaction. An example of an open-ended question would be: "*Good morning. After all that happened yesterday how are you feeling about your session today?*" This allows the patient to describe in greater detail more about himself or herself and ideally permits more of a cathartic nature to the rapport. This also makes a connection about how the person is relating the current emotional state to the recent experience. Open-ended questions are more effective than closed-ended questions, which typically require a yes or no response from the patient. An example of a closed-ended question would be: "*Did your session go well today?*" This allows the patient to affirm that it either went well or badly. It does not allow the patient to express what he or she is feeling and can interfere with further discussion, possibly even blocking additional interaction.

There are many verbal and nonverbal cues that a nurse must pay attention to because they can help or hinder the therapeutic relationship. Some helpful ones are listed in **Table 3-3.**

TABLE 3-3: VERBAL AND NONVERBAL CUES TO PROMOTE ACTIVE LISTENING

NONVERBAL CUES	VERBAL CUES
Eye contact	Using nonjudging language
Smiles	Not being quick to problem solve
Nodding	Inviting interaction
Close proximity	Using open-ended questions
Not rushing off	Valuing the other person
Appropriate use of touch	Being honest
A mirrored position	Congruence with nonverbal actions
Open gestures and body position	Calm, even tone of voice
	Eliciting feedback by being reflexive
	Allowing silence for review and reflection

Active listening is an important therapeutic communication technique that requires the nurse to focus closely on the patient's message and evaluate the congruency between the verbal and nonverbal messages.

Words, although important in communication, do not alone provide the message. Words mean different things to different people. Each person is unique and individual when it comes to thoughts and images. Consider the concept of time. Individuals spend time, give it, and keep it. For example, patients feel time is valuable and request time. Sometimes they verbalize; they do not get enough of one-to-one time. Protected one-to-one therapeutic time is highly important for a successful engagement and therapeutic relationship.

All these words are similar in their description of what one does with time. Through active listening, exploring, and checking one's understanding of the words and metaphors used in conversation, additional insight into the perception one has of the self becomes clearer. Posture, gait, and how individuals hold themselves can reflect congruence to how individuals feel. Thus, being attentive to the words and the meanings associated with the words are important.

Paying attention to one's own posture, tone of voice, type of questions, and responses can appear artificial and stilted to the nurse. Sometimes usual or routine communication becomes more difficult because the nurse is constantly thinking about which therapeutic techniques he or she should be using. Thus, psychiatric-mental health nurses can use self-reflection and seek out clinical supervision with other experienced registered nurses and faculty to explore actions, motives, and intention, thereby fostering

more effective therapeutic listening skills. Exploring such generally unnoticed aspects of the self may cause nurses to feel uncomfortable and uneasy. However, this exploration will help the nurse develop greater awareness of the self and, thus, more effective communication skills (Stickley & Freshwater, 2006). Acquiring the art of effective listening provides a key foundation to the nurse's therapeutic use of self to assist patients to work through their mental distress on the road to recovery.

One means for evaluating and analyzing a therapeutic interaction and for promoting self-reflection is through a **PROCESS RECORDING**. A process recording involves the written report of an interaction. The interaction between the patient and nurse is recorded verbatim to the extent possible and includes both verbal and nonverbal communication of both parties. The content of the interaction is analyzed for meaning and pattern of interaction. The process recording also helps one to identify positive and negative communication strategies used.

Silence

Silence is another important therapeutic communication technique. It is not the mere absence of words. Rather, it is a purposeful, deliberate tool used to allow the patient time to become comfortable, gather his or her own thoughts, and respond when he or she is ready. Silence promotes patient autonomy and control over the situation such that the patient can proceed at his or her own pace to share relevant information. The patient can explore and organize his or her thoughts, think something through, or identify issues that may be of greater concern. Silence also allows the psychiatric-mental health nurse time to interpret the patient's nonverbal messages and provide time for the nurse to think about his or her response. Maintaining silence in the therapeutic relationship may be difficult because of the nurse's own anxiety level or feeling that he or she is just sitting there and doing nothing for the patient. Psychiatric-mental health nurses need to be vigilant in monitoring their own anxiety levels during silence to prevent inappropriate interruptions. Sometimes, instead of verbally breaking silences, eye contact and a facial expression of acceptance and acknowledgment are as effective.

Self-Disclosure

Self-disclosure is an effective communication technique if it is used appropriately and for therapeutic purposes only. **SELF-DISCLOSURE** refers to the nurse revealing genuine feelings or personal information about himself or herself. A psychiatric-mental health nurse uses self-disclosure only if it will help:

- *Educate the patient about himself or herself to better deal with the issues at hand*
- *Build rapport, so that the patient feels free to share information more freely*
- *Encourage reality testing, thereby helping to support the patient's feelings in response to the current situation*

The belief surrounding self-disclosure is that the nurse's sharing of information or feelings will promote the patient to do the same. Additionally, it may help strengthen the trust and rapport of the relationship. However, when using self-disclosure, the psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to ensure that the information or feelings to be shared are appropriate and relevant. In addition, he or she must keep it brief and to the point, ensuring that the disclosure is focused on the patient's needs and for the patient's benefit. Once the disclosure occurs, the psychiatric-mental health nurse then deflects the communication to focus back to the patient. For example, a nurse may state that he or she knows the feeling being experienced by the patient. Then the nurse would ask the patient to say how he or she deals with it. The nurse would then go on to help the patient explore better ways of improving his or her coping mechanisms.

Self-disclosure can be an effective therapeutic communication technique if it is used to benefit the patient.

Moreover, certain communication techniques can create barriers to effective therapeutic communication. Clichés; false reassurance; advice; closed-ended questions; and stereotypical, judgmental, belittling, challenging, or defending comments or statements can be detrimental to the therapeutic interaction. **Table 3-4** highlights several of these negative techniques.

Communication in Highly Emotional Situations

Maintaining a distant, cool, yet professional therapeutic relationship; overconcentration on physical care; or being too busy completing tasks can erode the sense of interpersonal, mutual trust between the nurse and the client. Certain settings or patients also can challenge the psychiatric-mental health nurse to develop a close therapeutic interpersonal rapport. These include working with clients who find it hard to trust, those who may lack insight, or those who are out of touch with reality. The range of issues with which patients will present may vary enormously from anxiety to addiction to aggression and psychosis. Regardless of the issue, a sincere and respectful demeanor and attitude by the nurse are necessary to foster engagement by the patient in the relationship. For example, if a patient is experiencing severe depression

TABLE 3-4: SELECTED TECHNIQUES ACTING AS BARRIERS TO THERAPEUTIC COMMUNICATION

TECHNIQUE	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE(S)
Cliché/stereotypical comments	Discount the patient's feelings, making them feel trite or insignificant	"Everything will be okay." "You have nothing to worry about." "Hang in there. Tomorrow is another day."
False reassurance	Focuses on the positive outcomes even when the chances for such are not realistic	"Everybody feels depressed now and then. Don't worry about it."
Advice	Imposes nurse's view on patient, implying that the nurse is better than the patient	"I think you really should stop drinking." "Walking every day will definitely help you get your mind off of things."
Closed-ended questions	Requires a "yes" or "no" answer without any opportunity to provide additional information	"Are you feeling sad today?" "Do you understand everything I told you about your medications?"
Judgmental comments	Imposes the nurse's view on the patient	"You are acting like a child." "You should be sorry for the pain you caused your family."
Belittling	Discounts the patient's feelings; infers that the patient's concerns/issues are not as significant as the patient feels they are	"Perk up, at least you didn't die this time."
Challenging comments	Disputes the patient's beliefs through the use of logic or arguments	"If you are the king of the world, where's your crown?"
Defending comments	Discounts the patient's concerns or feelings, indicating the patient has no right to these concerns or feelings by arguing, justifying the nurse's position	"Everybody here is doing the best they can to help you."

or a psychotic episode and does not have the concentration span or willingness for meaningful engagement, the nurse should convey acceptance and empathy and indicate that he or she will support the person by being close until the patient feels able to open up in conversation. This approach of using empathy and acceptance has been highly developed in eCPR.

eCPR: IMPLEMENTING DIALOGICAL RECOVERY OF LIFE (By Daniel B. Fisher)

My first inspiration for developing training that would enable anyone to help another person through emotional distress was my lived experience. During my twenties, when I was in my most distressed states, I needed someone who would just be with me and not judge me. Someone who could reassure me that I would get through this horrendous experience because they had done so. There were a few such people. Often they were hospital personnel with the least formal training, more attuned to the essentials of life. For instance, there was Mr. Watson, a mental health worker whom I met during my first hospitalization. He simply sat with me and seemed to know how to be very present, without making any demands of me. Another example was a corpsman named John at the Bethesda Naval Hospital. When I was there in 1970, I felt it was an unsafe place to talk. However, John seemed to know in his heart that I needed nonverbal connection and he gained my trust by communicating through gestures, "asking" me what I needed each day. He led me back to trusting the human family again. The contact he made with me on a strictly nonverbal, emotional level brought me back to life.

During such extreme emotional states, the fundamental basis of my life was upset. Often I asked myself, "Why am I here? What is the meaning of my life?" I was gripped by a fear of not existing that was even deeper than a fear of physically dying. During such periods, it was as if my emotional heart was failing to beat normally and there were interruptions in the flow of my life. One moment of existence seemed to be disconnected from the next. For 30 years, I kept thinking about what I wanted during these periods of extreme emotional distress.

Another inspiration for developing such training came from the work several of us did in Louisiana after the hurricanes Katrina and Rita in 2005 and 2006. A peer who volunteered to help at that time said, "We felt compelled not only to act, but to get involved with the consumers in Louisiana" (Fisher, Romprey, Filson, & Miller, 2006). There

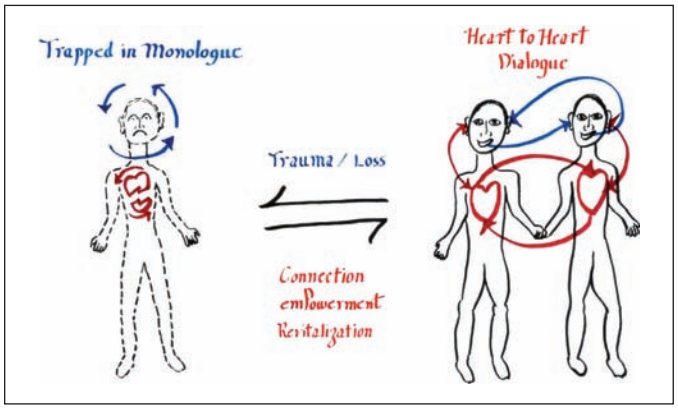
is a strong bond among consumers (which has been called by one peer the "solidarity of suffering") and there was a positive response across the country to the NEC's request to assist the consumers in Louisiana. In 2 weeks, NEC helped establish a national consumer disaster advisory group, which named itself Consumers Organizing for Recovery after Katrina (CORK). The training program we developed for peers in Louisiana was called "From Relief to Recovery," and was based on our lived experience as well as a number of existing programs, including psychological first aid, crisis counseling, and trauma-informed care. It was evident to us that during a time of disaster, diagnostic labels should be cast aside. It is far more important at those times to connect with another person's humanity without the barriers created by a theoretical framework.

My final reason for developing such training was a result of my learning about Mental Health First Aid (MHFA). MHFA is a program developed in Australia in 2001, designed to teach the public about mental conditions. In 2007, several members of the American peer community and I learned that MHFA was being brought to this country. At first, MHFA seemed to fulfill a need to (re) train people to help each other through a crisis. However, concern arose when it became apparent to us that MHFA was primarily designed to teach the public to identify the symptoms of mental disorders in others, and to refer them to professional help. In response, we decided to create an alternative that would enable anyone to help another person through an emotional crisis without reference to diagnostic labels. This approach fits with our movement's criticism of diagnosis.

Starting in 2008, a team of 20 people with lived experience (including myself) started developing training that could help support a person through such a time. We felt that during periods of distress, we experienced emotional heart failure and we needed the equivalent of CPR for our emotional heart. We call this approach Emotional CPR, or eCPR (Emotional CPR, 2015).

Although eCPR teaches anyone how to authentically connect with a person in distress and it can be very useful for mental health professionals to learn, it is a form of emotional heart-to-heart resuscitation. During times of "emotional heart failure," a person's emotional heart has lost flow and rhythm, often due to a lack of emotional connection with others. Just as our physical heart functions best when there is an even balance between periods of diastole (when the heart fills with blood) and systole (when the heart contracts), so too our emotional heart relies on a dialogical flow of internal and external embodied Voices. (By embodied Voice I refer to the totality of our expressions, encompassing both communications in words and communication beyond words.) During periods of trauma, that dialogical flow becomes interrupted and our embodied voices get stuck in one place. eCPR is designed to restore the dialogical flow of life to persons whose distress has trapped them in fear, anger, or sadness.

In fact, I think I experienced a death-like state during several of these travels into my depths. Just as philosopher and literary critic Mikhail Bakhtin (1984) observed "Life is dialogue, and dialogue is life," one can say, "Monologue is death, and death is monologue."



I think that my retreat into monologue was a reaction by my injured self. Luckily, my unacknowledged inner Self (Note: I capitalize S when I refer to a deeper Self and use lower case s when referring to a more superficial or fragmented self. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to further develop this idea) woke up and faced the inward charging bull of my injured self. My inner Self realized—just in time—that my life was in danger. My deeper Self saved my life by engaging my injured self in dialogue by saying, "You have to stop acting for others and find your true Self." My periods of not speaking were actually attempts to re-start my dance of dialogue by my deeper Self through shutting down the oppressive story constructed by my injured self that, "all life was determined by chemistry."

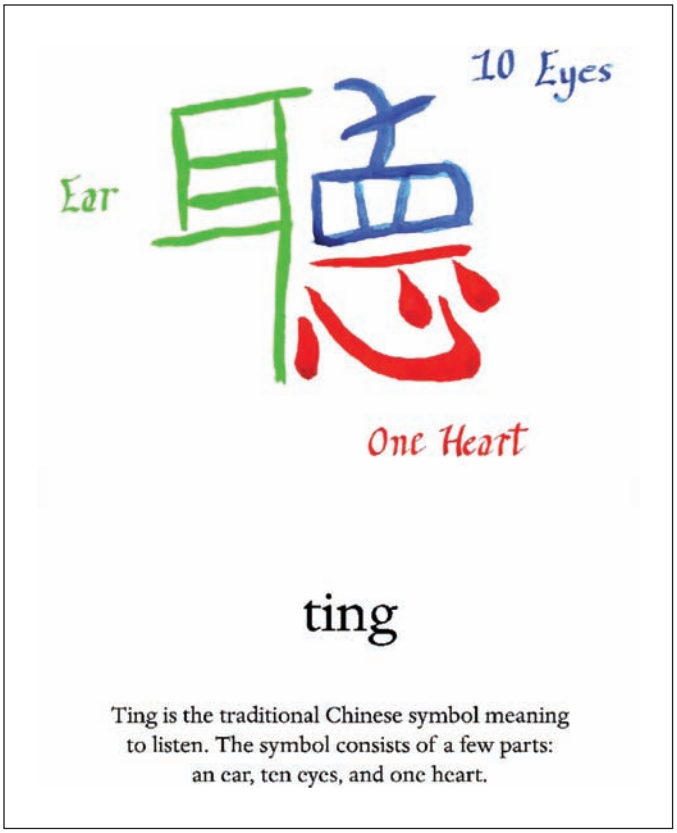
eCPR IS A TRAUMA-INFORMED APPROACH

The central experiences of trauma are *disconnection, a loss of control,* and *emotional numbing* (Mollica, 2009). Disconnection leaves people feeling that they are not part of the family of humanity. Connection restores the shared humanity that we all need in order to feel life is worth living. The loss of control during times of disaster creates fear and lack of safety. Often, emotional distress shuts down a person's will—a vital aspect of their flow of life—that emerges from one's deepest self. As one regains control with the assistance of another person, a sense of safety is restored. Connection and control help a person reexperience the vitality of feeling his or her emotional flow. Attending to this disconnection, loss of control, and emotional numbing is the basis of a trauma informed approach (TIA). Therefore,

eCPR is a trauma informed approach by establishing connection, empowerment, and revitalization.

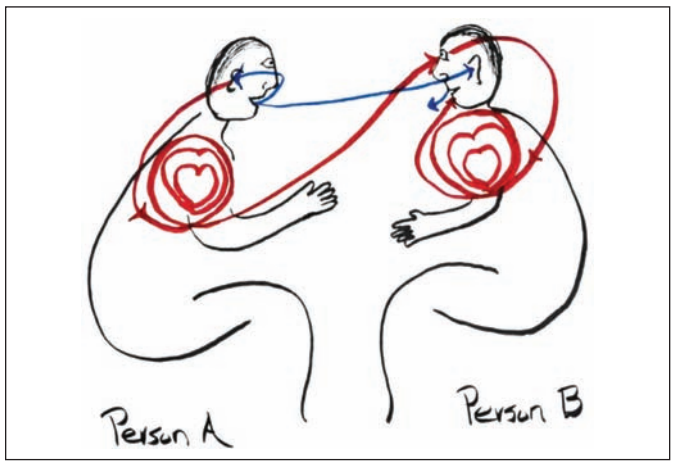
Connection

When assisting a person in distress, it is first necessary to find a way to connect with him or her at a deep emotional level. In noncrisis situations, we say, "Hello," and start a conversation. However, when someone is in severe distress, conventional greetings often fail. In fact, nonverbal communication can be vastly more important in communicating with a person in distress than verbal communication. It is essential, at the outset, to tune into a person's emotions. This requires listening to all expressions of a person's embodied voice. The Chinese character for listening—*ting*—emphasizes this deeper form of connecting. As indicated in the following, *ting* represents a combination of several components. In Chinese, to listen is to use your ears, your eyes, and your heart in undivided attention.



By connecting to someone's mind, body, and spirit through **RESONATING** with someone's emotions, the person offering assistance needs to pay close attention to *how* words are expressed: the person's tone, cadence, and so on, as well as to the words themselves. One can also connect with someone by watching (and occasionally emulating) his or her posture, facial expressions, sighs, and gestures. Such empathic observational skills are invaluable in establishing trust and in fostering healing. Italians, who are often more emotionally expressive than Northern Europeans, are said to have at least 250 different hand gestures, each with a specific meaning. This difference in emotional expression may explain why Italians with mental health conditions are less likely to hear voices than Irish people. Eye contact is also very important, though also very culturally specific. Although Americans value direct eye contact, some other cultures find it threatening.

The Norwegian psychiatrist, Tom Andersen, who helped uncover the importance of dialogue in healing, graphically emphasized in one of his drawings the importance of listening to a person's bodily expressions or embodied Voices. The following is my version of his drawing.



Connecting is not a static activity. It requires the active involvement of Person A, who is assisting Person B. There is the usual verbal level of communication (shown in blue in my drawing). It is more important, however, for Person A to perceive the nonverbal rhythms (shown in red) of Person B, harmonize with them, and amplify them. The cadence of this interpersonal communication can assist the person in distress to reexperience the flow of his or her existence. This requires the person who is offering aid to suspend his or her flow in order to resonate with the flow of the other. The supporter should be like a reed in the breeze, feeling the flow, however faint, of the other's emotions. It is also important for the supporter to express his or her emotions, as this gives the person in distress permission to express his or her emotions. This way, the emotional connection (shown in my earlier drawing) is established. One person has commented that when this connection is made, the two persons experience a single circulatory system. It is as if their hearts beat as one. This resonance of two hearts gives the person in distress the strength and power to express his or her embodied Voice. This leads to the next phase of eCPR, emPowering, when the person in distress experiences a sense of his or her power.

emPowerment

eCPR is a reciprocal process. An example of emotional reciprocity recently occurred during an eCPR class in Scotland. In a role-play (also called "real plays"), the person recalling distress grabbed a pillow and turned away from the supporter. She looked pale and said she could not go on. The person assisting threw her hands up in the air, also looked pale, and exclaimed that she had to stop trying to assist. While the assister did this, the person in distress could be observed watching her. I asked the assister to share how she was feeling at that moment. She said, "I am feeling helpless and inadequate. I am also worried that if I proceed, I will make her feel worse." As she was sharing her concerns, the person in distress started to turn back and face her. She cried, and expressed her feelings of inadequacy in helping others. Color returned to the faces of both persons as they shared, and they both expressed some relief. This example demonstrates the emotionally resonant nature of eCPR. It works best when both the person assisting and the person in distress experience the connecting, empowering, and revitalizing.

Revitalization

It is important to emphasize that the person doing the assisting cannot solve problems for the person in distress. Instead, he or she communicates assurance that he or she believes in the person's capacity to find his or her own solution. The assister needs to be very present. Being present enables the person in distress to express his or her emotions and to experience his or her vitality. Once the assister and the person in distress are in harmony, the person in need senses a return of energy and feels the return of the life force within him or her. For the two women described earlier, this flow appeared as the return of color to their faces, as well as the expression of their emotions. In French, the life force is referred to as *élan vital*; when manifested in a group, the flow of combined energy is referred to as *esprit de corps.*

In the past, Western science has tended to reject such notions, but those of us who have experienced our recovery know that such a flow of life is real and essential. We call this the revitalization or renewal of our spirit. Thus, the R of eCPR designates "Revitalization" or "Renewal." One peer refers to it as "communication beyond the physical realm." She believes that only people who have experienced extremes of emotional life that threatened their existence can truly understand this form of communication and sense it with their heart. It is, therefore, not surprising that persons with lived experience of recovery from extreme emotional states have developed eCPR.

> Many of the Certified Peer Support specialists in Michigan have been trained and are using eCPR in their daily lives, both professionally and personally. This has led to fewer hospitalizations, and more collaboration about the direction that a person wants to take with their own care. This training helps take what we have learned in Motivational Interviewing, Trauma Informed Care, and Suicide Prevention and puts it together in a format that makes sense and is effective. (Carolyn Pifer, eCPR Trainer)

Sam Ahrens, a trainer from Wisconsin, summarized eCPR as follows:

> We always do Emotional CPR in the present moment. The challenges of being present and open and genuine in the moment are always there. In my first experience of Emotional CPR, I connected with the idea that you let everything go and find your way to be totally open with someone, with an open tender heart, an awake body, and an open mind. You do not have an agenda or a list of questions. You are just there. When I do that I can connect with someone. From that connection, empowerment and revitalization emerge. It is a natural process. For me, eCPR is like unlearning rather than learning. You need to unlearn all the usual actions that cause us to get in our way; all the ways that we get between our self and another person.

FIVE INTENTIONS OF eCPR

The following is a summary of the five major lessons learned in the first 5 years of practicing eCPR:

Intention 1: I will use my ears, my eyes, and my heart to feel your presence in my being.

> Persons supporting are encouraged to use their ears to hear the unheard, their eyes to see the unseen and their heart to feel the unexpressed emotions. It is as important to be attentive to the nonverbal dimensions of communication as to the verbal dimension.

Intention 2: I will share my emotional response in being with you, and I will stay with you.

> Although typically therapists are taught to suppress their emotional response to a person they are assisting, this attitude of noninvolvement is generally experienced as impersonal and uncaring by persons in distress. The sharing encouraged here is in response to the emotional state of the person in distress, which they might not be aware of. As stated earlier, such self-disclosure should always be in the service of the needs of the person in distress. It is also important that the person assisting reassure the person in distress that he or she will not be frightened by the expression of emotions and will stay with him or her.

Intention 3: I will not fix you or judge you but will be with you.

Here, as cited previously, attempting to fix or judge the person in distress will create a barrier to recovery. The urge to fix usually emerges to cover the distress experienced by the person assisting. In fact, one consumer stated that she was tired of her doctor trying to fix her by increasing her medication when he was really trying to reduce his own anxiety over feeling her distress.

Intention 4: I am not sure what is best for you but together we will uncover your power.

This intention points out the importance of not assuming an expert posture relative to the person in distress. Remarkably, by the assisting person stating sincerely they do not know the best course of action for the person in distress, the power within the distressed person becomes apparent.

Intention 5: We are creating new life together in the present moment.

Genuine dialogue, at both the heart and mind levels, enables the appearance of new life, new perspectives, and a new narrative. This is when the monology of an old, rigid narrative can be replaced by a fluid, creative narrative.

SUMMARY POINTS

- To move forward and care for people in emotional crisis in the vast field of mental health we are proposing a shift in the paradigm. Instead of the traditional therapeutic posture of judging and fixing we are proposing the use of dialogue and self in facilitating recovery of life in the person with lived experience. This trend is becoming apparent in new transformational nursing leadership, with calls to lead from the heart (Turkel, 2014).
- Dialogical Recovery of Life is accomplished through therapeutic uses of self, dialogical practice, recovery principles, and trauma-informed approaches.
- An awareness of the sense of self is crucial to a human being's personal identity. As an individual grows and develops, he or she develops an awareness of the similarities and differences that are unique or shared with others, leading to the development of self.
- Carl Rogers is considered the founder of person-centered counseling and identified three core conditions that must be present in the therapeutic relationship: congruence, empathy, and unconditional positive regard.
- Therapeutic use of self involves the integration of theory, experience, and self-awareness to promote behavioral changes in patients as they explore their impact with others. Psychiatric-mental health nurses need to engage in self-awareness and self-reflection to develop therapeutic use of self.
- Three factors are thought to contribute to the development of the therapeutic relationship: caring characteristics of the nurse, how the relationships were conducted, and implementation of the goals during the process. Empathy is an essential principle associated with the therapeutic relationship.
- Therapeutic communication refers to the interaction between a nurse and a patient that is focused on the patient, the patient's needs, and promoting positive outcomes for the patient.
- The verbal message must be congruent to the nonverbal message to ensure successful therapeutic communication.
- Therapeutic communication techniques include active listening, silence, giving recognition, offering general leads, sequencing events in time, encouraging descriptions and/or comparisons, restating, clarifying, reflecting, exploring, validating, and voicing doubt.
- Self-disclosure is appropriate if it will help educate the patient, build rapport, or encourage reality testing. It must be focused on the patient's needs.
- Techniques that can impede therapeutic communication include cliché/stereotypical comments; false reassurance; advice; closed-ended questions; and judgmental, belittling, challenging, or defending statements.
- Emotional CPR involves Connecting, emPowering, and Revitalizing.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of nursing students in a psychiatric-mental health rotation are reviewing information about various theorists associated with self, therapeutic use of self, and the therapeutic relationship. The students demonstrate understanding of the material when they identify which theorist as having identified three core conditions for a therapeutic relationship?
   a. Hildegard Peplau
   b. Phil Barker
   c. Carl Rogers

2. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is engaged in a therapeutic dialogue with a patient. The patient states, "I've been feeling so down lately." Which of the following would the nurse identify as being congruent with the patient's statement?
   a. Wide facial grin
   b. Low tone of voice
   c. Fidgeting
   d. Erect posture

3. When engaging in therapeutic communication for the initial encounter with the patient, which of the following would be most appropriate for the nurse to use?
   a. Silence
   b. "What would you like to discuss?"
   c. "Are you having any problems with anxiety?"
   d. "Why do you think you came here today?"

4. A patient states, "I get so anxious sometimes. I just don't know what to do." The nurse responds by saying, "You should try to do some exercise when you start to feel this way. I know it helps me when I get anxious." The nurse is using which of the following?
   a. Clarifying
   b. False reassurance
   c. Validating
   d. Giving advice

5. In carrying Emotional CPR (questions 5–7), connecting is best carried out by:
   a. Communicating mainly on a verbal level
   b. Communicating with eyes, ears, and heart
   c. Being emotionally reserved
   d. Sharing one's emotional response

Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.

REFERENCES

Altschul, A. (1972). *Nurse–patient interaction: A study of interactive patterns on an acute psychiatric ward*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.

Bakhtin, M. (1984). *Problems of Dostoevsky's poetics*. Caryl Emerson (Ed. and Trans.). Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota.

Barker, P. (1998). The future of the theory of interpersonal relations? A personal reflection on Peplau's legacy. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 5*(3), 213–220.

Barker, P. (2001a). The Tidal Model: Developing a person-centered approach to psychiatric and mental health nursing. *Perspective Psychiatric Care, 37*(3), 79–87.

Barker, P. (2001b). The Tidal Model: Developing an empowering, person centred approach to recovery within psychiatric and mental health nursing. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 8,* 233–240.

Benner, P., & Wrubel, J. (1989). *The primacy of caring: Stress and coping in health and illness*. Menlo Park, CA: Addison-Wesley.

Bloor, M., & Fonkert, J. (1982). Reality construction, reality exploration and treatment in two therapeutic communities. *Social Health Illness, 4*(2), 126–140.

Buchanan-Barker, P., & Barker, P. (2006). The ten commitments: A value base for mental health recovery. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing Mental Health Service, 44*(9), 29–33.

Buchanan-Barker, P., & Barker, P. (2008). The tidal commitments: Extending the value base of mental health recovery. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 15*(2), 93–100.

Coatsworth-Puspoky, R., Forchuk, C., & Ward-Griffin, C. (2006). Nurse–client processes in mental health: Recipients' perspectives. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 13*(3), 347–355.

Dziopa, F., & Ahern, K. (2009). Three different ways mental health nurses develop quality therapeutic relationships. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 30*(1), 14–22.

Egan, G. (2003). *The skilled helper: A problem-management and opportunity-development approach to helping*. Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole.

Ekman, P., Friesen, W., & Ancoli, S. (1980). Facial signs of emotional experience. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 39*, 1125–1134.

Emotional CPR. (2015). Retrieved from www.emotional-cpr.org

Finfgeld-Connett, D. (2006). Meta-synthesis of presence in nursing. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 55*(6), 708–714.

Fisher, D. B. (2008). Promoting recovery. In T. Stickley & T. Basset (Eds.), *Learning about mental health practice.* Chichester, UK: Wiley.

Fisher, D. B. (2015). *Recovery through voice and dialogue*. Retrieved from http://www.madinamerica.com/author/dfisher/

Fisher, D. B., Romprey, D., Filson, B., & Miller, L. (2006). *From relief to recovery.* New York, NY: Gains Center.

Fontaine, K. L. (2009). *Mental health nursing* (6th ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall.

Forchuk, C. (1991a). A comparison of the works of Peplau and Orlando. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 5*(1), 38–45.

Forchuk, C. (1991b). Peplau's theory: Concepts and their relations. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 4*(2), 54–60.

Forchuk, C. (1992). The orientation phase of the nurse–client relationship: How long does it take? *Perspective of Psychiatric Care, 28*(4), 7–10.

Forchuk, C. (1994). The orientation phase of the nurse–client relationship: Testing Peplau's theory. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 20*(3), 532–537.

Forchuk, C., Beaton, S., Crawford, L., Ide, L., Voorberg, L., & Bethune, J. (1989). Incorporating Peplau's theory and case management. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing Mental Health Services, 27*(2), 35–38.

Forchuk, C., & Brown, B. (1989). Establishing a nurse–client relationship. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing Mental Health Services, 27*(2), 30–34.

Forchuk, C., & Reynolds, W. (2001). Clients' reflections on relationships with nurses: Comparisons from Canada and Scotland. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 8*(1), 45–51.

Freshwater, D. (1999). Polarity and unity in caring: The healing power of symptoms. *Complementary Therapies in Nursing Midwifery, 5*(5), 136–139.

Freshwater, D., & Stickley, T. (2004). The heart of the art: Emotional intelligence in nurse education. *Nursing Inquiry, 11*(2), 91–98.

Gallop, R., & O'Brien, L. (2003). Re-establishing psychodynamic theory as foundational knowledge for psychiatric/mental health nursing. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 24*(2), 213–227.

Hunsaker, S., Chen, H. C., Maughan, D., & Heaston, S. (2015). Factors that influence the development of compassion fatigue, burnout, and compassion satisfaction in emergency department nurses. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship, 47*(2), 186–194.

Kwaitek, E., McKenzie, K., & Loads, D. (2005). Self-awareness and reflection: Exploring the "therapeutic use of self." *Learning Disability Practice, 8*(3), 27–31.

Langley, G., & Klopper, H. (2005). Trust as a foundation for the therapeutic intervention for patients with borderline personality disorder. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 12*(1), 23–32.

Lauder, W., Reynolds, B., Reilly, A., & Angus, N. (2000). The development and testing of the Mental Health Problems Perception Questionnaire. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 7*, 221–226.

Lego, S. (1999). The one-to-one nurse–patient relationship. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 35*(4), 4–23.

Merriam-Webster. (2011a). [Internet]. Retrieved from http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/self

Merriam-Webster. (2011b). [Internet]. Retrieved from http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/therapeutic

Mitchell, D., & Smith, P. (2003). Learning from the past: Emotional labor and learning disability nursing. *Journal of Learning Disabilities, 7*(2), 109–117.

Mollica, R. F. (2009). *Healing invisible wounds: Paths to hope and recovery in a violent world*. Nashville, TN: Vanderbilt University Press.

Morrissette, P. J. (2004). Promoting psychiatric student nurse well-being. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 11*(5), 534–540.

Moyle, W. (2003). Nurse–patient relationship: A dichotomy of expectations. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 12*(2), 103–109.

National Empowerment Center, NEC. (2006). Retrieved from http://www.power2u.org/downloads/SAMHSA%20Recovery%20Statement.pdf

O'Brien, A. (2001). The therapeutic relationship: Historical development and contemporary significance. *Journal of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing, 8*(2), 129–137.

Peplau, H. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. P. Putnam & Sons.

Peplau, H. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual framework of reference for psychodynamic nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Peplau, H. (1997). Peplau's theory of interpersonal relations. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 10*(4), 162–167.

President's New Freedom Commission. (2003). *Final report to the president*. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content/SMA03-3831/SMA03-3831.pdf

Rogers, C. (1951). *Client-centered therapy*. London: Constable & Co.

Seikkula, J., Aaltonen, J., Alakare, B., Haarakangas, K., Nen, J. K., & Lehtinen, K. (2006). Five-year experience of first-episode non-affective psychosis in open-dialogue approach: Treatment principles, follow-up outcomes, and two case studies. *Psychotherapy Research, 16*, 214–228.

Shattell, M., Starr, S., & Thomas, S. (2007). "Take my hand, help me out"; Mental health service recipients' experience of the therapeutic relationship. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 16*, 274–284.

Smith, P. (1988). Recruit and retain. The emotional labour of nursing. *Nursing Times, 84*(44), 50–51.

Smith, P. (1989). Nurses' emotional labor. *Nursing Times, 85*(47), 49–51.

Smith, P., & Gray, B. (2001a). Emotional labour of nursing revisited: Caring and learning 2000. *Nurse Education in Practice, 1*(1), 42–49.

Smith, P., & Gray, B. (2001b). Reassessing the concept of emotional labour in student nurse education: Role of link lecturers and mentors in a time of change. *Nurse Education Today, 21*(3), 230–237.

Smith, P., & Lorentzon, M. (2005). Is emotional labour ethical? *Nursing Ethics, 12*(6), 638–642.

Stickley, T., & Freshwater, D. (2006). The art of listening in the therapeutic relationship. *Mental Health Practice, 9*(5), 13–18.

Stockmann, C. (2005). A literature review of the progress of the psychiatric nurse–patient relationship as described by Peplau. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 26*(9), 911–919.

Travelbee, J. (1971). The nature of nursing. In J. Travelbee (Ed.), *Interpersonal aspects of nursing*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Turkel, M. C. (2014). Leading from the heart: Caring, love, peace, and values guiding leadership. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 27*(2), 172–177.

Watson, J., & Woodward, T. K. (2010). Jean Watson's theory of human caring. In M. E. Parker, & M. C. Smith (Eds.), *Nursing theories and nursing practice* (pp. 351–369). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis Co.

Welch, M. (2005). Pivotal moments in the therapeutic relationship. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 14*(3), 161–165.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 4

BOUNDARY MANAGEMENT

Jeffrey S. Jones

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define boundaries
2. Identify tangible boundaries that can be established in an interpersonal relationship
3. Explain the intangible boundaries important in interpersonal relationships
4. Differentiate between a boundary crossing and a boundary violation
5. Identify risk factors for establishing unhealthy boundaries
6. Apply the concepts of boundary management when engaging in an interpersonal relationship

KEY TERMS

Boundaries
Boundary crossing
Boundary violation
Counter-transference
Transference

In the therapeutic relationship, a nurse must be careful not to be over- or under-involved. The nurse, as a professional, must gain the trust and respect of the patient by presenting himself or herself as genuine and empathic while maintaining therapeutic **BOUNDARIES**, which is the space between the nurse's power and the patient's vulnerability (National Council of State Boards of Nursing [NCSBN], 2014). All nurses, especially novice nurses and those new to psychiatric-mental health nursing, need to continually think about their practice in terms of boundaries and relationships as this area is important to the professional practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing. This chapter describes professional boundaries and discusses the importance of boundary management as an integral part of the interpersonal process between the nurse and the patient.

BOUNDARIES

The term *boundary* typically refers to the physical and psychological space that a person denotes as his or her own. An individual's boundaries provide a separation for that person from another's physical and psychological personal space. Thus, a person's boundaries are unique to that person and reflect his- or her own self.

Boundaries may be physical or psychological. Privacy, physical proximity, touching, and sexual behavior are examples of physical boundaries. Feelings, choices, interests, and spirituality are examples of psychological boundaries. Each person delineates the limits of his or her own physical and psychological boundaries that are important. What may be a boundary for one person may or may not be a boundary for another individual.

Boundaries also can be classified as rigid, flexible, or enmeshed. A person with rigid boundaries is unwilling to consider alternative views or ways of doing things. The person refuses to accept new ideas or experiences and often remains distant, possibly withdrawing from others. A person with flexible boundaries is able to relinquish his or her boundaries when necessary. The person is open to allowing others who are viewed as safe to enter his or her space. A person with enmeshed boundaries experiences a blending or overlapping with another person's boundaries. Thus, it is difficult to determine where that person's boundaries begin and end. Often the boundaries are blurred so that there is no clear delineation of boundaries for each person. Often, individuals with enmeshed boundaries cannot identify feelings or beliefs as his or her own or different from the other person.

Boundaries may be physical or psychological, and can be classified as rigid, flexible, or enmeshed.

Establishment of Professional Boundaries

The first step in understanding professional boundaries between nurses and patients is to remember that there is an imbalance of power in the nurse–patient relationship. Patients, by nature of their illness, are dependent on nurses for some aspects of their care. In psychiatric-mental health nursing, the patient also is vulnerable due to the mental illness. This vulnerability is highly evident for patients who are psychotic, have problems with communication, or who have been involuntarily committed. In contrast, nurses are in a position of power based on their knowledge, experience, and status.

The nurse–patient relationship must remain professional because of this imbalance of power. The patient expects that a nurse will respect his or her dignity. Throughout the interpersonal relationship, the nurse must abstain from obtaining personal gain at the patient's expense. The nurse also refrains from inappropriate involvement in the patient's personal relationships.

The American Nurses Association (ANA) Code of Ethics for Nurses (Section 2.4) describes the nurse–patient relationship, addressing boundaries in this relationship: *The work of nursing is inherently personal. Within their professional role, nurses recognize and maintain appropriate personal relationship boundaries* (ANA, 2015).

Failure to maintain professional boundaries can result in a disciplinable offense by a state board of nursing or regulating body. Most states have language regarding the need to maintain professional boundaries in the nurse–patient relationship. In the United States, the National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN) has taken a strong position about failing to maintain professional boundaries and issued the following to facilitate disciplinary action at the local level:

> Professional boundaries are the spaces between the nurse's power and the patient's vulnerability. The power of the nurse comes from the professional position and the access to sensitive personal information. The difference in personal information the nurse knows about the patient versus personal information the patient knows about the nurse creates an imbalance in the nurse–patient relationship. Nurses should make every effort to respect the power imbalance and ensure a patient-centered relationship. (NCSBN, 2014, p. 4)

Boundaries Within the Nurse–Patient Relationship

Applying Peplau's or Travelbee's theories about the nurse–patient relationship, boundaries are initially established during the orientation or original encounter phase and then maintained throughout the other phases. At any time during the relationship, new boundaries may be established

or current boundaries may need to be adapted depending on the situation. However, regardless of the phase of the relationship, professional objectivity is essential to maintain boundaries. Without it, trust, the foundation of the interpersonal relationship, is destroyed. When boundaries are considered and attended to in a way of enhancing interpersonal relations, the process promotes health for the patient and growth for the nurse (Peplau, 1991).

Boundaries are initially established during the orientation or original encounter phase.

Recall that during Peplau's first phase, orientation, and Travelbee's original encounter, the nurse and patient are new to each other. Opinions may be formed about each other in the first few moments of meeting. This is the ideal time to begin establishing healthy boundaries within the relationship. The patient needs to know who the nurse is, why he or she is there, what the nurse can offer the patient, and what the patient can expect in return. Mutually agreed on goals can be introduced and discussed; these goals will be reviewed throughout the interpersonal relationship.

During the second phase, identification, the nurse identifies what he or she can now bring to the relationship to help the patient achieve the therapeutic goals. This phase allows the nurse to examine further opportunity for boundaries within the relationship. Potential issues of transference and counter-transference, if not apparent during the orientation phase, may emerge. **TRANSFERENCE** is a psychodynamic term used to describe the patient's emotional response to the health care provider. In this case, the patient may feel and/or think that the nurse reminds him or her of a relative or a past romantic interest because there is some emotional or physical similarity to someone else in the patient's life. The feelings generated may be either positive or negative. Likewise, the nurse may find that he or she is responding to the patient's transference by developing **COUNTER-TRANSFERENCE**. Counter-transference occurs when the health care professional develops a positive or negative emotional response to the patient's transference. For example, a nurse is assigned to care for an elderly woman who has been admitted with depression. This client is very seclusive but seems to gravitate toward the nurse. She perks up when the nurse is around and when she does come out of her room she asks for the nurse at the desk. The nurse later discovers that the patient has a daughter about the same age as the nurse. It is possible that the patient is responding to the nurse based on feelings about her daughter. The nurse, on the other hand, notices that she is becoming irritated and uncomfortable when around this patient. The more she seeks out the nurse, the more the nurse avoids the patient. Not only does the patient's physical appearance remind the nurse of her recently deceased grandmother, the grandmother also suffered from bouts of depression toward the end of her life. The nurse may not have fully completed processing her grandmother's death. This patient's attraction to the nurse may be triggering personal feelings and thus interfering with the establishment of a therapeutic relationship. Being able to manage transference and counter-transference is very important in boundary management to maintain a professional interpersonal relationship and to deliver appropriate nursing care.

In the third phase, exploitation, the bulk of the work in the nurse–patient relationship is accomplished. Consider this example. A nurse is working with a young woman who has found herself chronically depressed and disillusioned about her ability to have long, sustained, healthy relationships with men. Within the interpersonal relationship, information was discovered that the young woman's father abused alcohol and was physically and psychologically abusive to the mother. The young woman has stated that she never wanted to marry or be with a man like her father, yet she has continued to develop relationships with men who are very similar to her father. The nurse senses that the patient wants to develop insight and understanding of her own behavior. Subsequently, using skillful conversation, the nurse guides the patient toward awareness in recognizing that the young woman is simply following paths of least resistance, and entering into relationships that feel most comfortable to her. During moments of insight from the work in this phase, the nurse and the patient may feel a strong connection to each other. If not managed appropriately, boundaries could be violated. The patient may feel grateful that the nurse has helped her solve a particularly troubling dilemma. The nurse, in turn, feels a sense of deep reward in having skillfully done so. As a result, the relationship is vulnerable and at risk for becoming personal rather than remaining professional. During this time, the nurse must manage transference and counter-transference with the ever-present reminder that the power of the nurse comes from the professional position with access to private knowledge about the patient. The maintenance of boundaries allows the nurse to control this powerful differential and allows a safe interpersonal relationship to develop to meet the patient's needs.

During resolution, the last phase, the nurse and patient review the work done and the goals accomplished. If no further goals are set and the identified needs have been met, then the relationship is terminated. Boundaries are maintained based on the understanding that the professional relationship will end. Resolution can be problematic for nurses who have obtained personal gain from a successful experience in the exploitation phase. They desire to continue and to prolong that feeling, and thus delay terminating the

relationship even though the goals have been met and the therapeutic work is complete. Careful attention to whose needs are truly being met will help the nurse make the best decision during this phase of the relationship.

Maintaining boundaries during the last phase is best addressed by focusing on conversations that summarize what was accomplished in the relationship and the reinforcement of goals. In addition, other aspects of terminating the relationship can be difficult, particularly if the patient is so thankful that he or she wants to give gifts, exchange personal phone numbers, or initiate other strategies to prolong the ending of the relationship. The idea is for the nurse to manage the relationship and maintain boundaries in a manner that keeps the relationship within the area of the therapeutic relationship (**Figure 4-1**) until resolution (NCSBN, 2014).

Managing transference and countertransference are essential to boundary management.

BOUNDARY ISSUES

Issues related to boundaries of therapeutic relationships may occur at any time in the course of treatment. However, they are best dealt with at the outset of the therapeutic encounters. It may be helpful to think of boundaries as rules or expected behaviors that regulate healthy conduct in meetings between patients and nurses. Establishing boundaries takes on added significance in mental health work because symptoms experienced with some patients put them at risk. It is the responsibility of the nurse to set clear boundaries, both tangible and intangible, for the therapeutic relationship. **Box 4-1** lists some examples of tangible and intangible boundaries.

In the therapeutic relationship, tangible boundaries typically are established and negotiated at the beginning of the relationship. Intangible boundaries also must be addressed because these are as important in the nurse–patient relationship as tangible boundaries are. For example, sexually explicit or vulgar language violates boundaries and should never be used. In addition, the nurse and patient need to mutually negotiate and agree on whether to use first or full names. This decision typically reflects the customs where the treatment takes place. Self-disclosure, a very powerful tool, must be done appropriately and only when its purpose is to model, educate, foster a therapeutic alliance, or validate a patient's reality. Self-disclosure is never to be used to meet the nurse's needs. Misuse or overuse of self-disclosure could lead to overinvolvement and a weakening of the professional relationship.

The nurse dresses appropriately, addresses patients by their proper names, and uses self-disclosure appropriately to maintain intangible boundaries.

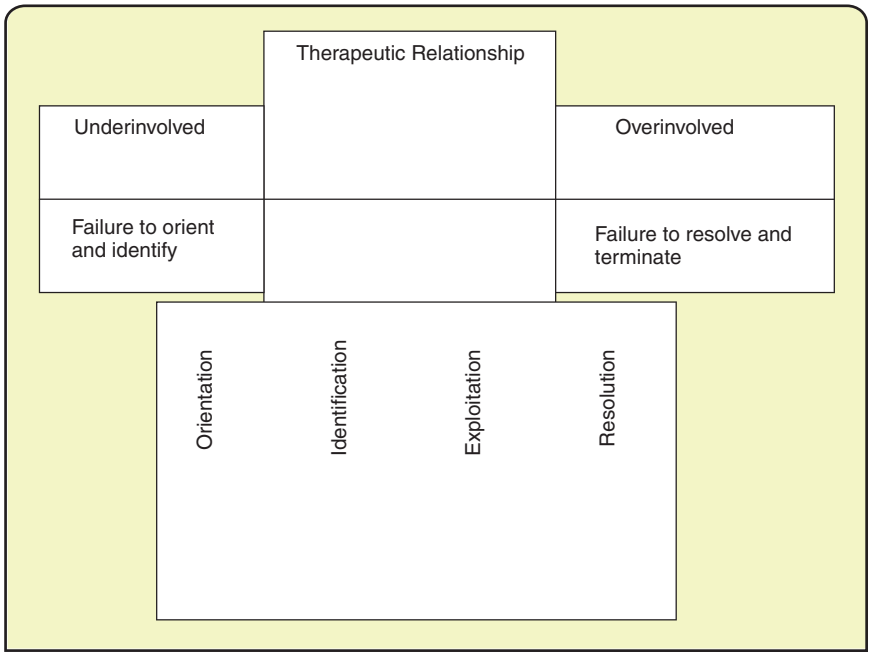


Figure 4-1 *Therapeutic relationship area as seen alongside Peplau's phases of the nurse–patient relationship.*

Adapted from NCSBN (2014). A Nurse's Guide to Professional Boundaries—A Continuum of Professional Behavior.

BOX 4-1: BOUNDARIES: EXAMPLES OF TANGIBLE AND INTANGIBLE

TANGIBLE BOUNDARIES:

- Time, place, frequency, and duration of meetings
- Guidelines that prohibit the exchange of gifts
- Guidelines regarding physical contact between the patient and the nurse
- Understanding that sexual contact is never permitted

INTANGIBLE BOUNDARIES:

- Setting kind yet firm limits with patients if boundary violations are attempted by the client
- Dressing professionally (suggestive, flamboyant, or seductive clothing may send mixed messages and is unacceptable)
- Using language that conveys caring and respect
- Using self-disclosure very discriminately

Boundary Testing

Sometimes boundaries in the relationship will be tested by a patient. Some examples of boundary-testing behaviors include: (a) attempting to initiate a social relationship; (b) attempting role reversal where the patient offers care to the nurse; (c) soliciting personal information about the nurse; and (d) violating the personal space of the nurse. The nurse is responsible for maintaining the structure of the therapeutic relationship by reinforcing the boundaries.

Not all therapeutic relationships run smoothly. Patients are dynamic human beings that experience a wide range of emotions and feelings such as fear, sadness, or frustration. Being the recipient of health care can leave one feeling helpless and vulnerable. Additionally, the stressors of dealing with an illness, physical or emotional, can lead to challenges in the therapeutic relationship. **Therapeutic Interaction 4-1** provides an example of how to maintain boundaries when a patient tests them.

One of the biggest challenges to boundaries occurs when patients attempt to convert therapeutic relationships into social ones, thereby testing the boundaries of therapeutic encounters. At times in the therapeutic relationship, social exchanges are appropriate, for example, during recreation times. In these instances, the nurse may use the interaction to acquire information about the patient's behaviors, his or her perception of self, and his or her ability to sustain a social relationship. An activity, such as playing pool, can be a therapeutic strategy to develop trust and rapport, thereby assisting in the progression through the identification phase of the relationship.

Testing behavior will challenge the nurse to remain focused and goal oriented. Careful self-assessment in such situations will enable the nurse to use what the patient is saying and doing to intervene therapeutically. When the relationship proceeds therapeutically and is successful, the patient and nurse will arrive at outcomes such as independence, spontaneity, mutual trust, self-awareness, honesty, responsibility, and acceptance of reality that allows both to achieve resolution. Adhering to the guidelines for professional boundaries will aid in maintaining and stabilizing the boundaries of the therapeutic interpersonal relationship.

Patients commonly test boundaries by attempting to change a therapeutic relationship into a social one.

Boundary Crossing Versus Boundary Violation

Professional nurses need to differentiate a boundary crossing from a boundary violation. This difference can be conceptually confusing to both student nurses and practicing nurses. Both may be engaging in boundary crossings that do not necessarily lead to boundary violations (Jones, Fitzpatrick, & Drake, 2008). At times, the distinction between the two may not be very clear (**Evidence-Based Practice 4-1**).

Boundary Crossing

A **BOUNDARY CROSSING** refers to a transient, brief excursion across a professional boundary. The action may be inadvertent, unconscious, or even purposeful (if done to meet a specific therapeutic need; NCSBN, 2014). Boundary crossings can result in a return to established boundaries. However, repeated boundary crossings should be avoided. Additionally, if they occur with increased frequency or severity, the

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 4-1: TESTING BOUNDARIES

Mr. K. has been admitted with severe depression. You have been assigned as his primary nurse. During your visits with him, he reveals that his wife recently left him and he is very scared about moving on in life without her. He is very uncomfortable being alone. During your visits, he tries to sit as close to you as possible and has asked you to sit by him on the bed. He offers you a hug after your visits. The interaction that follows illustrates a therapeutic response to maintain boundaries.

Nurse: (standing in the doorway smiling) "Hello, Mr. K. I have some time to talk now. Is this a good time for you?"	Introduces self and establishes purpose
Mr. K.: "Yes, I've been looking forward to this. Here, sit down by me." (Mr. K. pats the bed.)	Attempts to interact with nurse on a personal level and tests boundaries
Nurse: "Thank you, Mr. K., but it's more appropriate if I sit in the chair rather than beside you on the bed."	Sets the limits of the boundaries: Positions a chair to be facing him about 5 ft away; sits comfortably with hands folded on lap Maintains eye contact and smiles
Mr. K.: "Why? Don't you care for me?" (looking puzzled)	Doesn't understand the response
Nurse: "Yes, as a patient, not as a personal friend."	Provides clarification (serious but relaxed expression; conversation ensues for about 20 minutes….)
Mr. K.: "Thanks for the talk; I always find them helpful." (stands to walk toward nurse)	Showing appreciation for interaction
Nurse: "Glad to hear you are feeling better. I will plan to talk with you tomorrow." (stands to move chair back)	Validates client's emotion
Mr. K.: "Can I have a hug?" (smiles and stretches arms out)	Testing boundaries
Nurse: "No, but a handshake is fine." (smiles and shakes his hand before leaving the room)	Reestablishing boundaries

The nurse maintains both appropriate physical and emotional boundaries in this scenario. Mr. K. has clearly begun to view the nurse in a more personal capacity. The nurse, sensing this, uses the therapeutic conversation, body posture, and physical space to reinforce the boundaries of the professional relationship. If the nurse had sat on the bed, received a hug, or allowed herself to be pulled into conversation of a personal nature, Mr. K.'s view of the relationship would have been reinforced. If the nurse had left the room when Mr. K. invited her to sit by him on the bed rather than continuing the conversation, the nurse would have sent a confusing message to the patient and would not have been able to clarify the role.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 4-1: BOUNDARY CROSSING OR BOUNDARY VIOLATION?

STUDY

Baca, M. (2011). Professional boundaries and dual relationships in clinical practice. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners, 7*(3), 195–200.

SUMMARY

Baca (2011) reinforced that professional boundaries are the defining lines that help protect the patient and the nurse, yet they continue to be a topic of misunderstanding and undereducation in programs of nursing education. Self-disclosure is particularly problematic and erodes the relationship if not used cautiously. The author also questioned if, because nursing is a predominantly female profession, that tends to lead to boundary challenging situations such as dual relationships. A dual relationship exists when the nurse is both a health care provider and a friend, a business associate, a family member, or a coworker to a patient. This area is particularly problematic for nursing as it blurs the lines of professional nursing and may invite malpractice situations.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

A firm understanding of the terms *boundary crossing* and *boundary violation* are essential to psychiatric-mental health nursing practice because of the nature of the nurse–patient relationship. At times, the line between a boundary crossing and a boundary violation may not be clear-cut, leaving the psychiatric-mental health nurse to second-guess himself or herself after the event has occurred. However, armed with the knowledge of the differences and the ability to integrate this knowledge within the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse can ensure that the needs of the patient and not the nurse are being met.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *Are there certain situations where it would be appropriate, maybe even helpful, to cross a boundary in a nurse–patient relationship?*
2. *If you are about to do something and have trouble determining if it is a boundary crossing or a boundary violation, what should you do?*
3. *What should you do if you feel you have violated a boundary in the nurse–patient relationship?*

boundary crossing can become a boundary violation. In every instance, the nurse needs to evaluate the boundary crossing for potential patient consequences and implications.

An example of a boundary crossing would be a patient who shares with a nurse that the patient's mother has passed away, and begins sobbing profusely. In the nurse's effort to comfort and console the patient, the nurse embraces the patient and offers a hug. Typically, physical contact, beyond a handshake, between a nurse and a psychiatric-mental health patient is not a routine part of the relationship. Thus, this action could be considered a boundary crossing. In this situation, physical contact between two people carries with it different messages. Therefore, the nurse needs to thoroughly examine the underlying message that the action may convey before attempting it. For example, the patient may misinterpret the embrace. Also, the nurse needs to question himself or

herself as to whose needs are being met by the action. Overall, the nurse must conclude that the benefits outweigh the risks.

Boundary crossings between nurses and patients can be reversible and in some instances therapeutic.

Boundary Violation

A **BOUNDARY VIOLATION** results when there is confusion between the needs of the nurse and those of the patient (NCSBN, 2014). Boundary violations allow the nurse to meet his or her own needs rather than the patient's needs. Thus, the foundation of the nurse–patient relationship, to meet the patient's needs, is violated.

Commonly, such violations involve issues such as excessive personal disclosure by the nurse to the patient, keeping secrets with the patient, or possibly role reversal between the nurse and the patient. Boundary violations can cause distress for the patient, for example, ambivalence, mistrust, increased guilt, or increased shame. However, the patient may not recognize or feel the distress until harmful consequences occur.

Boundary violations are never helpful and can lead to harm for the patient and possible criminal charges for the nurse. Detachment from a patient to the point of neglect is also a boundary violation.

An extreme form of boundary violation is sexual misconduct. Professional sexual misconduct includes any behavior that is considered seductive, demeaning, harassing, or reasonably interpreted as sexual by the patient. Professional sexual misconduct is an extremely serious violation of the nurse's professional responsibility to the patient and breaches trust (NCSBN, 2014). Some state boards of nursing or nursing regulating bodies also may consider this a criminal offense with further action by the state prosecutor's office. Even if a patient consents and/or initiates the sexual conduct, a sexual relationship would still be considered sexual misconduct for the nurse because such an action places the nurse's needs first (NCSBN, 2014). Other evidences of potential boundary violations are presented in **Box 4-2**. Detachment to the point of neglect also has been suggested as a boundary violation (Peternelj-Taylor, 2002).

RISK FACTORS FOR UNHEALTHY NURSE–PATIENT BOUNDARIES

Nurses often find themselves working in a fast-paced environment with little time for reflective analysis of relationship dynamics. This can lead to impulsive and spontaneous responses to patients rather than thoughtful and planned interactions. There is no shortcut to healthy boundary management. Even seasoned psychiatric nurses report that the intellectual energy required to manage boundaries during the course of a shift can be emotionally exhausting (Welch, 2005). Nurses need to be alert for some early warning signs that may indicate the need to step away and take some additional time to process

BOX 4-2: POTENTIAL BOUNDARY VIOLATIONS

IN ADDITION TO SEXUAL MISCONDUCT, OTHER SITUATIONS THAT MAY BE POTENTIAL BOUNDARY VIOLATIONS INCLUDE:

- Lack of objectivity in the delivery of care
- Personal emotional attachment
- Excessive self-disclosure by the nurse
- Secret keeping with the patient
- Nurse viewing himself or herself as the only one who understands the patient and meets the patient's needs
- Inappropriate amounts of time spent with a single patient (such as visiting the patient when off-duty, switching assignments to be with the patient)
- Failure to explain actions and aspects of care, selective reporting, or "double messages"
- Flirtatious communication with the patient
- Overprotectiveness of the patient (siding with patient at all times)
- Failure to recognize feelings related to sexual attraction to the patient
- Neglect (underinvolved)

information about the nurse–patient relationship. These signs may include:

- *Feeling frustrated with the job: Drifting away from a relationship-based mode of practice often leaves the nurse, regardless of setting, feeling frustrated and unfulfilled in the role. The nurse then seeks to recapture the feelings he or she had that were sources of inspiration early in his or her education and professional practice. The nurse should examine his or her own needs and not attempt to meet those needs through the nurse–patient relationship. Relationships with patients based on transference are never healthy groundwork for relationship building.*
- *Not connecting with peers: Having difficulty developing a sense of collegiality within a peer group can lead to feelings of isolation. The nurse needs to explore the reasons for the difficulty in connecting. Unfortunately, some nurses choose to seek solace in patient care and thus operate in a vacuum, emotionally disconnected from their colleagues. The boundary work with patients benefits from careful personal reflection as well as thoughtful peer feedback.*

Warning signs of boundary problems include:

- *Not monitoring transference and counter-transference*
- *Over/inappropriate use of self-disclosure*
- *Feeling as though the relationship with a patient is "special"*
- *Getting personal needs met (e.g., admiration, physical compliments) through a relationship with patients*
- *Becoming distant and secretive from peers*

- *Finding one's self focusing on one patient disproportionately: Looking forward to going into work just to see a particular patient, becoming embroiled in a patient's personal issues, overuse of self-disclosure, and thinking that the relationship is somehow special are all important warning signs of boundary problems, which require attention and management.*

STRATEGIES FOR MAINTAINING BOUNDARIES

Boundary management in the psychiatric-mental health interpersonal relationship is crucial to the effectiveness of the relationship. As in any interpersonal relationship, nurses need to adhere to the standards of practice and ethical code for conduct. In addition, nurses need to be aware of potential areas in which boundaries may be crossed or violated. Regardless of the situation, the patient's needs and safety are paramount. Nurses also need to develop a keen sense of self-awareness, being cognizant of their own personal feelings and behavior. Ultimately, psychiatric-mental health nurses must act in the patient's best interests.

When dealing with patients, be sure to establish clear boundaries early on in the relationship. If warning signs do appear, address them with the patient as soon as they occur, making sure to stress the importance of maintaining the boundaries to achieve the mutually agreed on goals. If self-disclosure is used, be sure that the information shared directly relates to the patient's goals. Clarify roles and boundaries as often as necessary because patients may not always interpret words and actions in the same manner as what the nurse was attempting to communicate.

Additional help can be obtained from peers and clinical supervisors. Peer support and review of practice are helpful in identifying potential issues related to boundaries. Feedback from peers as well as clinical supervisors or mentors about situations can help the nurse process his or her feelings and actions about the patient. This interaction also can help promote growth collegially with peers in the same arena. Any potential issues regarding boundaries with patients should be addressed with the nurse's immediate supervisor, for example, the nurse manager.

Throughout the interpersonal relationship, nurses need to continually ask themselves the following question: "Whose needs are being met by this action, the nurse's or the patient's?" In addition, it is helpful to quickly evaluate any issues that possibly may be related to transference or counter-transference. Identification of these issues allows the nurse to take corrective measures to ensure that professional boundaries are maintained.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses

In addition to the aforementioned strategies, it is important to remember that you will also be held to the patient-centered care practice knowledge and skills in accordance with quality and safety education for nurses (QSEN) initiatives (**Box 4-3**).

How Would You Respond? 4-1 highlights a case study involving boundary management.

BOX 4-3: QSEN APPLICATION

Explore ethical and legal implications of patient-centered care
Describe the limits and boundaries of therapeutic patient-centered care
Recognize the boundaries of therapeutic relationships
Facilitate informed patient consent for care

Cronenwett et al. (2007).

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 4-1: BOUNDARY MANAGEMENT

Abby Rhodes is a registered nurse working at a community mental health center. She obtained her bachelor of science degree in nursing from a local university a year ago and is planning to sit for her certification as a psychiatric-mental health nurse generalist as soon as she accrues enough hours in the specialty area. Her role as a community mental health psychiatric nurse is a combination of case management, brief supportive counseling interventions, psychoeducation, and medication monitoring for the patients on her caseload. She has found that the favorite part of her job is the time she spends talking with patients. Most of the patients also see a therapist for therapy and a psychiatrist or psychiatric advanced practice nurse for medication management. Some of her patients share the content of their therapy sessions with her. One patient in particular has discussed some cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) strategies that his therapist wants him to start trying to help relieve his anxiety. This patient complains to Abby that these strategies "aren't working," and asks "Can't the doctor just up my Xanax?" Abby assesses the patient's level of distress and determines that he is anxious, fidgety, and tense. She tells the patient that "CBT is too slow of a process for someone with your level of anxiety." She decides to approach the patient's doctor to try to get the Xanax increased. The doctor is initially hesitant as the overall treatment plan was to use Xanax for short-term stabilization only and then begin a titration off of the medication. Abby finds herself wanting to advocate for the patient's distress and keeps assuring the doctor that she will monitor the patient's use closely but really thinks he needs it for now. The doctor agrees to increase the Xanax and Abby returns to her office to inform the patient of the news. The patient seems relieved and Abby is happy that she has made the patient feel better. The following day the therapist learns of the situation and comes to talk with Abby about the matter. He is frustrated that he was not involved in the decision-making process for this patient and feels that some important therapy was "undone" with the patient getting more Xanax rather than learning to manage his anxiety with other techniques. The therapist then also discusses the case with the psychiatrist who in turn comes back to Abby and says "I don't know why I let you talk me into that. I should have followed my instincts." Abby now feels upset and confused. After all, all she wanted to do was help her patient feel better. The nursing department at the agency where Abby works offers monthly peer group supervision with a psychiatric clinical nurse specialist.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *How did Abby fail to manage the boundaries?*
2. *Whose needs were being met?*
3. *How could Abby have maintained the boundaries?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 4-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Several elements of this scenario speak to poor boundary management. First, and most importantly, is Abby's rescuing behavior. Rather than finding out which CBT techniques the patient was instructed to use and which ones were or were not working, she immediately follows through on his request for medication changes. Was she responding to her own anxiety? Peplau has noted that most clinicians are uncomfortable with anxiety and are unable to tolerate it. Therefore, they try to restore comfort to both the patient and themselves (Field, 1979). It would have been more productive for Abby to have explored the anxiety with her patient and used the time to talk about it rather than trying to get the medication changed. Peplau suggested that the nurse should first check his or her own anxiety so that the patient does not empathize with it (O'Toole & Welt, 1989). Abby also could have discussed the situation with the therapist first before deciding on the medication change strategy. Her persistence in advocating for this patient, even when the doctor initially resisted, was also an important clue to possible boundary problems. She seems to have confused her nursing role as a patient advocate by considering herself as the only one who could save this patient in the present situation. She not only exhibited rescuing behavior but also took part in splitting the staff by not supporting the therapist or the doctor. In addition, as a baccalaureate degree in nursing (BSN)-prepared nurse, her knowledge of CBT is limited. As psychotherapy is the domain of advanced practice, she should have deferred commentary about this therapy with the patient. Finally, Abby should avail herself to the monthly peer group supervision with a psychiatric clinical nurse specialist where she can process what happened and understand how things went wrong.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Boundary management is an integral part of the interpersonal process between the nurse and the patient. There is an imbalance of power in the nurse–patient relationship. Patients are vulnerable and dependent on nurses for their care; nurses are in a position of power based on their knowledge and status.
- The nurse establishes professional boundaries at the beginning of the nurse–patient relationship. Transference and counter-transference can occur during any phase of the relationship but may emerge during the identification phase and can interfere with boundary management.
- Tangible boundaries include: time, place, frequency, and duration of meetings; guidelines that prohibit the exchange of gifts; guidelines regarding physical contact between the patient and the nurse; and understanding that sexual contact is never permitted. Intangible boundaries include: setting kind yet firm limits; dressing professionally; using caring, respectful language; and using self-disclosure very discriminately.
- Patients test boundaries at any time during the interpersonal relationship. One common example is when patients attempt to convert a therapeutic relationship into a social one. Nurses need to remain focused and goal oriented.
- Boundary crossing refers to a brief impingement across a professional boundary. A boundary violation allows a nurse to meet personal needs rather than the patient's needs. Examples of boundary violations include: excessive personal disclosure by the nurse; keeping secrets with patients; role reversals; and sexual misconduct, an extreme form of boundary violation.
- Nurses need to be aware of possible risk factors contributing to unhealthy nurse–patient boundaries such as frustration with the job, isolation from peers, and disproportionate focus on one patient.
- Peer support and clinical supervision are helpful in identifying potential boundary issues and can provide feedback to help nurses process feelings about specific patient situations.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. When describing physical boundaries to a group of nursing students, which of the following would the instructor use as an example of this type of boundary?
   a. Feelings
   b. Choices
   c. Touching
   d. Spirituality

2. During an interpersonal relationship, a patient identifies that a nurse reminds him of his grandmother and begins to respond to the nurse as he would to his grandmother. The nurse recognizes this as which of the following?
   a. Boundary testing
   b. Transference
   c. Boundary crossing
   d. Counter-transference

3. A nurse is establishing boundaries with a patient who is coming to a community mental health center for treatment. Which of the following would be least appropriate to do during the orientation phase?
   a. Give the patient some information about the nurse's personal life.
   b. Explain to the patient the reason for the nurse being there.
   c. Describe what it is that the nurse can provide for the patient.
   d. Discuss the time, place, and frequency for the meetings.

4. A group of nursing students are reviewing information on boundaries, boundary crossings, and boundary violations. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they state which of the following?
   a. "Most times, a boundary crossing will lead to a boundary violation."
   b. "Boundary violations can be therapeutic in some instances."
   c. "Boundaries are unnecessary if the patient and nurse view each other as equals."
   d. "Boundary crossings can result in a return to established boundaries."

5. While interacting with a patient, the patient says, "How about we meet later after you are done with work and go grab a cup of coffee and talk?"Which response by the nurse would be most appropriate?
   a. "That sounds like fun but I'm busy after work."
   b. "Remember, I'm here as a professional to help you."
   c. "Don't be silly. I can't meet you after work."
   d. "Okay, but this needs to be our secret."

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Nurses Association (ANA). (2015). *Code of ethics for nurses*. Retrieved from www.ana.org

Baca, M. (2011). Professional boundaries and dual relationships in clinical practice. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners, 7*(3), 195–200.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Field, W. E., Jr. (1979). *The psychotherapy of Hildegard Peplau*. New Braunfels, TX: PSF Productions.

Jones, J., Fitzpatrick, J. J., & Drake, V. (2008). Frequency of post-licensure registered nurse boundary violations with patients in the State of Ohio: A comparison based on type of pre-licensure registered nurse education. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 22*(6), 356–363.

National Council of State Boards of Nursing. (2014). *A nurse's guide to professional boundaries—A continuum of professional behavior* [Brochure].

O'Toole, A. W., & Welt, S. R. (1989). *Interpersonal theory in nursing practice: Selected works of Hildegard E. Peplau*. New York, NY: Springer.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing* (Rev. ed.). New York, NY: Springer.

Peternelj-Taylor, C. (2002). Professional boundaries: A matter of therapeutic integrity. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing & Mental Health Services, 40*(4), 22.

Welch, M. (2005). Pivotal moments in the therapeutic relationship. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 14*, 161–165.

SECTION II

Health Promotion and Illness Prevention

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 5

CRITICAL THINKING, CLINICAL DECISION MAKING, AND THE INTERPERSONAL RELATIONSHIP

Angie S. Chesser

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the basic concepts involved in critical thinking
2. Correlate critical thinking with clinical decision making
3. Describe the framework for critical thinking
4. Describe how the nursing process is related to critical thinking and clinical decision making
5. Correlate the stages of the nursing process with Peplau's phases of the interpersonal relationship

KEY TERMS

Critical thinking
Critical Thinking Indicators™ (CTIs™)
Dispositions
Nursing process
Psychoeducational intervention

Psychiatric-mental health nursing care is practiced in multiple settings across the health care continuum. Patients of all ages in need of psychiatric-mental health nursing care can be found in hospitals, community agencies, and residential settings. Across all these settings and age groups, psychiatric-mental health nurses integrate critical thinking skills for clinical decision making throughout the interpersonal relationship. Critical thinking and clinical decision making are crucial elements to ensure that the patient's needs are assessed, relevant problems are identified, and therapeutic nursing interventions are planned, implemented, and evaluated (Wilkinson,2011).

Clinical decision making based on critical thinking is similar across all clinical settings. One unique dimension of critical thinking in psychiatric-mental health nursing is the importance of the interpersonal relationship as a major healing factor in delivering psychiatric nursing care. This chapter focuses on how psychiatric nurses integrate the concepts of critical thinking, clinical decision making, and the nursing process within the interpersonal relationship to address patient needs and delivery of nursing care. Throughout this textbook, a recurring special feature,"How Would You Respond?" is used to promote the development of critical thinking and clinical decision-making skills.

CRITICAL THINKING AND CLINICAL DECISION MAKING

CRITICAL THINKING refers to a purposeful method of reasoning that is systematic, reflective, rational, and outcome oriented. It is an important part of psychiatric-mental health nursing and the interpersonal relationship. Through the use of critical thinking, psychiatric-mental health nurses make clinical decisions that translate into an appropriate plan of care for the patient (Harding & Snyder, 2015).

Critical thinking correlated with clinical decision making does not refer to thinking that is judgmental, negative, or dismissive about a given strategy, plan, or subject under consideration. Rather, it is a conscious, organized activity that requires development over time through consistent effort, practice, and experience. Critical thinking is dynamic, not static, and ever-evolving based on the circumstances of the individualized situation.

Numerous definitions have been developed about critical thinking and how it applies to nursing practice. Scheffer and Rubenfeld (2000), in a consensus statement, described critical thinking in nursing as

> an essential component of professional accountability and quality nursing care. Critical thinkers in nursing exhibit these habits of mind: confidence, contextual perspective, creativity, flexibility, inquisitiveness, intellectual integrity, intuition, open mindedness, perseverance and reflection. Critical thinkers in nursing practice the cognitive skills of analyzing, applying standards, discrimination, information seeking, logical reasoning, predicting, and transforming knowledge. (p. 357)

This consensus statement indicates that critical thinking is a positive skill set used by nurses to plan patient care.

Critical thinking is a purposeful method of reasoning that is systematic, reflective, rational, organized, and outcome oriented. Effort, practice, and experience are necessary to develop critical thinking.

Domains of Critical Thinking

Four specific domains have been identified as essential to critical thinking (Paul, 1993). These domains include the following:

- Elements of Thought—*The basic building blocks of thinking, such as purpose (what one hopes to accomplish), question or problem at issue, points of view or frame of reference, empirical dimension (evidence, data, or information), concepts and ideas, assumptions, and implications and consequences.*
- Abilities—*The skills essential to higher order thinking, such as evaluating the credibility, analyzing arguments, clarifying meanings, generating possible solutions, and developing criteria for evaluation.*
- Affective Dimensions—*The attitudes, dispositions, passions, and traits of mind essential to higher order thinking in real settings, such as thinking independently, being fair minded, developing insight, intellectual humility, intellectual courage, perseverance, and developing confidence in reasoning and intellectual curiosity.*
- Intellectual Standards—*The standards used to critique higher-order thinking, such as clarity, specificity, consistency, preciseness, significance, accuracy, and fairness (Paul, 1993).*

Elements Necessary for Critical Thinking

Critical thinking requires practice, effort, and experience. It involves the use of cognitive skills and working through **DISPOSITIONS**, the way a person approaches life and

living (Facione, 2010). **Boxes 5-1** and **5-2** highlight the cognitive skills and dispositions important for critical thinking.

In addition to these cognitive skills and dispositions, evidence-based research has identified specific behaviors that demonstrate the knowledge, characteristics, and skills needed to promote critical thinking for clinical decision making. These behaviors are termed **CRITICAL THINKING INDICATORS™** (CTIs™; Alfaro-LeFevre, 2010). The two major categories of CTIs address knowledge and intellectual skills and competencies. Knowledge indicators involve:

- *Clarifying nursing versus medical information, normal and abnormal function including factors that affect normal function, rationales for interventions, policies and procedures, standards, laws and practice acts that are applicable to the situation, ethical and legal principles, and available information resources*
- *Demonstrating focused nursing assessment skills and related technical skills, and clarifying personal values, beliefs, and needs, including how one's self may differ from others' preferences and organizational mission and values.*

Intellectual skills and competencies involve:

- *Application of standards, principles, laws, and ethics*
- *Systematic and comprehensive assessment*
- *Detection of bias and determination of information credibility*

BOX 5-1: COGNITIVE SKILLS ASSOCIATED WITH CRITICAL THINKING

INTERPRETATION

- Comprehension and expression of the meaning or significance of wide-ranging experiences, situations, data, events, and beliefs
- Ability to categorize, decode, and clarify the meaning and significance of the information

ANALYSIS

- Identification of intended and inferred relationships
- Examination of ideas
- Detection and analysis of arguments

EVALUATION

- Assessment of credibility
- Assessment of logical strength of actual or intended inferential relationships

INFERENCE

- Ability to draw reasonable conclusions, conjectures, and hypotheses
- Ability to arrive at consequences based on data evidence, beliefs, opinions, and descriptions
- Evidence queries, alternative conjectures, and conclusion drawing

EXPLANATION

- Presentation of coherent, logical, and rational reasoning
- Description of methods and results, justification of procedures, proposal and defense of one's explanations or points of view, and presentation of full, well-reasoned arguments for seeking the best understanding

SELF-REGULATION

- Ability to self-consciously monitor one's cognitive activities, elements used in activities, and results obtained
- Self-examination and self-correction

Adapted from Facione (2010).

BOX 5-2: DISPOSITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH CRITICAL THINKING

- Independent thinking
- Inquisitiveness toward a wide range of issues
- Concern to be and remain well informed
- Self-confidence in own abilities
- Open mindedness, fair mindedness
- Flexibility for alternatives and other options
- Honesty related to one's own biases, prejudices, and stereotypes
- Intellectual courage: willingness to reconsider and revise views when change is necessary
- Creativity or "thinking outside the box"

Adapted from Facione (2010).

- *Identification of assumptions and inconsistencies*
- *Development of reasonable conclusions based on evidence*
- *Determination of individual outcomes with a focus on results*
- *Risk management; priority setting*
- *Effective communication*
- *Individualization of interventions*

Nurses also need to possess personal CTIs that support the critical thinking characteristics. These personal CTIs reflect the nurse's behaviors, attitudes, and qualities that are associated with critical thinking.

The four domains of critical thinking are elements of thought, abilities, affective dimensions, and intellectual standards. Critical thinking involves the use of cognitive skills and working through dispositions or the way a person approaches life and living.

Framework for Critical Thinking and Clinical Decision Making

The question is, "How is critical thinking related to clinical decision making in psychiatric-mental health nursing?" First, critical thinking is a skill set involving cognitive skills and dispositions. It is a framework that structures psychiatric-mental health nurse's clinical decision making for psychiatric-mental health patients and their needs throughout the interpersonal relationship. One way that psychiatric-mental health nurses use critical thinking as a framework for clinical decision making is to answer a structured series of questions either through individual reflection or in consultation with other nurses. Facione (2010) developed the "IDEALS" approach to assist psychiatric-mental health nurses in making therapeutic clinical decisions. This framework includes "Six Questions for Effective Thinking and Problem Solving" (**Box 5-3**).

Reflecting on and answering these questions can promote critical thinking involving cognitive skills and dispositions when a psychiatric-mental health nurse is engaged in the interpersonal relationship and faces a clinical problem in delivering care. One example of psychiatric-mental health nurses using critical thinking skills to solve patient care problems may include situations that involve the need to alter a noneffective plan of care after a nurse–patient interaction. Another example may occur when the nurse requests clinical supervision to better understand how personal feelings may be influencing the nurse–patient relationship. A third example may be when a nurse participates in a case conference related to developing a more consistent approach to a patient's needs. Thus, when issues arise for a patient or within the interpersonal relationship, the psychiatric-mental health nurse's critical thinking skills can help find the answer to the question, "What should I say or do now to meet this patient's needs?"

The psychiatric-mental health nurse uses critical thinking skills to find the answer to the question about what to do or say to meet the patient's needs.

BOX 5-3: SIX QUESTIONS FOR EFFECTIVE THINKING AND PROBLEM SOLVING: "IDEALS"

Identify the problem:	"What's the real question we're facing here?"
Define the context:	"What are the facts and circumstances that frame this problem?"
Enumerate choices:	"What are our most plausible three or four options?"
Analyze options:	"What is our best course of action, all things considered?"
List reasons explicitly:	"Exactly why are we making this choice rather than another?"
Self-correct:	"Okay, let's look at it again. What did we miss?"

Adapted from Facione (2010).

THE NURSING PROCESS

The **NURSING PROCESS** is a systematic method of problem solving that provides the nurse with a logical, organized framework from which to deliver nursing care. It is an ongoing, complex, cyclical process that requires the nurse to continually collect data, critically analyze it, and incorporate it into the patient's treatment plan (Fortinash & Holoday Worret, 2008). Thus, the nursing process integrates critical thinking skills and clinical decision making. According to the American Nurses Association and The International Society of Psychiatric Mental Health Nurses (2014):

> the six Standards of Practice describe a competent level of psychiatric-mental health nursing care as demonstrated by the critical thinking model known as the nursing process ….The nursing process encompasses all significant actions taken by registered nurses, and forms the foundation of the nurse's decision making.

The nursing process used in this text includes four key stages: assessment, planning/diagnosing, implementation, and evaluation (APIE). Nurses use the nursing process to deliver safe, effective therapeutic nursing care regardless of the setting. The challenge for psychiatric-mental health nurses is to integrate the specialized focus of their work with patients—the therapeutic use of self within the interpersonal relationship—with their nursing process skills. The integration of Peplau's four-phase interpersonal model with the four-step nursing process model challenges the nurse to use critical thinking skills to provide care for psychiatric-mental health patients. Both the nursing process and the interpersonal relationship reflect a problem-solving approach to providing care. Their integration is important because it is the foundation for sound clinical decision making in psychiatric-mental health nursing.

The Nursing Process and the Interpersonal Relationship

Recall from Chapter 2 that Peplau identified four phases of the interpersonal relationship: orientation, identification, exploitation, and resolution. These phases closely parallel the stages of the nursing process. **Figure 5-1** depicts the correlations among critical thinking, clinical decision making, the interpersonal relationship, and the nursing process.

Both the nursing process and the interpersonal relationship reflect a problem-solving approach to providing care. Psychiatric-mental health nurses integrate the nursing process and the interpersonal relationship for sound clinical decision making in psychiatric-mental health nursing.

Assessment

The first stage of the nursing process is assessment, which involves the collection of patient data through a patient history and physical assessment. For the psychiatric-mental health patient, a mental status examination and psychosocial assessment are essential components. The nurse obtains additional information from the patient's medical record as well as from his or her own knowledge of relevant and current literature. This data collection process is ongoing, with the nurse continuously updating and validating the information.

Peplau's orientation and identification phases correspond to the assessment phase of the nursing process. In

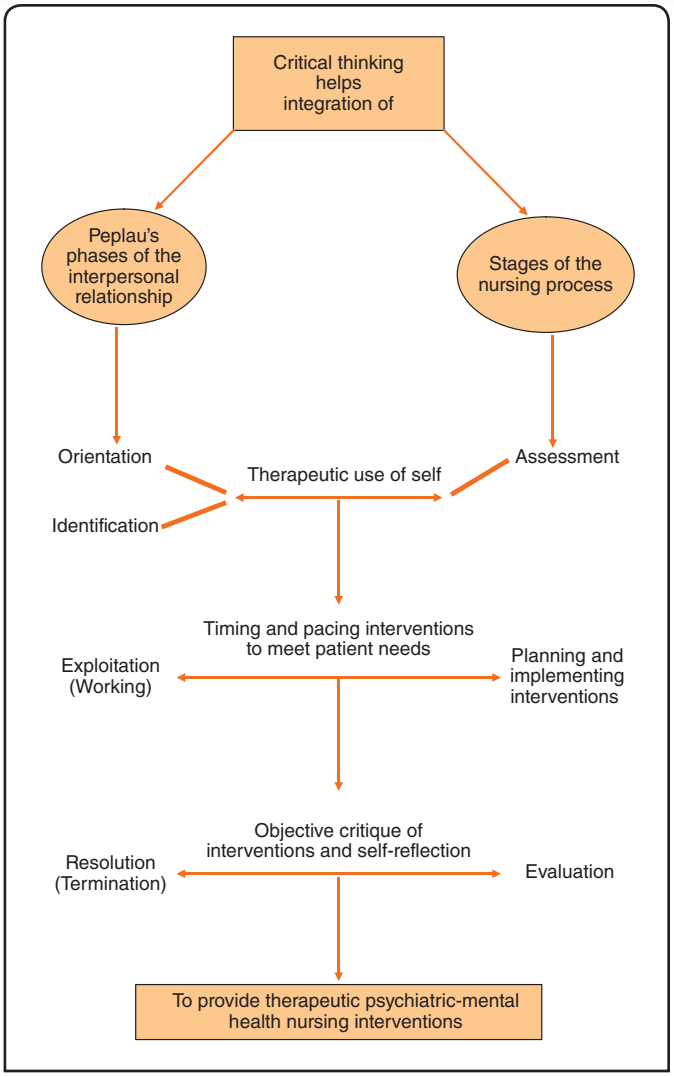


Figure 5-1 *Interrelationship among critical thinking, clinical decision making, the interpersonal relationship, and the nursing process.*

some clinical situations, a psychiatric-mental health nurse will have information about the patient before meeting him or her. This information may come from a variety of sources. The nurse may have information from a nursing report, another professional, records from other agencies, the patient's significant others, or a patient having filled out an assessment questionnaire before the meeting. At other times, a psychiatric-mental health nurse may need to respond to a patient's needs without any previous clinical history, such as in a crisis situation. The nurse uses observation skills to gather clinical information that can guide nursing interventions in the orientation and identification phases of such a relationship. A nurse might encounter a psychiatric patient in a hospital unit day room after an angry outburst in which the patient threatens to harm himself or herself. Although the nurse may have only minimal background information on the patient, the nurse can gather data based on the patient's current emotional and behavioral status, which will guide the assessment and planning of care. Peplau also felt that the nurse should not explicitly focus on his or her own individual behavior or the client's individual behavior; rather, the combined experience of the interaction should be interpreted (D'Antonio, Beeber, Sills, & Naegle, 2014).

Information about a patient's prior clinical history is important because it can influence the orientation and identification phases when the nurse and the patient interact. When reviewing a patient's clinical history, a psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to mobilize therapeutic use of self-skills to analyze and monitor his or her own reactions to the information and how it might help or hinder the establishment of a therapeutic relationship. Information that a psychiatric-mental health nurse has before meeting the patient, whether it is historical in nature or immediately in the here and now, can trigger a range of reactions for the nurse. The psychiatric nurse needs to develop self-awareness about how either a stereotypically biased reaction (e.g., questioning how any mother could attempt to harm her newborn) or a personal reaction (such as a nurse who works in substance abuse recovery reacting negatively to a patient's suicide attempt during a relapse) can impede the development of a therapeutic relationship before it even begins. **How Would You Respond? 5-1** provides a practical example for the therapeutic use of self during the assessment stage and orientation phase.

The assessment stage begins when the patient and nurse meet, often for the first time. According to Peplau (1952), the orientation and identification phases begin when the nurse and the patient meet together and begin to structure a relationship that can therapeutically address the patient's needs. Whether this is an encounter where the nurse meets the patient for the first time or the patient is known to the nurse from a previous therapeutic relationship and has now returned for further help, the assessment stage and the orientation and identification phases set the stage for how the nursing process and interpersonal relationship will unfold. Anxiety for both the nurse and the patient is common during this time because each has preconceptions about the other as well as uncertainty about how and if help can be provided.

The nurse collects biopsychosocial clinical assessment data using the formats specific to the setting, for example, the hospital unit, emergency department, community agency, residential setting, or home health care setting. This clinical assessment occurs within the nurse–patient relationship. The psychiatric-mental health nurse works

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-1: ASSESSMENT STAGE/ORIENTATION PHASE

You are completing a nursing assessment on a newly admitted patient on an inpatient psychiatric unit. Ms. Baker is a single, 22-year-old. For the past few weeks, she has become increasingly depressed, experiencing trouble eating, sleeping, and functioning at work. She reports increasing thoughts about killing herself "to end this pain" by driving her car into a bridge. She has no previous history of psychiatric problems or treatment. She identifies no recent events in her life that might relate to her current depression. When you ask the question relating to religious beliefs, the patient asks you, "Are you a Christian?"

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

Based on the scenario described, which response would be most appropriate in demonstrating the therapeutic use of self when responding to the patient?

1. *Ignore the question.*
2. *Tell her, "My religious faith is not important now. What are your religious beliefs?"*
3. *State, "Yes, I am a Christian/No, I am not a Christian."*
4. *Clarify by asking, "Can you share with me how knowing if I am a Christian would be helpful to you?"*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-1: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

The most therapeutic response would be Response 4. Because you are in the assessment stage and orientation phase of the interpersonal relationship with Ms. Baker, your focus is getting information from her to identify and meet her needs. Your goal is to understand more about how her need to know about your religious beliefs connects with the problems she is currently experiencing.

The other answers could lead to nontherapeutic results. Ignoring a patient's question can be seen by a patient as rude or as an area you are uncomfortable discussing. Response 1, therefore, does not foster or create a trusting relationship with the patient or a climate where any concern can be shared. Although it redirects the focus back to the patient, telling her that your religious faith is not important now and then asking what her religious beliefs are sounds somewhat punitive and dismissive, which would not further communication. Stating whether or not you are a Christian directly answers the question but can lead to nontherapeutic results. In the assessment stage/orientation phase, the nurse is always operating with incomplete or unknown information. The nurse attempts to expand and clarify information. Because you have no way of knowing how or if this patient's religious beliefs are related to her depression, you cannot predict how the patient's reaction to your answer may impact your ability to identify and meet her needs. Does the patient think only a Christian nurse can understand her or does she believe a Christian nurse might condemn her for some past thoughts, beliefs, or behaviors? Asking the question directly may meet your need to be polite or finish up paperwork, but it would not be helpful in establishing a therapeutic nurse–patient relationship.

to build a trusting alliance with the patient so that the patient will share his or her perceptions about why this meeting is occurring and what his or her needs are. Using critical thinking skills, the nurse and the patient identify the problem and define the context, thereby providing the basis for determining future strategies to address the problems.

Not all psychiatric-mental health patients voluntarily seek help or feel they need it. The psychiatric-mental health nurse begins to develop an interpersonal relationship with the patient by creating a climate of respect and inquiry regarding how the patient came to be in this psychiatric setting. If the patient is a stranger to the nurse and is voluntarily seeking help, the nurse and the patient can begin to explore what assistance is available to help with his or her needs and how it will be provided. If the patient is not seeking help voluntarily—for example, the admission was initiated by the patient's parents, ordered by the court, or the spouse threatened to leave if help was not sought—and believes he or she has no psychiatric needs, the nurse and the patient can explore how this situation can be better understood while they are working together. If the patient is known to the nurse from previous treatment, the orientation and identification phases may be somewhat abbreviated but will still focus on how the patient's current needs led him or her to seek further help and how that help will be provided. The psychiatric-mental health nurse employs critical thinking and clinical decision making along with the therapeutic use of self to assist the patient in determining his or her needs.

During the assessment stage and orientation and identification phases, the nurse conveys a hopeful and optimistic attitude such that, through their work together, the patient's needs can be identified. Once identified, the nurse and the patient can work together in meeting the patient's needs. This is especially important for patients already known to the nurse who are in need of assistance and treatment again. These patients may be experiencing feelings such as anger, shame, denial, or hopelessness about the need for help again. These feelings may lead them to assume that the nurse will also feel negatively about them and their prospects for the future. Through the therapeutic use of self, the nurse identifies and deals with his or her own personal reactions to the patient's return for help such as frustration or inadequacy or failure in helping. In doing so, the nurse and the patient will be more likely to use the assessment stage and the orientation and identification phases of the relationship to focus on identifying the patient's present needs rather than focusing on what did not go well in the past. Thus, the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship can be reestablished.

Planning and Implementation

The next two stages of the nursing process are planning and implementation. These two stages correspond to Peplau's third phase of the interpersonal relationship, the exploitation phase. After completing the assessment stage and the orientation and identification phases, the nurse and the patient examine the needs and determine what it is that the patient ultimately wants to achieve (goals or outcomes). They now begin to work together to focus on strategies to assist the patient in meeting the identified needs and achieving the mutually determined goals or outcomes.

A wide range of nursing interventions can be proposed and provided to assist the patient in understanding and coping in healthier ways depending on what problematic issues brought him or her for psychiatric treatment. The nurse, in concert with the patient, uses critical thinking skills to determine the most plausible strategies, analyzing these strategies, and ultimately arriving at the best courses of action for the patient.

Through the interpersonal relationship established, nurses plan and implement nursing interventions focused on patient needs. Patients can explore how their thoughts, feelings, and behaviors relate to their needs and how dealing with these needs can impact their ability to live a more fulfilling life. During the planning and implementation stages and exploitation phase, patients can become partners in the treatment process by trying out new ways of thinking, feeling, behaving, and sharing what strategies are working for them in meeting their needs in new ways.

The implementation stage and exploitation phase can be difficult and painful for patients. It is not easy for anyone to change behavior, and it is often more difficult for those with mental illness as they must confront their own behavior and its negative consequences. Yet it is also a time in which patients can experience help and increased self-confidence. Patients are asked to look at their thoughts, feelings, and behaviors in new ways and answer the question, "How is that working for you?" These new viewpoints may be anxiety producing for the patient but also provide them with insight and guidance in dealing with the problems now and potentially in the future. The interpersonal relationship provides a safe and affirming context for a patient to face problems, identify needs, and try out new skills. Psychiatric-mental health nurses use communication techniques and counseling skills to help guide patients to recognize how dealing with their problems in new ways can have beneficial results. **How Would You Respond? 5-2** provides a practical example of appropriate communication to foster the interpersonal relationship.

During the planning and implementation stages of the nursing process and the exploitation phase of the interpersonal relationship, the nurse works with the patient and uses critical thinking skills to determine the most plausible strategies, analyze these strategies, and ultimately arrive at the best courses of action for the patient.

Psychiatric-mental health nurses use an important strategy, **PSYCHOEDUCATIONAL INTERVENTIONS** (interventions that include a significant educational component), to assist patients in understanding and dealing with their problems. Patients need information about diagnoses, medications, coping skills, and support to manage the impact their problems have on their ability to live a healthy and fulfilling life. Psychiatric-mental health nurses provide psychoeducational interventions using a variety of formats based on patient needs. These formats may include one-on-one conversational settings, group settings, or the use of media via handouts, films, and computer sites and

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-2: ASSESSMENT/IMPLEMENTATION/EXPLOITATION

You are in the nursing station when a psychiatric aide comes to tell you that your patient Joe is in the dayroom pacing and studying the ceiling in an anxious manner. When the aide approached the patient, he was counting the fire suppression devices in the ceiling. You know Joe was admitted 2 days ago. He is a graduate student who had a decline in his academic performance over the past few months. After a meeting with his dean, he retreated to his dorm room and began behaving strangely (putting all furniture against a wall, covering his window with bed sheets). The campus police brought him to the hospital for evaluation. Since admission, he has been anxious and suspicious. He feels the dean is "listening in on his thoughts." He has refused medication, sleeps poorly, and has to be reminded about daily hygiene. You go to the dayroom and approach the patient. You share that you can see he is upset and ask him to come to a quieter area of the unit so he can tell you what is troubling him. He reluctantly agrees. The patient tells you he noticed these "things" in the ceiling in his room and when he came to the dayroom found more of them. Now he is counting them to see how many ways the dean has to listen in on his thoughts.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

Based on the scenario described previously, consider the following interventions. Which of these would be most appropriate for this patient and why?

1. *Remain quiet and just look at the patient in an interested manner to see if he will say more.*
2. *Tell the patient you have medication that will help the thoughts about the dean go away. Tell the patient you will go get him the medication.*
3. *Say, "Joe, feeling that the dean is listening in on your thoughts must be very frightening. What can you tell me about your relationship with the dean?"*
4. *Tell Joe, "Why would the dean have time to monitor your thoughts? These thoughts are delusions and that is why the doctor wants you to start taking the medication he prescribed. Those things in the ceiling are only required fire suppression devices."*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-2: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

You are faced with a situation that requires you to intervene. The most therapeutic response to this patient would be Response 3. Whenever you are responding to a patient who is delusional, your first goal is to reduce the patient's anxiety by acknowledging that his or her thoughts are contributing to an uncomfortable emotional state. You then want to encourage the patient response to link the delusional ideas to some reality-based event, if possible. (In this case, it would be the meeting with the dean regarding his academic performance.) You wish to convey a concerned interest in the patient's thoughts without agreeing with them or actively disputing them in any way. You want more information from the patient: Does he feel the dean plans to hurt him? Does he have plans to hurt the dean? What is his perception about his meeting with the dean? After you know more about how the patient thinks and feels about the situation, you can reassure the patient about his safety and explain what the "things" in the ceiling are. You might also inquire how the patient feels about trying some medication to help him relax and gain better control of these disturbing thoughts. You are working to form a therapeutic trusting alliance with this patient in order to understand and manage his delusional thoughts.

The other responses are not likely to lead to a therapeutic result. Continuing to remain quiet and just looking at the patient in hopes he will say more most likely will increase the patient's anxiety. The patient has just shared a frightening scenario with you (the belief that his thoughts are being monitored) and he may be anxious about your reaction. Patients who are suspicious and paranoid may believe others can or are trying to read their minds, so not reacting and just staring at the patient may reinforce the patient's fear. When patients with delusions become anxious within the context of an interaction, they may try to protect themselves by incorporating the other person into the delusion. This patient might begin to believe you are working with the dean to monitor his thoughts and begin to avoid contact with you.

Because you are uncertain as to why the patient has been refusing medication, beginning your interaction with him by telling him you will get medication is unlikely to be helpful. First, it does not acknowledge your understanding of how the patient is thinking and feeling, and it does not express an interest in how these thoughts and feelings are impacting the patient now. Second, leaving a patient alone right after he shares a frightening experience can be seen as uncaring. You would want to discuss medication with the patient after you had begun to develop a trusting alliance with him.

Finally, disputing the patient's beliefs as your initial response will raise his anxiety level and force him into a situation where he feels he must defend his delusions to you. Defending delusional beliefs only makes it more difficult for a patient to be able to examine the reality of his disturbing thoughts. Listening to patients who are delusional can be anxiety provoking for the nurse at times. The anxiety a patient is experiencing can be felt by the nurse, which can lead to the nurse wanting to "help" the patient feel better quickly. Challenging whether the dean has time to monitor the patient can feel dismissive and uncaring to the patient. Sharing the reality of the fire suppression devices and pressuring the patient about taking medication for his delusional (wrong) thoughts initially will block the development of a trusting therapeutic relationship.

programs. The nurse uses critical thinking skills to decide which format(s) would work best for the specific patient.

Psychoeducation is an excellent intervention that can consist of verbal one-on-one interaction, printed handouts, or other audiovisual materials.

The planning and implementation stages and the exploitation phase rarely occur in a smooth fashion. The psychiatric-mental health nurse, through the therapeutic use of self, must recognize and manage the interplay of needs between himself or herself and the patient to ensure that interventions planned and implemented are truly patient focused. Timing and pacing of interventions to correspond to what a patient is able to acknowledge and use is essential to psychiatric nursing clinical decision making. Planning and implementing nursing interventions that are poorly timed or paced usually result in negative patient reactions and problems within the nurse–patient relationship. For example, a patient struggling to accept that he or she has bipolar disorder should not be immediately assigned to attend a psychoeducational group focusing on managing bipolar disorder as a chronic disease. The timing and pacing of this planned intervention could backfire because it failed to meet the patient's immediate needs. The patient may not yet acknowledge what this diagnosis might mean for the future. If pushed to attend this group, the patient may feel less understood by the nurse and become disheartened or angry. It is unlikely that the patient could use any of the content provided. Within the nurse–patient relationship, the patient might react angrily or begin avoiding the nurse who is now perceived as not understanding his or her needs. Critical thinking about the timing and pacing of this intervention within the context of the nurse–patient relationship would have yielded a better result.

Often mismatches in timing and pacing of therapeutic interventions with patient needs relate back to monitoring the therapeutic use of self-skills so crucial to psychiatric-mental health nursing. Through self-reflection or in consultation with other psychiatric nurses, the nurse might question how he or she was feeling about the patient's resistance to accepting the bipolar diagnosis and how this impacted the relationship. For example, was the nurse feeling angry, frustrated, or impatient? What kept the nurse from further exploring what was behind the patient's resistance? Was it something in his or her personal history or a supervisor pushing for the patient's discharge? Better understanding of how the nurse's reactions to the patient may have led to a poorly timed and paced intervention can assist the nurse in employing the therapeutic use of self, thereby avoiding similar ineffective nursing interventions in the future.

Interventions need to be appropriately timed and paced to be successful.

Evaluation

The final stage of the nursing process is evaluation and correlates to Peplau's final phase of interpersonal relationship, resolution. Evaluation and resolution are planned when patients are better able to manage their needs and cope with the problems that brought them for care. It is a time for both the nurse and the patient to reflect together on what has been accomplished by the patient since the nurse–patient relationship began. It also focuses on how the patient can take what has been learned and use it for future success in meeting his or her needs.

For both the nurse and the patient, evaluation and resolution can be a time to celebrate successes and gains made by the patient because the outcomes and goals have been achieved. It can also be a time of loss and sadness. The termination of the relationship can reawaken feelings in both the nurse and the patient about prior losses and separations. Patients may react to an upcoming termination by redeveloping needs and symptoms present during the assessment stage and orientation and identification phases. They may avoid contact with the nurse, trying not to think about or discuss their ending relationship. **How Would You Respond? 5-3** provides a practical example of a nurse and a patient involved in evaluation and resolution.

The psychiatric-mental health nurse may also have reactions to a patient termination. The nurse may have difficulty in seeing a patient as ready to terminate or may avoid the painful aspects of a termination by rushing the process. Nurses can apply their therapeutic use of self-skills to monitor their own reactions to a patient's termination and its impact on the patient. The nurse also needs to identify a patient's needs in the evaluation stage and resolution phase more clearly, thus therapeutically assisting the patient to manage thoughts, feelings, and behaviors regarding the upcoming termination of the relationship.

Finally, the evaluation stage and resolution phase provide the nurse with an opportunity to determine what went well in the nurse–patient relationship and what might be an opportunity for improvement in the nurse's clinical decision-making skills. Nurses use this time to self-correct, asking themselves if they were able to integrate the stages of the therapeutic relationship to meet patient needs while assessing, planning, implementing, and evaluating nursing care. Did the nurse time and pace interventions to

correspond to what a patient needed and could use at each stage of the relationship? How self-aware was the nurse about the impact of his or her own reactions to the patient and the effect on the stages of their relationship? This self-reflection or reflection with other nurses can improve a nurse's critical thinking and clinical decision-making skills in assessing, planning, and implementing psychiatric-mental health nursing care.

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-3: EVALUATION/RESOLUTION

You are working with Christina and are in the evaluation stage and resolution phase of the nurse–patient relationship. Christina had been hospitalized involuntarily after a manic episode led her to drive recklessly, crashing her car into a tree. She had not slept for days and she had run up huge credit card bills. She had also stopped taking her prescribed medications and began to drink heavily. Now, Christina is no longer manic and is taking her medications. She acknowledges she has bipolar disorder and will need ongoing outpatient treatment and support.

As you are reviewing her discharge plan (appointments with psychiatrist, counselor, and support group) with her, Christina says to you, "I know I need on-going care. I feel we have a special relationship. It will be hard to talk about things with these people the way I feel I can talk to you. Can I have your number so if I recognize I am getting manic again, I can contact you for help? I promise not to call and bother you often, just when I need help."Your unit has a policy against continuing contact with discharged patients.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

Based on the scenario described in the following, you need to respond to the patient. Which response would be most appropriate and why? Are boundaries being violated here?

1. *"No, Christina, I cannot give you my number. It is against the rules. I could be fired."*
2. *"Christina, I too feel we worked well together. You worked hard to stabilize your mania here at the hospital. Needing to end our relationship so you can move forward to outpatient care isn't easy. Let's talk about how that feels to you and what you might want to share with your doctor and counselor about what you learned in the hospital."*
3. *"We have worked well together so in your case I will bend the rules. Only call me if you really feel manic and don't share my number with anyone else."*
4. *"Christina, you are capable of managing things without me now. I'm sure your new doctor and counselor will be helpful to you."*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-3: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

The most helpful response to Christina would be Response 2. Patients being discharged frequently have anxiety about managing their problems outside the hospital with new doctors and counselors and seek ways to continue contact with you. Although these requests can be flattering to your sense of professional competence, they do not meet the patient's needs. Unit policies about not maintaining contact with discharged patients are designed to assist patients in moving to the next level of outpatient care and assist nurses in maintaining professional boundaries with patients.

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 5-3: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

During the resolution phase, feelings about ending the nurse–patient relationship can surface for both parties. Christina's request alerts you to her distress about terminating her relationship with you and beginning a relationship with new caregivers as an outpatient. It is important to acknowledge your relationship and the feelings ending the relationship can evoke in the patient. It is also important to link how what she learned about herself and about managing her illness while in the hospital can be part of her relationship with outpatient providers. Discussing how she feels about ending her relationship with you keeps the focus on her transition to outpatient care and maintains your professional boundaries as her inpatient nurse. You can share with the patient the importance of her establishing a positive helpful relationship with her outpatient caregivers, just as she was able to do with you, after you better understand how ending your relationship feels to her now. Also, your focus on reviewing with her outpatient providers the things she learned in the hospital helps remind the patient what she has accomplished and takes with her at discharge. Anxiety about moving from the safety of an inpatient setting to being responsible for one's self as an outpatient is a common patient response. Acknowledging the patient's feelings and monitoring your own reactions can assist you to focus on the patient's need to make a transition to outpatient care in a therapeutic manner.

Choosing Response 1 would not be a therapeutic response to the patient's request. Although it might relieve your anxiety about how to end your nurse–patient relationship, it will leave the patient feeling chastised and perhaps worried about you. This response is not focused on the patient's needs and will not assist her in making a therapeutic transition to outpatient care.

The third response is not therapeutic and is problematic for both the patient and for you. By acknowledging that your relationship has gone well but then offering to continue it when she is an outpatient sends confusing messages to the patient. It may be perceived by the patient that you, too, have doubts that she is ready for discharge or that the outpatient providers are not competent to help her.

Confirming a patient's anxiety about discharge is not focused on meeting the patient's needs. Ask yourself whose needs are being met by this response. Whenever a psychiatric nurse is tempted to ignore unit rules or policies with a patient, it is time to seek consultation from a more experienced supervisor or coworker. Continuing a relationship with the patient in a manner that is against unit rules forces you to conduct it in secret. This separates you from any supervision of your work and undermines the work of the outpatient caregivers whom the patient should call if manic symptoms reoccur. Monitoring your therapeutic use of self within your nurse–patient relationship should help you either avoid such responses or, if you make one, prompt you to seek consultation in order to take corrective action on behalf of the patient. Failure to do so can put the patient at risk for not having a successful transition to outpatient care and your job and nursing license at risk for not maintaining professional boundaries.

Response 4 would not be helpful to the patient. Christina has just expressed that she has doubts about terminating your relationship and being able to talk with her outpatient providers. Your response, while perhaps factually correct, sounds as if you either weren't listening to her or are being dismissive of her anxiety. When patients feel unheard, they frequently do not continue to express their concerns and withdraw from interacting with the nurse. Christina might then be left with unresolved feelings about ending your relationship and continued doubts about how to begin a new relationship with outpatient providers. This would put her at risk of noncompliance with outpatient care and possible readmission to the hospital.

IMPLICATIONS FOR PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

As a psychiatric-mental health nurse gains skill and experience integrating critical thinking skills, clinical decision making, the therapeutic relationship, and the nursing process, it becomes clear that neither the nurse nor the patient moves through the stages or phases in a lock-step fashion. There is an ebb and flow between stages and phases. A patient may revisit issues in any stage or phase that the nurse thought were resolved in a previous one. For example, a patient in the resolution phase begins feeling suicidal again. To reassess patient needs, a nurse during the implementation stage or exploitation phase with a patient may need to revisit the assessment stage or orientation and identification phases after a patient develops new symptoms. It is important for the nurse to recognize this ebb and flow between stages and phases to time and pace interventions that best meet the patient's needs. The patient's revisiting of needs and issues brought up in earlier stages and phases of the therapeutic relationship is to be expected. This revisiting of needs and issues, however, does not mean that a patient is not making progress. In fact, such situations can be an opportunity for a patient to solidify gains made earlier by thinking about them in new ways. For example, the patient in the resolution phase who feels suicidal again can be guided by the nurse to use skills learned in the exploitation phase to manage suicidality. If the patient can do this successfully, he or she may experience greater confidence in his or her ability to keep safe after discharge.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Psychiatric-mental health nurses integrate critical thinking skills for clinical decision making throughout the interpersonal relationship to ensure that a patient's needs are assessed, relevant problems are identified, and therapeutic nursing interventions are planned, implemented, and evaluated.
- Critical thinking is a purposeful, systematic, reflective, rational, outcome-oriented method of reasoning. It is a conscious, organized activity that requires development over time through consistent effort, practice, and experience.
- There are four domains essential for critical thinking: elements of thought, abilities, affective dimensions, and intellectual standards.
- Cognitive skills required for critical thinking include interpretation, analysis, evaluation, inferences, explanation, and self-regulation. Important dispositions for critical thinking include independent thinking; inquisitiveness; self-confidence; flexibility, honesty, and creativity; and intellectual courage.
- Psychiatric-mental health nurses can use the mnemonic IDEALS (Identify the problem; Define the context; Enumerate choices; Analyze options; List reasons explicitly; Self-correct) to foster critical thinking and clinical decision making.
- The nursing process is a systematic method of problem solving that closely parallels Peplau's four phases of the interpersonal relationship. Both are an ongoing, cyclical process.
- The assessment stage of the nursing process correlates with Peplau's orientation and identification phases. The planning and implementation stages of the nursing process parallel Peplau's exploitation phase. Evaluation in the nursing process correlates with Peplau's resolution phase.
- The nursing process and interpersonal relationship reflect a problem-solving, critical thinking approach to providing care. Their integration is important because it is the foundation for sound clinical decision making in psychiatric-mental health nursing.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nursing instructor is creating a teaching plan for a class about critical thinking. Which of the following would the instructor be least likely to include as a necessary cognitive skill?
   a. Analysis
   b. Creativity
   c. Inference
   d. Self-regulation

2. When engaging in critical thinking, the psychiatric-mental health nurse draws a reasonable conclusion after looking at the evidence and proposing alternatives. The nurse is using which cognitive skill?
   a. Evaluation
   b. Explanation
   c. Interpretation
   d. Inference

3. A nurse is in the resolution phase of the interpersonal relationship with a patient. The nurse would also be engaged in which step of the nursing process?
   a. Assessment
   b. Planning
   c. Implementation
   d. Evaluation

4. When integrating critical thinking, clinical decision making, the interpersonal relationship, and the nursing process, which of the following would be of primary importance?
   a. Nurse's self-awareness
   b. Setting for care
   c. Patient's needs
   d. Achievement of outcomes

5. When engaging in critical thinking, which of the following would the nurse ask first?
   a. "What would be the best course of action?"
   b. "What is the issue at hand?"
   c. "What could have been missed?"
   d. "What factors might be affecting the patient?"

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Alfaro-LeFevre, R. (2010). *Applying nursing process: A tool for critical thinking* (7th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.

American Nurses Association and International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses. (2014). *Psychiatric-mental health nursing: Scope and standards of practice*. Washington, DC: American Nurses Publishing.

D'Antonio, P., Beeber, L., Sills, G., & Naegle, M. (2014). The future in the past: Hildegard Peplau and interpersonal relations in nursing. *Nursing Inquiry,* 21(4), 311–317.

Facione, P. A. (2010). *Critical thinking: What it is and why it counts*. 2010 Update. Retrieved from http://www.insightassessment.com/pdf_files/what&why2006.pdf

Fortinash, K. M., & Holoday Worret, P. A. (2008). *Psychiatric mental health nursing* (4th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier.

Harding, M. M., & Snyder, J. S. (2015). *Winningham's critical thinking cases in nursing: Medical–surgical, pediatric, maternity, and psychiatric* (6th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier.

Paul, R. W. (1993). *Critical thinking: How to prepare students for a rapidly changing world*. Santa Rosa, CA: Foundation for Critical Thinking.

Peplau, H. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. Putnam & Sons.

Scheffer, B. K., & Rubenfeld, M. G. (2000). A consensus statement on critical thinking in nursing. *Journal of Nursing Education, 39,* 352–359.

Wilkinson, J. M. (2011). *Nursing process and critical thinking* (5th ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Discuss how the body responds to stress
2. Define crisis
3. Identify the characteristics of crisis
4. Explain the factors that impact an individual's response to stress and development of crisis
5. Differentiate among the types and magnitudes of crisis
6. Describe crisis intervention
7. Trace the historical and current role of the psychiatric-mental health nurse in crisis intervention and stress management

CHAPTER 6

CRISIS AND CRISIS INTERVENTION

Katherine R. Casale

8. Apply the nursing process for crisis intervention to develop a plan of care for a person experiencing crisis
9. Explain the methods used to assist psychiatric-mental health nurses to deal with effects of providing crisis care

KEY TERMS

Crisis
Crisis intervention
Debriefing
Maturational crisis
Situational crisis
Social crisis
Stress

Nurses have many opportunities to interact with patients while engaged in the interpersonal relationship for delivering psychiatric-mental health nursing care. It is inevitable that many of these interactions will occur during moments of crisis. Crisis in mental health may range from violent out-of-control behavior to withdrawal and suicidal ideation, affecting individuals, families, communities, and the world. Understanding the nature of crisis and how to best intervene are crucial to a nurse's skill set. Nurses have the ability and moral obligation to prepare for and respond to these critical moments of human need. With knowledge in crisis intervention, nurses are thus empowered to make a difference during these pivotal moments.

This chapter briefly reviews the stress response and how it relates to crisis. It discusses the characteristics and types of crises and the factors that can affect an individual's response to a crisis. Integrating the interpersonal relationship and therapeutic use of self, the nurse's role in crisis intervention is explored by applying the nursing process.

STRESS RESPONSE

STRESS is an increase in an individual's level of arousal created by a stimulus. Initially, as stress levels increase, a person's performance and ability to focus may actually improve. Attention to detail sharpens and the person is in a heightened state of readiness to take in the world around him. Immediately, the body physiologically responds to stress via the brain, which alerts the adrenal glands to produce adrenaline (Lewis, Dirksen, Heitkemper, Bucher, & Camera, 2011). This classic "fight or flight" reaction can ensure one's safety. However, once a stress threshold is crossed, these benefits are lost and performance and health deteriorate. A sustained stress response can cause damage to the cardiovascular, immune, and nervous systems, causing chronic illness and maladaptation (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 2005). **Evidence-Based Practice 6-1** provides information of the potential effects of stress.

Stress is a stimulus that increases an individual's level of arousal.

General Adaptation Syndrome

Hans Selye first identified the body's reaction to physiological stress through research he performed in 1956 on laboratory animals. Termed the general adaptation syndrome, he identified three stages of a person's reaction to stress and the accompanying responses experienced. Since his initial research, additional studies have shown that this response occurs not only when a person is subjected to physiological stress but also when subjected to psychological or emotional stress.

Alarm Stage

In this stage, the body is stimulated by a stressor. This causes the hypothalamus, in turn, to stimulate the sympathetic nervous system, which leads to innervation of the glands, such as the pituitary and adrenal glands and various body systems to prepare the body to defend itself against the stressor. **Table 6-1** summarizes the major events that occur in the body during the alarm stage.

Resistance and Recovery Stage

In the resistance and recovery stage, the body continues to maintain its preparedness against the stressor and adapt to the situation. If the person is able to adapt, the stressor abates and the body recovers, returning to its normal state. However, if the stress continues, the person progresses to the next stage.

Exhaustion Stage

The exhaustion stage occurs when the person is no longer able to adapt to the continued stress. The defense mechanisms and reserves of the body are depleted. If intervention does not occur, exhaustion continues, which can lead to death.

The three stages of stress response are alarm, resistance and recovery, and exhaustion.

CRISIS

CRISIS is a time-limited event, usually lasting no more than 4 to 6 weeks, that results from extended periods of stress unrelieved by adaptive coping mechanisms. Many different types of stress can lead to crisis. Modern science recognizes the biopsychosocial components of crisis from its examination of the reaction of people to global natural disasters such as the devastating tsunami in Phuket, Thailand, during the holiday season of 2004, followed by Hurricane Katrina the following summer in New Orleans. Man-made disasters, such as the attacks on the World Trade Center and the U.S. Pentagon in 2001 and the 2004 train bombing in Madrid, the Boston Marathon bombing in 2013, and multiple school shootings such as Columbine and Newtown, also created crisis responses in citizens around the world. It is estimated that a man-made or a natural disaster occurs somewhere in the world almost daily (Sederer, 2012; Wilkinson & Matzo, 2015). These catastrophes, whether caused by suicide

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 6-1: EFFECTS OF STRESS

STUDY

Can prolonged stress affect whether breast cancer returns? *NIH MedlinePlus, the Magazine*, *3*(1), 6. Winter 2008.

SUMMARY

In a study funded by the National Institute on Aging (NIA) and the National Cancer Institute (NCI), a group of 94 women in whom breast cancer had spread (metastatic) or returned (recurrent) were asked to determine if they ever experienced stressful or traumatic life events. The categories ranged from traumatic stress to some stress to no significant stress. Responses to the questions were markedly different. A comparison of the data revealed a significantly longer disease-free interval among women reporting no traumatic or stressful life events. Results also showed that a history of traumatic events early in life can have many physical and emotional effects, including changing the hormonal stress response system. The research also demonstrated that individuals function better after exposure to traumatic stress if they deal with it directly, facing it rather than avoiding or fleeing from it.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

These findings support the need for nurses working in all areas, especially in psychiatric-mental health, to implement interventions to assist patients in dealing with stress rather than avoiding it. Such interventions could help prevent an individual from crossing over his or her stress threshold, thereby minimizing the effects of stress on the person's health status.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *What types of interventions might be appropriate to institute for this group?*
2. *How would the interventions proposed be different and/or similar for different populations?*

bombers, mass murderers, Ebola outbreaks, or any other disaster, require that health care personnel respond quickly and effectively.

These disasters, whether created by man or nature, affect many thousands of individuals simultaneously. They are abrupt interruptions in the usual way of life, creating disequilibrium and a sense of helplessness. On many of these occasions, the need for assistance significantly exceeds the local resources, necessitating help from prepared responders from other communities (Lateef, 2011; Sederer, 2012).

Feelings of vulnerability result. Nurses have a unique opportunity to plan for and intervene to support individuals, groups, and communities during times of crisis. The frequent need for disaster response has led to a relatively new area of health care that focuses on providing mental health services to disaster response. The value of nurse intervention and coordination of community-based response following natural or man-made disasters is validated in the literature (Knebel, Toomey, & Libby, 2012). Mental health nurses play a vital role in this response during the days and weeks following a disaster, as psychological victims often exceed the number of victims with physical injuries (Stanley, Bulecza, & Gopalani, 2012).

TABLE 6-1: THE BODY'S RESPONSE TO STRESS IN THE ALARM STAGE

SYSTEM OR ORGAN INVOLVEMENT	RESPONSE
Posterior pituitary gland	↑ Secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) ➜ ↑ water reabsorption and ↓ urine output
Anterior pituitary gland ➜ adrenal cortex	↑ Secretion of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) ➜ ↑ cortisol and aldosterone secretion ↑ Aldosterone secretion ➜ to ↑ sodium reabsorption, ↑ water reabsorption, ↑ potassium excretion, and ↓ urine output ↑ Cortisol secretion ➜ ↑ gluconeogenesis, ↑ protein catabolism, ↑ fat catabolism
Adrenal cortex and sympathetic nervous system stimulation	Release of norepinephrine and epinephrine Epinephrine ➜ ↑ heart rate, ↑ oxygen consumption, ↑ blood glucose, and ↑ mental acuity Norepinephrine ➜ ↑ blood flow to skeletal muscles, ↑ arterial blood pressure
Eye	Pupillary dilation
Lacrimal glands	↑ Secretions
Respiratory system	Bronchodilation ↑ Respiratory rate
Cardiovascular system	↑ Myocardial contractility ↑ Cardiac output and heart rate ↑ Blood pressure
Gastrointestinal system	↓ Motility ↑ Sphincter contraction
Liver	↑ Glycogenolysis ↑ Gluconeogenesis ↓ Glycogen synthesis
Urinary system	↑ Motility of ureters Bladder contraction Sphincter relaxation
Sweat glands	↑ Secretions

Crisis is a time-limited event that usually lasts no longer than 4 to 6 weeks in which the person is unable to relieve prolonged stress through adaptive coping mechanisms.

Characteristics of a Crisis

For many individuals, modern everyday life is a series of events strung together with stress and anxiety. A crisis occurs when there is a real or perceived threat to a person's physical, social, or psychological self. Additionally, witnessing a trauma of another individual or of an entire community can also lead to crisis (Everly & Lating, 1995; **Figure 6-1**).

In crisis, an individual confronts a stressor and his or her coping mechanisms fail to resolve the perceived stress. Crisis is a time-limited state of disequilibrium accompanied by increased anxiety that can trigger adaptive or nonadaptive biopsychosocial responses to maturational, situational, or interpersonal experiences (Boyd, 2008). Typically, a crisis interrupts psychological balance or homeostasis. Subsequently, this disruption overwhelms a person's ability to deal with the challenge or threat at hand (Fortinash & Holoday Worret, 2007). Regardless of whether the stressor is internal or external, the change in the environment causes disequilibrium, interrupting the individual's coping patterns and usual behaviors.

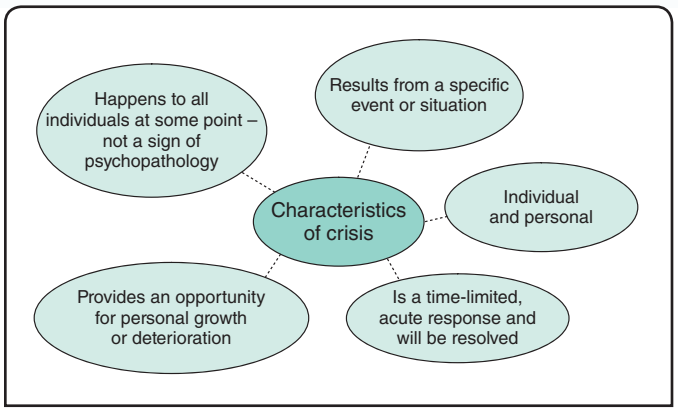


Figure 6-1 *Characteristics of crisis.*

Often, crisis is viewed as a negative occurrence. However, the experience of a crisis does not mean that a psychopathology exists. Crisis can also provide an opportunity for personal growth and positive change (North & Pfefferbaum, 2013). For example, adaptation by the person during crisis allows the person to act and resolve the situation. The person can be supported to consider the incident from a fresh perspective and can develop new coping skills for use during future periods of stress. Mounting an adaptive response allows individuals to seek and implement solutions, thus restoring homeostasis and promoting personal growth. When an individual's responses are maladaptive, he or she feels a sense of helplessness, unable to harness the internal or external resources needed to resolve the all-encompassing anxiety and stress. This individual needs support from health care professionals to work through the crisis and restore homeostasis.

Individuals and families experience crises every day. Across the life span, from infancy to death, many situations in an individual's life can lead to stress and precipitate a crisis. For some, a single event, such as the unexpected death of a child, can cause a person to lose complete control and become unable to follow through with the simplest daily functions. For others, a series of stressors, such as loss of a job followed by illness of a parent and then death of a loved one, can compound the anxiety. This series of events leads to feelings of loss of control, becoming more than the individual can handle.

Crisis can have positive or negative results for a person.

During a period of crisis, new emotional and physiological symptoms, such as nausea and/or emesis, head and body aches, and bowel changes, may emerge. These symptoms, in combination with extreme impairment in daily functioning, signal crisis and need for professional intervention (Boyd, 2008). The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders,* fifth edition (*DSM-5,* American Psychiatric Association, 2013), associates crisis with several different psychiatric diagnoses and disorders including depression, anxiety, and posttraumatic stress disorder. However, it does not categorize crisis as a distinct diagnosis (Fortinash & Holoday Worret, 2007).

Crisis is not an established psychiatric diagnosis. It is, however, associated with numerous psychiatric disorders.

Factors Impacting an Individual's Response to Crisis

Each individual's response to crisis is unique. Not every person experiencing stress will go on to experience crisis. Additionally, individuals exposed to the same crisis will exhibit completely different responses. As noted by Watson and Fulambarker (2012), individuals develop balancing factors that determine the manner in which they will respond to crisis. These balancing factors include the individual's perception of the event, availability of situational supports, and availability of adequate coping strategies. **Table 6-2** describes these balancing factors and how they impact the development of crisis.

Developmental factors can also impact a person's response to stress and development of crisis. For adults, a crisis can be difficult to accept and impossible to understand, eroding feelings of personal and community safety. Adolescents and children may be even more deeply affected (Davidhizar & Shearer, 2002). The effects of disaster and crisis on a child may interfere with normal growth and development, leading to negative long-term physical and psychological health outcomes (Crane & Clements, 2005). Therefore, both physical and psychological emergency interventions must be addressed promptly in crisis, including natural and man-made disasters.

Development of Crisis

When examining the ways in which crisis unfolds, it is helpful to separate the phenomenon into four distinct phases. These phases, depicted in **Figure 6-2**, were first identified by Gerald Caplan in 1964.

Phase 1

Phase 1 begins with exposure to a significant precipitating stressor. This stressor can be large or small in scale (affecting

TABLE 6-2: BALANCING FACTORS IN RESPONSE TO CRISIS

BALANCING FACTOR	DEVELOPMENT OF CRISIS	NO CRISIS
Perception of event	Distorted perception ➜ ineffective problem solving ➜ failure to restore homeostasis	Realistic perception ➜ use of adequate resources ➜ restoration of homeostasis
Availability of situational supports	Inadequate supports ➜ feelings of being overwhelmed and isolated	Use of available persons in environment ➜ assistance in solving problem
Availability of adequate coping skills	Inability to use strategies from previous experiences or strategies used unsuccessfully ➜ continued disequilibrium, tension, and anxiety	Use of strategies from the past successfully ➜ diversion of crisis

a single individual or many persons), a natural or human-initiated disaster, or an accident or an intentional affront.

Large-scale stressors such as disasters affect millions of people annually. Some of the more publicly recognized events include such natural disasters as earthquakes, tornadoes, hurricanes, and floods. However, equally stressful are man-made disasters such as acts of terrorism and school shootings. For days and weeks after these events, the video tapes are repeated over and over again in the media. People are repeatedly exposed to the horror and stress that these depictions evoke. Small-scale stressors or individual stressors, such as a murdered family member or the terminal illness of a spouse, can also affect the lives of individuals in overwhelming ways (Stanley et al., 2012).

During this phase, the individual experiences anxiety and begins to use previous problem-solving strategies used for coping. For some individuals with strong coping skills, the crisis ends at this point. When the stress level is manageable, the brain may initiate actions to restore internal balance and resolve the threat or stress. How is this possible for some? The brain does a computer-like search: "Have I encountered this problem before? How did I deal with it then? Do I possess internal resources that I can use to deal with this problem? Do I have friends or family to count on?" Most people are resilient and can rebound from a transient stressor. This stress response becomes problematic, however, when it cannot be resolved by the individual and the crisis begins to interrupt daily functioning (DHHS, 2005).

Phase 2

The individual moves into the second phase of crisis when anxiety exacerbates to a level where problem-solving ability is arrested or becomes unsuccessful. Stress interferes with daily activities and the person becomes increasingly uncomfortable. The person struggles to find a previously used coping strategy. The lack of success with its use or the inability to find an appropriate coping strategy leads to a sense of restlessness, confusion, and helplessness.

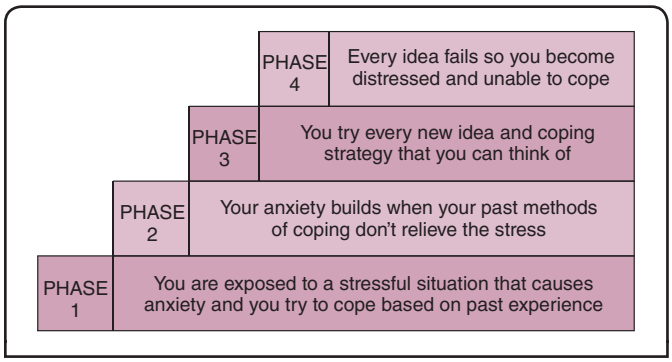


Figure 6-2 *Phases of crisis.*

Phase 3

On moving into the third phase, the individual expands the search for helpful resources in an effort to relieve the psychological discomfort caused by the stressor. He or she draws on all available resources, internal and external, in an attempt to relieve the stress and discomfort. For example, the person may try to look at the situation from a different perspective or possibly ignore certain aspects of the situation in an attempt to cope. At this juncture, the individual searches for possible new methods for solutions, and may seek the assistance of professionals such as services of a nurse, psychologist, crisis worker, or some other external source for possible answers and resolution. If the new methods are effective, the crisis will resolve, allowing the individual to return to a functional level, which may be the same, higher, or lower than the person's previous level of functioning.

Phase 4

If individuals cannot find resolution in the second or third phases, their anxiety levels continue to build. Either they build "beyond a further threshold" or the "burden increases to a breaking point" (Caplan, 1964). Here, the level of anxiety can approach panic or despair, the hallmark of this

phase. Emotions are fragile and labile; thought processes are disrupted, possibly even with psychotic thinking; and external supports are necessary.

A crisis develops over four phases. If the crisis is not resolved during the second or third phase, panic or despair can occur in the fourth phase.

Classification of Crises

Over the past 30 years, many experts have categorized acute emotional crises in several different ways. Some organize them by type, while others categorize them by increasing severity. At the low end of the continuum are crises that develop because of external interruptions or problems. Crises induced by psychopathology and psychiatric emergencies are at the most intense and complex end of the crisis continuum. Many psychiatric diagnoses prevent individuals from resolving internal conflicts, leaving them panicked, dysfunctional, and unable to safely live in an unsupervised community setting. These individuals, regardless of age, lack the ability to maintain their own personal safety during the crisis and must rely on others to help them make responsible decisions and choices. Developing an association with a mental health nurse promotes a psychotherapeutic relationship that will be vital to healing (Wheeler, 2011).

Regardless of the severity, a simple way to categorize crises that occur in reaction to life events is by considering their point of origin. Using this method, three categories of emotional crisis are identified as maturational, situational, and social (also called adventitious).

Maturational Crisis

A **MATURATIONAL CRISIS** occurs during an individual's normal growth and development at any point of change. Examples of maturational crises include leaving home for college (for either the child who is leaving or the parent who is left behind), getting married, having children, or retirement. These normal events occur in everyone's life, but can be identified as an actual or perceived threat that could lead to crisis. When the response to these life transitions is negative or overwhelming and the individual feels a lack of control, crisis occurs and professional intervention may become necessary. In this instance, an internal arrest of development stalls the person's journey through Maslow's (1968) hierarchy of needs, which progress from the most basic level (physiological needs) to the highest level of actualization (see also Chapter 10 for a more in-depth discussion of Maslow; Gorman & Sultan, 2008). The priority is to assist the individuals to recognize the specific point of conflict and readjust their capacity to resolve the conflict and move along life's path. Providing support, helping to define the problem and develop an action plan, and connecting the person to appropriate community resources are important interventions.

Situational Crisis

A **SITUATIONAL CRISIS** stems from an unanticipated life event that threatens one's sense of self or security. The threat can be internal such as a disease, or it can be external such as family illness, the unexpected death of a loved one, foreclosure on a home, death of a pet, and being fired from a job. Any of these examples could lead to an individual's inability to cope. A person's ability to resolve this type of crisis depends on his or her unique perception of the event, adequacy of a support system, and his or her repertoire of coping mechanisms (Downey, Andress, & Schultz, 2013). The loss of personal control associated with situational crises may leave the person unable to complete tasks of everyday living. In this instance, the use of past coping skills along with new alternative coping strategies, support, active listening, and connection to community resources are helpful.

Social Crisis

A **SOCIAL CRISIS**, also called an adventitious crisis, results from an unexpected and unusual social or environmental catastrophe that can either be a natural or man-made disaster. The crisis can affect an individual, families, communities, a specific geographic area, and millions of people. Earthquakes, tsunamis, and hurricanes are all natural disasters that have left thousands, perhaps millions, of people facing crisis. Man-made crises include crimes of rape and murder, city-wide riots, terrorist attacks, and global wars. In these instances, the individuals are overwhelmed by the events that typically involve trauma, injury, destruction, or sacrifice (Boyd, 2008). The widespread media coverage of various disasters can result in crisis for persons who are far removed from the area but subsequently are exposed to the repeated depictions of the injuries and devastation.

Crises may be categorized as maturational, situational, or social.

CRISIS INTERVENTION

Crisis, defined as being self-limiting, requires prompt intervention to achieve a positive outcome. With effective professional intervention, psychosocial homeostasis can be restored and the individual can resume or even exceed the

precrisis level of functioning. A negative outcome, in which the individual stabilizes at a lower level of functioning, is also possible. The likelihood of this outcome increases when the individual has a history of or current diagnosis of psychiatric instability or illness. The more horrifying the disaster, and the more prolonged the direct exposure is, the more likely the victim will develop a prolonged posttraumatic response (Sederer, 2012).

CRISIS INTERVENTION is a time-limited professional strategy designed to address an immediate problem, resolve acute feelings of distress or panic, and restore independent problem-solving skills (Fortinash & Holoday Worret, 2007). As noted by Hoff (2001), the three goals of crisis intervention are (a) alleviation of the acute distress, (b) restoration of independent functioning, and (c) prevention or resolution of psychological trauma. The psychiatric-mental health nurse engaged in the interpersonal relationship can serve as the vehicle for achieving these goals. Although contemporary nursing practice may not facilitate long-term professional relationships, the clear and empathetic communication exhibited in an initial nurse–patient relationship will contribute to healing and recovery (Wheeler, 2011).

Crisis intervention is a strategy used to combat the immediate issue of the crisis and work to resolve it.

Nurses and Crisis Intervention: Historical Perspectives

Since the middle 1800s, nurses have assumed an active role in managing crises. Florence Nightingale, considered by many to be the founder of modern nursing, was an innovative thinker and change agent who consistently showed an interest in the welfare of those affected by crisis. During the Crimean War, she led 38 nurses into a battlefield hospital in Scutari, Turkey, encountering thousands of wounded soldiers lying on blood-soaked straw mats crawling with lice and vermin (Selander & Crane, 2012).

Nightingale was a compassionate nurse leader who met crisis directly by providing compassionate nursing care, consoling despondent amputees, and writing letters to families of patients who had died. She revolutionized the profession of nursing by incorporating a culture of accountability, emphasizing that patients be treated with dignity in a clean environment regardless of social standing. She developed the concept of nursing triage, which addressed the need for group crisis interventions still used by nurses today (Cohen, 1984).

In the early 1900s, Lillian Wald emerged as another community nursing leader who provided crisis intervention services to the immigrants of New York's lower east side. Wald established the country's first visiting nurse organization. Visiting pregnant women, the elderly, and the disabled in their homes, Wald encountered daily crises in need of immediate attention and advocated for the downtrodden and poor (Adams, 2010).

During the latter half of the 20th century, Hildegard Peplau, a pioneer in psychiatric-mental health nursing, published studies examining anxiety and its role in crisis management. She defined the stages of anxiety that can develop in response to a personal, community, or global crisis. Peplau stressed that nurses must recognize anxiety as a state of being that emerges from unmet expectations or needs. Peplau defined nursing as a therapeutic interpersonal relationship in which the nurse assumes one of six professional roles: counselor, resource person, teacher, leader, technical expert, or surrogate. By assuming these roles, the nurse is able to facilitate crisis resolution for an individual, family, or community (Boyd, 2008).

These nursing visionaries have paved the way for today's nurses to be at the forefront of individual and community crisis management. Organized crisis response teams rapidly recognize and intervene to enhance the delivery of best practices in crisis intervention.

Interdisciplinary Response to Crisis

The health care team that responds in a crisis situation often consists of members who have not worked together previously. This can be awkward and contribute to a higher incidence of error or ineffective care. Researchers explored disaster training involving student physicians and nurses and concluded that interdisciplinary team effectiveness increased when teams rehearsed in a high-fidelity simulation environment (Jankouskas, Haidet, Hupcey, Kolanowski, & Murray, 2011). This concept, titled Concept Resource Management by the researchers, confirmed that simulations supported improved team effectiveness and prepared participants for actual crisis intervention.

Nurses and Crisis Intervention: Current Perspectives

The potential for disasters and violence in society has been a constant theme throughout history, with nurses leading the way as coordinators of the crisis health care team. Nurses possess the expertise to develop strategies for intervening in mental health crises. The psychiatric-mental health nurse recognizes that each individual's response to stress is unique; this variation in response is due to personality traits, environment, life experience, and coping skills.

When a person encounters an internal or external stressor, the nurse is cognizant of the physiological and psychological responses that either lead to the person's coping and adaptation, or require professional interventions. The psychiatric-mental health nurse can assist through the development of an interpersonal relationship during times of stress.

The new millennium has led to new ways to deliver crisis intervention, and nurses play a key role in all of them. Computerized chat rooms and individual online capabilities allow for brief individualized crisis therapy. Despite risks of online therapy such as the lack of regulated professional qualifications, confidentiality concerns, and the reluctance of insurance companies to reimburse for online counseling (Hertlein, Blumer, & Mihaloliakos, 2015), web-based resources offer global information to individuals with limited local resources.

Crisis interventions can be offered to families in their homes as well as in office-based practices. Through their interpersonal relationships, psychiatric-mental health nurses often counsel families and children who have ineffective coping skills. In the event of a community crisis, nurses and other members of the health care team often come to the disaster location and actively care for patients.

Crisis Intervention and the Nursing Process

The psychiatric-mental health nurse uses the nursing process, integrating critical thinking, and clinical decision making to provide the highest quality of nursing care. Developing these skills is essential when considering that 25% of individuals experience at least one mental health problem in their lifetime (Saxton, 2013). The psychiatric-mental health nurse begins with assessment of the patient. During assessment, the nurse typically asks the person to describe the precipitating incident and when it occurred. This information provides the nurse with clues as to how the person perceives and interprets the incident. Throughout the assessment, the nurse observes the person's physical and mental status closely for changes. The nurse gathers information about the person's history of previous stressors and how and what the person used to cope with them while developing the interpersonal relationship. The nurse also investigates if the person has tried any of these past methods for the current situation and whether or not they were successful. Other important areas to address during assessment include the person's precrisis level of functioning, strengths and weaknesses, usual coping strategies, and problem-solving skills and available support systems.

The nurse analyzes the information gained from the assessment to identify the person's priority needs, which form the basis for the nursing diagnoses. Common examples of applicable nursing diagnoses may include anxiety, ineffective coping, powerlessness, risk for self-directed violence, and interrupted family processes. From there, the nurse determines the appropriate outcomes based on the priority nursing diagnoses and plans appropriate interventions. The nurse integrates critical thinking and clinical decision making in developing the plan, taking into consideration the type of crisis the person is experiencing and the individual's strengths, weaknesses, and support systems available.

The implementation of the care is to facilitate crisis resolution. However, when implementing care, the nurse must immediately address any life-threatening injuries or conditions first.

Once the immediate threats to life are controlled, then the nurse can begin to use therapeutic communication and therapeutic use of self to continue establishing the interpersonal relationship. The nurse actively listens, observes, and encourages the person to express his or her thoughts and feelings. Doing so helps the individual to understand the significance of the crisis. The nurse also helps the individual in confronting reality to avoid denial, which is an ineffective coping mechanism. Throughout the process, the nurse avoids giving false reassurance and provides accurate information to assist with problem solving and begins to integrate the effects of the crisis into reality.

The nurse focuses on reinforcing previous successful coping skills and encourages their use. In addition, the nurse assists the individual in developing new strategies to aid in adaptation to the current situation and encourages the use of available support systems. If necessary, the nurse can provide referrals to appropriate services to help enhance the individual's social network, thereby diminishing the effect of the crisis.

Evaluation, in general, focuses on whether the crisis has been resolved. The nurse reassesses the situation, looking for the following:

- *Positive behavioral changes*
- *Use of effective adaptive coping methods*
- *Individual's growth with insight into the crisis and precipitating events*
- *Belief in ability to respond to future stressors to avoid crisis development*
- *Anticipatory plan of action for future responses to similar stressors*

In addition, evaluation also serves as the time for scheduling follow-up for the individual and linking him or her with appropriate external support systems that the person may use in times of stress.

Nurse's Role During and After Community and Global Disasters

Nurses are witnesses to a world of crises on an extraordinary scale. Never before have we had the ability to observe moments of crisis on all seven continents simultaneously. Television, the internet, Facebook, and Twitter allow us to interface in real time with people enmeshed in disasters of a local, national, and global scale. As noted by Richards (2009), the Chinese word for crisis incorporates the symbols for "danger" and "critical moment." As nurses, we have the ability and moral obligation to prepare for and respond to these critical moments of human need. Nurses are empowered to make a difference during these pivotal moments, when individuals are vulnerable and communities are crumbling. See **How Would You Respond? 6-1** for a crisis scenario involving a natural disaster.

To intervene effectively during any crisis, nurses must develop expertise to identify persons in crisis and prioritize their needs. Nurses need to be included in disaster response education and planning so they will be prepared to respond at the front lines of disasters (Wilkinson & Matzo, 2015). Nurses can be proactive by becoming familiar with their own community or organizational disaster plans, by taking locally offered disaster training certification courses, and by participating in community drills (Doyle, 2013; Hauserman, 2012). This is especially true when the scope of the disaster encompasses hundreds or thousands of victims. The most effective plan mirrors the priorities of Maslow's (1968) hierarchy of human needs (see Chapter 10 for further information).

First, nurses should connect the individual to resources that meet his or her basic physiological needs of food, water, and rest (**Figure 6-3**). Until these fundamental needs

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 6-1: THE CRISIS OF A NATURAL DISASTER

Calista, a 19-year-old single mother of Asia, 18 months, and Jake, age 3, is a resident of New Orleans. Before Hurricane Katrina, she lived with her mother in a trailer in St. Bernard Parish. Calista's mother watched Asia and Jake, who has cerebral palsy, while Calista worked at a convenience store and attended the local community college.

Hurricane Katrina destroyed Calista's neighborhood on August 29, 2005. While Calista was at work, the storm flattened their trailer, killing her mother instantly. Neighbors pulled Jake and Asia from the wreckage. They were uninjured but the floodwaters were rising so rapidly that the neighbors were evacuated by bus to Houston, with the two children in tow. Because all lines of communication were knocked out by the storm, the neighbors were unable to contact Calista to notify her of her mother's death and her children's safety. Shortly after the neighborhood evacuation, Calista left her job and waded through waist-deep water to return to her home. She found it submerged and empty. No one remained to tell her about the fate of her mother or children. Sobbing, she made her way to a nearby first-aid station, and met a disaster nurse, who offered to help.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *What types of crises are Calista, Jake, and Asia facing in this scenario?*
2. *Which actual and potential symptoms of traumatic stress might the nurse expect?*
3. *What would be the priority nursing diagnoses for Calista?*
4. *Which therapeutic interventions should the nurse initiate and how should they be prioritized?*
5. *How should the nurse develop an interpersonal relationship with Calista?*

(*cont.*)

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 6-1: (*CONT.*)
THE CRISIS OF A NATURAL DISASTER

The disaster nurse completes a brief physical and psychosocial assessment. The nurse ensures that Calista is safe and uninjured, except for weakness from lack of nutrition and acute panic. The nurse establishes an interpersonal relationship with her, and identifies Calista's priority problems. Through this process, the nurse recognizes that Calista's priority needs are to find out the location and condition of her mother and children, make a plan to reunite with them, and obtain food and safe shelter for herself and her family. The nurse discovers that Calista's mother is listed on a casualty report as being deceased. Calista sees an acquaintance at the first-aid station who reports seeing her children board a bus traveling to safer ground in Houston.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *What verbal and nonverbal communication techniques should the nurse use to establish rapport with Calista?*
2. *Which key pieces of information must the nurse convey to Calista?*
3. *Applying the steps of the nursing process, develop a plan of therapeutic intervention that:*
   a. *Identifies Calista's strengths*
   b. *Explores available resources*
   c. *Sets realistic short-term goals*

The disaster nurse brings Calista to a quiet corner and prepares tea and sandwiches that they share together. The disaster nurse uses a reality-oriented approach and tells Calista that her mother has died in the flood. She offers to take Calista to the makeshift morgue in the school auditorium to help her find her mother's body, but Calista insists that her primary concern is to be reunited with her children. The nurse asks Calista for a brief health history of Asia and Jake. She locates a Red Cross volunteer and delegates the responsibility of finding a bus that will take Calista to Houston. Meanwhile, the nurse contacts multiple shelters and learns the location of Jake and Asia, and provides information regarding the children's medical issues to the emergency workers at the shelter. When Calista learns that her children are safe, she collapses on the floor in tears.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTION

1. *What would be the priority physiological, psychosocial, and spiritual nursing interventions appropriate to implement during this 2-hour window of time?*

(*cont.*)

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 6-1: (*CONT.*)
THE CRISIS OF A NATURAL DISASTER

Fourteen hours later, Calista is reunited with Asia and Jake at the Astrodome Amphitheater. Jake asks her where Grandma is and when they can go back to their house. Calista is exhausted but is determined to appear strong and in control. Another disaster nurse meets the family and offers to help.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *Why does the second disaster nurse expect Calista's anxiety level to continue to rise?*
2. *Considering the maturational stages of her two children, what would be an appropriate way to explain the following issues?*
   a. *Death of grandmother*
   b. *Loss of their home*
   c. *Effects of the natural disaster*
3. *To which community resources should the second disaster nurse refer the family?*
4. *Using Maslow's (1968) hierarchy of needs, develop short- and long-term goals for Calista and her children.*
5. *Describe the advantages of establishing a therapeutic interpersonal relationship with Calista and her children.*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 6-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Calista and her family are experiencing several crises here; for example, the social crisis of a natural disaster and situational crises involving the death of the grandmother and the loss of their home. The phases of crisis development and factors impacting Calista's response to the crises are illustrated as the disaster nurses intervene with her. The disaster nurse deals with the immediate needs of Calista and her family while carefully planning for needs as they are presented and arise. Additionally, the nurse anticipates future needs and tries to set up further assistance as the crisis unfolds. Certainly, Calista and her family will have need of further assistance but the initial crisis has been handled and a pathway to healing can begin.

are met, the person cannot focus elsewhere in a situation that is likely overwhelming. The primary initial goal should be clear and straightforward: Provide nutrition, hydration, and rest that will enable the individual to cope with the intimidating obstacles that will follow.

Next, safety and security needs should be addressed. Housing is frequently an urgent concern in the face of a natural disaster, such as a hurricane, flood, or earthquake. The individual's home may be damaged, uninhabitable, or simply gone. The nurse's priority focus is to help the individual and family regain a sense of control and organization by providing alternative housing or connecting them with resources such as friends and family who can temporarily meet that need.

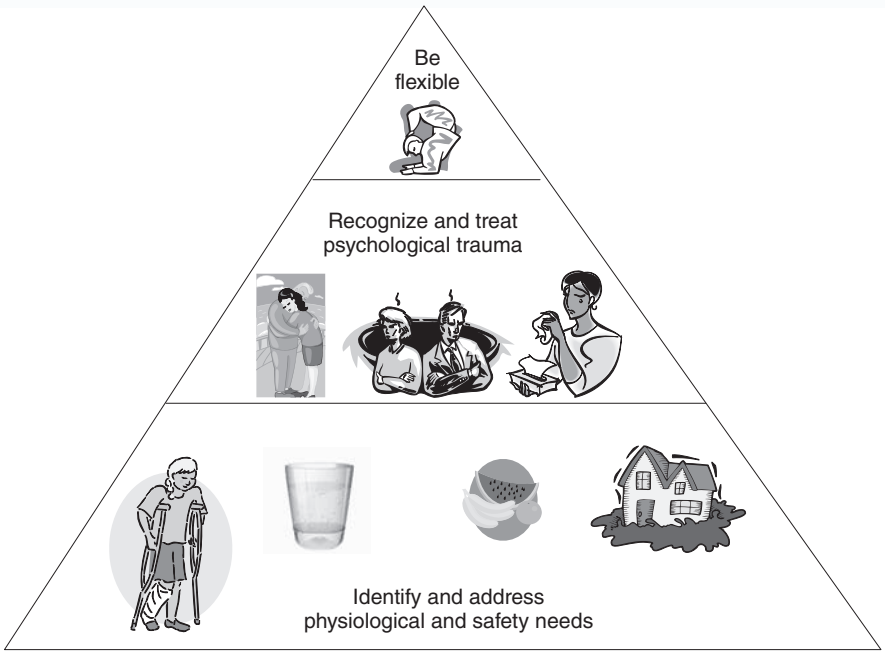


Figure 6-3 *Nursing response to community and global disaster.*

Throughout the interaction with the victims of the disaster, nurses must set an example for professionals and volunteer disaster workers by remaining flexible and providing practical assistance. Lives have been permanently altered in an instant, and feelings of panic and loss of control have replaced the orderly life once known. The nurse's ability to establish a relationship with the victim of a disaster is central to recovery and healing. Wheeler (2011) notes that the nurse's nonverbal approach is equally important as verbal communication to establishing a connection to the disaster victim. The disaster workers may also need to be reminded to care for themselves as well as the victims. Responders may need a break away from the disasters, and may need to be encouraged to eat and sleep before they collapse and become ineffective care providers (Bornemann, 2005).

Nurses must remember to be flexible and set a professional example during crises.

After the individual is safe and rested, the momentary relief may allow for feelings of thankfulness and control. However, the psychiatric-mental health nurse is aware that this sequence of events will likely be followed by anger and frustration when the scope of the loss is realized. The sheer weight of the work that will be needed to rebuild a normal life may feel overwhelming and untenable. Outreach workers on site should actively seek out victims, rather than wait to be contacted, because the anxiety and fear may be paralyzing. Families may not know where to turn or what steps to take to rebuild what has been taken from them. Psychiatric-mental health nurses recognize that, once the initial crisis has passed, the aftermath can leave people emotionally depleted. Caregivers, including members of the health care team, may also need nurturing, comfort, and support. Health care workers may need to take breaks or leave the scene of the disaster in order to regain strength and focus.

It is imperative that crisis workers, including nurses, take care of their own emotional well-being to remain effective.

Stress management is key to coping with disasters. A depleted care provider becomes ineffective. After the 2010 earthquake in Haiti, collaborative teams of health care providers rotated through makeshift mobile hospitals. International teams provided medical care for a week or two, and then left to allow fresh, rested nurses and doctors to take their places.

During global disasters, nurses should recognize that everyone is potentially touched by the scope of the incident. In this electronic age, visual images of those suffering, injured, and killed are broadcast on every television channel and across the internet. We can hear the screams and feel the pain as if we were at the scene. Unlike previous generations, we are all touched and impacted by the trauma and we may grieve with the victims. Grief may be displayed

TABLE 6-3: NURSING CRISIS SUPPORT STRATEGIES FOR CHILDREN

SUPPORT STRATEGY	NURSING INTERVENTION
Assess for signs of physiological or psychosocial stress	• Be alert for deviation from normal patterns of eating, sleeping, coping, and activity level • Communicate with children, parents, and teachers • Compare ego competency development pre- and postdisaster, noting regression
Provide verbal and nonverbal reassurance	• Use reassuring truthful language, such as "I am going to help you" or "Mommy is not going to leave you" • Offer a security blanket or similar object that the child used to self-soothe at an earlier age • Tell the child that adults are doing everything they can to make the situation better • Provide hugs and physical closeness
Foster expression of feelings	• Ask children how the crisis makes them feel • Provide toys and art supplies to promote nonverbal expression of emotion and play-acting • Answer questions honestly at the child's developmental level • Reassure children that the disaster was not their fault
Encourage behaviors and rituals that promote stability and security	• Re-establish family traditions, such as doing homework together or having pancakes for Sunday breakfast • Decrease or eliminate the child's exposure to television and other media coverage of the crisis • If parents are struggling to cope, have relatives or friends step in for support
Act as a role model	• Demonstrate behaviors that the child can emulate • Verbalize the steps you are taking to help yourself heal/recover from the tragedy • Encourage interactions with mental health counselors • Use humor as a stress-buster
Evaluate for posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD; acute, chronic, or delayed-onset)	• Recognize the diagnostic criteria for PTSD • Observe for signs of depression; altered sleep, behavior, and appetite patterns; and increasing anxiety or acting-out behavior

From Davidhizar and Shearer (2002).

in numerous ways, such as anxiety, anger, fear, numbness, heightened arousal, sleep disturbances, or substance abuse. Signs of dysfunction may appear immediately or may be delayed, emerging months or years later. And while the scope of reactions to disasters is broad, the reactions also may vary across the life span.

Disasters and crises are difficult for adults to assimilate and understand, leaving them unable to cope or rebuild their lives without help. The crisis may affect a child even more deeply, because children are in the midst of moving through the stages of development. Changes in children's behavior that arise from crisis are usually reversible with appropriate, prompt intervention. However, prolonged or extreme stress may have a permanent impact on development and may lead to psychiatric illness (Hauserman, 2012). Strategies for supporting children in the face of disaster, as noted by Davidhizar and Shearer (2002), are summarized in **Table 6-3**.

IMPACT OF DEALING WITH CRISES ON PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSES

Nurses working in psychiatric-mental health inpatient or outpatient settings need to be educated about crisis intervention. Dealing with the stress of crisis on a day-to-day basis can affect a nurse's or care provider's mental well-being. For psychiatric-mental health nurses, programs such as crisis prevention intervention (CPI) or equivalent type programs are taught to the registered nurses during orientation. Neither nurses nor other staff members

are allowed to engage in a crisis incident until they have been through the facility's training program. It is imperative that nurses are trained to deal with a crisis so that the patient and the staff remain free from physical and emotional harm.

Another aspect of dealing with a crisis is the emotional toll that can take place for the caregivers. Institutions provide **DEBRIEFING**, a method used following a crisis incident to allow staff to verbalize their feelings and thoughts about the event. It is critical that debriefing is conducted by a staff member who approaches the incident in a nonjudgmental manner and that it take place in a safe and supportive environment. This is not to say that staff may not discuss how things may have been handled differently and make suggestions for change. This should take place as soon as possible following the incident, usually within 24 to 48 hours.

There has been increased interest in conducting research on health care providers who have been involved in disasters such as post 9/11 and Hurricane Katrina and the burnout they can experience. If a nurse is involved in a situation where he or she feels the need for assistance with handling a postcrisis situation, most institutions have employee assistance programs (EAP) where you as a provider can seek additional services.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Stress is an increase in an individual's level of arousal created by a stimulus. The body responds to stress in three stages. If the body is not able to adapt to stress, exhaustion occurs.
- Crisis is a time-limited event usually lasting no longer than 4 to 6 weeks. It occurs when an individual experiences a real or perceived threat to his or her physical, social, or psychological self.
- With crisis, the individual confronts a stressor but is unable to use his or her coping mechanisms to resolve the perceived stress. Disequilibrium occurs, interrupting the person's coping patterns and usual behaviors.
- Crisis can be a negative or positive force. It can provide an opportunity for personal growth and positive change, but it can also lead to a sense of helplessness.
- Crisis is associated with several different psychiatric disorders classified by the *DSM-5*, but crisis is not considered a distinct psychiatric diagnosis.
- An individual's response to crisis is unique and not everyone who experiences stress will develop crisis. Individuals develop balancing factors that determine how they will respond to crisis. These balancing factors are the individual's perception of the event, availability of situational supports, and availability of adequate coping strategies.
- Crisis develops over four phases beginning with exposure to a significant precipitating stressor. During the second phase, the individual attempts to adapt to the stressor but the usual coping strategies become ineffective. In the third phase, the individual seeks out resources to relieve the increased discomfort. If the crisis is not resolved, the individual progresses to the fourth phase characterized by panic or despair levels of anxiety.
- Crisis can be classified in several ways. Crisis classification based on the point of origin includes the following: maturational, situational, and social.
- Psychiatric-mental health nurses integrate the concepts of critical thinking, clinical decision making, and therapeutic use of self when using the nursing process to provide care to a person in crisis to promote crisis resolution and restoration of the person's homeostasis.
- Dealing with the stress of crisis on a day-to-day basis can affect a nurse's or care provider's mental well-being. Nurses need to be mindful of the potential for this strain and use adaptive coping skills to maintain their own well-being. Debriefing following a crisis incident is one method to allow staff to verbalize their feelings and thoughts about the event.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. While interviewing a middle-aged woman who has come to the mental health care facility, the woman states, "My oldest son just left for college last week. I'm so lost without him. The house seems so empty." The nurse would interpret the woman's statement as suggesting which type of crisis?
   a. Maturational
   b. Situational
   c. Social
   d. Adventitious

2. A nurse assesses a patient and determines that the patient is in the alarm stage of responding to stress. Which of the following would the nurse most likely assess?
   a. Pupil constriction
   b. Decrease in heart rate
   c. Rapid respirations
   d. Dry skin

3. A group of psychiatric-mental health nurses is preparing an in-service presentation about stress and crisis. Which of the following would the group most likely include in the presentation?
   a. Crisis can be a chronic situation due to stress.
   b. An unknown stimulus is responsible for the crisis.
   c. The stress associated with crisis must be real.
   d. Crisis is not considered a mental illness.

4. The following are phases associated with a crisis. Which of the following occurs first?
   a. Distress occurs as every method of coping fails.
   b. Anxiety increases as past coping methods are ineffective.
   c. Exposure to a stressor leads to use of past coping mechanisms.
   d. New and different coping strategies are tried.

5. When providing care to individuals involved in a community disaster, which of the following would be the priority?
   a. Food and water
   b. Safety
   c. Shelter
   d. Referrals

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Adams, C. (2010). Dying with dignity in America: The transformational leadership of Florence Wald. *Journal of Professional Nursing, 26*(2), 125–132.

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.

Bornemann, T. H. (2005). Disaster response for mental health professionals. Interview by Shirley A. Smoyak. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 43*(11), 18–21.

Boyd, M. A. (2008). *Psychiatric nursing: Contemporary practice* (4th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Can prolonged stress affect whether breast cancer returns? *NIH Medline Plus the Magazine, 3*(1), 6, Winter 2008. Retrieved from https://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/magazine/issues/winter08/articles/winter08pg6b.html

Caplan, G. (1964). *Principles of preventive psychiatry.* New York, NY: Basic Books.

Cohen, I. B. (1984). Florence Nightingale. *Scientific American, 250*(3), 128–137.

Crane, P. A., & Clements, P. T. (2005). Psychological response to disasters: Focus on adolescents. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 43*(8), 31–38.

Davidhizar, R., & Shearer, R. (2002). Helping children cope with public disasters. *American Journal of Nursing, 102*(3), 26–33.

Downey, E. L., Andress, K., & Schultz, C. H. (2013). External factors impacting hospital evacuations caused by Hurricane Rita: The role of situational awareness. *Prehospital and Disaster Medicine, 28*(3), 264–271.

Doyle, L. (2013). Forensic nursing: Key to disaster preparedness strategy. *Forensic Examiner, 22*(4), 58–69.

Everly, G., & Lating, J. (1995). *Psychotraumatology: Key papers and core concepts in posttraumatic stress.* New York, NY: Plenum.

Fortinash, K. M. & Holoday Worret, P. A. (2007). *Psychiatric and mental health nursing* (4th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Mosby.

Gorman, L. M., & Sultan, D. F. (2008). *Psychosocial nursing for general patient care* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Hauserman, B. (2012). Be prepared now for when disaster strikes: How can psychiatric nurses help? *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Nursing, 25*(2), 57–58.

Hertlein, K. M., Blumer, M. L. C., & Mihaloliakos, J. H. (2015). Marriage and family counselors' perceived ethical issues related to online therapy. *The Family Journal, 23*(1), 5–12.

Hoff, L. (2001). *People in crisis: Clinical and public health perspective*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass Publishers.

Jankouskas, T. S., Haidet, K. K., Hupcey, J. E., Kolanowski, A., & Murray, W. B. (2011). Targeted crisis resource management training improves performance among randomized nursing and medical students. *Simulation in Healthcare, 6*(6), 316–326.

Knebel, A. R., Toomey, L., & Libby, M. (2012). Nursing leadership in disaster preparedness and response. *Annual Review of Nursing Research, 30*(1), 21–45.

Lateef, F. (2011). Ethical issues in disasters. *Prehospital and Disaster Medicine, 26*(4), 289–292.

Lewis, S. L., Dirksen, S. R., Heitkemper, M. M., Bucher, L., & Camera, I. M. (2011). *Medical-surgical nursing* (8th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby.

Maslow, A. (1968). *Toward a psychology of being* (2nd ed.). New York, NY: D. Van Nostrand.

North, C. S., & Pfefferbaum, B. (2013). Mental health response to community disasters: A systematic review. *JAMA, 310*(5), 507–518.

Richards, J. (2009). Times of crisis, times of action. *Nursing Leadership (Toronto, Ont.), 22*(1), 22–23.

Saxton, L. (2013). Effective crisis management. *Practice Nurse, 43*(11), 31–34.

Sederer, L. I. (2012). Are human made disasters different? *Epidemiology and Psychiatric Sciences, 21*(1), 23–25.

Selanders, L. C., & Crane, P. C. (2012). The voice of Florence Nightingale on advocacy. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 17*(1), 10–1.

Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Stanley, S. A., Bulecza, S., & Gopalani, S. V. (2012). Psychological impact of disasters on communities. *Annual Review of Nursing Research, 30*(1), 89–123.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). (2005). *A guide to managing stress in crisis response professions*. DHHS Publication No. SMA 4113. Rockville, MD: Center for Mental Health Services, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Watson, A. C., & Fulambarker, A. J. (2012). The crisis intervention team model of police response to mental health crises: A primer for mental health practitioners. *Best Practice In Mental Health, 8*(2), 71–81.

Wheeler, K. (2011). A relationship-based model for psychiatric nursing practice. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 47*(3), 151–159.

Wilkinson, A. M., & Matzo, M. (2015). Nursing education for disaster preparedness and response. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing, 46*(2), 65–73; quiz 74.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define case management
2. Trace the historical evolution of psychiatric case management
3. Identify the prominent case management models
4. Describe the specific role case management has in mental health care
5. Discuss the functions and activities involved in case management
6. Identify the goals and principles associated with case management

CHAPTER 7

PSYCHIATRIC CASE MANAGEMENT

E. J. Ernst
Jennifer Spies

7. List the skills needed to function as a psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) case manager
8. Explain the roles assumed by a PMHN case manager
9. Correlate how the interpersonal process relates to case management

KEY TERMS

Broker case management model
Case management
Clinical case management
Colorado model
Inpatient psychiatric case management model
Managed care agent
Managed care organization

Case management has evolved over the decades to meet the needs of patients in a variety of settings. Psychiatric nursing case management has evolved through the blending and adaptation of the definitions of case management. Case management has a rich history that is not exclusive to the psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN). Case management includes other disciplines such as social workers, psychiatrists, PMHN practitioners, occupational therapists, and nurses making up the multidisciplinary team. The PMHN has played an important role for patients with wide-ranging psychiatric diagnoses spanning multiple settings. The therapeutic interpersonal relationship is the foundation of psychiatric-mental health nursing. It is important for the PMHN case manager to integrate interpersonal relationships throughout the case management process while building on the strength of the existing relationship (Happell, 2012).

This chapter addresses the topic of case management and the role of the case manager in psychiatric-mental health nursing practice. This chapter provides a definition for case management and traces the historical evolution of psychiatric case management. It reviews the key psychiatric case management models and the goals, principles, and skills involved in the case management process. Case management is associated with the reduction of symptoms as well as a decrease in hospitalization. The chapter integrates the interpersonal process with case management, describing the roles of the PMHN case manager. The chapter concludes with a description of how case management relates to quality of care.

DEFINITION OF CASE MANAGEMENT

CASE MANAGEMENT refers to an outcome-oriented process that coordinates care and advocates for patients and patient populations across the health care continuum. Although other definitions of case management also exist, **Box 7-1** presents two definitions by key professional organizations. The underlying theme for all the definitions is collaborative action for outcome achievement. The results are reduced cost, decreased use of resources, and improved quality of care.

Case management spans health care to include multidisciplinary health professionals, insurance companies, and **MANAGED CARE ORGANIZATIONS**. Managed care is a system of health care delivery and financing that is designed to control health care costs. Health care clinicians may approach case management as a method to provide continuity of care for patients. Case management is not managed care. However, insurance companies and managed care organizations may view case management as an opportunity to regulate the services provided to individuals, thereby controlling costs. Thus, conflict in case management may occur because of the ideological difference in the perception of the role of case management (Belcher, 1993).

The American Nurses Association (ANA) approved a definition of case management, which was later adopted by the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC). The ANCC is the certifying body in nursing that provides certification for many nursing specialties, including the practice of case management in nursing. The ANA defines nursing case management as:

> a dynamic and systematic collaborative approach to providing and coordinating health care services to a defined population. It is a participative process to identify and facilitate options and services for meeting individuals' health needs, while decreasing fragmentation and duplication of care, and enhancing quality, cost-effective clinical outcomes. The framework for

BOX 7-1: DEFINITIONS OF CASE MANAGEMENT

"A collaborative process of assessment, planning, facilitation, care coordination, evaluation, and advocacy for options and services to meet an individual's health needs through communication and available resources to promote quality, cost-effective outcomes."

"An intervention in which health care is integrated, coordinated, and advocated for individuals, families, and groups who require services. The aim of case management is to decrease fragmentation and ensure access to appropriate, individualized, and cost-effective care. As a case manager, the nurse has the authority and accountability required to negotiate with multiple clinicians and obtain diverse services."

—The American Nurses Association (ANA), American Psychiatric Nurses Association (APNA), and International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses (ISPN), 2007, all have adopted these definitions.

From Standards of Practice for Case Management (2011).

> nursing case management includes five components: assessment, planning, implementation, evaluation, and interaction. (ANCC, 2000, p. 27)

The ANA, in conjunction with the American Psychiatric Nurses Association (APNA) and the International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses (ISPN), defined case management as:

> a clinical component of the psychiatric-mental health nurse's role in both inpatient and outpatient settings. Nurses who are functioning in the case manager role support the patient's highest level of functioning through interventions that are designed to enhance self-sufficiency and progress toward optimal health. These interventions may include risk assessment, supportive counseling, problem solving, teaching, medication and health status monitoring, comprehensive care planning, and linkage to, and identification and coordination of, various other health and human services. (ANA, APNA, & ISPN, 2007, p. 90)

This definition became part of the *Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing: Scope and Standards of Practice* published in 2007.

Case management refers to an outcome-oriented process that coordinates care and advocates for patients and patient populations across the health care continuum. Although not exclusive to psychiatric-mental health nursing, it is an important component of psychiatric-mental health nursing.

HISTORICAL EVOLUTION OF PSYCHIATRIC CASE MANAGEMENT

Case management is a practice strategy that has been in existence for more than half a century. Early on, case management occurred primarily in public health settings, eventually expanding into the insurance industry. In the 1980s, the establishment of diagnosis-related groups (DRGs) created a prospective payment system based on categories of patient diagnoses. Institutions were being paid a predetermined amount based on the diagnosis rather than being paid for the actual cost of care. DRGs fueled further growth as case management began being implemented in acute care facilities.

Psychiatric-mental health case management and the role of the PMHN case manager have evolved significantly over the past decades. Two events in the mid-20th century spurred the use of case management in psychiatric-mental health nursing. The initial event involved the return of World War II veterans experiencing psychiatric conditions. The second event was the deinstitutionalization of chronic mentally ill individuals.

The return of World War II service members with psychiatric conditions changed the way mental health services were offered by the Department of Veterans Affairs Medical Administration (VAMC). The concept of caring for patients across a continuum evolved after World War II to describe the extended community services needed for mental health patients. The VAMC developed a model of case management that addressed not only the psychiatric needs of the veterans but also their health and social service needs (Kersbergen, 1996).

The deinstitutionalization of psychiatric inpatients in the 1950s and 1960s resulted from the advancements of medications specifically targeting the chronically mentally ill individuals' most troubling symptoms. Pharmacological advancements prompted the movement of individuals from large, locked psychiatric inpatient institutions to community settings. Case management services expanded and were refined in the 1970s to include community mental health centers. These centers offered supportive community-based services to chronic mentally ill persons living in community settings after having been institutionalized for many years or, in some cases, decades (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004). The case manager in a community mental health setting provided a wide range of services such as helping the patient with housing needs, linking them with workforce re-entry services, ensuring they had adequate food resources, assisting them with transportation needs, assessing medication compliance, and assessing daily functioning. Case management became an important means to ensure the delivery and coordination of community services for these individuals with chronic mental health conditions (Lee, Mackenzie, Dudley-Brown, & Chin, 1998; Yamashita, Forchuk, & Mound, 2005). The goal of case management programs in community mental health settings was to keep the mentally ill out of locked, inpatient hospitals and in the least restrictive community setting.

Case management received U.S. government support in the 1970s. A major stipulation of this support was that community mental health settings assign an individual to mentally ill patients to coordinate their care (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004). Case managers were to assist patients in setting and achieving realistic goals and in utilizing resources appropriately so that patients could live, learn, and work in the social systems of their choice.

Returning World War II veterans experiencing psychiatric conditions and the deinstitutionalization of chronic mentally ill patients are two key events that prompted the evolution of psychiatric-mental health case management.

Case Management Models

As case management evolved in the general health care arena and psychiatric-mental health nursing, the models for delivery of case management also have grown. These models developed in response to the diverse needs of a wide range of mentally ill patients. Currently, multiple case management models exist, with the PMHN providing services to patients in inpatient and outpatient settings. The PMHN may assume the role of primary case manager or function as part of a case management team in collaboration with other health professionals. The spectrum of case management services ranges from the least intensive services, that of the case management service initiator, to the most intensive case management services, that of the clinical case manager. The level of service ideally is based on the patient's acuity level and psychiatric stability. Patients at high risk for homelessness, substance abuse, incarceration, decompensation, and/or rehospitalization require a more intensive model of clinical case management (Malone, Workneh, Butchart, & Clark, 1999).

Case management models vary significantly in methodology. However, most research has credited case management for increased psychiatric stability (Malone et al., 1999). The increased psychiatric stability has been evidenced by increased independence, residential stability, vocational and social functions, decreased inappropriate use of emergency services, appropriate use of community services, and increased adherence of clients to medication and aftercare regimens (Malone et al., 1999).

Although there are numerous case management models in existence, four important models related to psychiatric-mental health nursing are presented here.

Multiple case management models exist with the PMHN assuming the role of a primary case manager or functioning as part of a case management team in collaboration with other health professionals. Services provided by the PMHN case manager can range from initiating the service to providing clinical case management.

Inpatient Model

The **INPATIENT PSYCHIATRIC CASE MANAGEMENT MODEL** originated at Waltham Weston Hospital in the emergency department (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004). In this model, psychiatric patients presenting to the hospital's emergency department were assigned to a **MANAGED CARE AGENT**. This agent, a psychiatrist, therapist, or other psychiatric clinician, performed the initial assessment and initiated the treatment plan. The managed care agent also became part of a treatment team. In addition, the agent acted as the patient's advocate, assisting with accessing appropriate inpatient or outpatient services, including crisis intervention, inpatient hospitalization, respite care, or partial hospitalization. These services were based on the needs of the patient. At the same time, the managed care agent also had to balance care costs and quality. Moreover, the agent was responsible for the patient 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. The sustained consistent relationship associated with this case management model required strong interpersonal process skills.

Continuum of Care Model

The continuum of care model, also known as the **COLORADO MODEL**, was developed at the University of Colorado Health Sciences Center (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004). This psychiatric case management model combined focused therapy (therapy aimed at intense frequent therapeutic engagement of the individual patient), assertive community treatment (ACT; individualized services available 24 hours a day based on needs delivered by a team of practitioners to the patients where they live), and family-centered interventions (services aimed at working with the patient from family systems perspective). Its goal was to rapidly transition hospitalized patients back into the community setting. The patient's treatment plan was developed by the patient, the patient's family, and the treatment team and was based on the assessed needs of the patient. The case manager guides the patient and family across the continuum of care, assisting the patient in accessing appropriate treatment. The case manager also coordinates the multidisciplinary team and monitors and documents the patient's progress.

Broker Case Management Model

Community mental health centers employ multiple case management models. The **BROKER CASE MANAGEMENT MODEL** was developed in the 1960s and 1970s. In this model, brokering case managers, typically single individuals, are responsible for referral, placement, and monitoring of patients (Neale & Rosenheck, 1995). They provide little services themselves. Rather, they assess a patient's needs and arrange for services from other providers to meet

the patient's needs. Brokering case managers may have large caseloads—100 patients or more (Malone et al., 1999). Many community mental health centers have combined the broker model with the disease management model to provide service to the chronic mentally ill (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004). The disease management model focuses on medical or somatic management of symptoms and relies on early detection of decompensation by the medical or somatic team.

Community mental health psychiatric case management services target patients' needs to support independent living across the life span. Psychiatric services include crisis intervention, psychotherapy, family support, and medication management. Community mental health psychiatric case management recognizes the integrated role nonpsychiatric case management services play in chronic mentally ill clients' well-being. Accordingly, assistance with housing, vocational training, and rehabilitative services are included under the model's umbrella of services (Herrick & Bartlett, 2004).

Clinical Case Management

CLINICAL CASE MANAGEMENT is a worker-intensive, clinical case management model. The individuals commonly have the greatest need for services. The PMHN may work as the primary clinician or in collaboration with other health professionals in the community setting. The clinical case manager's care is based on the level and type of services provided (Malone et al., 1999). Research suggests that the optimal case manager-to-client ratio ranges from 1:12 to 1:15 (Harris & Bergman, 1988).

Intensive clinical case management may include multidisciplinary, assertive, team-based support services in the community. Although services may vary, typically 24-hours-a-day, 7-days-a-week access to a multidisciplinary staff is provided. Round-the-clock, supportive telephone access and crisis intervention may be included (Borland, McRae, & Lycan, 1989; McRae, Higgins, Lycan, & Sherman, 1990).

Four models of psychiatric-mental health case management include the inpatient psychiatric case management model, the continuum of care psychiatric case management model, the broker model, and the clinical case management model.

CASE MANAGEMENT PROCESS

For case management to be successful, individuals at risk must be identified early and then appropriately stratified according to need (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Case management services, therefore, must focus on the needs of the individual. Cooperation and partnership between the case manager and the individual and his or her family are essential to the case management process to promote increased compliance with the treatment plan (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). **Box 7-2** highlights the key characteristics of case management.

In response to an individual's health care problem, case managers are able to organize and sequence services (Knollmeuller, 1989). Ultimately, case management should enhance self-care and self-determination, provide continuity of appropriate care, maximize independence by enhancing functional capacity, and coordinate existing and new services to best serve the patient's needs (White, 1986).

The case management process requires an interactive relationship that views the patient holistically and fosters empowerment through advocacy and education.

Goals and Principles of Case Management

The goal of case management is to provide individualized and holistic services to individuals at risk. The services should enhance self-care across the continuum of all health care services provided to a patient (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Spanning the continuum of services provided, the discipline of case management is dynamic and interactive. It requires a high level of interaction with the patient and his or her family as well as among clinicians from multiple disciplines. Strong interpersonal skills are essential for building relationships with diverse individuals to provide service (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Overall, case management should "ensure the continuity of care between all points of care" (Mayer, 1996). Components of this overall goal include early detection and intervention, interdisciplinary communication and care planning, resource use to meet the patient's needs,

BOX 7-2: KEY CHARACTERISTICS OF CASE MANAGEMENT

- Relationship based
- Interactive with patient and others
- Holistic
- Patient empowerment through advocacy
- Information provision through education

BOX 7-3: PRINCIPLES OF CASE MANAGEMENT FOR ADULTS WITH SEVERE AND PERSISTENT MENTAL ILLNESS

According to the NACM, to achieve the goal of case management, services provided should be:

- Consumer-focused
- Empowering for patients
- Racially and culturally appropriate
- Flexible
- Strength-focused
- Normalizing, incorporating natural supports
- Capable of meeting special needs
- Accountable

From the National Association of Case Management (NACM, 1997).

formation of strong alliances between families and health care professionals, and social support and health education. To achieve this outcome, the National Association of Case Management (NACM, 1997) identified principles for service provision that addressed consumer-focused case management and other community support for adults with severe and persistent mental illness. These principles are highlighted in **Box 7-3**.

The end result of case management would be achievement of positive health outcomes through the delivery of coordinated, cost-effective, high-quality care. This care "enhances independent living capability and maximizes the quality of life of patients" (Mayer, 1996).

Necessary Skills for Case Management

The PMHN case manager integrates four critical skills to carry out the process of case management. These skills are critical thinking, communication, negotiation, and collaboration.

Critical Thinking

Critical thinking, as described in Chapter 5, refers to a purposeful method of reasoning that is systematic, reflective, rational, and outcome oriented. PMHNs use critical thinking as a basis for clinical decision making to plan and implement the most effective interventions for a patient.

PMHN case managers use critical thinking to sort through the myriad of information about a patient and the situation. Critical thinking is reflected by determining what information is pertinent and relevant; what, if any, additional information is needed; why certain events occurred or did not occur; and what the potential issues and problems are. For example, after sorting through information from the medical record and patient interview, the case manager realizes that information about the patient's medication use has gaps. The case manager would investigate further to determine exactly what information is missing, such as if a medication was prescribed but not taken, and why.

From the information gathered, the PMHN case manager prioritizes the information and identifies relevant problems. Together with the patient, family, and other disciplines, options are explored, planned, and put into action. Throughout the process, the PMHN case manager continually evaluates the plan and activities, adapting, readjusting, or altering the plan based on changes that have occurred.

Communication

Communication is essential for the case management process (see Chapter 3 for a more in-depth discussion of communication skills). The PMHN case manager requires astute communication skills to obtain from and deliver information to the patient, patient's family, other disciplines, and service providers. A sample interaction is illustrated in **Therapeutic Interaction 7-1**. For example, as a case manager for a patient with a chemical dependency history, the case manager may be involved in transporting the patient to the dentist for some procedures. The patient says, "If I get my tooth pulled, I hope they give some pain meds." The psychiatric case manager might respond, "Well, I think they are likely to offer you something. With your history of addiction, what do you think would be best to accept?"

The PMHN case manager needs to be succinct and clearly articulate both verbally and in writing essential information. He or she acts as the central hub for communication, ensuring that information is shared clearly, accurately, and in a timely and efficient manner among all parties involved.

Negotiation

Negotiation is another essential skill required for effective case management. The PMHN case manager interacts with numerous individuals and parties involved in the patient's care. He or she must be able to look at the "big picture" fairly and objectively, balancing the demands and needs of all the parties involved to ensure that the best outcome for the patient is achieved. For example, a case manager for a patient who needs to attend 10 Alcoholic Anonymous meetings a month per court order may negotiate transportation

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 7-1: EXPLAINING THE CASE MANAGER'S ROLE

J. is a young adult male who has been diagnosed with depression. He is visiting the community mental health center for the first time since his discharge from an acute care facility.

C.M.: "Hello, J., I'm H. and I will be your case manager here at the agency."	Establishment of who you are and your role
Patient: "You will be my what?"	Seeking clarification
C.M.: "A case manager. Here at this facility, a case manager is someone who will help make sure that you have access to all the things you need to help you live successfully in the community."	Providing clarification; identifying his or her role through explanation
Patient: "Are you gonna control my money and how I spend it?"	Feels threatened by possible loss of independence
C.M.: "Do you need help with managing your money? If so, I am glad to assist."	Offers support to decrease perception of threat
Patient: "My dad is my payee, can you make it so I have my own money?"	Seeks more independence
C.M.: "That's important to you?"	Validate/clarify
Patient: "You bet it is, I'm not a child."	Feels embarrassed by the circumstances
C.M.: "I can arrange a meeting between you, your father, and myself. That way I can get to know you and your father better and try to understand how and why he became your payee in the first place."	Offers an option for gathering information that will also possibly strengthen the interpersonal relationship

to and from five of the meetings each month with the patient's sponsor. Or the case manager may be able to obtain bus tokens from the local transportation office so that the patient can ride the bus to and from the meetings. Mediation and compromise are fundamental to negotiation and resolution of the issues and problems.

Collaboration

The case manager is one of several members of a team. This team commonly includes the patient, patient's family, other health care professionals, administrative staff, other agencies, and service providers, to name just a few. The PMHN case manager works closely with the many different team members. Cooperative interaction among members is essential to promote positive outcomes. Collaboration is further emphasized by the Standards of Professional Performance (Standard 11) of the *Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing: Scope and Standards of Practice* (ANA, APNA, & ISPN, 2007, p. 50). Therefore, the PMHN case manager must work cooperatively with others to ensure the best patient outcomes.

A PMHN case manager must be skilled in critical thinking, communication, negotiation, and collaboration.

Essential Functions of the Case Management Process

The case management process involves the following functions: assessment, planning, implementation, coordination, monitoring, and evaluation. These functions are essential for ensuring outcomes that are holistic and individualized to the patient's needs. The cooperation of the patient, as well as all members of the team, is crucial to the success of the case management process. Cooperation of the patient and the family allows the patient the best opportunity for a successful outcome of the treatment plan (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Assessment

The foundation of the case management process is assessment. Assessment is a systematic multidimensional approach to the collection of data from the patient, family, significant others, and health care providers. A written release of information to the case manager and organization must be obtained before collection of patient data to ensure adherence to patient privacy regulations (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Sources of patient data important to the case management assessment process may include the patient, family members, health care institutions, employers, schools, and military records. Data collected are not limited to the patient's physical and psychosocial dimensions but also includes spiritual, cognitive, functional, and developmental abilities as well as economic and lifestyle issues (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Collection of patient data allows the case manager to critically analyze elements essential to subsequent functions in the case management process.

Thorough analysis by the case manager of all collateral data collected allows the case manager the best information set from which to make decisions about formulating a case management treatment plan (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Collateral data may provide insight into the patient's past and present utilization of health care and/or case management services. Often, services accessed by patients are not appropriate and/or are not contributing to a long-term solution for a patient's stability. Many institutions have standardized case management assessment screening and scoring tools to ensure uniformity of data collected during interviews of the patient, family, and significant others (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

In some settings, a screening assessment may be done initially to determine if the patient would benefit from case management. Areas related to screening may include factors such as age, diagnoses, frequency of hospitalizations, numbers of providers, instability of home environment, substance abuse, and risk for complications. If appropriate, then the patient is referred for case management.

Planning

The planning function allows the case manager to make decisions based on collected data to formulate an appropriate plan of action. During this time, the case manager works in concert with all team members to develop a patient-centered, evidence-based, outcome-oriented, collaborative, and interdisciplinary plan of action. The individualized treatment plan should embody the patient's immediate, intermediate, and long-term needs (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). The plan is action-oriented, detailing the specific steps and sequence, and time-specific, identifying the duration and frequency of the actions.

Time frame benchmarks should be developed to later assist with evaluation of the goals identified in the plan. Planning should allow for the possibility that case management may start in one setting such as the acute care setting until the patient is discharged and then transferred to the outpatient setting. Continuity of case management is highest when one individual provides case management services across the continuum of health care settings. However, if transfer is necessary, the case manager should ensure that his or her written records and documents are created in a manner that would facilitate the transfer of care to another case manager should that be necessary (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Including the family in the plan of care has been identified as crucial in developing a therapeutic alliance (Yamashita et al., 2005). However, doing so may require reconnection with family after a prolonged period of time. In such cases, the case manager should educate the family to correct any misconceptions or misunderstandings they may have regarding the patient's needs (Yamashita et al., 2005).

Implementation

Implementation is the execution of the case management treatment plan tailored to the individual patient's needs. On the approval of the treatment plan by the patient, family, physician, and payer, the case manager ensures that the established multidisciplinary team works toward a mutual goal. The effectiveness of the plan's implementation is significantly related to the case manager's ability to plan care that is cost-effective, timely, and appropriate. The patient and all individuals involved in the case management process should have a clear understanding of their role and the goals established (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Patient participation is important to prepare him or her for the changes that may occur with the ultimate outcome of promoting self-advocacy, self-determination, and autonomy.

Coordination

Coordination is essential to the case management process. The multitude of information, activities, and resources needed for achieving the ultimate outcome require

organization, integration, and modification to ensure that there is a smooth flow and efficient follow-through of the plan. Essential competencies needed for coordination include communication, collaboration, assertiveness, and cooperation. These competencies are reflected in activities such as updating involved participants, following up with team members and service providers, and advocating for the patient's needs. Moreover, a case manager needs to understand how health care organizations and insurance systems work. He or she must be able to navigate the myriad of delivery systems, reimbursement methods, and benefit programs to facilitate the plan of care to meet the patient's needs.

During the coordination process, the case manager validates that the plans in place are being implemented in a timely and safe manner. The case manager also ensures that patient confidentiality is maintained. Should a problem with the case management plan arise, the case manager needs to assess the situation and determine the best changes to the plan that will rectify the situation. A case manager must be able to anticipate situations and proactively modify or correct elements essential to a smooth provision of care to the patient (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Monitoring

The case manager ensures that the treatment plan is effective by monitoring the plan of care on a continuing and regular basis. The interval for monitoring is dependent on the individual's needs because each person is unique. Thus, monitoring is performed as often as appropriate based on the individual's needs and progress. For example, a person living alone most likely would require more frequent monitoring than one who is living at home with extended family support.

The case manager assesses and reassesses data from the patient, family, and health care providers to ascertain whether the treatment plan is on target to meet the goals established in the plan. Monitoring is patient-focused, that is, it is done from the patient's viewpoint. It looks at areas that reflect the patient, such as medications, functional level, compliance with instructions, and adherence to follow-up visits. The case manager is able to modify segments of the treatment plan or the treatment plan as a whole if needed to promote patient progress toward the treatment goals (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Evaluation

The evaluation of the case management treatment plan is the final function associated with case management. Evaluation, like monitoring, occurs continuously. It also can occur at specific designated frequencies and when needed. Additionally, evaluation always is done when the plan has been completed.

Evaluation is based on assessment of the patient's ability to work toward and accomplish goals delineated in the plan. It allows the case manager to critically analyze and determine if each health care provider's participation in the treatment plan has been consistent with the organization's standards and appropriate for the patient's needs (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

The case management process involves the functions of assessment, planning, implementation, coordination, monitoring, and evaluation.

INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVES FOR CASE MANAGEMENT

Hildegard Peplau delineated a theoretical basis from which an interpersonal perspective for providing case management services may be developed. Peplau (1962) described nursing as an "educative instrument, a maturing force that aims to promote forward movement of the personality in the direction of creative, constructive, productive, personal, and community living" (p. 53). Links between the work of Peplau and the case management model underscore the importance of the "interactive interpersonal relationship" between the case manager and the patient (Forchuk et al., 1989, p. 36). Therefore, establishing a one-to-one therapeutic interpersonal relationship is essential to the case management process (Forchuk et al., 1989). **Evidence-Based Practice 7-1** emphasizes the importance of the interpersonal relationship for psychiatric case management.

The case manager, initially, is a stranger to the patient. Through interaction, the case manager and patient develop a professional relationship based on the process of the case management. This relationship is more than simply the focused content of interactions between the two parties involved. The patient's needs are at the foundation of this process. Thus, the patient and nurse, in conjunction with other disciplines and services, identify the needs, develop mutual goals, and work to meet these needs and goals. The PMHN case manager uses critical thinking, communication, negotiation, and collaboration throughout the relationship.

Several of the functions of case management, including assessment, planning, implementation and evaluation, closely resemble the steps of the nursing process and the stages of the therapeutic relationship as described by Peplau (1952, 1991; see Chapter 2 for more information about Peplau's stages of the therapeutic relationship and Chapter 5 for a comparison of Peplau's stages and the nursing process). These parallels reinforce the significance of the interpersonal process in case management.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 7-1: THE PROCESS OF CASE MANAGEMENT

STUDY

Yamashita, M., Forchuk, C., & Mound, B. (2005). Nurse case management: Negotiating care together within a developing relationship. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 41*(2), 62–70.

SUMMARY

The purpose of this study was to explain the process of nurse case management involving patients experiencing chronic mental illness. The authors were attempting to define psychiatric-mental health nursing case management, to elucidate characteristics, and to identify common themes between mental health care sites. The authors conducted interviews with nurses in inpatient, transitional, and community settings in four cities in southern Ontario, Canada. The findings identified that negotiating care together within a developing relationship was the basic social process. A common theme of greatest importance emerged, that of "building a trusting relationship" as the foundation of case management. A need for a holistic approach was identified as crucial throughout the relationship. By employing the holistic approach to the therapeutic relationship, the best "negotiation" can proceed on behalf of the patient.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Regardless of the setting, the study demonstrated consistency in the basic social process as key to case management. The establishment of mutual respect and a holistic approach are significant to ensure that the best outcomes for the patient are achieved. This study helps to further emphasize the therapeutic relationship as the basis for psychiatric-mental health nursing case management.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How would the roles of the PMHN case manager correlate with building a trusting relationship?*
2. *What barriers might impact the PMHN case manager's ability to develop a therapeutic relationship with the patient and thus interfere with the case management process?*

Research also substantiates the interpersonal nature of case management. A study by Forchuk et al. (1989) asserted that trust building and establishment of rapport are essential to the interpersonal connection between the case manager and the patient. Additionally, the case manager must assume multiple roles and be able to adapt to changes in the relationship with the patient (Forchuk et al. 1989). Moreover, appropriate humor, touch, and recognition by the case manager that each patient is a unique individual are characteristics and qualities important to the case manager (Hellwig, 1993).

The case management process closely resembles the steps of the nursing process and the stages of the therapeutic relationship.

Roles of the PMHN Case Manager

The *Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing: Scope and Standards of Practice* (ANA, APNA, & ISPN, 2007) provides standards

for all aspects of psychiatric-mental health nursing care. These standards apply to basic and advanced practice registered nurses. Case management is specifically addressed in Standards of Care, Standard Vf: Case Management (**Box 7-4**). Typically, the desired qualifications of the psychiatric-mental health case manager include earned degrees in higher education (baccalaureate or graduate degree) and professional licensure along with certification by the ANCC.

The role of the PMHN case manager varies depending on the case management model used and the institution. The role is further defined by the population served, the setting, and the situation. Although the role of the case manager may vary, all roles have the common goal of improving the quality of health care every individual receives by collaborating with patients to access, facilitate, plan, and advocate for their needs (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

The PMHN case manager is charged with the responsibility to initiate and tailor a patient needs-based treatment plan that spans the continuum of care. Case manager roles may include advocate, consultant, educator, liaison, facilitator, mentor, and researcher (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Although these roles are not specific to psychiatric-mental health nursing case management, all of them do apply. The interpersonal process involving the PMHN and patient further enhance these roles. These roles are also similar in focus to those roles identified by Peplau in 1952 (see Chapter 2 for more information about Peplau and roles of the PMHN), thus reinforcing the interpersonal process emphasis of case management.

When engaged in the case management process, the PMHN case manager can assume seven different roles: advocate, consultant, educator, liaison, facilitator, mentor, and researcher.

Advocate

As an advocate, the PMHN case manager ensures that the patient's individualized needs are addressed and that all members of the team providing services work collaboratively across the continuum of care. As an advocate, he or she helps one to identify what the patient wants and needs and to balance these with the available resources. Advocacy ensures patient access to treatment alternatives that are safe, coordinated, and the least restrictive (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Consultant

The PMHN case manager's role as a consultant is demonstrated by the nurse acting as a resource for members of the team during the course of treatment. He or she collaborates and coordinates with team members and/or the patient and his or her family to assist them in accessing the needed services, including specialty or hard-to-find resources. As a consultant, the PMHN case manager is able to make recommendations about the suitability of vocational resources or training that may be incorporated into the patient's short-term or long-term treatment goals (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

BOX 7-4: STANDARD Vf: CASE MANAGEMENT

The PMHN provides case management to coordinate comprehensive health services and ensure continuity of care.

MEASUREMENT CRITERIA

1. Case management services are based on a comprehensive approach to the patient's physical, mental, emotional, and social health problems and resource availability.
2. Case management services are provided in terms of the patient's needs and the accessibility, availability, quality, and cost-effectiveness of care.
3. Health-related services and more specialized care are negotiated on behalf of the patient with the appropriate agencies and providers as needed.
4. Relationships with agencies and providers are maintained throughout the patient's use of the health care services to ensure continuity of care.

From the ANA, APNA, and ISPN (2007).

Educator

The PMHN case manager teaches the team about the dynamic role of the case manager and how his or her role interfaces across the continuum of care. Additionally, the PMHN case manager educates the patient and family about the specific condition or treatment and assists them in obtaining more information about it. Teaching areas may include specific issues targeting the disease processes and patient's wellness as well as symptom management, disease prognosis, injury and relapse prevention, and adherence to treatment recommendations including medication adherence (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). In addition, the PMHN case manager provides patients and families with information about the health care system and how it works, as well as insurance regulations, reimbursement policies, and appropriate resources and services.

Active participation by the patient and family is essential to the psychiatric stability of the patient. The PMHN case manager is able to assist the patient and family in better understanding technical medical terms, complexities in care, and what to expect across the continuum of care. The education provided allows the patient and family the opportunity to make informed care decisions regarding treatment and care (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). Informed decision making promotes empowerment.

Liaison

The PMHN case manager's role as a liaison unites the patient and family, the health care team, and the payer with the community. He or she acts as the central point for communication, negotiation, and collaboration among the patient, family, health care providers, agencies, and other nonmedical providers of services. Strong interpersonal skills are needed to build positive relationships and affect change. Assertiveness, empathy, and a high degree of organization are qualities necessary for this role (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Facilitator

The PMHN case manager's role as a facilitator ensures that the patient's plan of care moves in the proper direction. He or she has the requisite knowledge and skills to proactively identify barriers to care and to identify system problems that may be common to the organization and affect multiple patients. The PMHN case manager can approach identified problems and bring them to the attention of the appropriate decision makers and committees. In addition, he or she works to ensure that the patient's transition from different levels of care occurs seamlessly, using the best possible resources and level of care based on cost, value, outcomes, and patient factors. Thus, the PMHN case manager plays a significant role in the continuous quality improvement of an organization (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Mentor

The PMHN case manager's role as a mentor allows novice case managers (those new to the role) the opportunity to be mentored by more experienced case managers. The experienced case manager not only introduces the novice case manager to the role and the practice of case management, but also introduces him or her to the philosophy, systems, and resources in place at a particular institution (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005). More experienced PMHN case managers offer their expertise, support, guidance, leadership, knowledge, and skills to the novice case manager as well as to the patient, family, and others involved in the case management plan.

Researcher

The role as a researcher allows the PMHN case manager to enhance the body of knowledge that provides the basis of care. This individual typically has a graduate degree, such as a master's or doctoral degree in nursing, which included significant course work in literature review, research methodologies, and statistics. Case management is a dynamic role in nursing and research must keep pace with the advancements of the profession. Research findings should be formally disseminated to add to the body of evidence, and PMHN case managers should incorporate research findings into evidence-based case management practice (Moreo & Llewellyn, 2005).

Practice Guidelines

The NACM (1997) developed guidelines for case management practice with adults with severe and persistent mental illness. The development of the guidelines published in a monograph was funded by the Center for Mental Services within the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Service Administration (SAMHSA). NACM asserted that with the growth of outcome-oriented case management services, the guidelines developed would serve as a framework to promote consistency. The guidelines set parameters for case management practice. However, they do not follow any one particular case management model. Although nurses were not described in these guidelines as the primary case manager, the importance of including the discipline of nursing was emphasized (NACM, 1997).

The case management guideline development process was undertaken by using focus group guidance from an expert review panel, feedback from people with serious mental illness, and case managers from across the United States (NACM, 1997). The case management guidelines also included feedback from telephone interviews with managed behavioral health organizations and state offices implementing state-managed care programs for the serious and persistently mentally ill. Crisis prevention, access to medical and psychiatric services, and access to community resources were identified as the most important issues by the focus groups.

Engagement and relationship building were also identified as important elements in case management (NACM, 1997).

The guidelines reflected three levels of intensity for case management services (NACM, 1997). Crisis prevention was a top priority for each of the levels of case management.

- *Level One case management services were described as the most extensive services for individuals with the greatest need and disability.*
- *Level Two case management services were described as supportive to promote recovery and rehabilitation.*
- *Level Three case management services were described as the least extensive, providing a basic link to crisis management services for individuals who were more independent and were self-managing their lives.*

Case management services range in intensity from the most extensive support for individuals with the greatest need (Level One) to the least extensive support, providing a basic link to crisis management services (Level Three).

The risk for no case management services was discussed, and it was agreed that Level Three case management would provide access to services in times of urgent need (NACM, 1997).

The NACM (1997) also delineated critical elements of case management that shape practice. These critical elements must exist regardless of the level of case management service being provided. The critical elements include coordination; consumer choice; determination of strengths and preferences; comprehensive, outcome-oriented service planning; collaboration with psychiatrists and other service providers; continuity of care; and family and kindred support.

At any level of service, case management must include the critical elements of coordination; consumer choice; determination of strengths and preferences; comprehensive, outcome-oriented service planning; collaboration with psychiatrists and other service providers; continuity of care; and family and kindred support.

Admission and Assignment to Case Management Services

The NACM (1997) identified admission criteria based on the patient meeting the criteria for serious and persistent mental illness. The serious and persistent mentally ill individuals were often those individuals with high utilization of inpatient or state hospital services. The following are the admission criteria authored by the NACM:

1. Diagnosable Axis I is a *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition, Text Revision* (*DSM-IV-TR*) psychiatric disorder; Axis II psychiatric disorder if there is sufficient functional difficulties, an extended duration of problems/illness, and continued reliance on publicly funded services and supports present.
2. Clinically necessary treatment or service due to the presence of medical and psychosocial needs.
3. A reasonable expectation for remediation of symptoms, behavior improvement, and increased potential for recovery with case management intervention/support or decompensation or relapse due to no case management.
4. Level assignment based on: collaborative conversations between the consumer (and family member, with consumer concurrence) to determine preferences, self-assessment of needs, clinician assessment of needs, strengths on which to build, and expectations for change or support; an assessment tool adopted by the provider, funder, or managed care organization which is consistent with current knowledge and acceptable to both consumers and practitioners; and a second clinical opinion for final recommendation when there is substantial disagreement between the collaborative effort and the assessment process (NACM, 1997).

According to the NACM, "admission to case management does not necessarily mean that the consumer should or must have access to all community support services; it does require a thorough assessment of needs with access to the least intrusive or restrictive services available, as well as special assistance in meeting individual needs" (NACM, 1997, p. 16).

The assessment tool used for the level assignment process may be based on state mental health authorities or managed care organizations. However, attention to the individual's identified needs, the social resources they have on admission, and their strengths is crucial to the assignment of mental health care needs (NACM, 1997).

In addition, determining the level of case management is based on evaluation of seven specific areas. These areas are consumer choice, willingness, social resources and natural supports available to consumers, safety, culture, co-occurring conditions, and any legal issues (NACM, 1997).

Transition Between Levels and Discharge From Case Management

The patient's desires and input must be a primary consideration for the transition between case management levels

BOX 7-5: NACM'S PERSONAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

AS A CASE MANAGER, I . . .

- Am committed to respect the dignity and autonomy of all persons and to behave in a manner that communicates this respect;
- Am committed to each individual's right to self-determination, and the rights of people to make their own life choices;
- Am committed to fight stigma wherever I find it, to educate the community, and to promote community integration for the people I serve;
- Do not allow my words or actions to reflect prejudice or discrimination regarding a person's race, culture, creed, gender, or sexual orientation;
- Strive to both seek and provide culturally sensitive services for each person and to continually increase my cultural competence;
- Am committed to helping persons find or acknowledge their strengths and to use these strengths to achieve their goals;
- Am committed to helping persons achieve maximum self-responsibility and to find and use services that promote increased knowledge, skills, and competencies;
- Acknowledge the power of self-help and peer support and encourage participation in these activities with those I serve;
- Am honest with myself, my colleagues, the people I serve, and others involved in their care;
- Keep confidential all information entrusted to me by those I serve except when to do so puts the person or others at grave risk. I am obligated to explain the limits of confidentiality to the persons I serve at the beginning of our working together;
- Am committed to a holistic perspective, seeing each person I serve in the context of their family, friends, other significant people in their lives, their community, and their culture, and working within the context of this natural support system.

From the National Association of Case Management (NACM, 1997).

and/or discharge from case management services (NACM, 1997). A patient's level of stability is established by evaluating symptoms, personal resources, and supports. The NACM recommends that, when possible, there should be an overlap including continuity of staff and psychiatrist in order to transition a patient between levels.

Personal Practice Guidelines

In addition to guidelines that shape case management practice, individuals acting in the role of case manager also should adhere to practice guidelines on the personal level. The personal practice guidelines established by the NACM are summarized in **Box 7-5**.

MEASUREMENT OF QUALITY IN CASE MANAGEMENT

The foundation that is central to case management regardless of the setting or model used is the philosophy that "when an individual reaches the optimum level of wellness and functional capability, everyone benefits: the individuals being served, their support systems, the health care delivery systems and the various reimbursement services" (Case Management Society of America [CSMA], 2010). The case management process is goal-directed and depends on the case manager's ability to identify and change practice patterns and plans of care as needed to allow produce outcomes. The case manager "should maximize the client's health, wellness, safety, adaptation, and self-care through quality case management, client satisfaction, and cost-efficiency" and "facilitate coordination, communication, and collaboration with the client and other stakeholders in order to achieve goals and maximize positive client outcomes" (CMSA, 2010, pp. 17–18). Guidelines for measuring the outcomes dictate that the case manager uses the goal-oriented process to move a patient toward wellness, safety, self-care, and/or rehabilitation (CMSA, 2010).

Case management services promote quality, targeted, effective outcomes for the patient and/or family (CMSA, 2010). To ensure the quality of care, specific indicators related to the case manager and case management process

are used to measure the quality of care and improvements implemented by the case manager. Outcome standards are demonstrated by the following:

- *Evaluation of documented goals as to the level of achievement*
- *Demonstration of efficacy, quality, and cost-effectiveness in achieving documented goals*
- *Measurement and reporting of how the documented goals impacted the plan of care*
- *Use of appropriate adherence guidelines, standardized tools, and proven process to determine individuals' preferences for and understanding of the plan, need for and willingness to change, and available support to maintain healthy change*
- *Employment of evidence-based guidelines*
- *Evaluation of patient satisfaction (CMSA, 2010)*

Measurement of outcomes can be difficult because mental health stability must be quantified. The NACM (1997) stated that one of the most quantifiable outcomes of case management is the reduction in hospitalizations and use of expensive mental health services. The NACM further stated that symptom reduction and improved quality of life indicators, such as health, living situation, work, relationships with friends and family, and social opportunities, should be evaluated.

Several research studies have evaluated the quality of life for patients receiving psychiatric-mental health case management services. The results indicate varying levels of reported quality of life (Malone et al., 1999). A study by Stein and Test (1980) asserted that patients enrolled in a specialized model of case management reported an increased level of independent functioning as well as a decrease in symptomology when compared against standard treatment. In another study, Bigelow and Young (1991) reported case-managed patients asserted a greater sense of well-being and less psychological distress compared with the control group. Moreover, a third study by Neale and Rosenheck (1995) reported that an intensive case management program at the Department of Veteran's Affairs that provided a strong patient–case manager alliance increased global assessment of functioning (GAF) scores and decreased symptom severity.

The underlying premise of all case management is that everyone benefits when the patient reaches his or her optimum level of wellness and capability.

Although the research described demonstrates measurement of positive outcomes, social, financial, cognitive, and psychological problems create barriers for outcome achievement, measurement, and, subsequently, the quality of care. One of the most significant barriers for case management results from medication noncompliance. Medication adherence is dramatically influenced by the patient's knowledge, motivation, and attitude toward pharmacological interventions (CMSA, 2006). Based on a document authored by the World Health Organization (WHO), the CMSA developed guidelines targeting medication adherence (WHO, 2003).

According to the CMSA (2006), the ultimate goal of the medication adherence guidelines is to provide an environment where structured interaction based on patient-specific needs result in increased motivation and knowledge targeting medication adherence. The CMSA further stated that although the guidelines developed by the organization target medication adherence, the guidelines could be readily adapted to any situation where the goal of case management was to increase adherence to a specific therapeutic treatment plan. The organization developed several case management assessment tools, including the "readiness ruler" to assist case managers in tailoring their interactions to the level appropriate to the patient's readiness and to gauge the level of patient engagement in the process, thereby providing a measureable means for evaluation of outcomes and quality of care.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Case management refers to an outcome-oriented process that coordinates care and advocates for patients and patient populations across the health care continuum. Although many definitions of case management may exist, the underlying theme is collaborative action for outcome achievement.
- The role of the PMHN case manager is guided by the *Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing: Scope and Standards of Practice* (2007). Psychiatric-mental health nursing case management is dynamic, capable of adapting to patient-centered needs that vary widely.
- Multiple case management models exist and these models vary significantly in their methodology. Important models related to psychiatric-mental health nursing include the inpatient psychiatric case management model; the continuum of care psychiatric case management model; the broker case management model; and the clinical case management model.

(*cont.*)

SUMMARY POINTS (*CONT.*)

- PMHN case managers use the skills of critical thinking, communication, negotiation, and collaboration to provide coordinated, cost-effective, high-quality care to meet the needs of patients.
- The case management process involves assessment, planning, implementation, coordination, monitoring, and evaluation to ensure outcome achievement that is holistic and individualized to the patient's needs.
- Establishment of a one-to-one therapeutic interpersonal relationship is essential to the case management process. The patient's needs are the foundation of the therapeutic process and of case management.
- The role of the PMHN case manager varies depending on the case management model used, the institution, the population being served, the setting, and the situation. Case manager roles typically include advocate, consultant, educator, liaison, facilitator, mentor, and researcher. The interpersonal process involving the PMHN and the patient further enhances these roles, which are similar in focus to those roles identified by Hildegard Peplau in 1952.
- Guidelines for case management practice with adults with severe and persistent mental illness have been developed to serve as a framework to promote consistency. In addition, individuals acting in the role of case manager also should adhere to practice guidelines on the personal level.
- Quality in case management is measured by outcomes such as reduction in hospitalizations, use of expensive mental health services, symptom reduction, and improved quality of life indicators such as health, living situation, work, relationships with friends and family, and social opportunities. Medication adherence is also used.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nursing instructor is preparing a class for a group of students about case management in psychiatric-mental health nursing. Which of the following would the instructor most likely include about psychiatric-mental health case management?

a. It is a method of care delivery that is unique to psychiatric-mental health nursing.
b. It is a health care financing strategy aimed at reducing costs.
c. It involves multidisciplinary collaboration to achieve outcomes.
d. It involves reducing fragmentation of care during illness episodes.

2. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is working as a case manager and has a caseload of 120 patients. The nurse is responsible for assessing the patients' needs and arranging for services. The nurse is functioning within which case management model?

a. Broker case management
b. Clinical case management
c. Intensive case management
d. Continuum of care

3. A psychiatric-mental health nurse case manager is reviewing a patient's assessment information and determines that more information is needed to determine why the patient stopped coming to the clinic for his medication prescription. The nurse is demonstrating which of the following?

a. Communication
b. Critical thinking
c. Negotiation
d. Collaboration

4. Which of the following best depicts a psychiatric-mental health nurse case manager acting in the role of a consultant?

a. Instructing the patient about the need for adhering to his medication schedule
b. Promoting patient access to the least restrictive treatment method
c. Recommending possible vocational services that would be appropriate
d. Proactively identifying potential barriers that may affect the patient

5. A psychiatric-mental health patient requires Level Two case management services. Which of the following would most likely be involved?

a. Crisis prevention
b. Extensive services
c. Crisis management
d. Supportive services

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Nurses Association (ANA), American Psychiatric Nurses Association (APNA), and International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses (ISPN). (2007). *Psychiatric-mental health nursing: Scope and standards of practice*. Silver Spring, MD: American Nurses Association Publishing Program.

American Nursing Credentialing Center (ANCC). (2000). *ANCC board certification* (pp. 27–28). Washington, DC: ANCC.

Belcher, J. R. (1993). The trade-offs of developing a case management model for chronically mentally ill people. *Health & Social Work, 18*(1), 20–31.

Bigelow, D. A., & Young, D. J. (1991). Effectiveness of a case management program. *Community Mental Health Journal, 27*(2), 115–123.

Borland, A., McRae, J., & Lycan, C. (1989). Outcomes of five years of continuous intensive case management. *Hospital & Community Psychiatry, 40*(4), 369–376.

Case Management Society of America (CMSA). (2006). *Case Management Adherence Guidelines (v. 2.0).* Retrieved from http://www.cmsa.org/portals/0/pdf/cmag2.pdf

Case Management Society of America (CMSA). (2010). *Standards of practice for case management*. Retrieved from http://cmsa.org/portals/0/pdf/memberonly/StandardsOfPractice.pdf

Forchuk, C., Beaton, S., Crawford, L., Ide, L., Voorberg, N., & Bethune, J. (1989). Incorporating Peplau's theory and case management. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 27*(2), 35–38.

Happell, B. H. (2012). Community mental health nurses, caseloads and practices: A literature review. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 21,* 131–137.

Harris, M., & Bergman, H. C. (1988). Misconceptions about use of case management services by the chronic mentally ill: A utilization analysis. *Hospital & Community Psychiatry, 39*(12), 1276–1280.

Hellwig, K. (1993). Psychiatric home care nursing: Managing patients in the community setting. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 31*(12), 21–24.

Herrick, C. A., & Bartlett, R. (2004). Psychiatric nursing case management: Past, present, and future. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 25*(6), 589–602.

Kersbergen, A. L. (1996). Case management: A rich history of coordinating care to control costs. *Nursing Outlook, 44*(4), 169–172.

Knollmeuller, R. (1989). Case management: What's in a name? *Nursing Management, 20,* 38–42.

Lee, D. T., Mackenzie, A. E., Dudley-Brown, S., & Chin, T. M. (1998). Case management: A review of the definitions and practices. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 27*(5), 933–939.

Malone, S. B., Workneh, F., Butchart, J., & Clark, C. M. (1999). Team case management of chronically mentally ill veterans: A group therapy approach. *Nursing Case Management, 4*(3), 158–166.

Mayer, G. G. (1996). Case management as a mindset. *Quality Management in Health Care, 5*(1), 7–16.

McRae, J., Higgins, M., Lycan, C., & Sherman, W. (1990). What happens to patients after five years of intensive case management stops? *Hospital & Community Psychiatry, 41*(2), 175–179.

Moreo, K., & Llewellyn, A. (2005). *Case management review and resource manual: The essence of case management* (2nd ed.). Silver Spring, MD: ANCC.

National Association of Case Management (NACM). (1997). *Case management practice guidelines for adults with severe and persistent mental illness.* Retrieved from http://www.yournacm.com

Neale, M. S., & Rosenheck, R. A. (1995). Therapeutic alliance and outcome in a VA intensive case management program. *Psychiatric Services (Washington, D.C.), 46*(7), 719–721.

Peplau, H. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: G. P. Putnam and Sons.

Peplau, H. E. (1962). Interpersonal techniques: The crux of psychiatric nursing. *American Journal of Nursing, 62*, 50–54.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual framework of reference for psychodynamic nursing.* New York, NY: Springer.

Standards of Practice for Case Management. (2011). *Case Management Society of America (CMSA)*. Retrieved from http://www.cmsa.org/SOP

Stein, L. I., & Test, M. A. (1980). Alternative to mental hospital treatment. I. Conceptual model, treatment program, and clinical evaluation. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 37*(4), 392–397.

White, M. (1986). Case management. In G. Maddox (Ed.), *The encyclopedia of aging*. New York, NY: Springer.

World Health Organization (WHO). (2003). *World Health Organization report: Adherence to long-term therapies: Evidence for action*. Retrieved from http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2003/9241545992.pdf

Yamashita, M., Forchuk, C., & Mound, B. (2005). Nurse case management: Negotiating care together within a developing relationship. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 41*(2), 62–70.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 8

KNOWN RISK FACTORS FOR PREVALENT MENTAL ILLNESS AND NURSING INTERVENTIONS FOR PREVENTION

Kathleen L. Patusky

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define the term *risk factor*
2. Explain how risk factors may be grouped or categorized
3. Describe the significance of protective factors
4. Identify the major risk factors associated with schizophrenia, affective disorders, substance-related disorders, anxiety disorders, and personality disorders
5. Describe interventions appropriate for primary and secondary prevention
6. Integrate the interpersonal process with primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention activities

KEY TERMS

Primary prevention
Protective factors
Psychomimetic disorders
Resilience
Risk factors
Secondary prevention
Stress-vulnerability-coping model
Temperament
Tertiary prevention

Why does a patient develop a mental disorder? What makes one person more susceptible to developing mental illness than another? The answers to these questions are important to psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs) because they provide the foundation for implementing preventive strategies.

Some individuals have **RISK FACTORS** that increase their chances of developing mental illness. Risk factors are those characteristics, variables, or hazards that, if present for a given individual, make it more likely that this individual, rather than someone selected at random from the general population, will develop a disorder (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 1999, p. 1). Thus, a risk factor *might* predispose an individual to develop a mental illness. However, risk factors do not guarantee that a mental illness will occur. Knowledge about risk factors is important to PMHNs as they develop interventions focused on preventing mental illness or its negative sequelae. Quality and safety education for nurses (QSEN) recognizes that nurses need to assess for risk factors continually as a means of promoting quality of care outcomes, consistent with the competency of safety and quality improvement (Hook & Dunagan, 2013).

This chapter provides an overview of risk factors and how they are categorized. It also describes the impact of protective factors on the development of a mental illness. The chapter addresses the important risk factors associated with major classifications of psychiatric-mental health disorders and describes preventive strategies to reduce the impact of risk factors for developing a psychiatric-mental health disorder.

Risk factors are characteristics, variables, or hazards that increase the probability that an individual will develop a disorder.

THE NATURE OF RISK FACTORS

The underlying cause(s) of mental illness continues to be elusive. However, extensive research into the biology of mental illness has led to the belief that there is a disruption in neurotransmission in the brain. Links among specific neurotransmitters such as serotonin, dopamine, and norepinephrine and the development of psychiatric disorders such as depression and schizophrenia have been postulated, leading to the development of drug therapy to control the disorders. Unfortunately, biology alone is not enough to explain the development of mental illness. Currently, scientists believe that mental illness is due to a combination of influences, not just the person's biological makeup.

One major influence impacting mental health and the development of mental illness is a risk factor. As defined earlier, risk factors are those variables that might predispose an individual to develop a mental illness. A single risk factor is rarely enough to initiate a mental disorder. However, its presence makes the patient vulnerable to the effects of additional risk factors. As risk factors accumulate, the likelihood of a disorder increases. The existence of multiple risk factors is common to many psychiatric-mental health disorders.

Categories of Risk Factors

Risk factors can be categorized or classified in different ways. One method divides risk factors as individual, family, or community risk factors (**Table 8-1**). Another way of categorizing risk factors is within biological and psychosocial categories, or intrapersonal and environmental categories. A third approach delineates risk factors into more specific categories, such as genetic, biological, psychological, social, and environmental factors. For example, biological factors may include head injury, poor nutrition, and exposure to toxins or viruses. Social factors may include parental mental illness or criminality, economic hardship, abuse, neglect, exposure to violence, or death of a family member or close friend.

Many psychiatric disorders share risk factors that can be differentiated as biological/genetic or personal/social/environmental. Questions raised include:

- *Do individuals develop a mental illness because they inherit it?*
- *Is it built into their physiology?*
- *Or is mental illness cultivated as a learned phenomenon, an interaction among the person, family members and significant others, and the community?*

The current perspective is that both genetics and environment play a role. For example, the person might have a genetic predisposition toward schizophrenia, but does not experience life traumas that activate the tendency. Therefore, schizophrenia will not emerge. On the other hand, a person might have a low genetic propensity for depression, but experiences major traumas, loss of loved ones, and financial instability within a short time span. Thus, a depressive episode may result. An understanding of the convergence of possible risk factors is important when evaluating patients for psychiatric-mental health disorders.

Some risk factors can be changed while others cannot. In addition, some risk factors are more responsive to treatment than others are. Age and gender, for example, are risk factors for many disorders that cannot be changed. Another risk factor, stress, may prompt the initial onset of a disorder and can be addressed so that stress levels are reduced.

TABLE 8-1: TYPES OF RISK FACTORS FOR MENTAL DISORDERS

INDIVIDUAL RISK FACTORS	FAMILY RISK FACTORS	COMMUNITY RISK FACTORS
• Neurological deficits; traumatic brain injury (Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Temperament • Physical illness, chronic medical conditions (DHHS, 1999; Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Below-average intelligence (DHHS, 1999) • Psychoactive drug use (Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Childhood abuse or neglect • Lack of friendships or healthy relationships • Combat (Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Genetics	• Biological relatives with a mental disorder (Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Maternal experiences during pregnancy; for example, exposure to viruses or toxins, drug or alcohol use (Mayo Clinic, 2015) • Marital discord • Social disadvantage • Overcrowding or large family size • Father/mother's criminality • Father/mother's mental disorder • Foster care (DHHS, 1999)	• High crime rate/violence • Inadequate schools • Poverty • Inadequate housing • Poor access to health care

Risk factors can be identified before the emergence of a psychiatric-mental health disorder. Risk factors also can change in response to a new developmental stage or a new stressor. For example, starting college at age 45 years may raise the issue of stresses related to self-image, family responsibilities, or financial resources. In addition, risk factors may develop as a consequence of a psychiatric-mental health disorder, thus increasing the person's susceptibility for further difficulties or future problems.

Risk factors may be classified in different ways. Possible categories include: individual, family, and community; biological and psychosocial; intrapersonal and environmental; or genetic, biological, psychological, social, and environmental. Many psychiatric disorders share risk factors that can be differentiated as biological and/or genetic or personal/social/environmental.

Protective Factors

The risk factors for each individual are unique. What is a risk factor for one person may not be a risk factor for another. Thus, the one person may have protective factors to mitigate the effects of risk factors.

PROTECTIVE FACTORS are characteristics, variables, or traits that guard against or buffer the effect of risk factors. They promote adaptation, thereby improving the individual's response to a risk factor. Protective factors may actually reduce the probability that a person will develop a psychiatric-mental health disorder or may decrease the severity of a problem.

Protective factors may be classified as internal or external. Examples of internal protective factors include: good health, high stress tolerance, positive coping skills, average or better intelligence, flexibility, and a positive outlook on life. Examples of external protective factors include: supportive and positive family, social and community relationships, adequate economic resources, and recreational activities.

Individuals possess characteristics, variables, or traits that guard against or buffer the effect of risk factors. These are known as protective factors.

Generally, people feel more secure and better able to cope with life situations when their health is good; they have a sense of control over what is happening around them; and they have a sense of connectedness to others, including family and community members. Knowing that others are available and willing to provide social support is also protective. Spiritual beliefs and a sense of meaning and purpose in life help individuals during difficult times. Economic resources can provide security to individuals, especially older adults.

RESILIENCE is a personal trait of individuals that serves as a protective mechanism. Resilience is the process of adapting well in the face of adversity, trauma, tragedy, threats, or even significant sources of stress (American Psychological Association [ApA], 2015). People are not born with resilience. It is something that is learned over time and involves behaviors, thoughts, and actions. Resilient people have a sense that they are able to cope with chronic stress or recover from trauma through skills such as communication skills, problem-solving skills, and positive coping

styles. Skills that help an individual cope with life's problems can strengthen resilience and foster a belief in the self and in one's ability to cope.

The influence of resilience has been cited in multiple research studies. Resilience has been shown to protect against suicidal ideation (Min, Lee, & Chae, 2015), posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD; Wisco et al., 2014), and the negative long-term effects of child abuse and neglect (Schulz et al., 2014), to name just a few areas of influence. In response to such findings, interventions that would promote resilience have been growing. In one systematic review of studies on resilience-promoting programs, six of seven randomized control trials showed that such programs were effective (Macedo et al., 2014). The ability to increase resilience in individuals can serve a mitigating function against risk factors.

Resilience is a protective function that is learned over time.

The Stress-Vulnerability-Coping Model

An individual's risk and protective factors determine how well he or she will cope with stressors. If risk factors are high and protective factors are low, the individual will have more difficulty coping and an increased chance of developing a psychiatric-mental health disorder. The **STRESS-VULNERABILITY-COPING MODEL** of mental illness presents one way of understanding how risk factors are involved with the development of psychiatric-mental health disorders (Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria [MIFV], 2008).

The stress-vulnerability-coping model identifies risk factors according to three categories: biological, personal, and environmental. Biological risk factors include a family history of mental illness, brain abnormalities, neurodevelopmental problems, and diseases of a medical nature. Personal risk factors include poor social skills, poor coping skills, and communication difficulties. Environmental risk factors include substance abuse, work or school problems, rejection by other people, stressful relationships, poor social support, and the occurrence of major life events (MIFV, 2008).

This model also identifies protective factors for psychiatric-mental health disorders. These include good physical health, no family history of mental illness, good coping and communication skills, good levels of social support, medication, and talk therapy when indicated. Although the stress-vulnerability-coping model was originally developed to explain the development of schizophrenia, it is now used to understand other psychiatric disorders as well (MIFV, 2008).

According to the stress-vulnerability-coping model, mental illness arises from the interplay of the three dominant factors, that is, stress, vulnerability, and coping. Good coping skills protect the individual from developing a mental illness even when they are in high-stress situations and vulnerable. This vulnerability increases as the number and intensity of risk factors increase.

RISK FACTORS FOR MAJOR PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH DISORDERS

The probability that an individual will develop a psychiatric-mental health disorder is dependent on that person's risk and protective factors. Although these factors are unique to the individual, some of these factors, such as genetics, often are seen as playing a role in the development of several different psychiatric-mental health disorders. The risk factors for the major classes of psychiatric-mental health disorders are addressed.

Disorders of Attention

Before the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual* (5th ed.; *DSM–5*; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013), disorders of attention were categorized as disorders of infancy, childhood, or adolescence. In actuality, attentional disorders may begin during the first part of life, but often continue into adulthood. The mental illnesses under this category include attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and autism spectrum disorder (ASD).

Genetics/biology and temperament are two important intrapersonal risk factors for the development of psychiatric-mental health disorders that may begin at infancy and progress to adolescence and adulthood (**Box 8-1**). Genetics refers

BOX 8-1: RISK FACTORS FOR DISORDERS OF ATTENTION

- Genes/DNA and brain development
- Birth traumas/premature birth
- Intrauterine exposure to drugs
- Exposure to infections, toxins (such as lead poisoning), or other insults affecting brain structures or chemistry
- Temperament
- Blood relatives with ADHD or another mental disorder (Mayo Clinic, 2015)

to the complex makeup of genes and DNA that will contribute to the biology of the child's brain. Biology also includes any birth traumas, exposure to infections or toxins while in utero, or other insults that affect brain structures or chemistry.

TEMPERAMENT has been viewed as a precursor to personality. Researchers have suggested that temperament is "hard-wired" into each child at birth, not learned. Temperament represents innate aspects of personality that determine how a child tends to respond to the world. It is the distinctive behavior involved with activity and adaptation.

Several studies have been done to describe temperament. A classic landmark study by Thomas, Chess, and Birch (1968) identified three patterns of temperament:

- Easy or flexible*: Positive mood and approach to new situations, low emotional intensity, and regular eating and sleeping patterns. Children are generally calm, happy, and not easily upset.*
- Difficult, active, or feisty*: Negative mood and response to new situations, high emotional intensity, irregular sleeping, and eating patterns. Children are often fussy, fearful of new people or situations, easily upset by noise or commotion, and intense in their reactions.*
- Slow-to-warm-up or cautious*: Negative but mild emotional response to new situations that are intense and initially slow in adapting but eventually become positive. Children are inactive and fussy, tend to withdraw or react negatively to new situations but become more positive with continued exposure.*

Another study described children as challenging (fitting a typology of high maintenance, cautious, and slow-to-warm-up) or easy (industrious, social, and eager to try; McClowery, 2002). Neither challenging nor easy temperaments are necessarily risk factors on their own. The issue is one of "goodness of fit" (Thomas et al., 1968). For example, if an infant is fussy and cranky, he or she will likely be fine if the mother is easy going and not overly disturbed by the infant's agitation. However, if the mother is anxious and stressed, both she and the infant are likely to irritate each other further. As children age, temperament is assimilated into personality and the issue of goodness of fit can continue to determine the quality of a child's social relationships (Maziade et al., 1985; Thomas & Chess, 1984; Werner & Smith, 1992).

Genetics/biology and temperament are two important intrapersonal risk factors for the development of attentional psychiatric-mental health disorders.

The risk factors in Box 8–1 are particularly relevant to ADHD. The ASD risks include male gender, family history of ASD, preterm delivery (before 26 weeks), older parental age, and certain medical disorders (including fragile X syndrome, tuberous sclerosis, Tourette and Rett syndromes; Mayo Clinic, 2015).

In addition to genetics/biology and temperament, other general risk factors during childhood may lead to a variety of psychiatric-mental health problems. These include the individual factors of neurophysiological deficits such as attention-deficit disorders (ADD), hyperactivity and autism, difficult temperament, chronic physical illness, and below-average intelligence. In addition, children are especially sensitive to family issues such as severe marital discord, social disadvantage, overcrowding or large family size, paternal criminality, maternal mental disorder, and admission into foster care. Community factors such as living in an area with a high rate of crime and inadequate schools also can have a major effect (DHHS, 1999).

Moreover, some individual risk factors can lead to a state of vulnerability in which other risk factors can have a greater effect. For example, although low birth weight is a general risk factor for multiple physical and mental outcomes, when combined with a high-risk environment, it often results in poorer outcomes (McGauhey, Starfield, Alexander, & Ensminger, 1991). In another example, foster placement instability and family chaos have been associated with suboptimal development of the prefrontal cortex, leading to poor executive function, which results in greater risk of ADHD, other behavioral disorders, and substance abuse (Fisher, Mannering, Van Scoyoc, & Graham, 2013).

Psychotic Symptoms—Schizophrenia

Experts have concluded that genetic and environmental risk factors interact in the development of schizophrenia (**Box 8-2**). Studies have shown that the correlation of schizophrenia between identical twins is less than 50%, supporting the claim that genetics alone is insufficient as a cause. However, the high correlation supports a strong genetic component. This strong relationship decreases gradually among relatives of the patient with schizophrenia. Moreover, second-degree relatives are several times more likely to develop schizophrenia than someone in the general population, while third-degree relatives are twice as likely to develop schizophrenia. Although a specific causal gene has not been identified, several possibilities are being explored. Experts believe that there are at least as many as 12 gene variations that can result in symptoms (Schizophrenia.com, 2015).

BOX 8-2: RISK FACTORS FOR SCHIZOPHRENIA

Genetic/familial patterns

Gestational and birth complications

- Maternal malnutrition
- Rh incompatibility
- Exposure to viruses, toxins (especially first and second trimesters)

Birth during late winter or early spring

Major life changes

Lower socioeconomic status (poverty)

Stress/exposure to traumatic events

Substance abuse, especially psychoactive drugs during teenage and young adulthood years

Head trauma

Inflammation or autoimmune diseases

Father is older age

From Benros et al. (2011); Heins et al. (2011); Mayo Clinic (2015); and Orlovska et al. (2014).

A long history of research has considered gestational and birth complications as biological risk factors for schizophrenia. Closely associated with these complications are maternal malnutrition and Rh incompatibility. In addition, a late winter or early spring birth (particularly during the months of February and March) has been identified as a risk factor due to maternal exposure to influenza or viral infections, especially during the second trimester (Mayo Clinic, 2015; Schizophrenia.com, 2015). When fetal distress has been combined with developmental delay, a fivefold increase in the risk of schizophrenia has been identified (Arehart-Treichel, 2011).

The stress-vulnerability-coping model, described earlier in this chapter, was developed initially to explain schizophrenia. This model included poverty as a risk factor, although some researchers view poverty as a result of illness rather than part of the cause. Meltzer and Fatemi (2008) concluded that patients with schizophrenia are at high risk for poverty because they face difficulties with unemployment, homelessness, inadequate housing, poor health, and poor access to health care—labeled the "downward drift" in socioeconomic status. Especially tragic is the fact that first episodes often occur during late adolescence or the early 80s. Major life changes, another risk factor, are relevant at this time as individuals leave home for the first time, go to college, start a first job, or marry. Additional risk factors include substance abuse and stressors of everyday life.

Researchers have attempted to identify risk factors that would predict psychosis in young adults before a full-blown episode, permitting earlier interventions (Cannon et al., 2008). The factors identified were accurate in predicting psychosis 35% of the time. This number rose to 65% to 80% if specific combinations of risk factors were found in study participants. These combinations included: (a) decline in social functioning, as well as an increase in withdrawal and inactivity; (b) family history of psychosis with recent deterioration of function (e.g., drop in grades, withdrawal from school activities); (c) increase in unusual thoughts; and (d) increase in suspiciousness or paranoia and past or current drug abuse.

Risk factors for schizophrenia include the interaction between genetics and environment. In addition, gestational and birth complications are associated biological risk factors.

Disordered Mood

Affective or mood disorders include major depression and bipolar disorder. Decades of research support the heritability of unipolar (major depression) and bipolar disorders. An increased risk for bipolar disorder among first-degree relatives with bipolar disorder has been shown to range from 3% to 8%. The risk of depression among first-degree relatives with depression may be two to three times that of the general population. In identical twin studies, findings support the conclusions that genetics play a greater role in bipolar disorders than in major depression, that there is a genetic overlap between bipolar and depressive disorders, and that environmental influences play a significant role in mood disorders (Kelsoe, 2009). With genetics serving as a risk factor for both depression and bipolar disorder, new findings indicate a genetic "hotspot" that identifies risk for both disorders (McMahon et al., 2010). The search for additional genetic risk factors for depression or bipolar disorder continues. **Table 8-2** identifies the risk factors associated with mood disorders.

Gender is an additional risk factor for developing affective disorders. Bipolar I disorder occurs equally in men and women, whereas bipolar II disorder is more common in women. Bipolar I may be expressed differently in women, with higher rates of depression, mixed mania, and suicidal behavior; later onset of illness; and comorbidities with eating, anxiety, and metabolic disorders. Men showed earlier onset of illness; higher rates of mania; and comorbidities with alcoholism and other forms of substance abuse (Azorin et al., 2013). A study examining gender differences

TABLE 8-2: RISK FACTORS FOR AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

MAJOR DEPRESSION	BIPOLAR DISORDER
Gender	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
Genetics/familial patterns	Genetics/familial patterns
History of depressive episodes	Substance use/abuse
Biological: Abnormal mood regulation circuitry	
Stress	
Substance use	
Few social supports	
Medical illness	

in depression severity and depressive subtypes acknowledged that, while women had higher lifetime rates of depression, they did not necessarily score higher than men on measures of severity if their depression was of the unipolar type. If women's depression was of the bipolar subtype, however, their measures of severity were significantly higher than those of the men (Parker, Fletcher, Paterson, Anderson, & Hong, 2014).

Physiological factors also serve to increase the risk of mood disorders. Very low birth weight (less than 1,500 g) is more likely to experience depression as adults than are infants of normal birth weight (greater than 2,499 g; Westrupp, Northam, Doyle, Callanan, & Anderson, 2011). Brain imaging has revealed a biological risk factor of abnormal mood regulation circuitry in the brain. This abnormality is present even when the patient with depression feels well. It reasserts itself during relapse when levels of certain neurotransmitters drop (Hasler et al., 2008). Given the cyclical nature of depression, this risk factor offers an explanation for both the initiation and the relapses of major depressive disorders. The potentially cyclical nature of depression indicates that a history of past episodes is a risk factor. Life stressors also are known to play a role in the emergence of depression. Substance use, particularly central nervous system (CNS) depressants, can result in depression. Individuals with few social supports, especially the elderly or those with a medical illness, are at high risk for depression. At the same time, one study noted that 20% of patients with major depression later developed either mania or hypomania, and another study identified the use of antidepressants as a risk factor for bipolar I in certain genotypes (Boschloo et al., 2014; Frye et al., 2015).

Family conditions are an important area of discovery with bipolar disorder. The risk of bipolar disorder has been shown to be higher among children of fathers older than 50 years and younger than 20 to 24 years of age. No association was found with maternal age (Chudal et al., 2014). Children having a parent or a sibling with bipolar disorder are four to six times more likely to develop the disorder than the average person. However, most children with a family history of bipolar disorder do not develop the illness (Nurnberger & Foroud, 2000). Studies have shown that certain traits, including a history of hospitalizations, comorbid obsessive-compulsive disorder, age at first manic episode, and number and frequency of manic episodes, are present in families with a bipolar member (Potash et al., 2007). These traits serve as risk factors for the child's development of bipolar disorders.

Family circumstances are also implicated in major depression. The nature of familial influences, involving complex relationships that can affect all systems of an individual, particularly highlight how multifaceted risk factors can become. Post (1992) described the biological phenomenon of kindling, in which stress changes neurotransmission mechanisms, a first episode of depression or mania occurs, and electrophysiological sensitivity to future stress results in subsequent depressive or manic states. This translates into the effects that childhood adversity has on the emergence of mood disorders (Oldehinkel & Ormel, 2015).

Genetics is a risk factor for both depression and bipolar disorders. Gender, life stressors, substance abuse, and inadequate social supports are additional risk factors.

Substance Misuse

Genetics and neurophysiology are now viewed as exerting a strong influence on the abuse of substances, especially alcohol. Specific genes have been identified that increase the risk for alcoholism. Areas of the brain linked to cravings or vulnerability to substance use, reward pathways, and mechanisms of drugs and their effects on neurotransmitters

BOX 8-3: RISK FACTORS FOR SUBSTANCE-RELATED DISORDERS

Genetics/familial pattern
Age
Gender
Personality factors: impulsivity, risk taking
Depression, anxiety
PTSD
Stress
Social/cultural factors of substance using friends/partner
Mixing medication and alcohol

are a few of the research findings that aid the current understanding of substance abuse.

Although substance use disorders are strongly linked to familial patterns, genetics, biology, and learning from the environment also probably play intrinsically connected roles (**Box 8-3**). The child who sees a parent drink a beer and tries one for himself or herself is responding to modeled behavior. If the child goes on to sneak a beer two or three times a week, at what point do genetics and biology take over to create dependence? Parental awareness of adolescent behavior is an important potential moderator of adolescent substance use (Abar, Jackson, & Wood, 2014).

The existence of a medical disorder can also combine with biology and genetics to serve as a risk factor. Consider the current focus on addiction to prescription medications. The patient who experiences a painful injury but has no previous history of substance abuse and is prescribed oxycodone (OxyContin) or hydrocodone and acetaminophen (Vicodin) may find that the stimulation of the brain's reward pathways and the activation of craving sites lead to a substance use disorder.

Age is another risk factor. Individuals who use substances at an early age—16 years old or younger—are more prone to substance abuse or dependence (Mayo Clinic, 2015). Gender, however, is somewhat equivocal. Men are more likely to abuse or become dependent on substances, although this pattern may depend on the type of substance. Personality factors of impulsivity or risk taking place a person at greater risk of substance abuse or dependence. Mood instability, particularly the presence of depression or anxiety, serves as an additional risk factor, as does a perception that one is under extreme stress.

Substance use disorders are strongly linked to familial patterns. Genetics, biology, and learning from the environment are also thought to be intrinsically connected.

Anxiety

The expansive category of anxiety disorders contains several specific diagnoses that share many of the same risk factors, although with some variation. In general, anxiety disorders are viewed as arising in individuals with a biologically low response threshold to circumstances that generate anxiety. The autonomic nervous system creates a more intense response to the experience of anxiety or fear. The regulation of the neurotransmitters, gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and serotonin, are implicated. From individual and environmental perspectives, patients with low self-esteem who demonstrate timidity and discomfort with aggression and who describe their parents as critical or angry are more likely to develop an anxiety disorder (**Box 8-4**).

Heritability of anxiety disorders has been shown across genetic studies to be as high as 30% to 67% (Domschke & Maron, 2013). Specific diagnoses within the anxiety disorders category have been studied for their genetic risk factors. Although significant heritability has been shown with panic disorder, the search for specific risk genes continues and may be specific to sex (Reif et al., 2012). One twin study of multiple anxiety disorders estimated twin resemblance at 1.6% for individuals with generalized anxiety disorder and 16.9% for persons with social phobia, with female participants showing higher prevalence (Lopez-Sola et al., 2014).

The genetics of PTSD is also under investigation. With PTSD, classified as an anxiety disorder, a person develops distressing symptoms after exposure to a traumatic life event. The person persistently reexperiences the trauma of the event and avoids any stimuli associated with the trauma (see Chapter 13 for a more detailed discussion of PTSD). Currently, research is considering certain substances that contribute to fear memories. These biological risk factors include stathmin (a protein necessary for fear formation), gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP; a brain chemical that seems to control the fear response), and a serotonin gene that seems to enhance the fear response. Environmental factors such as childhood trauma, history of abuse, head injury, or existing mental illness have been noted to predispose a person to PTSD. Personality and cognitive factors—that is, the way that individuals perceive situations—and the availability of social support may

BOX 8-4: RISK FACTORS FOR ANXIETY DISORDERS

Female gender
Biological propensity: low response threshold
Childhood trauma
Genetics/familial patterns
Childhood trauma
Head injury or other serious illness
History of abuse
History of other mental illness
Low self-esteem/timidity; discomfort with aggression
Critical or angry parents
Drug or alcohol use
Violence, disasters
Stress

also influence the emergence of PTSD (National Institute of Health [NIH], 2015). Situational risk factors have been identified and include: "survival of natural and man-made disasters such as floods; violent crimes such as kidnapping, rape or murder of a parent, sniper fire and school shootings; motor vehicle accidents such as automobile and plane crashes; severe burns; exposure to community violence; war; peer suicide; and sexual or physical abuse" (Hamblin & Barnett, 2009, p. 1). The severity of exposure to the traumatic experience, female gender, conflicted preexisting family dynamics, and age (between 40 and 60 years) can also contribute to PTSD (U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs, 2013).

In contrast to risk factors, an optimistic outlook, an ability to frame negative circumstances as challenges, and an availability of social support can serve as protective factors. Additionally, developing resilience also is important. Reducing PTSD is possible if the individual actively seeks support from friends and family. Joining a support group after a traumatic event can be helpful, although some experts warn against poorly facilitated groups that can retraumatize the members. Being able to view one's actions in response to the event positively, coping self-efficacy, having a positive coping strategy, learning from the situation, and being able to overcome fear with effective action reduces the likelihood of a negative outcome (Min et al., 2015; U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs, 2013).

An optimistic outlook, social support, and resilience are protective factors for anxiety disorders.

THE INTERFACE OF PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH DISORDERS AND MEDICAL CONDITIONS

Medical conditions can act as risk factors, also playing a role in the development of a psychiatric-mental health disorder. Consider the average patient with a medical problem. The patient's reaction to a basic procedure might be influenced by psychological risk factors, such as fear, anxiety, or depression, that can complicate care. The impact may lead to the patient's inability to participate in care or to make decisions about care. The existence of psychiatric-mental health issues such as substance abuse or obsessive-compulsive behavior could complicate the picture further. Any medical disorder could be a risk factor for a psychiatric-mental health disorder. Any psychiatric-mental health disorder might place a patient at greater risk for a medical disorder. Some, if not all, medical and psychiatric-mental health disorders may represent a circular risk relationship. Therefore, a firm knowledge base about the impact of psychiatric-mental health disorders on patients with medical conditions and the influence of medical conditions on psychiatric-mental health problems are needed.

Factors Influencing Risk

Demographics reveal that the aging population is growing. The projected increases in the aging population suggest that the incidence and prevalence of dementias, delirium, and late-onset psychiatric-mental health disorders will also increase. Secondly, the population of mentally ill older adults is growing such that it is the largest that it has been in history. Individuals who might have died previously due to nonspecific treatments, or even side effects of the medications, are now living longer. Psychiatric illnesses are chronic conditions; just as many persons are living longer with chronic medical illnesses, the same is true for psychiatric illnesses. No longer are psychiatric patients dying in the back wards of outdated institutions. Rather, most psychiatric-mental health patients reside in communities. These patients are not only coping with their psychiatric-mental health disorders, but they also are presenting with the common disorders associated with aging such as arthritis, hypertension, diabetes, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The average patient on a medical or surgical

unit might also have schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, or an anxiety disorder.

Medically induced pathology is another area of concern. Patients with no previous psychiatric history can experience medication reactions that reveal an underlying psychiatric-mental health problem, such as a hypomanic phase of bipolar disorder in response to the use of corticosteroids. Patients with preexisting psychiatric-mental health disorders might find that their psychotropic medications react unfavorably with medications used to treat the medical condition. The reaction may be an additive or synergistic effect or an adverse effect, including a return of psychiatric symptoms. If given a medication that causes psychiatric symptoms in some individuals, patients with a psychiatric-mental health history of problems may be at greater risk for a reaction. Additionally, psychotropic medications can serve as risk factors, demonstrating idiosyncratic or toxic effects unrelated to the medical picture. Unless these effects are accurately identified and properly treated, the patient can experience serious harm or even death. Moreover, discontinuation of certain psychotropic medications without tapering can lead to very uncomfortable symptoms for the patient.

Lastly, medical disorders may mimic psychiatric disorders. The term **PSYCHOMIMETIC DISORDERS** could be misleading, presenting as a seizure disorder or another medical condition such as Cushing's syndrome. Medications such as reserpine, lidocaine, procainamide, L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA), and many others produce effects that are similar to psychiatric-mental health disorder symptoms (Evans et al., 2005). Awareness of physical illness and the complications that might serve as psychiatric-mental health risk factors is necessary to assist in recognizing and preventing patient difficulties before they occur.

Any medical disorder could be a risk factor for a psychiatric-mental health disorder. Any psychiatric-mental health disorder might place a patient at greater risk for a medical disorder.

Medical and Psychiatric-Mental Health Disorders as Risk Factors

Multiple medical disorders have been associated with the development of psychiatric-mental health disorders (**Table 8-3**). In particular, major depression is of primary concern because of the associated increased morbidity and mortality that occurs when a patient with a medical disorder develops depression.

Depression in patients with cancer can compromise adherence to a treatment regimen, or prompt risky health behaviors. Depression has also been associated with immunosuppression, which might increase cancer risk. Depression in patients who have had a stroke has been shown to limit the return of activities of daily living (ADL) and impair cognitive function. Mortality rates for patients with stroke and depression also show a three- to fourfold increase (Evans et al., 2005). In patients with heart disease, depression is strongly associated with a poor prognosis after a myocardial infarction prognosis and the risk of death is also increased, even years later. Heart disease is common in patients with a bipolar disorder who also experience an increased risk of death. A circular relationship between depression and cardiovascular disease is quite common, and the causality of that relationship is unclear. What is clear is that comorbidity of depression and cardiovascular disease affects the prognosis negatively (Hare, Toukhsati, Johansson, & Jaarsma, 2014).

Depression also is considered a risk factor in HIV/AIDS. Depression is associated with poor adherence to medication treatment, deterioration in psychological function, more rapid progression of HIV/AIDS, and higher mortality rates. For example, PTSD and depression have been shown to influence medication adherence and HIV disease markers (Boarts, Buckley-Fischer, Armelie, Bogart, & Delahanty, 2009). A study by Cruess et al. (2003) concluded that the immune system changes prompted by depression might affect entry and replication of the virus in the body. Additionally, a bipolar disorder is considered a risk factor with HIV/AIDS because it might promote high-risk behaviors.

Diabetes and depression demonstrate a circular risk relationship. Both can present with symptoms of weight loss, fatigue, hypersomnia, and decreased libido. Depression also may be linked with poor glucose control through the hypothalamus–pituitary–thyroid axis. In a study of patients with diabetes, approximately 26% of patients self-reported symptoms of depression (Evans et al., 2005). However, other sources suggest the incidence may be even higher. Among patients with diabetes, depression has been associated with nonadherence to the treatment regimen, poor glycemic control, increased health care costs, progression and earlier onset of micro- and macrovascular complications, disability, and death.

In general, the relevance of attending to the physical health of patients with psychiatric disorders, particularly serious mental illness, cannot be overstated. For a variety of reasons—from the metabolic effects of psychotropic medication to the propensity for metabolic syndrome to the high rate of smoking and suboptimal lifestyle factors of patients with mental illness—people with serious mental illness have significantly shortened life spans. Men

TABLE 8-3: MEDICAL DISORDERS AND CONDITIONS THAT PRESENT RISK OF PSYCHIATRIC COMORBIDITY

MEDICAL DISORDERS AND CONDITIONS	PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH DISORDER (OFTEN SEEN AS COMORBIDITY)
Fibromyalgia Risk for hypertension Smoking	Psychiatric illness
Acute coronary syndrome Alzheimer's disease Cancer Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease Congestive heart failure Coronary artery bypass graft Coronary/ischemic heart disease Cystic fibrosis Diabetes mellitus End-stage renal disease Epilepsy Fibromyalgia HIV/AIDS Interpersonal violence Menopause Multiple sclerosis Musculoskeletal conditions Myocardial infarction Obesity Osteopenia/osteoporosis Otorhinolaryngic conditions Pain Parkinson's disease Postpartum (depressive disorders) Rheumatic disorders Stroke Thyroid disease	Depressive disorders
Acute coronary syndrome Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease Elevated serum cholesterol Fibromyalgia Hyperthyroidism Rheumatic disorders	Panic and other anxiety disorders
Coronary heart disease	Psychosis/schizophrenia
Diabetes insipidus Diabetes mellitus, type 2 Dyslipidemia HIV/AIDS Hypertension Hypertriglyceridemia Infectious hepatitis Metabolic syndrome Obesity	Bipolar disorder

(*cont.*)

TABLE 8-3: MEDICAL DISORDERS AND CONDITIONS THAT PRESENT RISK OF PSYCHIATRIC COMORBIDITY (*CONT.*)

MEDICAL DISORDERS AND CONDITIONS	PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH DISORDER (OFTEN SEEN AS COMORBIDITY)
Diabetes mellitus, type 2 Dyslipidemia Heart disease Hypertension Myocardial infarction Obesity Osteoporosis Smoking Thyroid disease	Acute stress disorder
Alcoholic hepatitis Cardiovascular disease Cirrhosis of the liver Gastric ulcer/gastritis Hematologic problems Pancreatitis	Substance abuse
Otorhinolaryngic conditions	Dementia
Cardiovascular disease Infectious diseases Liver/renal disease Otorhinolaryngic conditions	Delirium
Epilepsy Low cholesterol levels	Violent death/suicide

die approximately 20 years earlier, women 16 years earlier than the general population (Hunt, 2015). Thus, the issue is not just about the person's risk factors for mental illness, but also the risk factors that mental illness present for the medical well-being of the person.

THE INTERPERSONAL PROCESS FOR RISK REDUCTION

The nurse is his or her own best instrument of care when approaching risk factors. Through the interpersonal relationship that the nurse develops with the patient, he or she can best assist the patient in understanding the various risk factors and in building on the patient's strengths to prevent illness and promote health. The personal qualities of awareness, judgment, and initiative are paramount.

- *Awareness is necessary to identify when a risk factor is part of the patient's assessment information. It presumes that the nurse has a knowledge base of risk factors that includes an appreciation of the psychiatric-mental health and medical components and their potential consequences.*
- *Judgment is required to determine the importance of the risk factor, and to prioritize the multiple risk factors present. It helps the nurse to identify appropriate responses and recognize how quickly the responses should begin.*
- *Initiative prompts the nurse to take action and address the risk factor. Some risk factors may be more responsive to intervention than others. Unless an emergency is identified, the nurse will have the greatest and most immediate impact on the patient by addressing risks first that are more easily and quickly changed.*

The development of the interpersonal relationship with the patient is a key component of the therapy. Many of the risk factors for psychiatric-mental health disorders involve emotional isolation and lack of support. The nurse is in a position to provide therapeutic interpersonal experiences for the patient by maintaining appropriate boundaries while offering support and validation for the patient's emotional state. The effectively managed interpersonal relationship serves as a protective factor for the patient in illness

prevention and health promotion. The nurse's therapeutic use of self is no less relevant or important than any other medical instrument.

Prevention identifies risk factors to target for intervention. Interventions focus on changing those risk factors that can be changed, and enhancing protective factors. It is the nurse who performs these functions and thus has the greatest impact on the patient. The nurse applies the interpersonal process at the primary, secondary, and tertiary levels of prevention. **PRIMARY PREVENTION** refers to interventions that delay or avoid the onset of illness; **SECONDARY PREVENTION** refers to treatment, including identifying persons with disorders and standardizing treatment for disorders; and **TERTIARY PREVENTION** refers to maintenance including decreasing relapse or recurrence, and providing rehabilitation (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2013).

Integrating the interpersonal process at the primary, secondary, and tertiary levels of prevention can help to minimize risk factors and enhance protective factors. Establishing a therapeutic nurse-patient relationship also acts as a protective factor.

Primary Prevention

Primary prevention is aimed at avoiding or delaying the onset of illness. Nurses perform primary prevention of mental illness by intervening to address and neutralize the influence of risk factors. The emphasis is on health promotion and disease prevention, focusing on reducing the occurrence of a condition, most often at the community level. A key primary preventive strategy is psychoeducation geared to individuals, families, and communities. Examples of primary prevention strategies include teaching about:

- *Drug awareness programs; ways to prevent substance abuse; early signs of substance abuse*
- *Positive coping methods; ways to promote resilience (***Patient and Family Education 8-1** *highlights ways to build resilience)*
- *Ways to reduce stress and cope with situational and maturational changes*
- *Parenting skills for prospective new parents*
- *Stress management techniques*

For patients who have not yet entered the mental health system, community outreach is ideal. The public needs to learn more about psychiatric-mental health disorders so that individuals can assess their own risk. In addition, educated persons might be less prone to stigmatize patients with psychiatric-mental health disorders, thereby reducing the risks of the stigma and rejection associated with psychiatric-mental health disorders that keep individuals from seeking treatment. Even individuals who may never need to see a mental health professional can benefit from the stress reduction and problem-solving techniques that can be taught, thus increasing protective factors available.

In neighborhoods with high crime rates, stress is particularly high. Community-wide prevention programs aimed at teaching how to reduce stress and minimize violence would be helpful. "One community-academic partnership provided a blueprint for connecting the self-identified needs of a community with measurable outcomes to address youth violence" (McDonald et al., 2012).

Primary prevention interventions address and neutralize the influence of risk factors to avoid or delay the onset of illness.

Secondary Prevention

Nurses perform secondary prevention by identifying the existence of risk factors, assessing for the presence of the disorder, and initiating appropriate and early treatment according to evidence-based standards of care. Early treatment helps to reduce the possible duration of the disorder and its associated complications. Examples of secondary prevention activities include:

- *Ongoing assessments of patients at risk for a disorder with prompt identification of symptoms when they occur*
- *Initiating appropriate treatment and referrals for treatment*
- *Teaching the patient about the disorder and treatment plan, including areas such as medication adherence, counseling, and available support services.*

Stress also is a major risk factor of many disorders. Removing this risk through education about ways to minimize stress serves a preventive function. Parent education groups are prime examples of interventions that can relieve stress and improve the family situation. One such group working with abusive or potentially abusive parents used a systematic training workbook to focus on effective problem solving. After 9 weeks of discussion groups, role-playing, exercises on hypothetical parenting situations, and homework assignments, the parents demonstrated more positive perceptions of their children and scored lower on a

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 8-1: BUILDING RESILIENCE

The way a person develops resilience is highly individualized. Here are some suggestions about how to develop resilience:

- Make connections with and accept help and support from close family members, friends, or others
- View crises as problems that can be dealt with to change your interpretation and response to crises
- Accept that change is part of life and focus on things that can be changed rather than those that cannot be changed
- Develop realistic goals, no matter how small
- Decisively act rather than avoid or detach from the problem
- Develop self-confidence and trusting instincts
- Look for opportunities for self-discovery (learning something as a result of the struggle or problem)
- Keep things in perspective
- Maintain a positive outlook, focusing on the expectation that good things will happen rather than being fearful
- Take care of yourself, physically and emotionally
- Use journaling, meditation, spiritual practices, or other ways to deal with stress and build or restore hope

From APA (2015).

measure of abuse potential. An unintended consequence of the group was increased social support and contact among the parents, resulting in a positive influence on the risk factor of isolationism associated with child abuse (Fennell & Fishel, 1998).

Psychoeducation plays an important role here as well. It can address a number of risk factors on a group or individual basis. Patients' understanding of their own risk factors, their disorders, and their treatments can help them regain a sense of control over their situation. This understanding can demystify their experience and correct inaccurate perceptions. For example, many patients assume that a diagnosis of major depression means that they are "crazy," with all the attendant fears, misconceptions, and stigmatizing characterizations that exist in society. This assumption and associated feelings can be reduced with an adequate understanding of the condition.

Nurses can counter stress and major life changes with psychoeducational instruction and role-playing on problem solving, coping, and relaxation techniques. Specific education and discussion on the physical consequences of substance use or habit may lead to a reduction in the inappropriate use of substances or unhealthy lifestyle habits. Nurses can use health promotion theory to support the patient's ability to follow through with commitments to a healthier lifestyle. A study of an educational intervention around antipsychotic-induced weight gain demonstrated that patients with the diagnosis of schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder were able to participate in the program and gain less weight than a standard care group (Littrell, Hilligoss, Kirshner, Petty, & Johnson, 2003). **Evidence-Based Practice 8-1** describes this study.

The effects of nonmodifiable risk factors, such as gender or genetic makeup, can be mitigated with psychoeducation. By explaining these factors, nurses can help patients and family members understand that their disorders have real causes and that they are not to blame for their condition. Thus, guilt and fear are lessened. Parents especially may assume blame when their children have disorders with a genetic component. Parents need to hear and understand that the environment and their nurturing and parenting attitudes will also influence how well their child does. This topic naturally leads to further education about how to cope with their child's behaviors. In an intervention study aimed at increasing parents' ability to manage the problem behaviors of children with Asperger syndrome, parental training sessions were able to

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 8-1: SCHIZOPHRENIA, WEIGHT GAIN, AND PSYCHOEDUCATION

STUDY

Littrell, K. H., Hilligoss, N. M., Kirshner, C. D., Petty, R. G., & Johnson, C. G. (2003). The effects of an educational intervention on antipsychotic-induced weight gain. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship, 35*(3), 237–241.

SUMMARY

A quasi-experimental study was conducted with 70 patients who had a diagnosis of schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. Patients were randomly assigned to an intervention or standard care group. The intervention group received 4 months of psychoeducation including content on nutrition, exercise, and how to lead a healthy lifestyle. All patients were followed for 2 months after the intervention was concluded. Findings revealed a statistically significant difference in weight change between the two groups, demonstrating that the group receiving the psychoeducation gained less weight.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

PMHNs need to be cognizant that individuals with schizophrenia have an increased risk of weight gain due to inactivity and as a possible side effect of prescribed antipsychotic medication. This weight gain has the potential to impact the patient's overall health status. Thus, implementing a psychoeducational program that focuses on a healthy lifestyle can help reduce the risk of weight gain in patients taking antipsychotic medications, thereby promoting improved health and well-being for the patient along with better outcomes.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *The study addressed psychoeducation focusing on nutrition, exercise, and a healthy lifestyle. What other topics might be appropriate to address in a future research study?*
2. *How might the psychoeducation described in this study impact medication adherence?*

decrease the number and intensity of problem behaviors and increase the children's social interaction (Sofronoff, Leslie, & Brown, 2004).

Secondary prevention activities focus on early detection and intervention in an effort to reduce the possible duration of the disorder and its associated complications.

Tertiary Prevention

Tertiary prevention focuses on activities to reduce the residual effects of the disorder and promote rehabilitation and restoration of function. Nurses institute actions to prevent complications associated with the disorder and to promote a return to the patient's maximum level of functioning possible. Examples of tertiary prevention strategies include:

- *Teaching the patient about the side effects of medications*

- *Intervening when the patient shows signs of exacerbation of symptoms*
- *Referring the patient to the primary therapist when he or she shows signs of escalating illness*

These tertiary prevention activities aid in reducing the stress and in providing support, thus reducing the risk factors associated with the illness. For example, if the patient needs to be in a protected environment, such as an inpatient facility, referral by the nurse helps to reduce the environmental risk factors. The nurse may have noted that the patient is in danger of self-harm. As with primary and secondary interventions, the nurse uses a wide range of psychoeducational interventions. For this patient, psychoeducation would focus on helping the patient learn new ways of behaving and coping.

Tertiary prevention activities focus on minimizing complications and promoting the patient's return to his or her maximum level of functioning.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Although the exact cause of psychiatric-mental health disorders is not known, certain risk factors have been identified that increase a person's chance for developing a psychiatric-mental health disorder. However, the presence of risk factors does not guarantee that a disorder will occur.
- Many psychiatric-mental health disorders share risk factors that can be differentiated as biological/genetic or personal/social/environmental.
- Protective factors guard against or buffer the effect of risk factors. They may be internal, such as good health, high stress tolerance, and positive coping skills, or external, such as supportive family and social relationships, adequate economic resources, and recreational activities.
- Resilience is a protective factor that refers to the process of adapting well in the face of adversity, trauma, tragedy, threats, or even significant sources of stress. It is learned over time.
- The stress-vulnerability-coping model, initially developed to explain schizophrenia, can be adapted to aid in understanding other psychiatric-mental health disorders.
- Psychiatric-mental health disorders occurring during infancy, childhood, and adolescence can be linked to genetics/biology and temperament as risk factors. Temperament refers to the innate aspects of an individual's personality and how he or she responds to the world. The issue of temperament as a risk factor focuses on the "goodness of fit."
- Genetic and environmental risk factors are identified as risk factors interacting in the development of schizophrenia. Heredity, gender, and life stressors have been demonstrated scientifically to be risk factors for affective disorders such as major depression and bipolar disorder.
- Genetics and neurophysiology are viewed as exerting a strong influence on the abuse of substances, especially alcohol. Specific genes have been identified to show an increased risk for alcoholism. Substance use disorders also are strongly linked to familial patterns.
- Anxiety disorders are associated with risk factors involving altered neurotransmitters, genetics, the environment, and situational stressors.
- Any medical disorder could be a risk factor for the development of a psychiatric-mental health disorder and any psychiatric-mental health disorder can place a patient at greater risk for a medical problem. Some medical and psychiatric-mental health disorders represent a circular risk relationship.
- The aging of the general population, the growing of the population of older mentally ill adults, medically induced pathology, and psychomimetic disorders are issues impacting a person's risk.
- Prevention identifies risk factors to target for intervention. Interventions focus on changing those risk factors that can be changed, and enhancing protective factors. It is the nurse who performs these functions and thus has the greatest impact on the patient. The nurse applies the interpersonal process at the primary level to delay or prevent the onset of illness, at the secondary level to identify persons with disorders and initiate early treatment, and at the tertiary level to decrease relapse or recurrence, and provide rehabilitation.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of nursing students are reviewing the various risk factors associated with psychiatric-mental health disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as a family risk factor?
   a. Poverty
   b. High crime rate
   c. Placement in foster care
   d. Temperament

2. A nurse is providing primary prevention to a local community group about psychiatric-mental health disorders. Which of the following would the nurse include as a protective factor? Select all that apply.
   a. Flexibility
   b. High intelligence
   c. Limited social relationships
   d. Absence of recreational activities
   e. Adequate economic resources

3. When describing the possibility of developing a psychiatric-mental health disorder related to a medical condition, which disorder would the nurse identify as most common and problematic?
   a. Schizophrenia
   b. Acute stress disorder
   c. Personality disorder
   d. Depression

4. When implementing secondary prevention strategies, which of the following would the psychiatric-mental health nurse do first?
   a. Conduct community screening
   b. Identify existence of risk factors
   c. Teach about coping skills
   d. Make referrals for immediate treatment

5. After teaching a group of students about risk and protective factors, the nursing instructor determines that additional teaching is needed when the students state which of the following about resilience?
   a. "Everyone is born with resilience but not everybody uses it."
   b. "It is a protective factor that helps balance out the risk factors."
   c. "Individuals need time to develop resilience."
   d. "Resilience promotes better coping with trauma or stress."

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Abar, C. C., Jackson, K. M., & Wood, M. (2014). Reciprocal relations between perceived parental knowledge and adolescent substance use and delinquency: The moderating role of parent-teen relationship quality. *Developmental Psychology, 50*(9), 2176–2187.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

American Psychological Association (ApA). (2015). *The road to resilience*. Retrieved from http://www.apa.org/helpcenter/road-resilience.aspx

Arehart-Treichel, J. (2011). Birth, developmental factors linked to schizophrenia risk. *Psychiatric News, 46*(20), 16.

Azorin, J. M., Belzeaux, R., Kaladjian, A., Adida, M., Hantouche, E., Lancrenon, S., & Fakra, E. (2013). Risks associated with gender differences in bipolar I disorder. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 151*(3), 1033–1040.

Benros, M. E., Nielsen, P. R., Nordentoft, M., Eaton, W. W., Dalton, S. O., & Mortensen, P. B. (2011). Autoimmune diseases and severe infections as risk factors for schizophrenia: A 30-year population-based register study. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 168*(12), 1303–1310.

Boarts, J. M., Buckley-Fischer, B. A., Armelie, A. P., Bogart, L. M., & Delahanty, D. L. (2009). The impact of HIV diagnosis-related vs. non-diagnosis related trauma on PTSD, depression, medication adherence, and HIV disease markers. *Journal of Evidence-Based Social Work, 6*(1), 4–16.

Boschloo, L., Spijker, A. T., Hoencamp, E., Kupka, R., Nolen, W. A., Schoevers, R. A., & Penninx, B. W. (2014). Predictors of the onset of manic symptoms and a (hypo)manic episode in patients with major depressive disorder. *PloS One, 9*(9), e106871.

Cannon, T. D., Cadenhead, K., Cornblatt, B., Woods, S. W., Addington, J., Walker, E., …Heinssen, R. (2008). Prediction of psychosis in youth at high clinical risk: A multisite longitudinal study in North America. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 65*(1), 28–37.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2013). *NCD prevention and control*. Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/global-health/fetp/training_modules/3/prevention-and-control_ppt__final_0926013.pdf

Chudal, R., Gissler, M., Sucksdorff, D., Lehti, V., Suominen, A., Hinkka-Yli-Salomäki, S., … Sourander, A. (2014). Parental age and the risk of bipolar disorders. *Bipolar Disorders, 16*(6), 624–632.

Cruess, D. G., Douglas, S. D., Petitto, J. M., Leserman, J., Ten Have, T., Gettes, D., … Evans, D. L. (2003). Association of depression, CD8+ T lymphocytes, and natural killer cell activity: Implications for morbidity and mortality in human immunodeficiency virus disease. *Current Psychiatry Reports, 5*(6), 445–450.

Domschke, K., & Maron, E. (2013). Genetic factors in anxiety disorders. *Modern Trends in Pharmacopsychiatry, 29*, 24–46.

Evans, D. L., Charney, D. S., Lewis, L., Golden, R. N., Gorman, J. M., Krishnan, K. R., … Valvo, W. J. (2005). Mood disorders in the medically ill: Scientific review and recommendations. *Biological Psychiatry, 58*(3), 175–189.

Fennell, D. C., & Fishel, A. H. (1998). Parent education: An evaluation of STEP on abusive parents' perceptions and abuse potential. *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Nursing, 11*(3), 107–120.

Fisher, P. A., Mannering, A. M., Van Scoyoc, A., & Graham, A. M. (2013). A translational neuroscience perspective on the importance of reducing placement instability among foster children. *Child Welfare, 92*(5), 9–36.

Frye, M. A., McElroy, S. L., Prieto, M. L., Harper, K. L., Walker, D. L., Kung, S., … Biernacka, J. M. (2015). Clinical risk factors and serotonin transporter gene variants associated with antidepressant-induced mania. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry, 76*(2), 174–180.

Hamblin, J., & Barnett, E. (2009). *PTSD in children and adolescents.* Retrieved from http://www.ptsd.va.gov/professional/pages/ptsd_in_children_and_adolescents_overview_for_professionals.asp

Hare, D. L., Toukhsati, S. R., Johansson, P., & Jaarsma, T. (2014). Depression and cardiovascular disease: A clinical review. *European Heart Journal, 35*(21), 1365–1372.

Hasler, G., Fromm, S., Carlson, P. J., Luckenbaugh, D. A., Waldeck, T., Geraci, M., … Drevets, W. C. (2008). Neural response to catecholamine depletion in unmedicated subjects with major depressive disorder in remission and healthy subjects. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 65*(5), 521–531.

Heins, M., Simons, C., Lataster, T., Pfeifer, S., Versmissen, D., Lardinois, M., … Myin-Germeys, I. (2011). Childhood trauma and psychosis: A case-control and case-sibling comparison across different levels of genetic liability, psychopathology, and type of trauma. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 168*(12), 1286–1294.

Hook, A., & Dunagan, P. (2013). *"Building a quality house" using an interdependent QSEN competency model*. Retrieved from http://qsen.org/integrating-qsen-competencies-into-curricula-using-an-interdependent-qsen-competency-model

Hunt, K. (2015). Why do we need to do more to tackle cardiometabolic risk in patients with serious mental illness? *Practice Nurse, 459*, 18–22.

Kelsoe, J. E. (2009). Mood disorders: Genetics. In B. Sadock & V. Sadock (Eds.), *Kaplan & Sadock's comprehensive textbook of psychiatry* (9th ed., pp. 1653–1654). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Littrell, K. H., Hilligoss, N. M., Kirshner, C. D., Petty, R. G., & Johnson, C. G. (2003). The effects of an educational intervention on antipsychotic-induced weight gain. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship, 35*(3), 237–241.

Lopez-Solas, C., Fontanelle, L. F., Alonso, P., Cuadras, D., Foley, D. L., Pantelis, C., … Harrison, B. J. (2014). Prevalence and heritability of obsessive-compulsive spectrum and anxiety disorder symptoms: A survey of the Australian Twin Registry. *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics: The Official Publication of the International Society of Psychiatric Genetics, 165B*(4), 314–325.

Macedo, T., Wilheim, L., Gonçalves, R., Coutinho, E. S., Vilete, L., Figueira, I., & Ventura, P. (2014). Building resilience for future adversity: A systematic review of interventions in non-clinical samples of adults. *BMC Psychiatry, 14*, 227.

Mayo Clinic. (2015). *Mental illness: Risk factors*. Retrieved from http://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/mental-illness/basics/risk-factors/con-20033813

Maziade, M., Capéraà, P., Laplante, B., Boudreault, M., Thivierge, J., Côté, R., & Boutin, P. (1985). Value of difficult temperament among 7-year-olds in the general population for predicting psychiatric diagnosis at age 12. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 142*(8), 943–946.

McClowry, S. G. (2002). The temperament profiles of school-age children. *Journal of Pediatric Nursing, 17*, 3–10.

McDonald, C. C., Richmond, T. S., Guerra, T., Thomas, N. A., Walker, A., Branas, C. C., … Hausman, A. J. (2012). Methods for linking community views to measureable outcomes in a youth violence prevention program. *Progress in Community Health Partnerships, 6*(4), 499–506.

McGauhey, P. J., Starfield, B., Alexander, C., & Ensminger, M. E. (1991). Social environment and vulnerability of low birth weight children: A social-epidemiological perspective. *Pediatrics, 88*(5), 943–953.

McMahon, F. J., Akula, N., Schulze, T. G., Muglia, P., Tozzi, F., Detera-Wadleigh, S. D., … Rietschel, M.; Bipolar Disorder Genome Study (BiGS) Consortium. (2010). Meta-analysis of genome-wide association data identifies a risk locus for major mood disorders on 3p21.1. *Nature Genetics, 42*(2), 128–131.

Meltzer, H.Y., & Fatemi, H. S. (2008). Schizophrenia. In M. H. Ebert, P. T. Loosen, B. Nurcombe, & J. F. Leckman (Eds.), *Current diagnosis & treatment: Psychiatry* (2nd ed., pp. 260–277). New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria (MIFV). (2008). *Recognising possible triggers of mental illness onset or relapse: The stress-vulnerability-coping model of mental illness*. Retrieved from http://mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Stress%20Vulnerability%20Coping%20Model.pdf

Min, J. A., Lee, C. U., & Chae, J. H. (2015). Resilience moderates the risk of depression and anxiety symptoms on suicidal ideation in patients with depression and/or anxiety disorders. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 56*, 103–111.

National Institute of Health (NIH). (2015). *What is post-traumatic stress disorder*. Retrieved from http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/topics/post-traumatic-stress-disorder-ptsd/index.shtml

Nurnberger, J. I., Jr., & Foroud, T. (2000). Genetics of bipolar affective disorder. *Current Psychiatry Reports, 2*(2), 147–157.

Oldehinkel, A. J., & Ormel, J. (2015). A longitudinal perspective on childhood adversities and onset risk of various psychiatric disorders. *European Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 24*(6), 641–650.

Orlovska, S., Pedersen, M. S., Benros, M. E., Mortensen, P. B., Agerbo, E., & Nordentoft, M. (2014). Head injury as risk factor for psychiatric disorders: A nationwide register-based follow-up study of 113,906 persons with head injury. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 171*(4), 463–469.

Parker, G., Fletcher, K., Paterson, A., Anderson, J., & Hong, M. (2014). Gender differences in depression severity and symptoms across depressive sub-types. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 167*, 351–357.

Post, R. M. (1992). Transduction of psychosocial stress in the neurobiology of recurrent affective disorders. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 149*, 999.

Potash, J. B., Toolan, J., Steele, J., Miller, E. B., Pearl, J., Zandi, P. P.,…McMahon, F. J.; NIMH Genetics Initiative Bipolar Disorder Consortium. (2007). The bipolar disorder phenome database: A resource for genetic studies. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 164*(8), 1229–1237.

Reif, A., Weber, H., Domschke, K., Klauke, B., Baumann, C., Jacob, C. P.,…Deckert, J. (2012). Meta-analysis argues for a female-specific role of MAOA-uVNTR in panic disorder in four European populations. *American Journal of Medical Genetics, 159B*(7), 786–793.

Schizophrenia.com. (2015). *The causes of schizophrenia*. Retrieved from http://schizophrenia.com/hypo.php#genes

Schulz, A., Becker, M., Van der Auwera, S., Barnow, S., Appel, K., Mahler, J.,…Grabe, H. J. (2014). The impact of childhood trauma on depression: Does resilience matter? Population-based results from the Study of Health in Pomerania. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research, 77*(2), 97–103.

Sofronoff, K., Leslie, A., & Brown, W. (2004). Parent management training and Asperger syndrome: A randomized controlled trial to evaluate a parent based intervention. *Autism: The International Journal of Research and Practice, 8*(3), 301–317.

Thomas, A., & Chess, S. (1984). Genesis and evolution of behavioral disorders: From infancy to early adult life. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 141*(1), 1–9.

Thomas, A., Chess, S., & Birch, H. G. (1968). *Temperament and behavior disorders in childhood*. New York, NY: New York University Press.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). (1999). *Mental health: A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville, MD: USDHHS. Retrieved from http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/mentalhealth/chapter2/sec5.html

U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs. (2013). *Mental health effects following disaster: Risk and resilience factors*. Retrieved from http://www.ptsd.va.gov/public/types/disasters/effects_of_disasters_risk_and_resilience_factors.asp

Werner, E. E., & Smith, R. S. (1992). *Overcoming the odds: High risk children from birth to adulthood*. New York, NY: Cornell University Press.

Westrupp, E. M., Northam, E., Doyle, L. W., Callanan, C., & Anderson, P. J. (2011). Adult psychiatric outcomes of very low birth weight survivors. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry, 45*(12), 1069–1077.

Wisco, B. E., Marx, B. P., Wolf, E. J., Miller, M. W., Southwick, S. M., & Pietrzak, R. H. (2014). Posttraumatic stress disorder in the US veteran population: Results from the National Health and Resilience in Veterans Study. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry, 75*(12), 1338–1346.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe systems theory, including the major concepts
2. Discuss the relationship of General Systems Theory to nursing theories
3. Apply systems theory thinking to psychiatric-mental health nursing
4. Define group therapy
5. Identify key concepts related to group therapy, including those from systems theory
6. Explain the 11 curative factors of a therapeutic group
7. Describe the content of a supportive and insight-oriented group

CHAPTER 9

SYSTEMS CONCEPTS AND WORKING IN GROUPS

Kathleen R. Tusaie

8. Discuss how family is considered a specialized type of group
9. Describe the use of a genogram in family assessment
10. Identify the relationship between interpersonal based therapy and group and family therapy

KEY TERMS

Curative factors
Family therapy
Genogram
Group
Group dynamics
Group process
Group therapy
Lines of resistance
Normal line of defense
System
Therapeutic groups

Consider the following situation:

> Three blind people encountered an elephant. The first touching an ear stated, "It is a large, rough thing, wide, and broad like a rug." The second holding the trunk stated, "No, it is a straight hollow pipe." While the third holding the front leg replied, "It is mighty and firm like a pillar." Given these individuals' ways of knowing, they will never know an elephant. (Old Sufi story)

From the individual perspective, each person's statement is correct. Yet, instinctively, the individuals know that the truths expressed by each person are incomplete truths and cannot ever wholly describe the elephant. Systems theory provides a framework to see the whole elephant.

Using systems theory or systems thinking provides a means for thinking about the larger picture and holds the potential for treatment planning leading to higher levels of functioning. It does not produce "quick fixes." How an individual thinks not only determines what he or she sees, but also what he or she does. This chapter provides an overview of General Systems Theory and exposes the reader to systems thinking. It reviews examples of how systems theory is reflected in nursing theory. The chapter discusses groups, group therapy, and family therapy as they relate to systems theory and systems thinking with examples of applications to each. Exercises are integrated throughout this chapter to facilitate understanding of personal experiences within systems thinking and its relevance to psychiatric-mental health nursing practice.

GENERAL SYSTEMS THEORY

Biologist Ludwig von Bertalanffy proposed a General Systems Theory in 1928 to provide a way of thinking that could be applied across professional boundaries and promote holistic thinking. Rather than reducing a system (human body) to the components of its parts (cells), systems theory focuses on the interactions of its parts and the nonlinear, dynamic pattern of those interactions. General Systems Theory has diverse applications, including engineering, philosophy, mathematics, computer modeling, ecology, management, nursing, psychotherapy, and others.

A **SYSTEM** is any group of components sufficiently related to identify patterns of interaction (Kuhn, 1996). A change in any component induces a change in one or more other components of the system and in the system as a whole. No component of the system can be understood out of the context of the way it interacts with other components. Thus, the system is more than a sum of its parts (**Figure 9-1**).

von Bertalanffy (1968) described two major types of systems: closed and open. Closed systems are those in which the components are isolated from the environment. In contrast, open systems are those in which the components interact with the environment and with the other components of the system. Thus, the system is dynamic and ever-changing. **How Would You Respond? 9-1** provides an example of an open system.

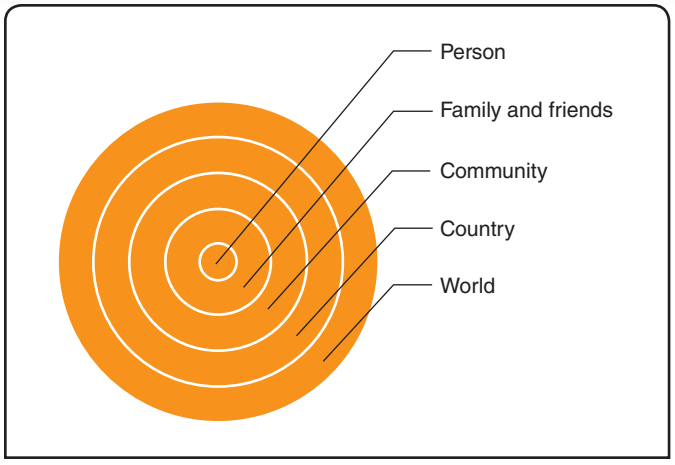


Figure 9-1 *Person as part of the world system.*

A system is a group of components that interact, such that a change in one component affects the other components and the system overall. Using systems theory or systems thinking provides an opportunity to look at the "bigger picture" and promotes treatment planning that ultimately can lead to higher levels of functioning.

Systems Theory and Nursing Theory

Theory provides a systematic way of viewing the world to describe, explain, predict, or control it. Theories are created by experienced practitioners who make abstractions from large collections of facts and concepts. The practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing is derived from theory that has been tested through research to produce evidence for practice. There is an intertwining, circular relationship among theory, practice, and research. Nursing theorists who have built on General Systems Theory are briefly reviewed here.

Systems thinking is not new to nursing. The basic elements in any description of nursing include not only person and health, but also the environment (Fawcett, 1984). The environment the person emerges from and returns to

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 9-1: THINKING IN SYSTEMS

Review Figure 9-1. Place yourself as the person at the center of the system. Then insert the names of people or groups to complete the surrounding circles for family and friends, community, country, and the world.

Now think of a recent event in your community, country, or the world.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *How did you respond to this event? What effect did it have on you? How were others affected?*
2. *Was the system stressed, disturbing the usual balance and homeostasis?*
3. *What did you notice about coping and adaptation for yourself? For others in the system? For the system overall?*
4. *If the imbalance or disruption was too great, what developed or occurred?*

is considered across several nursing theories. For example, Florence Nightingale's (1859) broad view of nursing included creating the right environment for the patient's natural, reparative powers to act, as well as awareness of the influences of socio-political-religious issues on nursing practice (Reed & Zurakowski, 1996). As nursing continued to evolve, other theorists began to address environment as having a major impact on a person. *The Theory, Science of Unitary Human Beings,* developed by Martha Rogers (1970, 1992) reflects an open system model. In her model, Rogers describes the person as an energy field inseparable from the environment with continuous and mutual interaction between the two. As a result, both the person and environment experience changes at the same time and in the same manner. The person is described in the context of an environment resulting in constant change as well as the continuous evolution of the change itself. Thus, the person is viewed as a unified whole that is more than and different from the sum of the parts. Rogers (1970) describes the professional practice of nursing as seeking to understand patterns of interactions between person and environment and working "with" the patient for "… realization of maximum health potential" (p. 122). This is an important statement because it emphasizes that patients are active participants who make choices rather than passive recipients of nursing care.

Systems thinking is not new to nursing. The environment has been a major component of many nursing theories.

Another nursing model that applies systems theory is Neuman's Systems Model (2002). This model is based on concepts of stress and coping (Lazarus & Folkman, 1984) and General Systems Theory (von Bertalanffy, 1968). The whole person (client) system is defined as the person in interaction with the internal and external environment. Each client system is a unique composite of factors and characteristics within a given range of possible responses. The central core of the client system includes basic survival factors common to all, such as normal temperature, genetic structure, and organ functioning. This central core is surrounded by circles that function as **LINES OF RESISTANCE**. These lines represent the internal factors that an individual uses to help defend against stressors. Extending out further from the core is the next level of circles, or the **NORMAL LINE OF DEFENSE**. This normal line of defense, or usual response to stressors, represents the individual's usual state of wellness. According to Neuman, the normal line of defense is flexible and dynamic with the ability to expand or contract as needed in response to stressors. She further describes stressors as known, unknown, and/or universal. Each differing stressor has the potential, alone or in combination, to disturb the stability of the system. When a stressor penetrates the normal lines of defense, protective factors within the lines of resistance are activated to protect the central core's functioning. In other words, the entire client system is constantly in a dynamic process of input, output, feedback, and compensation with the goal of maintaining balance.

Neuman identified specific nursing interventions to retain or maintain system stability. Thus, primary, secondary, or tertiary prevention are possible interventions that can be used in the model (Neuman, 2002). Primary prevention, or wellness promotion and disease prevention, represents expanding the normal line of defense, strengthening the flexible line of defense, or decreasing the possibility of encountering stressors before their invasion. Interventions described as secondary prevention, or treatment of symptoms, are focused on strengthening the lines of resistance to protect the core of the system. Interventions such as prompt

detection of symptoms and early treatment are examples. Tertiary prevention indicates adjustive processes or readaptation, such as sleeping or learning new coping skills, taking place as the system begins to return to a balanced state of wellness. Once balance is achieved, these processes then begin to function as primary prevention interventions, demonstrating a circular pattern of interventions.

The system described by Neuman's model may be the individual person, a family, a group, or a community. In addition, application of this model has been described across all nursing specialties, as well as across disciplines and internationally (Neuman, 2002).

Systems Theory and Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing

The brief overview of systems thinking previously provided argues that a system perspective has always been present in the discipline of nursing. However, the definition of system and environment has varied. These broad theorists have provided a framework for thinking about psychiatric-mental health nursing.

Consider this example. During an inpatient hospitalization, Mr. Davis, an individual experiencing auditory and visual hallucinations, has been stabilized with medications, a structured environment, and one-to-one interactions with nurses. The primary focus of the nurse–patient interactions has been to establish trust and to emphasize the importance of medication to minimize the distress experienced with the hallucinations. This is a very appropriate, evidence-based approach and Mr. Davis is discharged with decreased symptoms. However, within several weeks, he is readmitted to the inpatient unit. How is this exacerbation of symptoms explained? From a snapshot or reductionist explanation, the individual stopped taking his medications and symptoms returned. This would not be incorrect. However, this view is limiting because it only provides a narrowed view or "quick fix" for the problem. It does not explain the whole experience for this patient. Using systems thinking, Mr. Davis would be viewed as a person who does not live in isolation. Rather, he is part of the family system, the community, and world as a whole. There would be awareness of the interactions among the family who have been encouraging the patient to not take his medications, possibly because they are too expensive or because they cause adverse effects. In addition, Mr. Davis has resumed chain-smoking cigarettes, which interferes with the absorption of the medications. His lack of any daily routine, the consumption of only fast food and snacks at home, combined with living in a high crime neighborhood are all possible interacting factors leading to his current situation. Thus, the use of systems thinking promotes comprehensive, holistic care.

GROUPS AND GROUP THERAPY

Individuals are members of multiple groups. A **GROUP** refers to any collection of two or more individuals who share at least one commonality or goal, such that the relationship is interdependent. Applying systems theory, a group is a set of components that work together to achieve a function or purpose. Groups may be formal or informal. Formal groups are structured and have authority. Informal groups typically address personal needs.

Psychiatric-mental health nurses are members of multiple groups, both formal and informal. Professional or more formal group affiliations may include the clinical group of students in the psychiatric-mental health nursing rotation, the student body of a college of nursing, all student nurses belonging to Student Nurses Association, club memberships, as well as work-related groups such as the treatment team in the place of employment. More informal group memberships focus on casualness and personal needs. These include family, friends, or even a small informal group in the work setting. (Note that the family is a specialized type of group and is discussed later in the chapter using the Bowen Family Systems Model [1978] as the framework. The focus of the discussion here is on **THERAPEUTIC GROUPS**, groups used to promote psychological growth, development, and transformation.) **GROUP THERAPY** is the process by which group leaders with advanced educational degrees and experience provide psychotherapy to members to improve their interpersonal functioning.

Two or more people together functioning interdependently form a group. Family is a specialized type of group.

Types of Therapeutic Groups

Therapeutic groups may be categorized as open or closed systems based on membership. Open groups are ones in which new members can join and old members can leave at different times. Members are welcome to attend the group meetings at any time in the individual's recovery as well as at any stage of the group's development. Open groups typically are ongoing, which permits their availability of access to a greater number of individuals. Unfortunately, new members joining an open group face a disadvantage in that they have yet to form relationships already present in existing group members. Thus, cohesiveness may be less. An example of an open group is Alcoholics Anonymous (AA), one of the most successful approaches for maintaining sobriety today.

Closed groups are ones in which membership is limited to those members involved when the group initially forms. No new group members can join. If an old member leaves, no new member comes in to take his or her place. For example, if a closed group initially started out with eight members, and two members leave the group, the group remains with only six members. This approach facilitates more group cohesiveness, safety, and interpersonal learning. An example of a closed group is an insight-oriented psychotherapy group meeting for 90 minutes a week for 12 weeks as part of an outpatient practice. When the 12 weeks are over, the group disbands. Then another group starts again, with new members being accepted for the specified time frame.

Another way to classify groups is related to the group's purpose and goals. These may include therapeutic insight-oriented groups and supportive groups. Insight-oriented groups are characterized by increased process, focusing on the interpersonal relationships among members and their communication patterns and styles to foster the development of better perception into one's self. Generally, these groups are less structured and require leaders prepared at the gradual level of education.

Supportive groups have a specific content and structure and are often led by nurses (Kurtz, 2013). More structure and less process characterize the supportive group. Some of these include education groups, recreation groups, socialization groups, or reality orientation with older adults (Kurtz, 2013; Thompson, Parahoob, & Blair, 2014). In structured environments such as inpatient or partial hospitalization programs, goal-planning groups, which meet in the morning to set goals for the day and then again before bedtime to review goal achievement, are examples of supportive groups.

Self-help groups are also considered a supportive group. This type of group usually consists of persons coping with a particular problem. Some self-help groups include AA, National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI), Overeaters Anonymous (OA), groups of individuals with a specific diagnosis such as a cancer support group (Breitbart et al., 2015), Alzheimer's support group for caretakers, or diabetic support groups. Self-help groups offer acceptance, mutual support, and help in overcoming maladaptive behaviors. Although controversial, web-based self-help groups are showing promising results. Issues involving problem drinking, smoking, depression, anxiety, and work-related stress have all demonstrated positive change following involvement in a web-based self-help program (Griffiths, Farrer, & Christensen, 2010).

A final classification for types of groups is based on setting, an important consideration for group therapy. Therapeutic groups classified by setting are inpatient or outpatient. Current inpatient treatment has shifted dramatically from the history of prolonged stays in remote state hospitals to brief, often repeated, hospitalizations in small acute general hospital units. Although the core of group therapy remains the same, adaptations are necessary for the acute inpatient setting. Yalom (2005) has discussed these adaptations in great detail and they are summarized in **Table 9-1**.

Several methods have been used to adjust to these issues. Often, inpatient groups are categorized by level of functioning, organizing the groups as lower functioning and higher functioning groups. Shifting the time frame is another adjustment strategy. This shift necessitates that the group leader provides structure and participation by members in each session. There is no time to be passive and allow group cohesion to develop. Inpatient groups may also be influenced by incidents on the unit because group members are living together. Thus, by shifting the time frame, an aftercare group available immediately after discharge from the inpatient setting could be developed. Then the inpatient, aftercare, and outpatient groups would be seen as continuous and complementary.

Groups may be classified by membership as open or closed, by purpose as insight oriented or supportive, and by setting as inpatient or outpatient.

Group Process and Group Dynamics

Individuals participate in a group process even if they are unaware of that participation. **GROUP PROCESS** refers to interaction among group members. **GROUP DYNAMICS** refers to the forces that produce patterns within the groups as the group moves toward its goals. As mentioned previously, a group results any time two or more people are together and interdependent. Interdependence of group members is the key difference between a group and a collection or aggregate of individuals. Interdependence involves a common task or purpose that has brought the people together, some characteristic shared in common, and a pattern of interaction established among the people.

Curative Factors of Groups

Expectations are different for each type of group member. However, common factors operate in all types of groups. These factors, called **CURATIVE FACTORS** (Yalom, 2005), describe the patterns of interaction in a therapeutic group. Using Neuman's model and the group as the system of focus, the curative factors are the central core necessary for the survival of the group.

TABLE 9-1: COMPARISON OF INPATIENT AND OUTPATIENT THERAPEUTIC GROUPS

INPATIENT THERAPEUTIC GROUPS	OUTPATIENT THERAPEUTIC GROUPS
Overlap of therapies may result in competition for patients. Administrative staff makes decisions about group frequency, duration, optional or mandatory attendance, and group leadership.	Leader makes decisions about group membership, procedures, and functions independently.
Patient acuity is greater, which limits the cognitive abilities of patients to participate.	Patients are better able to participate due to a lessened illness acuity.
Shorter or briefer lengths of stay lead to a new patient in every group session.	Group membership is more consistent.

Yalom (2005) identified 11 categories of curative factors:

1. Instillation of hope
2. Universality
3. Imparting of information
4. Altruism
5. Corrective recapitulation of the primary family group
6. Development of socialization techniques
7. Imitative behavior
8. Interpersonal learning
9. Group cohesiveness
10. Catharsis
11. Existential factors

These curative factors are interdependent. However, some factors take on a more significant role at different times during the group process depending on the group's purpose, time frame, and stage of development.

Yalom identified 11 curative factors that are interdependent within a group. They are the central core necessary for group survival.

Instillation of Hope

Feeling hopeful is necessary in all types of therapy. In group therapy, hope or optimism that the therapy will be helpful often keeps the person involved until the other curative factors develop. Literature on the mechanisms by which optimism promotes mental and physical health and studies indicating that optimism can be increased through psychotherapy—individual as well as group—is extensive (Magyar-Moe, Owens, & Scheel, 2014; Seligman, 1998).

Being hopeful is also an important factor in the group leader or facilitator. Believing that the group process is beneficial and important is necessary for an effective outcome. During the first group meeting or preceding the meeting, the leader may share positive expectations and enthusiasm for the group experience with prospective members. However, this optimism must be genuine to be effective.

In addition to the group leader or facilitator's optimism, other techniques are used to encourage optimism. When identifying group members, including individuals who are further along in the process of treatment and recovery as well as individuals who are in their initial session may be beneficial. This allows more experienced members to offer encouragement and advice as well as to role model healthier behavior during the group process. Self-help groups such as AA place emphasis on instillation of hope in several ways. For example, all members tell their stories of falling into alcoholism and the awful consequences, followed by recovery and healthier, happier living without alcohol. Instillation of hope is very influential in the beginning group to maintain attendance and participation.

Universality

As group members continue to feel hopeful, they begin to develop the belief they are not alone and not so different from others in the group. This belief leads to a feeling of connectedness and safeness within the group sessions. Often patients have poor social skills and experience interpersonal conflicts within many settings, thus leading to lack of personal connectedness and validation in their lives. The experience of universality has been described as a "welcome to the human race" (Yalom, 2005). For example, in an adolescent outpatient psychotherapy group, one young girl who was crying disclosed that she had been arrested for shoplifting. The group members validated her embarrassment and then several shared that they had also attempted to shoplift to see if they could get away with it and stated, "That's what we do, we push the limits, that's part of being a kid." The sharing of information helped the patient feel less distressed. It then led to a discussion involving the importance of thinking about consequences before acting and what could be learned from this experience.

The experience of universality may also happen during individual therapy, but there is less opportunity for

validation. For example, a patient shares information about his inability to keep up with his employment responsibilities following the death of his mother. Following a discussion of the experienced difficulties, the nurse normalizes the difficulties by stating that "it is common to have difficulty functioning when grieving" and the patient begins to feel less self-critical. A similar message from not only the nurse but also group members is often more powerful. Thus, the patient experiences universality and maintains hope.

Imparting of Information

This curative factor includes didactic information provided by the leader or facilitator, as well as advice and suggestions offered by group members. Providing information about mental health and illness or other topics is an important factor. The discussion at the beginning of this chapter presented the innate need of all people to explain experiences in some way. The ability to understand the source and meaning of symptoms provides a sense of cognitive control and relieves some of the uncertainty and anxiety experienced by an individual with symptoms of psychiatric-mental health disorders. Knowledge is power. Providing information also conveys a sense of interest and caring that contributes to this curative factor.

Undergraduate nurses are often leading educational groups that focus on diagnoses, medications, or coping skills. Although imparting information is an important curative factor, no factor operates in isolation. In other words, using part of the group session to provide information and part of the session for discussion to encourage activation of other curative factors such as altruism, hope, socialization techniques, interpersonal learning, group cohesiveness, and catharsis is most effective. Activation of curative factors is necessary for an effective outcome from the group therapy session.

Altruism

Patients are enormously helpful to each other during group therapy sessions. They offer support, suggestions, and insight, and share similar issues. Frequently, patients will listen more readily to another group member than the nurse or therapist because the therapist is considered a paid professional. However, another member can be counted on to be more truthful and practical (Yalom, 2005). Sometimes, an individual will resist suggestions or even participation in a group because "we will pull each other down" or "I won't have time to talk." However, this usually represents a hidden message that the individual believes he or she has nothing to offer and may require additional work in individual sessions.

Altruism also is associated with the belief that helping others increases one's self-esteem. If an individual can offer something of use to another, his or her feelings of uselessness are decreased. In addition, self-preoccupation and absorption with one's own problems may be decreased. The therapeutic group teaches the lesson that decreasing self-absorption provides a different view of their world.

The Corrective Recapitulation of the Primary Family Group

Patients come to group being shaped by their experiences in their families. Group therapy resembles family structure: Group members may interact with leaders as they did with parents and interact with members as they did with siblings. Often, these communication patterns are dysfunctional. Using the therapeutic group format, members can learn more effective and functional communication patterns. (Family patterns are discussed in more detail at the end of this chapter.)

Development of Socialization Techniques

The development of basic social skills is a curative factor present in all groups to varying degrees. For example, a group session with individuals who have been institutionalized for years preparing for community reintegration would directly address the development and practice of social skills such as maintaining eye contact, carrying on a conversation, and use of polite comments. However, a group of divorced women planning to re-enter the dating scene would focus on different issues. Involvement in any group holds the potential to learn how to communicate and interact with sensitivity and empathy, and with less judgmental approaches. These skills can only improve social functioning in the world.

Imitative Behavior

Individuals commonly pick up or imitate behaviors of social groups. This may involve walking, talking, dressing, or thinking like others. Sometimes, it may involve something as simple as a haircut or something more involved such as adding coping strategies observed in the group. A group member may try on a new behavior to break up old patterns during the process of change.

Interpersonal Learning

Interpersonal learning is an important and complex curative factor. Frequently referred to as insight, interpersonal learning reflects an understanding of the patterns in behavior, and thinking and working through feelings.

Interpersonal learning is bidirectional. In other words, what is learned in the world is carried into the group and what is learned in the group is carried into the world. Thus, an adaptive spiral is set into motion, as described by Neuman's circular pattern of interventions. More specifically, Yalom (2005) described a pattern of interpersonal

learning in a therapeutic group. First, a member displays a behavior. Next, through feedback and self-observation, the impact of the behavior on others' feelings and opinions about him is recognized.

The person also recognizes the impact of the behavior on the opinion that he has of himself. Finally, the individual takes responsibility for the creation of his interpersonal relationships in conjunction with an awareness that he can make changes.

A group leader can use specific techniques when intervening to facilitate interpersonal growth. These include offering feedback on a specific behavior in the group, encouraging self-observation, and reinforcing the transfer of learning.

Group Cohesiveness

Cohesiveness in group therapy is similar to the therapeutic relationship in individual therapy. This sense of "we-ness," solidarity, or attractiveness of the group for its members is not only a curative factor, but a necessary condition for effective group therapy. Groups differ in the degree of cohesiveness. Factors that promote group cohesiveness are highlighted in **Box 9-1**. Those with higher levels of cohesiveness will attend regularly, provide support, defend the group rules, be more accepting of members, and feel greater security and relief from tension in the group.

The group leader can do much to promote cohesiveness. Selection of members and discussing group rules, being a technical expert, and serving as a role model of therapeutic communication are a few examples of fostering group cohesiveness.

Catharsis

Members of a group learning how to express feelings and being able to verbalize what is bothering them is a powerful aspect of a therapeutic group. Without catharsis, a group would be more of an academic, sterile experience. However, it is important to remember that catharsis alone is not adequate for an effective group. Interaction of the curative factors is necessary.

BOX 9-1: FACTORS THAT PROMOTE GROUP COHESIVENESS

- Sharing of similar values and beliefs
- Commitment to the group's existence
- Clearly defined group goals
- Cooperative interaction among members
- Democratic leadership with equal participation of members
- Size appropriate for the intended goal
- Atmosphere of value and acceptance

Existential Factors

The final curative factor, existential factors, involves recognition and acceptance of some universal truths about life experience. These include recognizing that sometimes life is unfair, setting priorities and being less caught up in trivialities, and learning that an individual must take responsibility for himself or herself no matter how much guidance and connection are felt with others. Yalom (2005) described this recognition using the following analogy—"being a ship floating in the dark…even though no physical mooring could be made, it was comforting to see the lights of other ships in the same water" (p. 91).

Cohesiveness in a group reflects the solidarity of the group. It is a curative factor essential for ensuring the effectiveness of group therapy.

Group Development

One pattern seen in all groups, regardless of the type, is the movement through phases as the group develops. These phases of group development are similar to those in the nurse–patient relationship: orientation, working, and termination.

The orientation or beginning phase of the group is characterized by the group leader and members getting to know one another. The duration of this phase varies depending on numerous factors such as the size of the group and its purpose. Initially, members participate hesitantly and search to define how the group is going to help them. Members also determine how they will interact with other members. The group leader or facilitator orients the members and promotes an environment of trust. The leader and members work together to establish the group's rules and goals. During this phase, it is important for the leader to set a structure with clear expectations, including confidentiality, respect, and safety.

In the beginning, members may be reluctant to verbalize their true feelings because they have yet to develop trust and they fear not being accepted by the group. Thus, they often display polite and conforming behaviors, playing the role of the "good patient" and not wishing to offend anyone. As the group progresses, conflicts commonly ensue as power struggles occur and members become more comfortable in the group.

As the group moves into the working phase, group cohesiveness begins to increase as the group engages in

activities to achieve the goals. Problem solving, decision making, education, and sharing of feelings and experiences occur. Conflict is managed by the members. The members increase their reliance on each other rather than the leader for guidance. The leader's major role during this phase is one of facilitating the group and keeping the group on track.

During the termination phase, the group reviews the work done and how that work can be applied in the future. Preparation for separation and ending the group takes place. Members may experience grief over the loss of the group, especially if the group has been established for a long time. Feelings such as abandonment, guilt, fear, and anger may arise. The leader encourages the members to look back on what has occurred and discuss their feelings of loss associated with the ending of the group.

A group progresses through three phases of development: orientation, working, and termination.

Role of the Group Leader or Facilitator

The group leader or facilitator plays a very important role in promoting the effectiveness of the group. The specific interventions by the leader shift with the purpose and the stage of the group's development. **Table 9-2** identifies the role of the leader for each phase of group development.

Preparation for the group is essential and includes clearly identifying the purpose and the procedures to be followed in the group, preparing any materials needed, arranging the room to encourage communication (chairs in circle,

TABLE 9-2: PHASES OF GROUP DEVELOPMENT WITH GROUP'S TASKS AND LEADER'S ROLES

GROUP PHASE	GROUP'S TASK	LEADER'S ROLE
Orientation	Define goals	Provide structure by describing group purpose and expectations.
	Ways of interacting	Role model respectful communication.
		Emphasize positives: "It took a lot of courage to talk about that. I believe everyone here feels a little scared to talk about themselves."
		Use nonverbal reinforcement of therapeutic communication; for example, bending forward, smiling, nodding after members' comments.
	Build universality, cohesiveness, and optimism	Emphasize similarities among members: "It is interesting to notice that everyone in this group has been in therapy before…everyone has at least one significant relationship in their lives."
		"Ken, you are being discharged tomorrow, would you tell the group what has been helpful for you?"
Working	Accomplish group purpose	Keep the group on task with gentle confrontation: "I notice we have been talking about last evening's meal for 10 minutes; do you want to continue this or focus upon…(group purpose)? Let's get back to talking about…."
	Encourage interpersonal learning	Comment on what you see happening in the group process for clarification: "I'm not sure what is happening in our discussion today, but I notice Joe keeps tapping his foot, Sue has not talked to anyone, and Mary moved her chair away from the group—what do you all think about this?"
		Encourage communication by questioning: "Would you talk more about that?"
Termination	Prepare for separation	Review group accomplishments and support members by summarizing and paraphrasing.
	Plan for future	"What stands out for you about the group? What have you learned? What are your feelings about ending the group? How will you apply what you have learned?"

closed door, or private room), and selecting patients. These strategies represent normal lines of defense identified in Neuman's theory, to protect the group from outside interruptions. Once the leader or facilitator clearly understands the purpose of the group, this information is shared with prospective members. Group members should be at similar levels of acuity and cognitive functioning.

Most importantly, the group leader or facilitator must maintain a constant awareness of the differences between individual therapy and group therapy. This includes not doing individual therapy with members during the group session. Rather, interventions must be directed toward the development of the curative factors in the group. Members' participation is necessary. Furthermore, confidence in the effectiveness of group therapy and nonjudgmental comments encourage effectiveness.

At the completion of each group, the leader is responsible for reviewing and documenting the session. If co-leaders are present, this task is simplified. The dynamics as well as the content must be documented. One method for documenting dynamics is the interaction chronogram (**Figure 9-2**; Cox, 1973). The most effective groups show crossed lines of communication and not simply the leader talking to each member. Documentation usually involves each member's type of participation and the themes of the content (i.e., "participated actively by supporting group members and discussing anxiety about marital conflicts").

Applying Neuman's theory, the leader's or facilitator's role is to develop and maintain the lines of defense and resistance to stressors that threaten the core factors or group development. As such, the leader's interventions shift in response to members' participation, which can either facilitate or interfere with the group process.

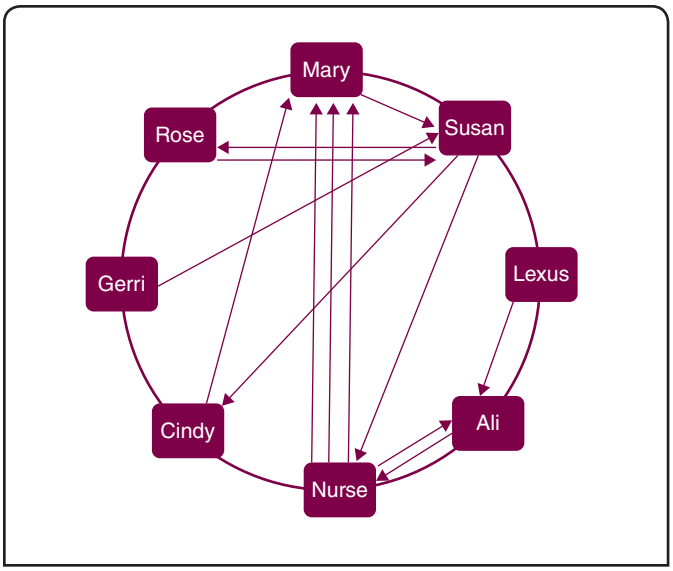


Figure 9-2 *Interaction chronogram of a stress management group.*

The group leader or facilitator assumes different roles depending on the phase of the group's development and in response to the members' participation.

Roles of Group Members

Members of the group may interact in a manner that supports or interferes with the development and maintenance of curative factors and group purpose (Benne & Sheats, 1948). Typically, the roles of group members can be divided into three categories: roles that keep the group on task and focused, roles that maintain the group, and roles that threaten curative factors and group functioning. **Table 9-3** describes these roles.

The group leader or facilitator needs to engage in minimal intervention when dealing with roles that keep the group on task and focused and those that maintain the group because the members are encouraging the group process. However, with roles that threaten curative factors, the members are more self than group focused. Therefore, the leader must interrupt these behaviors in a therapeutic manner. **Therapeutic Interaction 9-1** provides an example of how to address the disruptive behavior of a group member. In a well-developed working group, the members may intervene themselves, not allowing the self-centered behaviors to continue.

For example, when a group member is monopolizing the session in the role of help seeker, self-confessor, or recognition seeker, the behavior must be checked. However, the leader cannot simply tell the person to stop. This has little therapeutic value for the member or the group. The member's anxiety will continue and he or she most likely will resume the same behavior because no learning has taken place. The other group members may feel threatened by the leader's comments and fear that their contributions may also be silenced. This of course does not promote a sense of safety and cohesiveness. Possible effective interventions include summarization and mild confrontation such as "I notice that Mike seems to be doing most of the talking so far today. Can the rest of you identify with his comments or is there something else to be discussed?" Or, "Sue, I wonder if you noticed that group members are not involved today. It may be best for you to stop speaking because it may be important for you to hear what others are thinking now." If the monopolizing individual is losing touch with reality and exhibiting psychotic behavior, such as responding to

TABLE 9-3: ROLES OF GROUP MEMBERS

ROLES FOR KEEPING THE GROUP ON TASK AND FOCUSED	ROLES THAT MAINTAIN THE GROUP	ROLES THAT THREATEN CURATIVE FACTORS AND GROUP FUNCTIONING
• Coordinator who connects ideas and suggestions • Elaborator who expands on ideas discussed • Energizer who encourages group participation and action • Information giver or seeker who offers information or asks the group questions • Opinion giver who offers personal opinions	• Encourager who praises others • Compromiser who gives in during a conflict • Follower who agrees with the group • Harmonizer who works at settling conflicts • Standard setter who verbalizes group standards	• Self-confessor who talks about own issues or feelings that are unrelated to the group discussion • Recognition seeker who attempts to have the group focus on his or her achievements by bragging • Blocker who disagrees with everything • Dominator who works at controlling members by interrupting • Help seeker who seeks group sympathy excessively without concern for other members • Aggressor who criticizes and attacks other group members • Playboy who acts disinterested and bored

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 9-1: INTERACTION BETWEEN GROUP LEADER (GL) AND A DISRUPTIVE GROUP MEMBER

T. is a newly admitted patient who is hypomanic and is attending group for the first time. T. keeps disrupting the group by monopolizing the conversation.

G. L.: "T., thank you for sharing but let us hear from someone else now."	Setting limits
T.: "But I am not finished talking. I have lots more to say and what I have to say is more important than what they have to say."	Intrusive and grandiose statements
G. L.: "It is also important for you to listen in group because you can learn something from other group members that may help you with your problem."	Trying to help the patient maintain proper behavior in a group setting and also to explain purpose
T.: "Can I have another turn talking later?"	Testing the boundaries and limits established by the G. L.
G. L.: "If we have time today you can talk again; if not, you can attend tomorrow and talk more about what is going on with you. C., I see you have your hand raised; let's hear from you."	Continuing to set limits in a kind but firm matter-of-fact manner Facilitating group process by calling on another patient to share

hallucinations or describing bizarre delusions, it is best to remove the member from the group and spend individual time with him or her to decrease the anxiety. Of course, this is possible only if there is a co-leader who is available to leave the group with the member. This example speaks to the importance of screening potential group members for cognitive functioning and ability to participate in the group session.

At the opposite end of member participation is the silent group member. A general rule is to allow a person to participate as much or as little as he or she wishes. However, it has also been reported that individuals participating more in the group process make more therapeutic change (Yalom, 2005). Therefore, before intervening, the group leader needs to assess the reasons for the silence. Some members may be afraid of disclosing too much or are fearful of losing their temper or crying. Another may be feeling intimidated by a certain member or may be sulking to have the group attend to them. This may need to be explored individually outside of the group. The leader may also ask the member to respond to comments about body language or questions such as, "What is the best question to ask today to bring you into group involvement?" Or, "Is this a meeting where you are going to need prodding?" "How did that question make you feel?" It is important to remember that silence in itself is communication. **How Would You Respond? 9-2** provides a practical example of a group session and the roles assumed by the group members.

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 9-2: NURSE-LED STRESS MANAGEMENT GROUP

This is the third meeting of a group of seven women who had bariatric surgery about 6 months ago. They have all lost large amounts of weight, but are having difficulty coping with stress in their lives without overeating. The purpose of this 8-week, closed, outpatient group is to identify alternate ways of coping with stress. The group is in the working phase. Each session lasts 90 minutes and meets weekly.

First, the nurse leader asks if there are any comments about the previous session, then sets the agenda for the session—exploring situations, thoughts, and feelings that trigger overeating. Mary begins by describing the birthday party yesterday where she overate. Then Cindy states she also had a similar experience with her family. Next, Susan looks at Cindy and states that she just gets the urge to eat and is not aware of what precedes that. Then Susan asks the leader why it is important to understand this; she simply measures her food and refuses to eat more because she does not want to gain weight back. The group leader refers the question back to the group, "What does everyone else think about that?" Mary looks at Susan and begins to explain her thinking, then Rose and Gerri also respond. Susan looks irritated and states that she is not going to change anything because measuring food is working. Lexus and Ali are looking at the floor and not speaking. The leader looks around the group and states, "It takes a lot of courage to make such a change as to have bariatric surgery and it seems like the adjustments after the surgery are also challenging. What does the group think about Susan's comment?" Ali speaks next, stating that not everyone agrees that we are courageous, some people think it is the "lazy way to lose weight." Then Lexus agrees and provides some examples of comments made to her.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

Refer to Figure 9-2, the interaction chronogram, to answer the following questions:

1. *Would you classify this group as insight-oriented or supportive?*
2. *What role did each member play in this session segment?*
3. *What curative factors may be active in this session?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 9-2: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

This would be considered an insight-oriented group for several reasons. First, there was not a lecture or presentation by the facilitator. The general agenda was set and then opened to the group for discussion. The purpose was to have the group discuss their own situations and then, by group interaction, identify triggers and feelings. As the group continued, the focus shifted more from information to feelings, and the leader respected and encouraged that direction of discussion.

There was movement among multiple roles in this session, with the majority facilitating curative factors. The nurse leader was in the role of facilitator and agenda setter. Initially, two members were in roles that interfered with building curative factors. Both Ali and Lexus were silent and avoidant, but later moved into roles of information providers. The other group members moved among several roles, which facilitated development of curative factors. These included the role of elaborator by expanding on each other's comments, information giver and seeker, follower by agreeing with comments, and opinion giver. At one point, there was almost a conflict, with Susan taking the role of blocker by questioning the importance of the discussion. This was countered by Mary, Rose, and Gerri assuming the roles of harmonizers and then Susan as the compromiser.

The curative factors most likely present in this session would include catharsis and imparting information, interpersonal learning, development of socialization techniques, cohesiveness, and universality. Although there is an overlap among these factors, each factor can be identified in this group. Several group members shared information and expressed their feelings (catharsis). During this sharing, there was agreement among most members and a sense of experiencing the same difficulties (we are not alone), which is cohesiveness and universality. During this process, individuals listened, watched, and interacted appropriately, indicating the learning of socialization techniques. There were also most likely general existential factors indicated by participants "enjoying" the group as well as instillation of hope that there are additional strategies available and they are not hopeless.

Group members can assume roles that keep the group on task and focused, that maintain the group, and that threaten curative factors and group functioning.

Examples of Group Therapy

As described earlier in the chapter, various types of groups can develop. The basic structure for a lower functioning inpatient therapy group was presented by Yalom (1983). The basic plan of a session is 2 to 5 minutes of orientation, 5 to 10 minutes of warm-up, 20 to 30 minutes of a structured exercise, and 5 to 10 minutes of session review.

- *Orientation involves providing the names of the leader, co-leader, and each member; the purpose of the session; the length of the session; and the rules. Rules may include such information as only one person speaks at a time or each member must stay for the entire group.*
- *Warm-up may involve a brief physical activity such as a ring toss, muscle relaxation exercise, or an easy chair yoga or breathing exercise.*
- *Structured activity may include items such as sentence completion (***Box 9-2***), an art project such as creating a collage from magazine pictures on any topic, creating a painting using a piece of newspaper covered with tempera paint brush strokes followed by the group naming the painting, reading of a poem followed by discussion of the meaning and reactions to the poem, or writing poems using a template (Leedy, 1973).*
- *Session review follows the activity in which there is a discussion focused on impressions of the session—"What did you like or dislike about this session? What surprised you in this session?"*

It is important to remember that as the functioning level of group members decreases, structure and leader activity increase.

Another type of group frequently led by nursing generalists is psychoeducational groups. These groups focus

BOX 9-2: EXAMPLES OF SENTENCE COMPLETION ACTIVITIES

Examples of sentence completion may include sentences encouraging self-disclosure:

One thing people would be surprised to know about me is _____.
One thing I really enjoy is _____.
Someone I really miss is _____.
I handle separation by _____.
The last time I was angry was _____.
What really irritates me is _____.

Other types of sentence completion may include a focus on change, such as:

One thing I really want to change about myself is _____.
Two things I like about myself and do not want to change are _____.
The reason it is hard for me to change is _____.

These completed sentences can then be discussed and elaborated on in the whole group or in pairs first and then summarized in the whole group. Group leaders may pair up with members who are having a hard time with the activity or the leaders may roam around the room checking on each pair's discussion.

on topics such as medications or a specific diagnosis. Information usually is provided in the form of handouts or videos followed by general discussion of the content. Psychoeducational groups are more than just the leader simply providing information. The discussion must involve activation of curative factors.

A psychoeducational group is one example of a group led by psychiatric-mental health nurses prepared at the basic (generalist) level.

FAMILY PSYCHOTHERAPY

FAMILY THERAPY can be defined as insight-oriented therapy with the goal of altering interactions between or among family members, thus improving the functioning of the family as a unit or any individual within the family. The family is viewed as the patient. At one time, the term *family* referred only to those relationships of blood, marriage, or adoption. However, the wide-ranging family configurations of today have led to much broader definitions of what constitutes a family.

Family therapy is considered a specialized type of group therapy based on the understanding that the family has a multigenerational history and patterns of interacting already in place. Family members may or may not live together but depend on each other for physical and emotional well-being. **Box 9-3** lists the characteristics of optimal family functioning. The family is a natural system, not one created specifically for a period of time to address with therapy.

Models of Family Therapy

Models of family therapy commonly view families as open systems composed of individual members interacting within the family system and within the environment. Within the family system are various subsystems, such as the parental subsystem, parent–child subsystem, and sibling subsystems. The family is also considered a subsystem of a larger community system. Thus, a change in one system impacts all of the other components.

Family therapy aims to reduce pathological conflict and anxiety, to promote the abilities of individuals and the family as a whole to cope with destructive forces within the environment, and to promote integration into society, extended family, and the community. Many models of family therapy exist and the approach used depends on the training, environment, and personality of the therapist and the family. Combinations of theories have been discussed as one way

BOX 9-3: OPTIMAL FAMILY FUNCTIONING

- Open, trusting relationships
- High respect for individuality and autonomy
- Open, clear, honest communication
- Parental coalition with shared power
- Flexible rules
- Spontaneous interaction with use of humor
- High levels of initiative as opposed to passivity
- Uniqueness and differences encouraged and appreciated

From Walsh (2003).

of understanding both the individual and the family simultaneously. An overview of the Bowen Family Systems Model is provided as the framework for understanding families.

Family therapy is a specialized form of group therapy that focuses on the family as an open system to alter the interactions between or among members.

Bowen Family Systems Model

Bowen (1978) described several concepts important to family functioning. A person's level of differentiation or ability to be his or her true self within family pressures and expectations is a key concept. Differentiation of self involves the ability to remain emotionally present, engaged, and nonreactive in emotionally charged situations, while also expressing one's own goals, values, and principles. This must be accomplished without expecting others to change. If differentiation of self is low, anxiety and symptoms are high. In response to intense anxiety, families make decisions based on emotions, not logical thinking. Throughout family therapy, the therapist uses a logical, somewhat distant approach, attempting to balance logic and emotion. In other words, a decrease in emotional reactivity about family issues leads to more logical thinking and higher levels of differentiation.

Increasing differentiation of self also requires an understanding of emotional triangles and multigenerational transmission of anxiety. The concept of emotional triangles involves a three-party system, where two of the members are close with resultant exclusion of a third person. There are multiple, shifting triangles in every family. The triangle functions to decrease anxiety by sharing the emotional load. For example, if there is excessive conflict between a husband and wife, the wife may pull in a child and focus most of her attention on childcare. The husband then becomes the outsider and focuses on work. Although anxiety may be relieved, the conflict is not resolved.

Bowen also believed that patterns of interaction are transmitted from one generation to the next. Thus, a family's ways of dealing or coping with conflicts, as well as their attitudes, beliefs, conflicts, and emotional processes, can be traced from parents to children over several generations. One method useful in evaluating multigenerational transmission of anxiety is a genogram.

Key concepts associated with the Bowen Family Systems Model include differentiation of self, emotional triangles, and multigenerational transmission of anxiety.

Genogram

A **GENOGRAM** is a tool developed to show a map of the multigenerational family structure and process. This family history tool is invaluable, especially for those with psychiatric-mental health disorders, in light of the increased understanding of genetics. The genogram can concisely record important information about family history.

Genograms were first developed by Bowen. He used them to assist family therapy trainees in understanding their own families and functioning patterns.

Constructing a genogram involves specific steps and is described in great detail by McGoldrick, Gerson, and Shellenberger (1999). The backbone of the genogram is the representation of how different family members are related to one another from one generation to another. Specific symbols are used to depict these relationships (**Table 9-4**).

Genograms may be drawn by hand or computer generated with special software that can be purchased online. When done by hand, the paper is divided into thirds horizontally for a three-generation family history. Typically, the genogram begins on the left with the husband. As much or as little detail as desired may be included.

The first step in constructing a genogram is to ask questions to obtain the basic facts about the family, such as names, births, marriages, deaths, and birth order of children. Then additional information is collected based on the purpose of the family history. For example, a patient, Mary, was having difficulty understanding the reasons for developing

TABLE 9-4: GENOGRAM SYMBOLS

Gender	Male on left	Female on right
Index person		
Death	X inside figure, date above figure, age at death inside figure	
Marriage	year	
Divorce	year	
Children	oldest youngest	

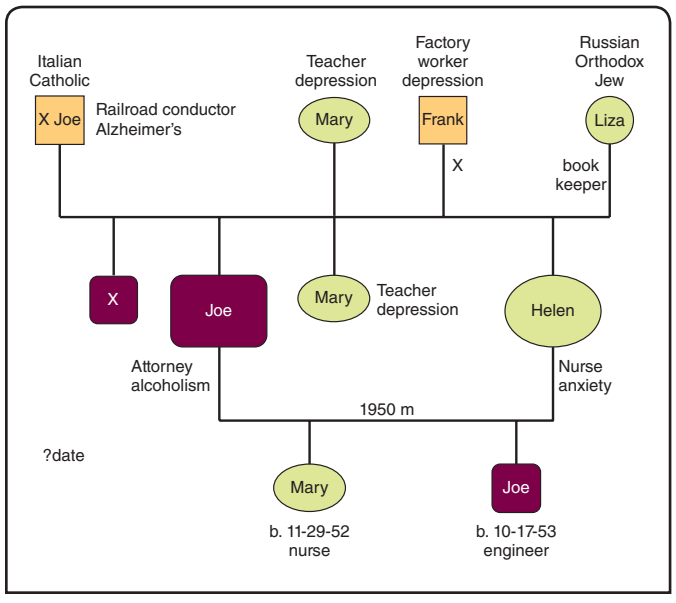


Figure 9-3 *A family genogram.*

a serious mental illness and feeling so different from her family. By obtaining a three-generation family history and drawing a genogram indicating health problems, the family history of mental illness becomes clearer (**Figure 9-3**). Thus, a map of health problems in Mary's family is depicted for three generations.

The genogram can be expanded with other facts as well as symbols to indicate relationships, such as very close, conflicted, distant, or estranged or cutoff (McGoldrick et al., 1999). Consider your own family and create a personal three-generational family genogram with as much or as little information as is available.

THE INTERPERSONAL PROCESS AND GROUP AND FAMILY THERAPY

The interpersonal process is key to group and family therapy. Throughout, there is a need for the development

TABLE 9-5: COMPARISON OF THE INTERPERSONAL PROCESS AND GROUP PSYCHOTHERAPY

	PEPLAU'S INTERPERSONAL THERAPY	YALOM'S GROUP PSYCHOTHERAPY
Patient addressed	Individual	Group
Goals	Decreased anxiety Self-maintenance	Creation and maintenance of curative factors
Phases of development	Orientation, identification, exploitation, resolution	Orientation, work, termination
Explanation of anxiety during therapy	Due to unmet needs	Inevitable experience during initial stages of group formation
Role of nurse	To manage the nurse–patient relationship	To facilitate curative factors in group process
Diagnostic process	First step in understanding the patient	Behavior in group is important, not diagnosis

of trust with a focus on the family's needs. Additionally, the phases of group development parallel those of the interpersonal process. This correlation is highlighted in **Table 9-5**.

Nurses who lead groups have informally recognized the effectiveness of group work. Recently, there have been more structured evaluations such as meta-analysis. For example, McDermut, Miller, and Brown provided a review of studies examining the effectiveness of group psychotherapy for the treatment of depression. Group treatment was found to be as effective as individual therapy in 75% of the studies and more effective in the remaining 25%. **Evidence-Based Practice 9-1** highlights this research involving group therapy.

As an adjunctive treatment for schizophrenia, group therapy has been successful in reducing social isolation and improving adaptive coping strategies (Shor, Kalivatz, Amir, Aldor, & Lipot, 2015). However, group therapy is rarely available for this population due to the growing trend of "medication management" of individuals with long-term mental illness, rather than therapy in the community. (More detailed discussion about treatments can be found in later chapters on specific psychiatric-mental health disorders.)

There are several similarities involved in interpersonal therapy and group therapy. During the working and resolution phases of the interpersonal relationship and during the working and termination phases of group therapy, evaluation occurs. Group leaders can evaluate the group by asking members specific questions. These may include: "How do you think the group is going?" "What was important to you in today's group?" "Was there something you wanted to discuss that was not covered?""Have you noticed any differences in how you feel about yourself or in your relationships?" This ongoing feedback not only provides information on group effectiveness but also direction for shifts in the group planning and content.

This evaluation process usually reveals that change takes place at different rates in each individual. Some group members enter the group ready to change and change feelings about themselves, their environments, and how they relate to others. For example, a woman who has been depressed decides to end an abusive relationship. Others listen and take information in but do not change. Some may develop an understanding of their problems and plan to change but do not do so for many months or even years. The readiness and timing of change vary across individuals.

Integrating both group and individual therapy may be appropriate for a patient. The therapist is usually the same for both an individual and the group. Flexibility in planning treatment is a vital component for effectiveness. Group therapy provides a range of individuals for interpersonal learning and holds the potential to work through family influences in the microcosm of the group. Other advantages include cost-effectiveness and the ability to provide treatment to more patients in the same time period. Of course, there are disadvantages of group therapy, including possible breeches of confidentiality and group leaders lacking skills to facilitate the curative factors.

Although family psychotherapy is not within the scope of practice for undergraduate nurses, an awareness of family dynamics is important for all levels of psychiatric-mental health nursing. At the undergraduate level, the family is seen as the context or environment for the individual. Using this awareness, nurses can provide support and education to families formally and informally. One example of

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 9-1: GROUP THERAPY FOR PATIENTS WITH HYPOCHONDRIASIS (HEALTH ANXIETY)

STUDY

Weck, F., Gropalis, M., Hiller, W., & Bleichardt, G. (2015). Effectiveness of cognitive-behavioral group therapy for patients with hypochondriasis (health anxiety). *Journal of Anxiety Disorders, 30*, 1–7.

SUMMARY

This study explored the effectiveness of combined group and individual cognitive-behavioral therapy with a large (N = 126) convenience sample of outpatients with a diagnosis of health anxiety. Reliable and valid questionnaires were used pre- and postintervention with a 12-month follow-up. The questionnaires evaluated symptoms and satisfaction with treatment. Treatment consisted of 14 sessions (6 individual and 8 group) with the booster at 3 months.

Findings indicated a large, statistically significant decrease in symptoms with high levels of satisfaction. Furthermore, patients who suffered with long lasting (years) severe anxiety benefited as much or even more than those with less severe, shorter duration symptoms.

Decreased symptoms were maintained at follow-up.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Group therapy is a valid and effective intervention for patients with hypochondriasis (health anxiety). Based on this knowledge, nurses can advocate for this treatment when their patients experience health anxiety. The therapeutic factors in group therapy can help to foster positive coping strategies while decreasing health anxiety. Additionally, nurses can apply the concepts of group therapy when conducting psychoeducational groups, thereby strengthening the interpersonal relationship.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *What issues might arise related to group roles during group therapy for patients with hypochondriasis (health anxiety)?*
2. *Which of Yalom's 11 curative factors would be most important when engaged in a psychoeducational group focusing on medication therapy for patients with hypochondriasis (health anxiety)?*

a family group is a psychoeducation group. For example, the nurse would meet with several families who have a member experiencing depression. During the psychoeducation group, the nurse would provide information about depression, treatment options, and strategies for coping along with the consequences of the illness. This could then be followed by an open discussion among family members about what they have learned.

SUMMARY POINTS

- A system is a group of components related sufficiently to identify patterns of interaction such that a change in any component leads to a change in one or more of the other components and in the system as a whole.
- In an open system, the components interact with the environment and with each other, making the system dynamic and ever-changing. The components in a closed system are isolated from the environment.
- Systems thinking in nursing can be traced back to Florence Nightingale, who identified the need for creating the appropriate environment for the patient. Betty Neuman applied systems theory to her model, identifying the person as interacting with the internal and external environment. Neuman viewed the patient as a unique system composed of factors and characteristics.
- Applying systems theory or systems thinking in psychiatric-mental health nursing encourages psychiatric-mental health nurses to look at the bigger picture, thereby promoting comprehensive, holistic care.
- A group is any collection of two or more individuals who are interdependent and share at least one commonality or goal. Applying systems theory, a group is a set of components that work together to achieve a function or purpose.
- Groups may be formal or informal. Other classifications include open or closed (based on membership), therapeutic insight-oriented or supportive (based on purpose), or inpatient or outpatient (based on setting).
- Group process refers to the interaction among group members; group dynamics refers to the forces that produce the patterns within the group as the group moves toward its goals.
- All groups share common factors called curative factors. These factors are instillation of hope, universality, imparting of information, altruism, corrective recapitulation of the primary family group, development of socialization techniques, imitative behavior, interpersonal learning, group cohesiveness, catharsis, and existential factors.
- Group development occurs through phases that are similar to those in the nurse–patient relationship. The phases of group development are orientation, working, and termination.
- The group leader or facilitator plays an important role in promoting the effectiveness of the group. The role shifts with the purpose of the group and the phase of the group's development.
- The role of group members can be divided into three categories: roles that keep the group on task and focused; roles that maintain the group; and roles that threaten curative factors and group functioning.
- Family psychotherapy is a specialized form of group therapy. It is an insight-oriented therapy with the goal of altering interactions between or among family members to improve the functioning of the family as a unit or any individual within the family.
- Many models of family therapy exist. One model, the Bowen Family Systems Model, addresses concepts important to family function: differentiation of self, emotional triangles, and multigenerational transmission of anxiety.
- A genogram is a tool that can be created to show a map of multigenerational family structure and process. Through the use of symbols, it depicts the relationships among different family members from one generation to another.
- Change occurs at varying rates in each individual and each group. Evaluation of the patient's perception during group therapy is important to encourage patient involvement and influence the direction of the group sessions.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about systems theory. The students demonstrate the need for additional review when they identify which of the following?
   a. The interactions of a system are viewed in a linear fashion.
   b. The parts of a closed system are isolated from the environment.
   c. A change in one component affects other components.
   d. An open system is dynamic and constantly changing.

2. A nursing instructor is preparing a teaching plan for a class about nursing theories. Which of the following would the instructor include when describing the Neuman Systems Model?
   a. The person is an energy field continually interacting with the environment.
   b. Each patient has a central core that includes survival factors common to all.
   c. A proper environment is necessary to promote the patient's reparative powers.
   d. The nurse and patient engage in an interpersonal process to reach a desired goal.

3. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is a member of several groups. Which of the following would be considered an informal group?
   a. Treatment team
   b. Specialty nursing association
   c. Friends from work
   d. Nurses working on the unit

4. A group is in the orientation phase of development. The group facilitator would be involved with which of the following?
   a. Keeping the group on task
   b. Clarifying what is happening in the group
   c. Reviewing group accomplishments
   d. Describing group expectations

5. During a group session, the group leader notices that a member is boasting about his accomplishments in an effort to get the group to focus on him rather than focus on the task of the group. The leader would identify this behavior as reflecting which role?
   a. Encourager
   b. Energizer
   c. Recognition seeker
   d. Standard setter

6. During a group session, a member states that she feels embarrassed about being arrested for trying to steal clothing from a department store. Several other group members then share similar feelings about their involvement with law enforcement, which then leads to a discussion about thinking about consequences and learning from the experience. The leader interprets this interaction as reflecting which curative factor?
   a. Instillation of hope
   b. Universality
   c. Altruism
   d. Imitative behavior

7. A mother and her adult daughter are experiencing a conflict. As a result, the mother turns to her sister and focuses her attention on her. The adult daughter then begins to focus on her work role. Applying the Bowen Family Systems Model, which of the following is present?
   a. Differentiation of self
   b. Emotional triangle
   c. Multigenerational transmission
   d. Corrective recapitulation of the primary family group

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Benne, K., & Sheats, P. (1948). Functional roles of group members. *Journal of Social Issues, 4*(2), 41.

Bowen, M. (1978). *Family therapy in clinical practice*. New York, NY: Jason Aronson.

Breitbart, W., Rosenfeld, B., Pessin, H., Applebaum, A., Kulikowski, J., & Lichtenthal, W. G. (2015). Meaning-centered group psychotherapy: An effective intervention for improving psychological well-being in patients with advanced cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology, 33*(7), 749–754.

Cox, M. (1973). The group therapy interaction chronogram. *British Journal of Social Work, 3*, 243–256.

Fawcett, J. (1984). *Analysis and evaluation of conceptual models of nursing*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Griffiths, K. M., Farrer, L., & Christensen, H. (2010). The efficacy of Internet interventions for depression and anxiety disorders: A review of randomised controlled trials. *Medical Journal of Australia, 192*(11 Suppl.), S4–S11.

Kuhn, T. (1996). *The structure of scientific revolutions* (3rd ed.). Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press.

Kurtz, C. (2013). A nurse-led group cognitive-behavioral therapy for insomnia. *Journal of the American Psychiatric Nurses Association, 19*(1), 13.

Lazarus, R., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York, NY: Springer.

Leedy, J. (1973). *Poetry therapy: The use of poetry in the treatment of emotional disorders*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Magyar-Moe, J., Owens, R., & Scheel, M. (2014). Application of positive psychology in counseling. *The Counseling Psychologist, 43*(4), 494–507.

McGoldrick, M., Gerson, R., & Shellenberger, S. (1999). *Genograms in family assessment*. New York, NY: W. W. Norton.

Neuman, B. (2002). The Neuman Systems Model. In B. Neuman & J. Fawcett (Eds.), *The Neuman Systems Model* (4th ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Nightingale, F. (1969). *Notes on nursing: What it is and is not*. New York, NY: Dover. (Originally published, 1859)

Reed, P., & Zurakowski, T. (1996). Nightingale: Foundations of nursing. In J. Fitzpatrick & A. Whall (Eds.), *Conceptual models of nursing: Analysis and application* (3rd ed.). Stamford, CT: Appleton and Lange.

Rogers, M. E. (1970). *The theoretical basis of nursing*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Rogers, M. E. (1992). Nursing science and the space age. *Nursing Science Quarterly, 5*(1), 27–34.

Seligman, M. (1998). *Learner optimism*. New York, NY: Knopf, Inc.

Shor, R., Kalivatz, Z., Amir, Y., Aldor, R., & Lipot, M. (2015). Therapeutic factors in a group for parents with mental illness. *Community Mental Health Journal, 51*(1), 79–84.

Thompson, K. A., Parahoob, A. K., & Blair, N. (2014). A nurse-led smoking cessation clinic. *Health Education Journal, 66*(4), 307–322.

von Bertalanffy, L. (1968). *General Systems Theory: Foundations, developments, applications*. New York, NY: Braziller.

Walsh, F. (2003). *Normal family processes*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Weck, F., Gropalis, M., Hiller, W., & Bleichardt, G. (2015). Effectiveness of cognitive-behavioral group therapy for patients with hypochondriasis (health anxiety). *Journal of Anxiety Disorders, 30*, 1–7.

Yalom, I. (1983). *Inpatient group psychotherapy*. New York, NY: Basic Books.

Yalom, I. (2005). *The theory and practice of group psychotherapy* (5th ed.). New York, NY: Basic Books.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe how the definitions of mental illness have developed through the years
2. Discuss the different disciplinary perspectives of mental illness
3. Define six major grand theories used to explain mental health and illness
4. Identify the major theorists associated with the psychodynamic, behavioral, cognitive, social, humanistic, and biological theories of mental health and illness

CHAPTER 10

THEORIES OF MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS: PSYCHODYNAMIC, SOCIAL, COGNITIVE, BEHAVIORAL, HUMANISTIC, AND BIOLOGICAL INFLUENCES

Patricia Hart O'Regan

5. Discuss the concepts or beliefs of one theorist associated with the psychodynamic, behavioral, cognitive, social, and humanistic theories of mental health and illness
6. Explain the current areas of research reflecting biological psychology theory

KEY TERMS

Behavioral psychology theory
Biological psychology theory
Classical conditioning
Cognitive dissonance
Cognitive psychology theory
Ego defense mechanisms
Gestalt
Grand theories
Humanistic psychology theory
Mental illness
Micro-level theories
Middle-range theories
Operant conditioning
Psychodynamic theory
Self-efficacy
Social psychological theory
Systematic desensitization
Theory

Psychiatric-mental health professionals (providers/practitioners) need to have a comprehensive knowledge foundation about mental illness and the theoretical underpinnings associated with it. Definitions of theory, as well as theories of mental health and illness, abound. Variation in these definitions can be influenced by or contingent on a number of factors, including the disciplinary and specialty perspective. Presently, theory development in psychiatric-mental health and mental illness is undergoing extensive change, and the implications for all psychiatric-mental health practitioners are many. In addition to theoretical understandings, evidence-based research and clinical practice standards have evolved as a critical and expected basis for developing appropriate interventions for and with patients diagnosed with psychiatric-mental health disorders. These theoretical, epidemiological, translational research and clinical practice standards, together with the clinical knowledge garnered through the interpersonal relationship that the provider has developed with the patient, provide a foundation for an efficacious, patient-centered therapeutic intervention.

This chapter provides an overview of various prominent theories of mental illness. The work of influential theorists, researchers, and practitioners from several disciplines, including but not limited to nursing, medicine, and psychology, is described. Theoretical concepts and explanations of the potential etiology of mental illness from within the framework of psychodynamic, behavioral, cognitive, social, humanistic, and biological theory also are presented. Pertinent definitions, historical background, epidemiological incidence and prevalence rates, and comparative disease burden (e.g., disability, economic cost) of mental illness also are included.

MENTAL ILLNESS

The question is: What is mental illness? When asking mental health care providers or when researching mental health care disciplines, the result would reveal a wide variation in the definition of this term. Many mental health professionals would most likely define mental illness based on the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM–5*; American Psychiatric Association, 2013), which is the widely accepted resource for defining mental disorders. Additionally, nursing professionals may use the North American Nursing Diagnosis Association-International (NANDA, 2014) Definitions and Classification or the International Classification for Nursing Practice (ICNP) taxonomy for nursing-specific definitions that include mental illness.

The first U.S. surgeon general's report on mental health and illness—*Mental Health: A Report of the Surgeon General* (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 1999)—defined **MENTAL ILLNESS** as mental disorders that are diagnosable conditions characterized by abnormalities in cognition, emotion, or mood, or the highest integrative aspects of behavior, such as social interactions or planning of future activities. This definition is consistent with concepts included in nursing diagnosis classification systems.

No one simple definition of mental illness exists. The DSM-5 *and NANDA classifications offer widely accepted descriptions of mental illness.*

Evolution of Thinking About Mental Illness

The mind and mental illness have been subjects of concern, philosophical and theoretical debate, and research for more than two millennia. The quest for knowledge and understanding of the human mind is evident in the writings of early philosophers and scientists such as Aristotle, Descartes, Locke, Hume, and Kant. They explored concepts of the human mind, emotions, thoughts, and behaviors, and how the mind relates to the material or physical body and human condition along the continuum of health. The early philosophical questions included whether a mind actually existed, and if it did, where was it located and was it a force for good or evil? Others asked, if there was a mind, was it (a) separate from or a part of the physical body that could be objectified, would expand with space, and be experienced, and (b) did it contain all the biological senses of sight, hearing, smell, touch, and taste?

An important and enduring question is that of nature versus nurture. Is an individual born with a mind and body that are destined to become the product of its nature, or are there some other internal or external influences that affect how well or poorly the mind and body will perform after the individual is born? These questions continue to be relevant today and remain part of the philosophical and theoretical dialogue and debate among researchers and practitioners. Research and practice based on mind–body theories of monism (mind and body are of one thing, inseparable), dualism (mind and body are separate entities), interactionism, and positive empiricism that began centuries ago can still be found to lesser or greater degrees in contemporary theories. Questions, debates, theories, and research hypotheses that guided early experimental and empirical research studies are the foundation of what became known as the science of psychology and the art and science of psychiatric-mental health nursing and psychiatric medicine.

Contemporary literature on mental illness is replete with research guided by different theoretical frameworks.

However, the theoretical descriptions of the etiology and treatment approaches within these theories differ.

Attempts to understand the human mind, body, and behavior can be traced as far back as Aristotle.

The Current State of Mental Illness

Comparative data from the 1996 and 2006 Medical Expenditure Panel Survey—Household Component (MEPS-HC), cosponsored by the Agency for Health Care Research and Quality (AHRQ) and the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), indicate that mental disorder was ranked among the top five most costly medical conditions in the United States in both 1996 and 2006 (Soni, 2009). That same study revealed that the number of people with a mental disorder had risen from 19.3 million to 36.2 million. In addition, comparison of the time period between 1996 and 2006 demonstrated that mental disorders accounted for the largest increase in expenditure of all medical conditions, rising from $35.2 billion in 1996 (adjusted for inflation) to $57.5 billion in 2006 (Soni, 2009). Mental illness is considered to be epidemic based on recent studies and statistics. For example, prevalence rates and descriptive statistical data reported by the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) in 2009 indicate that 26.2% of Americans ages 18 years and older suffer from a diagnosable mental disorder in a given year. This would be equivalent to 57.7 million people when applied to the 2004 U.S. Census data. In addition, major depression, the most commonly diagnosed mental disorder, is the leading cause of disability in the United States for ages 15 to 44 years (NIMH, 2009). Moreover, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention National Vital Statistics Report (Heron et al., 2009) ranked suicide as the 11th leading cause of death in the United States. Thus, despite existing theory, research, and treatment options, mental illness remains an epidemic in the United States and is a major health concern that requires public health initiatives to reduce the magnitude of human suffering and the costs associated with it.

Based on the results of these studies, more questions have come to light:

- *How did we get to where we are today?*
- *Do we really know more about the mind, mental illness, and how to prevent it or alleviate the symptoms and causes of mental illness than our predecessors?*
- *Why has increased access to and provision of mental health care in the United States, increased standardization of diagnostic criteria using the* DSM-5*, and increased use of evidence-based practices, particularly involving psychotropic medications, not lessened the epidemic of mental illness in the United States?*
- *Do we have more mental illness in the United States now, or are we better at diagnosing it?*
- *Are there other influences, such as economic, political, and cultural, or research methodologies that contribute to the increased prevalence statistics of mental illness over time in the United States?*

The answers to these questions are not simple. Contemporary literature has a plethora of information; for example, research results stating that there is indeed more scientific information about mental illness etiology, diagnoses, and possible treatments. It is known that economic influences play a role in selecting criteria to be used for diagnosis of mental illnesses. Insurance reimbursement to mental health providers often requires that a patient be diagnosed with a mental disorder that is included in the *DSM-5* and/or the *International Classification of Diagnoses (ICD)-10* (the World Health Organization's [WHO] version of illness classification). However, despite this plethora of information, there is no full disciplinary, interdisciplinary, or subspecialty consensus on the value, validity, or reliability of the understandings of mental illness.

THEORIES AND MENTAL ILLNESS

There are many definitions of **THEORY** in the literature. Some definitions are highly abstract while others are narrow and reductionistic. According to the American Psychological Association (2009), a theory is defined as an organized set of concepts that explains a phenomenon or set of phenomena. Nurse researchers Im and Meleis (1999) defined theory as an organized, coherent, and systematic articulation of a set of statements related to significant questions in a discipline that are communicated in a meaningful whole to describe or explain a phenomenon or set of phenomena. For theory and research to become useful and contribute to the best evidence-based practices and quality outcomes in health care, theory-driven research must:

1. Be applied and outcomes measured in the clinical setting
2. Reciprocally and continuously inform each other, similar to the feedback mechanism of a heat thermostat or that of the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal gland stress response feedback mechanism

Mental health and psychology are associated with numerous theories. Theories can be organized into a framework involving their level of abstraction. **GRAND THEORIES**, such as the six that are addressed in this chapter, are the most abstract and broad in scope. **MIDDLE-RANGE THEORIES**,

such as self-efficacy theory that is highlighted in Bandura's social cognitive theory later in this chapter, are less abstract (more concrete) than grand theories. The third category of theories is labeled **MICRO-LEVEL THEORIES**, which are the least abstract and narrow in scope (Smith & Liehr, 2003).

There are three main types of theory: grand, middle-range, and micro-level.

Many different schools of thought are also prevalent in mental health and psychology but all share the same commonality—the study of the mind, body, and/or behavior. Six grand theories in mental health and psychology, often used in guiding mental health research, are explored here. They are: (a) psychodynamic theory, (b) behavioral theory, (c) cognitive theory, (d) social theory, (e) humanistic theory, and (f) biological theory. **Box 10-1** defines these six theories.

Psychodynamic Theories

Psychodynamic theories focus on the unconscious and assert that underlying unconscious or repressed conflicts are responsible for conflicts, disruptions, and disturbances in behavior and personality. Actions are believed to be motivated by emotions and thoughts. Therefore, to understand and change behavior, a person needs to develop awareness and insight into his or her thoughts and emotions. Psychodynamic theories are based on Sigmund Freud's psychoanalytic theory.

Sigmund Freud

Freud developed the first psychodynamic theory, called psychoanalytic theory. He is considered the father of psychoanalysis. He identified two major components of the mind: the conscious portion, which includes awareness of events, thoughts, and feelings that can be remembered, and the unconscious portion, which includes thoughts and feelings that are not accessible to an individual's conscious or subconscious awareness. Freud also described the personality as consisting of three continuously interacting parts: the id, ego, and superego. The id represents the impulsive part of the self based on unconscious drives and primitive instincts. It is based on pleasure and involved with satisfying needs to attain immediate gratification. The superego represents the moral self associated with ethics, standards, and self-criticism. It develops as the individual internalizes values and morals learned from the interaction with parents and other primary caretakers. The ego can be viewed as the mediator between the id and superego, the rational decision maker based in reality and used to reduce tension and anxiety (Carver & Scheier, 2004).

BOX 10-1: GRAND THEORIES IN MENTAL HEALTH AND PSYCHOLOGY

- **PSYCHODYNAMIC THEORY**: A psychological model in which behavior is explained in terms of past experiences and motivational forces; actions are viewed as stemming from inherited instincts, biological drives, and attempts to resolve conflicts between personal needs and social requirements (ApA, 2009). **BEHAVIORAL PSYCHOLOGY THEORY**: Scientific approach that limits the study of psychology to measurable or observable behavior (ApA, 2009).
- **COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY THEORY**: The study of higher mental processes such as attention, language use, memory, perception, problem solving, and thinking (ApA, 2009).
- **SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGICAL THEORY**: The study of the effect of social variables on individual behavior, attitudes, perceptions, and motives; also includes group and intergroup phenomena (ApA, 2009); social brain (neuro) psychology theory (more specific social psychological theory) as the means for understanding the connection between the mind and body through the study of social influences (understanding the effect of society on the brain that is the seat of emotions and behavior; Cacioppo, 2002).
- **HUMANISTIC PSYCHOLOGY THEORY**: A group of psychologies that include early and emerging orientations and perspectives, including Rogerian, existential, transpersonal, phenomenological, hermeneutic, feminist, and other psychologies (ApA, 2010).
- **BIOLOGICAL PSYCHOLOGY (OR BIOPSYCHOLOGY) THEORY**: The study of human or animal psychology using a biological approach in order to understand human behavior; involving brain physiology, genetics, and evolution as a means for understanding behavior (Wickens, 2005).

APA, American Psychological Association.

According to Freud, an individual's personality develops over five stages from birth through approximately 20 years of age. Termed the psychosexual phases of personality development, the phases are oral, anal, phallic, latency, and genital. Each phase is associated with a specific developmental task. Failure to achieve the task during any of the first three early childhood psychosexual stages may lead to fixation in that stage, unconscious sexual or aggressive conflicts, and mental illness.

Freud developed the theory of **EGO DEFENSE MECHANISMS**, which are conscious and unconscious tools used to protect and defend the ego. The mechanisms are used to reduce anxiety when confronted with conflict between libido energy drives of the id and superego. Psychoanalytic defense mechanisms outlined by Freud include: denial, displacement, intellectualization, projection, rationalization, reaction formation, regression, repression, sublimation, and suppression (**Table 10-1**). Defense mechanisms are used by everyone at times. They can be helpful and healthy, especially when used temporarily over a short time to deal with a conflict. However, excessive use or overuse of defense mechanisms has the potential to lead to distortion

TABLE 10-1: FREUD'S DEFENSE MECHANISMS

DEFENSE MECHANISM	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Denial	Refusal to acknowledge a reality or feelings associated with the reality	A person uses cocaine every day but refuses to admit that he has a problem with substance abuse.
Displacement	Transfer of feelings or a response from one object or person to another less threatening substitute object, person, or activity	A husband who is angry with his wife yells at his son. A woman who is upset about her work situation kicks a chair.
Intellectualization	Use of logic, reasoning, and analysis to avoid expression of actual feelings related to a stressful situation	A woman details specific problems in her work environment as the reason for her being fired rather than verbalizing her upset feelings over losing her job.
Projection	Attribution of unacceptable feelings, impulses, or thoughts to another	A female adolescent is angry with a close friend but states that the friend is the one who is angry at her.
Rationalization	Use of incorrect explanations, excuses, or logical reasoning to explain unacceptable thoughts, actions, or feelings	A doctor makes a medication error in prescribing for a terminally ill patient. He thinks, "Why tell anyone? He was going to die anyway."
Reaction formation	Exaggeration of thoughts, feelings, or actions that are in direct opposition to those being felt in an attempt to prevent expression of unacceptable or undesirable thoughts, feelings, or behaviors	A religious man who is aroused by sexually explicit images may take on an attitude of criticism toward the topic. He may end up sacrificing many of the positive things in his life, including family relationships, by traveling around the country to anti-pornography rallies.
Regression	Retreat to an earlier stage of development for comfort measures associated with it in response to stress	A 3-year-old child with a new baby brother in the house begins to suck his thumb.
Repression	Involuntary blocking or removal from conscious awareness of disturbing or unpleasant feelings, thoughts, or experiences	A woman who was raped cannot remember the events of the rape.
Sublimation	Directing of personally or socially unacceptable feelings and impulses into ones that are constructive	A person with homicidal urges goes to school and becomes a judge and deals with murder trials.
Suppression	Intentional blocking of disturbing feelings or experiences from one's awareness	A person who is overwhelmed with work responsibilities says, "Tomorrow is another day."

or blurring of reality, leading to inappropriate aggressive or socially unacceptable behaviors or psychosis.

Freud believed that most conflicts originate as a result of sexual aggression or aggression-related, unresolved unconscious conflicts originating during an individual's childhood years. These conflicts lead to tension, developmental disruption, and mental illness, particularly anxiety spectrum disorders. Freud's theory is often labeled the "will to pleasure" theory. He developed psychoanalysis as the means to unlock the unconscious and resolve these childhood conflicts.

Other Psychodynamic Theorists

Alfred Adler and Carl Jung knew and became students of Freud. Adler, Jung, and Viktor Frankl were among the early psychoanalytic leaders. However, each of them branched out from Freud's initial precepts, identifying other theoretical constructs and strategies for understanding etiology and effective treatment of mental health conditions. Additionally, other psychodynamic leaders like Erik Erikson and Karen Horney broke off from traditional Freudian psychoanalytic concepts, veering away from the belief that sexual desires and conflicts in childhood were the major causes of later conflicts and mental illnesses. **Table 10-2** summarizes the major beliefs for each of these theorists.

Although these theorists maintained a largely psychodynamic orientation, each built on his or her background in psychoanalytic theory and developed his or her own new theories. Some of these theorists could be included in more than one category of grand psychological theory, as they incorporated theoretical concepts and constructs from behavioral, social, and/or biological theory into their theories.

Psychoanalysis is conducted one or more times a week over several years. Techniques such as free association (spontaneously saying whatever comes to mind), introspection, and sometimes dream analysis are used to facilitate insight into repressed conflicts. The therapy is believed to reduce tension and anxiety, resolve conflict, and restore mental health.

Psychodynamic theories focus on the unconsciousness involving repressed conflicts. Sigmund Freud developed the first psychodynamic theory called psychoanalytic theory.

Behavioral Theories

Behavioral theory, also called behaviorism, assumes that only observable, measurable, and objective criteria are important to understand human behavior and effect behavioral change. It attempts to explain an individual's actions, that is, how a person acts. According to behavioral theory, a person's behavior is the result of learning that has occurred in response to a stimulus. Behavioral theory does not include the concept of the unconscious in explaining mental health and illness.

Ivan Pavlov is credited with discovering the behavioral theory of classical conditioning. Other individuals have been credited with the title "father of behavioral psychology." They include Edward L. Thorndike, John B. Watson, and B. F. Skinner.

Behavioral theory proposes that a person's behavior is the result of learning that is a response to a stimulus.

Ivan Pavlov

Ivan Pavlov is a Nobel prize–winning physiologist who discovered the phenomenon of associative stimulus-response behavior while studying digestive processes in dogs. He noticed a curious association occurring during his experiments. The dogs in his sample began to salivate before food was placed in their mouths by the assistants. The dogs began drooling (an unconditioned response) at the sight of food or on hearing the sound of food being prepared (an unconditioned stimulus). These observations led him to conduct experiments to understand these curious, unexplained behaviors. During those experiments, Pavlov discovered that after several trials of ringing a bell (conditioned stimuli) just before putting food into the dogs' mouths, the dogs began associating the sound of the bell with the food. Subsequently, the dogs began to drool (a conditioned response). Continued experiments revealed that the dogs salivated with just the bell ringing, even without the presence of food. The learned associative behavioral stimulus-response discovered by Pavlov (1927), called **CLASSICAL CONDITIONING**, was later applied to human learning involved in the etiology and treatment of mental illnesses.

John B. Watson

John B. Watson, a psychologist and theorist pioneer of radical behaviorism, rejected the existence or influence of the then-dominant psychodynamic theory concepts of "consciousness" and the "mind." Around the same time as Pavlov was conducting his experiments, Watson began to introduce his behavioral theory in the United States. He viewed learning and animal behavior (not differentiating human from other animal behavior) as dependent on three things—muscles, organs, and glands. Watson also believed that the more often a response to a stimulus occurs (principle of frequency) and the more recently a response is made (recency), the chances are that the response will be repeated.

TABLE 10-2: OTHER PSYCHOANALYTICAL THEORISTS

THEORIST	MAJOR BELIEFS
Alfred Adler	"Will to power" theory Conflict between feelings of inferiority and superiority rooted in an infant's dependent role
Viktor Frankl	Theory of meaning: "Will to meaning" Later development of an existential form of therapy called logotherapy to help patients survive by learning to attach (positive and purposeful) meaning to their circumstances and give purpose to their lives Major influence on Joyce Travelbee
Carl Jung	Concept of individuation Theory of the personal and collective unconscious
Erik Erikson	Eight stages of psychosocial development (ego) theory; included some concepts from psychoanalytic theory (e.g., ego development, albeit present from birth as viewed by Erikson vs. Freud) 1. Trust versus mistrust (birth to 18 months) 2. Autonomy versus shame (18 months to 3 years) 3. Initiative versus guilt (3–5 years) 4. Industry versus inferiority (5–12 years) 5. Identity versus role confusion (12–18 years) 6. Affiliation and love (18–35 years) 7. Generativity versus self-absorption or stagnation (35–55 years) 8. Integrity versus despair (age 55 years to end of life) Mastery of the tasks—success or failure to manage the polar conflicts or tasks inherent within each developmental stage is considered a determinant of continued social and psychological growth and mental health Effect of social experiences, or culture, on development of an individual's personality (enduring patterns of behavior over time), throughout his or her lifetime
Karen Horney	Belief that neurosis was an ongoing process and that the key was in understanding parental indifference toward children Identification of 10 neurotic needs, classified into three categories: *Moving Toward People* 1. The need for affection and approval; pleasing others and being liked by them 2. The need for a partner; one whom they can love and who will solve all problems *Moving Against People* 3. The need for power; the ability to bend wills and achieve control over others—while most persons seek strength, the neurotic may be desperate for it 4. The need to exploit others; to get the better of them. To become manipulative, fostering the belief that people are there simply to be used 5. The need for social recognition; prestige and limelight 6. The need for personal admiration; for both inner and outer qualities—to be valued 7. The need for personal achievement; though virtually all persons wish to make achievements, as with No. 3, the neurotic may be desperate for achievement *Moving Away From People* 8. The need for self-sufficiency and independence; while most people desire some autonomy, the neurotic may simply wish to discard other individuals entirely 9. The need for perfection; while many people are driven to perfect their lives in the form of well-being, the neurotic may display a fear of being slightly flawed 10. The need to restrict life practices to within narrow borders; to live as inconspicuous a life as possible

Martin Seligman

Several decades following Pavlov's discoveries, Martin Seligman conducted animal lab experiments involving Pavlovian harness restraints and electric shock on canines. He studied the use of conditioned stimulus-response theory related to learning and avoidance behaviors. His findings led to his theory of learned helplessness.

Seligman discovered that the sustained, uncontrollable nature of a negative inescapable event was a factor that interfered with learning. In his experiments, harnessed canines were exposed to a sustained electric shock. The dogs were unable to avoid or escape the shock because they were harnessed. Seligman then conducted additional experiments in which the dogs were exposed to the electric shock but were unharnessed and free to escape or avoid it. His findings revealed that even with the opportunity to avoid the shock, the canines did not try to escape. This led to his theory of "learned helplessness." Later, Seligman adapted his laboratory discoveries to humans by adding the human dimension of attribution of meaning (cognitive explanations) to negative events in a person's life using an optimistic versus pessimistic lens (self-explanation). Seligman's theory of learned helplessness, and later his theory of learned optimism, propose that before inescapable negative events, negative cognition and locus of control are important contributors to depression and anxiety in humans (Abramson, Seligman, & Teasdale, 1978; Beck, Rush, Shaw, & Emery, 1979; Seligman, 1992). Others have proposed competing theories to Seligman's about the relationship among uncontrollable, inescapable, negative events and depression in humans. For example, pathophysiological events involving changes in neurochemical hormonal balance such as with epinephrine and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) occur during and in response to the inescapable, stressful event or chronic negative stressor. These, rather than cognitive mediators alone, are important contributors to learning and future behaviors or modulators of behavior in depression (Weiss, Glazer, Pohorecky, Brick, & Miller, 1975).

Edward L. Thorndike

Edward L. Thorndike discovered the theory of "law of effect" (the effect of consequences on future behaviors) and the behavior modification method of **OPERANT CONDITIONING** (also called instrumental conditioning). Operant conditioning, in contrast to Pavlov's classical conditioning, attends to consequences (or responses) and the modification of future behavior based on the (positive or negative) reinforcement, punishment, or extinction associated with the consequence (response). Thorndike's discoveries were conducted through experimental studies of cat behavior. Thorndike placed a cat in an enclosed box with open slats on one side and placed a bowl of food outside the box within the cat's view. The cat would repeatedly put its front leg through the slats to reach for the food, finding the food to be out of reach. The cat, by accident, would eventually knock down a lever inside the cage that opened the door of the box. When the door opened, the cat escaped from the box. Thorndike continued to put the cat back in the box under the same conditions numerous times. He observed that initially the cat continued to reach its leg through the slats in the box, trying unsuccessfully to reach the food outside the box. However, with each accidental knocking down of the lever inside and escaping from the box, the time spent inside the box before the lever opened the door lessened. After numerous trials, the cat ultimately learned to intentionally hit the lever to escape the box, without food being present outside the box. Escape from the box became the reward for pressing the lever that opened the door from inside the box. Operant conditioning is a process and the method for exerting influence over our environment and changing our behavior (or that of others), thus increasing, decreasing, or extinguishing behaviors through the use of rewards and consequences. Operant conditioning has been widely used in educational institutions for decades to assist in promoting student learning and behavioral change (Deutsch & Krauss, 1965).

B. F. Skinner

B. F. Skinner developed several theories, one of which was "radical behaviorism," another of which was an operant conditioning chamber. Later known as the Skinner box, this is a laboratory structure for the experimental observation and analysis of animal behavior. He is considered by some to be the father of behavioral therapy. Skinner, like Thorndike, studied operant conditioning, focusing on the external environment and how consequences of those operations modify future behavior. Skinner rejected some of Thorndike's concepts and modified the theory of operant conditioning. Reinforcement or the consequence of the behavior is the key to whether a behavior would be repeated. His theory is reflected in the use of contingency rewards to reinforce or extinguish behaviors in residential institutional settings such as psychiatric hospitals and facilities serving severely mentally retarded people for half a century (Deutsch & Krauss, 1965).

Classical and operant conditioning are two key behavioral theories.

Joseph Wolpe

Joseph Wolpe developed the (subset) theory and methodology for behavioral change. Wolpe (1958) believed that behavior was learned and that behavior in response to anxiety could be unlearned. Additionally, he believed that the anxiety response inhibits other responses such as relaxation. Thus, if a person could increase the responses that were inhibited due to anxiety, then the anxiety response would diminish. Through a process he called counter-conditioning, individuals were taught relaxation techniques and encouraged to use these techniques while

being systematically exposed to the anxiety-producing stimulus. Initially, the individual was exposed to the lowest level stimulus that would produce anxiety. Then gradually, as the person maintained relaxation, the stimulus intensity increased. Ultimately, the individual learned to use relaxation to overcome the stimulus. Wolpe's work is the basis for **SYSTEMATIC DESENSITIZATION**. In systematic desensitization, the subject is gradually introduced to the source of the fear or anxiety over the course of time and under controlled conditions. This methodology is based on Pavlov's theory of classical conditioning (Wolpe, 1976) and has been widely used as a psychotherapeutic tool applicable to office or other settings in the treatment of multiple mental health conditions, particularly with phobias, panic disorders, and other anxiety spectrum disorders.

Cognitive Theories

Cognitive theories arose out of the need to explain more complex behaviors that could not be explained by observable actions alone. These theories focus on how a person's thinking about a situation or event affects the stimulus and response.

Aaron Beck

Aaron Beck is known as the founder of cognitive theory and therapy. Later, as a number of behaviorists began incorporating some of Beck's cognitive concepts into behavioral theory and therapy, acclaiming Beck as the father of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT). Beck began his career as a psychiatrist practicing psychoanalytic theory. Later, he began his systematic research on the influence of a person's cognitions, thoughts, and beliefs on their behavior and in the development and treatment of depression. Cognitive theory and therapy has been used for half a century in the research and treatment of affective disorders such as depression and anxiety, as well as substance abuse and personality disorders (Beck et al., 1979).

Later research and clinical treatment were expanded from affective, personality, and substance abuse disorders to include what are classified as thought disorders (e.g., schizophrenia, delusional disorders). This continued research led Beck, Rector, Stolar, and Grant (2008) to develop a theory and framework, using a neurobiopsychosocial model, to address thought disorders. They incorporated neurobiological science with CBT to reduce thought distortions and psychotic symptoms. Doing so was found to improve emotional, social, and behavioral functioning in people with thought disorders such as schizophrenia. Until the last few years, symptoms of schizophrenia, including psychosis (which includes delusions and/or hallucinations), and negative symptoms such as avolition, alogia, flat affect, anergia, and social isolation, were largely thought to be nonresponsive to psychotherapy. These symptoms, which had previously been treated with only psychotropic drugs or psychosocial education and milieu therapy to help patients maintain basic activities of daily living, were found to be reduced with psychotherapy.

Albert Ellis

Albert Ellis began his career training in psychoanalytical theory and practice. Later, due to observations made through many years of clinical practice, dismissing the need to see patients daily over the course of years to effect change, Ellis developed the cognitive rational-emotive theory and therapy of behavior change (Ellis, 2004). Ellis theorizes that an individual's irrational beliefs, attitudes, and faulty thinking create and maintain dysfunctional emotional and behavioral imbalance. Thus, an awareness and changing of irrational beliefs to rational beliefs restores mental health. Ellis's theory assumes that an event (experience), followed by irrational beliefs about the experience and the resultant consequences of those faulty beliefs are the cause of depression, panic, obsessive-compulsive disorder, substance abuse, and other mental disorders.

Cognitive theories address a person's thinking about an event or situation as having an effect on his or her response to a stimulus (behavior).

Social Theories

Social mental health and psychology theorists agree that understanding social, cultural, and other environmental factors is important to understand human behavior. The focus is on how these factors are influenced by or influence individual or group behavior and learning processes. Theories, concepts, and techniques such as classical and operant conditioning, reinforcement theory, insight, genetics, and perception from psychodynamic, behavioral, biological, and cognitive grand theories are used by social psychology theorists. In addition to generating new social learning or psychology theories, concepts, and techniques, social psychology theorists use theory and techniques from multiple grand psychology theories to investigate how people and groups effect or are affected by each other, thereby enhancing the understanding of normal and abnormal behavior. Albert Bandura, Kurt Lewin, Leon Festinger (Lewin's student), Neal Miller, John Dollard, Robert Merton, and Alfred Allport are but a few of the renowned social learning or psychology theorists whose work continues to be cited in contemporary research. Bandura, Lewin, and Festinger are

discussed here. Some nurse theorists who synthesized existential or interpersonal theories of mental health could also be included as social mental health and psychology theorists. However, they are discussed with humanistic theories.

Albert Bandura

Bandura (1963, 1966, 1997) developed social cognitive theory, which assumes that human beings influence and are influenced by their environment, and that a reciprocal relationship between an individual and his or her social environment exists. Bandura labeled this concept as reciprocal determinism. Bandura's theory is still often categorized as a social psychology or social learning theory despite Bandura having changed the title of his theory to social cognitive theory after recognizing the important reciprocal influence of personal (cognitive, affective, and biological), behavioral, and environmental events. According to Bandura, the ability of humans to change their behaviors and interactions in their social environment can be influenced by observing others' behaviors and selecting those observed behaviors that they believe they can and want to change in themselves. This is what Bandura describes as imitating and selecting new behaviors observed in other humans or caricatures. This process and concept is called behavior modeling.

Behavioral modeling is influenced by **SELF-EFFICACY**. Bandura (1977) began introducing the construct of self-efficacy in mid 1970, later integrating his middle-range theory of self-efficacy as a main component of social cognitive theory. Self-efficacy involves the beliefs that people hold about their ability to accomplish something and their belief about what the outcomes will be.

Bandura's model has been studied extensively and used to help persons diagnosed with depression, anxiety, substance abuse, and personality disorders. Additionally, Bandura studied the relationship between adolescents' experience of vicarious violence, including watching violence on TV or observing adults modeling aggressive or non-aggressive behavior, and subsequent rewarding of each type of behavior. Bandura's study showed that children who watched more violence on TV are more aggressive as adults and that those children who watched adult role models discouraging aggressive behaviors exhibited less aggressive behavior as adults.

Kurt Lewin

Kurt Lewin is viewed by some as the father of social psychology due to his early work in using the scientific and experimental methods in the study of human social behavior. Lewin developed field and valence theory and the concepts of stages of group dynamics, sensitivity training, and action research (Deutsch & Krauss, 1965; Lewin, 1951; Sansone, Morf, & Panter, 2004). Lewin, like many social psychologists, viewed the interaction of a person's situational environment combined with his or her personality or past learning experience, as well as strength and weakness of motivation, as critical mediators of behavior. His theory is helpful in understanding a person's motivation for changing behavior.

Social theories focus on understanding the influences of and interaction between the environment, cognition, and a person's behavior.

Leon Festinger

Leon Festinger (1962, 1964; Deutsch & Krauss, 1965), a student of Kurt Lewin, is credited with the development of cognitive dissonance theory, an extension of Festinger's theory of social comparison. **COGNITIVE DISSONANCE** refers to the inability of the human mind to contain two disparate, conflicting thoughts or beliefs simultaneously. It also includes the process of how a person will engage in rationalization, change his or her beliefs or behavior to eliminate the tension or imbalance associated with cognitive dissonance, and restore cognitive or mental balance. For example, a person is having chest pains and believes that he or she may be having a heart attack and needs to go to the local hospital for medical help. Simultaneously, the person believes that the local hospital provides very poor care and that he or she may be harmed by the poor care. Thus, a state of cognitive dissonance could arise. In the above scenario, the person will make a decision, changing one of the two disparate beliefs or intended behaviors, to reduce cognitive dissonance and restore cognitive balance: The person might decide to go to a different hospital where he or she believes that no harm would result, or might rationalize the severity and meaning of the chest pain, thus changing the belief about the pain. For example, the person might believe that the chest pain was indigestion, thereby dismissing the potential urgency and waiting to see if the symptoms lessen or stop over the next few hours. In doing so, the person would not go to the hospital.

Humanistic Theories

Humanism, as related to humanist mental health and psychological theory, is considered to have emerged in the early 1950s. The belief was developed by those who were not content with the existing psychoanalytic and behavioral theories and concepts. Social, cognitive, and existential mental health and illness theorists are many times included under the rubric of cognitive, social, and/or humanistic mental health grand theory. Existential, phenomenological,

and interpersonal humanistic mental health theory and practice became prominent humanistic perspectives and orientations.

Humanistic theory moved traditional concepts of mental health and illness from a focus on illness, determinism, the unconscious, and reductionism to a focus on health. Health included: mental illness as part of the health continuum; free will, individual choice, and responsibility; subjective, interpersonal, and reciprocal experience; meaning, purpose, and patterns; human potential; holistic care; and the human experience of being whole (**GESTALT**). Many with earlier training and practice in traditional psychoanalytic and behavior theory later synthesized their own theories and therapies and became part of the humanism movement during the 1950s and throughout the subsequent half century.

Theorists from multiple disciplines played a role in the development of the humanistic mental health movement. Nurse theorists included Hildegard Peplau (see Chapter 2), Joyce Fitzpatrick, Rosemarie Parse, Patricia Starck, Joyce Travelbee (see Chapter 2), and Jean Watson. Physician theorists included Viktor Frankl and Fritz Perls. Psychological theorists Carl Rogers, Abraham Maslow, and Everett Shostrom are among those who influenced the development of humanistic mental health theory and practice. These theories reflected the theoretical shift toward a more holistic, interpersonal, positive perspective.

Carl Rogers

Carl Rogers (1961) developed the theory of nondirective therapy called client-centered therapy, which was later called person-centered therapy (Rogers, 1961). Rogers began his writing in the 1940s and became a leader of the humanistic psychologists in the 1960s. Some of Rogers's theoretical concepts (and part of the therapeutic process) include the here-and-now, therapeutic relationship, interpersonal relationships, empathy, unconditional positive regard, humans as individuals, and person as subject versus object (Koch, 1959).

Viktor Frankl

Viktor Frankl (1962, 1978), a holocaust survivor and psychiatric physician, trained and practiced during his early years as a psychoanalyst. Later, Frankl rejected some of the psychodynamic concepts established by Freud and developed his own (existential) theory of meaning and therapeutic techniques of logotherapy. Frankl's (1962, 1969, 1978) theory of meaning included three major concepts: life purpose, freedom of choice, and human suffering. According to Frankl, individuals look for purpose and meaning in their lives and experiences. He believed that all life, even in the most desperate of situations, has meaning and it is the meaning a person ascribes to these situations that can increase suffering or gives a person purpose and reason to live. Frankl used his theory and logotherapeutic interventions mainly to treat patients with psychiatric disorders. His work became a foundational component of the existential humanistic movement. Research using Frankl's theory of meaning is summarized in **Evidence-Based Practice 10-1**.

Patricia Starck

Patricia Starck, a nurse theorist, contacted Viktor Frankl while working on her doctoral dissertation and they remained in contact over the subsequent 20 years (Smith & Liehr, 2003). Frankl's theory of meaning, his three concepts of life purpose, freedom to choose, and human suffering and logotherapeutic interventions were traditionally used to treat individuals with psychiatric disorders. Starck expanded Frankl's works and has been noted as the first to use the theory of meaning and logotherapy to treat the human suffering of the physically disabled. She developed the Meaning In Suffering Test (MIST), a research instrument used to quantify meaning and in clinical practice to guide logotherapeutic interventions. Starck applied the theory of meaning in her work with spinal cord injured patients and physically disabled persons (Smith & Liehr, 2003).

Abraham Maslow

Abraham Maslow (1970), a theorist mentored by Adler, developed a holistic-dynamic theory of motivation and a hierarchy of human needs. Maslow's method of study was in contrast to the earlier traditional methodology for researching mental health and illness through study of psychopathology of humans considered mentally ill. Rather, Maslow studied individuals considered to be the healthiest. That is, he studied those without strong traits or diagnoses of neurosis, psychosis, or psychopathic personality. According to Maslow, needs provide the motivation for human beings. He developed a hierarchy of needs, which progresses from most basic to the highest level of actualization. This hierarchy includes: physiological needs, safety needs, belongingness and love needs, esteem needs, and the need for self-actualization. Satisfaction of these needs, however, does not always occur in a linear fashion because they are contingent on mediating life circumstances.

Jean Watson

Jean Watson, a nurse theorist, developed the theory of human caring. Watson's theory includes many assumptions and concepts central to humanistic mental health theory, including holistic care, congruence, respect, subject as person versus object, individual perception of experience, authenticity, and gestalt or harmony among the mind/body/spirit. Watson's theory is similar to the therapeutic relationship concept applied to person-centered (mental health) therapy of Rogers and Peplau's therapeutic

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 10-1: LOGOTHERAPY IN PRACTICE

STUDY

Kang, K., Im, J., Kim, H., Kim, S., Song, M., & Sim, S. (2009). Effect of logotherapy on the suffering: Finding meaning, and spiritual well-being of adolescents with terminal cancer. *Journal of the Korean Academy of Child Health Nursing, 15*(2), 136–144.

SUMMARY

The researchers conducted an experimental study to evaluate the effects of psychological interventions by nurses on hospitalized adolescents with terminal cancer. They used Viktor Frankl's theory of meaning and logotherapeutic interventions. Study results showed that the group of patients who received logotherapeutic interventions showed significant reduction in suffering and improvement in meaning in life versus those patients who did not receive logotherapeutic interventions.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Although this study focuses on adolescents with terminal cancer, the findings could be applied to any patient experiencing distress, be it physical, mental, or emotional. Assisting patients to find meaning in their illness can help promote feelings of control over situations in which they may have felt hopeless and powerless. The positive effects of this empowerment can strengthen a person's resolve and decision-making capabilities, which, in turn, can promote better outcomes including adherence to treatment regimens.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How could the results of this study apply to your nursing practice?*
2. *Could logotherapeutic interventions be used to help prevent, as well as treat, existential distress, depression, substance abuse, or mental illness?*

relationship concept applied to the interpersonal nurse–patient relationship. Watson's caring theory includes the concepts of unconditional acceptance, positive regard, and subjective (lived) experience in a (mutually) therapeutic, restorative (transpersonal) relationship between nurse and patient. Watson's view of nurses facilitating patients' discovery of meaning (in their situation, illness, or suffering) to promote improvement in mind, body, and spirit health reflects the phenomenology and existential humanistic mental health theory described in Frankl's theory of meaning. Watson's early work included 10 carative factors, later expanded, revised, and named 10 clinical caritas processes that can be applied by nurses when promoting positive therapeutic outcomes of patients experiencing hopelessness, depression, anxiety, and other mental health and illness conditions. Her original eighth carative factor contains specific reference to the role of the nurse in regard to mental health, identifying the need for nurses to provide for a "… corrective mental, physical, societal, and spiritual environment" (Watson, 1988, 2016). In her most updated

version of clinical caritas processes, this factor has been refined to "create a healing environment for the physical and spiritual self, which respects human dignity" (Watson, 2016).

Humanistic theories reflected the theoretical shift toward a more holistic, interpersonal, positive perspective.

Biological Theories

BIOLOGICAL PSYCHOLOGY THEORY or biopsychology refers to the study of human or animal psychology using a biological approach to understand human behavior. It includes brain physiology, genetics, and evolution as means for understanding behavior (Wickens, 2005). Frameworks such as neuropsychology, psychoneuroendocrinology, psychoneuroimmunology, psychosomatic medicine, and others have evolved and all have in common the study of how the mind affects biological processes, or vice versa, in relation to disease states and behaviors. Over the past 40 years, interest in integrative psychobiology has substantially increased.

Beginning in 1970, Robert Ader conducted experimental studies with rats to explore if and how the brain, particularly mental states including stress and anxiety, influence the immune system (Ader, 1995). If placed in the current language and lexicon of neurobehavioral or neurobiological science, this could be conceptualized as an "internal human behavior."Results of many of Ader's studies indicate a relationship among the brain, mind, and the functioning of the immune system related to disease progression or healing. Ader is credited with coining the term *psychoneuroimmunology* and is considered by some the father of psychoneuroimmunology.

Also, considerable research has been conducted on relationships between psychological variables, including emotions and stress (Yehuda, Levengood, Schneidler, & Wilson, 1996), and biological variables, including molecular changes and somatic diseases, in humans (Everson, Kaplan, Goldberg, Salonen, & Salonen, 1997; Levine & Ursin, 1991). Various principles describing the relationship between psychological stimuli and the endocrine system continue to be supported in psychoneuroimmunoendocrinology research. One example is a set of principles developed by Mason (1968) that included the principle reflecting the role of psychological stimuli on pituitary–adrenal–cortical activity.

Significant research has been conducted on the biological variables contributing to or resulting from depression. Major depression is the most commonly diagnosed mental disorder, a contributor to the 11th leading cause of death (suicide), and the leading cause of disability in the United States for ages 15 to 44 years (NIMH, 2009). The literature offers evidence that atherosclerosis and atherosclerotic progression, known risk factors for cerebrovascular accidents, coronary heart disease, peripheral vascular disease, and mortality, are positively correlated with hopelessness and depression. In addition, research shows that depression may be a risk factor for atherogenesis (Everson et al., 1997; O'Regan, 2000).

Additional studies provide further evidence of the connection between atherosclerosis and depression. For example, results of the seminal population-based study conducted by Everson et al. (1997), referred to as the Finland Kuopio Study, indicate a significant positive relationship between atherosclerosis progression in the intima-media lining of the carotid artery and hopelessness. Inspired by the results of the Finland Kuopio Study (Everson et al., 1997), O'Regan (2000) explored the relationship among atherosclerosis and hopelessness and depression. Although the O'Regan study sample size was small, results of the study support previous research indicating a relationship between depression and atherosclerosis. The results of O'Regan's study also indicate that there is a linear predictive relationship between the severity of depression and the severity of atherosclerosis, and that depression individually accounted for approximately 20% of the variance in atherosclerosis severity.

Molecular genetics, neuron receptors, and neurotransmitters also continue to receive attention. A dysregulation in neurotransmitters is a proposed cause of primary mental disorders such as depression, anxiety, attention-deficit disorders, schizophrenia, dementia, and symptoms of mental illness. Most psychotropic medications are designed to work based on the neurobehavioral theory supporting this dysregulation. Over the past two decades, molecular genetics and randomized, double-blinded placebo-controlled experimental research on drugs that target specific neuron receptors and neurotransmitters, increasing or inhibiting the level of catecholamines such as dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine in the brain, have been dominant theories of mental illness etiology, research methods, and treatment. In addition, molecular genetics research is being coupled with MRI, functional MRI (fMRI), PET scans, and, recently, computer programmed brain scans to study normal and abnormal brain structure and function in people with and without mental disorders.

Biological psychology theory includes brain physiology, genetics, and evolution as means for understanding behavior. Although numerous frameworks have evolved, they all address the effect of the mind on biological processes (or vice versa), disease states, and/or behaviors.

The NIMH has issued a grant to study a new method for measuring areas of the brain to determine early and longitudinal differences and changes in the brains of people diagnosed with a mental disorder in comparison to those not diagnosed with a mental disorder (Wang et al., 2008). Subjects currently are being enrolled in a study that will use a computer program to map brain structure size and shape. The use of the computer program replaces traditional manual measurement of brain scans in hopes of developing a tool to more accurately, quickly, and cost-effectively diagnose and treat mental disorders, including schizophrenia and mood disorders. In addition, computerized measurement photographs will provide image depiction of composite, longitudinal abnormal shrinkage in certain areas of the brain, including the thalamus, caudate, and amygdala, over a 2-year period in individuals with schizophrenia.

Research is also investigating possible genetic links to mental illness. A team of researchers at the University of Edinburg had previously found a gene, *DISC1*, that is a risk factor for schizophrenia, bipolar affective disorder, and major depression. They identified additional psychiatric disorder and psychotropic treatment-specific relationships in a 2007 molecular genetics study (University of Edinburg, 2007). The follow-up study found two types of damage on the same *DISC1* gene. Treatment efficacy for patients taking antipsychotic medication was associated with one area of *DISC1* gene damage, while treatment efficacy for patients taking antidepressant medications was specific to the other identified *DISC1* gene damage area.

Research on genetic links is continuing. In January 2010, a group of researchers with the NIMH unit on the Genetic Basis of Mood and Anxiety Disorders published results of the meta-analyses conducted on major mood disorders (McMahon et al., 2010). Their results indicate that people diagnosed with major depression or bipolar disorder have a significantly higher level of a gene overexpression or underexpression in certain areas of the brain than control subjects not diagnosed with these disorders. The gene identified, *PBRM1*, chromosome 3, is responsible for communicating upregulation or downregulation signals to cell components. The gene acts like a lightbulb switch, influencing whether or not to increase (turn on) or decrease (shut off) gene expression, and thus, potentially, play a role in affecting mood regulation.

The biological molecular genetics neuroscience theory movement is on an accelerated trajectory with the potential to change (redesign) all existing classification systems for mental health and illness. It also may change the diagnostics and, perhaps, the acceptable (thus reimbursable) prescribed treatment methods and providers of mental illness treatment in the future. In the first quarter of 2010, the NIMH (2010) announced that it was launching an initiative, the Research Domain Criteria Project, to study and develop a classification of mental illness through a new lens. This new lens would be different from that of the traditional classification lens using clinical observation. It is expected to result in mental health treatments that are based on research-identified genetic factors and that incorporate similarities among and across existing diagnoses. The NIMH reports that, unlike conventional classification systems like that of the *DSM-5* or *ICD-10*, which are based on "clinical observation," they will study and develop a mental illness classification system based on genetics and neuroscience while not excluding clinical observation. The NIMH acknowledges that it may, over time, affect the existing dominant classification systems for mental health diagnoses and treatment. Since 1952, the major (provider-reimbursement friendly) classification system used for diagnosis, research, and treatment of mental illnesses has been the American Psychiatric Association's *DSM*. Following a decade of draft revisions and publishing of the new proposed revisions online for public review and comments, the fifth edition of the *DSM* was published in May of 2013.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Theories associated with mental health and mental illness can be classified as grand theories (abstract and broad in scope), middle-range theories (usually subspecialty oriented), or micro-level theories (least abstract and narrow in scope). Six grand theories in mental health and psychology are: social, behavioral, psychodynamic, cognitive, humanistic, and biological.
- Psychodynamic theories focus on the unconscious and assert that underlying unconscious or repressed conflicts are responsible for conflicts, disruptions, and disturbances in behavior and personality. Freud is considered the father of psychoanalysis.
- The underlying belief of behavioral theory is that observable criteria are important to understand and change human behavior. Behavioral theorists include Pavlov, Seligman, Thorndike, Watson, and Skinner.
- Aaron Beck is considered the founder of cognitive theory, which focuses on how a person's thinking affects behavior.
- Social theories reflect an understanding that social and cultural environmental factors are important to understand human behavior. Social theorists include Bandura, Lewin, and Festinger.
- Humanistic theories focus on health rather than on illness, determinism, the unconscious, and reductionism. Humanistic nurse theorists include Peplau, Fitzpatrick, Parse, Starck, Travelbee, and Watson.
- Maslow, a humanistic theorist, developed a holistic-dynamic theory of motivation and hierarchy of human needs. Jean Watson, a nurse theorist, developed the theory of human caring.
- Biological theories focus on brain physiology, genetics, and evolution for understanding behavior. All the frameworks share a commonality, that is, how the mind affects biological processes or vice versa.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nursing instructor is developing a class for a group of students about the theories of mental health and illness. When gathering information for a discussion on cognitive theories, which of the following would the instructor most likely include?
   - **a.** Development of psychoanalytic theory
   - **b.** Thorndike
   - **c.** Seligman
   - **d.** Beck
   - **e.** Bandura

2. Applying Freud's theory, which of the following stages would occur first in the development of personality?
   - **a.** Oral
   - **b.** Phallic
   - **c.** Latency
   - **d.** Anal

3. After engaging in an argument with a friend at work, a person becomes angry. Moments later, on returning to his office, he punches the wall. The person is demonstrating which defense mechanism?
   - **a.** Suppression
   - **b.** Rationalization
   - **c.** Denial
   - **d.** Displacement

4. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about theories of mental illness. The students demonstrate a need for additional review when they attribute which of the following as a concept identified by Albert Bandura?
   - **a.** Reciprocal determination
   - **b.** Behavior modeling
   - **c.** Cognitive dissonance
   - **d.** Self-efficacy

5. When applying Maslow's hierarchy of needs, which needs category would be the highest level to be achieved?
   - **a.** Safety
   - **b.** Self-actualization
   - **c.** Love
   - **d.** Self-esteem

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Abramson, L. Y., Seligman, M. E., & Teasdale, J. D. (1978). Learned helplessness in humans: Critique and reformulation. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 87*(1), 49–74.

Ader, R. (1995). Historical perspectives on psychoneuroimmunology. In H. Friedman, T. L. Klein, & A. L. Friedman (Eds.), *Psychoneuroimmunology, stress and infection* (pp. 1–21). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Association.

American Psychological Association (APA). (2009). *APA online*. Retrieved from apa.org

American Psychological Association (ApA). (2010). *APA online*. Retrieved from http:// www.apadivisions.org/division-32

Bandura, A. (1963). *Social learning and personality development*. New York, NY: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Bandura, A. (1966). *Behavioristic psychotherapy*. New York, NY: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review, 84*(2), 191–215.

Bandura, A. (1997). *Self-efficacy: The exercise of control*. New York, NY: Freeman.

Beck, A. T., Rector, N. A., Stolar, N., & Grant, P. (2008). *Schizophrenia: Cognitive theory, research and therapy*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Beck, A. T., Rush, A. J., Shaw, B. F., & Emery, G. (1979). *Cognitive therapy of depression.* New York, NY: Guilford.

Cacioppo, J. (2002). Social neuroscience: Understanding the pieces fosters understanding the whole and vice versa. *American Psychologist, 57*(11), 819–831. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/nhsr/nhsr007.pdf

Carver, C., & Scheier, M. (2004). *Perspectives on personality* (5th ed.). Boston, MA: Pearson.

Deutsch, M., & Krauss, R. M. (1965). *Theories in social psychology*. New York, NY: Basic Books.

Ellis, A. (2004). *Rational emotive behavior therapy: It works for me—It can work for you.* Amherst, NY: Prometheus Books.

Everson, S. A., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Salonen, R., & Salonen, J. T. (1997). Hopelessness and 4-year progression of carotid atherosclerosis. The Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study. *Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis, and Vascular Biology, 17*(8), 1490–1495.

Festinger, L. (1962). *A theory of cognitive dissonance.* Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.

Festinger, L. (1964). *Conflict, decision and dissonance.* Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.

Frankl, V. E. (1962). *Man's search for meaning.* New York, NY: Simon and Schuster.

Frankl, V. (1969). *The will to meaning.* New York, NY: World Publishing.

Frankl, V. (1978). *The unheard cry for meaning: Psychotherapy and humanism*. New York, NY: Simon and Schuster.

Heron, M. P., Hoyert, D. L., Murphy, S. L., Xu, J. Q., Kochanek, K. D., & Tejada-Vera, B. (2009). Deaths: Final data for 2006. *National Vital Statistics Reports, 57*(14). Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics.

Im, E., & Meleis, A. L. (1999). Situation-specific theories: Philosophical roots, properties and approach. *Advances in Nursing Science, 22*(2), 11.

Kang, K., Im, J., Kim, H., Kim, S., Song, M., & Sim, S. (2009). Effect of logotherapy on the suffering, finding meaning, and spiritual well-being of adolescents with terminal cancer. *Journal of the Korean Academy of Child Health Nursing, 15*(2), 136–144.

Koch, S. (Ed.). (1959). *Psychology: A study of a science. Formulations of the person and the social context* (pp. 184–256). New York, NY: McGraw-Hill.

Levine, S., & Ursin, H. (1991). What is stress? In M. R. Brown, C. Rivier, & G. Koob (Eds.), *Stress neurobiology and neuroendocrinology* (pp. 3–21). New York, NY: Marcel Decker.

Lewin, K. (1951). *Field theory in social science: Selected theoretical papers*. D. Cartwright (Ed.). New York, NY: Harpers and Row.

Maslow, A. (1970). *Motivation and personality*. New York, NY: Harper and Row.

Mason, J. W. (1968). A review of psychoneuroendocrine research on the pituitary-adrenal-cortical system. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 30*, 576–607.

McMahon, F. J., Akula, N., Schulze, T. G., Muglia, P., Tozzi, F., Detera-Wadleigh, S. D.,…Rietschel, M; Bipolar Disorder Genome Study (BiGS) Consortium. (2010). Meta-analysis of genome-wide association data identifies a risk locus for major mood disorders on 3p21.1. *Nature Genetics, 42*(2), 126–131.

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). (2009). *Statistics*. Retrieved from http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/topics/statistics/index.shtml

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). (2010). *Genes and circuitry, not just clinical observation, to guide classification for research*. Science Update. National Institute of Mental Health online. Retrieved from http://www.nimh.nih.gov/science-news/2010/genes-and-circuitry-not-just-clinical-observation-to-guide-classification-for-research.shtml

North American Nursing Diagnosis Association-International (NANDA). (2015). *Nursing diagnoses: Definitions and classification 2015–2017.* Hoboken, NJ: Wiley-Blackwell.

O'Regan, P. (2000). *Psychological links to atherosclerosis: Hopelessness and depression predict atherogenesis risk and severity*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of South Florida, Tampa, FL.

Pavlov, I. P. (1927). *Conditioned reflexes*. London, UK: Oxford University Press.

Rogers, C. (1961). *On becoming a person: A therapist's view of psychotherapy.* London, UK: Constable.

Sansone, C., Morf, C. C., & Panter, A. T. (2004). *Handbook of methods in social psychology.* California, IL: Sage.

Seligman, M. (1992). *Helplessness: On depression, development, and death*. New York, NY: Freeman.

Smith, M. J., & Liehr, P. R. (2003). *Middle range theory for nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Soni, A. (2009). *The five most costly conditions, 1996 and 2006: Estimates for the U.S. civilian noninstitutionalized population*. Statistical Brief, 248. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. Retrieved from http://www.meps.ahrq.gov/mepsweb/data_files/publications/st248/stat248.pdf

University of Edinburg. (2007). Study of damaged gene gives insight into causes of mental illness. *ScienceDaily*. Retrieved from http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2007/05/070502143813.htm

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). (1999). *Mental health: A report of the surgeon general*. Washington, DC. Retrieved from www.surgeongeneral.gov

Wang, L., Mamah, D., Harms, M., Karnik, M., Price, M., Gado, M.,…Csernansky, J. G. (2008). Progressive deformation of deep brain nuclei and hippocampal-amygdala formation in schizophrenia. *Biological Psychiatry, 64*(12), 1060–1068.

Watson, J. (1988). *Nursing: Human science and human care. A theory of nursing*. New York, NY: National League for Nursing.

Watson, J. (2016). *Dr. Jean Watson's Human Caring Theory: Ten Caritas Processes Caritas Processes refined*. Retrieved from https://www.watsoncaringscience.org/watson-caring-science

Weiss, J. M., Glazer, H. L., Pohorecky, L. A., Brick, J., & Miller, N. E. (1975). Effects of chronic exposure to stressors on avoidance-escape behavior and on brain norepinephrine. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 37*, 522–533.

Wickens, A. (2005). *Foundations of biopsychology.* Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Wolpe, J. (1958). *Psychotherapy by reciprocal inhibition*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.

Wolpe, J. (1976). Behavior therapy and its malcontents–II. Multimodal eclecticism, cognitive exclusivism and "exposure" empiricism. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry, 7*, 109–116.

Yehuda, R., Levengood, R. A., Schneidler, J., & Wilson, S. (1996). Increased pituitary activation following metyrapone administration in post-traumatic stress disorder. *Psychoneuroendocrinology, 21*(1), 1–16.

SECTION III

Acute and Chronic Illness

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *thought disorder*
2. Identify the disorders associated with schizophrenia spectrum disorders (SSD)
3. Describe the history and epidemiology of thought disorders
4. Discuss current scientific theories related to the etiology of thought disorders, including relevant biological and psychosocial theories
5. Distinguish among the diagnostic criteria for thought disorders

CHAPTER 11

SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM AND OTHER PSYCHOTIC DISORDERS

Patricia A. Galon
Bonnie M. Kaput

6. Describe common assessment strategies for individuals with thought disorders
7. Explain treatment options for persons demonstrating thought disorders, emphasizing those that reflect evidence-based practices
8. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with thought disorders

KEY TERMS

Affective flattening
Alogia
Anhedonia
Anosognosia
Avolition
Delusion
Echolalia
Echopraxia
Grandiose
Hallucination
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome
Psychosis
Schizophrenia
Thought disorder

Schizophrenia spectrum disorder is a broad term applying to illnesses involving disordered thinking and disturbances in reality orientation and social involvement. Although symptoms of **PSYCHOSIS** (condition involving hallucinations, delusions, or disorganized thoughts, behavior, or speech) are often intermittently or continuously present, the underlying **THOUGHT DISORDER** is the most prominent cause of disability associated with this group of psychopathologies. Throughout this chapter, this group of disorders is referred to as schizophrenia spectrum disorders (SSD). The term **SCHIZOPHRENIA** refers to a diagnostic category within the group of SSD.

This chapter covers the historical aspects and epidemiology of SSD and includes a detailed description of thought disorders. Relevant psychodynamic, cognitive behavioral, genetic, and neurobiological influences are described, along with common pharmacotherapy and nonpharmacotherapy strategies used in the treatment of SSD. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is discussed, including a plan of care for a patient with a thought disorder.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

References to madness in the Bible and in the Atharva Veda (sacred Hindu text) can be found. In addition, some of the symptoms of mental illness were described in ancient history. However, it was not until the beginning of the 19th century that SSD was clearly recorded in the clinical literature. As a result, historians were left with two different interpretations: Either SSD is a relatively new plague of mankind, or, more simply, the descriptions of madness in ancient texts were too vague to identify the syndrome clearly. It should be noted, however, that other mental disorders, particularly depression, mania, and dementia, are identifiable in early historical documents (Torrey, 1980).

The two earliest clinical descriptions of the disorder(s) occurred almost simultaneously in 1809. These descriptions were provided by Philip Pinel in France and John Haslam in England. Just 3 years later, in 1812, Benjamin Rush in the United States addressed the disorder. All three described SSD as a constellation of symptoms that included delusions, hallucinations, and paranoia. In 1860, a French physician, Benedict Morel, found that the disorder was associated with an early age of onset, leading him to believe that it was a type of early dementia. Thus, he named the syndrome *dementia praecox*. By 1876, Emil Kraepelin, a psychiatrist, began to note similarities in the descriptions of several neurological syndromes in the medical literature of the time. He proposed that all of these syndromes belonged to a group of disorders that shared an early onset, grave prognosis, and list of symptoms. Kraepelin was certain that the symptoms were rooted in a yet-to-be identified neuroanatomical abnormality. More than 30 years later in 1911, Eugen Bleuler, a Swiss physician, renamed the disorder schizophrenia and described both core and associated symptoms of the disorder. Bleuler is credited with recognizing and identifying thought disorders as a primary cause of disability. Unlike his predecessors, Bleuler believed the origin of the disorder was psychological rather than neuroanatomical. These early clinicians influenced current conceptions of schizophrenia.

In 1959, Kurt Schneider, a German psychiatrist, defined a list of symptoms associated with schizophrenia, distinguishing it from other psychotic disorders. This list, which was considered quite reliable, was widely used by professionals and taught in clinical programs throughout Europe and the United States. In 1966, the World Health Organization (WHO) conducted a landmark study titled "International Pilot Study of Schizophrenia," establishing the clinical picture of schizophrenia and suggesting that the presence of first-rank or positive symptoms does not always predict poor outcomes. Further research has suggested that positive symptoms are not always associated with schizophrenia; however, they tend to be more frequent and severe in patients with schizophrenia (Rosen, Grossman, Harrow, Bonner-Jackson, & Faull, 2011).

Schizophrenia was initially believed to be a type of early dementia. It was not until 1959 when it was defined with a specific list of symptoms by Kurt Schneider.

The history of targeted and effective treatment for SSD covers a much shorter period of time. Most persons with mental illnesses, presumably including SSD, were treated with banishment and cruelty for the last 200 years. Both Pinel and Rush were early advocates to improve the circumstances of persons in mental asylums. However, even in institutions where benevolent care was provided, effective treatment was not available. Early attempts at intervention included the use of restraints, opium, hydrotherapy, insulin, electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), and crude neurosurgical techniques. It was not until the early 1950s with the discovery of chlorpromazine by French researchers Pierre Deniker, Henri Laborit, and Jean Delay that any effective treatment became available. Many credit the deinstitutionalization of the mentally ill as a major influence on the use of antipsychotic drugs, which rapidly became a mainstay of treatment. Others believe that the entitlement programs of the 1960s, such as Medicare and Medicaid, were a greater impetus to the deinstitutionalization process. Regardless, the use of antipsychotic

drugs as treatment for SSD was an extremely influential development.

Psychoanalysis, based on Freud's theories, as a treatment for SSD was also important. It was the most widely used treatment technique for mental illness in the United States during the first half of the 20th century. Psychoanalysis was considered a legitimate treatment for SSD even beyond the discovery of antipsychotics. However, the number of mental health professionals using it began to dwindle. Its use as a treatment for mental disorders quickly declined in the later 1970s through the 1980s. Today, psychoanalysis is infrequently used as a therapeutic modality for any psychiatric disorder.

Psychoanalysis also was important to the development of psychiatric-mental health nursing. The psychoanalyst Harry Stack Sullivan and his Interpersonal Theory of Psychiatry greatly influenced Hildegard Peplau, often considered the "mother of psychiatric nursing." Both Sullivan and Peplau were associated with Chestnut Lodge, a private sanitarium outside Washington, DC. The facility staff there was committed to using psychoanalytic techniques. However, Sullivan and Peplau stressed the critical nature of interpersonal relations rather than intrapsychic processes (central to Freudian theory) in the development and treatment of mental disorders including SSD. They reported "good outcomes" for their clientele but it is not clear how the outcomes were determined.

Peplau continues to be an important figure in psychiatric-mental health nursing through her theory describing the development of the nurse–patient relationship as an interpersonal process, and her role in the development of advanced practice psychiatric nursing. Peplau understood the critical nature of communication and use of self when working with persons with SSD. She emphasized the importance of using the nurse–patient relationship to decrease symptoms, reestablish relatedness to the environment, and restore the boundaries of self-identity. She believed that doing so should result in a more fully functioning person (Thelander, 1997). Peplau's Interpersonal Relations Theory continues to be relevant in relation to recovery in schizophrenia because she describes the helping relationship as one that brings strangers with differing perspectives together. These strangers then evolve into a collaborative dyad focused on the patient's goals.

Initially, patients with schizophrenia were treated cruelly with banishment from society. The discovery of the antipsychotic agent, chlorpromazine, in the early 1950s marked the first time an effective treatment was available for schizophrenia.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Understanding the epidemiology of a disease is critical to identifying risk factors and possible preventive strategies. It is also important to evaluate disease burden in order to set priorities for appropriate resource allocation.

In the last 10 years, there have been significant breakthroughs in epidemiological methods and thus more is known about all disease processes, including SSD. Many of the old assumptions concerning the epidemiology of SSD have been challenged. Schizophrenia studies are plagued by inconsistency in the definition and changes in diagnostic practices. Schizophrenia is not distributed evenly across cultures and countries. Recent studies across urban and rural areas and systemic reviews have found a wide variation in rates and outcomes (Castle & Buckley, 2011). Interestingly, the outcomes tend to be better in developing countries than those in developed countries, with patients in developed countries having frequent relapses and persisting disability (Juul & Nemeroff, 2012).

Incidence

Incidence refers to the number of newly identified cases in a specific time period. The average incidence of schizophrenia across the world ranges from 7 to 14 per 100,000 per year. Because of the wide range it is safe to assume there is a fairly high variability in rates among locations. In addition, significant differences appeared in the incidence rate between males and females, with males having approximately a 1.4 times higher risk than women. In other words, for every three men affected with SSD, there are two women affected. Also, recent studies confirm that the disease onset peaks earlier in males than in females. The reason for this difference has not been clearly established. It has been speculated that estrogen or neurobiological determinants may play a role (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Statistics also reveal a significantly higher rate of the disorder among first- and second-generation immigrants than in the native-born populations across societies. Again, the reasons for this difference are not clearly understood. One theory is biological, such as exposure to novel viruses. Another theory suggests psychosocial reasons: migration stress and the experience of discrimination in the adoptive country (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Economic status does not appear to be a factor. Recent studies have found no difference in the incidence of schizophrenia based on economic status. However, those living in urban areas show a higher incidence rate than those living in rural or suburban settings. Unemployment, lower educational status, and being disabled carry higher odds of acquiring the disease (Juul & Nemeroff, 2012).

Prevalence

Schizophrenia is not uniform in its distribution and there is considerable variation in the prevalence rates (the number of current cases), which range from 1.4 to 4.6 per 1,000 people in the majority of studies (Juul & Nemeroff, 2012). High rates have been found in deprived inner city areas in large cities. Immigrant status does appear to be a factor. As mentioned previously, the prevalence rate for immigrants is higher than for those in the native-born population. In one meta-analysis, migrants whose skin color is considerably darker than the background population were reported to have a relative risk of schizophrenia of 4.8 (Mura, Petretto, Bhat, & Carta, 2012). Economic conditions do appear to influence prevalence rates, with developed countries estimating significantly higher rates of the disorder than that of less-developed countries. Prevalence estimates also differ significantly by latitude, with higher latitudes having greater prevalence rates than lower latitudes. High rates of schizophrenia have been found in Northern Sweden and Western Ireland. Rate differences related to latitude are notable because they signify possible variation in a wide range of influential environmental and economic factors, such as temperature, ultraviolet exposure, precipitation, genetics, and socioeconomic status. Generally the lifetime morbid risk of anyone developing schizophrenia is from 0.5% to 1.0% (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Mortality

The life span of people with severe mental disorders, including schizophrenia, is shorter compared with the general population. These individuals on average tend to die 10 to 25 years earlier than their non–mentally ill counterparts. This is referred to as premature mortality. The WHO (2013) reports that individuals with schizophrenia are 2 to 2.5 times more likely to die earlier than the general population. While suicide influences the mortality rate for this population, all major causes of death were elevated among those with SSD. A disturbing fact is that the mortality gap (the rate of death for the person with SSD compared with the standard mortality rate) for persons with SSD has increased significantly in the past several decades. Cardiovascular disease is the major single cause of death in people with schizophrenia, with the following risk factors seen in excess among people with schizophrenia: elevated lipids, hypertension, cigarette smoking, obesity, sedentary lifestyle, and diabetes. People with schizophrenia also have higher rates of infectious diseases such as HIV, hepatitis, and tuberculosis (WHO, 2013). Furthermore, the introduction of second-generation antipsychotics has amplified the problem by increasing the risk for metabolic syndrome (a condition associated with insulin resistance, central obesity, and altered serum lipid levels). The rates of diabetes, ketoacidoses, and death have risen dramatically since the late 1990s and early 2000s (Nasrallah, 2012). There is some evidence that people with schizophrenia do not receive adequate health care and treatment. The WHO developed the Mental Health Action Plan 2013 to 2020 to improve access and quality of care for people with severe mental illness, with the specific inclusion of general physical health care. The action plan promotes integrated health care that addresses mental health alongside physical health at all levels of care (WHO, 2013).

Schizophrenia occurs more commonly in men than in women, more often in immigrants than in the native-born population, and more often in those living in urban areas.

Recovery/Remission

The WHO has ranked schizophrenia as the third most disabling illness among people aged 15 to 44 years. Despite the widespread use of antipsychotics, just 1% to 2% of every 100 patients qualify as "recovered" each year (Malhotra, Marder, & Weiden, 2014). According to Castle and Buckley (2011), about 40% of cases have a very poor outcome. Studies of the course of schizophrenia have reported significantly varying rates of recovery/remission and widely different definitions. *Remission* is defined as a state of improvement in psychosis or reality distortion, disorganization, and negative symptoms for at least 6 months (Castle & Buckley, 2011). Jaaskelainen et al. (2013) defines *recovery* as an improvement in both clinical and social functioning with some mild residual symptoms. WHO (2013) defines *recovery* from the perspective of the individual as experiencing hope, healing, empowerment, and connection, and is not synonymous with cure. There has been a recent emphasis on the recovery paradigm in treating schizophrenia. This paradigm places the individual in the center of his or her care and emphasizes a holistic approach. The goal of treatment is not only on symptom amelioration but also on well-being, social integration, vocational success, and achievement of personal life goals (Castle & Buckley, 2011). In simple terms, recovery means having a meaningful life.

In a systemic review Jaaskelainen et al. (2013) found that the median proportion of individuals with schizophrenia who met the recovery criteria was 13.5%. Despite major changes in the treatment options in recent decades they found no evidence that recovery outcomes have improved

over time. The majority of people with schizophrenia are unemployed, never marry, do not have college degrees, and struggle socially.

Evidence suggests that regional differences affect the recovery rates for individuals with schizophrenia. Haro et al. (2011) found that the symptom and functional remission rate was higher in low- and middle-income countries than in high-income countries. It has been suggested that sociocultural and environmental factors, such as close family support and interaction, play an important role in the higher recovery rate.

DIAGNOSING A THOUGHT DISORDER

Thought disorders include schizophrenia and its four subtypes: schizophreniform disorder, schizoaffective disorder, delusional disorder, and brief psychotic disorder. Each disorder has a specific set of diagnostic criteria that a patient must meet for diagnosis.

Schizophrenia

SCHIZOPHRENIA is a thought disorder that involves bizarre behavior, thoughts, movements, perceptions, and emotions. There is no single symptom or sign that defines the disorder. Symptoms experienced by the patient are typically divided into positive and negative categories. Positive symptoms are excessive or amplified variations of normal functioning, such as:

- **DELUSIONS** *(erroneous, false, fixed beliefs; a misinterpretation of an experience)*
- **HALLUCINATIONS**, *most commonly auditory or visual (erroneous or false sensory perceptions)*
- *Disorganized speech (***Table 11-1** *provides examples)*
- *Disorganized behavior such as aggression, agitation, regression, hypervigilance, waxy flexibility (odd or unusual fixed postural positions for an extended period of time), or* **ECHOPRAXIA** *(involuntary imitation of another's movements and gestures).*

TABLE 11-1: EXAMPLES OF DISORGANIZED SPEECH

DISORGANIZED SPEECH	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
ECHOLALIA	Parrot-like repetition of another's words	*Nurse*:"Good morning, how are you today, John?" *Patient*:"Good morning, how are you today, John?"
Circumstantiality	Detailed and lengthy talking about a subject	I would like to go to the recreation area; I know there are many things that I can do there. There are red balls, and blue balls, and yellow balls, and even a white ball on the pool table and I know how to play pool and I can hit the red ball, and the yellow ball, and the white ball is used to hit all of the other balls.
Loose associations	Sudden shifting from one topic to another without any connection	I wonder where my medication is. I know that it is not raining today.
Flight of ideas	Repeated and rapid changing of the subject	What time is it? Where is my medication? I want to go to recreation. I want to visit my friends.
Word salad	Words in succession without any connection or continuity of thought	Corn, paper, job, snow, swim, pickle
Neologisms	Words made up by the patient	I have a farpart. Do you have a farpart?
Verbigeration	Repetition of words or phrases for no purpose	My part, my part, my part, my part…
Clang association	Repetition of words that sound alike or rhyme but are otherwise not connected	I have to run, but that's a pun, when it's no fun.
Stilted language	Language that is overly pompous, flowery, formal, or artificial	I am pleased to make acquaintances with such a precious and outstanding counterpart.
Perseveration	Repetition of word or phrases focusing on a single topic	It is snowing; it is snowing; it is snowing…

Negative symptoms reflect a diminished presentation of emotional expression and include:

- **AFFECTIVE FLATTENING** *or blunting (restricted range and intensity of emotion)*
- *Decreased fluency of speech*
- **ALOGIA** *(decreased production of speech)*
- **AVOLITION** *(diminished goal-directed activity)*
- *Ambivalence*
- **ANHEDONIA** *(inability to feel pleasure or joy from life)*

For diagnosis, the disease must be present for at least 6 months. During this time frame, the patient must actively demonstrate the symptoms for a significant period of 1 month.

Schizophrenia is manifested by positive and negative symptoms. Positive symptoms are exaggerations of normal function; negative symptoms indicate decreased emotional expression.

Individuals with schizophrenia display a wide range of symptom types and expressions. Clinicians now use a dimensional approach to diagnose and rate severity for the core symptoms of schizophrenia. The dimensions assessed are delusions, hallucinations, disorganization, negative symptoms, impaired cognition, depression, mania, and psychomotor symptoms including catatonia. Quantitative measurements using a simple rating scale (0–4) can be used to capture the severity of symptoms (Tandon & Bruijnzeel, 2014).

Psychotic symptoms can be assessed within stages or phases of the illness. The prodromal phase of the illness can occur over months or even years. Changes in behavior, such as withdrawal from usual activities, and strange or unusual thinking can occur suddenly or family members may notice subtle changes over several years. It is important to recognize symptoms at this stage as early therapeutic interventions may be employed to halt the progression or reduce the severity of symptoms. The active phase of the illness is associated with the emergence of psychotic symptoms which may include auditory hallucinations, delusions, or disorganized thinking and behavior. Auditory verbal hallucinations are the most frequent and disturbing symptom. According to Tusaie and Fitzpatrick (2013), approximately 60% to 80% of patients experience "hearing voices." The content of the voices is usually negative, derogatory, and sometimes commands or urges one to act in a negative manner. Delusions typically are persecutory (the feeling that one is being watched, harmed, or plotted against) or **GRANDIOSE** (one has great wealth, power, or influence). Both types of delusions may also be present. Other common themes are jealousy, religiosity, or somatization. Delusions tend to be organized around a common theme and are sometimes referred to as systematized. Hallucinatory content is also related to the delusions. Persons can be aloof, superior, and patronizing, and predisposed to suicide and violence.

At times, the illness can be characterized by silliness and laughter that is not connected to speech content, and individuals often have trouble with organization and tasks. For example, the person may have difficulty with activities of daily living. Catatonic symptoms are characterized by psychomotor disturbances, which may include immobility, excessive motor activity, extreme negativism, mutism, peculiar voluntary motor movement, echolalia, or echopraxia. Motor immobility may be manifested by catalepsy (waxy flexibility) or stupor. Voluntary movement may be peculiar and include assuming uncomfortable postures or grimacing. During periods of severe stupor or excitement, the person may require careful supervision to avoid injury to self or others. He or she is also at risk for dehydration, malnutrition, and exhaustion.

In the residual phase, the active phase symptoms are no longer prominent. Cognitive impairment, or negative symptoms, usually remain and affect how the patient is able to function in daily life. Treatment is aimed at preventing relapse, maintaining adequate community support, offering vocational rehabilitation, and avoiding isolation.

Schizophreniform Disorder

Schizophreniform disorder shares identical essential features with schizophrenia with two differences. First, the total duration of the illness is at least 1 month but less than 6 months. Second, impaired social or occupational functioning during some part of the illness, although it may occur, is not required as a criterion. If the diagnosis persists beyond 6 months, it is changed to schizophrenia.

Schizoaffective Disorder

Schizoaffective disorder occurs as an uninterrupted period of illness during which there is a major depressive, manic, or mixed episode concurrent with the characteristic symptoms of schizophrenia. In addition, delusions or hallucinations are present. Persons with schizoaffective disorder may have marked difficulties in social contact and self-care. The risk for suicide also is increased. Residual symptoms may be less than in schizophrenia but **ANOSOGNOSIA** (poor insight) is often present and can result in poor treatment adherence. The incidence of this type of SSD is higher in women. The overall prognosis of schizoaffective disorder is better than that for schizophrenia. In addition,

schizoaffective disorder also appears to increase the risk of schizophrenia and mood disorders in first-degree relatives. At times, it may be difficult to distinguish schizoaffective disorder from mood disorder with psychotic features. The distinguishing feature is that in mood disorder with psychotic features, the psychotic symptoms occur within the context of the mood disorder.

Delusional Disorder

Delusional disorder is characterized by the presence of one or more non-bizarre delusions that persist for more than 1 month in a person who has never had a symptom presentation that met the diagnosis of schizophrenia. Hallucinations, if present, are not prominent. Evaluating delusions as non-bizarre can be problematic, especially in relation to cultural differences between the health care professional and the patient. In such cases, the determination can be made by considering plausibility, understandability, and the life experiences of the person. The individual's functional level may be variable because some behavior surrounding the delusions could diminish functioning. For example, if one believes he or she has a serious disease, he or she may self-isolate and seek medical treatments that could ultimately be harmful. More often, social and interpersonal functioning problems are greater than occupational functioning. The disorder tends to develop later in life compared with schizophrenia. Patients may experience periods when the disorder is fairly quiet. Additionally, the prognosis is often improved when the disorder occurs in response to a stressful event.

Brief Psychotic Disorder

Brief psychotic disorder is a thought disorder that usually has an abrupt onset with at least one positive symptom associated with the characteristics of schizophrenia. This disorder, occurring most often during the second or third decade of life, commonly lasts between 1 and 30 days. The person has a full remission during the specified time period. Although the duration of the disorder is brief, it may be quite intense and require a high level of supervision. The risk for suicide is especially high for younger persons. Individuals diagnosed with certain personality disorders such as borderline, paranoid, narcissistic, and histrionic personality disorders may be at increased risk for this diagnosis. (See Chapter 14 for a discussion on personality disorders.)

Other thought disorders include schizophreniform disorder, schizoaffective disorder, delusional disorder, and brief psychotic disorder.

ETIOLOGY OF SSD

According to the Global Burden of Disease study in 2010, the burden of mental disorders has increased by 37.6% in the last two decades, with a growing challenge for countries to make prevention and treatment of mental health issues a public health priority (Whitford et al., 2013). In the United States, 12.6% of disability-adjusted life years are caused by mental disorders, with SSD accounting for half of those disability-adjusted years (Murray et al., 2013). SSD affects individuals in nearly all aspects of their lives, including vocational, interpersonal, intrapsychic, and social competencies. These disorders tend to emerge in young adulthood and are lifelong conditions creating stress for families and communities. Unfortunately, the exact etiology of SSD is unknown.

Theories on the etiology of any disorder are important because ascertaining the cause of a disorder is helpful in developing treatment and prevention strategies. Psychosocial and biological theories are described here. However, since the discovery of antipsychotic drugs in the 1950s, the direction of research on the etiology of SSD has radically shifted in favor of biological theories.

Psychosocial Theories

Although the early psychosocial theories have been replaced, evolved, or discredited, their legacy may be important. These etiological conceptualizations of SSD continue to exert some influence on the current understanding. For example, the recognition of the importance of relationships and communication, an appreciation of the conditions under which the diagnosis and treatment take place, and the recognition of family influence and distress in the face of a devastating illness are still viewed as important clinical factors that arose from earlier speculations about the origins of these serious disorders.

In the early years of the 20th century, psychoanalytic theory was used to explain the etiology of a wide range of psychiatric disorders, including SSD. Speculation was that the "schizophrenia process" began in the first few years of life as a result of a faulty maternal relationship. This pathological relationship with the "first love object" created anxiety, leading to the expectation of a world that could not be trusted (Ferriera, 1961). Much of the support for this conceptualization came from case material obtained during the psychoanalysis of schizophrenic patients. The "schizophrenogenic mother" theory that resulted from these case reports negatively affected the relationship between mental health professionals and families during the period of this theory's acceptance. While this concept has dissipated considerably over the last 30 years, some lingering distrust remains.

In the 1920s, Harry Stack Sullivan, a psychoanalyst by training, began to integrate the theories of anthropology and the newly emerging field of social psychology into an evolving psychodynamic theory emphasizing interpersonal relationships in the etiology of schizophrenia. He theorized that the patient's observed maladaptive behaviors were the result of a history of faulty communication between the affected individual and the rest of society. Sullivan's contribution is important because he recognized the critical nature of the individual's relationships with others and his or her social and interpersonal environment to the development of pathology, rather than viewing it as the result of an intrapsychic experience (Evans, 1996).

During the mid-1950s, early family theories attributed the development of schizophrenia to disordered family communication. The speculation was that in the families of persons with SSD, homeostasis was maintained by a process called pseudomutuality. This process reflects a façade of family harmony maintained by a denial of problems. However, those problems later became manifested as troubled behaviors in the most vulnerable family member, the person who developed schizophrenia. While the family remained together, the burden of unresolved family issues was borne by the person with SSD (Ferriera, 1961). This theory is no longer accepted by mainstream clinicians.

Current research supports that psychological and social factors influence the emergence of symptoms of SSD in vulnerable individuals. No evidence exists to support the belief that psychosocial factors alone can induce SSD in persons without a biological predisposition. Research has consistently supported that proximal stressful life events can influence the emergence of many psychiatric and physical conditions in humans, including SSD. Also, it may be true that early traumatic life events could increase the risk for mental health problems later in life, but again, this is not specific to SSD.

Special psychosocial contexts may exist in which SSD is more likely to emerge through a type of psychosocial "perfect storm." Here, stressful circumstances work together synergistically to influence symptom emergence. A possible example could be immigration. In such a context, individuals leave their country of origin as a result of fear or actual torture. They arrive in another culture where they do not speak the dominant language and are thus socially isolated and unable to validate their experiences. They may be made to feel unwelcome by officials (police) or neighbors. In addition, they commonly have the added stress of poverty due to poor employment opportunities. In such circumstances, a degree of paranoia may be adaptive for some but it may tip the balance toward illness in especially vulnerable persons.

Family interaction is another possible link to SSD. High levels of negative expressed emotion (EE) in family interaction appear to influence relapse in persons with SSD. Negative EE is characterized by communication that is hostile, critical, and emotionally overintrusive. A negative emotional climate in the family is predictive of relapse. Studies involving high levels of expressed emotion have led to an increased understanding of the importance of family involvement in treatment. In addition, the studies have led to successful family interventions, which have reduced relapse rates (Mura, Petretto, Bhat, & Carta, 2012).

Early psychosocial theories identified a problematic maternal relationship as the cause of schizophrenia. Later, other theories addressed social context and unresolved family issues.

Biological Theories

Despite intense efforts in the recent past in this area, the specific biological etiology of SSD is still unknown. Cannabis appears to be a risk factor but probably needs to act with other vulnerability factors to be a causal cumulative factor (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Epidemiological studies of SSD point to a number of perinatal risk factors for schizophrenia. These include winter birth; urban birth setting and associated issues such as pollution or crowding; intrauterine infections such as rubella, influenza, or polio; pre-eclampsia (a pregnancy-related condition involving elevated blood pressure); low birth weight; or Rh incompatibility. In addition, maternal stress such as famine, depression, or an unwanted pregnancy is also associated with the later development of SSD. Unfortunately, no common mechanism of injury related to these multiple, contributing, antecedent conditions can account for the development of a disorder, nor do they provide an explanation for why the disease emerges decades after the original insults (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Genetics

Genetics is the greatest known risk factor predisposing an individual to develop SSD. In a meta-analysis of twin studies on schizophrenia, Sullivan, Kendler, and Neale (2003) quantified the genetic and environmental contribution to the development of schizophrenia as 81% and 11%, respectively. Twin studies have also demonstrated that the concordance rate (presence of the same trait in each twin) for schizophrenia is about 40% to 50% between monozygotic twins and about 10% between siblings, both

highly suggestive of an inherited disorder. One particular gene has not been identified as causative; rather, a set of genes likely contributes to development of the disorder. One particular area of scrutiny in the field is those genes that govern neurodevelopment. Recent research seems to strongly suggest that schizophrenia arises from a neurodevelopmental disorder in which the roots of the disease are related to abnormal brain development (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Neuroanatomical Factors

Various nonspecific macro- and micro-neuroanatomical findings are associated with SSD. The most common macro features are enlargement of the cerebral lateral ventricles, enlarged third ventricle, and reduced overall grey matter volume. In the temporal lobe, there is volume reduction in the amygdala and hippocampus, and appears more marked on the left side. The size of the prefrontal cortex appears diminished in persons with SSD who experience prominent negative symptoms. In monozygotic twins, the overall brain volume of the twin affected by SSD is decreased. Micro-abnormalities have also been observed with widespread cortical and cerebellar atrophy (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Neurochemical Factors

Currently, two prominent neurochemical theories attempt to explain the etiology of SSD. The first, called the dopamine hypothesis, is supported by the 50-year history of treatment with antipsychotic medications that block dopamine. According to this theory, a dysregulation of dopamine is the underlying etiologic mechanism responsible for SSD. This dysregulation involves overactivity in the mesolimbic dopamine pathway, contributing to positive symptoms, and underactivity in the mesocortical dopamine pathway, contributing to negative and cognitive symptoms. A second neurochemical theory of SSD is the glutamate hypothesis. This theory posits that alterations in the *N*-methyl-d-aspartate (NMDA) glutamate receptor are the mechanism responsible for all symptoms of SSD (positive, negative, and cognitive) due to its excitatory role in the central nervous system. One of the reasons that the NMDA glutamate hypothesis has captured the attention of researchers is that it plays an important role in neurodevelopmental processes both in utero and during adolescence, critical periods in development according to several current theories. There is also some evidence that gamma amino acid butyric acid (GABA) neurotransmission is dysfunctional in schizophrenia. GABA is the main inhibitory neurotransmitter and it has been suggested that cognitive deficits in schizophrenia may be related to altered GABA transmission (Keshavan, Nasrallah, & Tandon, 2011).

Biological theories suggest perinatal events, genetics, neuroanatomical abnormalities, and dysfunction of neurotransmitters as key risk factors for the development of schizophrenia.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

The treatment of SSD requires medical/pharmacological, environmental, psychosocial, and social interventions. None of these categories of treatment alone is sufficient to assist persons with SSD to live their lives to their fullest potential. Individuals living with SSD will require a combination of interventions across their lifetimes. Depending on their age and the severity and acuity of their condition at a given time, the priority of treatment interventions will vary.

The view of patients with SSD leading productive and satisfying lives traditionally has been pessimistic. Although newer treatment paradigms that combine pharmacological and psychosocial treatment modalities have proved helpful, some of the greatest strides forward are being attributed to the activities of the consumer movement that has given voice to persons with serious mental illnesses. Consumers have sought to de-emphasize the medical model that recognizes symptom reduction as the major goal of all treatment activities in favor of such concepts as empowerment, interpersonal and vocational competency, autonomy, and hope. The recovery paradigm is now widely accepted as the contemporary approach to treating schizophrenia (Compton, 2010). Jaaskelainen et al. (2013) reported that recovery rates can range from 8% to 20% or about one in seven individuals.

Pharmacological Therapy

Following is an overview of pharmacological therapy for SSD; the reader is referred to other pharmacological resources for more in-depth information. Medications used to treat SSD are called antipsychotic agents and typically are classified as first-generation or second-generation antipsychotics. They do not cure the disorder but research has shown that they are effective in managing the symptoms. Typically, medications used for psychiatric-mental health conditions are indicated for use in more than one disorder. For example, the drug olanzapine (Zyprexa) is indicated for use in psychosis and mood instability.

Generally, the therapeutic mechanism of action of antipsychotic drugs involves dopamine blockade in a number of central nervous system receptors. It is theorized that typical or first-generation antipsychotics block dopamine in the mesolimbic pathway, which likely dampens positive symptoms of the disorder. However, they also cause side

effects by blocking dopamine in the nigrostriatal pathway and the tuberoinfundibular pathway, leading to parkinsonism and increased prolactin secretion (resulting in galactorrhea, amenorrhea, and decreased libido), respectively. First-generation antipsychotic agents also cause other side effects such as sedation, seizures, arrhythmias, and orthostatic hypotension. However, the most troubling side effects are the extrapyramidal symptoms, which include parkinsonism, akathisia, dystonias, and tardive dyskinesia and neuroleptic malignant syndrome (**Box 11-1**).

Atypical or second-generation antipsychotics are effective in treating positive symptoms of SSD, and perhaps negative symptoms as well. Their hypothesized action involves a simultaneous blockade of dopamine and serotonin receptors. Available serotonin then inhibits dopamine release to different degrees in different pathways. The greatest inhibition occurs in the desired mesolimbic pathway while decreasing the blockade in the nigrostriatal and tuberoinfundibular pathways. The decreased blockade in the latter two pathways leads to a decrease in the undesirable side effects noted previously. They may cause sedation, anticholinergic effects, orthostatic hypotension, prolongation of the QTc interval, difficulties of sexual arousal, and agranulocytosis. Additionally, second-generation agents are associated with the development of metabolic syndrome (central obesity weight gain, glucose intolerance, and hyperlipidemia) in many patients. **Drug Summary 11-1** lists

BOX 11-1: SIDE EFFECTS OF ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS

FIRST-GENERATION ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS

- Sedation
- Extrapyramidal symptoms
  - Parkinsonism (tremor, shuffling gait, drooling, cogwheel rigidity)
  - Akathisia (muscle weakness, intense need to move about, restlessness with rigid posture or gait)
  - Dystonia (involuntary movements of muscles [spasms] and cramping, most commonly of the face, arms, legs, and neck)
  - Tardive dyskinesia (bizarre facial, tongue, and upper and lower extremity movements, lip smacking, blinking or grimacing, stiff neck, difficulty swallowing)
- Heatstroke
- Hyperprolactinemia
- **NEUROLEPTIC MALIGNANT SYNDROME** (muscle rigidity, high fever, unstable blood pressure, diaphroesis, pallor, delirium, tachycardia, tachypnea, rapid deterioration of mental status)
- Seizures
- Orthostatic hypotension
- Cardiac arrhythmias

SECOND-GENERATION ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS

- Extrapyramidal symptoms
  - Parkinsonism
  - Akathisia
  - Dystonia
  - Tardive dyskinesia
- Hyperprolactinemia
- Orthostatic hypotension
- Neuroleptic malignant syndrome
- Sedation
- Anticholinergic effects (dry mouth, blurred vision, constipation, urinary retention)
- Metabolic effects (weight gain, glucose intolerance or diabetes, hyperlipidemia)
- Sexual arousal difficulties
- Falls
- Agranulocytosis
- Prolongation of QTc interval

DRUG SUMMARY 11-1: ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
FIRST-GENERATION ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	
chlorpromazine (Thorazine) perphenazine (Trilafon) trifluoperazine (Stelazine) fluphenazine (Prolixin) thioridazine (Mellaril) thiothixene (Navane) haloperidol (Haldol) loxapine (Loxitane)	■ Work with the patient on measures to reduce anticholinergic effects such as the use of sugarless gum or hard candy to alleviate dry mouth ■ Institute safety measures to prevent falls ■ Urge patient to report complaints of dizziness when rising from lying to sitting position or sitting to standing position ■ Allow patient to verbalize feelings and issues related to drug therapy; work with patient and family to develop a method for ensuring adherence to drug therapy ■ Monitor the patient for development of extrapyramidal side effects ■ Be alert that neuroleptic malignant syndrome most often occurs during the first 2 weeks of therapy or after a dosage increase
SECOND-GENERATION ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	
clozapine (Clozaril) risperidone (Risperdal) olanzapine (Zyprexa) quetiapine (Seroquel) ziprasidone (Geodon) aripiprazole (Abilify) paliperidone (Invega) iloperidone (Fanapt) asenapine (Saphris) lurasidone (Latuda)	■ Instruct the patient using aripiprazole (Abilify) not to take the drug with grapefruit juice ■ For the patient taking clozapine, obtain baseline white blood cell counts to assess for agranulocytosis; explain to the patient that he or she will receive only a 1-week supply of the drug; assist the patient in arranging for follow-up weekly blood tests for the first 6 months of therapy; monitor the patient closely for signs and symptoms of infection; stress the need for not stopping the drug abruptly ■ Allow patient to verbalize feelings and issues related to drug therapy; work with patient and family to develop a method for ensuring adherence to drug therapy ■ Monitor the patient for development of extrapyramidal side effects ■ Be alert that neuroleptic malignant syndrome most often occurs during the first 2 weeks of therapy or after a dosage increase

first- and second-generation antipsychotics and implications for the interpersonal process.

Although medications have the potential to diminish symptoms, they are ineffective if the patient does not take them. Working with patients to facilitate adherence to a prescribed medication regimen is essential.

Other medications may be used appropriately for persons with SSD. Mood stabilizers such as lithium and carbamazepine are indicated for persons with schizoaffective disorder as well as to treat aggression that may be a part of SSD. Antidepressants are also often prescribed for the depression associated with SSD after optimal response to antipsychotics is established. Benzodiazepines or buspirone are commonly used together with antipsychotics to control acute anxiety (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Antipsychotic agents are typically classified as first- or second-generation agents. Both are associated with extrapyramidal symptoms: parkinsonism, akathisia, dystonias, and tardive dyskinesia. Second-generation antipsychotics are associated with the development of metabolic syndrome.

Electroconvulsive Therapy

ECT is regarded with great suspicion by the public and persons with psychiatric-mental health problems. In the United States, ECT is used mainly for the treatment of depression. In 2006, the American Psychiatric Association guidelines proposed that ECT can be used for persons with schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder who have persistent severe psychosis and suicidal ideation, prominent catatonic features, and comorbid depression. However, the use of ECT in clinical practice is now largely confined to those individuals with severe depression (Castle & Buckley, 2011). Despite its reputation, ECT is a safe treatment and used most often for persons who require a rapid response to treatment because of the severity of their condition. (See Chapter 12 for additional information on ECT.)

Environmental Supports

Environmental supports broadly refer to compensatory mechanisms to address the cognitive deficits of persons with SSD. One such method is Cognitive Adaptive Training (CAT), a program of assessment and tailored interventions to assist the person to complete activities of daily living to improve the quality of life. Examples include weekly visits by a team professional, the use of checklists for bathing or home maintenance activities, electronic pillboxes that sound an alarm to remind the individual to take medication, and arranging the person's clothes to promote appropriate and socially acceptable clothing choices. It is unclear if this approach is as beneficial as other community treatments and further research is needed (Hanson, Ostergaard, Nordentoft, & Hounsgaard, 2012).

Psychological Therapies

Psychological therapies include those interventions that are derived primarily from the discipline of psychology. The most common psychological therapies used for persons with SSD are cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and cognitive restructuring therapy.

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

CBT is a form of psychotherapy that has been used successfully in depression and a number of other clinical syndromes since the mid-1970s. More recently, it is becoming widely used in the treatment of SSD in conjunction with pharmacological therapy. Research has consistently reported that CBT for psychosis is effective and should be routinely used as a treatment strategy and that, when used along with medication, it is consistently superior to medication used alone (Sivec & Montesano, 2012; Thomas, Rossell, Farhall, Shawyer, & Castle, 2011).

CBT is based on the assumption that the way individuals perceive situations influences their thoughts, emotions, and behaviors. In addition, persons may be influenced by core beliefs that result from life experiences. If the thoughts, emotions, behaviors, and core beliefs are negative, they are likely to exacerbate psychotic symptoms in persons with SSD. Some CBT experts believe that the way in which persons with SSD interpret the psychotic symptoms rather than the symptoms themselves is the cause of their distress. The goal of therapy is not to totally eliminate the voices but to change the voice hearer's relationship with the voices and decrease their negative impact (Chadwick, Hughes, D. Russell, I. Russell, & Dagnan, 2009). CBT is believed to be effective and well tolerated by persons with SSD because it emphasizes a focus on the present, structures sessions through the use of homework and exercises, and is time limited. Recent research data support the idea that CBT reduces the distress caused by residual psychotic symptoms more effectively than other psychological treatments such as supportive psychotherapy. This effectiveness is demonstrated when CBT is combined with other usual treatments such as medication and case management (Thomas et al., 2014) .

Briefly, the process of CBT begins with the establishment of a trusting therapeutic relationship as a foundation. The therapist and patient collaborate to build the problem list and formulate a treatment plan that addresses thoughts, feelings, and behaviors associated with problem areas. The therapist assists the patient to view his or her experience of psychotic symptoms from a normal perspective, collaboratively explores core beliefs that may be contributing to the problem, and formulates alternative explanations for their distress. Researchers have suggested that CBT is more effective when it targets emotional and behavioral distress rather than psychotic symptomatology. Many trials of CBT for psychosis have defined their outcomes in terms of symptoms rather than distress and self-esteem, with a recent systemic review showing no clear advantage for CBT over other therapies for persons with SSD (Jones,

Hacker, Cormac, Meaden, & Irving, 2012). Clearly, more research is needed to determine which specific cognitive methods are the most useful for promoting optimal outcomes for persons with SSD.

Chadwick et al. (2009) report that acceptance of voices can be empowering and calming. Mindfulness and Acceptance and Commitment Therapy (ACT) are two cognitive behavior approaches that have shown to help voice hearers accept and alter their relationship with their voices. The goal of these therapies is not to totally eliminate the voices but to change the voice hearer's relationship with the voices and decrease their negative impact (Bach, Hayes, & Gallop, 2012).

Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) is an effective treatment modality for schizophrenia because it focuses on the present, involves sessions requiring homework and exercises, and spans a limited time period.

MINDFULNESS

Chadwick et al. (2009) define mindfulness as bringing one's full attention to one's present experience in an accepting and nonjudgmental way. The therapy is done as guided meditation with increased awareness of one's body and breathing during the experience. The goal is for the participant to bring full awareness to difficult voices, feelings, thoughts, and images. By accepting their present experiences, the participants can practice letting go of old dysfunctional coping reactions and learn more effective strategies. After practicing being mindful, voice hearers realize that much of their distress comes from how they react to the voices, not the voices themselves, and the feared negative consequences do not happen. Gaudiano, Herbert, and Hayes (2010) suggest that voice hearers can listen to their voices mindfully and then learn to relate to them in a different way. Recent research has reported decreased distress and improved coping strategies with this technique (Bach et al., 2012; Gaudiano et al., 2010).

ACCEPTANCE AND COMMITMENT THERAPY

ACT does not attempt to reduce symptoms; rather, it attempts to alter the patient's relationship to his or her voices to decrease their negative impact (Gaudiano et al., 2010). ACT can help the voice hearer to decrease the believability of the voices and to change his or her response. It is this change in response that improves function and relieves distress, with one changing one's relationship with the voices by self-acceptance. Commitment is to act in the direction of valued goals after the voices have reduced their influence and the person is empowered to change behaviors and develop new ways of coping. The important question for the voice hearer is: "Is my behavior in accord with my values?" Research has suggested that greater acceptance of voices was associated with decreased depression, increased confidence in coping with command hallucinations, and better quality of life (Gaudiano et al., 2010).

THE PHENOMENON OF "VOICE HEARERS"

It has generally been accepted treatment in the United States to use pharmacological therapy to try to eliminate the positive symptoms of SSD, especially hearing voices. According to Romme and Escher (2012), a large majority of voice hearers still hear voices in spite of such therapy. It is becoming increasingly understood that how people interpret their voices and their relationship to them are a better predictor of clinical outcomes than the experience itself (Beavan, Read, & Cartwright, 2011). According to Place, Foxcroft, and Shaw (2011), the key to recovery is not so much the voices that cause distress to the patient but that person's relationship with the voices and his or her understanding of their meaning. With his or her expertise in establishing a therapeutic relationship, the psychiatric mental health nurse is in a unique position to help the patient explore the content and meaning of the voices, challenge them, and gain personal control over the experience. Traditionally, nurses have been taught to ignore voices or redirect the person back to "reality" and have expressed a lack of confidence in discussing the meaning of their patient's voices. This approach has not led to significant improvement in voice hearers' lives. Helping voice hearers cope with distressing thoughts and feelings can be challenging but studies have suggested that voice hearers want nurses to assist them in managing their voices (Jones & Coffey, 2012). Mental health nurses can increase their awareness of the voice hearer's experience by learning effective interventions to respond in the best way and become more comfortable initiating discussions about voices. Nurses can best meet their patient's needs by establishing trust and listening to their stories. Within the framework of a therapeutic relationship, the mental health nurse can educate the voice hearer on the relationship between stress and incidence of voice hearing and help him or her develop and utilize positive coping strategies. Two such strategies are distracting and focusing techniques. Distracting techniques involve listening to music, shopping, visiting friends, or exercise. Focusing techniques are a direct way of coping with the voices through the use of a diary to track frequency or directly confront the voices: "You have no power over me" and "That is not true." Normalizing is another effective intervention where the nurse may

verbalize to the voice hearer: "You are not alone as many people hear voices." Emerging evidence suggests that just trying to banish voices is not enough to help voice hearers and ignoring voices actually increases or maintains them (Romme & Escher, 2012). Voice hearers want to talk about and gain coping strategies to decrease fear and increase their power over the voices, thereby having improved control over their lives.

Hearing-Voices Groups

Voice hearers have also responded in their own way by forming self-help groups such as the Hearing Voices Movement (HVM), which gives voice hearers a safe space to share experiences, get reassurance, increase autonomy, and obtain hope. The development of these peer support groups started in The Netherlands and Great Britain in the early 1990s and have since spread worldwide. The key values of the HVM include the belief that hearing voices can be a natural part of the human experience with diverse explanations for their origin. Voice hearers are encouraged to define and take ownership of their own experiences while interpreting and understanding the voices in the context of their personal life events. It is believed that the acceptance of one's voices may be more helpful for recovery than continued avoidance and suppression. Peer support and collaboration are core elements of the movement and are viewed as empowering and beneficial for the recovering individual (Corstens, Longden, McCarthy-Jones, Waddingham, & Thomas, 2014). Despite the growing popularity of hearing-voices groups, there is very little evidence on their effectiveness. Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) are needed to determine how hearing-voices groups contribute to overall recovery and to identify the best possible pathways to change (Ruddle, Mason, & Wykes, 2011).

Cognitive Remediation or Rehabilitation Therapy

As noted earlier, cognitive impairments are likely the most disabling aspects of thought disorders, contributing to the functional difficulties experienced by patients in work, social, and educational situations. Cognitive remediation therapy (CRT) has been developed to assist patients in improving their memory and thinking styles. Such therapies are tailored to the specific patient problems identified after a careful assessment of the range and severity of individual cognitive impairments. The treatment is structured to involve pairs of patients, patients and therapists, patients and computers, or a combination of all three. CRT is often a manualized therapy, which means that it must be carefully delineated in a treatment manual and requires complete adherence to the description of the treatment to be successful. The target cognitive domains include abstraction, attention, problem solving, face memory, and emotion identification. The goal is to improve cognition immediately through "exercises" and then transfer that improved cognitive ability to real-world situations to improve vocational, educational, social functioning, and overall quality of life. Research has suggested that cognitive remediation is most likely to improve functional skills when individuals can practice cognitive skills in a real-world setting. A meta-analysis noted that cognitive remediation has a moderate improvement effect on functional outcomes but that additional research is needed to address the optimal form of the treatment, the frequency and number of sessions, and how to disperse this promising treatment into diverse community settings (Medalia & Saperstein, 2013).

Assertive Community Treatment

ACT is difficult to classify as it combines components of many different treatment modalities. ACT is a transdisciplinary treatment that is characterized by community treatment, low patient-to-staff ratios, and an indefinite duration of treatment. Services provided or available within an ACT program might include intensive case management, pharmacological treatment (with intense compliance monitoring), primary health care, housing/rental assistance, vocational services, substance abuse treatment (emphasizing a harm-reduction approach), and enhanced socialization opportunities (Stein & Santos, 1998). ACT is supported by research indicating that it is successful in reducing the annual number of hospital days, arrests, and homelessness, while increasing employment and cost-effectiveness. Additional studies indicate that ACT is very well accepted by a sizable number of patients. For example, a meta-analysis by Norden, Malm, and Norlander (2012) showed that ACT yielded positive results for a client in symptoms, functioning, and well-being and that it may be of use within the entire psychiatric spectrum.

ACT has several unique characteristics that set it apart from other types of community care. ACT is not a time-limited form of intensive treatment. It requires a set of core professionals making up the team that include but are not limited to a nurse, psychiatrist, social worker, vocational rehabilitation specialist, substance abuse specialist, and a peer counselor. ACT teams have some service capabilities that are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Patients referred to ACT usually have been repeatedly unsuccessful with less intensive forms of treatment. Thus, when patients are admitted to an ACT model of care, they are assumed to need that level of care indefinitely. The patient is attached to a team rather than one staff person. While most teams have a primary worker assigned to each patient, that process is

fluid. ACT teams encourage staff and patients to gradually develop relationships that best meet the patient's needs. (See Chapter 25 for additional information about ACT.)

Social Therapies

Social therapies are those that are primarily focused on the social environment of the patient. Social therapies include family- and community-based interventions. Social support is a key component within social therapies, and may be offered to many members of the patient's social network.

Family Psychoeducation

Family pscychoeducaton has evolved over the past several decades as deinstitutionalization occurred and family members became more involved as caregivers. The long-term goal of family psychoeducation is to improve patient outcomes by promoting family well-being as an intermediate outcome. Family psychoeducation is not one specific model but a group of interventions that constitute a program that is professionally created and led, and lasting from 9 months to several years. It can be done individually, as a group, or as a combination of the two modalities. All methods of family psychoeducation share common characteristics:

- *Education of families on psychopathologies*
- *Demonstration of concern and empathy for families dealing with a mental illness*
- *Avoidance of blaming relatives or pathologizing their efforts to cope*
- *Fostering of the development of all family members in their relationships with one another by enhancing communication and problem-solving skills*
- *Enhancement of adherence*
- *Instillation of hope and ongoing support*

The National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI) provides a 12-week program in many locations titled Family to Family. This psychoeducational program includes many dimensions such as content about mental illnesses (including the latest research), workshops for teaching family members how to problem solve and deal with common symptoms and crises that may occur, strategies for intervention, and information about resources available for assistance. It is appropriate to incorporate the Family to Family curriculum (taught by NAMI members) into a longer term professionally led family psychoeducation (FPE) program.

Research has repeatedly shown that FPE, together with appropriate pharmacotherapy, can reduce relapse rates from a range of 40% to 53% to a range of 2% to 23% (Deakins & McFarlane, 2012).

Family psychoeducation involves teaching the patient and family about the disorder as well as showing concern and empathy for the family, helping to improve the relationships among family members, promoting adherence to the regimen, and instilling hope.

Integrated Dual Diagnosis Treatment

Approximately 47% of individuals with SSD have a co-occurring substance abuse disorder (DeWitte, Crunelle, Sabbe, & Moggi, 2013). Therefore, all persons with SSD require routine screening for this problem. Despite the high level of coexisting substance abuse disorders and research documenting the success of integrated dual diagnosis treatment (IDDT), especially for persons with serious mental illnesses, many communities still do not provide integrated services. The dire consequences of inadequate treatment in this fragile population have made this a matter of great concern because this group is particularly vulnerable to homelessness.

A systematic review by DeWitte et al. (2013) reported that integrated treatment involving behavior therapy, family therapy, and ACT was the most effective in treating dual diagnosis patients. IDDT has evolved as an increasingly critical part of mental health care.

IDDT combines individualized treatment modalities and philosophies. Harm reduction is a concept that is often associated with this treatment modality. Harm reduction is a public health philosophy that purports that some human beings will always engage in risky behaviors. However, health care professionals are obligated to mitigate the harmful consequences to preserve life and health. This strategy is contrary to many of the traditional beliefs and practices of treatment systems, which advocate for total abstinence and self-responsibility as the only worthy path to success. An example demonstrating a harm-reduction philosophy is the policy of Housing First programs that tolerate the low to moderate use of substances. Instead of insisting on complete sobriety, Housing First clients are not prohibited from using substances to retain their housing. This program aligns closely with the recovery movement currently driving mental health reform (Padgett, Stanhope, Henwood, & Stefancic, 2011).

A more precise description of the philosophy of IDDT may be that of gradualism, the policy of working toward goals by gradual stages. Although health care professionals desire that patients stop using substances and adhere to treatment, they accept that cessation may occur over a period of time. In the example of Housing First, the hope is that in the security of a place to live the individual will have

increased motivation to control substance abuse while also engaging with a caring health care professional. Should a window of opportunity present itself, more intense services would be readily available.

Another critical ingredient of IDDT is a sense of optimism. Many persons suffering from dual disorders have experienced multiple episodes of treatment failure in a fragmented treatment situation. Thus, they actively avoid interactions with the mental health and substance abuse treatment system. Subsequently, the methods of IDDT, which include assertive outreach, practical assistance, and an articulated belief in the individual's potential to recover, are essential.

IDDT teams consist of nurses, physicians, employment specialists, substance abuse counselors, and case managers. Core services provided include medication management (often long-acting antipsychotics), substance abuse counseling, housing assistance, and family psychoeducation. These services are not time limited. Other services often used include outreach programs, motivational interventions, and group treatment. Evidence has supported the use of group-based programs although recent research has suggested that integrated treatment delivered by an ACT team has shown promising results for clients with dual diagnosis who also have antisocial personality disorder (Padgett et al., 2011).

Patients with schizophrenia often have a substance abuse disorder that requires treatment.

Social Skills Training

Persons with SSD are at a disadvantage socially for a number of reasons. They experience cognitive disturbances and are exposed to limited opportunities to learn appropriate social behaviors because they often become ill at the time that adult social skills develop. Social skills training is a highly structured program that relies on didactic and experiential components to assist persons with SSD to master critical social skills. These skills may include areas such as starting a conversation, negotiation, and dating or sexual interactions. Skills are broken down into small discrete steps such as how to shake a hand, what to say when meeting a stranger, and how to maintain eye contact. Through the use of role-playing, social modeling, and social reinforcement, individuals with SSD learn to overcome social awkwardness. Lack of opportunity to socialize is a major barrier for many people with schizophrenia. Group activities, drop in centers and encouragement to attend outings can be very helpful (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Supported Employment

Employment rates for persons with serious mental illness remain extremely low. Engaging in meaningful work is an important part of the life of adults and a source of self-esteem, income, and socialization. The supported employment model, which is substantiated by evidence, allows persons with SSD to choose the type of work they would like to do, immediately places patients in competitive employment (working outside of a mental health agency), and supplies patients with a job coach (employed by the mental health system) to assist them to adjust to the employment situation. A meta-analysis by Campbell, Bond, and Drake (2011) reported that the Individual Placement and Support model, which focuses on direct, individualized, and long-term employment support and is the most widely researched supported employment model, produces better employment options than alternative vocational programs.

A cardinal principle of supported employment is that it is integrated into the mental health services treatment plan. In the past, traditional mental health services and vocational services have not been closely associated with each other. While some patients are able to work full time, most choose part-time work. In addition, benefits counseling is needed to ensure that patients are able to maintain their entitlements (disability payments and medical insurance) when they are employed. This is critical because without continued treatment and access to medication, the person is likely to deteriorate and become unable to work.

The role of health care personnel in supported employment is crucial. Clinicians who prescribe medications, such as advanced practice nurses and physicians, and the psychiatric-mental health nurses who assist patients in managing medications, must do so in a manner that most enables patients to work. Management of medication dosing to minimize lethargy during work hours, simplification of medication regimes, and controlling and treating side effects are just some ways to promote supported employment. In addition, education concerning rest, hygiene, diet, and stress management may help patients maintain a job for a longer period of time.

Illness Self-Management Training

As the name implies, with illness self-management training, the patient's role changes during the treatment process from one of passive recipient to that of active participant. It is now accepted that the long-term prognosis of SSD is not an inevitable downhill spiral and that the recovery process is owned by the client, though support by mental health professionals is imperative.

Persons involved in the recovery movement have been working diligently to acquaint health care professionals to

the idea that patients are willing and capable of collaborating in managing their symptoms and their lives. The goals of illness self-management training are to enable the patient to control symptoms and minimize episodes of relapse and hospitalization, increase a sense of empowerment and well-being, and enhance self-esteem, self satisfaction, and hopefulness (Compton, 2010).

To that end, illness self-management training programs have been developed to provide an organized, comprehensive, and auditable approach to assist patients in developing their personal recovery skills. Four critical components of such programs are elements of psychoeducation, enhancement of medication adherence, relapse prevention, and coping skills training. Trained professionals collaborate with patients to develop a personalized plan in individual or small group sessions over a period of 4 to 8 months. A key value is that of personalization; that is, striving to accomplish the goals of the client within the prescribed program.

Supported Housing

The prevalence of schizophrenia in homeless samples is estimated to be approximately 11% compared with 1% in the general population (Foster, Gable, & Buckley, 2012). Persons with SSD often have difficulty obtaining and maintaining adequate housing for a variety of reasons. Possible barriers include the stigma of the illness, poverty, unavailability of safe housing stock in the community, and the instability that accompanies periodic hospitalization. In the past, persons with SSD who were discharged from hospital settings were often required to progress through transitional housing programs or be transferred into nursing homes or other restrictive settings. Many individuals got bottlenecked into more restrictive programs than were necessary because of a lack of housing units on the less restrictive end of the spectrum. Currently, greater emphasis is on direct placement into supported housing settings rather than the step-by-step approach.

Supported housing is a concept that covers a number of program alternatives that promote housing as a priority within mental health treatment systems. Supported housing programs have treatment services readily available. These services may include case management, health services, or benefit assistance to persons living in their housing units. While tenants are not forced to participate in all services, the options approach allows patients both easy access and choice.

The evidence base for supported housing is increasing. A meta-analysis showed that when ACT was combined with supportive housing it led to a 37% decrease in homelessness (Foster, Gablel & Buckley, 2012). Research supports a number of desirable outcomes from supportive housing including reductions in homelessness, hospitalization, incarceration, and psychiatric symptoms. In addition, there is evidence of greater life satisfaction, independent functioning, and a "sense of belonging" or having a place in society.

Patients with schizophrenia may require social skills training, supported employment, illness self-management training, and supported housing.

Self-Help or Peer Assistance

Self-help or peer assistance for persons with mental illness have been developing over the last 40 years in the United States, with roots in the civil rights movement of the 1960s as well as the disability rights movement of the 1980s. Most current groups strive to provide individual assistance through peer-to-peer activities such as regular meetings, telephone warm lines (telephone contact with peers for support in difficult times), and advocacy to promote access to appropriate services, resources, and to decrease stigma. Groups may combine family and consumer advocacy activities, such as those of the NAMI and consumer and professional advocacy; for example, the Vet to Vet program within the Department of Veterans Affairs. Others are solely managed by individuals with mental illnesses, some of which are modeled after Alcoholics Anonymous, while others are clearly different, with educational and political goals. Still others are focused on separating themselves from what they see as a coercive mental health system, considering themselves "survivors" of the trauma of psychiatric care. Examples of widely used models include the Wellness Recovery Action Plan (WRAP) Program founded by Marianne Copeland, which offers patients a "toolbox" on how to deal with such issues as triggers and warning signs of impending illness (Copeland, 1999). Recent research has shown benefits of self-management models with improvement in symptoms, quality of life, and hope (Slade et al., 2014).

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Individuals with SSD can be found in many health care settings. They also represent a large portion of patients served in the public mental health system across the United States. Due to the severity of acute exacerbations of psychosis associated with these disorders, their hospitalization rate is three times greater than the general Medicare population. In the last decade, Medicare costs per patient

per year were 80% higher for this population compared with the general Medicare population (Feldman, Bailey, Muller, Le, & Dirani, 2014). Many individuals with SSD also have comorbidities, including substance abuse, diabetes, and cardiovascular and respiratory disease. As a result, patients often can be encountered in general medical facilities, hospital emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with SSD. **Plan of Care 11-1** provides an example.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

Nurses engage in assessment using the interpersonal process, beginning with the initial encounter with the patient. Self-awareness and rapport are essential to establish trust and to develop a therapeutic nurse–patient relationship. These elements provide the foundation to allow assessment to progress so that important information about the patient, family, and the patient's signs and symptoms can be obtained.

Self-Awareness

Assessment of a patient with SSD requires the nurse to have a keen sense of self-awareness. Thus, the development of self-awareness is a critical task when working with this population. Persons with thought disorders are often stigmatized, that is, labeled or marked in a negative fashion. The labels frequently associated with SSD include: violent, incompetent, weak, and lazy. Additionally, patients with SSD may experience three levels of stigma as identified by Park, Bennett, Couture, and Blanchard (2012): structural, social, and internalized or self-stigma.

- *Social stigma describes society's negative beliefs, reactions, and behaviors toward people with SSD.*
- *Self-stigma refers to the internalization of society's negative beliefs where persons with SSD begin to see themselves as incompetent or weak and expect social rejection.*
- *Structural stigma refers to the political, economic, and historical structures that reinforce stigma, such as the inability of persons with SSD to hold public office or obtain professional licensure in some states.*

All three types of stigma present barriers for persons with SSD and influence how they may be perceived within a therapeutic relationship as well. **Consumer Perspective 11-1** provides insight into what it is like to experience schizophrenia from the patient's viewpoint.

When beginning to work with this population, the following questions are helpful in promoting self-awareness:

1. How do I feel about an adult, physically healthy person who receives government assistance and has never worked?
2. How do I react when the person I am interviewing has a strong body odor, disheveled clothing, and is passively uncooperative?
3. How do I feel if the person I am admitting to the hospital came there directly from the county jail?

Unlike other illnesses, SSD may elicit feelings of alienation in others rather than sympathy toward the individual suffering from the disorder. Certainly, the association of these disorders with violence, often fueled by popular media, contributes to those feelings of alienation. However, some suggest that the lack of empathy directed at those with mental illness is a result of the difficulty encountered in putting oneself in the place of the victim and in perceiving the sometimes bizarre behavior as a genuine illness. It is easy to empathize with someone with cancer or diabetes because individuals can imagine themselves in those circumstances, but they cannot see themselves as subject to "madness" (Torrey, 2006). The effect of this is to avoid contact with afflicted persons, thereby interfering with the nurse–patient relationship. In turn, this can add to feelings of isolation, inferiority, and social stigma for the person experiencing SSD.

Although identifying personal reactions can be uncomfortable, it is necessary to avoid adding to a patient's self-stigma when entering into a therapeutic relationship. Strategies for empowerment can be implemented to minimize the stigmatization for persons with SSD within the therapeutic relationship. These strategies include seeking concordance rather than compliance, fostering shared decision making, and approaching treatment as a process of developing a mutually agreed-upon successful treatment plan (Tusaie & Fitzpatrick, 2013).

Patient-Centered Care and Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) Concepts

Rapport

Developing adequate rapport is essential for an effective assessment. Persons with SSD may be quite stressed and anxious during the assessment experience, especially if they are being admitted to an inpatient facility or are being admitted to treatment involuntarily. Because SSD is a chronic disease, unless it is the initial presentation, the

PLAN OF CARE 11-1: THE PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Disturbed sensory perception (auditory); related to neurological dysfunction; manifested by difficulty in cognitive processing and maintaining focus of attention.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate a reduction in delusional thinking and hallucinations.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Approach the patient in a calm, nonthreatening manner; demonstrate a caring and accepting attitude	Demonstrates caring and acceptance, which helps to foster trust, minimize self-stigma associated with the condition, and promote sharing of information
Maintain adequate interpersonal space between self and the patient	Respecting the patient's interpersonal space helps to minimize anxiety and threats the patient may be feeling
Ensure the environment is safe and patient is free of hazards	Ensuring a safe environment is necessary to prevent injury related to disordered thinking
Administer prescribed antipsychotic agents; reinforce use of prescribed therapies, such as cognitive behavioral therapy	Antipsychotic agents help to control the positive and/or negative symptoms of the disorder; other therapies such as cognitive behavioral therapy help to promote reality-based thinking
Assess the patient for hallucinations and delusions; evaluate the content of the hallucinations	Assessing for disordered thinking provides information about context of the thinking from which to develop appropriate interventions
Acknowledge the existence of the delusions and hallucinations without reinforcing them; inform the patient that the nurse does not share the patient's perceptions	Acknowledging their presence validates what the patient is experiencing without confirming their reality; knowing that the nurse does not share the patient's perception may increase the chance that the patient will begin to question the "realness" of the experience
Work with the patient to determine what the patient is feeling with the delusion; redirect patient to current reality	Focusing on the feelings of the delusion aids in fostering the understanding that the delusion(s) is (are) not real; redirecting the patient refocuses on the here and now
Encourage the patient to discuss feelings related to the hallucinations instead of acting on those feelings	Discussing feelings of the hallucinations refocuses the patient on the reality and reduces the risk of acting on them

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 11-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDER

Employ reality-based diversional activities as much as possible	Participating in reality-based activities provides distraction and focuses thinking away from the delusions
Encourage the patient to connect the feelings with the delusions and hallucinations	Understanding the emotional connection can help the patient identify similar feelings in the future that can be addressed, thus helping to prevent delusions and hallucinations from recurring
Continue to monitor the patient for recurrence of delusions and hallucinations; provide supervision and surveillance in the least restrictive environment	Continuing to monitor the patient for recurrence is necessary to ensure the patient's overall safety
Encourage the patient to report any delusions or hallucinations to staff or others	Reporting of delusions or hallucinations provides opportunities to intervene early and prevent possible bizarre or violent behavior
Employ reality-based diversional activities as much as possible	Participating in reality-based activities provides distraction and focuses thinking away from the delusions

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for other-directed or self-directed violence related to lack of impulse control, command hallucinations, paranoia, agitation, aggressiveness

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate control of behavior to remain safe, without harm to self or others

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient for indicators suggesting potential for harm to self or others, such as irritability, intimidation, restlessness, shouting or loud voices, or overt threats; ensure the safety of the patient and others	Identifying indicators of potential harm allows for early intervention
Question the patient directly about "voices" telling him or her to harm self or others	Understanding the nature of command hallucinations helps in determining the appropriate level of supervision needed
Minimize the patient's exposure to stimuli; keep environment calm, quiet, with little distraction; remove all hazardous items from the patient's environment	Limiting stimuli helps to prevent overwhelming the patient, which could lead to increased anxiety and agitation; removal of items reduces the risk of use if behavior escalates

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 11-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDER

Assist patient in identifying signs and symptoms of increasing anxiety and in using measures to reduce anxiety and agitation when they occur; suggest the use of physical activity, talking about feelings, or asking for medication	Being able to identify signs and symptoms promotes early intervention; using measures such as physical activity or talking provides an outlet for reducing anxiety without harming self or others
Work with patient to employ strategies such as behavior modification to control impulses associated with delusions and hallucinations	Using behavior modification reinforces a positive method of dealing with delusions and hallucinations
Ensure the development of a safety plan if behavior escalation occurs; ensure a unified approach by reviewing the safety plan with the patient and all others involved Contract with the patient for no self-harm	Having a safety plan is necessary to reduce the risk for all involved; employing a unified approach emphasizes expectations, demonstrates control over the situation, fosters participation in care, and promotes safety Using a no-harm contract emphasizes expectations, fosters participation in care and feelings of control over the situation, and promotes safety
If behavior escalation occurs, place the patient in the least restrictive environment; move others away from the area of escalation	Using the least-restrictive environment is necessary to protect the patient's rights; moving others away protects their safety

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Impaired social interaction related to paranoia and delusional thinking; manifested by inability to trust others and sustain relationships

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will begin to interact with others

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Institute measures, such as antipsychotic agents and psychotherapy, to control delusions	Controlling disordered thinking is needed before the patient can begin to engage socially
Assist the patient in talking about feelings related to public- and self-stigma associated with disorder and delusions	Verbalizing feelings helps to provide insight into underlying problems interfering with social relationships
Work with the patient to understand the acceptable limits involved with relationships	Understanding the limits involved with relationships is necessary for the patient to engage in a successful interaction

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 11-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDER

Assist the patient in using social skills training; break skills down into small discrete steps; encourage the use of role-playing, social modeling, and social reinforcement	Using social skills training gradually introduces the patient to appropriate methods for developing social relationships for eventual mastery of critical social skills
Encourage practice of skills, emphasizing patience; provide feedback about performance	Practicing promotes the likelihood of success with a skill that takes time to develop; providing feedback promotes learning and fosters positive feelings about success
Help the patient in developing an initial single social relationship, emphasizing the need for honesty and respect	Developing an initial single social relationship permits the patient to focus on one interaction at a time and prevents the patient from becoming overwhelmed; encouraging honesty and respect is necessary to facilitate trust

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 11-1: A PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA

Sandy Jeffs has lived with schizophrenia for 33 years. Here she tells how she battles to get through every day:

Every day I wake up with a mantra: "Top myself or eat breakfast." So far I have been waking up and eating breakfast.

I was just 23 when diagnosed with schizophrenia. It was terrifying, like a death sentence. It was seen as a psychiatric cancer.

But being diagnosed meant treatment started and I was given medication and psychological help.

I was unraveling and very unwell. One night I left my friend's house and walked the streets feeling every light was on me and someone was after me with a knife. I ended up being committed to a hospital.

My main symptoms are voices. They are real and as loud as you and I are talking. They are powerful, relentless, and they persecute me. They have a life of their own; they are different genders and personalities. I hate them and they hate me.

I just hope one day I get to have the last word. In the past four years I have been unwell and I hear them most days. At night I hear them so I listen to Beethoven on my MP3.

They say terrible things like, "You are a whore, Satan's whore." Once they told me food and drink was the devil's food so I fasted for a week.

When you go into a psychotic episode the voices take over and your thinking is confused. Your delusions become reality. I haven't worked but have been on a disability pension.

I have published poetry books and I do a lot of public speaking about schizophrenia.

(http://www.dailytelegraph.com.au/news/national/sandy-jeffs-on-what-its-like-to-livewith-schizophrenia/story)

patient is likely to have been through the process of assessment previously, and those experiences may influence the patient's attitude in the current situation.

The goal is to begin the development of the therapeutic relationship during this assessment process. In this therapeutic encounter, the nurse communicates caring and acceptance of the patient as a worthy human being. This acceptance is the first step in developing trust. Throughout the interactions, the nurse should be consistent in communication and continue to provide support, building the relationship over time.

When assessing a patient with schizophrenia, nurses need to be self-aware and to establish rapport with the patient to prevent the stigma associated with this disorder from interfering with the assessment and development of the therapeutic relationship.

Environmental Management

When meeting with the patient, allow for adequate interpersonal space during the assessment process. Arranging space for safety, comfort, and privacy is important. Approach the person in a calm and reassuring manner. It may be desirable to break up the assessment process over several sessions depending on the person's ability to attend to the task. Mental health assessments often include questions that may be uncomfortable for persons with an acute psychosis, so priority setting is important. Brief, focused assessments may be necessary. In addition, be consistent and follow through on comments, suggestions, or promises, which will help foster a sense of trust. Be alert for signs of agitation or fear, which can impact the patient's safety.

Health History and Examination

The priority during the first encounter with the patient is assessment for suicidal or homicidal ideation, command hallucinations, current medications, and/or physical health problems or injuries. Questions related to these issues are the most critical to ensure the patient's safety.

As appropriate, a detailed assessment is initiated. It should include a description of the presenting problem. Use a broad-opening statement such as "Tell me what brought you to the clinic" to elicit information. From there, obtain the following: a family history including mental illness diagnoses; a medical history and current treatments; use of legal and illegal substances; a psychiatric history including hospitalizations and treatment modalities; a personal history including information on education, employment, spiritual, and cultural influences; interpersonal relationships; a history of trauma or abuse; and a legal history. In addition, assess for suicidal, homicidal, aggressive, or self-harm tendencies with each encounter in an outpatient setting and at least once a shift in an inpatient setting. Such detail is necessary to collaboratively formulate a uniquely personal treatment plan.

Assessment of the patient's current symptoms is important. Use a methodical, attentive approach to ensure that the information obtained is complete. SSD is a complex and chronic disorder with an extremely wide variation in the presentation of symptoms. Thus, be knowledgeable of the typical signs and symptoms and be alert for their appearance. Complete a mental status examination, making sure to assess mood, affect, speech, perceptual disturbances, thought process and content, sensorium, cognition, judgment, and insight. Throughout this examination, be alert for positive and negative symptoms of SSD (**Table 11-2**). Keep in mind that negative symptoms are blamed for much of the disability of SSD and are less amenable to standard treatment protocols such as pharmacotherapy.

There are no specific laboratory findings associated with SSD. At times, patients may experience associated medical syndromes. For example, persons with SSD are prone to ingest excessive amounts of fluids and may develop water intoxication, which causes electrolyte imbalances. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), a complication of the use of antipsychotics, will cause elevations in creatinine phosphokinase (CPK). Thus, laboratory testing may be used to address these problems.

The psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to use a broad opening statement to obtain information from the patient about his or her current status. Throughout the assessment, the nurse is vigilant in observing positive and negative symptoms of schizophrenia.

Two other medical conditions often associated with SSD are metabolic syndrome and diabetic ketoacidosis. Interest in these two conditions increased as it became evident that second-generation antipsychotic drugs induced metabolic syndrome in many persons with SSD and diabetic ketoacidosis in a smaller but significant

TABLE 11-2: POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SYMPTOMS OF SSD

POSITIVE SYMPTOMS	DEFINITION/DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLES
Hallucinations	A sensory experience not caused by external stimuli. Can be auditory (most common), visual, olfactory, gustatory, or tactile	*Auditory:* Hearing voices, music, animal sounds, mechanical noises such as clock ticking *Visual:* Seeing blood, people, or insects *Olfactory:* Smelling feces or putrefication *Gustatory:* Metallic taste or blood *Tactile:* Crawling insects or being beaten
Delusions	Firmly held false beliefs involving the self, interpersonal relationships, or the environment	*Grandiosity:* Woman believes she is pregnant with a messiah *Persecution:* Man believes he is being targeted by mafia hit man *Reference:* Woman believes story line on soap opera is about her *Somatic:* Man believes his brain has dissolved *Thought broadcasting:* Man believes coworkers know about his intrusive homosexual fantasies though he has not revealed them *Control:* Woman believes dentist implanted a device in her mouth that directs her activities
Disorganized speech	The outward sign of disorganized thinking. Speech can be disorganized in a variety of ways. It can be oblique, incompletely related, or literally incomprehensible. Communication is impaired	*Tangential:* When asked his home address, a man describes the bus route he took to the clinic, the people on the bus, and the stores near his home *Loose association:* "Breakfast at eight. Eight sisters and all are married like Maryann, Sister Maryann teaching children penmanship…" *Clanging:* "I slept, kept, swept …" *Echolalia:* Nurse says "Time for vitals then dinner." Client answers "Vitals and dinner, dinner, dinner …"
Disorganized behavior	Behavior that is not goal directed, which leads to difficulties in activities of daily living. This also may include catatonic excitement, rigidity, or stupor	Client paces from one end of hall to the other, touching each doorknob *Excitement:* Hyperactive, assaultive, driven *Rigidity:* Sits straight up in chair with left hand planted firmly on top of head for hours *Stupor:* Lying in bed, not responsive to surroundings
Disorganized thought	May be single most important symptom. Contributes to the burden of disability	Indecisive, poor problem solving, concrete thinking, thought blocking, difficulty planning and initiating activities
NEGATIVE SYMPTOMS	**DEFINITION/DESCRIPTION**	**EXAMPLES**
Affective flattening	Limited range of emotion and little interpersonal connectivity such as poor eye contact	Woman describes brutal rape with no emotion
Alogia	Sometimes referred to as poverty of speech and is characterized by brief, bland, minimalist replies	Man replies "okay" to all requests/statements and only with prompting during a 30-minute conversation about seeking a new apartment
Avolition	Limited ability to plan and organize goal-directed activities	Woman subsists on crackers and tea though she has sufficient resources and transportation to go to the supermarket
Anhedonia	Loss of interest in formerly pleasurable activities	Formerly artistic young woman stops her beloved jewelry making. Does little but smoke and stare out the window

SSD, schizophrenia spectrum disorders.

number. **Evidence-Based Practice 11-1** highlights a study addressing weight gain associated with metabolic syndrome and use of second-generation antipsychotic agents. Additionally, later studies have documented persons with SSD die up to 25 years earlier than the general population from preventable disorders hastened by unhealthy lifestyles and lack of access to primary care (Yasamy et al., 2014). Nurses need to be aware of the possibility of associated medical problems to advocate for and ensure adequate care. Recent studies also demonstrate that nurses working as care managers make a significant difference in meeting the health care needs of the SSD population (Druss et al., 2010). One recent study is highlighted in **Evidence-Based Practice 11-2**.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Identifying and planning the needs for the person with SSD depends on multiple factors including the person's current status and the resources available. Persons with SSD comprise some of the most vulnerable populations in our society. In homeless samples, an estimated 11% of individuals have a diagnosis of schizophrenia (Foster, Gable, & Buckley, 2012). Priority needs often include safety, nourishment, shelter, and medical care. Cooperating or committing to active mental health treatment may be weeks or months down the road once the nurse is able to establish a therapeutic relationship with the patient with SSD.

Awareness of illness is another factor. While some persons with SSD are acutely aware that they have a problem, others may seem quite oblivious. That decreased awareness of illness, termed *anosognosia*, is a common manifestation and actually a neurological symptom distinct from denial of illness. It complicates planning because the individual does not see a need to engage in the treatment process because "there is nothing wrong with me—I don't need medicine." According to Leherer and Lorenz (2014), treatment aimed at improving insight could have a tremendous positive impact on the outcome of the disease.

Community resources also must be considered. Psychiatric-mental health treatment systems in the United States today typically are significantly underfunded. Nationwide, state hospital bed numbers dropped 14% between 2005 and 2010 (Treatment Advocacy Center, 2012). Recent massive cuts to mental health services have impacted treatment services. Between 2009 and 2011, states have cumulatively cut more than $1.8 billion from their budgets for mental health services (NAMI, 2011). Subsequently, due to this lack of funding, many of the evidence-based practices for treating SSD are unavailable.

Recently, the push toward empowerment for persons with SSD has received increased support at the grassroots level. In addition, individuals with SSD are becoming more aware of themselves and their role in managing their illness in relation to their individual life goals. Recognizing, affirming, and collaborating with the personal strength and resilience exercised by persons with SSD is a critical part of the planning process (Deegan, 2010).

Due to the varying assessment findings noted and the wide range of problems faced by patients with SSD, several nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Disturbed sensory perception related to disordered thinking, difficulty in cognitive processing of information, and difficulty in maintaining focus of attention*
- *Impaired social interaction related to inability to trust, paranoia, and delusional thinking*
- *Self-care deficit related to inability to manage routine daily activities, thought disturbances, and inattention*
- *Social isolation related to lack of trust, impairment in processing interpersonal stimuli (e.g., maintaining eye contact), or overassessment of threat from others*
- *Risk for injury related to lack of impulse control and command hallucinations*
- *Risk for self- or other-directed violence related to lack of impulse control, command hallucinations, paranoia, and lack of trust*

These nursing diagnoses also will vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. For example, the person with SSD with acute psychosis may have disturbed sensory perception, self-care deficit, and risk for violence simultaneously. During periods of remission, nursing diagnoses such as diversional activity deficit, loneliness, or chronic low self-esteem may be the priority areas to be addressed. However, nurses need to remember that disorders of thought or cognition are recognized as the most disabling aspect of the disorder and they persist through acute illness and interepisodic periods.

Patients with schizophrenia often present with a wide range of symptoms. Therefore, nursing diagnoses appropriate for a patient must reflect this variation.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 11-1: INTERVENTION FOR SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDERS

STUDY

Beebe, L. H., & Smith K. (2010). Feasibility of the walk, address, learn and cue (WALC) intervention for schizophrenia spectrum disorders. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 24*(1), 54–62.

SUMMARY

The authors conducted a feasibility study involving a group of 17 individuals with SSD. A specific intervention, called the Walk, Address sensations, Learn about exercise, and Cue exercise behavior (WALC) intervention, which was designed to motivate exercise in the elderly, was adapted for the population being studied. Adaptations included low-intensity stretches, exercise education, and exercise cues. Approximately two thirds of all groups were attended and nearly half of participants attended at least 75% of the groups. The authors concluded that follow-up studies are needed to evaluate how this intervention may impact future exercise behavior in the hopes of identifying "evidence-based interventions to increase exercise in this group."

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This study is of particular interest for psychiatric-mental health nurses because it combines interventions deemed appropriate for persons with SSD. It promotes exercise, which may address the metabolic side effects of second-generation antipsychotics and may potentially combat feelings of depression common in persons with SSD. The intervention also addresses potential problems in executive functioning when planning a complex activity through the use of information, education, and cues. These interventions provide growing evidence about effective measures aimed at potentially combating weight gain and promoting quality of life in persons with SSD.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *Other than walking, what other types of exercise might a psychiatric-mental health nurse suggest to include as part of a similar exercise program?*
2. *How might a patient's delusions or hallucinations affect the implementation of such an exercise program?*

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, for the nursing diagnosis of impaired social interaction, the nurse would first develop a therapeutic interpersonal relationship with the patient. Gradually, as the patient becomes ready, the nurse would assist the patient to engage in interactions with others, such as other patients, family members, or other staff members.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

When implementing interventions for patients suffering from a chronic disorder such as SSD, timing and pacing of effective interventions are critical. During an initial episode of psychosis or during a relapse, persons are often hospitalized in a community facility such as a psychiatric unit of a general hospital or a residential crisis facility.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 11-2: EFFECTS OF A PLANNED INTERVENTION ON INDIVIDUALS WITH SEVERE MENTAL ILLNESS

STUDY

Druss, B., von Esenwein, S., Compton, M., Rask, K., Zhao, L., & Parker, R. (2010). A randomized trial of medical care management for community mental health settings, The Primary Care Access, Referral, and Evaluation (PCARE) study. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 167*(2), 151–159.

SUMMARY

The researchers conducted a quasi-experimental study involving 407 individuals with severe mental illness. The individuals were randomly assigned to one of two groups: a management intervention group and a usual care group. The individuals in the management intervention group received communication and advocacy with medical providers, health education, and support in navigating the system. Findings revealed that there were significant differences between the groups when evaluated after 12 months. The group receiving the management intervention showed significant improvement in the mental component of the evaluation. This group also received more services.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This study is important for psychiatric-mental health nurses because it shows that specific interventions can foster improvement in the functioning of individuals with severe mental illness. Poor quality of care contributes to excess morbidity and mortality among patients with severe mental illness. Psychiatric-mental health nurses, when applying the therapeutic use of self and the interpersonal process, play a key role in advocating for and teaching patients. This study helps to underscore the positive effects of such activities.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *What other areas of the therapeutic nurse-patient relationship would be appropriate to use for further study and research?*
2. *This study addresses patients with severe mental illness. How would this study apply to patients with SSD?*

The initial interventions focus on promoting safety and establishing a therapeutic relationship as a means to reassure persons with SSD and their families. For example, constant monitoring of the patient is often indicated. This may mean that the patient would have to be placed in an environment in which the amount of stimuli is controlled, such as a secluded area, or it may require a one-to-one monitoring by a staff member. The priority safety needs reflect the assessment findings, such as evidence of command hallucinations or thoughts of harm to self or others. **How Would You Respond? 11-1** provides an example of implementation for a patient with a thought disorder.

The nurse intervenes in positive symptoms through medication, communication, and environmental manipulation as needed. Immediately establishing

communication with families is desirable. Expression of support and empathy as well as providing information for family members are primary tasks for nurses employed in inpatient and residential facilities. **Therapeutic Interaction 11-1** provides a sample interaction that applies the interpersonal process.

Patients receiving treatment involuntarily in the hospital or community setting require special attention. At times, patients may need coerced treatment of persons with SSD to ensure the safety of the person and the community. However, this may produce resentment and influence individuals to avoid treatment in the future. Based on research, the perception of coercion can be reduced for persons with SSD who are subject to involuntary treatment by promoting the process of procedural justice (MacArthur Research Network, 2001). The elements of procedural justice are transparency (patient is kept apprised of situation), the belief that those involved in treatment have benevolent

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 11-1: A PATIENT WITH A THOUGHT DISORDER

Jerry Brown is a 30-year-old White male who was transferred from the county jail to an acute care psychiatric unit. Jerry was arrested outside his parents' home about 3 days ago after an attempt to break into the house at 2 a.m. When the nurse begins the admission process, Jerry confides that his parents are agents of the Demon Saboteur. Per Jerry, the Demon who has been living in his parents' home for the past year is now "transmigrating through the wires" to Jerry's apartment and is communicating threats to Jerry through the television. The reason Jerry was breaking into the house was to "cut the wires" to stop the Demon Saboteur's activities.

Jerry is dressed in a jail jumpsuit and appears fatigued with bags under his eyes and hollow cheeks. He admits that he has not been sleeping. He also appears not to have showered or brushed his teeth for several days. He is hypervigilant but accepts an offer of juice and crackers. Jerry answers questions noting he has never worked and is receiving government benefits. He lives alone in a small apartment in the city. Jerry admits he does not take prescribed drugs as he feels he is not ill so he does not need medicine. He graduated from high school and attended a community college for one semester. His jail records indicate that he has had four arrests in the last 3 years for similar incidents involving his parents' home and once for possession of cannabis. He has also been hospitalized twice but was lost to treatment after discharge. Jerry allows you to notify his younger sister that he is in the hospital though he does not want to talk to her. In conversation with his sister you find that Jerry's parents love him but fear him when he is acutely ill. His sister is also very interested in his welfare but feels torn between her brother and her exasperated parents. She is relieved that he is out of jail but wishes somehow this cycle could be stopped. Jerry is started on antipsychotic medication, specifically a second generation antipsychotic. After several days of therapy, Jerry begins to discuss his life outside the hospital. He discusses his solitary existence and loss of contact with people his own age.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *How do Jerry's assessment findings correlate to the diagnostic criteria for schizophrenia, paranoid type?*
2. *What would be two priority nursing diagnoses for Jerry?*
3. *How would psychoeducation play a role in Jerry's treatment?*
4. *How would you respond to his sister's concern about her brother?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 11-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Jerry is demonstrating delusions involving paranoid thoughts that the Demon is out to get him. He also exhibits hypervigilance and has had difficulties with work and social functioning, as evidenced by his four arrests and living alone. Physically, he shows signs of inadequate sleep and hygiene. Priority nursing diagnoses would include disturbed sensory perception, impaired social interaction, deficient self care, and risk for violence.

With the start of antipsychotic therapy, Jerry would need to learn about the drug therapy, as well as its actions, frequency, duration, and intended effects. Psychoeducation would also focus on monitoring for side effects, especially extrapyramidal symptoms and neuroleptic malignant syndrome. As he is taking a second-generation agent, he would need to be cautioned about possible orthostatic hypotension and to be instructed in measures to reduce the risk of metabolic syndrome. Jerry and his family also need education about the disorder and possible relapse, especially if medication adherence is a problem.

The nurse would use therapeutic communication skills to elicit exactly what the sister's concerns are and then formulate a plan to address these concerns. The nurse would develop a therapeutic relationship with the sister to foster a sense of understanding about her brother's condition and how best to support him.

motives (nurses and other providers are interested in the patient's well-being), and the opportunity for the patient to have a "voice" in the process (to be able to state his or her position and feelings) (MacArthur Research Network, 2001). Thus, the nurse promotes active participation by the patient in the elements of his or her care, a key aspect of the therapeutic relationship and interpersonal process. Nurses are in a unique position, especially in the inpatient setting, where most involuntary treatment episodes are initiated, to promote procedural justice and thereby reduce the perception of coercion.

As patients become stable, nurses modify the interventions to focus on the patient's transition back to the community and outpatient treatment. Interventions at this juncture include collaboration in promoting treatment adherence and relapse prevention through actions such as psychoeducation; promoting organized behavior; setting realistic social, vocational, and personal goals; and making referrals to appropriate community resources for both the patient and family. Nurses play a major role in patient and family psychoeducation. **Patient and Family Education 11-1** provides suggestions for teaching.

Antipsychotic agents are commonly prescribed for patients to control their symptoms. However, patients often have difficulty adhering to the medication regimen. Nurses play a key role in working with patients to facilitate adherence to a prescribed medication regimen. Studies suggest that noncompliance rates with oral antipsychotic medication is close to 50%. Such nonadherence contributes significantly to relapse (Pyenson, Goldberg, Iwasaki, Boyarsky, & Dirani, 2013).

An important consideration when implementing care for a patient with schizophrenia is to ensure adherence to the prescribed medications. Patient and family psychoeducation is a key intervention.

Research has identified multiple routes to increased adherence but the interventions that were consistently most successful were those which involved concordance, or shared decision making (Tusaie & Fitzpatrick, 2013). Nurses can promote one or more of these routes with the patient. The first is the use of long-acting antipsychotic medications. While the number of agents in this category is limited, this method simplifies the medication regimen for many patients. Nurses can advocate for a longer acting medication if the patient and nurse determine that this is a valuable option. A second method that may be helpful in promoting adherence is to empower the patient to take responsibility for staying well in order to meet the patient's personal goals. For example, if the patient wishes to finish his or her education, it may be effective to discuss how medication may assist in eliminating or minimizing the disturbing experience of

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 11-1: INITIAL INTERACTION WITH A PATIENT WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA

Mr. P. is an 80-year-old man who was admitted to the inpatient psychiatric nursing unit last evening with a primary diagnosis of schizophrenia.

Nurse: "Good morning, Mr. P. I am Nurse Jones and I am here to assist you today."	Introduces self in order to identify role and begin establishment of rapport
Mr. P.: "I do not need your help" (pacing around room). "I have all of the help I need from my parents; they are here with me" (referring to others who are not present).	Denying need for help; delusional about parents being in the room
Nurse: "Mr. P., I am here to help you. I would like to walk with you. Will you come with me to walk in the hallway?"	Continues to develop rapport; focuses on positive behavior of pacing as a means to channel anxiety and energy
Mr. P.: "You are just like my children, trying to control me."	Expresses distrust of others, specifically the nurse and his children
Nurse: (stays quietly with patient while he continues to pace in the room)	Building trust by not rejecting patient or his behavior
Nurse: "Mr. P., now it is time for breakfast. Will you come with me to the breakfast room?"	Continues to build trusting relationship with patient
Mr. P.: (walks out of room with nurse, but does not say anything to her; walks with her to breakfast room)	Display of beginning of relationship on which trust can be built

hallucinations, thereby allowing the patient to concentrate on studies. A third route to medication compliance may be tailoring adherence cues to the person's lifestyle; for example, linking medication to a routine everyday activity, such as brushing teeth. Reminder and monitoring techniques utilizing Internet and mobile phone technologies are promising and under investigation (Castle & Buckley, 2011).

Evaluation: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation is a process that begins immediately after the initiation of each intervention and continues through each episode of care. The evaluation process in nursing is dictated by the collaborative goals and outcomes set in the planning phase of the nursing process. It is essential to gather the objective data regarding a patient's status in each identified problem area such as self-care, communication, thought and perceptual alterations, role functioning, and interpersonal/family relationships. It is equally important to discuss the patient's perceptions of his or her response to treatment and to ascertain if the outcomes have been met. Coming to a mutual understanding about what has been most helpful or not helpful during this time is also desirable. When mental health professionals do not understand the patient's point of view, they run the risk of making assumptions about the acceptability of treatment options. In such circumstances, the opportunity for appropriate treatment negotiation may be lost and lead to relapse if the patient's concerns are not heard or not addressed during evaluation.

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 11-1: LIVING WITH SCHIZOPHRENIA

- Know the signs and symptoms of a relapse (changes in mood, affect, speech, attention, memory, behavior), or the development of hallucinations or delusions. Call your health care provider as soon as you or your family notices any changes.
- Follow the instructions for taking the medication exactly as prescribed.
- Use a calendar, pillbox, or another method to help you remember when to take the medications.
- If you experience dry mouth from the medication, try sips of water or sugarless candies or gum.
- Change positions gradually; wait a few minutes before standing up after lying down or sitting.
- Notify your prescriber if you develop tremors, restlessness, strange movements, or other unusual symptoms.
- Call your prescriber immediately if you develop severe muscle rigidity or a fever.
- Do not drink alcohol when taking medications; check with prescriber before taking any over-the-counter medications or herbal preparations.
- Set realistic goals for yourself.
- Use the coping strategies that you were taught, especially during times of stress or crisis, such as changing the environment, reducing stimuli, and maintaining social support.
- Keep appointments for scheduled therapies.
- Obtain support from local community agencies.

Self-reflection on the part of the mental health professional is an equally important part of the evaluation. As the interpersonal relationship develops, it will be important for the professional to acknowledge his or her own thoughts, associations, and feelings related to the patient. At times, the professional may need to "step back" from the encounter to reflect and develop awareness of the influence that he or she is having on the therapeutic relationship. Self-reflection is facilitated by consultation with professional colleagues in the mental health field.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Thought disorders involve disturbances in thinking, reality orientation, and social involvement. Schizophrenia spectrum disorders (SSD) are thought disorders of which schizophrenia is a specific diagnostic category.
- Thought disorders include schizophrenia and its four subtypes: schizophreniform disorder, schizoaffective disorder, delusional disorder, and brief psychotic disorder.
- A patient with schizophrenia typically exhibits positive and negative symptoms. Positive symptoms include: delusions, hallucinations, disorganized speech, and disorganized behavior. Negative symptoms include: affective flattening, alogia, avolition, ambivalence, and anhedonia.
- The etiology of SSD is unknown. The greatest known risk factor is genetics; however, environmental factors such as maternal stress and intrauterine

(*cont.*)

SUMMARY POINTS (*CONT.*)

infection may also play a role. Psychosocial factors contribute to exacerbations of the disorder in genetically vulnerable individuals.

- Evidence-based practice treatment strategies most applicable to persons with SSD include psychotropic medication, cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), family psychoeducation, assertive community treatment (ACT), integrated dual diagnosis treatment (IDDT), illness self-management training, repetition and supported employment.
- Pharmacological therapy involves the use of antipsychotic agents, typically classified as first- or second-generation antipsychotics. These agents do not cure the disorder but they are effective in managing the symptoms of the disorder. Patient adherence to the medication regimen is essential to ensure the effectiveness of therapy.
- There is an intense stigma associated with all mental illness but especially SSD. To work effectively with persons with SSD, psychiatric-mental health nurses must recognize their reactions to the population and how these reactions could influence the therapeutic relationship.
- Integration of the interpersonal process throughout the nursing process helps to promote positive patient outcomes. Effective prioritized interventions in acute illness are critical. Families also require significant education and support.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A patient is brought to the emergency department by an emergency medical team because the patient was behaving violently. When talking with the patient, the nurse notices that he suddenly shifts the conversation from one topic to another but the topics are completely unrelated. The nurse would document this finding as which of the following?

a. Delusion
b. Hallucination
c. Neologism
d. Loose association

2. The nurse is conducting an interview with a patient diagnosed with schizophrenia. Throughout the conversation, the patient responds to questions and statements with, "okay." The nurse interprets this as reflecting which of the following?

a. Affective flattening
b. Alogia
c. Avolition
d. Anhedonia

3. After reviewing information related to the symptoms of schizophrenia, a group of nursing students indicate the need for additional review when they identify which of the following as a positive symptom?

a. Delusion
b. Hallucination
c. Affective flattening
d. Echolalia

4. A patient is diagnosed with schizophrenia, catatonic type. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess? Select all that apply.

a. Stereotyped movements
b. Mutism
c. Absence of delusions
d. Echopraxia
e. Odd beliefs

5. The nurse is preparing to assess a patient with acute psychosis for the first time. Which of the following would be a priority?

a. Providing a gentle touch to calm the patient
b. Taking as long as necessary to gather all the information
c. Focusing on the type of delusions the patient is experiencing
d. Assessing for indications of suicidal ideation

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

6. A patient is receiving a second-generation antipsychotic agent. Which of the following might this be?

- **a.** Chlorpromazine
- **b.** Haloperidol
- **c.** Fluphenazine
- **d.** Aripiprazole

7. A patient with schizophrenia is about to start medication therapy with clozapine. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do?

- **a.** Obtain a baseline white blood cell count
- **b.** Monitor the patient for high fever
- **c.** Suggest the use of hard candy to alleviate dry mouth
- **d.** Assess for cogwheel rigidity

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Psychiatric Association. (2006). *Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with schizophrenia* (2nd ed.). Arlington, VA: Author.

Bach, P., Hayes, C., & Gallop, R. (2012). Longterm effects of brief acceptance and commitment therapy for psychosis. *Behavior Modification, 36*(2), 165–181.

Beavan, V., Read, J., & Cartwright, C. (2011). The prevalence of voice-hearers in the general population: A literature review. *Journal of Mental Health, 20*(3), 281–292.

Beebe, L. H., & Smith, K. (2010). Feasibility of the walk, address, learn and cue (WALC) intervention for schizophrenia spectrum disorders. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 24*(1), 54–62.

Campbell, K., Bond, G., & Drake, R. (2011). Who benefits from supported employment: A meta-analytic study. *Schizophrenia Bulletin, 37*(2), 370–380.

Castle, D., & Buckley, P. (2011). *Schizophrenia* (2nd ed.). United Kingdom: Oxford University Press.

Chadwick, D., Hughes, S., Russell, D., Russell, I., & Dagnan, D. (2009). Mindfulness groups for distressing voices and paranoia: A replication and randomized feasibility trial. *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy, 37,* 403–412.

Compton, M. (2010). Mental illness in 2010: Putting the recovery model into practice. *Medscape,* October 15, 1–4.

Copeland, M. (1999). *Wellness recovery action plan.* West Dummerston, VT: Peach Press.

Corstens, D., Longden, E., McCarthy-Jones, S., Waddingham, R., & Thomas, N. (2014). Emerging perspectives from the hearing voices movement: Implications for research and practice. *Schizophrenia Bulletin, 40*(4), S285–S294.

Deakins, S., & McFarlane, W. (2012). Integrated family psychoeducation: Helping families help their loved ones recover. In H. L. McQuistan W. E. Sowers, J. M. Ranz, & J. Feldman (Eds.), *Handbook of community psychiatry.* New York, NY: Springer.

Deegan, P. (2010). *Conspiracy of hope*. Retrieved from www.patdeegan.com/aboutus.html

DeWitte, N., Crunelle, C., Sabbe, B., & Moggi, F. (2013). Treatment for outpatients with comorbid schizophrenia and substance use disorders: A review. *European Addict Research, 20,* 105–114.

Druss, B., von Esenwein, S., Compton, M., Rask, K., Zhao, L., & Parker, R. (2010). A randomized trial of medical care management for community mental health settings, The Primary Care Access, Referral, and Evaluation (PCARE) study. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 167*(2), 151–159.

Evans, F. B. (1996). *Harry Stack Sullivan: Interpersonal theory and psychotherapy*. New York, NY: Routledge.

Feldman, R., Bailey, R., Muller, J., Le, J., & Dirani, R. (2014). Cost of schizophrenia in the Medicare program. *Population Health Management, 17*(3), 190–196.

Ferriera, A. (1961). The etiology of schizophrenia: A review. *California Medicine, 94*(6), 369–377.

Foster, A., Gable, J., & Buckley, J. (2012). Homelessness in schizophrenia. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America, 35,* 717–734.

Gaudiano, B., Herbert, J., & Hayes, S. (2010). Is it the symptom or the relation to it? Investigating potential mediators of change in acceptance and commitment therapy for psychosis. *Behavior Therapy, 41*(4), 543–554.

Hanson, J., Ostergaard, B., Nordentoft, M., & Hounsgaard, L. (2012). Cognitive adaptation training combined with assertive community treatment: A randomized longitudinal trial. *Schizophrenia Research, 135,* 105–111.

Haro, J., Novick, D., Bertsch, J., Karagianis, J., Dossenback, M., & Jones, P. (2011). Cross-national clinical and functional

remission rates: Worldwide schizophrenia outpatient health outcomes (W-SOHO) study. *British Journal of Psychiatry, 199,* 194–201.

Jaaskelainen, E., Juola, P., Hirvonen, N., McGrath, J., Haha, S., Isohanni, M.,…Miettunen, J. (2013). A systematic review and meta-analysis of recovery in schizophrenia. *Schizophrenis Bulletin, 39*(6), 1296–1306.

Jones, C., Hacker, D., Cormac, I., Meaden, A., & Irving, C. B. (2012). Cognitive behavioural therapy versus other psychosocial treatments for schizophrenia. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Review,* (4), Art. No.: CD008712. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD008712.pub2.

Jones, M., & Coffey, M. (2012). Voice hearing: A secondary analysis of talk by people who hear voices. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 21,* 50–59.

Juul, S., & Nemeroff, C. (2012). Psychiatric epidemiology. In T. Schlacpfer & C. Nemeroff (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical neurology* (Ch. 10). London, UK: Elsevier.

Keshavan, M., Nasrallah, H., & Tandon, R. (2011). Moving ahead with the schizophrenia concept: From the elephant to the mouse. *Schizophrenia Research, 127*(1–3), 3–13.

Leherer, D., & Lorenz, J. (2014). Anosognosia in schizophrenia: Hidden in plain sight. *Innovations in Clinical Neuroscience, 11*(5–6), 10–17.

MacArthur Research Network on Mental Health and the Law. (2001). MacArthur Coercion

Malhotra, A., Marder, S., & Weiden, P. (2014). Cognitive impairment in schizophrenia: Understanding prevalence, magnitude and scope. *Current Psychiatry.* Retrieved from http://cdn4.imng.com/fileadmin/qhi/cp/pdfs/FP_WhitePaper_FINAL.pdf

Medalia, A., & Saperstein, A. (2013). Does cognitive remediation for schizophrenia improve functional outcomes? *Current Opinion Psychiatry, 26*(2), 151–157.

Mura, G., Petretto, D., Bhat, K., & Carta, M. (2012). Schizophrenia: From epidemiology to rehabilitation. *Clinical Practice & Epidemiology in Mental Health, 8,* 52–66.

Murray, C., Atkinson, C., Bhalla, K., Birbeck, G., Burstein, R., Chou, D.,…Wulf, S. (2013). The state of US health, 1990–2010: Burden of diseases, injuries, and risk factors. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 310*(6), 591–608.

Nasrallah, H. (2012). Why are metabolic monitoring guidelines being ignored? *Current Psychiatry, 11,* 12.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. (2011). State mental health cuts: A national crisis. Retrieved from http://www2.nami.org/contentmanagement/contentdisplay.cfm?contentfileID=126233

Norden, T., Malm, U., & Norlander, T. (2012). Resource group assertive community treatment (RACT) as a tool of empowerment for clients with severe mental illness: A meta-analysis. *Clinical Practice & Epidemiology in Mental Health, 8,* 144–151.

Padgett, D., Stanhope, V., Henwood, B., & Stefancic, A. (2011). Substance use outcomes among homeless clients with serious mental illness: Comparing housing first with treatment first programs. *Community Mental Health Journal, 47*(2), 227–232.

Park, S., Bennett, M., Couture, S., & Blanchard, J. (2012). Internalized stigma in schizophrenia: Relations with dysfunctional attitudes, symptoms and quality of life. *Psychiatry Research, 205,* 43–47.

Place, C., Foxcroft, R., & Shaw, J. (2011). Telling stories and hearing voices: Narrative work with voice hearers in acute care. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 18,* 837–842.

Pyenson, B., Goldberg, S., Iwasaki, K., Boyarsky, V., & Dirani, R. (2013). A Medicaid and commercial insured claims-based study to estimate improved antipsychotic medication adherence among patients with schizophrenia. *Journal of Behavioral Health Services and Research, 40*(2), 222–233.

Romme, M., & Escher, S. (2012). *Psychosis as a personal crisis.* New York and London: Routledge.

Rosen, C., Grossman, L., Harrow, M., Bonner-Jackson, A., & Faull, R. (2011). Diagnostic and prognostic significance of Schneiderian first-rank symptoms: A 20-year longitudinal study of schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 52,* 126–131.

Ruddle, A., Mason, A., & Wykes, T. (2011). A review of hearing voices groups: Evidence and mechanisms of change. *Clinical Psychology Review, 31,* 757–766.

Sivec, H., & Montesano, V. (2012). Cognitive behavioral therapy for psychosis in clinical practice. *Psychotherapy, 49*(2), 258–270.

Slade, M., Amering, M., Farkas, M., Hamilton, B., O'Hagan, M., Panther, G.,…Whitley, R. (2014). Uses and abuses of recovery: Implementing recovery-oriented practices in mental health systems. *World Psychiatry, 13*(1), 12–20.

Stein, L., & Santos, A. (1998). *Assertive community treatment of persons with severe mental illness.* New York, NY: W. W. Norton.

Sullivan, P., Kendler, K., & Neale, M. (2003). Schizophrenia as a complex trait: Evidence from a meta-analysis of twin studies. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 60,* 1187–1192.

Tandon, R., & Bruijnzeel, D. (2014). The evolving nosology of schizophrenia: Relevance for treatment. In P. Janicak, S. Marder, R. Tandon, & M. Goldman (Eds.), *Schizophrenia: Recent advances in diagnosis and treatment* (Ch. 2). New York, NY: Springer.

Thelander, B. (1997). The psychotherapy of Hildegard Peplau in the treatment of people with serious mental illness. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 33*(3), 24–32.

Thomas, N., Hayward, M., Peters, E., Gaag, M., Bentall, R., Jenner, J.,…McCarthy-Jones, S. (2014). Psychological therapies for auditory hallucinations (voices): Current status and key directions for future research. *Schizophrenia Bulletin, 40*(4), S202–S212.

Thomas, N., Rossell, S., Farhall, J., Shawyer, F., & Castle, D. (2011). Cognitive behavioral therapy for auditory hallucinations: Effectiveness and predictors of outcome in a specialist clinic. *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy, 39,* 129–138.

Torrey, E. F. (1980). *Schizophrenia and civilization.* New York, NY: Aronson.

Torrey, E. F. (2006). *Surviving schizophrenia*. New York, NY: Harper.

Treatment Advocacy Center. (2012). Psychiatric bed numbers plummet to 1850 levels, putting patients, the public at risk. Retrieved from http://www.treatmentadvocacycenter.org/storage/documents/catalysts/fall-2012-catalyst.pdf

Tusaie, K., & Fitzpatrick, J. (2013). *Advanced practice psychiatric nursing.* New York, NY: Springer.

Whitford, H., Degenhardt, L., Rehm, J., Baxter, A., Ferrari, A., Erskine, H.,…Vos, T. (2013). Global burden of disease attributable to mental and substance use disorders: Findings from the global burden of disease study 2010. *Lancet, 382*(9904), 1575–1586.

World Health Organization. (2013). *Mental health action plan.* Retrieved from apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/89966/1/9789241506021_eng.pdf?ua=1

Yasamy, M., Cross, E., McDaniell, E., & Saxena, S. (2014). Living a healthy life with schizophrenia: Paving the road to recovery. *WHO: Living With Schizophrenia.* Retrieved from www.who.int/mental_health/world-mental-health-day/paper_wfmh.pdf

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the common disorders affecting mood
2. Discuss the history and epidemiology of mood disorders
3. Analyze current theories related to the etiology of bipolar and related disorders, including proposed neurobiological and psychodynamic theories
4. Identify the controversial aspects of psychopharmacology as applied to this population
5. Discuss suicide and its relation to bipolar and related disorders

CHAPTER 12

BIPOLAR AND RELATED (MOOD) DISORDERS

Jeffrey S. Jones
Vickie L. Rogers

6. Describe common nursing assessment strategies for individuals with mood disorders
7. Demonstrate effective therapeutic use of self and application of the nursing process when caring for an individual with mood disorders and experiencing suicidal thoughts
8. Explain various treatment modalities including those that are evidence-based practice (EBP) for the person demonstrating signs and symptoms of mood disorders and/or is suicidal

KEY TERMS

Depression
Hypomania
Mania
Melancholia
Mood
Serotonin syndrome
Suicidal ideation

Most people experience transient periods of depressed moods in their life. Fluctuations in **MOOD** (a person's overall emotional status), especially during times of loss, change, and other social stressors, are normal as one's mood is not static. However, fluctuations occurring for a sustained period of time or a depressed mood that does not change are suggestive of a more serious problem. A mood disorder, a term frequently used interchangeably with depressive or bipolar disorders, predominantly involves a persistent or chronic disturbance in mood. Mood disorders also influence a person's thoughts, emotions, and behavior. Some of these disorders include major depressive disorder; persistent depressive disorder (dysthymia); disruptive mood dysregulation disorder; premenstrual dysphoric disorder; bipolar disorder types I and II, and cyclothymic disorder; and substance/medication-induced bipolar and depressive disorder. The more common ones you are likely to encounter are discussed later in the chapter. Psychiatric-mental health nurses need to be able to understand these different types of mood disorders when caring for individuals.

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of mood disorders. Suicide, often a symptom of mood disorders, is also addressed. Current proposed psychosocial and biological/etiological influences of mood disorders are addressed along with current treatment modalities. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a nursing plan of care for a patient with a depressive disorder who is suicidal.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

Mood disorders were described as early as the fourth century BCE in Greek medical literature. Hippocrates used the term **MELANCHOLIA** (black bile) to describe sad or dark moods noted in patients with depression and the term **MANIA** to describe mental disturbances such as elevated mood, grandiosity, difficulty with attention span, and sometimes even psychosis.

During the 17th and through the 18th centuries, Europeans continued to use the term *melancholia* for a range of mental illnesses. The depressed were less burdensome to the community, especially in large crowded cities, and were usually ignored. Thus, they suffered alone with no hope of a cure. However, manic and psychotic persons were more likely to be locked up in "insane or lunatic asylums." Conversely, the wealthy frequented the famous European spa towns to "take the waters" in the hope that these experimental treatments would relieve their symptoms.

By the end of the 19th century, practitioners had begun to experiment with hypnosis as a treatment for "nervous" complaints. Influenced by this method, Sigmund Freud proposed that childhood experiences, particularly with the mother figure, and buried memories were the cause of **DEPRESSION** in adult life. So he used hypnosis to assist the patient to unlock these suppressed memories in order to deal with the effects of the past experience on their present life (Freud, 1920). Hypnosis as a treatment remained popular in Europe and the United States during and after World War II. By 1938, electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) was being used because it was found to lessen depressive symptoms. It is still used today although the method of delivery has changed drastically. During the 1950s, psychopharmacology became prominent with the trial of antidepressants. Tricyclic antidepressants were first (i.e., Elavil), followed by the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) such as Parnate. The MAOIs are rarely used today due to risk and potential life-threatening side effects. In the late 1970s, serotonin reuptake inhibiters (SSRIs) such as Prozac were developed. Newer medications targeting various other neurotransmitters, such as dopamine and norepinephrine, are constantly being tested and approved for use in treatment of mood disorders, such as the serotonin/norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs; i.e., Cymbalta). Talk therapies, such as cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), are still used to treat affective disorders. New studies validate that talk therapy is as effective, if not greater in efficacy than medication, for treatment of mood disorders (DeRubeis, Siegle, & Hollon, 2008).

During the 1940s, electroconvulsive therapy was used to treat depression. The use of medications to treat affective disorders arose during the 1950s and continues through today.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Statistics and prevalence for affective disorders according to the National Institute of Mental Health's (NIMH) website (NIMH, 2013) and derived from the 2004 U.S. census reveal that approximately 20.9 million American adults, or about 9.5% of the population of the United States aged 18 years and older in a given year, have a mood disorder, with an average age of onset of 30 years. Statistics related to specific affective disorders show the following:

- *Depressive disorders often co-occur with anxiety disorders and substance abuse disorders.*
- *Major depressive disorder is the leading cause of disability in the United States for individuals between the ages of 15 and 44 years, affecting approximately 14.8 million*

American adults, or about 6.7% of the U.S. population aged 18 years and older in a given year.

- *While major depressive disorder can develop at any age, the median age at onset is 32 years.*
- *Major depressive disorder is more prevalent in women than in men.*
- *Dysthymic disorder affects approximately 1.5% of the U.S. population aged 18 years or older, or approximately 3.3 million American adults, with an average age of onset of 31 years.*

- *Bipolar disorder affects approximately 5.7 million American adults, or about 2.6% of the U.S. population aged 18 years and older in a given year, with a median age of onset of 25 years.*
- *Approximately 33,300 (about 11 per 100,000) people died by suicide in the United States in 2006.*
  - *More than 90% of people who kill themselves have a diagnosable mental disorder, most commonly a depressive disorder or a substance abuse disorder.*
  - *The highest suicide rates in the United States are found in White men older than age 85 years.*
  - *Four times as many men as women die by suicide; however, women attempt suicide two to three times as often as men (NIMH, 2013).*

Major depressive disorder is a leading cause of disability in the United States, affecting greater numbers of women than men.

DIAGNOSTIC ASPECTS AND KEY FEATURES

Major Depressive Disorder

A patient with major depressive disorder has experienced a change from previous functioning with evidence of a depressed mood or decreased interest or pleasure in his or her usual activities. This change in mood lasts most of the day for more than 2 weeks. The patient can report this mood change or it can be observed by others. The change in mood can be so severe and prolonged that it begins to affect daily functioning, and work, school, and personal/family life begin to suffer. Hopelessness can set in, which can lead to suicidal ideation, or the thoughts of ending one's own life, in an effort to stop the emotional pain (American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013).

Persistent Depressive Disorder (Dysthymia)

Dysthymic disorder involves depressive symptoms that are chronic and must be present for at least 2 years for adults or 1 year for children and adolescents. Dysthymia is considered a milder form of depression. The patient experiences a depressed mood, which can be self-reported, such as "feeling sad or down in the dumps," or observed. This diagnosis differs from major depression in that these individuals usually can maintain adequate functioning in work and school, and so on. However, because of the chronic low-level mood, they can be perceived as negative or isolative, thus impacting social aspects of their life (APA, 2013).

Bipolar I Disorder

Bipolar I disorder is characterized by the occurrence of one or more manic episodes or mixed episodes (mania and major depression), and often one or more major depressive episodes. Mixed episodes may present as extreme irritability and/or agitation at times. A patient experiencing a mixed episode may also be experiencing psychotic features and will most likely require hospitalization to prevent harm to self or others. This type of bipolar disorder is what used to be termed *manic depression*. That is because of the extremes in the mood. This type of mood disorder is classified as bipolar because it has a cycle and ranges significantly from one extreme to the other. This individual may be stable for several weeks or several months. The cycle usually begins with a shortening of the sleep cycle until the individual is full of energy and requires very little if any sleep. They may be up for days. As they become manic they may begin doing bizarre things such as booking trips to Mexico at 3:00 a.m. or deciding to re-wallpaper their whole house on the spur of the moment. They may become hypersexual and engage in reckless behavior. They may spend money impulsively and put themselves and family in a financially compromised position. Then the mania passes (usually after 3–7 days) and the depression sets in. Now, filled with remorse and embarrassment and feeling a sense of being out of control, the person swings into a deep depression, so profound that he or she usually cannot even function. The person may not go to work or school and may literally shut himself or herself in the bedroom for days until the depressed episode passes (APA, 2013).

Bipolar II Disorder

Bipolar II disorder is characterized by recurring/chronic depressive episodes and at least one hypomanic (not a full-blown mania) episode. The patient has never experienced symptoms that meet the criteria for a manic or mixed

episode. These individuals are often misdiagnosed with major depression because the hypomanic episodes are misinterpreted as getting better. Most often, the person experiences bursts of energy and increased feelings of motivation. This lasts for a short period of time, 2 to 4 days. Then the person returns to a depressive state (APA, 2013).

Cyclothymic Disorder

Cyclothymic disorder is defined by chronic fluctuations of mood from numerous periods of both depressive symptoms and **HYPOMANIA**. A diagnosis is not made unless the patient has been free of major depression, manic, or mixed episodes for at least 2 years. This individual rarely experiences a state of "normal." His or her moods chronically shift from a little bit up, then a little bit down, over and over again, on and on and on (APA, 2013).

Suicide

Probably nowhere else in the area of mental health will you be challenged on a personal level other than when dealing with the subject matter of suicide. The mere mention of the word triggers opinions, emotions, and beliefs. Most people have been touched by this phenomenon, either in that they knew someone who took his or her own life (a family member or a friend), or have found themselves in that dark passageway of depression and have had thoughts of "I wonder if things would be better if I were not here." The act of ending one's own life has been around since the beginning of time. Beliefs and opinions around this differ from culture to culture and generation to generation. Some feel very strongly that this is a sin, based on a theological basis, while others may grant that in cases of terminal illnesses a person has a right to chose when to end the suffering. Several states now allow physician-assisted euthanasia in such cases. **Box 12-1** explains what we know about this phenomenon as of today.

People who kill themselves exhibit one or more warning signs, either through what they say or what they do. The more warning signs, the greater the risk.

ETIOLOGY OF AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

At this time in history there is no single scientific theory that explains the cause of mood disorders. Many theorists suggest multiple causes as an explanation for the development of affective disorders.

Psychosocial Theories

A number of psychosocial/psychological theories suggest that psychodynamic influences play a role in causing affective disorders. For example, learned helplessness theory is based on studies performed by Seligman (1992) dealing with dogs and avoidable shock (see Chapter 10 for an expanded discussion of Seligman's work). Cognitive theory (Beck, Rush, Shaw, & Emery, 1979) is based on the premise that negative and faulty thoughts lead to negative feelings and behaviors. Freud and other therapists have posited that anger turned inward can lead to depression. He believed that a loss of a love object, either real, such as through death, or perceived, such as by rejection or loss of value to the person, led to melancholia. Childhood temperament is thought to be a factor. Stress for prolonged periods of time has been studied as a factor leading to affective disorders. Several of these theories are summarized in **Table 12-1**.

Biological Theories

There are numerous theories suggestive of a biological basis for depression and bipolar disorders. While none of them have been fully accepted as a definitive or exact cause, research continues to provide us with new knowledge about these illnesses and some are discussed in the following section.

Neurobiological Influences

The most common theories addressing neurobiological influences involve the neurotransmitters serotonin, dopamine, and norepinephrine. It is proposed that patients who are experiencing affective disorders, especially the depressive symptoms, have an altered level of these neurotransmitters or dysfunction at the receptor sites. However, the exact role of the neurotransmitters is not known. In fact, many of these neurobiological theories are now under scrutiny. There are very little actual scientific data to support that depression has anything to do with altered levels of serotonin, norepinephrine, or dopamine. To date there are no double-blind, placebo-controlled studies to support these theories. There is also mounting evidence that by and large the various classes of antidepressant medications do nothing more than produce varying degrees of anesthesia, which in turn is then interpreted as "correction of the chemical imbalance." The person believes he or she is better because the person no longer experiences the discomfort of depression and anxiety; rather, what actually happens is that the person is "numb" to the discomfort. Whatever is driving the symptoms (relationship problems, troubled childhood, daily stressors, etc.) still exists. Now the client just does not care (Whitaker, 2011).

BOX 12-1: SIGNS OF POSSIBLE PENDING SUICIDAL ACTIVITY

TALK

If a person talks about:

- Killing himself or herself
- Having no reason to live
- Being a burden to others
- Feeling trapped
- Unbearable pain

BEHAVIOR

A person's suicide risk is greater if a behavior is new or has increased, especially if it is related to a painful event, loss, or change.

- Increased use of alcohol or drugs
- Looking for a way to kill himself or herself, such as searching online for materials or means
- Acting recklessly
- Withdrawing from activities
- Isolating from family and friends
- Sleeping too much or too little
- Visiting or calling people to say goodbye
- Giving away prized possessions
- Aggression

MOOD

People who are considering suicide often display one or more of the following moods.

- Depression
- Loss of interest
- Rage
- Irritability
- Humiliation
- Anxiety (www.afsp.org)

HERE IS WHAT YOU CAN DO AS A NURSE

Many suicidal individuals report feeling alone and disconnected from others. Remembering and thinking about Travelbee's continuum of suffering (as illustrated in Chapter 2), you could begin by focusing on the following points:

1. Establish and maintain a therapeutic relationship with the client. It is imperative that you come across as honest and real.
2. Manage your own feelings (transference and countertransference) about the subject matter and be nonjudgmental.
3. Convey a calm, caring attitude and try to understand from an empathic standpoint where the client's emotional pain is coming from.
4. Take the time you need to be able to sit and talk. Sometimes just allowing the client to cathart (vent) and cry about the pain is enough to avert a crisis.
5. Explore issues of safety (does the person have a plan and the means to carry it out?). You will only learn this once you have gained his or her trust.
6. Do you need to take immediate steps to avert an attempt (put on suicide watch, remove potentially harmful objects, etc.)? If so, this must be done as an act of caring, not as a punishment!

American Foundation for Suicide Prevention (2015).

TABLE 12-1: SELECTED PSYCHODYNAMIC INFLUENCES ASSOCIATED WITH MOOD DISORDERS

THEORY	DESCRIPTION
Learned helplessness (Seligman, 1992)	Harnessed canines exposed to a sustained electrical shock could not escape. Additional experiments followed with the same dogs, unharnessed and exposed to the electrical shock; despite being free to escape or avoid the shock these canines did not Adaptation of experiments to humans: added the human dimension of attribution of meaning (cognitive explanations) to negative events in a person's life using an optimistic versus pessimistic lens (self-explanation) Proposed that prior inescapable negative events, negative cognition, and locus of control are important contributors to depression in humans
Cognitive theory (Beck et al., 1979)	Cognitive distortions (negative expectations of environment, self, and future) as the underlying mechanism leading to negative, defeatist attitudes Distortions develop because of a defect in the development of cognition, leaving the person to feel inadequate and worthless Pessimistic and hopeless attitude for the future
Psychoanalytical theory (Freud, 1920)	Melancholia developing after loss of an identified love object, leaving the person feeling ambivalent Rage resulting from the loss directed inward resulting in depression

Neurobiological theories of depression are driven largely by the pharmaceutical companies and there is very little evidence to support their validity.

Genetics

Most researchers agree that there seems to be a familial connection for developing mood disorders. Depressive disorders tend to "run in families," and an association has been established. Much research has been conducted regarding genetics. Numerous investigators have documented that susceptibility to a depressive disorder is twofold to fourfold greater among the first-degree relatives of patients with mood disorder than among other people. The risk among first-degree relatives of people with bipolar disorder is about six to eight times greater. Some evidence indicates that first-degree relatives of people with mood disorders are also more susceptible than other people to anxiety and substance abuse disorders (Tsuang & Faraone, 1990). So while genetics continues to be an explosive field for research, some still question: "Is it nature or is it nurture?" Are children from depressed families more likely to show signs of depression due to genetic predisposition (nature) or is this due to learned behavior (nurture)?

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Primarily on inpatient units, an interdisciplinary-team approach is used to treat patients with mood disorders regardless of the setting. Nurses' role in the treatment team varies from facility to facility but usually is of major importance as they are often the professionals who spend the most time with the patient.

Various treatment options are available for patients who are diagnosed with mood disorders or who have suicidal thoughts. They include but are not limited to individual therapy, group therapy, psychopharmacological options, inpatient treatment, and outpatient partial- or day-treatment programs. There are even some Internet support groups that some find helpful. Chapter 25 goes into this topic in depth. **Evidence-Based Practice 12-1** highlights a comparison of face-to-face and Internet therapy related to self-disclosure. Research has indicated that although all options are viable depending on the severity of the illness, the inclusion of psychotherapy or "talk therapy" usually results in the best outcomes (NIMH, 2009).

Psychopharmacology

Psychopharmacology is a treatment option usually reserved for patients suffering from moderate to severe depression and/or bipolar I or II disorder. Medications used to treat patients with affective disorders include antidepressants and mood stabilizers:

- *Tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline, imipramine, amoxapine, and doxepin*
- *SSRIs such as fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, and escitalopram*
- *SNRIs such as duloxetine and venlafaxine*

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 12-1: INTERNET THERAPY

STUDY

Rogers, V., Quinn Griffin, M., Wykle, M., & Fitzpatrick, J. (2009). Internet versus face-to-face therapy: Emotional self-disclosure issues for young adults. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 30*, 596–602.

SUMMARY

With the emerging use of the Internet for therapy treatment options, the researchers conducted a study about young adults. A convenience sample of 328 young adult Internet users was recruited from Facebook to complete an online survey. They were asked their preference for face-to-face therapy (F2FT) or Internet therapy (IT). The F2FT group consisted of 263 young adults; the IT group had 65 members. There were no significant differences between the groups on the background characteristics of age, gender, marital status, ethnicity, level of education, income, location, frequency of logging onto the Internet, and therapy history. The Emotional Self-Disclosure Scale (ESDS) was used to assess the eight emotional self-disclosure subscales. Findings revealed significant differences between the two groups on four of the eight subscales (depression, jealousy, anxiety, and fear) indicating that the F2FT group would disclose these emotions to a therapist more frequently than the IT group would. Additionally, 80% of the participants reported a preference for F2FT over IT. An important finding was that 60% of the participants reported a history of F2FT in their past.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This study was one of the first to explore preferences for treatment for young adults. Additionally, the study provided information about young adults' willingness to disclose emotional issues with their therapist in both formats, with F2FT participants demonstrating an increase in self-disclosure. This ability for self-disclosure has been linked with positive outcomes in therapy.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *Which of the two methods would you prefer and why?*
2. *What consequences might occur with the use of IT?*

- *Selective reuptake inhibitors (also known as serotonin 2 antagonist reuptake inhibitors [SARIs]) such as trazodone*
- *Selective atypical antidepressants such as bupropion and mirtazapine*
- *MAOIs such as tranylcypromine, phenelzine, and isocarboxazid (rarely used)*
- *Mood stabilizers such as lithium and anticonvulsants (carbamazepine, divalproex sodium, and lamotrigine)*

Drug Summary 12-1 highlights the major drugs and associated implications for the nursing process.

Treatment of the Depressive Disorders

Antidepressants are often prescribed for treatment of depression. However, they must be used cautiously in patients with bipolar disorders because they can promote the development of a manic episode. In fact, even if a client has no underlying bipolar disorder, the activating effects of

DRUG SUMMARY 12-1: COMMON ANTIDEPRESSANTS USED TO TREAT AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
COMMON TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANTS (TCAs)	
amitriptyline (Elavil) amoxapine (Asendin) clomipramine (Anafranil) desipramine (Norpramin) doxepin (Sinequan) imipramine (Tofranil) maprotiline (Ludiomil) nortriptyline (Aventyl, Pamelor)	■ Urge the patient to take the prescribed drug at bedtime to reduce the risk of injury related to sedation ■ Offer suggestions for the patient to combat anticholinergic effects, such as dry mouth (using sugarless hard candy or gum) and constipation (high fiber intake and moderate physical activity) ■ Advise the patient to change positions slowly to minimize the effects of orthostatic hypotension ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Monitor the patient for therapeutic effectiveness of the drug. Anticipate the need to advocate for a change in drug if not effective ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
COMMON SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SSRIs)	
fluoxetine (Prozac) paroxetine (Paxil) sertraline (Zoloft) fluvoxamine maleate (Luvox) citalopram (Celexa) escitalopram (Lexapro)	■ Advise the patient to take the drug in the morning; if sedation occurs, encourage the patient to take the drug at bedtime ■ Monitor the patient for signs of serotonin syndrome such as fever, sweating, agitation, tachycardia, hypotension, and hyperreflexia ■ Inform the patient about possible sexual dysfunction with the drug; if this occurs and causes the patient distress, advocate for a change in the drug ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 12-1: (*CONT.*)
COMMON ANTIDEPRESSANTS USED TO TREAT AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
COMMON SEROTONIN/NOREPINEPHRINE REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SNRIs)	
desvenlafaxine (Pristiq) duloxetine (Cymbalta) venlafaxine (Effexor and Effexor XR)	■ Advise the patient taking desvenlafaxine or duloxetine to have blood pressure monitored because the drug may increase blood pressure ■ Instruct the patient taking venlafaxine to take the drug with food and a full glass of water; if the patient has difficulty swallowing capsules, suggest the patient open the capsule and sprinkle contents on a spoonful of applesauce and take immediately; reinforce the need to follow the capsule with a full glass of water ■ Encourage the patient to check with the prescriber before taking any other prescription or over-the-counter drugs ■ Warn the patient of possible sedation and dizziness and the need to avoid hazardous activities until the drug's effects are known ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
COMMON SELECTIVE REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SARIs)	
trazodone (Desyrel)	■ Work with the patient to develop a schedule that minimizes the risk of dizziness; suggest taking drug after meals or light snack to promote absorption and decrease risk of dizziness ■ Inform the male patient taking trazodone to report a persistent painful erection immediately ■ Encourage the patient to check with the prescriber before taking any other prescription or over-the-counter drugs ■ Warn the patient of possible sedation and dizziness and the need to avoid hazardous activities until the drug's effects are known ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 12-1: (*CONT.*)
COMMON ANTIDEPRESSANTS USED TO TREAT AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
COMMON SELECTIVE ATYPICAL ANTIDEPRESSANTS	
bupropion (Wellbutrin and Wellbutrin XL) mirtazapine (Remeron)	■ Inform the patient that he or she may experience possible increased restlessness, agitation, insomnia, and anxiety at the start of therapy ■ Advise the patient taking mirtazapine to watch for signs of infection such as fever and sore throat, and to report immediately if they occur ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take up to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Encourage the patient to check with the prescriber before taking any other prescription or over-the-counter drugs ■ Warn the patient of possible sedation and dizziness and the need to avoid hazardous activities until the drug's effects are known ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
COMMON MONOAMINE OXIDASE INHIBITORS (MAOIs)	
tranylcypromine (Parnate) phenelzine sulfate (Nardil) isocarboxazid (Marplan)	■ Instruct the patient to avoid foods containing tyramine to prevent hypertensive crisis; assist the patient in identifying foods to avoid ■ Remind the patient that he or she must avoid tyramine foods for 2 weeks after MAOI therapy is discontinued ■ Review potential drugs that may interact with MAOIs and encourage the patient to avoid these ■ Teach the patient about signs and symptoms of hypertensive crisis such as headache, stiff neck, sweating, nausea, and vomiting; emphasize the need to seek medical attention immediately if any occur ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Develop a plan with the patient for scheduling the drug doses; advise the patient to take the last dose of the day earlier in the day than at bedtime to reduce the risk of insomnia

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 12-1: (*CONT.*)
COMMON ANTIDEPRESSANTS USED TO TREAT AFFECTIVE DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
COMMON MONOAMINE OXIDASE INHIBITORS (MAOIs) (*CONT.*)	
	■ Offer suggestions to combat dry mouth ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
COMMON MOOD STABILIZERS	
lithium carbonate (Lithobid, Lithotabs, Lithonate) carbamazepine (Tegretol) divalproex sodium (Depakote) oxcarbazepine (Trileptal) lamotrigine (Lamictal)	■ Lithium management ■ Work with the patient to develop a schedule for laboratory testing of drug levels to promote compliance; remind the patient that the level must be obtained 12 hours after the last dose has been taken ■ Discuss with the patient the signs and symptoms of lithium toxicity: 1. Levels 1.5 to 2.0 mEq/L: blurred vision, ataxia, tinnitus, persistent nausea and vomiting, severe diarrhea 2. Levels 2.0 to 3.5 mEq/L: excessive dilute urine output, increasing tremors, muscle irritability, psychomotor retardation, mental confusion 3. Levels greater than 3.5 mEq/L: impaired level of consciousness, nystagmus, seizures, coma, oliguria or anuria, arrhythmias, cardiovascular collapse ■ Collaborate with the patient how to ensure adequate sodium intake; reinforce the need for six to eight large glasses of fluid each day; urge the patient to avoid caffeine beverages, which increase urine output ■ Advise the patient to increase fluid intake if sweating, fever, or diuresis occurs ■ Suggest the patient take the drug with food if gastrointestinal upset occurs ■ Collaborate with the patient to develop a schedule for blood-level testing to promote adherence ■ Institute safety measures to reduce the risk of falling secondary to drowsiness or dizziness ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens

some antidepressants, such as Wellbutrin, can cause severe anxiety or agitation.

Each group of drugs is associated with side effects. For example, tricyclic antidepressants often cause sedation, orthostatic hypotension, and anticholinergic effects such as dry mouth, blurred vision, constipation, and urinary retention. The anticholinergic effects of this group are often cited as a reason for stopping the medication. Another group of antidepressants, SSRIs, are associated with sedation, nausea, and sexual dysfunction including decreased libido and erectile dysfunction. In addition, SSRIs interact with numerous medications placing the patient at risk for serotonin intoxication or **SEROTONIN SYNDROME** due to an overactivity of serotonin or disruption in the neurotransmitter's metabolism. This is a life-threatening situation that requires discontinuation of the SSRIs. A patient taking an MAOI is at risk of developing a hypertensive crisis if he or she ingests foods that are high in the dietary amine tyramine (**Box 12-2**) or takes medications whose action mimics the sympathetic nervous system, such as albuterol or amphetamines.

Treatment of the Bipolar Disorders

Mood stabilizers including lithium and anticonvulsants are commonly prescribed for patients with bipolar disorders (see **Drug Summary 12-1**). Lithium is considered the gold standard for treatment of bipolar disorder. However, the margin of safety between therapeutic effectiveness and toxicity is narrow. Therapeutic drug levels range from 0.5 mEq/L to 1.2 mEq/L. Toxicity occurs when drug levels are greater than 1.5 mEq/L. The risk of toxicity is also increased if the patient reduces his or her salt intake or experiences significant diaphoresis or increased urinary output without adequate replacement. The normal sodium balance is upset, leading to increased reabsorption of lithium by the kidneys, thus increasing drug levels.

Psychopharmacological agents used to treat patients with mood disorders include antidepressants, mood stabilizers, and antipsychotics.

Antipsychotics are also used to treat bipolar disorders and sometimes used in management of treatment-resistive depressive disorders. Please refer to Chapter 11 for information on the use of antipsychotics and nursing implications.

Patient and family education is needed for those patients starting antidepressant therapy. For example, if the patient is prescribed an MAOI, dietary restrictions about foods high in tyramine need to be addressed. For the patient taking lithium, he or she needs instruction about maintaining an adequate salt and fluid intake as well as frequent monitoring of blood levels. Successful education requires that patients be compliant, nonsuicidal, and willing to learn. **Patient and Family Education 12-1** highlights important information for patients taking antidepressants and their families.

Patients taking lithium and Depakote need to have their drug levels monitored closely to reduce the risk of toxicity.

BOX 12-2: FOODS HIGH IN TYRAMINE FOR NURSING MANAGEMENT OF MAOIs

- Aged cheeses including dishes made with aged cheese (except cottage cheese, cream cheese, ricotta cheese, or processed cheese)
- Aged or fermented meats such as pepperoni, salami, summer sausage, beef logs
- Fava bean pods
- Tofu (bean curd)
- Overripe fruit: ripe avocados or figs
- Tap or microbrewery beer: sherry or chianti
- Sauerkraut
- Pickled herring
- Soy sauce or soybean condiments
- Yogurt
- Sour cream
- Brewer's yeast: yeast extract
- Monosodium glutamate

Electroconvulsive Therapy

ECT is another treatment option usually reserved for patients who have not responded to medications and other treatment modalities. Before ECT is administered, a patient is given a muscle relaxant and receives short-acting anesthetic. Electrodes are placed on one or both temporal areas for delivery of the electrical impulse. The electrical impulse induces seizure activity. The patient does not consciously feel the electrical impulse administered in ECT. After ECT, the patient may experience transient confusion and disorientation. Memory loss also may occur but this is only temporary.

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 12-1: TAKING ANTIDEPRESSANTS

- Avoid use of alcohol and illicit substances as they can interact with your medication.
- Take the medication exactly as prescribed.
- If you miss a dose, do not double up on the next dose.
- Do not stop the drug suddenly because you might experience withdrawal symptoms.
- Use sugarless hard candy or gum or frequent sips of water if you experience dry mouth.
- Avoid activities at first that require you to be alert, such as driving, because you may experience drowsiness or dizziness until you see how the medication affects you.
- Check with your prescriber before taking any other medications, including over-the-counter medications and herbal preparations.
- Be alert for signs of worsening depression, mania, or suicide. Call your prescriber immediately if you experience any of these.
- Keep appointments for follow-up care and any lab testing that is scheduled.
- Be aware of national and local support groups for patients and family members.

A patient typically will undergo ECT several times a week, and often will need to take an antidepressant or mood stabilizer to supplement the ECT treatments and prevent relapse. Although some patients will need only a few courses of ECT, others may need maintenance ECT, usually once a week at first, then gradually decreasing to monthly treatments for up to 1 year. Some patients have been able to receive outpatient maintenance ECT early in the morning, and go to work in the afternoon. Research has indicated that after 1 year of ECT treatments, patients showed no adverse cognitive effects (NIMH, 2013).

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

CBT is one form of psychotherapy or "talk therapy" that has been used successfully in depression. CBT is based on the assumption that the way an individual perceives a situation influences his or her thoughts, emotions, and behaviors. In addition, persons may be influenced by core beliefs that result from life experiences. CBT helps patients restructure their perceptions, thereby resulting in changes in the patients' behavior and emotions. It emphasizes a focus on the present, structures sessions through the use of homework and exercises, and is time-limited.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Patients with mood disorders may be seen in a variety of settings such as acute-care settings, day-hospitalization programs, community and outpatient centers, and long-term care facilities. Patients who are suicidal, homicidal, or experiencing psychotic symptoms require the highest level of care such as close supervision in an acute-care setting. Many individuals who have comorbidities such as substance abuse, diabetes, cardiovascular, or respiratory disorders may develop mood disorders such as major depression. As a result, patients often can be encountered in general medical facilities, emergency rooms, and specialty clinics (see Chapter 20). Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with affective disorders. **Plan of Care 12-1** provides an example of a patient with major depressive disorder experiencing suicidal thoughts.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

Part of learning how to apply therapeutic use of self for the nurse generalist is to spend time evaluating one's own self-perceptions, values, and beliefs. Nursing faculty may have students participate in value-clarification exercises to facilitate this introspective journey. Therapeutic use of self, while different from those skills learned from a physical skills standpoint, such as inserting a Foley catheter or changing a wound dressing, is nonetheless a valuable nursing tool and skill. Some would argue that it is the most important skill that defines nursing as separate from other disciplines. Recall from Chapter 2 that Travelbee identified five phases of the nurse–patient relationship: original

PLAN OF CARE 12-1: THE PATIENT WITH MAJOR DEPRESSION AND SUICIDAL IDEATION

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for suicide; related to impaired judgment, feelings of hopelessness and despair; risk for self-directed violence; related to self-harm ideation.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate control of behavior without harm to self.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Approach the patient calmly and nonjudgmentally; demonstrate an accepting attitude	Using a calm, nonjudgmental, accepting approach promotes trust and the development of the nurse–patient relationship and fosters feelings of the patient's self-worth
Assess patient for thoughts of suicidal ideations (with or without plan) at each shift while awake, and periodically throughout the day; ask the patient directly about thoughts of or plan for suicide	Assessing provides a baseline from which to individualize a plan; frequent assessment is needed to ensure the patient's safety; direct questioning is required to identify risk
Assess the patient for indicators suggesting potential for harm to self such as increasing withdrawal, tearfulness, excessive rumination; ensure the safety of the patient	Identifying indicators of potential harm allows for early intervention
Contract with the patient for no self-harm; assess if the patient can verbally agree to notify staff if feeling unsafe. If unable, institute suicide precautions including one-to-one supervision	Establishing a no-harm contract emphasizes expectations, fosters participation in care and feelings of control over the situation, and promotes safety; suicide precautions promote safety
Minimize the patient's exposure to stimuli; keep environment calm, quiet with little distraction; remove all hazardous items from the patient's environment	Limiting stimuli helps to prevent overwhelming the patient, which could lead to increased depression, hopelessness, and powerlessness; removing items reduces the risk and the "means" of use if suicidal thoughts occur
Administer antidepressant medications as ordered; ensure that the patient has swallowed medication	Using antidepressant agents assists in addressing signs and symptoms associated with depression and suicidal ideation; ensuring that the patient has swallowed medication prevents possible hoarding for overdose

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 12-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH MAJOR DEPRESSION AND SUICIDAL IDEATION

Be alert for changes in patient's behavior as antidepressant therapy begins to exert effect and reassess for possible suicidal ideation	Reassessing for suicidal ideation when antidepressant therapy becomes effective is important because the patient now potentially has the energy to complete the act
Educate and evaluate for possible medication side effects; assist patient in advocating for medication changes due to potential side effects	Evaluating and educating about side effects is important to ensure compliance with therapy and to prevent untoward reactions
Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings related to situation and discuss problem causing distress; point out maladaptive thinking: provide the patient with a realistic appraisal of the situation	Encouraging verbalization of feelings helps the patient identify underlying feelings related to self-harm; discussing the problem causing the distress brings the issue into the forefront to promote a realistic reframing of the problem

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Powerlessness; related to perceived lack of control of life circumstances; manifested by indecisiveness and dependency on others in decision making.

Hopelessness; related to intense feelings of negativity about self and circumstances; manifested by no sense of future orientation and loss of pleasure in life.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: The patient will verbalize the beginning of feeling in control of the situation. The patient will begin participation in own care and decision making.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient in identifying the underlying reasons for feeling hopeless and powerless; encourage the patient to discuss feelings; listen actively in an accepting nonjudgmental manner	Expressing feelings helps to identify the patient's view of the situation and plan appropriate interventions; actively listening provides opportunities for validation and clarification and helps promote trust and the nurse–patient relationship
Help the patient identify more realistic means for addressing the underlying situation; point out strengths and positive aspects about the patient	Identifying more realistic interpretations or ways to address the situation promotes feelings of control and self-confidence; pointing out strengths promotes feelings of self-worth
Work with the patient to identify situations that can precipitate feelings of helplessness and lack of control; assist the patient in interpreting situations objectively	Identifying precipitating situations can facilitate the patient's ability to control them; objectively interpreting situations fosters control over them

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 12-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH MAJOR DEPRESSION AND SUICIDAL IDEATION

Assess the patient's usual methods for problem solving and decision making; help the patient identify problematic or maladaptive methods; offer suggestions for more adaptive methods; encourage patient participation in care and decision making, addressing one item or issue at a time	Helping the patient change maladaptive methods to adaptive ones promotes feelings of success and control; encouraging patient participation provides the patient with a "voice" and fosters feelings of control; focusing on one item–issue prevents overwhelming the patient and enhances chances of success

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Bathing self-care deficit; related to depressed mood and emotional fatigue; manifested by lack of interest in bathing for over a week.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: The patient will participate in self-care activities, gradually increasing participation until independent

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Determine the patient's level of ability in providing self-care	Determining ability to perform self-care provides a baseline for individualized interventions and future evaluation
Provide assistance with care as necessary, checking with the patient first before giving assistance; break care into steps as appropriate and provide for short rest periods; if necessary, provide clear concrete demonstration of activity	Asking for patient's permission before providing assistance promotes patient control of situation; breaking care into steps, providing demonstration, and providing rest periods reduce the risk of fatigue interfering with the patient's ability to provide care
Work with the patient to establish a routine for care including the time frame for completing the activities; provide the patient with personal supplies	Establishing a routine lessens the energy needed for decision making related to care; providing personal items for care reduces fears and anxieties
Provide the patient with positive reinforcement and recognition for completing activities	Providing positive reinforcement promotes feelings of self-worth and enhances the chances for continued participation, compliance, and success

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

encounter, emerging identities, empathy, sympathy, and rapport (Travelbee, 1971).

As the nurse begins the nurse–patient relationship and meets the patient for the first time, he or she enters the original encounter. Both form first impressions of each other. The nurse is responsible for beginning to establish trust and rapport with the patient. This can be done by showing concern, empathy, and honesty. Pay attention to verbal and nonverbal cues and use therapeutic verbal techniques. Be alert to the possible stigma associated with patients experiencing a mood disorder. Please review Chapter 2 for a recap of use of Travelbee's theory in this clinical situation. **Consumer Perspective 12-1** provides insight from a patient on what it is like to have a bipolar II disorder.

Try to conduct the interview in a private and quiet place where the patient can feel comfortable and safe. Be sure to include a past medical history, including both physical and psychological details. Any underlying physical cause for the mood disorder needs to be ruled out. When assessing the patient with a mood disorder, also include subjective and objective data related to mood; affect; psychomotor functioning; sleeping patterns; appetite; self-care abilities; cognitive functioning; cultural, ethnic, and spiritual factors; and any recent stressors precipitating the episode. Assessment findings may include disturbances in any or all of the above areas. Also, assess for history of past violence, either self-directed and/or other-directed. This information is vital because it can help predict

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 12-1: A PATIENT WITH BIPOLAR II DISORDER

There's an undeniable stigma associated with a psychiatric illness. It's never easy for someone with such a diagnosis to admit it or talk about it, but I feel that the only way health care professionals can truly understand and treat people with psychiatric illnesses is to hear from people like me directly. I have type II bipolar disorder and have been in treatment for 20 years. In that time, I've been on several medication regimens and have been both well controlled and not so well controlled. For the last 10 years, I've been on one medication that keeps my bipolarity well controlled. This medication, coupled with therapy, has allowed me to live as normal a life as someone with my diagnosis can. Over the past few years I've become quite comfortable discussing my illness and how I treat it. It's human nature to be curious, so I want to share my experiences to help you understand how I live with bipolar disorder. I like to think that I live a relatively normal life. I'm married, in school, and worked as a paramedic for 10 years. When I've told friends about being bipolar, they've always acted surprised. I remember one specific reaction where a fellow medic told me "But you seem so normal!" She wasn't the only person who reacted this way to my disclosure.

Receiving a psychiatric diagnosis can seem like a death sentence. When I was finally diagnosed, it felt like my life was coming to an end. There is an unspoken terror that grips you; a fear that you'll always be labeled as "crazy." Thankfully, I've been able to live my life well, albeit making some modifications to accommodate my diagnosis. I have a very understanding wife (a doctoral candidate in psychology no less) who lets me know when I'm slipping back into old habits. She's the only person I can really listen to when I'm hypomanic or depressive. I trust her judgment and when she tells me she's taking me to the psychiatrist, I go without hesitation. I've taken myself off of medication twice in my life, and both times were disastrous. My backslides into bipolarity sans medication were more insidious than I could have imagined. I became the person I always feared I would and pushed those I cared about away from me. Thankfully, my wife convinced me to restart my regimen and got me back on track. I know that I'll never be able to be off my medication and I've come to terms with it. In order for me to live the life I want to, I have learned to make compromises.

As for my day to day, there are many days when I don't even think about being bipolar. It is possible for me to go whole weeks without actively thinking about my diagnosis. I do have a strictly regimented medication schedule, however, and I have to follow it to the letter. It's a small price to pay for my peace of mind (literally). It is possible for those with psychiatric illness to live well; I have firsthand experience.

possible similar behaviors by the patient, especially if hospitalized.

Another key area to assess during the initial encounter on admission is **SUICIDAL IDEATION** (intruding thoughts of harming one's self) or evidence of a suicide plan. This assessment continues as the therapeutic relationship evolves. The nurse needs to ask the patient directly about any thoughts of suicide and if he or she has a past history of suicide attempt. **Therapeutic Interaction 12-1** illustrates an interaction between a patient and a nurse to evaluate for suicidal ideation.

Regardless of how much rapport has been established, assessing for information related to suicide may be

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 12-1: A PATIENT EXPERIENCING SUICIDAL IDEATION

M. is a young adult male who has been diagnosed with major depression. He is admitted to the acute care unit of the psychiatric facility. The nurse is interacting with him to establish his risk of self-harm.

Nurse: "Are you having thoughts of suicide or harming yourself?"	Asking direct assessment question
M.: "Yes, I think about it all the time."	
Nurse: "It must be scary to have these thoughts."	Empathizing with the patient and exploring underlying feelings behind statement
M.: "Yes, these thoughts scare me and are the reason my doctors suggested I come here."	
Nurse: "Do you have a plan to harm yourself or a method to harm yourself?"	Further assessing for plan and, if present, lethality of plan
M.: "I don't want to kill myself. I don't have a plan I just think about being dead so I don't hurt anymore. I just feel hopeless."	
Nurse: "Feeling hopeless is often a symptom of depression. Part of your treatment here will be taking an antidepressant medication along with individual and group therapy."	Educating and explaining what to expect while hospitalized
M.: "I know I can't continue to go on like this so I am willing to try anything."	
Nurse: "So, can I trust that you can and will tell the staff if your thoughts become unmanageable so we can make sure you are safe?"	Validating that the nurse heard the patient and working to develop trust with the patient. Also, clarifying if the patient can tell staff if his thoughts of harm become unmanageable
M.: "Yes, I will tell the staff if I don't feel safe while here. I don't really want to die. I want to get better."	

uncomfortable and anxiety producing. A common myth is that if one brings up the subject, the patient will be more inclined to commit suicide. However, this is inaccurate and the truth is just the opposite. Patients who commit suicide because of their ambivalence can often be assisted by nurses to see an alternative to this desperate act.

Most patients give verbal and nonverbal clues about their intent to commit suicide. Verbal warnings could be statements like: "You won't have to worry about me soon" or "Everything is going to be OK soon." Nonverbal acts are frequently manifested by giving away prized possessions, getting affairs in order such as making wills, or closing out checking accounts. **How Would You Respond? 12-1** provides an example of a patient with a mood disorder who is exhibiting suicidal thoughts.

The nurse needs to assess a patient for suicidal ideation by asking direct questions about suicidal thoughts and any previous attempts at suicide.

If assessment reveals suicidal ideation, safety is paramount. When a patient cannot commit to safety on the unit, the nurse must obtain orders for one-to-one observation, which means a staff member will be present with the patient at all times. The need for this intervention is assessed continuously and the safety of the patient remains the number one priority.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Once a full assessment is completed, the nurse and the patient may be entering the next phase of Travelbee's model, emerging identities. The bond of the relationship is beginning to form and the nurse may be able to proceed to develop an initial plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. As the relationship proceeds, the nurse has to be aware of his or her own sense of empathy and sympathy, the next phases of Travelbee's model. This will affect how the nurse fine tunes the treatment plan (Travelbee, 1971).

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 12-1: A PATIENT WITH DEPRESSION AND SUICIDAL THOUGHTS

Carol is a 24-year-old female being admitted to the acute care psychiatric unit. She has been diagnosed with bipolar I disorder. Carol has no medical conditions or illnesses. During the nursing assessment, Carol states she was treated for bipolar I disorder when she was 18 but did not require hospitalization. Carol was prescribed lithium but stopped taking it about a year ago. She reports that she recently moved to the city to teach secondary school, has a limited support system, and lives alone. Approximately 3 weeks ago, she experienced a burst of energy and was not able to sleep for several days. She states she then started feeling sad, worthless, hopeless, lonely, and guilt about leaving her parent's home. Carol has a blunted affect, is unkempt, and her clothes are dirty. She frequently bursts into tears during her intake. Carol has lost 11 pounds over the past 2 weeks, has no appetite, and has difficulty sleeping. She has missed several days of work this past week due to her not having the "energy to get out of bed." Carol admits to recurrent thoughts of hanging herself but is afraid if she commits suicide she will "go to hell." You are assigned to provide care to Carol.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *How would you describe what Carol is experiencing?*
2. *Does Carol meet the diagnostic criteria for bipolar I disorder? Explain your answer.*
3. *What would you identify as a priority for Carol at this time?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 12-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Based on the findings from the assessment, Carol appears to be experiencing a depressive episode that followed what appeared to be a manic episode as evidenced by not sleeping, burst of energy, then her crying, loss of weight and appetite, difficulty in sleeping, and missing work. Her statement about having no energy provides further evidence of depression. In addition, Carol is verbalizing thoughts of suicide. The assessment findings reveal her recurrent thoughts of "hanging herself"; statements of feeling lonely, hopeless, and worthless, and her unkempt appearance, suggest a lack of interest in herself, which helps to support the diagnostic criteria for bipolar I depressive disorder.

The priority for Carol at this time is addressing her suicidal thoughts and ensuring her safety because she is at risk of self-directed violence.

Due to the wide range of assessment findings noted in and multiple problems faced by patients with mood disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include the following:

- *Hopelessness related to intense feelings of guilt, worthlessness, and loss of pleasure*
- *Powerlessness related to feelings of helplessness, lack of control, and dependency on others*
- *Risk for suicide related to depressed mood, feelings of worthlessness, and suicidal ideation*
- *Self-care deficit (bathing, dressing) related to depressed mood, lack of interest in self or activities*
- *Risk for self-directed or other-directed violence related to impulsivity and impaired judgment and risk-taking behaviors*
- *Ineffective role performance related to depressed mood and lack of interest in self*
- *Situational low or chronic low self-esteem related to persistent depressed mood, feelings of helplessness, guilt, and shame*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. For example, the acutely ill person with major depressive disorder may have situational low self-esteem, hopelessness, powerlessness, self-care deficit, and risk of violence simultaneously. During periods of remission, nursing diagnoses such as knowledge deficit or chronic low self-esteem may be the priority areas to be addressed.

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, the patient no longer has suicidal thoughts and expresses that he or she feels hopeful about the future.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

After problems are identified and outcomes and goals have been set, the nurse works with the patient implementing interventions. These interventions will vary depending on the actual diagnosis; for example, if a patient has low self-esteem the nurse can work with the patient to develop a more healthy sense of self. You should look for signs that you are now entering Travelbee's fifth phase of the relationship, rapport. This is characterized by the nurse developing strategies that are motivated by empathy and sympathy that alleviate the clients suffering. You and the client are now working together as one on the treatment plan (Travelbee, 1971).

When providing care to a patient with suicidal behavior, remember that suicide most frequently occurs as a patient is going into a depression or coming out of a depression. When a patient is placed on antidepressants, the medication works first on energy level, then on thought processes, and lastly on lifting the mood. Thus, the patient who previously did not have the energy to follow through with suicidal actions now has an increased energy level to accomplish the act. Once the patient has started on medications, it is an important time for hypervigilance by health care providers and families. The patient also needs to be educated about this fact.

Nurses need to vigilantly monitor the patients with suicidal thoughts or suicidal behavior as antidepressant medications begin to exert their effect, providing the patient with the necessary energy to follow through with the task.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care. Evaluating how the patient presented on admission and where the patient is as discharge approaches is important. During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse and the patient should reflect on the progress made toward reaching the patient's goals. Point out positives to the patient and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) Aspects

Obviously, caring for someone who is depressed and potentially suicidal carries with it multiple responsibilities. If you think about a client who is depressed as someone who is in pain and who may be potentially suicidal as a means to end the pain, then the following QSEN nursing behaviors apply:

- *Assess presence and extent of pain and suffering*
- *Assess levels of physical and emotional comfort*
- *Elicit expectations of the patient and family for relief of pain, discomfort, or suffering*
- *Initiate effective treatments to relieve pain and suffering in light of patient values, preferences, and expressed needs (Cronenwett et al., 2007)*

This also correlates well with Travelbee's continuum of suffering (see Chapter 2) and helps you conceptualize where your client is in terms of his or her discomfort.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Everyone experiences transient periods of depressed or elated mood at different times of their lives. Affective disorders involve a persistent or sustained disturbance in mood.
- Mood disorders include major depressive disorder, dysthymic disorder, bipolar I and II disorders, and cyclothymic disorder.
- Major depressive disorder is a leading cause of disability in the United States for persons between the ages of 15 to 44 years. It occurs more commonly in women than in men.
- For major depressive disorder to be diagnosed, the individual must experience a change from previous functioning with evidence of a depressed mood or decreased interest or pleasure in usual activities that lasts most of the day for more than 2 weeks.
- Persistent depressive disorder is a milder form of depression in which the individual often reports "feeling sad or down."
- Bipolar I disorder involves the occurrence of one or more manic episodes, mixed episodes (mania and major depression), and often one or more major depressive episodes. Manic episodes are characterized by a persistently elevated and expansive or irritable mood.
- Suicide is a behavior, not a disorder. It can be viewed in Travelbee's model as someone who has achieved a terminal phase of apathetic indifference.
- The exact cause of mood disorders is not known.
- Psychological theories have attempted to explain the cause of affective disorders. These theories involve learned helplessness, cognitive theory, anger turned inward, child temperament, and prolonged stress.
- Neurobiological theories focus on the neurotransmitters dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin, but are yet unproven.
- The nurse employs the therapeutic use of self throughout the nursing process for a patient with a mood disorder. Developing trust and rapport and ensuring the patient's safety are crucial during assessment. The nurse also assesses the patient for suicidal ideation and past and current attempts verbally through direct questions and observation of nonverbal actions.

(*cont.*)

SUMMARY POINTS (*CONT.*)

- Implementing effective interventions requires appropriate timing and pacing, maintenance of professional boundaries, and continual reassessment for suicidal behavior, especially when the patient is going into a depression or coming out of depression.
- Research has indicated that the inclusion of psychotherapy typically results in the best outcomes for patients with mood disorders.
- Psychopharmacology involves the use of antidepressants, mood stabilizers, and antipsychotics. Patients receiving MAOIs need to avoid foods containing tyramine to prevent the development of a hypertensive crisis. Lithium has a narrow therapeutic margin of safety. Drug levels need to be monitored closely.
- Electroconvulsive therapy is used to treat patients who have not responded to other treatment modalities. Patients may experience transient confusion, disorientation, and memory loss after this therapy.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. Which statement by a patient with bipolar disorder would indicate the need for additional education about his prescribed lithium carbonate therapy? "I will:

a. drink about 2 L of liquids daily"
b. restrict my intake of salt"
c. take my medications with food"
d. have my blood drawn like the doctor ordered"

2. A patient has been severely depressed and expressing suicidal thoughts. She was started on antidepressant medication 4 days ago. She is now more energized and communicative. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do?

a. Allow the patient to have unsupervised passes to her home
b. Encourage the patient to participate in group activities
c. Increase vigilance with the patient's suicidal precautions
d. Recognize that the patient's suicidal potential has decreased

3. A group of nurses in the emergency department (ED) are discussing a patient who has been admitted almost every holiday with suicide ideation. One of the nurses stated that the patient is not serious about hurting himself and should not be admitted the next time he comes in. Which response by the charge nurse would be most appropriate?

a. "Telling him we cannot see him may be the answer to stop this behavior."
b. "Each episode must be individually evaluated and all options explored."
c. "He obviously needs support that he is not getting elsewhere."
d. "We should avoid showing any emotion to him the next time he comes in."

4. A group of nursing students are reviewing the different classes of antidepressants. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify sertraline as exerting its action on which neurotransmitter?

a. Serotonin
b. Dopamine
c. Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)
d. Norepinephrine

5. Which statement would the nurse expect a newly admitted married patient with mania to make? "I can:

a. not do anything right anymore"
b. manage our finances better than any accountant"
c. understand why my spouse is so upset that I spend so much money"
d. not understand where all our money goes"

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Foundation for Suicide Prevention. (2015). Retrieved from www.afsp.org

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author.

Beck, A. T., Rush, A. J., Shaw, B. F., & Emery, G. (1979). *Cognitive theory of depression.* New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

DeRubeis, R. J., Siegle, G. J., & Hollon, S. D. (2008). Cognitive therapy vs. medications for depression: Treatment outcomes and neural mechanisms. *Nature Reviews. Neuroscience, 9*(10), 788–796.

Freud, S. (1920). *An introduction to psychotherapy*. New York, NY: Horace Liveright.

National Institute for Mental Health (NIMH). (2009). *How is depression detected and treated?* Retrieved from http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/depression/how-is-depression-detected-and-treated.shtml

National Institute for Mental Health (NIMH). (2013). *The numbers count: Mental disorders in America*. Retrieved from http://www.lb7.uscourts.gov/documents/12-cv-1072url2.pdf

Rogers, V., Quinn Griffin, M., Wykle, M., & Fitzpatrick, J. (2009). Internet versus face-to-face therapy: Emotional self-disclosure issues for young adults. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 30*, 596–602.

Seligman, M. E. (1992). *Helplessness*. New York, NY: Freeman.

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Tsuang, M. T., & Faraone, S. V. (1990). *The genetics of mood disorders*. Baltimore, MD: The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Whitaker, R. (2011). *Anatomy of an epidemic: Magic bullets, psychiatric drugs, and the astonishing rise of mental illness in America.* New York, NY: Broadway Books.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *anxiety*
2. Identify anxiety disorders
3. Identify obsessive-compulsive-related disorders
4. Identify trauma- and stress-related disorders
5. Describe the historical perspectives and epidemiology associated with anxiety, obsessive-compulsive, and stress-related disorders
6. Discuss current scientific theories related to the etiology of anxiety, obsessive-compulsive, and stress-related disorders including relevant psychodynamic and neurobiological influences

CHAPTER 13

ANXIETY DISORDERS, OBSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE-RELATED DISORDERS, AND TRAUMA- AND STRESS-RELATED DISORDERS

Marianne Goldyn

7. Explain the various treatment options available for anxiety, obsessive-compulsive, and stress-related disorders
8. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with anxiety, obsessive-compulsive, and stress-related disorders

KEY TERMS

Agoraphobia
Anxiety
Biofeedback
Compulsions
Fear
Flooding
Hysteria
Obsessions
Panic disorder
Phobias
Systematic desensitization
Worry

ANXIETY is a common human emotion that is often difficult to define. Words used to describe anxiety reflect one's inner experience and, subsequently, can be quite subjective. Typically, anxiety refers to a vague feeling involving some dread, apprehension, or other unknown tension. Life experiences teach us that anxiety can be a normal emotional response to a stressor. As a healthy response, anxiety is a catalyst to achieve, to stay focused, and to cope in threatening situations. Anxiety becomes a symptom of a disorder or pathological when it interferes with one's ability to function. Anxiety disorders include specific phobias, panic disorders, agoraphobia, social anxiety disorders, and generalized anxiety disorder (GAD).

Obsessive-compulsive disorders (OCDs) have historically been described as a type of anxiety disorder; however, more recent findings suggest that they have a unique biological origin and are theorized by many to be solely neurologically based disorders. OCD and compulsive hoarding are discussed as subtypes of OCDs.

Trauma- and stress-related disorders, such as OCDs, were historically categorized as anxiety disorders as well. Posttraumatic stress and acute stress disorders are discussed as subtypes of trauma- and stress-related disorders.

Regardless of the specific type of disorder a person experiences, anxiety is a common factor. Persons who feel anxiety often experience somatic symptoms such as muscle pain, blurred vision, tachycardia, dyspnea, difficulty swallowing, loss of appetite, increased sweating, loss of libido, or dry mouth. Cognitive symptoms can also be manifested. These include poor memory, confusion, difficulty in concentrating, distorted thinking, unrealistic fears, repetitive fearful ideation, or hypervigilance. In addition, some people with OCDs perform certain rituals such as hand washing, counting, and so on. Persons with phobias often avoid certain situations such as large crowded areas, bridges, and elevators in order to cope with their symptoms.

Anxiety is a vague feeling of discomfort. It can be a healthy response leading an individual to become more focused and able to cope with threatening situations, or it can become pathological and interfere with a person's ability to function.

Much has been written about the similarities and differences among **FEAR, WORRY**, and anxiety. For the purpose of this chapter, fear and worry are viewed as the two core symptom clusters of anxiety. Fear in this context refers to feelings consistent with panic and phobias. Worry is more indicative of symptoms such as anxious misery, apprehensive expectations, and obsessions. Anxiety, as stated earlier, is a vague, uncertain feeling of dread, whereas worry is more indicative of symptoms such as anxious misery, apprehensive expectations, and obsessions. All of the anxiety disorders maintain some form of anxiety or fear coupled with some form of worry. However, what triggers them differs (Stahl, 2013).

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of anxiety, obsessive-compulsive, and trauma- and stress-related disorders (anxiety-based disorders), followed by a description of specific disorders. Scientific theories focusing on psychodynamic, behavioral, and neurobiological influences are described plus common treatment options, including pharmacotherapy and nonpharmacotherapy strategies. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, guided by the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses competencies (QSEN). Also included is a plan of care for a patient with an anxiety-based disorder.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

The American Psychiatric Association (APA) did not officially recognize anxiety disorders until 1980. However, anxiety-based disorders have played substantial roles in human history. The earliest interpretations of anxiety disorders appear to be mostly spiritual, with many early spiritual treatments resembling some aspects of modern psychotherapy. For example, in early Christian thought, logismoi were distressing, obsessive thoughts that were unhealthy and believed to lead people away from God. The spiritual leaders took on roles as confessors or counselors by employing healing dialogues to lessen these obsessions. Often the treatment for logismoi was to redirect and replace unhealthy thoughts with realistic ones, which is similar to modern-day techniques of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT). In addition, the ancient preparation and use of natural substances have similarities to modern pharmaceuticals (Anderson, 2007).

Medical interpretations of anxiety disorders are not entirely new, reaching as far back as classical Greek civilization. Greeks coined the word *agoraphobic*, which was initially given to people who were afraid to go outside to the market. Today this term refers to people who suffer from an anxiety disorder.

During the 17th and 18th centuries, in Germany, France, England, and North America, the term **HYSTERIA** (which is Greek for uterus) was used to describe anxiety and anxiety-related disorders specifically in women. During the 1800s, French psychiatrist Jean-Martin Charcot spent a great deal of energy studying hysteria and concluded that it derived from a particular hereditary disposition and was unleashed by an environmental stimulus. He postulated that certain people are genetically predisposed to develop hysteria just as today we know that there is a genetic predisposition to

diseases such as cancer. Charcot observed numerous cases of hysterical symptoms arising in both men and women, including headaches, heart palpitations, chest pain, irregular pulse rate, constipation, dizziness, fainting spells, trembling of the hands and neck, emotional and sleep disorders, and mental disorientation. Although the symptoms in both men and women were similar, he believed that symptoms in men were triggered by traumatic events, such as workplace accidents and train crashes. In women, on the other hand, Charcot believed that hysterical attacks were triggered by emotions or passions such as jilted lovers and weepy, romantic girls (Porter, 1997).

In 1895, Sigmund Freud's earliest descriptions of anxiety were documented using the term *anxiety neurosis*. Initially, Freud described anxiety neurosis as anxiety that resulted from a repressed libido. Later he expanded the concept of anxiety neurosis to include a diffuse sense of worry or dread that originates in a repressed thought or wish and not just in the repression of sexual energy. According to Freud, anxiety neurosis resulted in hysteria, obsessions, phobias, and somatic symptoms such as fatigue and dizziness (Sadock et al., 2014). Much of the current understanding of anxiety and anxiety-related disorders can be traced back primarily to times of war. For example, in the mid-1800s, Otto Domrich became the first in the field of medical psychology to write about *anxiety attacks*. This term replaced earlier notions of *neurocirculatory neurasthenia*, *soldier's heart*, and *hyperventilation syndrome* that dated back to the French Revolution. These terms depicted the state of combined anxiety and cardiopulmonary symptoms that might be induced by the terrors of the battlefield (Stone, 1997).

During World War I, the number of psychiatric casualties dramatically increased such that hospitals were quickly opened to house them. According to one estimate, mental breakdowns represented 40% of British battle casualties. Military authorities attempted to hide reports of these psychiatric casualties because of their demoralizing effect on the public. Initially, the symptoms of mental breakdown were attributed to a physical cause. The British psychologist Charles Myers examined some of the first cases and attributed their symptoms to the concussive effects of exploding shells. Myers called the resulting nervous disorder "shell shock." The name stuck, even though it soon became clear that the syndrome could be found in soldiers who had not been exposed to any physical trauma. Gradually, military psychiatrists were forced to acknowledge that the symptoms of shell shock were due to psychological trauma (Herman, 1997).

During World War II, psychiatric collapse accounted for the loss of 504,000 men from the American fighting forces. In every one of America's wars in the 20th century, the rates of psychiatric collapse among soldiers exceeded the numbers killed in action. Psychiatric casualties constituted the single largest category of disability discharges in World War II (Gabriel, 1987).

No precise data on the number of soldiers suffering from posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) after the Vietnam War exist. Figures range from 500,000 to 1,500,000 PTSD cases, indicating that at least 18% and possibly as many as 54% of the armed forces suffered psychiatric symptoms. The chances that a soldier would become a psychiatric casualty in Vietnam were about the same as his or her chances of being killed in action (Gabriel, 1987). Veterans of the Gulf War, Operation Desert Shield, and Desert Storm exhibit rates of PTSD, GAD, and panic disorders that are nearly twice that of nondeployed military personnel (Black et al., 2004). Other studies have indicated that one in three Iraqi combat veterans has been diagnosed with PTSD, GAD, or a panic disorder, and one in six from Afghanistan has been diagnosed with an anxiety disorder (Milliken, Auchterlonie, & Hoge, 2007).

As research is still being done on more recent wars, it is difficult to offer specific data. This is also in part due to the fact that symptoms may begin many years after combat is over. According to Vos et al. (2012), of the 2.8 million American veterans of the Afghanistan and Iraq wars it is estimated that 11% to 20% have PTSD and of the total number of deployed Iraq and Afghanistan veterans, 118,829 were diagnosed with PTSD between 2003 and January 10, 2014.

Historically, terms such as hysteria, anxiety, neurosis, *and* shell shock *were used to identify anxiety disorders.*

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In general, anxiety disorders represent the most prevalent psychiatric condition in the United States, outside of substance use disorder (Vos et al., 2012).

It is estimated that 3 out of 10 people will suffer from an anxiety disorder in their lifetime (Kessler, Berglund, Demler, Jin, & Walters, 2005). Approximately 40 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 18.1% of people in this age group in a given year, have an anxiety disorder. Disability common to these disorders exceeds that associated with other psychiatric conditions, as well as most medical conditions including cardiovascular disease, pulmonary disease, gastrointestinal diseases, and cancer (Merikangas et al., 2007). Despite the high prevalence rates of anxiety disorders as well as their economic burden, they often go unrecognized and untreated.

Anxiety-based disorders frequently co-occur with depressive disorders or substance abuse disorders (Kessler,

Chiu, Demler, & Walters, 2005). Most people with one anxiety disorder also have another anxiety disorder. Nearly three fourths of those with an anxiety disorder will have their first episode by age 21.5 years (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005). The presence of any anxiety disorder is associated with a 21.9% prevalence of self-medication with drugs and alcohol. For example, persons with GAD show the highest self-medication rate of 35.6%, whereas persons with bipolar I disorder show the lowest self-medication rate of 12.6%. Caucasians are more likely to self-medicate than any other race (84.5%), and men (55.4%) are more likely to self-medicate than women (44.6%; Bolton, Cox, Clara, & Sareen, 2006).

Anxiety disorders, the most common and most costly psychiatric diagnosis in the United States, commonly occur with other conditions such as substance abuse and depression.

Incidence

Statistics related to specific anxiety disorders reflect:

- *Approximately 6 million adults aged 18 years and older, or about 2.7% of people in this age group, have panic disorder in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005).*
  - *It typically develops in early adulthood, with a median age of onset of 24 years, but can extend throughout adulthood (Kessler, Bergland, et al., 2005).*
  - *About one in three people with panic disorder develops* **AGORAPHOBIA**, *a condition in which the individual becomes afraid of being in a place or situation where escape might be difficult or help unavailable in the event of a panic attack (Robins & Regier, 1991).*
- *Approximately 2.2 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 1.0% of people in this age group, have OCD in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005).*
  - *The first symptoms of OCD often begin during childhood or adolescence.*
  - *The age of onset is 19 years (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).*
- *Approximately 7.7 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 3.5% of people in this age group, are diagnosed with PTSD in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005).*
  - *It can develop at any age, including childhood, but research shows that the median age of onset is 23 years (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).*
  - *About 19% of Vietnam veterans experienced PTSD at some point after the war (Dohrenwend et al., 2006).*
  - *The disorder also frequently occurs after violent personal assaults such as rape, mugging, domestic violence, terrorism, natural or human-caused disasters, and accidents.*
- *Approximately 6.8 million American adults, or about 3.1% of people aged 18 years and older, are diagnosed with GAD in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005), beginning across the life cycle with a median age of onset of 31 years (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).*
- *Approximately 15 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 6.8% of people in this age group, have social phobia in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005), typically beginning in childhood or adolescence, usually around 13 years of age (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).*
- *Approximately 1.8 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 0.8% of people in this age group, have agoraphobia without a history of panic disorder in a given year, with a median age of onset of 20 years (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005).*
- *Approximately 19.2 million American adults aged 18 years and older, or about 8.7% of people in this age group, have some type of specific phobia (marked and persistent fear and avoidance of a specific object or situation) in a given year (Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005), typically beginning in childhood with a median age of onset of 7 years (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).*
- *Approximately 12% of the general population suffers from social anxiety disorder (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).*
- *The overall prevalence of hoarding disorder is 1.5% of the population. It is significantly higher among men (4.1%) than among women (2.1%). This contrasts with the higher number of women seen in clinical practice, perhaps because many more women seek treatment (Nordsletten et al., 2013).*
- *Those with hoarding disorder were older and more often unmarried (67%). Members of this group were also more likely to be impaired by a current physical health condition (52.6%) or comorbid mental disorder (58%; Nordsletten et al., 2013).*

Morbidity and Mortality

Anxiety-based disorders, through effects of the neurological, endocrine, and immune mechanisms or direct neural stimulation that result in conditions such as hypertension or cardiac arrhythmia, can contribute to morbidity and mortality. In addition, severe anxiety disorders may be complicated by suicide, with or without secondary mood disorders (e.g., depression). Anxiety disorders have high rates of comorbidity with major depression and alcohol and drug abuse. Some of the increased morbidity and mortality

associated with anxiety disorders may be related to this high rate of comorbidity.

Between 1980 and 1985, the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) funded the Epidemiologic Catchment Area (ECA) program of research. This program was designed to determine prevalence and incidence of mental disorders and the use of and need for services by the mentally ill. One of its findings revealed that panic disorder was associated with suicide attempts 18 times higher than populations without psychiatric disorders. The ECA study also found no difference in rates of panic disorder among White, African American, or Hispanic populations in the United States. However, some studies have found higher rates of PTSD in minority populations, which may be due to higher rates of specific traumatic events, such as assault.

The female-to-male ratio for any lifetime anxiety disorder is 3:2. It is not clear why females have higher rates of most anxiety disorders than males do. Some theories suggest that the gonadal steroids may play a role. Other research on women's responses to stress also suggests that women experience a wider range of life events (e.g., those happening to friends) as stressful as compared with men, who react to a more limited range of stressful events, specifically only those affecting themselves or close family members (Yates, 2014).

Anxiety disorders occur more commonly in women than in men and can contribute to illness and death through effects on the endocrine, immune, and nervous system.

DESCRIPTION OF ANXIETY, OBSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE, AND TRAUMA- AND STRESS-RELATED DISORDERS

Anxiety-based disorders are common mental disorders characterized by excessive, prolonged, and debilitating levels of anxiety. They are commonly structured into the following categories based on clinical symptoms: anxiety disorders, OCDs, and trauma- and stress-related disorders.

Anxiety Disorders

Anxiety disorders include panic disorder, GAD, specific phobia, and social phobia.

Panic Disorder

PANIC DISORDER involves sudden, intense, and unprovoked feelings of terror and dread. In a panic attack, there is a sudden and overwhelming sense of "impending doom or a feeling that they are going to die." People who suffer from this disorder generally develop strong fears about when and where their next panic attack will occur, and subsequently, often restrict their activities. Panic disorder usually occurs after frightening experiences or prolonged stress, but it can also occur spontaneously. A panic attack may lead an individual to be acutely aware of any change in normal body function, such as palpitations, chest pain, diaphoresis, and choking feeling.

Generalized Anxiety Disorder

GAD is a chronic disorder characterized by excessive, long-lasting anxiety and worry about nonspecific life events, objects, and situations. It differs from other anxiety-based disorders in that there is pervasive cognitive dysfunction, impaired functioning, and poor health-related outcomes (Varcarolis, 2015). People with GAD often feel afraid and worry about health, money, family, work, or school, but have trouble both in identifying the specific fear and in controlling the worries. Their fear is typically out of proportion with what may be expected in their situation. They expect failure and disaster to the point that it interferes with daily functions like work, school, social activities, and relationships. People with GAD have recurring fears or worries about health or finances, and they often have a persistent sense that something bad is about to happen. The reason for the intense feelings of anxiety may be difficult to identify. However, the fears and worries are very real and often keep individuals from concentrating on daily tasks.

Although panic disorder can occur spontaneously, it typically results after frightening experiences or prolonged stress. Patients with OCD use obsessions and compulsions to relieve anxiety. Patients with PTSD experience flashbacks and change behavior in an effort to avoid stimuli associated with a previous trauma.

Specific Phobia

PHOBIAs are intense fears about certain objects or situations. Specific phobias may involve things such as encountering certain animals or flying in airplanes. One example is agoraphobia. Agoraphobia involves intense fear and anxiety of any place or situation where escape might be difficult, leading to avoidance of situations such as being alone outside of the home; traveling in a car, bus, or airplane; or being in a crowded area (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005).

Individuals will situate themselves so that escape will not be difficult or embarrassing. Additionally, they will change their behavior to reduce anxiety about being able to escape.

Social Phobia

Social phobia is a type of phobia characterized by a fear of being negatively judged by others or a fear of public embarrassment due to impulsive actions. This includes feelings such as stage fright, fear of intimacy, and fear of humiliation. This disorder can cause people to avoid public situations and human contact to the point that normal life is rendered impossible.

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorders

These disorders include Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), hoarding disorder, and body dysmorphic disorder (BDD).

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

OCD is an anxiety disorder characterized by thoughts or actions that are repetitive, distressing, and intrusive. People with OCD usually know that their compulsions are unreasonable or irrational, but they serve to alleviate their anxiety. Often, the logic of someone with OCD will appear superstitious, such as an insistence to walk in a certain pattern. People with OCD may obsessively clean personal items or hands or constantly check locks, light switches, and so on (APA, 2013).

Hoarding Disorder

Persons with hoarding disorder have difficulty discarding or parting with possessions due to strong urges to save the items. Difficulty discarding often includes items that others consider to be of little use and results in accumulation of a large number of possessions that clutter the home, preventing use for the intended purpose. They often are not able to sleep in their bed, sit in their living room, or cook in their kitchen. They may hold on to items due to the perceived usefulness, aesthetic value, or for sentimental reasons. For the patient with hoarding disorder, the prospect of parting with possessions causes significant distress (Hartmann, Blashill, Greenberg, Wilhelm, Storch, & McKay, 2014).

Body Dysmorphic Disorder (BDD)

BDD is characterized by a preoccupation with an imagined or slight defect in appearance. These concerns can involve any body area, however, they are typically focused on the face and head. These concerns often become obsessive in nature, consuming significant time, and are difficult to resist and control. In some patients, insight is poor and they may have difficulty realizing that they look normal (APA, 2013).

Trauma- and Stress-Related Disorders

Trauma- and stress-related disorders include posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and acute stress disorder.

Posttraumatic Stress Disorder

PTSD results from previous trauma such as military combat, rape, hostage situations, or a serious accident. PTSD often leads to flashbacks and behavioral changes in order to avoid certain stimuli. Thoughts, feelings, and behavior patterns become seriously affected by reminders of the event, sometimes months or even years after the traumatic experience (APA, 2013).

Acute Stress Disorder

Acute stress disorder occurs when a person has been exposed to a traumatic event or experience involving intense fear, horror, or helplessness. It is labeled acute because it refers to the anxiety and behavioral disturbances that develop and are alleviated within the first month after exposure to an extreme trauma. The event or experience must involve a threat of death, serious injury, or physical integrity. The event or experience may be to the person themselves or to others around them (APA, 2013).

ETIOLOGY

The exact etiology of anxiety disorders is not known. Numerous research studies have attempted to address the underlying causes of anxiety, but without success.

Psychosocial Theories

Two psychosocial influences dominate the thinking related to the development of anxiety disorders. These are the psychodynamic influences of theorists such as Sigmund Freud, Harry Sullivan, and Hildegard Peplau, and behavioral and learning theories.

Psychodynamic Influences

In 1894, Sigmund Freud first published his writings on the psychodynamic nature of anxiety. His last publication on the topic was in 1926. According to Freud, the conflicting demands among the id, ego, and superego produce anxiety. He described anxiety as a signal to the ego that an unacceptable drive was pressing for conscious representation or discharge. For example, when the ego blocks the pleasurable desires of the id, anxiety is felt. This diffuse, distressed state develops when the ego senses that the id is going to

cause harm to the individual. Freud identified three types of anxiety:

- *Reality anxiety: The most basic form, rooted in reality such as fear of a bee sting or fear felt just before an accident; also referred to as ego-based anxiety.*
- *Neurotic anxiety: Arising from an unconscious fear that the libidinal impulses of the id will take control at an inopportune time; driven by a fear of punishment that will result from expressing the id's desires without proper sublimation.*
- *Moral anxiety: Resulting from fear of violating moral or societal codes; appearing as guilt or shame.*

Freud believed that when anxiety is present, it alerts the ego to resolve the conflict by means of defense mechanisms. (See Chapter 10 for a more in-depth discussion of defense mechanisms.) Of all the defense mechanisms, Freud believed that repression is the most powerful and pervasive defense mechanism working to push unacceptable id impulses out of awareness and back into the unconscious mind. Repression is the foundation from which all other defense mechanisms work. The goal of every defense mechanism is to repress, or push threatening impulses out of awareness. Freud said that our early childhood experiences, many of which he believed are sexually laden, are too threatening and stressful for us to deal with consciously. Individuals then reduce the anxiety of this conflict through the defense mechanism of repression (Freud, 1938).

Freud's pupil and later critic, Otto Rank, separated from Freud by describing anxiety as a result of birth trauma. According to Rank, the anxiety experienced during birth was the model for all anxiety experienced afterward. While he viewed anxiety as trauma from birth, another theorist, Harry Stack Sullivan, believed anxiety stemmed from the early relationship between the mother and the child and the transmission of the mother's anxiety to the infant.

Sullivan called his approach an interpersonal theory of psychiatry because he believed psychiatry is the study of what goes on between people. This is in contrast to Freud's paradigm that focused on what goes on inside people. Freud's is a drive model whereas Sullivan's is an interpersonal model.

For Sullivan, relationships are primary. Personality is a hypothetical entity that cannot be observed or studied apart from interpersonal situations. The only way personality can be known is through the medium of interpersonal interactions. Therefore, what is to be studied is not the individual person, but the interpersonal situation.

Like Sullivan, Hildegard Peplau (1991) also believed that relationships are primary. She applied psychodynamic theories not only to individuals but also to the nursing process. She clearly illustrated in her writings and teaching that she felt nursing was a significant and therapeutic, interpersonal process. Peplau wrote extensively about unexplained discomfort and within these writings described four types of anxiety:

- Mild anxiety*: This anxiety motivates individuals every day; it is considered "normal anxiety" and viewed as a positive motivator for personal growth and success.*
- Moderate anxiety*: The individual begins to hear, see, and grasp less due to a narrowing of his or her perceptual field; decreased awareness of the environment and decreased focus, noticing only those things that are brought to the individual's attention.*
- Severe anxiety*: The individual's thoughts become scattered, focusing on small details; inability to problem solve or use the learning process to make decisions.*
- Panic*: The individual experiences intense fear accompanied by physical symptoms such as chest pain, heart palpitations, dizziness, shortness of breath, and abdominal distress; possible inability to cooperate or collaborate with the nurse.*

Peplau believed that clearly identifying and understanding the type of anxiety an individual is experiencing are pivotal for good nursing care. She believed that nursing interventions were not required during mild episodes of anxiety. For moderate levels of anxiety, Peplau believed many useful nursing interventions could take place such as problem-solving/talk therapy, cognitive reframing, and teaching anxiety-reduction techniques such as relaxation training, meditation, counting, and deep breathing. During periods of severe anxiety, Peplau suggested that individuals cannot effectively problem solve or make connections because they are self-absorbed, feeling an impending sense of doom, and experiencing physiological symptoms such as hyperventilation and tachycardia. Nursing interventions during this time focus on providing short, firm concrete directions to assist the person to remain calm, to protect the person from self-injury, either intentional or related to inattention or poor reality testing, and to protect the milieu from disruption and injury.

Peplau postulated that persons with panic levels of anxiety were unable to focus on even one detail within the environment. She believed that terror, emotional paralysis, hallucinations, or delusions might occur during panic. Individuals can become mute, extremely agitated, irrational, hypervigilant, and hyperactive. When a person experiences panic, Peplau suggested that the nurse should remain with the individual until the panic subsides. This action provides a certain amount of security, or "thereness" of the nurse.

Peplau identified four categories of anxiety: mild, moderate, severe, and panic.

Behavioral Influences

Before more recent biological and pharmacological studies about anxiety, the widely accepted theory of anxiety disorders fell within behavioral or learning theories. Although Freud was working on the psychodynamics of anxiety, a radically different view of anxiety and fear, significantly influenced by Pavlov's theory of classical conditioning (1927), was emerging through the work of Watson and Morgan (1917). They argued that anxiety was a conditioned response to an unpleasant stimulus. This theory, also known as respondent conditioning, was disregarded by many. However, it laid the groundwork for cognitive and social-learning theories of anxiety and has undergone considerable transformation. These theories primarily focused on simple phobias and fears. Thus, the concepts of classical conditioning were not adequate to explain more complex anxiety states. Most learning and behavioral theorists now embrace interactive models that attempt to explain the multifaceted nature of anxiety disorders. These models take into account how individual risk factors interact with environmental factors to produce anxiety states or disorders. For example, an interactive model of anxiety would suggest that individuals with controlling, time conscious, and impatient personality (type A) would be more prone to anxiety in a highly chaotic or stressful work environment (Taylor & Arnow, 1988).

Biological Theories

Most biological theories regarding anxiety-based disorders focus primarily on neurostructural and neurochemical influences. However, these disorders are complex diseases that are also caused by a combination of genetic and environmental factors.

The anxiety-based disorders are so broad that the neurobiology that seems most relevant in one anxiety disorder may have little to do with other anxiety disorders. As stated earlier, all of these disorders seem to have the core feature of fear and/or worry. More than ever, there is a plethora of research regarding the neurocircuitry and neurochemistry associated with anxiety disorders, OCDs, and trauma- and stress-related disorders. Although scientific evidence of anxiety disorders continues to be rooted in symptoms of anxiety and fear, there are discrete differences in the neurobiology of OCDs such as hoarding and trauma- and stress-related disorders such as posttraumatic stress syndrome.

Neurobiological Influences of Anxiety Disorders

Symptoms of anxiety or fear are associated with the malfunctioning of amygdala-centered circuits. The amygdala is an almond-shaped structure in the brain located near the hippocampus. It has anatomical connections that allow it to integrate sensory and cognitive information and then determine whether there will be a fear response. In contrast to fear, symptoms of worry such as anxious misery, apprehension, catastrophic thinking, and obsessions are linked to the cortico-striatal–thalamic–cortical (CSTC) loop circuitry. Both the amygdala and the CSTC loops contain gamma-amino-butyric acid (GABA), norepinephrine, and serotonin as the main neurotransmitters. Other neurotransmitters and peptides, such as dopamine, glutamate (a precursor to GABA), and corticotropin-releasing factor (CRF), have also been studied as playing a role in the development of anxiety symptoms. In addition, voltage-gated ion channels are involved in neurotransmission within these circuits (Stahl, 2013).

GABA is the main neurotransmitter involved in anxiety responses and in the anxiolytic action of many of the medications used to treat anxiety disorders. It directly influences an individual's personality and ability to handle stress. GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter that plays a regulatory role in reducing the activity of many neurons, including those in the amygdala and the CSTC loop, which affects one's sense of worry. It acts as the primary calming, or "peacemaker," chemical, inducing relaxation, reducing stress and anxiety, and increasing alertness. Overactivation or malfunction of the amygdala circuits leads to pathological anxiety or fear. GABA-ergic agents such as benzodiazepines act at postsynaptic GABA receptors to enhance the inhibitory action of GABA, thus decreasing the fear or anxiety symptoms.

As stated previously, anxiety disorders frequently co-occur with depressive disorders. Anxiety and depressive disorders also share symptoms, brain circuits, and neurotransmitters. Recall from Chapter 12 that altered levels of the neurotransmitter, serotonin, have been implicated in depressive disorders. It has also been postulated that serotonin works to decrease anxiety symptoms because it works in the amygdala to regulate the vulnerability of fear circuits (Stahl, 2013). Studies show that certain antidepressants increase the amount of available serotonin by blocking its reuptake. These medications have proven efficacious for anxiety disorders as well.

Neurobiological Influences of OCDs

The anterior cingulated cortex is part of the limbic system in the brain. Persons who hoard exhibit dysfunction in the anterior cingulate cortex (ACC) and associated frontal and medial areas. The dorsal ACC is postulated to be involved in decision making, error monitoring, and reward-based learning. The ventral ACC is thought to aid in assigning emotional and motivational meaning to stimuli and

experiences. It is unsurprising that hoarding disorder, which is characterized by the inability to make decisions due to error vigilance and overwhelming emotions, might be associated with dysfunction in these regions (Bush, Luu, & Posner, 2000).

Neurobiological Influences of Trauma- and Stress-Related Disorders

Norepinephrine, the neurotransmitter often associated with the "fight or flight" response to stress, also has regulatory input to the amygdala. This neurotransmitter is strongly linked to physical responses and reactions, including increasing heart rate and blood pressure as well as creating a sense of panic and overwhelming fear or dread. Excessive output of norepinephrine from the locus coeruleus results not only in autonomic overdrive but also can trigger symptoms of anxiety and fear, nightmares, hyperarousal states, flashbacks, and panic attacks. Blocking alpha-1- and beta-1-adrenergic receptors within the amygdala leads to a lessening of these symptoms. This is why beta-blockers such as propranolol and, more recently, alpha-1-adrenergic blockers such as prazosin (Minipress) have been used to treat anxiety symptoms (Stahl, 2013).

Additionally, the brain structures that are functionally altered in PTSD patients largely overlap with circuits that are responsible for fear learning and expression (Shin & Handwerger, 2009; Van Elzakker, Dahlgren, Davis, Dubois, & Shin, 2014). As such, knowing how specific neuronal circuits support associative learning during aversive or traumatic events, their role in the generation and regulation of fear- and anxiety-related behaviors in the presence of trauma-related stimuli, is essential for an understanding of the development of anxiety disorders.

Specific brain structures such as the amygdala and neurotransmitters such as GABA, norepinephrine, and serotonin have been associated with anxiety disorders. GABA is the primary neurotransmitter involved.

Genetic Vulnerability

The study of genetic vulnerability or the idea that a person may have a biological predisposition to develop a disorder when certain environmental factors present themselves has been gaining attention within the psychiatric arena. Of the known risk factors for anxiety disorders, the most validated is family history. Family and twin studies have demonstrated that anxiety-based disorders have significant familial aggregation, and their heritability estimates range from 30% to 50% (Hettema, Neale, & Kendler, 2001).

Smoller, Block, and Young (2009) reported that genetic epidemiological studies have clearly shown that all of the anxiety disorders aggregate in families and that familiality is primarily due to genetic factors. Interestingly, studies of temperament since the 1950s have concluded that temperamental differences in individuals have a biological or genetic basis, particularly in regard to fear and stress reactions.

For example, psychologist Jerome Kagan has demonstrated that people born with a certain brain circuitry also have a "hyperreactive amygdala." He reports that infants born with this vulnerability have a "high reactivity" when exposed to new stimuli and later become inhibited, shy, and anxious adults (Henig, 2009). Other researchers have found that elevated anxious temperament is associated with decreased messenger RNA expression of two neuropeptide Y receptors, Y1R and Y5R, in the central nucleus of the amygdala, a region of the brain that plays an important role in regulating fear and anxiety (Roseboom et al., 2014).

Psychiatrist Stephen Stahl (2013) discussed the idea that there are vulnerable circuits in the brain that are created by certain genes. These circuits, when stressed by environmental factors such as childhood sexual abuse, can lead to anxiety disorders later in life. Genome-wide association studies (GWAS) have proven to be a successful method for the identification of common genetic variants that increase susceptibility to complex diseases or traits. Recently, several GWAS of anxiety-based disorders such as panic disorder, OCDs, phobias, and PTSDs have been published (Otowa et al., 2014).

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Various treatment options are available for anxiety disorders. Anxiety disorders will most likely require concomitant use of nonpharmacological and pharmacological strategies. Studies show that for many patients, a combination of medication and cognitive behavioral/exposure therapy was shown to be a clinically desired treatment strategy (Bandelow et al., 2012).

Pharmacological Therapy

Pharmacological therapy for anxiety disorders is similar to that for depression. Specifically, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and selective norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) are the drugs of choice for treating both depressive disorders and anxiety disorders. Patients

need to understand that the therapeutic anxiolytic effects of SSRIs and SNRIs range from approximately 2 to 8 weeks, but more commonly, 6 to 8 weeks. This time frame is typically longer than what is seen when used to treat depression. Also, higher doses of SSRIs are required to treat anxiety symptoms when compared with depression symptoms. **Drug Summary 13-1** highlights the major medications commonly used to treat anxiety disorders. Different combinations of pharamacological agents may be used depending on the specific anxiety disorder.

Generalized Anxiety Disorder

Both SSRIs, generally prescribed in higher doses, and SNRIs, typically prescribed in usual doses, are considered first-line treatment for GAD. However, due to the serotonergic properties of SSRIs and SNRIs, some individuals report feeling more anxious and excited instead of feeling calm. Because these agents have a delayed onset of action, benzodiazepines are often prescribed concurrently when initiating treatment. Benzodiazepines are also used when there is only a partial response to an SSRI or SNRI or for intermittent use when anxiety symptoms worsen and quick relief is required (Stahl, 2013). Another first-line agent for treating GAD is buspirone (BuSpar), used alone or as an adjunct to SSRIs or SNRIs. (See Chapter 12 for an expanded discussion of SSRIs and SNRIs.)

If a patient does not respond to initial treatment choices, switching to an agent within the same class is often considered. When a patient fails to respond to any first-line treatment, trials of mirtazapine (Remeron), trazodone (Desyrel), tricyclic antidepressants, or sedating antihistamines such as hydroxyzine (Vistaril) may be used. Other second-line agents may include the novel alpha-2 delta ligands, gabapentin (Neurontin), or pregabalin (Lyrica). These drugs are approved for seizures, neuropathic pain, and fibromyalgia. Currently, they are being tested as treatment for anxiety disorders (Stahl, 2013). Atypical antipsychotics are often used as adjunct treatment in patients that have severe refractory and disabling symptoms that are unremitting. (See Chapter 12 for a more detailed discussion of tricyclic antidepressants; see Chapter 11 for a more detailed discussion of antipsychotics.)

Panic Disorders

Treatment for panic disorders is similar to that for GAD. SSRIs, generally prescribed in doses higher than for treating depression, and SNRIs, prescribed in usual doses, are considered first-line treatment. Benzodiazepines are used when there is only partial response to an SSRI or SNRI or for intermittent use. They are also used alone as first-line treatment when symptoms are acute, severe, and disabling.

Second-line treatment may include the novel alpha-2 delta ligands, gabapentin, or pregabalin. Occasionally, mirtazapine and trazodone are used alone or to augment therapy with SSRIs and/or SNRIs. Often, tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) are used and the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), although commonly avoided due to their unfavorable side-effect profile, are particularly efficacious in the treatment of panic disorders (Stahl, 2013). Other adjunctive treatments include the use of atypical antipsychotics such as quetiapine (Seroquel) and olanzapine (Zyprexa), and anticonvulsants such as lamotrigine (Lamictal) and topiramate (Topamax). (See Chapter 12 for a more in-depth discussion of MAOIs.)

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

High doses of SSRIs are considered first-line treatment for OCD. Commonly, two or three different SSRIs at high doses are tried if the first SSRI is not effective. Second-line agents include clomipramine (Anafranil) and SNRIs, particularly venlafaxine (Effexor; Dell'Osso, Nestadt, Allen, & Hollander, 2006) and MAOIs. If a patient responds only partially or does not respond to SSRI therapy, atypical antipsychotics may be used for augmentation. Risperidone (Risperdal) is considered a first-line agent for such augmentation (Fineberg & Gale, 2005). Additionally, atypical antipsychotic agents are the only established agents for treating SSRI-refractory OCD (Keuneman, Pokos, Weerasundera, & Castle, 2005). Other pharmacological options for refractory OCD based on limited research data include intravenous clomipramine and citalopram (Celexa), as well as combined SSRI–clomipramine treatment.

Many other drugs have been studied in OCD treatment. Opioid agonists such as tramadol hydrochloride (Ultram) and morphine have shown encouraging results. These drugs inhibit glutamate release in the cerebral cortex, disinhibit serotonergic neurons in the dorsal raphe, and increase dopamine transmission in the striatum leading to a decrease in distressing, obsessional thoughts, and a reduction in compulsive actions. In addition, glutamate (MSG) has been cited as a novel treatment target. Drugs such as riluzole (Rilutek), memantine (Namenda), and *N*-acetylcysteine, which lessen glutamatergic transmission, have shown encouraging results. However, more research is needed (Lafleur et al., 2006).

Body Dysmorphic Disorder

There has been a growing recognition that BDD is common, and is associated with significant illness and disability. There is also some evidence that it may respond to pharmacotherapy and psychotherapy. Although few, small, controlled trials have been conducted, the results suggest that treatment with both medication (SSRIs) or psychotherapy can be effective in treating the symptoms of BDD (Ipser, Sander, & Stein, 2009).

DRUG SUMMARY 13-1: AGENTS USED FOR ANXIETY DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
BENZODIAZEPINES	
alprazolam (Xanax) clonazepam (Klonopin) diazepam (Valium) lorazepam (Ativan)	■ Institute safety precautions to prevent injury secondary to sedative effects of the drug; warn the patient of these effects including decreased response time and slowed reflexes ■ Encourage the patient to change positions slowly to minimize the effect of orthostatic hypotension ■ Teach the patient that the full effects of the drug may not be noted for several weeks. Work with the patient to use other methods such as guided imagery and progressive relaxation to assist in relieving anxiety until the drug reaches its therapeutic effectiveness ■ Counsel the patient that one or more agents may need to be tried to determine the most effective drug ■ Allow the patient to verbalize feelings and issues related to drug therapy; work with the patient and family to develop a method for adhering to drug therapy ■ Urge the patient not to stop taking the drug abruptly because of possible withdrawal symptoms such as insomnia, increased anxiety, abdominal and muscle cramps, tremors, vomiting, sweating, and delirium ■ Monitor the patient for compliance with therapy; be aware that physical and psychological dependence can occur ■ Assess the patient for possible suicidal ideation, especially if the patient also has a concurrent depressive disorder ■ Urge the patient to avoid consuming alcohol
ANTICONVULSANTS	
lamotrigine (Lamictal) topiramate (Topamax)	■ Institute safety precautions to prevent injury secondary to sedative effects of the drug; warn the patient of these effects including decreased response time and slowed reflexes ■ Instruct female patients to notify the prescriber if starting or stopping oral contraceptives or other hormone preparations, if they become pregnant, or experience changes in their menstrual pattern ■ Advise the patient not to discontinue abruptly or restart without notifying the prescriber ■ Educate the patient that lamotrigine may cause a serious rash. Urge the patient to contact the prescriber immediately if a rash or symptoms of hypersensitivity occur

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 13-1: (*CONT.*)
AGENTS USED FOR ANXIETY DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
ANTICONVULSANTS (*CONT.*)	
	■ Educate the patient that there may be a possible worsening of depressive symptoms or suicidal ideation, especially if the patient also has a concurrent depressive disorder
PARTIAL SEROTONIN AGONIST	
buspirone (BuSpar)	■ Institute safety precautions to prevent injury secondary to dizziness or drowsiness ■ Monitor the patient closely for withdrawal when switching from benzodiazepines to this agent ■ Teach the patient that the full effects of the drug may not be noted for 1 to 2 weeks. Work with the patient to use other methods such as guided imagery or progressive relaxation to assist in relieving anxiety until the drug reaches its therapeutic effectiveness ■ Educate the patient not to take with grapefruit juice
BETA-BLOCKERS	
propranolol (Inderal)	■ Counsel the patient not to stop the drug abruptly ■ Monitor apical pulse and blood pressure closely for changes; if hypotension occurs or pulse rate varies widely, withhold the drug ■ Administer the drug with food to promote absorption ■ Institute safety precautions to prevent injury ■ Educate the patient that this drug may mask signs of thyrotoxicosis and hypoglycemia
ALPHA-1 BLOCKERS	
prazosin (Minipress)	■ Counsel the patient not to stop the drug abruptly ■ Institute safety precautions to minimize the risk of injury from orthostatic hypotension; counsel the patient to change positions slowly ■ Explain that the drug may cause sexual dysfunction; encourage the patient to verbalize feelings related to this condition ■ Educate patients that they should avoid exercising in hot weather while taking this medication ■ Counsel patients to avoid consuming alcohol with this medication

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 13-1: (*CONT.*)
AGENTS USED FOR ANXIETY DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
ALPHA-2 DELTA LIGANDS	
gabapentin (Neurontin) pregabalin (Lyrica)	■ Institute safety precautions to prevent injury secondary to sedative effects of the drug; warn the patient of these effects including decreased response time and slowed reflexes ■ Counsel patients to avoid consuming alcohol with this medication ■ Educate the patient regarding the signs and symptoms of angioedema ■ Urge the patient not to abruptly discontinue this medication. It should be tapered off more than 1 week ■ Educate the patient that there may be a possible worsening of depressive symptoms or suicidal ideation, especially if the patient also has a concurrent depressive disorder ■ *For gabapentin*: Counsel patients that if they are taking antacids such as Maalox, they should separate dosing by 2 hours

Note: See Chapter 11 for a discussion of antipsychotic agents; see Chapter 12 for a discussion of antidepressants.

Hoarding Disorder

Empirical evidence is promising for this disorder, particularly with CBT specifically designed for hoarding disorder and medication therapies (SNRIs). There is ongoing research targeting new strategies to address neurocognitive difficulties in hoarding such as the use of psychostimulants (Saxena & Sumner, 2014).

Posttraumatic Stress Disorder

SSRIs and SNRIs are considered first-line agents for treating PTSD. Second-line agents include the novel alpha-2 delta ligands, gabapentin or pregabalin, tricyclic antidepressants, and MAOIs. Due to the wide variation of symptoms that comprise PTSD, pharmacological agents often leave patients with residual symptoms, such as insomnia, because one medication usually cannot manage all the symptoms. Therefore, most patients diagnosed with PTSD do not respond to monotherapy (Stahl, 2013). Research has shown that prazosin, an alpha-1 blocker, is effective for patients in whom trauma-related nightmares and insomnia are prominent complaints. In addition, strong evidence supports it as an alternative treatment of PTSD, particularly for augmentation (Berger et al., 2009). Other medications that may be used as adjunctive treatment include the antidepressants mirtazapine and naltrexone (Revia) and acamprosate (Campral), which are used for alcohol dependence and abuse. The anticonvulsants such as lamotrigine and topiramate may also be used.

Social Phobia

SSRIs and SNRIs are considered first-line agents for treating social phobia. However, the use of benzodiazepines as monotherapy is not well supported (Stahl, 2013). Tricyclic antidepressants and antidepressants such as mirtazapine and trazodone are not typically effective. MAOIs have shown some benefits, as have the novel alpha-2-delta ligands, gabapentin, or pregabalin. For patients with specific types of social phobia, such as performance anxiety, beta-blockers that are most notably used to treat hypertension can be useful. Like treatments used for PTSD, adjunctive treatments include naltrexone and acamprosate and the anticonvulsants such as lamotrigine and topiramate.

Various groups of medications can be used to treat anxiety disorders. SSRIs and SNRIs are the primary agents used. Benzodiazepines also may be used in conjunction with these agents.

Preemptive or Prophylactic Treatments

A newly emerging concept for the treatment of anxiety disorders is called preemptive or prophylactic treatment. This concept is based on blocking the formation of fear conditioning by suppressing the presynaptic changes in the brain. This is accomplished with the use of "early fear extinction learning paradigms" or with medications.

There is moderate quality evidence that hydrocortisone (a steroid medication) prevented PTSD and/or reduced the severity of PTSD symptoms. Many researchers previously thought that there may be a clinical application for the use of propranolol (a beta-blocker), escitalopram (a type of antidepressant), temazepam (a tranquillizer), or gabapentin (an anticonvulsant) in preventing PTSD but there are no empirical data to support this (Amos, Stein, & Ipser, 2014).

Herbal Preparations

The use of herbal preparations as alternative therapies for anxiety is common practice. Attitudes that herbal remedies are "natural," have fewer side effects, and are readily available contribute to their appeal. Two herbal products commonly used to self-medicate symptoms of anxiety are valerian and kava kava.

The efficacy of kava kava (*Piper methysticum*) has been the subject of research. One meta-analysis documented greater efficacy of kava kava versus placebo for anxiety symptoms across several studies (Pittler & Ernst, 2000). One of the most extensive randomized, placebo-controlled studies evaluated the effects of kava kava in 100 patients diagnosed with agoraphobia, specific phobia, GAD, and adjustment disorder with anxiety (Volz & Kieser, 1997). Patients treated with 70 mg of kavalactones (the agent responsible for kava kava's psychotropic properties) three times daily showed significant improvement after 8 weeks of treatment, with continued benefit at 24 weeks.

A more recent, 8-week study involved 75 patients who had been clinically diagnosed with GAD. The participants were given either kava or placebo, and anxiety levels were regularly assessed.

At the end of the study, the kava group showed a significant reduction in anxiety compared with the placebo group. For those diagnosed with moderate-to-severe GAD, kava had an even greater effect in reducing anxiety.

In the end, 26% of the kava group were in remission from their symptoms compared with 6% of the placebo group.

Kava was also well tolerated. The findings showed no significant difference among the two groups for liver function, which had previously been a concern for kava's medicinal use.

Furthermore, there were no significant adverse reactions that could be attributed to kava and no difference in withdrawal or addiction between the groups (Pedersen, 2013).

Kava kava is associated with several side effects including morning fatigue and mild gastrointestinal disturbances (Pepping, 1999). Toxic doses (greater than 300 g) may, however, cause progressive ataxia, muscle weakness, ascending paralysis, and scaling of skin on the extremities (Singh & Blumenthal, 1997). Additionally, kava kava can potentiate the effects of central nervous system depressants, including ethanol, barbiturates, and benzodiazepines. Therefore, concomitant use should be avoided. Finally, kava kava should be avoided during pregnancy due to the potential for loss of uterine tone (Brinker, 1998). Although kava kava may be an effective and well-tolerated anxiolytic agent for many patients, no evidence exists to suggest that it is more effective than antidepressants or benzodiazepines.

Another herbal preparation is valerian (*Valeriana officinalis*). Valerian has been studied using multiple dosages and preparations mostly as an herbal sleep remedy. Valerian has also been used in persons with mild anxiety, but the data supporting this indication are limited.

In one randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, researchers compared valerian with propranolol, a valerian–propranolol combination, and placebo in an experimental stress situation in 48 healthy adults. Unlike propranolol, valerian had no effect on physiological arousal such as increased respiratory rate and increased heart rate, but significantly decreased subjective feelings of anxiety (Kohnen & Oswald, 1988).

In another preliminary, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, 36 individuals with a diagnosis of GAD were treated with placebo, diazepam, in a dosage of 2.5 mg three times daily, or valerian extract in a dosage of 50 mg three times daily for 4 weeks. Dosage was regulated at 1 week if an interviewing psychiatrist deemed an increase or decrease necessary. Although the study was limited by a small sample size, relatively low dosages of the active agents, and a short duration of treatment, the researcher found a significant reduction in the psychic factor of the Hamilton Anxiety Scale with diazepam and valerian (Andreatini, Sartori, Seabra, & Leite, 2002).

A third randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial compared 120 mg of kava, 600 mg of valerian, and placebo taken daily for 7 days in relieving physiological measures of stress induced under laboratory conditions in 54 healthy volunteers. Valerian and kava were found to significantly decrease systolic blood pressure, heart rate, and self-reported stress (Cropley, Cave, Ellis, & Middleton, 2002).

Side effects associated with valerian include sedation and withdrawal symptoms similar to those of benzodiazepine withdrawal following abrupt discontinuation. Although adverse effects and toxicity have not been adequately

studied, four cases of hepatotoxicity associated with valerian use have been reported (Plushner, 2000). Additional studies are required to determine if valerian has any significant and sustained anxiolytic properties.

Two herbal preparations are commonly used for self-medication with anxiety disorders. These are kava kava and valerian. Further research is needed to determine their effectiveness.

Some patients may use Ayurvedic herbal preparations such as *Bacopa monnieri* and *Centella asiatica.* Ayurveda is an advanced, highly integrated system of medicine that employs diverse herbal, mind–body, and energetic treatment modalities. These herbal preparations have been used for thousands of years to treat symptom patterns that resemble generalized anxiety. Double-blind controlled trials suggest that both herbs effectively reduce general anxiety symptoms (Stough et al., 2001). Some studies suggest that an Ayurvedic herbal compound formula, "Geriforte," may also alleviate symptoms of generalized anxiety (Shah, Nayak, & Sethi, 1993). Although no serious adverse effects have been reported when these preparations are used at recommended dosages, patients who use Ayurvedic herbal preparations should be supervised by a trained Ayurvedic physician.

Individual Psychotherapy

Psychotherapy, when used to treat most of the anxiety disorders, is typically oriented toward combating the patient's low-level, ever-present anxiety. Poor planning skills, high stress levels, and difficulty in relaxing often accompany such anxiety. According to the APA Practice Guidelines (2006), psychodynamic therapy (a form of psychotherapy) has, from its beginning, been concerned with responses to traumatic events and therefore is particularly useful for patients diagnosed with PTSD. Psychodynamic psychotherapists employ a mixture of supportive and insight-oriented interventions based on an assessment of the patient's symptoms, developmental history, personality, and available social supports. An ongoing assessment of the patient's ability to tolerate exploration of the trauma is also addressed (APA Practice Guidelines, 2006).

Eye Movement Desensitization and Reprocessing

Eye movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR) is a fairly new type of psychotherapy. It is growing in popularity, particularly for treating PTSD. EMDR is a unique approach to psychological issues. It does not rely on talk therapy or medications. Instead, EMDR uses a patient's own rapid, rhythmic eye movements to dampen the power of emotionally charged memories of past traumatic events. It is believed that these past events have set the groundwork for the current situations that trigger dysfunctional emotions, beliefs, and sensations, and the positive experience needed to enhance future adaptive behaviors and mental health. Many EMDR patients also receive medications.

During treatment, various procedures and protocols are used to address the entire clinical picture. One of the procedural elements is "dual stimulation" using bilateral eye movements, tones, or taps. During the reprocessing phases, the patient momentarily attends to past memories, present triggers, or anticipated future experiences while simultaneously focusing on a set of external stimuli. During that time, patients generally experience the emergence of insight, changes in memories, or new associations (Hamblen, Schnurr, Rosenberg, & Eftekhari, 2009).

Although still considered controversial by some, the American Psychological Association has noted that EMDR is effective in treating symptoms of acute and chronic PTSD. It may be particularly useful for people who have trouble talking about the traumatic events they have experienced. The Department of Veterans Affairs and the Department of Defense (2010) have jointly issued clinical practice guidelines. These guidelines "strongly recommend" EDMR for the treatment of PTSD in both military and nonmilitary populations. They also note that this approach has been as effective as other psychological treatments in some studies, and less effective in others.

Biofeedback

BIOFEEDBACK, also referred to as *applied psychophysiological feedback*, is the process of displaying involuntary or subthreshold physiological processes, usually by electronic instrumentation, and learning to voluntarily influence those processes by making changes in cognition. It provides a visible and experiential demonstration of the mind–body connection. Biofeedback is also a therapeutic tool to facilitate learning how to self-regulate autonomic functions, such as heart rate and respiration for improving health (Stress Management Health Center, 2007). Although uncommon today, in part due to cost, health care professionals can be specifically trained and certified to assist patients to decrease stress and anxiety through biofeedback.

Functional Neurosurgery

Neurosurgery as a form of treatment for psychiatric issues has been controversial historically. This history is marred

by misguided applications of erroneous or overly simplistic approaches to psychiatric disease, often resulting in significant negative outcomes including morbidity. The earliest form of neurosurgery for psychiatric conditions or "psychosurgery" was prefrontal and transorbital lobotomies. These were crude procedures that, if not resulting in death, caused irreversible personality changes and cognitive impairment. Today, due to the level of precision available with modern neurosurgical procedures, advances in neuroimaging, and ethical considerations, there has been a cautious resurgence of surgical techniques used to treat psychiatric disorders. These techniques are referred to as neurosurgical lesioning because they ablate a biological function within a certain part of the brain.

Currently, four lesioning neurosurgical procedures are used for the treatment of OCD and major depressive disorders: cingulotomy (lesioning the anterior portion of the cingulate gyrus, interrupting tracts between the cingulate gyrus and the frontal lobes), capsulotomy (lesioning in the anterior limb of the internal capsule, which serves as a relay route between cortical structures and the thalamus), subcaudate tractotomy (interrupting the relay between the cortex and thalamus via the striatum), and limbic leucotomy (essentially a combination of subcaudate tractotomy and cingulotomy). Research on the procedures has shown positive outcomes as evidenced by a decrease in objective measures of symptom report as well as increase in subjective reports of well-being (Shah, Pesiridou, Baltuch, Malone, & O'Reardon, 2008). Strides in neuroimaging and a greater understanding of neural circuitry have increased understanding of the neurobiological basis of psychiatric disorders. Based on this understanding, deep brain stimulation (DBS) has emerged as a potential neurosurgical treatment intervention that is performed without producing an irreversible lesion.

Therapeutic Neuromodulation

Therapeutic neuromodulation refers to a group of technologies that change the brain by capitalizing on the electrochemical nature of neurons and disrupting the functional connections in the neuronal networks of specific diseases within the brain (Brock & Demitrack, 2014). Technologies approved by the Federal Drug Administration (FDA) for use in psychiatric disorders include electroconvulsive therapies (ECT), transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS), DBS, and vagus nerve stimulation (VNS). Two of these technologies, DBS and TMS, are being used in the treatment of specific anxiety-based disorders.

DBS electrically stimulates specific neuronal networks by implanting electrodes in the brain. Over the past decade, DBS has been studied as a treatment for very severe, debilitating, treatment-resistant OCD with promising results. One study in particular suggested that stimulation of the subthalamic nucleus in individuals with severe forms of OCD may reduce symptoms but is associated with substantial risk of serious adverse events. Out of a total of 17 patients in whom stimulators were implanted, 11 had serious adverse events (Mallet et al., 2008). Based on this study, the FDA, on February 19, 2009, approved the use of an implanted brain device for patients with severe OCD. The FDA's "humanitarian device exemption" permits use of the device only on the most severely ill people with OCD. Fewer than 4,000 patients have such drastic, treatment-resistant OCD.

In transcranial magnetic stimulation, an intracerebral electrical current is produced by the application of pulsed magnetic fields generated in an insulated coil held against the location on the surface of the head above the targeted brain region (Brock & Demitrack, 2014). The first TMS device was approved by the FDA for the treatment of depression in 2008 after a large, randomized controlled trial revealed robust evidence that TMS produces a significantly greater decrease in depression severity, response rate, and remission rate (O'Reardon et al., 2007).

Positive research outcomes in the use of TMS are also evident in treating symptoms of PTSD. However, a consensus regarding specific device parameters has not been agreed on and further studies are warranted. Research outcomes focused on OCD have been modest and, like the research in PTSD, further consolidation of parameters is needed (Brock & Demitrack, 2014).

Although neurosurgery may be performed to treat OCD, DBS, initially used for treating Parkinson's disease, is showing positive results for treating severe OCD.

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

CBT incorporates a range of psychotherapeutic theories and practices including behavior therapy, behavior modification, and cognitive therapy. A large number of well-constructed studies have shown CBT to be highly useful in treating depression and anxiety disorders. Therefore, CBT is considered a first-line treatment option depending on the presenting symptoms and severity of anxiety (Carr & McNulty, 2006). **Evidence-Based Practice 13-1** highlights a study comparing CBT and psychodynamic therapy.

The hallmark of CBT is an intense focus on thought processes and belief systems. Patients learn to identify problematic beliefs and thought patterns, which are often irrational or unrealistic, and replace them with a more

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 13-1: CBT VERSUS PSYCHODYNAMIC THERAPY

STUDY

Leichsenring, F., Salzer, S., Jaeger, U., Kächele, H., Kreische, R., & Leweke, F. (2009). Short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy and cognitive behavioral therapy in generalized anxiety disorder: A randomized, controlled trial. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 166*(8), 875–881.

SUMMARY

This study compared the outcome of short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy with CBT in patients diagnosed with GAD. Patients with GAD were randomly assigned to receive either CBT (N = 29) or short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy (N = 28). Treatment included up to 30 weekly sessions. The primary outcome measure was the Hamilton Anxiety Rating Scale. Assessments were done at the completion of treatment and after 6 months. The study revealed that both therapies provided large, statistically significant improvements in anxiety symptoms. There were no significant differences in the Hamilton Anxiety Rating Scale between therapies or by two self-reported measures of anxiety. However, CBT was found to be superior in measures specific to trait anxiety, worry, and depressive symptoms.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This study is helpful in providing evidence that CBT and individual psychodynamic therapy are effective treatment strategies. Although nurse generalists are not directly involved in these therapies, they play a major role in reinforcing the skills and techniques used with and learned from them. This study also impacts advanced nursing practice, as nurses trained at advanced levels are able to provide both CBT and short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *The study focused on patients with GAD. How might another anxiety disorder, such as OCD, impact the use of these two therapies and the results of the study?*
2. *Imagine that you had an anxiety disorder. Which of these two techniques do you think you would prefer and why?*

rational and realistic view. This is generally accomplished in a supportive environment where the treatment professional assigns homework, highlights concepts, and assists the patient through a path of self-discovery and change.

CBT focuses on the present rather than the past, and involves working collaboratively with patients, teaching them cognitive and behavioral skills. Although there are a variety of CBT components, some of the more common techniques are presented here.

Informational Interventions

Providing education is one of the most basic yet highly effective strategies used by psychiatric-mental health care professionals. This intervention is particularly useful with clients diagnosed with GAD. Offering explanations about the nature of the disorder often demystifies the somatic sensations that patients experience. In addition, providing information helps to identify maladaptive thought

processes and worrying as primary causes of anxiety. These interventions clarify for the patient the anxious nature of their thoughts and avoidance patterns in phobias and give them the opportunity to understand their symptoms. For patients diagnosed with PTSD, simply having a discussion of dissociation and flashbacks helps to normalize and decrease the fear triggered by these symptoms.

Self-Monitoring and Symptom Diary

One of the most effective tools for patients diagnosed with panic attacks is a diary or protocol of panic attacks. To monitor the occurrence of anxiety symptoms, the ability to identify anxious thoughts and the subsequent behaviors, such as avoidance, is essential to provide a rational description of the actual problem and to evaluate the treatment process. Patients are informed that this will help in the assessment of the frequency and nature of their panic attacks and provide information about the relationship of panic symptoms to internal stimuli, such as emotions and images, and to external stimuli, such as the situation, behavior, and substances.

Cognitive Restructuring

Cognitive restructuring techniques are used to identify beliefs about the meaning and the consequences of somatic symptoms. Catastrophic misinterpretations distort the meaning of somatic symptoms or overestimate the probability or the severity of feared outcomes. Patients are encouraged to consider the evidence and to think of alternative possible outcomes following the experience of the bodily sensation. Part of this process involves identifying the likely origin of the feared sensations and/or any misinformation about the meaning of the sensations (APA Practice Guidelines, 2006).

CBT requires that a patient focuses on the present and examines problem beliefs and thought patterns. The patient then learns through education, self-monitoring, and cognitive restructuring how to replace these problematic thought patterns with more rational and realistic views.

Exposure Therapies

Exposure treatment involves presenting a patient with anxiety-producing stimuli for a long enough time to decrease the intensity of his or her emotional reaction. As a result, the feared situation or item no longer makes the patient anxious. Exposure treatment should be carried out in real situations whenever possible, called in vivo exposure. Alternatively, it can be done through imagination, which is called imaginal exposure. **SYSTEMATIC DESENSITIZATION** is a type of imaginal exposure where the patient is asked to imagine certain aspects of the feared object or situation combined with relaxation. Graduated exposure refers to exposing the patient to the feared situation in a gradual manner. **FLOODING** is a technique that exposes the patient to the anxiety-provoking or feared situation all at once. The patient is exposed to the stimuli until the anxiety and fear subside. Flooding, also called implosion therapy, is potentially dangerous, and should only be undertaken after careful consultation with a qualified practitioner.

Currently, the military is looking at a type of therapy that recreates the sights, smells, sounds, and feeling of combat using a "virtual reality helmet." This would provide a tool for veterans suffering with PTSD to vividly and safely confront their war experiences and allow reintegration of the parts of the self that were unable to tolerate the trauma when it originally occurred.

A modern type of exposure therapy, virtual reality exposure therapy (VRET), is widely used by the military to treat symptoms of PTSD. In VRET, patients utilize computer-generated, three-dimensional, interactive environments to facilitate the emotional processing of traumatic events. Some nonmilitary mental health centers use VRET for PTSD as well as for specific phobias and panic disorder (USC Institute of Creative Technology, 2015).

Exposure therapy can occur in real situations (in vivo exposure) or through the imagination (imaginal exposure).

Abdominal Breathing

When people are anxious, they tend to take rapid, shallow breaths that come directly from the chest. This type of breathing is called thoracic or chest breathing. Chest breathing disrupts the oxygen and carbon dioxide levels in the body, resulting in increased heart rate, dizziness, muscle tension, and other physical sensations. Blood is not being properly oxygenated and this may signal a stress response that contributes to anxiety and panic attacks. Teaching the patient how to perform abdominal or diaphragmatic breathing in which breaths are deep and even is a simple and effective way to decrease anxious symptoms.

Progressive Muscle Relaxation

Progressive muscle relaxation is a tension-reducing technique that involves the systematic tension and relaxation of specific muscle groups. Starting with the muscles in the face, the participant completely tenses all muscles and holds the tension for several seconds (usually to the count of 10). Next, the person completely relaxes for the same period of time, then repeats the process with the next set of muscles, such as the neck, the shoulders, and so on, until every area of the body has been relaxed. With practice, the participant learns to relax the body completely within seconds.

Exercise

Patients who are anxious frequently engage in strenuous physical activity to alleviate symptoms. Open studies suggest that regular aerobic exercise of at least 20 to 30 minutes per day or strength training reduces anxiety (Paluska & Schwenk, 2000). Findings of a prospective, 10-week study of exercise in persons who experience panic episodes suggest that regular walking or jogging (4 miles, three times per week) reduces the severity and frequency of panic episodes **(**Stevinson, 1999).

Guided Imagery

Guided imagery is a mind–body exercise based on prompting individuals to formulate meaningful mental pictures to achieve relaxation and reduce anxiety. Guided imagery has been shown to reduce anxiety, decrease the use of anxiolytics, and improve patient satisfaction in a variety of medical settings (Miller, 2003). Many guided imagery scripts include common elements such as asking the patient to sit or lie in a comfortable position, quieting the mind, removing negative thoughts and images, and calling to mind a vivid image or scenario that is calming and relaxing (a "safe place"). The content of a guided imagery script can include quiet and peaceful music with focus on a safe place where one feels secure and relaxed, or it may involve more active, physical sensations such as playing and winning a tennis match. For example, language used in a guided imagery exercise may be as follows:

> Position yourself as comfortably as you can, shifting your weight so that you're allowing your body to be fully supported by your chair or couch. . . . Take a deep, full, cleansing breath . . . inhaling as fully as you can . . . breathing deep into the belly if you can . . . and breathing all the way out. . . . Imagine a place where you feel safe and peaceful and easy . . . a place either make-believe or real.

Music

Music and sound are used in many cultures and healing traditions for anxiety-reducing benefits. Studies have shown that music alters a person's psychophysiology (Kerr, Walsh, & Marshall, 2001). Soothing music has been shown to produce a hypometabolic response characteristic of relaxation in which autonomic, immune, endocrine, and neuropeptide systems are altered. Similarly, music therapy can produce desired psychological responses such as a reduction of anxiety and fear (Harris, 2009).

Dietary Changes

Symptoms of generalized anxiety are frequently associated with a common condition known as reactive hypoglycemia, in which blood glucose drops to abnormally low levels following a glucose challenge. Patients who experience anxiety related to this condition benefit from dietary changes such as a low carbohydrate and high protein intake, consumption of foods with different glycemic indices, and avoidance of caffeine (Bell & Forse, 1999).

In addition, caffeine use is associated with an increased risk of anxiety. Caffeine consumption increases serum epinephrine, norepinephrine, and cortisol levels, and can result in feelings of "nervousness" in healthy adults or, in persons who are predisposed, increased feelings of generalized anxiety or panic episodes (Uhde, Boulenger, Jimerson, & Post, 1984). Patients who have chronic anxiety report that symptoms diminish when they abstain from caffeine (Bruce & Lader, 1989).

Moreover, a dietary deficiency of the amino acid tryptophan leads to reductions in brain serotonin levels. Persons who experience generalized anxiety or panic episodes reported more severe symptoms when they were being treated with an amino acid formula that did not include tryptophan (Klaassen, Klumperbeek, & Deutz, 1998).

Chronic stress and anxiety can also deplete the body's stores of vital nutrients. Many patients who suffer from agoraphobia are deficient in certain B-complex vitamins. This also may be a factor in other anxiety-related disorders. Vitamin B8 or inositol has been studied in patients suffering from panic disorder and agoraphobia. Results show that those taking inositol achieved a significant reduction in both severity and frequency of panic attacks and agoraphobia symptoms compared with the placebo group. Inositol has also been the focus of renewed research interest because of its role as a precursor of phosphatidylinositol, an important second messenger in the brain and an integral part of serotonin, norepinephrine, and other neurotransmitter receptors. Findings from several double-blind studies suggest that high doses of inositol reduce many anxiety symptoms that respond to SSRIs, including

panic episodes, agoraphobia, obsessions, and compulsions (Belmaker, Levine, & Kofman, 1998).

Patients with anxiety disorders can learn techniques such as abdominal breathing, progressive muscle relaxation, and guided imagery and can use exercise, music, and diet to assist in reducing anxiety.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Patients with anxiety-based disorders often have comorbidities such as substance abuse, diabetes, and cardiac or respiratory disorders. As a result, nurses will encounter these patients in general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. It is paramount that nurses gain a firm understanding of the nursing process guided by the national initiatives centered on patient safety and quality of care known as the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses or QSEN. Applying the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective allows nurses to inherently integrate QSEN competencies. **Table 13-1** outlines QSEN competencies. **Plan of Care 13-1** provides an example for a patient with an anxiety disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

According to Peplau (1991), the nursing process is therapeutic when the nurse and the patient can come to know and to respect what is the same and what is different in one another, thereby coming together to share in the solution of a problem (QSEN competency 1). Unique challenges can occur when working with patients experiencing anxiety disorders. Symptoms may be vague or, if they are not physiologically based, may not be visible. Emotional problems can also manifest as different symptoms, arising from numerous causes. Similarly, past events may lead to very different types of presenting behaviors or symptoms. Many patients are unable to describe their problems. They may be highly withdrawn, highly anxious, or out of touch with reality. Their ability to participate in the problem-solving process may also be limited if they see themselves as powerless.

Self-Assessment

Before and in order to respectfully and objectively work with a patient, nurses must complete a personal self-assessment through the process of reflection. Reflecting and examining oneself develop both insight and self-awareness (Gustafsson & Fagerberg, 2004) and is an essential component within nursing if satisfactory levels of care are to be maintained at a professional standard (Kuokkanen & Leino-Kilpi, 2000). Reflecting on one's own attitudes, values, and prejudices is a critical component of being able to calmly intervene and work with patients who suffer with anxiety disorders. Especially important is the need to monitor one's own anxiety while working with patients who are anxious. Failure to do so may actually increase the level of anxiety in the patient. The patient will sense the anxiety, which will fuel his or her own anxiety (QSEN competency 1, 3).

The self-aware nurse is pivotal in coming together with a patient to assess the patient's understanding of his or her anxiety symptoms. This is an essential step for developing empathy. **Consumer Perspective 13-1** provides insight into what it is like to experience an anxiety disorder from the patient's viewpoint.

TABLE 13-1: QUALITY AND SAFETY EDUCATION FOR NURSES (QSEN) COMPETENCIES

1. **Patient-centered care:** Recognize the patient or designee as the source of control and full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for the patient's preferences, values, and needs.
2. **Quality improvement:** Use data to monitor the outcomes of care processes, and use improvement methods to design and test changes to continuously improve the quality and safety of health care systems.
3. **Safety:** Minimize risk of harm to patients, and provide optimal health care through both system effectiveness and individual performance.
4. **Informatics:** Use information and technology to communicate, manage knowledge, mitigate error, and support decision making.
5. **Teamwork and collaboration:** Function effectively within nursing and interpersonal teams, fostering open communication, mutual respect, and shared decision making to achieve quality patient care.
6. **Evidence-based practice (EBP):** Integrate best current evidence with clinical expertise and patient/family preferences and values for delivery of optimal health care.

Source: Varcarolis (2015).

PLAN OF CARE 13-1:
THE PATIENT WITH AN ANXIETY DISORDER (WITH PANIC) AND OBSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Anxiety (*severe*); related to exposure to traumatic event; manifested by perceived threats and recurrent panic attacks. Ineffective coping; related to anxiety of perceived need to check and recheck things; manifested by participation in repeated ritualistic behavior to reduce anxiety.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate participation in fewer ritualistic behaviors with an improved level of independent function.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the level of the patient's anxiety; stay with the patient and provide for safety and security	Determining the level of the patient's anxiety provides a baseline from which to intervene
Maintain a calm, reassuring approach; keep verbal exchanges short and direct	Maintaining a calm, reassuring approach prevents adding to the patient's anxiety Keeping exchanges short and direct reduces the risk of overwhelming an already overwhelmed patient; a patient experiencing significant anxiety has difficulty focusing and concentrating
Administer prescribed antianxiety agents if indicated	Administering antianxiety agents helps to reduce or control feelings of anxiety
Encourage the use of appropriate defense mechanisms	Using appropriate defense mechanisms can help to reduce anxiety
Once level of anxiety has diminished, assist the patient in exploring precipitating factors for the anxiety	Identifying precipitating factors can help to prevent recurrence
Assist the patient in identifying signs and symptoms of increasing anxiety	Being able to identify signs and symptoms facilitates early intervention
Work with the patient to determine usual methods of problem solving; identify effective and ineffective methods	Identifying usual methods of coping provides information about possible maladaptive strategies and opportunities for teaching more adaptive ones
Teach the patient various methods for reducing anxiety, such as controlled breathing, relaxation, and physical activity. Assist the patient in practicing appropriate strategies; provide positive reinforcement	Using various methods for reducing anxiety provides the patient with options to manage anxiety effectively. Employing breathing and relaxation techniques interferes with sympathetic nervous stimulation associated with increasing anxiety. Practicing promotes success; positive reinforcement promotes self-esteem

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 13-1: (*CONT.*)
THE PATIENT WITH AN ANXIETY DISORDER (WITH PANIC) AND OBSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Powerlessness; related to perceived inability to control compulsions; manifested by worry and sense of despair regarding ritualistic behavior.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate a gradual increase in ability to manage anxiety.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient to view the situation objectively	Viewing a situation objectively helps to promote feelings of control over the situation
Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings associated with the performance of ritualistic behavior; suggest that the patient keep a log or diary of the behaviors to help identify possible triggers for the behaviors	Identifying feelings and triggers associated with behaviors is necessary before behaviors can be addressed
Initially, allow the patient to engage in behavior	Allowing behavior initially is necessary to prevent the patient from experiencing overwhelming anxiety
Work with the patient to gradually develop a plan or schedule to limit participation in the behavior; help the patient to make changes in small, manageable steps; assist the patient in engaging in another activity or addressing other feelings	Limiting participation promotes adaptation and gradual increase in control over behavior; using small manageable steps fosters success and promotes feelings of control
Assist the patient with implementing prescribed therapies such as relaxation and guided imagery	Implementing appropriate therapies helps the patient replace maladaptive coping mechanisms with adaptive ones, thus promoting feelings of control
Provide positive feedback for accomplishments	Providing positive feedback fosters self-esteem and feelings of control

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

Environmental Considerations

Providing a safe, comfortable environment with minimal external stimulation is necessary to establish an atmosphere of trust. Once trust is established, the nurse must provide an assessment whereby the patient feels there is genuine interest, acceptance, and positive regard. This is accomplished primarily through therapeutic communication techniques including restating, reflecting, and clarifying. (See Chapter 3 for more information on therapeutic communication; QSEN competency 1 and 3.)

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 13-1: A PATIENT WITH AN ANXIETY DISORDER

This is what is left
Periphery…Outline…Profile
A professional, perhaps
She knows the words
They make sense sometimes
But then she goes home
…void of feeling
…void of sense
imploding with rage
seeping feelings
scared to live
afraid to die
Remaining in Hell

This was a poem written by Marie when she was 27 years old. By that time she was addicted to alcohol and marijuana. She had entered individual psychotherapy at the age of 25 years and was diagnosed with PTSD related to childhood sexual abuse and ritualistic satanic abuse. She attended a year-long group conducted by two registered nurses for "survivors of incest." Experiences learned in this group motivated her to attend Narcotics Anonymous and by the age of 29 years she stopped abusing alcohol and drugs. Although her symptoms were slowly improving she still experienced a tremendous amount of anxiety. She therefore started CBT with a psychologist. One of her journal entries during this time reads: "*I feel lost. I'm anxious. I'm shaking. I feel very inadequate and I'm not sure why. I know I am feeling a lot of shame and I don't understand the thinking that leads to this shame. I don't believe that I have any control over my feelings. They command me and take the life out of me.*"

Today Marie does quite well. She is a health care professional who works full time and is involved in a healthy, committed relationship. She continues to participate in Narcotics Anonymous, attends individual psychotherapy primarily using CBT techniques, and takes an SNRI and medication to help with a sleep disturbance. Marie states, "It took many different types of therapies by different professionals to help me tackle my anxiety symptoms. I needed different interventions during different times in my life. I am very grateful for the professionals that took the time to really listen to me and stick by me when I didn't believe in myself."

Nurses need to be self-aware of feelings related to anxiety disorders and how they display anxiety during their interactions with patients to prevent adding to the patient's already heightened state.

Baseline Assessment

A baseline assessment is needed for a patient who is experiencing a new-onset anxiety. This baseline includes a detailed physical and psychosocial symptom profile. **Table 13-2** summarizes key physical and psychosocial manifestations of anxiety.

Because many medical conditions and medications can produce symptoms that mimic anxiety disorders, an assessment of anxiety must be completed after ruling out any potential medical or medication-induced etiologies. Once this is completed, it is important to obtain a detailed history including:

- *Onset or precipitating factors that led to current symptoms*
- *Personal history including ethnic, cultural, religious, or spiritual background*
- *History of intake of illicit drugs, alcohol, nicotine, caffeine, herbal preparations, and over-the-counter drugs*
- *Current medication history*
- *Past psychiatric history, including comorbid mood disorders and psychotic disorders*
- *Family psychiatric history*

TABLE 13-2: PHYSICAL AND PSYCHOSOCIAL MANIFESTATIONS OF ANXIETY

PHYSICAL MANIFESTATIONS	PSYCHOSOCIAL MANIFESTATIONS
• Shakiness • Sensation of lump in throat • Trembling • Choking sensation • Muscle aches • Dry mouth • Sweating • Numbness and tingling of body parts • Cold or clammy hands • Upset stomach • Dizziness • Nausea • Vomiting • Diarrhea • Vertigo • Fatigue • Racing or pounding heart • Decreased sexual desire • Hyperventilation • Sleep disturbances	• Jitteriness • Fear of falling asleep due to disturbing dreams • Irritability • Unrealistic or excessive worry • Tension • Sense of impending doom • Ritualistic behaviors • Poor concentration • Avoidance • Fear of being away from home • Isolation • Irrational fear of strangers • Impatience • Exaggerated startle reactions

A detailed personal history is crucial because the context in which anxiety is experienced, its meaning, and responses to it are culturally mediated. It also provides information about the severity of the patient's anxiety level from which the nurse will determine the most appropriate intervention and promotes understanding of the patient's mental health beliefs and practices. For example, it is critical to understand whether a patient believes that the anxiety symptoms are because he or she is a "bad person" or is being punished for past actions.

Assessing the patient from a cultural perspective will also allow the nurse to understand what is considered a cultural norm for the patient. Providing culturally congruent care will optimize chances for better outcomes. For example, during assessment, the nurse discovers that the patient believes that meditation is beneficial and has some basic skills in performing it. This information would help the nurse apply the patient's beliefs and knowledge to the concepts of guided imagery and deep-breathing techniques in managing the anxiety.

Evaluation of a patient's anxiety symptoms begins with an overall mental status examination. This includes assessment of mood, affect, speech, perceptual disturbances, thought process and content, sensorium, cognition, judgment, and insight. As with any psychiatric-mental health disorder, the nurse needs to evaluate for any suicidal, homicidal, aggressive, or self-harm tendencies at this time. If present, the nurse must intervene to ensure the safety of all involved. Once the assessment phase is completed, the nurse, together with the patient, identifies the priority problems and needs (QSEN competency 1, 3, and 4).

Two anxiety disorders, OCD and PTSD, require additional assessment information. If the patient has OCD, assessment may reveal the presence of obsessive thoughts, words, or mental images that persistently invade his or her mind. Common **OBSESSIONS** include thoughts of contamination (with insects, dirt, or stool), thoughts of violence (such as staging, shooting, or beating), repetitive doubts or worries about a tragic event such as death, and repeating or counting images, words, or objects in their environment. The patient understands that these obsessions are a product of his or her own mind but feels powerless over them. The assessment may also reveal the presence of **COMPULSIONS**, which are irrational and recurring impulses to repeat a specific behavior. Common compulsions include repetitive touching, counting, doing and undoing (opening and closing a door, for example), washing, and checking. These activities decrease the patient's anxiety level. It is important for the nurse to determine the time spent on obsessions or compulsions, the interference it causes in their daily life, the patient's level of resistance, the patient's feelings of control or lack of control over the obsessions and/or compulsions, and the distress it causes.

For the patient with PTSD, assessment may include the patient describing intense fear that cannot be "shut off." Patients often describe feelings of hopelessness, an exaggerated startle response, feeling emotionally numb and detached from the world, and nightmares of the traumatic

event or intrusive thoughts and images of the event during the day. This memory can be triggered by a sound, smell, action, or image and the patient may not know what the trigger is. Reliving the event as if it is actually happening is called a flashback. A thorough history will provide information of the traumatic event such as a history of combat action, childhood abuse, criminal assault, victims of a natural disaster, or a serious accident. The difference between whether a patient is experiencing posttraumatic stress versus acute traumatic stress is that in acute traumatic stress disorder the symptoms will peak and then alleviate within 1 month. If the symptoms persist then the patient has PTSD.

Patients experiencing anxiety demonstrate physical, psychological, and social symptoms. The nurse needs to be vigilant in assessment because many medical conditions and medications can present with similar symptoms.

Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

A patient seeking assistance on the basis of a need is often the first step in a dynamic learning experience from which a constructive next step in personal growth can occur (Peplau, 1991). Meeting patient-focused needs during the planning stage of the nursing process can only happen if the nurse has accurately completed an assessment of the patient and his or her perception of anxiety.

The nurse must also determine, based in part on the patient's ego strength, what treatment goals and plans would be most appropriate for the patient, thereby providing for the best outcomes. For example, planning to use desensitization for a patient who is still experiencing an acute stress reaction arising from a specific phobia could further increase anxiety to the point where the patient shuts down. Focusing on the patient's strengths identified in the assessment stage is key when planning interventions. Doing so will also allow for an increased sense of collaboration on the part of the patient (QSEN competency 1, 3).

Due to the varying assessment findings noted in patients and wide range of problems faced by patients with anxiety disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Anxiety related to diagnosis of terminal illness*
- *Ineffective coping related to difficulty concentrating, compulsive hand washing*
- *Risk for self-directed violence related to feelings of hopelessness*
- *Risk for other-directed violence related to feelings of anger*
- *Posttrauma syndrome related to childhood sexual abuse*
- *Powerlessness related to chronic illness*
- *Insomnia related to environmental changes*
- *Risk for impaired skin integrity related to compulsive hand washing*
- *Impaired social interaction related to ritualistic behaviors*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, outcomes for the nursing diagnosis of risk of ineffective coping related to compulsive hand washing may include the following:

- *The patient will express feelings of anxiety as they occur.*
- *The patient will reduce the amount of time spent each day on ritualistic compulsions.*
- *The patient will demonstrate techniques for interrupting ritualistic compulsions.*

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

Once patient-centered goals and interventions are planned, the implementation stage of the nursing process begins. For patients who suffer with anxiety disorders, the timing and pacing of interventions are critical. The key at this point is to determine how to intervene if the patient is experiencing severe, panic-level, or moderate anxiety responses.

During any phase of anxiety, nursing interventions must be protective and supportive. However, for those experiencing panic and severe levels of anxiety, patient safety is paramount. Medication administration is often an emergent intervention required. Thus, timing and pacing are critical when administering medications in this situation. Before administering medication, the nurse needs to understand what the patient is experiencing. For example, a patient experiencing flashbacks or intrusive imagery may have an altered perceptual state and not recognize the nurse as helpful. Patients at this level are often unable to process information clearly or use coping strategies. Thus, the nurse needs to approach the patient slowly and calmly. Additionally, the nurse needs to quickly establish a therapeutic alliance and make a human connection with the patient. Doing so will clarify that the nurse is there to support the patient and not to harm him or her. Once the medication is administered, the nurse then focuses on observing for side effects, assessing vital signs, and initiating appropriate psychoeducation about the medications and management of the disorder.

In addition to administering medications to patients experiencing severe levels of anxiety, the nurse would work to decrease environmental stimuli such as by dimming the lights and reducing noise levels. The nurse also intervenes to address the patient's physical signs and symptoms of anxiety such as trembling, muscle aches, sweating, rapid breathing, increased heart rate, difficulty sleeping, and dizziness. Helpful measures include using clear, simple instructions; demonstrating slow, deep, diaphragmatic breathing techniques; guiding the patient through visualization and imagery exercises; and helping the patient through progressive muscle relaxation techniques. **Therapeutic**

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 13-1: INTERVENTIONS FOR OCD

Ms. Cox is admitted to an inpatient psychiatric unit for obsessive thoughts that her hands are dirty and compulsive hand washing. The compulsive hand washing has resulted in skin breakdown and impaired social and professional functioning.

The nurse enters the patient's room and finds Ms. Cox sitting on her hands on her bed, rocking back and forth. The nurse gains permission to come in and sits down across from the patient. The nurse maintains a calm, pleasant demeanor and speaks in a slow, simple manner.	Showing respect strengthens the bond between the nurse and the patient and is a predictor of a successful intervention. Moving slowly and staying calm minimize the potential for an increase in anxiety.
Nurse: "Ms. Cox, you appear anxious. I would like to show you a way to help you relax." **Ms. Cox**: "Please, I need some help here. I'm trying not to obsess about my hands but I can't stop." (breathing rapidly)	Provides reassurance that you are there to empower the patient to learn a way to decrease her anxiety level.
Nurse: "Breathe through your nose with me." (Nurse takes three deep breaths through her nose; patient does the same) **Nurse**: "Great job. Now let's do some more breathwork." **Ms. Cox:** "Okay."	When anxiety levels are elevated, focus and concentration are limited. Shadowing is a simple way to demonstrate technique. Praise reinforces the behavior.
Nurse: "Breathe through your nose with me. Make your stomach move while breathing and not your chest." Nurse places her hands on her stomach and inhales for 3 seconds then exhales for 3 seconds and repeats the cycle several times until she observes a decrease in physical symptoms of anxiety (rapid breathing and rocking). Ms. Cox places her hands on her stomach and breathes with the nurse.	Slow, diaphragmatic breathing can relieve feelings of anxiety and decrease the heart rate. Placing her hands on her stomach takes the focus from sitting on them and diverts her attention to her breathing.
Nurse: "Now you continue breathing this way, inhaling for three seconds and exhaling for three seconds and repeating the cycle."	Nurse empowers Ms. Cox to do this technique independent of her. By focusing her attention on breathing and counting she is not obsessing about washing her hands.

Interaction 13-1 provides an example of an interaction between a nurse and a patient with OCD who is experiencing increased anxiety as she attempts to control her compulsive hand washing. Other appropriate interventions include identifying and modifying anxiety-provoking situations when possible and providing accepting, reassuring actions rather than those that are probing or challenging. Limiting the patient's interactions with other patients helps minimize the contagious aspects of anxiety. This action is particularly helpful on inpatient units.

When the patient's level of anxiety is reduced to a moderate or mild level, the nurse may implement insight-oriented or educative nursing interventions, which involve the patient in the problem-solving process (Stuart, 2005). These interventions may include assisting the patient to identify and describe his or her underlying feelings, encouraging physical activity to discharge energy, identifying ways to restructure thoughts and modify behaviors, using available resources, and testing new coping strategies. Throughout these interventions, the nurse maintains his or her presence with the patient to demonstrate trust and support and instill a sense of hopefulness that anxiety can be alleviated (QSEN competency 1, 2, 3, and 6). **Patient and Family Education 13-1** highlights some helpful tips for a patient with an anxiety disorder.

Additional interventions will vary widely depending on specific underlying anxiety responses and disorders. For example, evidenced based treatment for patients suffering with PTSD includes interventions based on EMDR or CBTs (Hamblen et al., 2009). This differs from interventions for patients suffering with specific phobias who often benefit from systematic desensitization as first-line treatment. Regardless of the treatments used, nurses need to ensure that the treatments are provided at the time when they will be most effective.

Nurses need to time and pace interventions appropriately based on the level of the patient's anxiety to ensure that the most appropriate interventions are being used at the appropriate time.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation occurs as a continuous, cyclical, and ongoing process throughout the nursing process. Evaluation within the context of the nursing process is dynamic, involving change in the patient's mental health status over time. This requires the nurse to gather new data, reevaluate nursing interventions, and modify the plan of care.

During the evaluation phase, the nurse reviews all activities during the previous phases and determines whether outcomes identified for the patient have been met. Once again, self-reflection is an invaluable tool at this point. This can be done by asking: Have I provided the best nursing practice for my patient? Is my patient better after the planned care? (QSEN competency 2).

During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse and the patient should reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient goals. Point out positives to the patient and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate. This phase is also part of the termination of the

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 13-1: COPING STRATEGIES FOR DEALING WITH ANXIETY

- Decrease overwhelming stimuli in the environment by decreasing the noise level and dimming the lights
- Create a relaxing environment with music, candles, or other aromatherapy (incense, diffusers, etc.)
- Practice diaphragmatic breathing
- Go outside and breathe fresh air
- Do stretching exercises
- Exercise by talking a walk, walking your dog, walking around the yard, or going to a hiking trail
- Distract yourself by focusing on a hobby
- Call a friend or family member
- Practice guided imagery
- Practice progressive muscle relaxation
- Take a warm bath
- Watch or listen to comedy

patient–patient relationship. Many times a patient will have a setback due to feelings of loss of this relationship. The nurse's role is to help the patient explore these feelings and ease this transition while maintaining boundaries (Peplau, 1991).

Evaluation provides a feedback mechanism for judging the quality of care given. Evaluation of the progress indicates which problems have been solved; which needs have been met; and which needs require reassessment, replanning, implementation, and reevaluation.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Anxiety disorders include panic disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), interventions for OC (PTSD), generalized anxiety disorder (GAD), acute stress disorder, and phobias. Anxiety disorders were not officially recognized as a psychiatric illness until 1980. They are the most common and the most costly psychiatric illness in the United States.
- The exact cause of anxiety disorders is not known. Psychodynamic, behavioral, and learning theories are prominent. Additionally, biological influences, including brain structures, neurotransmitters, and genetics, are also proposed as contributing to these disorders.
- Pharmacological therapy for anxiety disorders includes SSRIs and SNRIs as first-line treatment for many of the disorders. Benzodiazepines are also used. Other agents used include buspirone; atypical antipsychotic agents such as venlafaxine; alpha-2 delta ligands such as gabapentin or pregabalin; tricyclic antidepressants; monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs); beta-blockers such as propranolol; and anticonvulsants such as lamotrigine or topiramate.
- Individual psychotherapy involves a combination of supportive and insight-oriented therapy, which is helpful for patients with PTSD. Eye movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR) is a new type of psychotherapy gaining popularity for treating PTSD. Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) is considered the first-line treatment strategy for patients with depression and anxiety disorders. Flooding or implosion therapy is a type of exposure therapy in which the patient is exposed to the anxiety-provoking stimuli all at once. It is potentially dangerous and should only be used after careful consultation with a qualified practitioner.
- Caffeine is associated with an increased risk of anxiety because it increases serum epinephrine, norepinephrine, and cortisol levels. A deficiency of the amino acid tryptophan is associated with anxiety due to reductions in brain serotonin levels.
- Nurses working with patients experiencing anxiety disorders face unique challenges because symptoms may be vague or possibly not visible. Emotional problems can also be exhibited as different symptoms arising from numerous causes. Additionally, many patients may be unable to describe their problems.
- Meeting patient-focused needs can only occur when the nurse has accurately assessed the patient and his or her perception of anxiety.
- For patients suffering from anxiety disorder, the timing and pacing of interventions are critical. The nurse needs to determine how best to intervene based on the patient's level of anxiety.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A patient with posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is exhibiting hypervigilance. Which statement would the nurse interpret as indicating this?

a. "I'm having trouble sleeping at night."
b. "I've been really irritable and angry."
c. "I always have to watch my back."
d. "I just can't seem to relax."

2. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about anxiety disorders. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following as a compulsion?

a. Hearing voices that tell a person that he is the king
b. Repeatedly washing hands
c. Touching the door knob three times before leaving
d. Walking in a specific pattern when entering a room

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

3. A patient comes to the clinic for a routine checkup and is to have laboratory testing completed. During the assessment, the patient reveals that he is afraid of needles and begins to hyperventilate. The patient also becomes diaphoretic and complains of a lump in his throat. The nurse would suspect which of the following?

- **a.** Generalized anxiety disorder
- **b.** Posttraumatic stress disorder
- **c.** Acute stress disorder
- **d.** Specific phobia

4. A patient with panic disorder is prescribed venlafaxine. The nurse identifies this agent as which of the following?

- **a.** Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI)
- **b.** Serotonin/norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor (SNRI)
- **c.** Benzodiazepine
- **d.** Atypical antipsychotic

5. A nursing instructor is preparing a class on anxiety disorders and the biological influences associated with this group of illnesses. Which of the following would the instructor include as a primary neurotransmitter involved in the anxiety response?

- **a.** Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)
- **b.** Serotonin
- **c.** Dopamine
- **d.** Norepinephrine

6. A patient with an anxiety disorder is asked to imagine specific aspects of the feared situation while engaged in relaxation. The nurse identifies this as which of the following?

- **a.** Flooding
- **b.** Systematic desensitization
- **c.** In vivo exposure
- **d.** Implosion therapy

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Psychiatric Association. (2006). *American Psychiatric Association practice guidelines for the treatment of psychiatric disorders compendium 2006.* Washington, DC: Author.

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Amos, T., Stein, D. J., & Ipser, J. C. (2014). Pharmacological interventions for preventing post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2014*(7). Art. No.: CD006239. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD006239.pub2

Anderson, A. (2007). *Anxiety-panic history: Anxiety, disorders and treatments throughout the ages*. Retrieved from http://anxiety-panic.com/history/h-main.htm

Andreatini, R., Sartori, V., Seabra, M., & Leite, J. (2002). Effect of kava and valerian on human physiological and psychological responses to mental stress assessed under laboratory conditions. *Phytotherapy Research, 16*(7), 650–654.

Bandelow, B., Sher, L., Bunevicius, R., Hollander, E., Kasper, S., Zohar, J., & Urgen Moller, H. (2012). Guidelines for the pharmacological treatment of anxiety disorders, obsessive–compulsive disorder and posttraumatic stress disorder in primary care. *International Journal of Psychiatry in Clinical Practice, 16*, 77–84.

Bell, S. J., & Forse, R. A. (1999). Nutritional management of hypoglycemia. *Diabetes Education, 25*(1), 41–47.

Belmaker, R. H., Levine, J. A., & Kofman, O. (May–June 1998). *Inositol—A novel augmentation for mood disorders.* Paper presented at the 151st Annual Meeting of the American Psychiatric Association, Toronto.

Berger, W., Mendlowicz, M. V., Marques-Portella, C., Kinrys, G., Fontenelle, L. F., Marmar, C. R., & Figueira, I. (2009). Pharmacologic alternatives to antidepressants in posttraumatic stress disorder: A systematic review. *Progress in Neuropsychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry, 33*(2), 169–180.

Black, D. W., Carney, C. P., Peloso, P. M., Woolson, R. F., Schwartz, D. A., Voelker, M. D., … Doebbeling, B. N. (2004). Gulf War veterans with anxiety: Prevalence, comorbidity, and risk factors. *Epidemiology, 156*(2), 135–142.

Bolton, J., Cox, B., Clara, I., & Sareen, J. (2006). Use of alcohol and drugs to self-medicate anxiety disorders in a nationally representative sample. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease, 194*(11), 818–825.

Brinker, F. (1998). *Herb contraindications and drug interactions* (2nd ed.). Sandy, OR: Eclectic Medical Publications.

Brock, D. G. & Demitrack, M. A. (2014). Therapuetic neuromodulation: Overview of a novel treatment. *Psychiatric Annals, 44*(6), 274–278.

Bruce, M. S., & Lader, M. (1989). Caffeine abstention in the management of anxiety disorders. *Psychological Medicine, 19*, 211–214.

Bush, G., Luu, P., & Posner, M. I. (2000). Cognitive and emotional influences in anterior cingulate cortex. *Trends in Cognitive Science, 4*(6), 215–222.

Carr, A., & McNulty, M. (2006). *Handbook of adult clinical psychology: An evidence-based practice approach*. London, UK: Routledge.

Cropley, M., Cave, Z., Ellis, J., & Middleton, R. (2002). Effect of valepotriates (valerian extract) in generalized anxiety disorder:

A randomized placebo-controlled pilot study. *Phytotherapy Research, 16*(1), 23–27.

Dell'Osso, B., Nestadt, G., Allen, A., & Hollander, E. (2006). Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors in the treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder: A critical review. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry, 67*, 600–610.

Department of Veterans Affairs and the Department of Defense. (2010). *Clinical practice guideline for the management of post-traumatic stress.* Retrieved from http://www.healthquality.va.gov/PTSD-FULL-2010c.pdf

Dohrenwend, B. P., Turner, J. B., Turse, N. A., Adams, B. G., Koen, K. C., & Marshall, R. (2006). The psychological risk of Vietnam for U.S. veterans: A revisit with new data and methods. *Science, 313*(5789), 979–982.

Fineberg, N. A., & Gale, T. M. (2005). Evidence-based pharmacotherapy of obsessive-compulsive disorder. *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology, 8*(1), 107–129.

Freud, F. (1938). *The basic writings of Sigmund Freud*. New York, NY: Random House.

Gabriel, R. A. (1987). *No more heroes; madness and psychiatry in war.* New York, NY: Macmillan.

Gustafsson, C., & Fagerberg, I. (2004). Reflection, the way to professional development? *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 13*(3), 271–280.

Hamblen, J. L., Schnurr, P. P., Rosenberg, M. A., & Eftekhari, A. (2009). A guide to the literature on psychotherapy for PTSD. *Psychiatric Annals, 39*(6), 348–354.

Harris, D. L. (2009). Music therapy. In L. Keegan & B. Dossey (Eds.), *Holistic nursing: A handbook for practice* (5th ed.). Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett.

Hartmann, A. S., Blashill, A. J., Greenberg, J. L., Wilhelm, S., Storch, E. A. (Ed.), & McKay, D. (Ed.). (2014). *Obsessive-compulsive disorder and its spectrum: A life-span approach* (pp. 141–162). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association. Retrieved from http://dx.doi.org/10.1037/14323–008

Henig, R. M. (2009). Understanding the anxious mind. *The New York Times Magazine.* Retrieved from http://nytimes.com

Herman, J. (1997). *Trauma and recovery: The aftermath of violence—from domestic abuse to political terror.* New York, NY: Basic Books.

Hettema, J. M., Neale, M. C., & Kendler, K. S. (2001). A review and meta-analysis of the genetic epidemiology of anxiety disorders. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 158*, 1568–1578.

Ipser, J. C., Sander, C., & Stein, D. J. (2009). Pharmacotherapy and psychotherapy for body dysmorphic disorder. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2009*(1). Art. No.: CD005332. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD005332.pub2

Kerr, T., Walsh, J., & Marshall, A. (2001). Emotional change processes in music-assisted reframing. *Journal of Music Therapy, 38*, 193–211.

Kessler, R. C., Berglund, P. A., Demler, O., Jin, R., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Lifetime prevalence and age-of-onset distributions of *DSM-IV* disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R). *Archives of General Psychiatry, 62*(6), 593–602.

Kessler, R. C., Chiu, W. T., Demler, O., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Prevalence, severity, and comorbidity of twelve-month *DSM-IV* disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R). *Archives of General Psychiatry, 62*(6), 617–627.

Keuneman, R. J., Pokos, V., Weerasundera, R., & Castle, D. J. (2005). Antipsychotic treatment in obsessive-compulsive disorder: A literature review. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry, 39,* 336–343.

Klaassen, T., Klumperbeek, J., & Deutz, N. E. (1998). Effects of tryptophan depletion on anxiety and on panic provoked by carbon dioxide challenge. *Psychiatry Resident, 77,* 167–174.

Kohnen, R., & Oswald, W. D. (1988). The effects of valerian, propranolol, and their combination on activation, performance, and mood of healthy volunteers under social stress conditions. *Pharmacopsychiatry, 21*(6), 447–448.

Kuokkanen, L., & Leino-Kilpi, H. (2000). Power and empowerment in nursing: Three theoretical approaches. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 31,* 235–341.

Lafleur, D. L., Pittenger, C., Kelmendi, B., Gardner, T., Wasylink, S., Malison, R. T., … Coric, V. (2006). N-acetylcysteine augmentation in serotonin reuptake inhibitor refractory obsessive-compulsive disorder. *Psychopharmacology, 184*(2), 254–256.

Leichsenring, F., Salzer, S., Jaeger, U., Kächele, H., Kreische, R., & Leweke, F. (2009). Short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy and cognitive behavioral therapy in generalized anxiety disorder: A randomized, controlled trial. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 166*(8), 875–881.

Mallet, L., Polosan, M., Jaafari, N., Baup, N., Welter, M. L., Fontaine, D., … Pelissolo, A. (2008). Subthalamic nucleus stimulation in severe obsessive-compulsive disorder. *New England Journal of Medicine, 359,* 2121–2134.

Merikangas, K. R., Ames, M., Cui, L., Stang, P. E., Bedirhan, T., Ustun, M., … Kessler, C. R. (2007). The impact of comorbidity of mental and physical conditions on role disability in the US adult household population. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 64*(10), 1180–1188.

Meyer, J. S., & Quenzer, L. F. (2013). *Pharmocology: Drugs, the brain and behavior.* Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates.

Miller, R. (2003). Nurses at community hospital welcome guided imagery tool. *Dimensions in Critical Care Nursing, 22*(5), 225–226.

Milliken, C. S., Auchterlonie, M. S., & Hoge, C. W. (2007). Longitudinal assessment of mental health problems among active and reserve component soldiers returning from the Iraq War. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 298*, 2141–2148.

NANDA International. (2009). *Nursing diagnoses: Definitions and classification 2009–2011.* Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Nordsletten, A. E., Reichenberg, A., Hatch, S. L., Fernández de la Cruz, L., Pertusa, A., Hotopf, M., & Mataix-Cols, D. (2013). Epidemiology of hoarding disorder. *British Journal of Psychiatry, 203*(6), 445–452. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.1192/bjp.bp.113.130195. Epub October 24, 2013.

O'Reardon, J. P., Solvason, H. B., Janicek, P. C., Sampson, S., Isenberg, K. E., Nahas, Z., McDonald, W. M., Avery, D., Fitzgerald, P. D. Loo, C., Demitrack, M. A., George, M. S., Sackeim, H. A., (2007). Efficacy and safety of transcranial magnetic stimulation in the acute treatment of major depression: A multisite randomized controlled trial. *Biological Psychiatry, 62(*11), 1208–1216.

Otowa, T., Maher, B. S., Aggen, S. H., McClay, J. L., van den Oord, E. J., & Hettema, J. M. (2014). Genome-wide and gene-based association studies of anxiety disorders in European and African American samples. *PLoS ONE, 9*(11), e112559. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0112559

Paluska, S. A., & Schwenk, T. L. (2000). Physical activity and mental health. *Sports Medicine, 29,* 167–180.

Pavlov, I. P. (1927). *Conditioned reflexes.* London, UK: Oxford University Press.

Pedersen, T. (2013). Alternative treatment kava shown to reduce anxiety. *Psych Central*. Retrieved from http://psychcentral.com/

news/2013/05/19/alternative-treatment-kava-shown-to-reduce-anxiety/55012.html

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing.* New York, NY: Springer.

Pepping, J. (1999). Kava: Piper methysticum. *American Journal of Health System Pharmacy,* 56(10), 957–958, 960.

Pittler, M. H., & Ernst, E. (2000). Efficacy of kava extract for treating anxiety: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology, 20*(1), 84–89.

Plushner, S. L. (2000). Valerian: *Valerian officinalis*. *American Journal of Health Systems Pharmacy, 57*(328), 333–335.

Porter, R. (1997). *Medicine, a history of healing: Ancient traditions to modern practices.* New York, NY: The Ivy Press.

Robins, L. N., & Regier, D. A. (Eds.). (1991). *Psychiatric disorders in America: The epidemiologic catchment area study*. New York, NY: Free Press.

Roseboom, P. H., Nanda, S. A., Fox, A. S., Oler, J. A., Shackman, A. J., Shelton, S. E.,…Kalin, N. H. (2014). Neuropeptide Y receptor gene expression in the primate amygdala predicts anxious temperament and brain metabolism. *Biological Psychiatry, 76*(11), 850–857. doi:10.1016/j.biopsych.2013.11.012

Sadock, B. J., Sadock, B. A., & Ruiz, P. (2014). Synopsis of psychiatry: Behavioral sciences/clinical psychiatry (11th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Saxena, S., & Sumner, J. (2014). Venlafaxine extended-release treatment of hoarding disorder. *International Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *29*(5), 266–273.

Shah, D. B., Pesiridou, A., Baltuch, G. H., Malone, D. A., & O'Reardon, J. P. (2008). Functional neurosurgery in the treatment of severe obsessive compulsive disorder and major depression: Overview of disease circuits and therapeutic targeting for the clinician. *Psychiatry*, *5*(9), 24–33.

Shah, L. P., Nayak, P. R., & Sethi, A. (1993). A comparative study of Geriforte in anxiety neurosis and mixed anxiety-depressive disorders. *Probe, 32,* 195–201.

Shin, L. M., & Handwerger, K. (2009). Is posttraumatic stress disorder a stress-induced fear circuitry disorder? *Journal of Trauma Stress*, *22*, 409–415.

Singh, Y. N., & Blumenthal, M. (1997). Kava: An overview. *Herbalgram, 39,* 33–56.

Smoller, J. W., Block, S. R., & Young, M. M. (2009). Genetics of anxiety disorders: The complex road from *DSM* to DNA. *Depress Anxiety, 26*, 965–975.

Stahl, S. M. (2013). *Stahl's essential psychopharmacology: Neuroscientific basis and practical applications* (4th ed.). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Stevinson, C. (1999). Exercise may help treat panic disorder. *Focus on Alternative and Complementary Therapies, 4*(2), 84–85.

Stone, M. H. (1997). *Healing the mind: A history of psychiatry from antiquity to the present.* New York, NY: W. W. Norton.

Stough, C., Lloyd, J., Clarke, J., Downey, L., Hutchison, C., Rodgers, T., & Nathan, P. (2001). The chronic effects of an extract of *Bacopa monniera* (Brahmi) on cognitive function in healthy human subjects. *Psychopharmacology, 156,* 481–484.

Stress Management Health Center. (2007). *Biofeedback topic overview.* Retrieved from www.webmd.com/balance/stress-management/tc/biofeedback-topic-overview

Stuart, G. W. (2005). *Handbook of psychiatric nursing* (6th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby.

Taylor, C. B., & Arnow, B. (1988). *The nature and treatment of anxiety disorder*. New York, NY: Free Press.

Uhde, T. W., Boulenger, J. P., Jimerson, D. C., & Post, R. M. (1984). Caffeine relationship to human anxiety, plasma MHPG and cortisol. *Psychopharmacology Bulletin, 20,* 426–430.

USC Institute of Creative Technology. (2015). Bravemind (online article). *Medical virtual reality*. Retrieved from http://ict.usc.edu/groups/medical-vr

Van Elzakker, M. B., Dahlgren, M. K., Davis, F. C., Dubois, S., & Shin, L. M. (2014). From Pavlov to PTSD: The extinction of conditioned fear in rodents, humans, and anxiety disorders. *Neurobiology of Learning and Memory*, *113*, 3–18.

Varcarolis, E. M. (2015). *Manual of psychiatric nursing care planning* (5th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Elsevier.

Volz, H. P., & Kieser, M. (1997). Kava-Kava Extract WS 1490 versus placebo in anxiety disorders—A randomized placebo-controlled 25-week outpatient trial. *Pharmacopsychiatry, 30,* 1–5.

Vos, T., Flaxman, A. D., Naghavi, M., Lozano, R., Michaud, C., Ezzati, M.,…Abdalla, S. (December 15, 2012). Years lived with disability (YLDs) for 1160 sequelae of 289 diseases and injuries 1990–2010: A systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2010. *Lancet, 380* (9859), 2163–2196. doi:10.1016/S0140–6736(12)61729–2. PMID 23245607

Watson, J. B., & Morgan, J. J. B (1917). Emotional reactions and psychological experimentation. *American Journal of Psychology*, *28*, 163–174.

Yates, W. (April 21, 2014). *Anxiety disorders*. Medscape. Retrieved from http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/286227-overview#showall

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 14

PERSONALITY DISORDERS

Audrey Marie Beauvais

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *personality*
2. Describe personality traits
3. Identify the major personality disorders, including common components
4. Describe the historical and epidemiological perspectives related to personality disorders
5. Discuss the behaviors of individuals with different types of personality disorders
6. Explain current psychosocial and biological theories related to the etiology of personality disorders
7. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with personality disorders

KEY TERMS

Cognitive restructuring techniques
Confrontation
Dialectical behavior therapy (DBT)
Limit setting
Magical thinking
Personality
Personality disorders
Personality traits
Splitting
Time-out

PERSONALITY, essentially, refers to who a person is and how that person behaves. It influences an individual's thoughts, feelings, attitudes, values, motivations, and behaviors. Personality affects how a person deals with stressors and how he or she forms and maintains relationships (American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013).

Everyone has a unique collection of personality characteristics or traits. **PERSONALITY TRAITS** can be defined as a distinct set of qualities demonstrated over an extended period of time that characterize an individual. The specific traits and the degree to which these traits are exhibited vary from person to person. Biological as well as environmental factors affect personality development. People tend to react to situations in an individual but consistent way.

Personality traits are different from **PERSONALITY DISORDERS**. A personality disorder refers to a long-term maladaptive way of thinking and behaving that is ingrained and inflexible. Personality traits can be considered personality disorders when the following criteria are met: The traits are maladaptive, rigid, and enduring, and produce impairment in functioning or individual distress. Individuals with a personality disorder tend to be unbending and respond in a maladaptive way to problems. This can lead to difficulty in their relationships with others. People with personality disorders have trouble with the changes and demands of life. Most individuals with personality disorders are distressed with their life and relationships, but are generally unaware that their thoughts and behaviors are inappropriate. In addition, individuals with personality disorders tend to blame others for their circumstances. Moreover, an individual with a personality disorder demonstrates a dysfunctional pattern of coping that is not consistent with the person's culture, ethnicity, and social background (APA, 2013). Personality disorders are classified into Clusters A, B, or C based on the predominant symptoms.

- *Cluster A personality disorders: paranoid, schizoid, and schizotypal personality disorders*
- *Cluster B personality disorders: antisocial, borderline, histrionic, and narcissistic personality disorders*
- *Cluster C personality disorders: avoidant, dependent, and obsessive-compulsive personality disorders*

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of personality disorders as defined in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*, APA, 2013). Current psychosocial and biological etiological influences of personality disorders are addressed along with current treatment modalities. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a nursing plan of care for a patient with a personality disorder.

Personality disorders are not synonymous with personality traits. A personality disorder occurs when personality traits become maladaptive, rigid, and persistent such that the person experiences distress or impaired functioning.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

In the fourth century BCE, Hippocrates, known as the Father of Medicine, observed and classified four fundamental personality styles that he believed resulted from surpluses in the four bodily humors: the irritable and hostile choleric (yellow bile); the sad melancholic (black bile); optimistic and extroverted sanguine (blood); and the apathetic phlegmatic (phlegm). However, it was not until the early 19th century that formal efforts were made by American and European psychiatrists to describe abnormal personality traits. Further strides were made in 1952 with the first publication of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-I*). This publication included seven different categories of personality disorders. In 1980, personality disorders were eventually given their own axis, Axis II, in the multiaxial evaluation system in the *DSM-III*. The *DSM-III* provided diagnostic criteria for 11 distinct personality disorders. The number of categories of personality disorders was decreased to 10 in 1994 with the publication of the fourth edition of the *DSM*. Passive-aggressive personality disorder was removed from the list. The list identified in 1994 did not change with the publication of the *DSM-5*. However, the *DSM-5* has moved from a multiaxial system in an effort to eliminate the arbitrary distinction between mental disorders and personality disorders.

Currently there are 10 specific personality disorders in the DSM-5.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Personality disorders usually begin in early adolescence or early adulthood. Although it is unusual, children and adolescents may be diagnosed with personality disorders. Some personality disorders have been described as "common." However, it was not until recently that the prevalence of personality disorders in the general population of the United States became known. Approximately 10% of adults in the United States and between 6.1% and 13.4% of adults in other countries have a personality disorder as

outlined by the *DSM-5* (Sansone & Sansone, 2011). The most common personality disorder can vary from culture to culture. For instance, obsessive-compulsive personality disorder is the most common personality disorder in the United States and Australia (Sansone & Sansone, 2011). Yet, avoidant personality disorder is the most frequent in Norway; and schizotypal personality disorder is the most common in Iceland (Sansone & Sansone, 2011).

An association between personality disorders and co-occurring major mental disorders has been identified by research (Friborg et al., 2014). Personality disorders have also been linked to alcohol use and misuse. Research has shown that individuals with personality disorders are more likely to use and misuse alcohol (Maclean & French, 2014). In addition, borderline, antisocial, narcissistic, and histrionic personality disorders have the strongest association with alcohol use and misuse (Maclean & French, 2014). According to the *DSM-5*, antisocial personality disorder is more prevalent in samples influenced by poverty or sociocultural factors.

Personality disorders often occur along with another major mental disorder. They are also associated with alcoholism.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

Although characteristics of personality disorders may describe traits that anyone may exhibit in varying amounts, a genuine personality disorder must meet specific criteria. To be diagnosed with a personality disorder, a person must demonstrate a persisting pattern that differs from the cultural norms of the individual. Those patterns are rigid and pervasive across a wide range of situations and leads to distress or impairment of functioning (APA, 2013). This pattern of behavior cannot be explained by another mental disorder or attributed to the effects of substance use or a medical condition (APA, 2013).

The *DSM-5* describes three different clusters of personality disorders based on characteristic features. Cluster A personality disorders include individuals who appear odd or eccentric. Cluster B personality disorders include individuals who appear dramatic, emotional, or erratic. Cluster C personality disorders include individuals who appear anxious or fearful (APA, 2013).

Paranoid Personality Disorder

The characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a paranoid personality disorder include a persistent mistrust and suspiciousness of others. Individuals tend to believe that others are out to harm, take advantage of, or betray them. They feel this way despite having no evidence to support their claims. They are worried with unsubstantiated doubts about the sincerity of their colleagues and friends. They fear that the information they share will be used against them. They misinterpret benign comments as being mean or hostile and are fast to respond with anger (APA, 2013).

Schizoid Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a schizoid personality disorder include a persistent pattern of aloofness from relationships and decreased emotional expression. Individuals desire solitary activities and do not want or like close relationships including family relationships. They do not have many friends or pleasures in life. They appear to lack any desire for sexual experiences and appear emotionally distant and detached. They are apathetic when they receive praise or criticism from others (APA, 2013).

Schizotypal Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a schizotypal personality disorder include a persistent pattern involving difficulty with relationships as evidenced by severe uneasiness with and decreased ability for intimate relationships. This results in a lack of close friends. Their behavior is strange, eccentric, or peculiar. These individuals misinterpret events as having special meaning for them. They tend to be superstitious and have odd beliefs or **MAGICAL THINKING** (belief that thoughts are all-powerful). They have unusual perceptions, bizarre thinking and speech, suspicious or paranoid ideation, and inappropriate or limited affect. They tend to have social anxiety and paranoid worries that persist despite familiarity (APA, 2013). When individuals with schizotypal personality disorder experience extreme stress, they may decompensate, become psychotic, and require hospitalization.

Antisocial Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of an antisocial personality disorder include a persistent pattern of not conforming to social norms. Individuals have a disregard for and violate the rights of others. They are dishonest as evidenced by frequent lying and deceiving others for personal gain or pleasure. They are impulsive, irritable, aggressive, reckless, irresponsible, and lack remorse (APA, 2013).

Individuals with childhood or adolescent deviant behavior or conduct disorders often go on to develop a permanent antisocial psychopathology. A large percentage of

individuals diagnosed with antisocial personality disorder have recognizable behaviors before adulthood. These behaviors include difficulty with authority figures, legal troubles, cruelty to animals, fire setting, and disregard for authority. Unfortunately, individuals diagnosed with antisocial personality disorder do not remiss as readily as some of the other personality disorders. These individuals frequently end up in prison, which only reinforces the behavior.

Borderline Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a borderline personality disorder include a persistent pattern of volatile interactions with others. Individuals are extremely impulsive and make frenzied attempts to prevent genuine or imagined abandonment. They have intense, unstable relationships that swing between extremes of admiration and deprecation. They engage in frequent repeated self-mutilating behavior or suicidal behavior or threats. In addition, they can express feelings of emptiness, intense anger, and brief, stress-related paranoid thoughts or dissociative symptoms (APA, 2013). **SPLITTING** is a common clinical manifestation in which individuals tend to view reality in polarized categories. They alternately idealize and devalue others rather than see people as a mixture of good and bad traits. In a matter of minutes, the person can go from loving an individual to hating that person (APA, 2013).

Histrionic Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a histrionic personality disorder include a persistent pattern of extreme attention-seeking behavior. Individuals are uneasy in situations unless they are the center of attention. They are often provocative and use their physical appearance to draw attention to themselves. They are very dramatic and theatrical. They are impressionable and easily swayed by others. They tend to think relationships are closer than they really are (APA, 2013).

Narcissistic Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a narcissistic personality disorder include a persistent pattern of pretentiousness and need for approval and high regard. Individuals have a sense of entitlement and take advantage of other people for their own personal gain. They have no empathy and believe that people are jealous of them. They have an exaggerated sense of self-worth. They are fixated on fantasies of extreme accomplishment, authority, intelligence, attractiveness, or perfect romantic involvement (APA, 2013).

When narcissistic individuals feel degraded by another person, they experience what is termed a *narcissistic injury*. In response to that injury, they will fly into a "narcissist rage" in which they may scream, distort the facts, and make groundless accusations to decrease the self-worth of others and thus make themselves feel more powerful (APA, 2013). The rage impairs their judgment and thinking.

Avoidant Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of an avoidant personality disorder include a persistent pattern of shyness, feelings of incompetence, and extreme sensitivity to criticism. Individuals will avoid situations that involve interaction with other people due to fear of negative evaluation and rejection. They are different from individuals diagnosed with schizoid and schizotypal personality disorders in that the latter would desire to form relationships. These individuals tend not to get involved with others except if they are certain they will be accepted. Individuals diagnosed with avoidant personality have difficulty forming intimate relationships. They do not like to talk about themselves and withhold their thoughts and feelings for fear of being ridiculed. In addition, these individuals think of themselves as unattractive, inferior, and useless in comparison with others. They do not like to take risks or join in new activities for fear of embarrassment. Finally, they tend to be preoccupied with thoughts of being disparaged and unwanted (APA, 2013).

Dependent Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of a dependent personality disorder include a persistent and extreme desire to have someone take care of them. Individuals tend to exhibit subservient and clinging behavior and to have fears of abandonment. They have difficulty making decisions and require lots of encouragement and guidance from others. Individuals diagnosed with dependent personality disorder want others to assume responsibility for their lives. These people do not like to disagree with others for fear of not being liked. They lack the self-confidence needed to start projects or do things on their own. In addition, these individuals fear that they will not be able to care for themselves, which leads to feelings of uneasiness and helplessness. They are extremely worried about having to take care of themselves. Should their relationship end, they will immediately look for another relationship that will offer reassurance and support (APA, 2013).

Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorder

Characteristic behaviors and symptoms of an obsessive-compulsive personality disorder include a persistent pattern of concern and worry over the orderliness, perfectionism, control, and details of an activity so much so that

the aim of the task is lost. The need for perfectionism prevents the completion of the tasks at hand. Individuals tend to forego leisure activities and relationships because they are extremely focused on work and productivity. They tend to be painstakingly meticulous, conscientious, and rigid regarding issues of principles and values. These individuals do not like to throw away meaningless, valueless objects. They tend to save money for misfortunes that might happen later in their lives. Individuals are stubborn and rigid and do not like to delegate tasks to others unless they can guarantee that they will do it to their liking (APA, 2013). Individuals with obsessive-compulsive personality disorders usually require treatment due to complaints of anxiety and may be diagnosed with a concurrent anxiety disorder.

Other Personality Disorders

The *DSM-5* has developed this category to cover three additional classifications for individuals who do not meet the criteria for any of the specific personality disorders already noted. These three classifications are personality change due to another medical condition, other specified personality disorder, and unspecified personality disorder.

Malingering

Although not a personality disorder, malingering is mentioned here as a condition that is associated with psychiatric disorders. Malingering can be defined as the deliberate creation of fake or overstated symptoms, motivated by incentives such as evading work, gaining compensation, avoiding criminal prosecution, or attaining medications (Mason, Cardell, & Armstrong, 2013). Malingering can be associated with antisocial behavior. However, of note, malingering occurs more frequently in the public setting than in the forensic setting (Mason et al., 2013).

Cluster A personality disorders include paranoid, schizoid, and schizotypal personality disorders characterized by odd or eccentric behavior. Cluster B personality disorders include antisocial, borderline, histrionic, and narcissistic personality disorders characterized by dramatic, emotional, or erratic behavior. Cluster C personality disorders include avoidant, dependent, and obsessive-compulsive personality disorders characterized by anxious or fearful behavior.

ETIOLOGY

There is no one commonly accepted understanding about the etiology of personality disorders. Most likely, it is a multifaceted process involving both biological and environmental factors. Psychodynamic and biological influences are presented here.

Psychodynamic theories related to the etiology of personality disorders focus on an individual becoming fixated in a specific phase of psychosexual development, and thus are unable to advance to the next phase.

Psychodynamic Theories

According to psychodynamic theory, a lack of psychosexual development and inability to attain object constancy can lead to a personality disorder. Historically, it was thought that personality disorders arise when an individual does not successfully advance through phases of psychosexual development. For example, fixation in the oral phase was believed to cause a demanding and dependent personality such as a dependent personality disorder. Fixation in the anal phase fixation was believed to cause an obsessive, rigid, aloof personality such as an obsessive-compulsive personality disorder. Fixation in the phallic phase was thought to result in a histrionic personality in that the individual was shallow and unable to engage in meaningful relationships.

Evidence supports five psychosocial risk factors for borderline personality disorder (Keinanen, Johnson, Richards, & Courtney, 2012). They are childhood abuse/trauma, unfavorable parenting, hostile object relations, insecure attachment relations, and limited symbolization–reflectiveness capacity (Keinanen et al., 2012).

Biological Theories

In the past, personality disorders were thought to be due to primarily environmental issues including factors such as dysfunctional family life, erratic discipline by authority figures, antisocial behavior of the parents, and lack of parental involvement. However, researchers are beginning to examine biomarkers. Although currently no biomarkers have been identified for personality disorders, or any major mental disorder for that matter, possible biomarkers for personality disorders may be detected by irregularities in gene sequences, neurotransmission, neuropsychological measures, and neuroimaging (Paris, 2015; Perez-Rodriguez, Zaluda, & New, 2013; Reichborn-Kjennerud, 2010). More specifically, it is probable that the heritability of personality

disorders is related to a large number of interacting genes (Paris, 2015). Data support a relationship between irregular serotonin activity and impulsive characteristics in patients who have personality disorders (Paris, 2015). Neuropsychological testing supports that impulsive personality disorders (i.e., antisocial and borderline personality disorders) are related to a failure of the prefrontal cortex to inhibit impulses from the amygdala and limbic system (Paris, 2015; Raine, 2013). Neuroimaging research confirms reduced activity in the prefrontal cortex as well as decreased volume in the hippocampus and amygdala in patients diagnosed with borderline personality disorder (Mauchnik & Schmahl, 2010; Paris, 2015; Ruocco, Amirthavasagam, & Zakzanis, 2012). And, neuroimaging studies support a malfunction of prefrontal inhibition in patients diagnosed with antisocial personality disorder as well as atypical neuroconnectivity (Paris, 2015; Raine, 2013).

Biological and environmental factors have been linked to the development of personality disorders.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Until fairly recently, many in the psychology field did not feel that treatment would help individuals with personality disorders. Just as the personality traits take years to develop, so too can maladaptive personality traits and personality disorders take years to treat. There is no short-term treatment that can cure personality disorders. Many different treatment options are available such as individual, group, or family psychotherapy, cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), dialectical behavior therapy (DBT), and psychopharmacology. Treatment is typically long term and aimed at alleviating symptoms of self-destructive ways.

Psychotherapy

Individual psychotherapy with a trained psychiatric-mental health professional such as an advanced practice psychiatric-mental health nurse is intended to help individuals see the unconscious conflicts that are leading to their symptoms (Dimaggio, 2014; Levey & Scala, 2015). It is aimed at helping the individual become more flexible, thereby decreasing the behaviors interfering with everyday life. Group therapy may also be used as it uses group dynamics and peer communication to foster an improved understanding and increased social skills. Family therapy is intended to assist families to function in a more affirming and helpful manner. This is accomplished by looking at patterns of verbal and nonverbal interactions and offering support and education. (See Chapter 9 for a more in-depth discussion of group and family therapy.)

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

Research studies support CBT as a useful treatment modality for reducing symptoms and improving functional outcomes with patients diagnosed with personality disorders (Matusiewicz, Hopwood, Banducci, & Lejuez, 2010). CBT is designed to improve an individual's mood and behavior by focusing on distorted patterns of thinking. The goal is to assist patients in altering their usual thoughts that automatically arise and play a role in their dysfunctional thinking. This therapy helps the individual understand that thoughts produce feelings and moods that can affect behavior. CBT helps the individual recognize the underlying thoughts that have resulted in some disruptive behavior. The emphasis is in changing the patient's current thinking without attempting to determine how the patient developed his or her thinking patterns. The patient learns to substitute this thinking with thoughts that will lead to more appropriate behaviors and emotions (Levey & Scala, 2015).

Dialectical Behavior Therapy

DIALECTICAL BEHAVIOR THERAPY (DBT) is a CBT aimed at treating individuals who have been diagnosed with borderline personality disorder or individuals who deliberately partake in self-destructive behavior or have suicidal thoughts (Burroughs & Somerville, 2013; Feigenbaum, 2010; Johnson, Gentile, & Correll, 2010). DBT helps individuals regulate their emotions and take responsibility for their own behavior and problems. It teaches an individual how to cope with conflict, negative feelings, and impulsivity, thereby enhancing the patient's capabilities and improving his or her motivation, which leads to a decrease in dysfunctional behavior.

CBT helps patients with personality disorders focus on their distorted patterns of thinking. DBT is a type of CBT that helps patients regulate their emotions and take responsibility for their behavior and problems.

Psychopharmacology as a treatment strategy for personality disorders treats the symptoms of the disorder but not the maladaptive personality traits.

Psychopharmacology

Psychopharmacology is also used to treat specific symptoms of personality disorders (Crawford et al., 2011). The American Psychiatric Association's practice guidelines for the treatment of borderline personality disorders (APA, 2005) recommend the use of psychotherapy in conjunction with symptom-targeted psychopharmacology. Psychopharmacology treats the symptoms such as anxiety and altered perceptions, not the personality traits themselves. A partial list of common medications that may be used is found in **Drug Summary 14-1**. Although additional research is necessary to help identify effective pharmacological strategies for treating personality disorders,

DRUG SUMMARY 14-1: PARTIAL SELECTION OF MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT PERSONALITY DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SSRIs)	
fluoxetine (Prozac) paroxetine (Paxil) sertraline (Zoloft) fluvoxamine maleate (Luvox) citalopram (Celexa) escitalopram (Lexapro)	■ Advise the patient to take the drug in the morning; if sedation occurs, encourage the patient to take the drug at bedtime ■ Monitor the patient for signs of serotonin syndrome such as fever, sweating, agitation, tachycardia, hypotension, and hyperreflexia ■ Inform the patient about possible sexual dysfunction with the drug; if this occurs and causes the patient distress, advocate for a change in the drug ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
SEROTONIN/NOREPINEPHRINE REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SNRIs)	
desvenlafaxine (Pristiq) duloxetine (Cymbalta) venlafaxine (Effexor and Effexor XR)	■ Advise the patient taking desvenlafaxine or duloxetine to have blood pressure monitored because the drug may increase blood pressure ■ Instruct the patient taking venlafaxine to take the drug with food and a full glass of water; if the patient has difficulty swallowing capsules, suggest the patient open the capsule and sprinkle contents on a spoonful of applesauce and take immediately; reinforce the need to follow the capsule with a full glass of water ■ Encourage the patient to check with the prescriber before taking any other prescription or over-the-counter drugs ■ Warn the patient of possible sedation and dizziness and the need to avoid hazardous activities until the drug's effects are known ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 14-1: *(CONT.)*
PARTIAL SELECTION OF MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT PERSONALITY DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
MOOD STABILIZERS	
carbamazepine (Tegretol) divalproex sodium (Depakote) oxcarbazepine (Trileptal) lamotrigine (Lamictal) tiagabine HCl (Gabitril)	■ Collaborate with the patient to develop a schedule for blood-level testing to promote adherence ■ Institute safety measures to reduce the risk of falling secondary to drowsiness or dizziness ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
ANTIPSYCHOTICS	
risperidone (Risperdal) olanzapine (Zyprexa) quetiapine (Seroquel) ziprasidone (Geodon) aripiprazole (Abilify) paliperidone (Invega) iloperidone (Fanapt) asenapine (Saphris) clozapine (Clozaril)	■ Instruct the patient using aripiprazole (Abilify) not to take the drug with grapefruit juice ■ For the patient taking clozapine, obtain baseline white blood cell counts to assess for agranulocytosis; explain to the patient that he or she will receive only a 1-week supply of the drug; assist the patient in arranging for follow-up weekly blood tests for the first 6 months of therapy; monitor the patient closely for signs and symptoms of infection; stress the need for not stopping the drug abruptly ■ Allow the patient to verbalize feelings and issues related to drug therapy; work with the patient and family to develop a method for ensuring adherence to drug therapy ■ Monitor the patient for development of extrapyramidal side effects ■ Be alert that neuroleptic malignant syndrome most often occurs during the first 2 weeks of therapy or after a dosage increase

the following classifications of medication are often used (D'Silva et al., 2013; Inman, 2013):

- Antidepressants*: Treat the signs and symptoms of depression such as decreased self-esteem, suicidal thoughts, and impulsive behavior. Examples include sertraline (Zoloft), paroxetine (Paxil), fluoxetine (Prozac), escitalopram (Lexapro), and mirtazapine (Remeron). (See Chapter 12 for more information about these agents.)*
- Anticonvulsants*: Help balance intensity of feelings and help control impulsive and aggressive behavior. Examples include valproic acid (Depakene), lamotrigine (Lamictal), and carbamazepine (Tegretol). (See Chapter 12 for more information about these agents.)*
- Antipsychotics*: Treat paranoia, unstable mood, and/or unorganized thoughts. Examples include risperidone (Risperdal), olanzapine (Zyprexa), and quetiapine (Seroquel). (See Chapter 11 for more information about these agents.)*
- Mood stabilizers*: Treat aggression, impulsive behavior, hostility, and mood volatility. An example is lithium. (See Chapter 12 for more information about this agent.)*

Benzodiazepines are not the medication of choice to treat symptoms of a personality disorder. Benzodiazepine use should be minimized due to a high potential for abuse and dependency in this population.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Nurses can expect to provide care for individuals with personality disorders in all specialty areas and practice settings. In general, nurses working on inpatient psychiatric units will often encounter patients with antisocial, borderline, and schizotypal type personality disorders as a diagnosis. **Evidence-Based Practice 14-1** summarizes a qualitative study about how organizations can improve the delivery of services to individuals with personality disorders (Fanaian, Lewis, & Grenyer, 2013).

Recognizing the differences between normal difficulties and personality disorders can be crucial to the nurse's decision-making process in navigating the interpersonal process. Because of the struggles these individuals have in establishing and maintaining healthy relationships, developing therapeutic interpersonal relationships with them can be challenging. Nurses will find their relationship skills challenged, boundaries tested, and patience tried. Despite this, patient-centered care is essential as nurses need to partner with patients and their families to ensure the best possible patient experience and improved outcomes. **Plan of Care 14-1** provides an example of a patient with personality disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self and Self-Awareness

When beginning a therapeutic relationship with any patient, the development of the nurse's self-awareness is essential (Bowen & Mason, 2012; Johnson et al., 2010; McNee, Donoghue, & Coppola, 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012). This knowledge of one's own values and attitudes is especially important when working with individuals with personality disorders. The psychiatric-mental health nurse will be challenged because these patients have trouble building and sustaining healthy relationships (Bowen & Mason, 2012; Johnson et al., 2010; McNee et al., 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012). The nurse may feel that he or she lacks the skills to interact effectively with the patient, leading to feelings of inadequacy and failure. The nurse's self-awareness and self-reflection of knowledge, values, and attitudes can significantly impact his or her behaviors and actions. Applying the therapeutic use of self allows the psychiatric-mental health nurse to evaluate and reflect on the consequences of his or her values, attitudes, and practice in working with patients. Such awareness will help the nurse develop insight into his or her own behavior (Bowen & Mason, 2012; Johnson et al., 2010; McNee et al., 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012).

The nurse and the patient meet as strangers and begin a relationship that involves getting to know one another to promote the development of trust (McNee et al., 2014; Peplau, 1991). After the nurse introduces himself or herself and describes the unit and services, the nurse assesses the patient to gain an appreciation of the situation (Peplau, 1991).

Patients with personality disorders can be challenging because they can exhibit intense feelings and may evoke strong emotions in the nurse. **Consumer Perspective 14-1** provides a personal perspective of what it is like to have a borderline personality disorder. Maintain self-awareness and be alert to personal signals of frustration that the patient's behaviors can elicit. Be cognizant of personal feelings and do not allow them to interfere with the care of the patient (Peplau, 1991; Wright & Jones, 2012). Nurses need to acknowledge and accept their own emotional responses. Avoid internalizing these feelings or taking them personally.

Environmental Management

Making the environment conducive to assessment is important to ensure that rapport and trust develop between the patient and the nurse and that the information collected is comprehensive and accurate. When meeting with the patient, allow for adequate interpersonal space during the assessment process. Patients with personality disorders often experience difficulties with boundaries. Therefore, it is essential for the nurse to establish boundaries at the outset (White & Byrt, 2013). Arrange to interview the patient in a comfortable, quiet, and safe environment that has minimal interruptions. Doing so prevents adding to the patient's already odd, dramatic, or fearful behavior. Make certain that you do not sit too close to the patient as the patient may also have some concerns about personal space. In this regard, it is often useful to ask the patient about the desired distance in order to build trust in the relationship. Also, approach the person in a calm and reassuring manner and remain nonjudgmental and nonconfrontational. If the patient's behavior starts to escalate, then offer him or her a break.

Mental health assessments often include questions that may be uncomfortable for persons with personality disorders, so priority setting is important. Brief, focused assessments may be necessary. In addition, be consistent and follow through on comments, suggestions, or promises. Doing so will help to foster a sense of trust. In addition, be alert for signs of agitation or fear that can impact the patient's safety.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 14-1:
IMPROVING SERVICES FOR PEOPLE WITH PERSONALITY DISORDERS: VIEWS OF EXPERIENCED CLINICIANS

STUDY

Fanaian, M., Lewis, K. L., & Grenyer, B. F. S. (2013). Improving services for people with personality disorders: Views of experienced clinicians. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 22*, 465–471.

SUMMARY

Patients diagnosed with personality disorders often use inpatient and outpatient services. However, it can be a challenge to provide appropriate and effective treatment for people with personality disorders. This qualitative study looked at clinician opinions regarding how organizations can improve services to people diagnosed with personality disorders. About 60 clinical experts attending a personality disorder scientific meeting were asked to participate in the study. The qualitative data acquired were recorded and thematically analyzed. The following five themes were obtained:

1. Increase training and education for health professionals and families, friends, and partners of individuals with personality disorders
2. Improve support through supervision and leadership
3. Implement a more consistent patient-centered, collaborative recovery approach to management and treatment
4. Establish clear guidelines and protocols
5. Improve attitudes about personality disorders to decrease stigma

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

The significance of this study for psychiatric-mental health nursing practice lies in the potential to improve services for people with personality disorders. The findings support the need for an integrated, collaborative service model for the treatment of personality disorders. Such a model would need to provide consistent education and training as well as improved supervision and leadership for nurses and health care professionals. This study supports the development and implementation of clear guidelines and protocols for this patient population. Finally, it helps nurses to advocate on patients' behalf to help find strategies to decrease the stigma associated with personality disorders.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How would you go about advocating for the aforementioned improvement strategies? Where would you start?*
2. *What obstacles might you encounter?*

PLAN OF CARE 14-1: THE PATIENT WITH A CLUSTER B PERSONALITY DISORDER—BORDERLINE PERSONALITY DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for other-directed violence; related to pervasive disregard for rights of others; manifested by unpredictable, erratic, and impulsive behavior. Risk for self-mutilation; related to impulsivity and past self-injurious behavior to reduce anxiety. Risk for suicide; related to impulsivity and feelings of low self-worth.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will verbalize feelings related to harming self or others. Patient will refrain from engaging in activities that harm self or others.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient's behavior for indicators suggesting potential harm to self or others; ask the patient directly about suicidal thoughts or plan; determine if the patient has access to or possesses necessary means to carry through with plan	Identifying indicators of potential harm allows for early detection and prompt intervention. Asking directly about suicidal thoughts or plan identifies real or potential risk; determining access or ability to carry through with plan identifies potential for completion of act and allows for appropriate intervention to interfere with plan
Observe the patient unobtrusively for wounds suggesting self-mutilation	Observing the patient unobtrusively prevents feelings of suspiciousness and "being watched" while providing information about the extent of patient's behaviors
Develop rapport with the patient; approach the patient in a calm, nonthreatening manner, demonstrating a caring and accepting attitude	Using a calm, nonthreatening, caring, accepting attitude promotes trust and development of the therapeutic relationship
Minimize the patient's exposure to stimuli; keep environment calm, quiet with little distraction; remove all hazardous items from the patient's environment; ensure the environment is safe and the patient is free of hazards	Limiting stimuli helps to prevent overwhelming the patient and avoids the patient interpreting stimuli as a threat that could lead to increased anxiety and agitation; removal of items reduces the risk of use if behavior escalates; ensuring a safe environment lessens the risk for injury and harm
Work with the patient to determine how the patient is feeling and what may trigger feelings of anger and aggression; assist the patient in identifying the source of anger, encouraging the patient to describe and clarify feelings and experiences	Identifying feelings and triggers allows for early intervention; identifying the source of anger and encouraging description helps increase the patient's awareness of problems
Contract with the patient for no self-harm	Using a no-harm contract emphasizes expectations and fosters participation in care and feelings of control over situation

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 14-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A CLUSTER B PERSONALITY DISORDER—BORDERLINE PERSONALITY DISORDER

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient in cognitive restructuring techniques	Using these techniques helps the patient recognize how his or her thoughts and feelings are contributing to the behavior
Reinforce use of prescribed therapies such as dialectical behavior therapy and individual psychotherapy; administer pharmacological agents as ordered, such as antidepressants for suicidal ideation, anticonvulsants for impulsivity, and mood stabilizers for aggression, impulsivity, and/or mood volatility	Reinforcing appropriate therapy such as dialectical behavior therapy helps to promote responsibility for own behavior; using prescribed pharmacological agents help to minimize or relieve underlying symptoms
Institute appropriate limits, ensuring that the patient clearly understands them; reinforce limits consistently; avoid power struggles	Setting limits and consistently enforcing them minimize manipulation and assist patient in learning adaptive behavior
Provide appropriate and constructive outlets for the patient to express feelings such as anger and aggression; assist the patient in developing ways to express feelings nonviolently and to problem solve	Using alternative means of expressing feelings promotes adaptive coping and learning
If self-mutilation or self-harm occurs, provide care to the patient and the wounds as necessary; avoid positively reinforcing maladaptive behavior	Caring for the wounds is a nursing responsibility; avoiding positive reinforcement of maladaptive behavior may help to lessen its use
If behavior escalation occurs toward others, place the patient in the least restrictive environment; enlist the use of time-out or confrontation as appropriate; remove others away from the area of escalation	Using the least restrictive environment is necessary to protect the patient's rights; using time-out helps prevent patient from acting impulsively and allows patient to regain emotional control; using confrontation assists in reducing manipulation and helping patient gain some insight into behavior; moving others away protects their safety

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 14-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A CLUSTER B PERSONALITY DISORDER—BORDERLINE PERSONALITY DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Impaired social interaction; related to unstable sense of self in relation to others; manifested by lack of trust, splitting, unstable relationships, reckless or irresponsible behavior.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will begin to identify actions that interfere with relationships. Patient will demonstrate beginning social skills for developing a relationship.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient in verbalizing feelings related to social situations, relationships, and interactions; help the patient understand how these feelings are connected to relationship difficulties	Verbalizing feelings promotes insight into the underlying issues
Help the patient identify appropriate actions and consequences related to relationships	Identifying actions and consequences is an initial step in having the patient begin to assume responsibility for his or her actions
Establish firm limits for relationships	Setting limits is important to facilitate control over behavior
Encourage the patient to communicate verbally; provide assistance with communication skills	Encouraging communication is important to promote the development of a relationship
Work with the patient to understand the acceptable limits involved with relationships	Understanding the limits involved with relationships is necessary for the patient to engage in a successful interaction
Assist the patient in using social skill training; break skills down into small discrete steps; encourage the use of role-playing, social modeling, and social reinforcement	Using social skill training gradually introduces the patient to appropriate methods for developing social relationships for eventual mastery of critical social skills
Encourage practice of skills, emphasizing patience; provide feedback about performance	Practicing promotes the likelihood of success with a skill that takes time to develop; providing feedback promotes learning and fosters positive feelings about success
Assist the patient to demonstrate respect and honesty when interacting with others	Demonstrating respect and honesty with others facilitates the development of a relationship

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 14-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A CLUSTER B PERSONALITY DISORDER—BORDERLINE PERSONALITY DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Chronic low self-esteem; related to identity disturbance and fears of abandonment by inability to maintain sustainable relationships.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will identify positive aspects about self. Patient will begin to demonstrate appropriate independent decision making.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient in exploring feelings, the connection of these feelings to behavior, and the effects of behavior on self-esteem	Exploring feelings associated with behaviors and effects provides insight into the disorder
Explore past achievements, strengths, and successes with the patient; positively reinforce actions and achievements	Exploring past achievements and reinforcing them fosters feelings of self-worth and self-esteem
Work with the patient to develop appropriate strategies that build on the patient's strengths and assist with decision making; gradually encourage independent decision making	Building on the patient's strengths improves confidence and promotes self-esteem
Assist the patient with communication and social skills to promote relationships	Promoting relationships through communication and social skills enhances feelings of worth and self-esteem

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 14-1: PERCEIVED SLIGHTS MAKE ME ANGRY

Part of being borderline for me is going bonkers over slights or perceived slights from others. That happened last night and suddenly the whole world is against me and *everything* looks bad. When I feel that way there is no relief to be found until the "storm" blows over. I was/am still a bit completely unhinged; my sense of self is torn apart, my beliefs, my interests, and *everything* gets sucked in when I go down. Luckily, I have managed to hide it pretty good from others and even myself at times. Someone once mentioned needing "reality checks" from others, and sometimes I feel like I can trust other people's realities and other times I don't; just depends on where I am at…and that changes a lot.

Source: http://www.bpdcentral.com/help-for-families/bpd-articles/?Stories-BPD-Experiences-3

Health History and Examination

The priority during the first encounter with the patient is assessment for suicidal or homicidal ideation, evidence of self-mutilation and physical injuries, as well as any history of suicidal or aggressive actions. Also assess the patient's general appearance and motor behavior closely for clues that would suggest the patient's thinking patterns. Questions and observations related to these issues are the most critical to ensure the patient's safety.

As appropriate, a detailed assessment is initiated. Areas to assess include mood and affect; thought process and content; sensorium and intellectual processes; judgment and insight; and self-concept, roles, and relationships. In addition, assess the patient's physiological status and ability to provide self-care, which may be affected by the patient's personality disorder. Consider the patient's ethnic, cultural, and social background and family situation when completing the assessment. Review the patient's medical history including any use of prescribed, over-the-counter, or illicit medications. Note any financial or legal problems, whether current or in the past, which may have resulted from the patient's personality disorder.

Establishing a therapeutic relationship with a patient diagnosed with a personality disorder can be difficult because the patient can exhibit intense feelings that evoke strong emotions in the nurse. Nurses need to be self-aware and cognizant of these responses to prevent them from interfering with the therapeutic relationship and the therapeutic use of self.

During the interview, ask the patient about any history of current or past physical, sexual, or emotional abuse, which may be associated with certain personality disorders such as antisocial and borderline personality disorder. And finally, ascertain if the patient has experienced a recent loss or a psychosocial stressor, which could have exacerbated the symptoms of the personality disorder.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

The patient should be encouraged to participate in not only assessing his or her problems and needs but also be encouraged to engage as an active partner in planning his or her care (Peplau, 1991). The patient will need to begin to recognize and understand his or her current difficulties and the extent of need for help (Peplau, 1991). However, a patient with a personality disorder may not recognize that he or she has an issue. The nurse can help raise the patient's awareness that his or her behaviors related to the personality disorder are problematic.

As the patient begins to identify his or her problems, the nurse can offer appropriate suggestions for interventions to assist the patient in meeting those needs (Peplau, 1991; Zauszniewski, Bekhet, & Haberlein, 2012). Nurses and patients need to collaborate in determining treatment goals and planning appropriate treatment interventions. Teamwork and interdisciplinary collaboration are essential as all treatment team members must be aware of the plan and adhere to it (McNee et al., 2014). Integrating the interpersonal process within the nurse–patient relationship helps the patient make the most of a difficult situation. Subsequently, the patient can learn different patterns of behavior that will decrease the symptoms of his or her personality disorder (McNee et al., 2014; Peplau, 1991; White & Byrt, 2013).

Assessment findings and identified needs are highly variable for patients with personality disorders. When developing the plan of care for a patient, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Risk for self-directed or other-directed violence related to impulsivity as evidenced by acting out behaviors*
- *Risk for self-mutilation related to unpredictable and erratic behavior as evidenced by impulsivity*
- *Impaired social interaction related to lack of trust as evidenced by disregard of others' feelings*
- *Chronic low self-esteem related to identity disturbance as evidenced by fear of abandonment*
- *Social isolation related to lack of trust as evidenced by superficial interactions with others*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. For example, the acutely ill person with a borderline personality disorder may have a risk of self-mutilation or self-directed violence. During periods of remission, nursing diagnoses such as impaired social interaction or chronic low self-esteem may be the priority areas to be addressed.

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, within the therapeutic relationship, the nurse will be able to help the patient develop a structure for daily activities and to review the expectations with the patient. If the patient does not show up for some of the scheduled

activities or arrives late, this would provide an opportunity for the nurse and the patient to review expectations. The patient would be helped to learn how his or her behavior affects others who are expecting their participation in the group.

A common priority nursing diagnosis for a patient with a personality disorder is risk for self-directed or other-directed violence.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

Once the nurse and the patient have established treatment goals and plans for interventions, implementation of the plan occurs. The first and foremost concern is the promotion of patient safety (Feigenbaum, 2010; Yeandle, Gordon, Challis, & Fawkes, 2013). Interventions focus on ways to change the lifelong disruptive behavior associated with personality disorders to maintain a safe environment. The nurse needs to monitor the patient for suicidal ideation, a suicidal plan, lethality of plan, and intent (Yeandle et al., 2013).

Frequently, patients with personality disorders, most particularly with borderline personality disorders, will be at high risk for suicide. One commonly used strategy to prevent suicide is the no-suicide or no-harm contract. The no-suicide contract is an agreement typically written between the patient and the mental health care team in which the patient vows not to harm himself or herself. Despite common use of this intervention, there is little research to support its effectiveness (Puskar & Urda, 2011). As such, it is imperative for the nurse to use other strategies to promote patient safety and avoid suicide (i.e., using screening tools, increasing the level of observation, providing one-to-one support, having nurses manage access to items that may be used for self-harm, including social/family supports; Puskar & Urda, 2011).

In addition, the nurse needs to create and promote a therapeutic relationship (Bowen & Mason, 2012; Johnson et al., 2010; McNee et al., 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012). Patients who have been diagnosed with a personality disorder frequently display dysfunctional relationships. Therefore, the nurse must establish boundaries in the relationship, teach effective communication skills, help patients to cope, help patients to control their emotions, and assist patients in learning how to reshape their thinking patterns (Bowen & Mason, 2012; Johnson et al., 2010; McNee et al., 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012). In general, patients with personality disorders who are on inpatient units or in partial treatment programs should be encouraged to attend the scheduled activities. Additionally, these patients should be encouraged to keep a journal. By doing so, the patient will be able to look back and potentially develop a better understanding about how feelings affect relationships and behavior. Thus, the formation of a therapeutic relationship can help promote responsible behavior.

Interventions for Cluster A Personality Disorders

The specific interventions often vary depending on the type of personality disorder diagnosed. For example, patients diagnosed with paranoid personality disorder will benefit from nursing interventions such as frequent short interactions, a serious and straightforward approach, and education about validating thoughts before taking action. Patients diagnosed with schizoid personality disorder will benefit from nursing interventions aimed at helping the patient to improve his or her functioning and to locate resources in the community such as a case manager (Hayward, 2007). Patients diagnosed with schizotypal personality disorder will benefit from nursing interventions directed at improving self-care skills, improving community functioning, and improving social skills (Hayward, 2007). **Therapeutic Interaction 14-1** highlights an interaction with a patient experiencing a paranoid personality disorder.

Interventions for Cluster B Personality Disorders

Patients diagnosed with Cluster B personality disorders will benefit from different nursing interventions. For example, those individuals diagnosed with antisocial personality disorder will benefit from learning problem-solving techniques and management of anger and frustration because they tend to react impulsively when confronted with problems. **How Would You Respond? 14-1** provides a practical example of how to deal with a patient with antisocial personality disorder.

Problem-solving techniques will help the patient learn to identify the problem, explore alternative solutions and related consequences, choose and implement alternatives, and evaluate the results (Tenhula et al., 2014). To help patients control their emotions, the nurse can use a **TIME-OUT**. Time-out refers to a situation in which the nurse allows the patient to get away from the area and go to a safe, nonstimulating place to regain emotional control. This technique helps prevent the patient from acting impulsively and from having emotional outbursts. It also gives the patient an opportunity to reflect on his or her behavior and develop some more constructive, alternative ways of behaving (McNee et al., 2014).

Other nursing interventions such as **LIMIT SETTING** and **CONFRONTATION** (a technique used to help the patient

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 14-1: A PATIENT WITH PARANOID PERSONALITY DISORDER NEEDING CONFRONTATION

Mr. C. has been transferred to the psychiatric inpatient unit from the emergency department. He presented at the emergency department with signs of severe alcohol intoxication after being involved in an auto accident and receiving minor injuries (lacerations on face). He indicated that someone had tampered with his car, causing the accident. He also voiced concern that they would follow him into this unit and would threaten his life.

Nurse: "Mr. C., I am the nurse who will be with you today until 7 o'clock this evening. Can you tell me what brought you here?"	Introduces self and begins development of interpersonal relationship. Clearly communicates role and time frame
Mr. C.: "There are people out to get me. They caused my auto accident and they will follow me here."	Communicates paranoia
Nurse: "This is a hospital and no one here will harm you. We are here to help you."	Building on the relationship, reinforces the safe environment and the therapeutic nature of the unit
Mr. C.: "The only help I need is for someone to get rid of the people who are following me."	Continues to deny need for help and continues to express paranoia
Nurse: "Mr. C., can you tell me what happened last evening that led to your coming to the emergency department?"	Continues to develop therapeutic relationship and focuses on helping the patient develop beginning insight into his behavior
Mr. C.: "Someone rigged my car so that I would have an accident."	Denial of own role in behavior
Nurse: "I am very interested in helping you but first you must tell me everything that happened last evening to lead you to the emergency department. I understand that you were intoxicated and that this was related to the accident."	Directly confronts patient so as to focus the conversation on his behavior and help him develop beginning insight

take note of a behavior and examine it) will be necessary as these patients tend to try to manipulate and deceive others. Limit setting identifies for the patient what he or she can or cannot do. Several steps are involved in limit setting. First, the nurse explains which behavior is inappropriate and provides a rationale. Next, the nurse tells the patient what behavior is expected. Finally, the nurse informs the patient about the consequences for going beyond the established limit. When setting limits, use clear and concise statements phrased in a calm and nonthreatening manner. Also never set a limit that cannot be enforced.

When using confrontation, the patient may respond in an angry and defensive manner. Therefore, it is important that the nurse not become defensive. Rather, the nurse needs to focus on the patient's behavior itself and not on the patient's attempts to justify his or her actions (Johnson et al., 2010).

Throughout limit setting and confrontation, the nurse needs to observe the patient's behavior to enforce boundaries for inappropriate behaviors. This is very important in this population because clear boundaries often need to be established for unsafe or hostile behavior. Unfortunately,

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 14-1: PATIENT WITH AN ANTISOCIAL PERSONALITY DISORDER

Dave was a 36-year-old male who was referred to an inpatient unit by the court system. He had recently served time in prison. Dave did not feel he needed treatment. When asked about his conviction, he stated that he scammed elderly individuals out of their life savings. When confronted on this behavior, he laughs out loud and says they should have known better. He is initially charming to the other individuals; however, he remains superficial and lacks genuine warmth. Dave proudly shares that as a child he frequently broke his parents' rules, started drinking alcohol at a young age, was cruel to animals, beat up other children, and was in trouble at school when he chose to attend. He has not maintained a career as he gets bored. On the unit, Dave begins to display aggressive behavior that leads to conflict with his peers. How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *How does Dave reflect the diagnostic criteria for a patient with an antisocial personality disorder?*
2. *When assessing Dave, what underlying theme would be predominant?*
3. *What interventions would be appropriate for Dave to address his aggressiveness?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 14-1: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Dave has a history of unlawful behaviors and incarceration along with a history of childhood problems involving breaking rules, cruelty to animals and other children, and trouble at school. He demonstrates a reckless disregard for himself and others and a lack of remorse, especially in relation to his scamming elderly individuals out of their life savings. In addition, he exhibits consistent irresponsible behavior in not being able to maintain a career and irritability and aggressiveness that has led to conflict with others. An underlying theme related to Dave's behavior is his impulsivity. Interventions appropriate for Dave would include limit setting, confrontation, and time-out. Time-out would prevent Dave from acting impulsively and having emotional outbursts. It also gives him an opportunity to reflect on his behavior and develop some more constructive alternative ways of behaving. The nurse also would need to set clear and consistent boundaries for Dave and assist him in learning problem-solving techniques. Safety measures would be a priority to prevent self-injury that might occur due to his aggressiveness and impulsivity.

despite these efforts, the prognosis for individuals with antisocial personality disorders is poor because they often lack insight and experience a failure to conform to societal norms. Subsequently, they often become incarcerated due to criminal activity.

Like those individuals diagnosed with antisocial personality disorders, those diagnosed with borderline personality disorder will benefit from a therapeutic relationship and the establishment of boundaries and limits. However, developing a therapeutic relationship with these individuals can be challenging because persons with borderline personality disorders test the boundaries and engage in manipulation. Thus, the nurse needs to demonstrate a firm yet supportive approach, set limits, and be

consistent. Safety also is a priority. Individuals diagnosed with borderline personality disorder have difficulty coping and controlling emotions. The nurse needs to perform an ongoing thorough self-harm risk assessment and, if necessary, institute suicide precautions and administer prescribed medications. Additionally, the nurse can help the patient recognize how his or her thoughts and feelings are contributing to the behavior and then assist the patient in reshaping this thinking to result in more appropriate behaviors and emotions. This strategy is referred to as **COGNITIVE RESTRUCTURING TECHNIQUES**. Other useful nursing interventions involve structuring the patient's time; for example, making certain that the patient has a schedule of activity and is aware of the expectations to conform to the schedule, and teaching social and communication skills (Johnson et al., 2010; McNee et al., 2014; White & Byrt, 2013; Wright & Jones, 2012).

Offering an empathetic response is an example of a nursing intervention used with patients diagnosed with narcissistic personality disorders. This helps one to address the patient's underlying feeling of weakness and lack of self-confidence (White & Byrt, 2013). For those patients diagnosed with histrionic disorder, a matter-of-fact approach that avoids overreaction to the patient's exaggerations is helpful (Dorgan, 2000). For patients diagnosed with narcissistic and/or histrionic personality disorders, the nurse attempts to gain the patients' cooperation with the treatment plan, providing patients with factual feedback about their behavior. Social skill training is also effective.

Establishment of boundaries, time-out, and limit setting are effective interventions for patients diagnosed with antisocial or borderline personality disorders.

Interventions for Cluster C Personality Disorders

Patients diagnosed with avoidant and dependent personality disorders may benefit from nursing interventions aimed at helping the patient examine positive self-aspects and practice self-affirmations. These, in turn, may promote increased self-esteem. Nurses can provide direct feedback about social interactions and behaviors and encourage autonomy and self-reliance. Likewise, the nurse can encourage the patient to identify his or her feelings and to express them directly. Moreover, nurses can help patients learn assertiveness, problem solving, social skills, and decision-making skills, as well as cognitive restructuring techniques (Bowen & Mason, 2012; White & Byrt, 2013).

Nursing interventions for patients diagnosed with obsessive-compulsive personality disorder focus on helping the patient make timely decisions and complete work tasks. Negotiation with others is encouraged. Cognitive restructuring techniques are another useful intervention with these patients (Bowen & Mason, 2012). Individuals with obsessive-compulsive personality disorder desire routine and are respectful to authority figures. These characteristics, in addition to patients' compliance with rules and devotion to their professional careers, will often lead to their success. In addition, careers that call for perfectionism, a need to continually verify small details for errors, and entail micromanagement are a great fit for an individual with obsessive-compulsive personality disorder. The nurse can emphasize this aspect when working with the patient.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The psychiatric-mental health nurse evaluates his or her efforts via objective critique of interventions and self-reflection to ensure accountable, respectful, and nonjudgmental nursing practice. The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. During this phase, the nurse compares the patient's current level of functioning with the identified goals and outcomes. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care. For example, evaluate how the patient presented on admission and where they are at this point. Were the goals and interventions developed based on what the nurse wanted to happen, or what the patient and nurse wanted to happen? Did the nurse's buttons get pushed? Was the treatment plan reactive or proactive? During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, both the nurse and the patient reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient goals. Point out positives to the patient and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate.

A rapid change in behavior is highly unlikely in patients diagnosed with personality disorders. It took years to develop these behaviors and patterns of thinking. Subsequently, it will take years to change. However, research supports that a wide range of interventions may decrease troubling symptoms and assist patients with personality disorders to alter behaviors that cause difficulty for them or others (White & Byrt, 2013).

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

Throughout the previous decade, national reports have underscored significant quality and safety issues in American health care organizations (Institute of Medicine

[IOM], 1999, 2001). The IOM report *To Err Is Human* (1999) states that about 100,000 patients die yearly as a result of avoidable errors. The chasm reports (IOM 2001, 2003, 2005, 2010) outlined necessary changes such as the need for nursing faculty to integrate safety and high-quality care into the curriculum and clinical practice (Beischel & Davis, 2014; Brady, 2011; Cooper, 2013; Djukic et al., 2013; Dolansky & Moore, 2013; Pollard et al., 2014). Based on these recommendations, nursing leaders with support from the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation founded a National Advisory Board for Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) with the aim to enhance the safety and quality of patient care in nursing curricula. The group has defined six competencies that mirror those of the IOM report (patient-centered care, teamwork and collaboration, evidence-based practice, quality improvement, safety, and informatics). For each competency, a set of core knowledge, skills, and attitudes that pre-licensure nursing students should master was developed (Cronenwett et al., 2007). These competencies can be demonstrated as psychiatric nurses' care for their clients with personality disorders. For example, the competency of evidence-based practice, patient-centered care, quality improvement, safety, teamwork, and collaboration can be demonstrated in the nursing interventions we choose for our patients with borderline personality disorder. Is your institution utilizing no-suicide or no-harm contracts to prevent injury and suicide for patients with borderline personality disorder with self-harm or suicidal tendencies? If so, find your institutions policy and procedure on this intervention. Do nurses know where to find this policy? How was the policy initially disseminated to nursing staff? Locate evidence-based practice articles to support the use of this intervention. Compare and contrast the information you find in the evidence-based article and in your institution's policy. Is the policy evidence based? Would you suggest any changes to the policy based on the latest evidence? Identify the pros and cons to the policy and any ethical concerns associated with no-harm contracts.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Personality disorders are maladaptive, rigid, and enduring personality characteristics that produce impairment in functioning or individual distress.
- Personality disorders are categorized into three clusters based on the predominant symptoms. These are Cluster A disorders, involving odd or eccentric behavior (paranoid, schizoid, and schizotypal personality disorders); Cluster B disorders, involving dramatic, emotional, or erratic behavior (antisocial, borderline, histrionic, and narcissistic personality disorders); and Cluster C disorders, involving anxious or fearful behaviors (avoidant, dependent, and obsessive-compulsive personality disorders).
- Personality disorders usually begin in early adolescence or early adulthood and affect approximately 10% of the population in the United States. They are associated with other major mental disorders and alcoholism; antisocial and borderline personality disorders are strongly related to violence and violent acts.
- It is unlikely that there is a single cause of personality disorders, but rather multiple components such as psychodynamic, environmental, genetic, and neurobiological factors may converge to produce the illness.
- Many different treatment options are available and may include psychotherapy (individual, group, and family therapy), CBT, DBT, and psychopharmacology, which are used to treat the symptoms of the disorder but have no effect on the maladaptive, rigid personality traits.
- Patients with personality disorders can be challenging because these patients can arouse intense emotions in the nurse. As a result, developing a therapeutic relationship may be difficult. Therefore, nurses working with patients diagnosed with personality disorders need to maintain self-awareness and be alert to personal signals of frustration that a patient's behaviors can elicit and avoid internalizing feelings or taking them personally.
- Nursing interventions appropriate for patients with Cluster A personality disorders include frequent short interactions, a straightforward approach, and education about validating thoughts before acting on them. Emphasis is on improving the patient's functional level, locating community resources, and improving self-care and social skills.
- Nursing interventions appropriate for patients with Cluster B personality disorders include teaching problem-solving techniques, using time-out, limit setting, and confrontation. An ongoing assessment of the patient's risk for self-harm is essential because the patient has difficulty coping and controlling emotions.
- Nursing interventions appropriate for patients with Cluster C personality disorders include measures to promote a positive self-aspect, encourage autonomy and self-reliance, and promote assertiveness, problem solving, social skills, and decision making.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of nursing students is reviewing class information about the different types of personality disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of this information when they identify which of the following as a Cluster A personality disorder? Select all that apply.
   a. Borderline personality disorder
   b. Paranoid personality disorder
   c. Avoidant personality disorder
   d. Schizoid personality disorder
   e. Narcissistic personality disorder
   f. Antisocial personality disorder

2. A patient is being admitted to the inpatient unit with a diagnosis of borderline personality disorder. When preparing to assess this patient, which of the following would the nurse need to keep in mind?
   a. The patient is likely to demonstrate behaviors to get attention.
   b. The patient's behavior typically reflects a need to prevent abandonment.
   c. The patient most likely has a history of involvement with law enforcement.
   d. The patient will exhibit an extreme suspiciousness about others.

3. While working with a patient diagnosed with an antisocial personality disorder, the nurse notes that the patient is beginning to exhibit signs that he is losing emotional control. The nurse assists the patient in moving to a safe, quiet area to regain his control. The nurse is using which of the following?
   a. Time-out
   b. Limit setting
   c. Confrontation
   d. Cognitive restructuring

4. A patient with antisocial personality disorder is observed taking another patient's belongings. Which initial nursing intervention would be most appropriate?
   a. Tell the patient's primary nurse what happened
   b. Obtain an order for an antipsychotic medication
   c. Confront the patient about his behavior
   d. Encourage the patient to discuss his angry feelings

5. The nurse is developing a plan of care for a patient diagnosed with a schizotypal personality disorder. Which of the following would be most appropriate to include in the plan?
   a. Setting specific boundaries for behavior
   b. Teaching problem-solving techniques
   c. Fostering decision-making skills
   d. Implementing social skills training

6. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess in a patient who is diagnosed with an obsessive-compulsive personality disorder?
   a. Preoccupation with details
   b. Suspiciousness of others
   c. Exaggerated sense of self-importance
   d. Unwillingness to get involved with others

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2005). *Guideline watch: Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with borderline personality disorder.* Retrieved from http://psychiatryonline.org/pb/assets/raw/sitewide/practice_guidelines/guidelines/bpd-watch.pdf

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Beischel, K. P., & Davis, D. S. (2014). A time for change: QSENizing the curriculum. *Nurse Educator, 39*(2), 65–71.

Bowen, M., & Mason, T. (2012). Forensic and non-forensic psychiatric nursing skills and competencies for psychopathic and

personality disordered patients. *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 21*, 3556–3564.

Brady, D. S. (2011). Using quality and safety education for nurses (QSEN) as a pedagogical structure for course redesign and content. *International Journal of Nursing Education Scholarship*, 8(1), 1–18.

Burroughs, T., & Somerville, J. (2013). Utilization of evidenced based dialectical behavioral therapy in assertive community treatment: Examining feasibility and challenges. *Community Mental Health Journal*, *49*(1), 25–32.

Cooper, E. (2013). From the school of nursing quality and safety officer: Nursing students' use of safety reporting tools and their perception of safety issues in clinical settings. *Journal of Professional Nursing: Official Journal of the American Association of Colleges of Nursing, 29*(2), 109–116.

Crawford, M. J., Kakad, S., Rendel, C., Mansour, N. A., Crugel, M., Liu, K. W., Paton, C., & Barnes, T. R. (2011). Medication prescribed to people with personality disorder: The influence of patient factors and treatment setting. *Acta psychiatrica Scandinavica*, *124*(5), 396–402.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P., Sullivan, D. T., & Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Dimaggio, G. (2014). Hitting the bull's eye in personality disorders psychotherapy. *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy*, *44*(2), 65–70.

Djukic, M., Kovner, C. T., Brewer, C. S., Fatehi, F. K., Bernstein, I., & Aidarus, N. (2013). Improvements in educational preparedness for quality and safety. *Journal of Nursing Regulation, 4*(2), 15–21.

Dolansky, M.A., & Moore, S.M. (2013). Quality and safety education for nurses (QSEN): The key is systems thinking. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 18*(3), 1–12.

Dorgan, W. J. (2000). The histrionic personality on the job. *Modern Machine Shop, 73*(5), 132.

D'Silva, K., Chadwich, K., Egleston, P., Milton, J., Ferriter, M., & Abdelrazek, T. (2013). Pharmacotherapy for personality disorders—Prescribing practice at a high secure hospital: A preliminary report. *Personality and Mental Health*, *7*, 22–27.

Fanaian, M., Lewis, K. L., & Grenyer, B. F. S. (2013). Improving services for people with personality disorders: Views of experienced clinicians. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 22*, 465–471.

Feigenbaum, J. (2010). Self-harm—The solution not the problem: The dialectical behavioral therapy model. *Psychoanalytic Psychotherapy, 24*(2), 115–134.

Friborg, O., Martinsen, E. W., Martinussen, M., Kaiser, S., Overgard, K. T., & Rosenvinge, J. H. (2014). Comorbidity of personality disorders in mood disorders: A meta-analytic review of 122 studies from 1988 to 2010. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, *152–154*, 1–11. doi:10.1016/j.jad.2013.08.023

Hayward, B. A. (2007). Cluster A personality disorders: Considering the "odd-eccentric" in psychiatric nursing. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 16*, 15–21.

Inman, P. (2013). The pressure to prescribe for patients with personality disorders. *Nurse Prescribing, 11*(1), 12–13.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (1999). *To err is human: Building a safer health system.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: a new health system for the 21st century.* Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2003). *Health professions: a bridge to quality.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2005). *Improving the quality of health care for mental and substance-use conditions: Quality chasm series.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2010). *Redesigning continuing education in the health professions.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Johnson, A. B., Gentile, J. P., & Correll, T. L. (2010). Accurately diagnosing and treating borderline personality disorder: A psychotherapeutic case. *Psychiatry, 7*(4), 21–29.

Keinanen, M. T., Johnson, J. G., Richards, E. S., & Courtney, E. A. (2012). A systematic review of the evidence-based psychosocial risk factors for understanding borderline personality disorders. *Psychoanalytic Psychotherapy, 26*(1), 65–91.

Levey, K. N., & Scala, J. W. (2015). Integrated treatment for personality disorders: A commentary. *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration, 25*(1), 49–57.

Maclean, J. C., & French M. T. (2014). Personality disorders, alcohol use, and alcohol misuse. *Social Science and Medicine*, *120*, 286–300.

Mason, A. M., Cardell, R., & Armstrong, M. (2013). Malingering psychosis: Guidelines for assessment and management. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 50*, 51–57.

Matusiewicz, A. K., Hopwood, C. J., Banducci, A. N., & Lejuez, C. W. (2010). The effectiveness of cognitive behavioral therapy for personality disorders. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, *33*(3), 657–685.

Mauchnik, J., & Schmahl, C. (2010). The latest neuroimaging findings in borderline personality disorder. *Current Psychiatry Reports, 12,* 46–55.

McNee, L., Donoghue, C., & Coppola, A. M. (2014). A team approach to borderline personality disorder. *Mental Health Practice*, *17*(10), 33–35.

Paris, J. (2015). Clinical implications in biological factors in personality disorders. *Canadian Psychology, 56*(2), 263–266.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Perez-Rodriguez, M., Zaluda, L., & New, A. S. (2013). Biological advances in personality disorders. *FOCUS*, *11*(2), 146–154.

Pollard, M. L., Stapleton, M., Kennelly, L., Bagdan, L., Cannistraci, P., Millenbach, L., & Odondi, M. (2014). Assessment of quality and safety education in nursing: A New York state perspective. *Nursing Education Perspectives, 35*(4), 224–229.

Puskar, K., & Urda, B. (2011). Examining the efficacy of no-suicide contracts in the in-patient psychiatric setting: Implications for psychiatric nursing. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 32,* 785–788.

Raine, A. (2013). *The anatomy of violence*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Reichborn-Kjennerud, T. (2010). The genetic epidemiology of personality disorders. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience, 12*(1), 103–114.

Ruocco, A. C., Amirthavasagam, S., & Zakzanis, K. K. (2012). Amygdala and hippocampal volume reductions as candidate endophenotypes for borderline personality disorder: A meta-analysis of magnetic resonance imaging studies. *Psychiatry Research, 201,* 245–252.

Sansone, R. A., & Sansone, L. A. (2011). Personality disorders: A nation-based perspective on prevalence. *Innovation in Clinical Neuroscience*, *8*(4), 13–18.

Tenhula, W. N., Nezu, A. N., Nezu, C. M., Stewart, M. O., Miller, S. A., Steele, J., & Karlin, B. E. (2014). Moving forward: A problem-solving training program to foster Veteran resilience. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 45*(6), 416–424.

White, C., & Byrt, R. (2013). Understanding and caring for people with personality disorders. *Mental Health Today,* 23–26.

Wright, K., & Jones, F. (2012). Therapeutic alliances in people with borderline personality disorder. *Mental Health Practice, 16*(2), 31–35.

Yeandle, J., Gordon, C., Challis, E., & Fawkes, L. (2013). Risk assessment and management of people with personality disorders. *Mental Health Practice, 17*(2), 21–23.

Zauszniewski, J., Bekhet, A., & Haberlein, S. (2012). A decade of published evidence for psychiatric and mental health nursing interventions. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 17*(3), 1–14.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 15

SUBSTANCE-RELATED AND ADDICTIVE DISORDERS

Carolyn A. Baird

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Discuss addictive disorders
2. Describe the historical perspective and epidemiology of substance use and addictive disorders (SUDs)
3. Distinguish among the characteristic behaviors for disorders involving alteration of mood SUDs
4. Discuss current issues and other problems related to substance use

KEY TERMS

Abuse
Addictive disorder
Dependency
Detoxification
Intoxication
Substance use disorder
Tolerance
Withdrawal

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013) departs from previous versions in deleting a category of substance abuse and dependency. The category is substance-related disorders, which include substance use disorders and substance-induced disorders that result from the activation of the reward pathways in the brain and behavioral SUDs for certain repetitive actions. The substances that are capable of producing activation of the reward pathways are encompassed within a set of 10 classes, one of which is an all others class. A substance use disorder is diagnosed when the ingestion of one of these substances results in specific cognitive, behavioral or physiological symptoms. Substance use disorders are diagnosed as mild when 2 to 3 symptoms are present, moderate for 4 to 5 symptoms, and severe for 6 or more out of the 11 possible. It is further suggested by the *DSM-5* that individuals are predisposed to substance use disorders by having lower levels of self-control. Substance-induced disorders include **INTOXICATION** (stupefaction or excitement due to the action of a chemical), withdrawal, and any mental disorder determined to be the result of ingesting a substance or medication (APA, 2013).

Activation of the reward pathways in the brain is part of a neurobiological brain system, the mesolimbic dopamine system, that identifies pleasurable activities and sets in motion a system of reward and motivation to sustain life. Some primary activities for sustaining life are eating, sexual activity, and feeling good. Looking at substances pharmacologically shows that activation of these same reward pathways in the brain can occur from any use of psychoactive licit and illicit substances. Identical neurological responses have been identified with certain behaviors. Stimulation of the reward pathway results in the same responses regardless of the brain stimulated. What differs is the extent to the response. This is mediated by the physiological and psychological characteristics of the individual (National Institute on Drug Abuse [NIDA], 2010). Professionals in the substance use treatment field see SUDs to be brain disorders rather than an issue of self-control. Symptoms for a substance use or addictive disorder follow the criteria of *DSM-5* (American Society of Addiction Medicine [ASAM], 2011; NIDA, 2010).

The 10th edition of the *International Classification of Diseases* (*ICD-10*) from the World Health Organization has been clinically modified for use in the United States. All health care entities covered by the Health Information Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) are required to use these diagnostic codes. The substance use category in the *ICD-10-CM* code is mental and behavioral disorders due to psychoactive substance use and includes a continuum of use versus abuse versus dependency. The diagnostic symptomatology classifications closely follow those of the *DSM-5*, ASAM, and NIDA (World Health Organization, 1995). Because of the issues associated with these multiple sources for diagnostic presentation, this chapter looks at SUDs from a clinical aspect using ASAM and NIDA resources.

SUBSTANCE USE AND ADDICTIVE DISORDERS refer to the "chronic, relapsing brain disease that is characterized by compulsive drug seeking and use, despite harmful consequences" (NIDA, National Institutes of Health [NIH], and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 2012; NIDA, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications, 2014). Initially, a person voluntarily makes the choice to use a drug. However, over time, the person's ability to voluntarily choose not to use the drug becomes impaired. As a result, the person's self-control is compromised, leading to compulsive behavior to seek out and use the drug. The explanation is that substance use and addictive disorders affect the brain circuitry, causing changes in specific areas such as those involved in reward and motivation, learning and memory, and inhibitory control over behavior (NIDA, NIH, and DHHS, 2012; NIDA, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications, 2014). In 2011, the ASAM adopted the definition, "Substance use and addictive disorders is a primary, chronic disease of brain reward, motivation, memory and related circuitry," which continues to be used today.

Substance use and addictive disorders involve a spectrum of disorders of substance use and dependence, as well as substance-induced disorders including intoxication and withdrawal. Substance use and addictive disorders in populations present many challenges for society in general as well as health care providers.

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of addictive disorders followed by a detailed description of these disorders as defined by the NIDA and the ASAM. Specific scientific theories focusing on the disease SUDs are described along with current trends and common treatment options. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a plan of care for a patient with an addictive disorder.

Compulsive drug seeking and use that leads to harmful consequences is termed an addictive disorder.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

Any substance has the potential to become a drug of abuse, not just alcohol or illegal drugs. The U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) statistics state that more than 7 million Americans are abusing prescription drugs (Palladini, 2011). Over the past centuries, society has viewed the use of alcohol, tobacco, and other drugs in varying ways. Initially, substances were viewed from a cultural perspective and were accepted. Additionally, when individuals overindulged and their intoxicated behavior became a problem, alcohol and drug use was dealt with as a criminal offense. Thus, the theory of SUDs was based on a more social model. Gradually, the view changed as the addictive nature of substances was identified. This led to SUDs being viewed through a medical or disease model. For example, notable instances of general use of a now known addictive substance are opium in paregoric and cannabis in many patent medications.

The American Medical Association (AMA) first took the position in 1958 that alcoholism was a disease. Identifying similarities in the action of various substances to produce the same dysfunction in the neurotransmitters of the brain led to a broader understanding of SUDs. The introduction of the first Controlled Substances Act in 1970 came as a result of the acknowledgment of SUDs as a disease of the neurotransmitters of the brain. Since that time, researchers have identified the specific neurotransmitters, areas of the brain, and response pathways that are implicated in SUDs. It has been observed that abusive relationships with objects and behaviors may affect the same areas of the brain. The resulting disorder is now considered a process addiction.

Over time, a number of substance and process addictions have been noted. Each generation appears to have its own primary SUDs. Consider these examples. Individuals born before 1943, termed the Traditional or Silent Generation, were more likely to experience alcoholism and prescription drug abuse and less likely to use illicit substances. This changed with the Baby Boomer generation, those born between 1944 and 1964. They experienced the social issues involving the Vietnam War, antiwar demonstrations, Flower Children, and Woodstock. As a result, illicit substances were brought into the forefront in the form of cannabis and lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD). Individuals of Generation X, those born from 1964 to 1978, appear to have started with cannabis, used LSD and mescaline, graduated to cocaine and methamphetamine, and then expanded into heroin (Furek, 2008). Generation Y or Millennials, those born from 1979 to 2000 and known for their preoccupation with technology, have been noted for the use of club drugs.

Substance use disorder refers to a disease affecting the brain and its chemistry. Both substances and behavioral or process addictions activate the same neurotransmitters and use the same reward pathways.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA) funds an annual National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH). The 2014 report reveals that the number of Americans 12 years or older who engaged in the use of an illicit drug was estimated at 24.6 million or approximately 9.4% of the population in 2013. Additionally, an estimated 21.6 million persons aged 12 years and older were classified as having substance dependence or substance abuse in the past year. Of these, approximately 2.6 million persons abused or were dependent on alcohol and illicit drugs, 4.3 million persons were dependent on or abused illicit drugs alone, and 14.7 million were dependent on or abused alcohol alone (SAMHSA, 2014). Treatment also was addressed in this report. According to SAMHSA (2014), 22.7 million persons or 8.6% (aged 12 years and older) needed treatment for an illicit drug or alcohol use problem. Out of this group, only 2.5 million received treatment at a specialty facility, with the remaining 20.2 million with a problem not receiving treatment.

Many reasons exist for this large discrepancy in the numbers receiving treatment. One reason may be that the secrecy and confusion surrounding this disease make it difficult to diagnose. Also, many individuals who are using substances deny that their use is a problem. Only about 5% feel they need treatment. The most frequent reason given by those wanting treatment but not receiving it is they lack insurance or the financial resources to pay for it (SAMHSA, 2014). Formal standardized definitions, terminology, and/or criteria are being developed (ASAM, 2015; NIDA, NIH, and DHHS, 2012, 2014); however, confusion still exists around the terms *substance use, abuse*, and *dependence*. They are often used interchangeably even though they are separate terms referring to discrete patterns of behavior. Substance use, addictive disorders, and substance-induced disorders are common categories under SUDs. All of these relate to a maladaptive pattern of substance use.

There are a variety of reasons why individuals use substances. When illegal or illicit drugs are being used

or legal drugs are being used inappropriately, it is referred to as **ABUSE**. There may be repeated use to produce pleasure or alleviate stress, or there may be an attempt to alter or avoid reality. Prescription drug abuse refers to using drugs that are prescribed for you in ways other than as prescribed or by taking medication prescribed for someone else (ASAM, 2014; NIDA, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications, 2014). During this initial stage there may be intermittent use that leads to failure to meet obligations, allows the individual to be put in hazardous situations, causes legal problems, or results in social, interpersonal, or professional problems (Doweiko, 2006). **DEPENDENCY** is a term that may be used in two ways. Individuals may develop a physical dependence on a substance without having the disease of SUDs. Any substance taken into the body on a regular (daily or almost daily) basis triggers the body's adaptive mechanism. Whether the substance is legal or illegal, taken as prescribed or abused, adaptation will cause **TOLERANCE** to develop and larger amounts of the substance will be needed to receive the same result. This adaptation also triggers symptoms, often referred to as **WITHDRAWAL**, when the substance is removed (NIDA, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications, 2014). It can be confusing because dependence that is referred to as a **SUBSTANCE USE DISORDER** has tolerance and withdrawal as part of the criteria for diagnosis. However, there are additional criteria that need to be met. Addictive drugs are psychoactive. They affect the brain's natural inhibition and reward centers. The individual is unable to control the impulse to use. Negative consequences will occur but the individual will continue to crave the substance (ASAM, 2014; NIDA, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications, 2014). This dependency is said to be the final stage; here, dependency refers to a maladaptive pattern of behavior characterized by progression, tolerance, withdrawal, and preoccupation with the behavior regardless of any consequences. It has the potential to be fatal (Doweiko, 2006). Current use of diagnostic terminology combines substance abuse and substance dependence under the phrase *substance-related and addictive disorders* (APA, 2013).

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

Substance use and addictive disorders refers to a disease that can occur at any time across the life span, manifesting as chronic with remissions and exacerbations, or as an isolated episode (Antai-Otong, 2006). Many presenting core symptoms are the same across SUDs while others are descriptive of the particular type of substance use (**Box 15-1**). The quest for knowledge about SUDs has led to the understanding that individuals may be addicted to a substance, prescribed or illicit; liquid, vapor, or solid; or they may be addicted to a particular course of action, thoughts, feelings, or behaviors, known as a process addiction. Between 50% and 75% of individuals diagnosed with a substance use disorder have a co-occurring mental health disorder.

ASAM (2014) discusses the neurobiological adaptation, the interactive nature of genetic predisposition and environmental stressors, and its characteristic bio-psycho-social-spiritual factors. Substance use and addictive disorders may manifest behaviorally, cognitively, and emotionally. Increasingly, recognition is being given to certain behavioral activities as process addictions. In the past, consideration was given to an individual's legal situation. That recognition has been dropped as substance-related and addictive disorders are being viewed more globally (APA, 2013).

Behavioral manifestations can include the following:

1. Excessive use and/or engaging in addictive behaviors, often more frequently than intended, using more than intended, or unsuccessful attempts to stop using
2. Excessive time lost using or recovering from use, neglect of responsibilities with adverse effects on social or professional functioning, and relationship problems (at home, school, or work);
3. Continued use and/or engagement in addictive behaviors, despite persistent or recurrent physical or psychological problems which may be the result of substance use and/or related addictive behaviors
4. A narrowing of interest to only rewards that are part of SUDs
5. An apparent lack of ability and/or readiness to quit despite admitting use is a problem

Cognitive changes can include the following:

1. Preoccupation with substance use
2. Altered perception of the benefits and detriments associated with drugs or reward behaviors
3. The inaccurate belief that problems experienced in one's life are attributable to other causes rather than being a predictable consequence of SUDs

Emotional changes can include the following:

1. Increased anxiety, dysphoria, and emotional pain
2. Increased sensitivity to stressors
3. Difficulty in identifying feelings, identifying bodily sensations of emotional arousal, and describing the same (http://www.asam.org/for-the-public/definition-of-addiction)

BOX 15-1: FIVE FEATURES OF SUBSTANCE USE AND ADDICTIVE DISORDERS

Reduced to five features, SUDs can be said to be

1. An inability to consistently *A*bstain
2. An impairment in *B*ehavioral control
3. A *C*raving; or increased "hunger" for drugs or rewarding experiences
4. A *D*iminished recognition of significant problems with one's behaviors and interpersonal relationships
5. A dysfunctional *E*motional response (ASAM, 2014).

Some of the categories of psychoactive substances are:

- Alcohol
- Amphetamines and similar acting drugs (amphetamine, dextroamphetamine, methamphetamine ["speed"])
- Caffeine
- Cannabis (marijuana, bhang, hashish)
- Cathinones (bath salts, flakka, etc.)
- Cocaine
- Hallucinogens (LSD, morning glory seeds, phenylalkylamines [mescaline, "STP"], MDMA [ecstasy])
- Inhalants (hydrocarbons such as those found in gasoline, paint thinners, glue, and spray paints)
- Nicotine
- Opioids (morphine, heroin, codeine, hydromorphone, methadone, oxycodone, meperidine, and fentanyl)
- Phencyclidine (PCP) and similar acting drugs (such as ketamine)
- Sedatives, hypnotics, or anxiolytics (benzodiazepines, barbiturates)

ETIOLOGY

Many models have been used to explain the theoretical basis of SUDs. Research has focused on a wide range of areas including the spiritual, systems, moral, characterological, behavioral, educational, temperance, dispositional, and medical or disease models (Doweiko, 2006; Konrad, 2005). Many of these models are based on the individual lacking knowledge or control of behavior. These are all part of what may be considered the social model and their focus is on blaming the individual for choosing bad behavior or for lacking sufficient character or a strong moral compass. For example, the spiritual model is the basis for Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) and other 12-step recovery programs. Following the program necessitates the individual declaring powerlessness and finding a higher power. All of the models based on individual choice support the idea that all the individual with an SUD has to do is stop using the substance or engaging in the activity. Medication is not usually a part of the treatment protocol.

Although the medical or disease model is the most widely accepted within the substance abuse field, many laypeople and professionals continue to question the presence of biological markers (Doweiko, 2006). Doweiko defines the disease model of SUDs as a primary medical disorder with the potential to affect an individual's social, psychological, spiritual, and economic life. Yet he also admits that "a universally accepted comprehensive theory of substance use and addictive disorders has yet to be developed" (Doweiko, 2006, p. 20). To really understand SUDs, it is important to acknowledge the role of the central nervous system, neurotransmitters, and the brain's reward pathways.

In pursuit of a comprehensive theory based on the medical or disease model, research has been conducted in a variety of areas (Koob, 2006; Shaffer et al., 2004). Evidence is emerging that suggests that SUDs must be viewed or conceptualized in a much broader fashion to capture the nature, origin, and processes that comprise SUDs (Satel & Lilienfeld, 2013; Shaffer et al., 2004). In reviewing the evidence, Shaffer et al. (2004) identified a number of interacting biopsychosocial antecedents. This study is highlighted in **Evidence-Based Practice 15-1**. In 2014, Satel and Lilienfeld conducted research intended to debunk the idea of SUDs as a brain disease. Their argument paralleled the work of Shaffer et al. (2004). Substance use and addictive disorders are more than the sum of neurotransmitters and brain reward pathways. Shared neurobiological antecedents include the central nervous system circuitry, neurotransmitters, and reward pathways along with the

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 15-1: MODEL OF SUDs

STUDY

Shaffer, H. J., LaPlante, D. A., LaBrie, R. A., Kidman, R. C., Donato, A. N., & Stanton, M.V. (2004). Toward a syndrome model of addiction: Multiple expressions, common etiology. *Harvard Review Psychiatry, 12*, 367–374. Retrieved from http://www.expressionsofaddiction.com/docs/shafferetal-syndrome.pdf

SUMMARY

The authors challenge the current view of the disease referred to as SUDs. Instead of relying on just the physiological action of the substances as the causal factor, they state that there is strong evidence of both neurobiological and psychosocial antecedents. This suggests a syndrome model of SUDs that simultaneously covers multiple expressions and common etiology. Proposals for the understanding of SUDs as a syndrome have their basis in the co-occurrence of various chemical and behavioral expressions stemming from an underlying commonality of genetic and psychosocial susceptibility.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

At the present time, more emphasis is put on self-report as the key to diagnosis. Using a syndrome approach to the treatment of SUDs engages the clinician in an ongoing evaluation of the relationships among the various antecedents, manifestations, and consequences and the course of the illness. Rethinking the philosophy of SUDs will lead to more objective diagnostic criteria, strengthen treatment approaches, and improve treatment outcomes.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How does viewing SUDs as a syndrome challenge your current understanding of the disease?*
2. *What implications can you see for changing treatment approaches?*

genetic vulnerability factors that make up the biological antecedents. Social and psychological risk factors make up the shared psychological antecedents. The last set of antecedents are shared experiences with shared manifestations and sequelae, parallel natural histories, object nonspecificity, concurrent manifestations, and treatment nonspecificity (Shaffer et al., 2004). For example, not everyone who uses a substance or engages in a behavior develops the disease, but everyone who develops a substance use or addictive disorder displays the same symptomatology, has the same genetic vulnerability, and shares a similar life history regardless of the substance or behavior. Thus, these shared antecedents support the idea that there are common risk factors for SUDs that reflect a shared origin or etiology. For these reasons, SUDs can be identified as a syndrome disorder.

Viewing this disease as a syndrome may be helpful in understanding the process that the individual undergoes in relationship to a substance or a behavior. It may also explain why only some of the individuals displaying this relationship become dependent while others do not. The ability to assess the shared manifestations allows for

adjusting the diagnosis and treatment to fit the course of the illness and the potential for relapse (Shaffer et al., 2004). This is important for all health care professionals, especially psychiatric-mental health nurses. Psychiatric-mental health nurses must gain an understanding of SUDs as a disease process with clearly defined characteristics and manifestations due to the increased presence of comorbid psychopathology in the abusing and dependent population. This psychopathology takes the form of generalized anxiety, major depression, and posttraumatic stress disorder (Shaffer et al., 2004).

There is a great deal of research being conducted in an attempt to understand the genetic and neurobiological components of SUDs. It is known that some individuals appear to be more genetically vulnerable and researchers have been attempting to identify the specific genes that may predispose individuals to become addicted to specific substances. It should be acknowledged that all individuals who use an addictive substance have the potential to become addicted. Genetic vulnerability may decide what substances or processes an individual is most at risk of or the extent of the cognitive damage that may occur as a result of the alteration in the neurotransmitter function. The only protection from becoming addicted is to never use the substance. This is true even for individuals with genetic vulnerability. Having a positive life history, good coping and stress management skills, and a supportive environment are also protective factors.

In the late 1940s and early 1950s, Jellinek (n.d.) conducted some of the earliest research on substance use disorders using a population of male alcoholics. These results were then used to develop a male model of care that was used through much of the 20th century. This gender bias was not considered a problem because substance abusing men were offered treatment, while substance abusing women were often hidden, protected, or abandoned (Doweiko, 2006). It is still difficult to compare gender rates because most statistics do not identify a male-to-female ratio. Statistics do reveal that 4.4 million women abuse or are dependent on alcohol, one of every three individuals dependent on alcohol is female, and that two million women abuse or are dependent on illicit drugs. This is important because of the biological differences between males and females. They experience SUDs and comorbid conditions differently and enter treatment through different pathways and for different reasons. Men frequently are referred to treatment by employers or the law. They also have lower incidences of depression and their substance diagnosis is primary. On the other hand, women seek treatment on their own, frequently from a mental health provider, due to a preexisting depression, anxiety, or posttraumatic stress disorder (Doweiko, 2006).

Factors Related to Substance Use and Addictive Disorders and Substance Abuse

As stated previously, there is currently no one theory that explains the cause of SUDs. However, several factors have been identified that increase a person's vulnerability to developing a substance use problem. These factors do not occur in isolation, that is, no one single factor is responsible for substance use. Rather, it is the interplay or sharing among these factors that increases a person's vulnerability.

Psychological Factors

Substance use disorders often occur in individuals with other mental health disorders. Although estimates vary depending on the population being surveyed, statistics from the SAMHSA (Center for Substance Abuse Treatment [CSAT], Tip 42, 2005b) set the number of individuals who admit to any mental health or substance use disorder at 52 million (30%) and those with both substance dependence and a severe mental illness (major depression, generalized anxiety, or posttraumatic stress disorder) at 8 million (5%). Another proposed explanation for a shared vulnerability is the prevalence of comorbid psychiatric and addictive disorders. Substance use disorders often occur as a secondary illness in those with mental health disorders; and mental health disorders are increasing in frequency with increasing rates for substance abuse. Thus, health care professionals need to understand that the interaction of mental health and substance use disorders is an expectation rather than an exception (Minkoff, 2005).

Environmental Factors

Also common to this at-risk population are a variety of sociodemographic factors. Poverty, geography, family, and peer groups have been shown to influence the onset and course of various disorders, as do subclinical risk factors, such as impulsivity, delinquency, and impaired parenting skills (Shaffer et al., 2004). Additionally, researchers are beginning to examine the prevalence of addictive and mental health disorders in certain groups of individuals to identify additional risk factors. For example, the military came under scrutiny after the Vietnam War due to the large numbers of returning veterans who were addicted and met criteria for comorbid mental health disorders such as major depression and posttraumatic stress disorder. Military service has continued to attract interest as a risk factor. A history of trauma, domestic violence, and criminal justice involvement also appear to be risk factors for developing mental health and substance use disorders (Koola et al., 2013).

Shared Experiences

Not all members of at-risk populations or individuals with risk factors develop a mental health or substance use disorder. However, being under stress, experiencing traumatic events, having poor coping skills, or having a particular genetic makeup may make individuals vulnerable to the onset of the neuroadaptive response if they are also exposed to potential objects of SUDs, such as chemicals or behaviors (ASAM, 2014; Shaffer et al., 2004). No particular personality traits have been identified as predictive; however, once abuse and dependency are present, common traits such as dysthmia, deceit, shame, or guilt have been identified.

A natural history appears to exist within the experience of SUDs that begins with risk factors and exposure, spreads an addictive pattern across chemical and behavioral expressions, and ends with an identifiable pattern of compulsion, tolerance, withdrawal, craving, and relapse. For example, the individual grows up in a home with an alcoholic, drug-addicted, or abusive parent, conferring genetic and psychological risk factors. The peer group they belong to likes to party on the weekends. They binge drink or use drugs each weekend, then start drinking or using during the week. They find it takes more for them to relax and have fun. Soon they are drinking or using during the day, or they drink or use and drive. They are on report at work or get a driving-under-the-influence (DUI) charge. They attend treatment as ordered but return to drinking or using drugs as soon as they are out of treatment.

The SUD syndrome presentation is the same regardless of the substance or behavioral process of SUDs. Both processes and substances of SUDs are frequently interchangeable. These shared manifestations of compulsion, tolerance, withdrawal, craving, and relapse serve as the definitive evidence for diagnosis (ASAM, 2014; Shaffer et al., 2004).

Neurobiological Influences

Substance use and addictive disorders are known to be a chronically relapsing disorder presenting with compulsive use of a substance or behavior, loss of control, and withdrawal symptoms, such as dysphoria, anxiety, or irritability (Koob, 2006). Individuals experience the use of drugs with the potential for dependence in different ways; therefore, there is current neurobiological research being conducted in an attempt to understand if there are neuropharmacological and neuroadaptive mechanisms that control this (Koob, 2006). One of the neuroadaptive mechanisms that have offered the best understanding of the addictive process is the brain reward system (Koob, 2006; NIDA, 2009a, 2009b, 2014; Shaffer et al., 2004).

Using functional magnetic resonance imaging, researchers have been able to track the neurobiological reward activity associated with the neurotransmitter dopamine (Koob, 2006; Shaffer et al., 2004). The dopamine reward system provides positive reinforcement for all natural rewards such as food, water, sex, and nurturing. These activities are rewarded with feelings of pleasure. Research has revealed that the use of psychoactive drugs has the ability to stimulate the same neurobiological pathways. Certain behaviors are capable of stimulating the same dopamine reward pathways, resulting in addictive disorders that are known as process or behavioral addictions (Shaffer et al., 2004). Other pathways and neurobiological mechanisms such as the learning and memory functions of the hippocampus and the role of the amygdala in emotional regulation have been implicated as playing a role in substance abuse.

Although it is not possible to use imaging techniques to follow all the changes in the brain and predict the addictive process, researchers have used their knowledge of the brain's neurobiology to develop generalized theories of the addictive process. As SUDs develop, changes occur in the neural circuits associated with the amygdala and in the function of various neurotransmitters and neuromodulators that recruit the brain stress system and reinforce dependence. The resulting dysregulation in these systems is implicated in decreases in orbitofrontal/prefrontal cortex matter and function and brain dopamine D2 receptors (Fortier et al., 2014; Koob, 2006). These changes are thought to explain the difficulty dependent individuals have with abstinence motivation, recurrent cravings, and frequent relapse. Shaffer et al. (2004, p. 369) have proposed that "the neurobiological circuitry of the central nervous system is the ultimate common pathway for addictive behaviors."

As a companion to the study of the neurobiological antecedents for SUDs, researchers have also examined the possibility of genetic markers as links and predictors to specific addictive behaviors. The evidence appears to support that a familial vulnerability transmission link for dependency is present, but that this risk is general rather than specific. This has raised the potential for the existence of a genetic link to a general increased risk for SUDs (Koob, 2006; Shaffer et al., 2004). What remains to be examined is the outcome of an individual having any of these associated markers. It is known that some affected individuals will never develop an addictive disorder. Other family members may display a variety of individual processes or substance disorders or multiple disorders.

One suggested explanation for these differences in the expression of SUDs is the impact of varying environmental, psychosocial, ethnic, and cultural factors. Although international research into alcohol use is impacted by variations in the size and strength of drinks and the methods used to measure alcohol consumption, survey data have provided

insight into rates of consumption and abstinence. Once the comparability difficulties have been resolved, additional studies may provide information on alcohol-related outcomes and differences within and across countries (Bloomfield, Stockwell, Gmel, & Rehn, 2003). Researchers have found that it is easier to study some of these differences within the population of the United States, as many races, cultures, and ethnic groups are represented. Although race is primarily representative of physiological responses, Straussner (2001) proposed that culture and ethnicity represent "worldviews, life patterns, institutions, languages, religious ideals, artistic expressions, and relationships shared by their group's members" (as cited in National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism [NIAAA], 2005, p. 3). For these reasons, trends and patterns of alcohol consumption and drug use differ significantly across various groups and manifest symptomatology according to the underlying physiological status of the individual.

Psychological, environmental, and neurobiological influences and shared experiences play a role in whether or not a person develops substance use and addictive disorders.

CURRENT TRENDS: PRESCRIPTION DRUG EPIDEMIC

From 2006 until 2010 there was an approximately 20% increase in prescription drug-associated overdose deaths. In 2010, 16,000 deaths were attributed to overdosing on prescription pain medication. Individuals were able to obtain 70% of that medication from friends and family. That same year around 3,000 individuals died as a result of a heroin overdose. As a result, in 2011 the Executive Office of the President of the United States identified prescription drug abuse as a national epidemic and a plan was developed to begin addressing it.

The plan was formed on a collaborative effort of policy, programming, and community and agency initiatives. The approaches used were developed using best advice, as evidence-based best practice was not available. A four-pronged plan using education, tracking and monitoring, proper medication disposal, and enforcement resulted in an immediate and effective response with the number of individuals abusing in 2011 and 2012 dropping by 12% (Executive Office of the President of the United States, 2011; National Center for Injury Control and Prevention, 2014; Trust for America's Health, 2013).

According to statistics from the NIH and NIDA, at the same time that opioid prescription overdose deaths were decreasing, deaths from heroin overdoses increased five-fold (www.drugabuse.gov/related-topics/trends-statistics/overdose-death-rates). Drug poisoning or overdose is now the number one cause for injury-related deaths. Statistics from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS) show heroin overdose deaths doubled between 2012 and 2013. There is some concern that these deaths may be underreported because heroin breaks down into morphine metabolites.

Regardless of the opioid involved, 46 individuals die each day as a result of opioid drug poisoning (Hedegaard, Chen, & Warner, 2015).

Reducing the availability of opioid pain medications and heroin is not enough. There is medication that reverses the overdose. Narcan or naloxone is a pure opioid antagonist. It can be used to partially reverse opioid depression until medical attention can be obtained. Until recently, its use was highly controlled, making it difficult to obtain and unavailable to the individuals who would need to administer it. The existence of laws that criminalize the use of Narcan, the actions of individuals calling for help, and those overdosing punished everyone trying to help. At this time, 28 states have adopted Good Samaritan Laws that make naloxone available and protect individuals using it (Baird, 2014; Davis, 2015; SAMHSA, 2013).

EMERGING TRENDS: NEW PSYCHOACTIVE SUBSTANCES/SYNTHETICS (NPS)

More commonly known as designer drugs, the NPS are synthetic analogs of controlled illicit substances. They are manufactured so they can be distributed to evade current drug laws. There is a growing concern internationally due to the drugs' acute toxicity and severe physical and psychological effects. Many serious side effects and deaths have been reported. Young adults are the primary users and they seldom come in contact with health care providers. When they do present for treatment, it is often with severe neuropsychiatric symptoms (Weaver, Hopper, & Gunderson, 2015).

These drugs fall into three categories: synthetic cathinones (bath salts, flakka), synthetic cannabinoids (spice), and synthetic hallucinogens (N-bomb). Synthetic cathinones are stimulants and taken orally or injected. They appear to facilitate the release of the neurotransmitters dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin, causing effects of increased alertness, tachycardia, and psychosis similar

to stimulants such as amphetamines and cocaine (Weaver et al., 2015).

Synthetic cannabinoids (SCs) mirror delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), the psychoactive portion of cannabis. The chemical is usually put on vegetable matter and smoked. Because they are much stronger than naturally occurring THC, they affect the cannabinoid receptors in the central nervous system to a greater extent. The potential effects may include anxiety, trouble thinking clearly, agitation, paranoia, and delusions. They have been identified as provoking acute psychosis. Individuals with familiar genetic vulnerabilities are at high risk and psychotic symptoms have been known to persist for any period of time from 1 week to 5 months (Weaver et al., 2015).

Synthetic hallucinogens are based on phenethylamine. They can be liquid or powder and have many potential routes of administration. Effects can be felt from as little as a few grains. In addition to visual and auditory hallucinations, the user can experience delirium, agitation, aggression, violence, paranoia, dysphoria, severe confusion, and self-harm. As these are serotonin hallucinogens, it is possible to have serotonin toxicity or even an "excited delirium" with severe agitation, aggression, and violence (Weaver et al., 2015).

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Regardless of the origin of the substance use or addictive disorder, the gender of the individual, or the presence of comorbid conditions, the treatment options are much the same. Substance use treatment is delivered in a variety of settings and across a broad continuum of care according to the severity of the symptoms the patient is experiencing. Patient placement criteria have been developed in order to ensure that clinical needs are matched with the correct care setting. The best known is the criteria published by the ASAM.

Treatment usually consists of a mix of therapies including self-help programs, psychopharmacology, and psychotherapy such as cognitive behavioral therapy and insight-oriented psychotherapy. For example, the compulsive nature of addictive behavior often responds better to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) than to insight-oriented therapy. In addition, specific treatment of associated physiological disorders may be required. Another part of the treatment process often involves participation in a self-help program such as 12-step groups. Many variations on the original 12-step group have come into existence as a way of addressing the various substance use- and process-related addictive disorders.

Treatment begins with screening, followed when indicated by a complete assessment to evaluate the presenting signs and symptoms reported by an individual as a basis of formulating a diagnosis. In October of 2003, the CSAT, part of SAMHSA, awarded seven national Screening, Brief Intervention, Referral and Treatment (SBIRT) grants. The intention was the development of a continuum for the activities of screening, intervention, and referral within medical and community settings that act as entry to treatment. This work was further supported by the 2007 National Quality Forum consensus report, *National Voluntary Consensus Standards for the Treatment of Substance Use Conditions: Evidence-Based Treatment Practices*. This report broadened the responsibility for screening, brief intervention, and referral for treatment to all medical and mental health settings.

Treatment options for individuals with comorbid psychiatric and substance use disorders are many and varied. Best practice is to address both/all disorders simultaneously in an integrated treatment program rather than in parallel or sequential treatment episodes. During the assessment phase, the severity of the disorders is determined and initial placement is made based on the ASAM criteria or on criteria determined by the state where treatment is being delivered. Individuals at risk of withdrawal symptoms need to be admitted to an inpatient medically managed detoxification program. The intensity of treatment steps down from there to inpatient rehabilitation, halfway house, partial hospital programming (minimum of 10 hours a week), intensive outpatient (between 5 and 9 hours a week), and outpatient (at most 5 hours a week).

Within each level of care, a patient-centered treatment plan is developed. Many facilities use a multidisciplinary plan of care, better known as a care pathway. Care pathways are one way that evidence-based best practices can be introduced and implemented in the provision of care. The format also assists in tracking and evaluating the quality of care and the accomplishment of patient goals (Rayner, 2005). The care provided is threefold with therapy, interpersonal relationships, and neurobiological approaches. A number of modalities may be used simultaneously and treatment plans are individualized based on the specific mix of modalities and approaches. Although not considered treatment, 12-step groups and activities are included.

12-Step Programs

Founded in 1930, AA is the oldest and best known of the 12-step fellowships. Everyone is welcome; all that is needed is a desire to quit drinking. Using the support of other members and the 12 steps, individuals learn how to be sober one day at a time. Attendance begins during treatment and is based on complete confidentiality and anonymity. Members choose a home group and a sponsor that best fit them. Meetings are available worldwide and around the clock, including online. Sponsors serve as their

guide to completing the tasks associated with the 12 steps. Although AA meetings are open to individuals who have problems with substances other than alcohol and with process addictions, programs are also available for their significant others, family members, or support persons. The 12-step movement has expanded to include meetings for most substance and process addictions, as well as for individuals experiencing pain from a loved one's SUDs.

Links for the most common ones, such as Alcoholics Anonymous (aa.org), Narcotics Anonymous (naranon.org), Gamblers Anonymous (gamblersanonymous.org), Overeaters Anonymous (oa.org), Rational Recovery (rational.org), and Dual Recovery Anonymous (draonline.org), as well as similar organizations can be found on the websites of most treatment facilities or through the use of a search engine. Significant others and family members can attend Al-Anon, Alateen, and Nar-Anon. Unless the information about the meeting identifies it as closed, most meetings welcome health care providers who have an interest in understanding the role of the 12-step process in recovery. In addition, many resources are available online from the SAMHSA at www.samhsa.gov, Hazelden Treatment Center at www.hazelden.org, Enter Health at www.enterhealth.com, and the National Alliance on Mental Illness at www.nami.org, to list a few.

Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) is the oldest and most notable of the 12-step programs. Confidentiality, anonymity, and a desire to remain sober are key components of AA.

Psychopharmacology

Given that dependency and many psychiatric disorders result from neurobiological changes in the brain, there has been a great deal of research into psychoactive medications that would reverse or ameliorate the changes and offer some restoration of function. Medications are specific to the psychiatric disorder and the substance of abuse. They are used to manage symptoms during periods of acute withdrawal, to assist with detoxification, and to support abstinence in early recovery and during maintenance. Some medications have shown to be effective with behaviors associated with abuse and dependence while other medications are available as substitutes to reduce harm. Harm reduction is also practiced by encouraging controlled use at a lower level. Research is ongoing into medications and genetics in an effort to offer additional resources to treat these disorders (Cicero & Ellis, 2015). **Drug Summary 15-1** highlights specific agents used for substance use and induced disorders.

Medications are prescribed according to the specific symptomatology and medical need. Some drugs of abuse produce severe symptoms during detoxification. For example, alcohol withdrawal may precipitate seizures and can be treated with a variety of medications from barbiturates such as phenobarbital, benzodiazepines such as diazepam (Valium) or chlordiazepoxide (Librium), or anticonvulsants such as carbamazepine (Tegretol). Heroin is another drug with severe withdrawal symptoms. Patients may need symptom-specific medications like clonidine (Catapres) to control hypertension that may develop during withdrawal. Once the patient is past the initial withdrawal of the substance, he or she may need pharmacological support for continued abstinence. For example, acamprosate calcium (Campral), naltrexone (Revia, Vivitrol), disulfiram (Antabuse), or quetiapine (Seroquel) may be prescribed to manage alcohol cravings. Full opioid agonist methadone, partial opioid agonist buprenorphine (Suboxone), and the antagonist naltrexone (Vivitrol) may be used to detoxify and maintain abstinence from opiates (Bart, 2012).

Numerous medications are used to treat substance use and addictive disorders. Some medications are used to control the symptoms that occur during detoxification and withdrawal. Other medications are used to promote continued abstinence.

Psychotherapy

Another treatment approach is psychotherapy. There are many therapeutic modalities, but the most common ones include cognitive behavioral therapy, motivational enhancement (interviewing) therapy, mindfulness and meditation, community reinforcement, and contingency management. Cognitive behavioral therapy addresses thinking patterns. By assisting the patient to identify potentially flawed core beliefs, dysfunctional thought processes can be identified and redirected (Angres & Bettinardi-Angres, 2008). Motivational enhancement therapy is based on the transtheoretical or stages of change model. Individuals move through the process of change from the use/abuse behavior to abstaining by completing phases or stages: precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, and action. This model is very successful in breaking denial. Mindfulness and meditation focuses on learning to be present.

The setting used may be individual, group, or family. Family therapy is a part of substance use treatment because

DRUG SUMMARY 15-1: MEDICATIONS USED WITH SUBSTANCE DISORDERS

DRUG	INDICATION	USE	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
disulfiram (Antabuse)	Alcohol dependence	Maintenance	Emphasize the need to avoid alcohol ingestion Inform patients that ingesting alcohol while taking this medication produces a toxic reaction that causes intense nausea and vomiting, headache, sweating, flushed skin, respiratory difficulties, and confusion
carbamazepine (Atretol, Tegretol))	Alcohol dependence	Withdrawal	Inform the patient that he or she may experience dizziness or drowsiness (effect is dependent on therapeutic level) Work with the patient to ensure that the drug is taken consistently Advise the patient about the need to be gradually tapered off the drug to prevent seizures
acamprosate calcium (Campral)	Alcohol dependence	Relapse-prevention agent	Inform patients that side effects, although minimal, include diarrhea, nausea, itching, and intestinal gas
chlordiazepoxide (Librium)	Alcohol	Increase seizure threshold; reduce withdrawal agitation	Alert the patient to potential sedation. Educate about the signs and symptoms of withdrawal, including warnings of seizure activity
phenobarbital (Phenobarbital)	Alcohol	Withdrawal	Warn the patient of the possibility of sedation; work with the patient on ways to minimize effect on activities
quetiapine fumarate (Seroquel)	Alcohol dependence	Detoxification with reduced craving	Alert the patient to the possible drop in blood pressure when changing position from sitting to standing. Work with the patient on measures to combat dry mouth and restlessness

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 15-1: *(CONT.)* MEDICATIONS USED WITH SUBSTANCE DISORDERS

DRUG	INDICATION	USE	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
diazepam (Valium)	Alcohol	Withdrawal	Alert the patient to potential sedation. Educate about the signs and symptoms of withdrawal, including warnings of seizure activity
naltrexone (Vivitrol, Injectable; Revia; Depade, Oral)	Alcohol Opiates	Withdrawal; relapse prevention	Inform the patient that nausea is the primary side effect initially; although nausea usually goes away after the first month, the patient should expect headache, feeling of sedation, and pain at the injection site with each injection
clonidine (Catapres)	Opiates Presence of hypertension	Heroin withdrawal	Inform the patient to be alert for signs and symptoms of opioid withdrawal (tachycardia, fever, runny nose, diarrhea, sweating, nausea, vomiting, irritability, stomach cramps, shivering, unusually large pupils, weakness, difficulty sleeping, and gooseflesh) and to report severity. Urge the patient to take each dose as given
levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM) (Valdiva & Khattak 2000)	Opiate	Withdrawal and maintenance	Inform the patient this is contraindicated if pregnant or expecting to get pregnant, has experienced side effects in past treatment, or has liver damage. Explain that induction takes longer than with methadone
methadone hydrochloride (Methadone)	Opiate	Detoxification and maintenance	Educate the patient that this is an effective but controversial drug. Explain that an induction period is required Advise the patient about possible need for safety measures initially and with higher doses because sedation is possible

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 15-1: *(CONT.)* MEDICATIONS USED WITH SUBSTANCE DISORDERS

DRUG	INDICATION	USE	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
buprenorphine (Buprenex, Injectable; Suboxone)	Opiate	Detoxification and maintenance	The patient must be in withdrawal before this medication is given Assess the patient closely for changes and anticipate that levels will be adjusted over several days Explain that therapy will usually require 9 to 12 months of use after which tapering will occur
naltrexone hydrochloride (Trexan, Vivitrol)	Heroin Opiates Pathological gambling	Detoxification and maintenance Reduce impulsive and compulsive behaviors	Alert the patient not to increase or change dose or use opiates Work with the patient on safety measures because of possible drowsiness, dizziness, or blurred vision Suggest small, frequent meals and frequent mouth care due to nausea or vomiting Evaluate the patient for possible pregnancy or breastfeeding (contraindicated)
varenicline (Chantix)	Nicotine	Reduce craving and withdrawal	Advise the patient to stop taking medication and call a health care provider immediately if agitation, hostility, depressed mood, changes in behavior or thinking, or suicidal ideation or suicidal behavior develops Warn the patient of possible vivid, unusual, or strange dreams
rimonabant (Zimulti)	Nicotine Obesity	Smoking cessation Maintenance of body weight	Inform the patient that this drug is known to have serious side effects if taken long term. Reports have included depression, suicidal tendencies, nausea, anxiety and nervousness, frequent unpredictable mood swings, tendency to become irritated at most things, and difficulty sleeping

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 15-1: *(CONT.)*
MEDICATIONS USED WITH SUBSTANCE DISORDERS

DRUG	INDICATION	USE	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
			Urge the patient to report any changes to health care provider immediately
bupropion (Zyban, includes patches, gums, lozenges, nasal sprays, and inhalers) naloxone (Narcan)	Nicotine Opioid overdoses	Withdrawal from smoking Reversal of opioid depression, including respiratory depression	Inform the patient to take with food to minimize gastrointestinal (GI) discomfort Warn the patient that agitation and insomnia are possible. Monitor anxiety Encourage the patient not to take at bedtime or double up if doses missed Available as a sterile solution for intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, and intranasal administration. Three strengths: 0.02, 0.4 and 1 mg of naloxone hydrochloride per mL in sterile solution; the 0.4 and 1 mg doses are also available in multidose vials. Response is time limited. May need additional doses in event of overdose. Severe side effects include agitation, hypo- and hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, dyspnea, pulmonary edema, encephalopathy, seizures, coma, and death. Emergency services should be called and individual given emergency care.

SUDs do not develop in isolation. The dynamics and structural elements that have contributed to the dysfunction of the family can be addressed. Therapy is usually time limited, focuses on an expectation of change, elicits new behavior, and supports the new patterns of interaction that are developing. Families may attend therapy as individual or extended family groups, couples, or multifamily groups. Multifamily groups may be convened as a part of ongoing group therapy.

Group therapy may occur as an open group or closed group process. The same techniques or approaches will be used. The groups may be process sensitive or directive in nature and group members can support or confront each other, providing the group dynamics. The shorter the length of time that the group will meet, the more structured and goal oriented it will be. Groups can be run using the same therapeutic modalities that are used for individual therapy with the addition of psychodrama (CSAT, TIP 34, 1999; SAMHSA, TIP 41, 2012).

Once present and motivated to complete the goals of treatment, recovering individuals have a need to be reconnected to the community and the activities that will sustain their lifestyle. Community reinforcement helps to reactivate or establish supportive relationships, employment, and educational activities. Finally, contingency management introduces rewards, which will ensure that the individual continues to follow the treatment and aftercare plans and maintains long-term sobriety.

Detoxification and Rehabilitation

DETOXIFICATION refers to the process of managing a patient during withdrawal. Detoxification is composed of three components: evaluation, stabilization, and readiness for treatment. It can occur at five levels from ambulatory without extended onsite monitoring to medically managed intensive inpatient treatment, and may or may not involve medication.

As detoxification is normally very short term, it is important to build a therapeutic relationship with the patient to prepare him or her for entrance into treatment. The highest level of intensity for treatment is inpatient rehabilitation. Once a 28-day stay, inpatient treatment is now authorized on a week-to-week basis. During the rehabilitation stay, patients receive individual, group, and family therapy. They are introduced to the 12-step program and may attend meetings during their stay. At discharge, a referral will be made for the most appropriate level of follow-up care. Research has shown a link between the length of treatment and recovery percentages (Baird, 2008). Patients may step down into a halfway house, partial hospital program (more than 9 hours a week), intensive outpatient treatment (4–9 hours a week), or outpatient treatment (up to 4 hours a week).

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Recent federal reports, such as *Crossing the Quality Chasm* (Committee on Quality of Health Care in America, Institute of Medicine, 2001), have highlighted problems in the quality of care arising from silos of care that exist within physical and behavioral health treatment. These factors have complicated treatment for individuals with co-occurring mental health and substance use disorders. Both are legitimate illnesses, each deserving appropriate treatment. Current federal initiatives are attempting to address these problems with new approaches to the way patient care is provided. Thus, nurses working in all specialty areas need to be aware of the potential to see only the specific mental health issue while ignoring possible dual diagnoses that can complicate the treatment regime.

The guidelines developing from these federal initiatives suggest that mental health and substance use disorders need an integrated approach and support the creation of patient-centered, recovery-oriented, evidence-based treatment systems (Snow & Delaney, 2006). This has broad implications for nursing and, in particular, for the specialty of psychiatric-mental health nursing.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

In applying an interpersonal perspective in substance use treatment, remember to apply practice knowledge and skills related to patient-centered care, teamwork and collaboration, and evidence-based practice in accordance with QSEN initiatives.

Patient-Centered Care

Recognize the patient or designee as the source of control and full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for the patient's preferences, values, and needs.

Teamwork and Collaboration

Function effectively within nursing and interprofessional teams, fostering open communication, mutual respect, and shared decision making to achieve quality patient care.

Evidence-Based Practice

Integrate best current evidence with clinical expertise and patient/family preferences and values for delivery of optimal health care (qsen.org/, 2014).

Substance Use and Addictive Disorders

Patients with SUDs may be seen in a variety of settings such as acute care settings, day hospitalization programs, community and outpatient centers, and long-term care facilities. Some mental health settings may have nurses or other clinicians specializing in SUDs to provide continuity of care. In the event that patients need to be referred to SUD-specific services, it is critical that providers communicate, collaborate, and coordinate care. Substance use and addictive disorders are progressive disorders and will require ongoing relationships to prevent additional physical and behavioral health consequences and the progression of this disease. In addition, many individuals may have comorbidities such as major depression or anxiety disorders. Additionally, the effects of substance use can lead to medical conditions. As a result, patients often can be encountered in general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, psychiatric-mental health nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with SUDs. **Plan of Care 15-1** provides an example of a patient with an addictive disorder.

PLAN OF CARE 15-1: THE PATIENT WITH AN ADDICTIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for injury related to substance abuse, intoxication, and withdrawal.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will remain free of injury.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient for signs and symptoms of abuse, intoxication, and withdrawal; assess vital signs, look for indicators of impending withdrawal; assess neurological status	Assessing for signs and symptoms provides a baseline from which to develop appropriate interventions; assessing neurological status provides evidence for changes related to intoxication and withdrawal
Institute safety measures, seizure precautions, and fall precautions	Instituting safety measures is important to prevent injury due to effects of the substance
Maintain a calm and nonstimulating environment	Maintaining a calm, nonstimulating environment minimizes exposure to stimuli that can induce anxiety
Administer prescribed medications	Administering medications helps to control symptoms associated with intoxication and/or withdrawal
Reorient the patient as necessary; provide verbal reassurance	Reorienting and verbally reassuring the patient help to minimize anxiety related to intoxication and withdrawal
Continue to frequently monitor the patient's physiological and psychological status for changes	Monitoring the patient frequently for changes provides information about effectiveness of therapy, as well as information about possible complications needing immediate attention

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Defensive coping; related to disease process of mental disorders due to psychoactive substance use; manifested by denial and inability to perceive problems related to abuse.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will begin to demonstrate acceptance of responsibility for behavior.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Establish a therapeutic relationship with the patient; demonstrate empathy and a nonjudgmental, caring approach	Establishing a therapeutic relationship is important in helping the patient begin to acknowledge the problem

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 15-1: *(CONT.)* THE PATIENT WITH AN ADDICTIVE DISORDER

Reinforce that the substance abuse behavior is the problem, and not that the patient is a "bad person"; educate the patient about misconceptions related to abuse	Emphasizing the behavior rather than the patient as the problem promotes feelings of self-worth and helps to reduce feelings of guilt and weakness; educating the patient fosters understanding of the problem
Assess the patient's usual coping strategies; identify maladaptive strategies and situations or issues that may precipitate use	Assessing usual strategies provides information on how the patient responds to problems and provides a baseline from which to provide suggestions for change
Help the patient identify triggers associated with substance use and abuse and connect these triggers with abuse behaviors; offer suggestions for identifying precipitating triggers and for replacing maladaptive strategies with positive coping strategies	Identifying triggers and making the connection to abuse behaviors promote acknowledgment of the problem and lessening of denial
If necessary, confront the patient about behavior using a nonthreatening, caring approach	Confronting the patient may be necessary to relinquish the denial; using a nonthreatening, caring approach helps maintain trust and minimizes the possibility that the patient will become defensive
Help the patient practice adaptive coping techniques	Practicing adaptive coping techniques enhances the chances for success
Refer patient to appropriate community resources for assistance, such as self-help groups	Ensuring adequate support such as self-help groups reduces the feelings of isolation associated with a mental disorder due to psychoactive substance use and facilitates sharing of feelings

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Dysfunctional family processes; related to prolonged history of substance use; manifested by chaotic and unstable family dynamics.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient and family will demonstrate appropriate adaptive behaviors to promote family functioning.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Review family history, including roles and functions of members and the relationships; involve family members in treatment plan; assist family members in identifying how each has coped with the substance problem	Assessing family history and relationships provides a baseline for developing appropriate individualized interventions; involving family members in the treatment plan is important because substance use and addictive disorders do not occur in isolation; identifying coping strategies promotes understanding of the family functioning and strategies that are maladaptive and adaptive

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 15-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH AN ADDICTIVE DISORDER

Work with family members to develop appropriate methods for expressing feelings related to patient's substance abuse problem	Using appropriate methods for expressing feelings minimizes maladaptive coping
Reinforce techniques related to prescribed therapy, such as family therapy	Reinforcing therapy techniques promotes continuity of care and enhances chances for success
Teach the patient and family appropriate techniques for problem solving and conflict management	Using appropriate problem-solving and conflict management techniques fosters trust for improved relationships
Encourage patient and family members to participate in the family roles and functions; assist family members in assuming new or changing roles with the patient's change in behavior	Assisting family members in assuming new roles enhances the transition to a more functional family as the patient's behavior changes
Refer the family to community support groups as appropriate	Ensuring adequate support such as by self-help groups reduces the feelings of isolation associated with mental disorders due to psychoactive substance use, promotes adjustment to the changes in the patient's behavior, and facilitates sharing of feelings

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

The hallmark of Peplau's Interpersonal Theory of Nursing is the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship. Nursing and the substance use treatment field agree that clinicians establish rapport for a therapeutic relationship during their first face-to-face session (Beeber, Canuso, & Emory, 2004; Cooke & Matarasso, 2005; Holmqvist, Holmefur, & Ivarsson, 2013; Perraud et al., 2006; CSAT, 2005a; Stockmann, 2005). Empathy, respect or positive regard, congruence, and genuineness are necessary relationship factors for the therapeutic relationship to develop. Reflective (active) listening promotes an understanding and appreciation for the patient's world (Perraud et al., 2006). **Consumer Perspective 15-1** provides an example of what it is like to have alcohol dependency and mental health problems. The psychiatric-mental health nurse becomes oriented to the patient's lived experience. Many individuals suffering from the disease will have experienced multiple losses within previous relationships. It is important to take these prior experiences into consideration in establishing this therapeutic relationship. As the therapeutic relationship is established it allows for open, ongoing communication, collaboration, and patient-centered information gathering. The information collected in the initial assessment provides the basis for patient-centered goal setting to follow. This should be accomplished by acknowledging that patients have their own values and preferences and that they are the source of control in their own care (qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas/).

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 15-1: A PATIENT WITH SUBSTANCE ABUSE

Having a dependency on alcohol on top of mental health problems is a nightmare. The situation is bad enough with just mental health problems. Add the alcohol and it becomes the worst ever. You cannot solve either problem. Every time you try to stop drinking, the mental health problems become bad and you start drinking again. It is a good day just to drink a little bit. You feel so bad about yourself because you cannot stop drinking or feeling depressed and anxious. If you go to AA, it seems as though no one understands. Even having a sponsor does not help. They act as though you need to just stop. Someone without mental [health] problems cannot understand. I take all this medication and nothing seems to help. My mouth is dry all the time. I still cannot sleep without bad dreams. I just keep trying to make it through the day.

Self-Awareness

During the assessment process, relevant data are elicited. The nurse pays special attention to the patient's verbal and nonverbal communication skills. At the same time, the nurse needs to be aware of his or her own responses to the patient and the issues they present. During these first meetings, the nurse will establish the boundaries of the relationship, help patients clarify their issues, listen to what patients are not saying, reflect back to validate any perceptions, and remain open, attentive, and nonjudgmental (Holmqvist et al., 2013; Perraud et al., 2006; CSAT 2005a, 2005b; qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas/). It is important to remember that establishing the therapeutic relationship and collecting information are the primary goals. The nurse is responsible for identifying and managing any inner conflict or countertransference through the development of his or her own self-awareness. **Therapeutic Interaction 15-1** provides an example of an interpersonal interaction.

During assessment, the nurse must be ever vigilant in monitoring himself or herself for conflicts and countertransference. The nurse also uses active listening to gain an understanding of the patient's experience.

Screening

Nurses, regardless of their area of practice, need to be educated about addictive disorders. Nurses also need to be able to use screening tools and assessment skills for early detection. An accurate assessment for both mental health and substance use disorders is essential for developing a thorough treatment plan and providing quality care (Baird, 2009; Baird et al., 2009; Baird & Fornili, 2008; Snow & Delaney, 2006). Increasingly evidence-based best practice is the use of the SBIRT protocol in all settings and specialty areas of nursing (Kane et al., 2014; Mitchell et al., 2013, 2015; Strobbe & Broyles, 2013).

To screen for addictive disorders, the nurse may choose to add a question or two to the assessment process or complete a full screen. A wide variety of screening tools are available, ranging from simple to complex. Many of the tools are in the public domain and include guides to help in administering and interpreting them. Usually, the screening process can be completed quickly so that a decision can be made about the need for further intervention or brief counseling. **Box 15-2** provides an example of a screening tool for alcohol abuse.

Regardless of the tool used for screening, the tool needs to be reliable and validated for use with all consumers. Communication must be clear to avoid any misinterpretation. Recognition must be given that diagnosis relies on a defined set of elements or criteria (Doweiko, 2006). Research on the existence of an SUD syndrome determined that the same types of neuroadaptation occurred whether or not a chemical or a process was being used (Shaffer et al., 2004).

One screening tool that is commonly used is the Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT). This tool consists of two parts. Part I is the core of the tool and consists of 10 questions to determine diagnosis and need for treating SUDs. It assesses symptoms and other problems associated with use. Specific criteria for standardizing the amount of alcohol ingested by drink to denote risky or hazardous drinking amounts have been identified in conjunction with this tool. **Table 15-1** lists the amounts that would be considered problematic.

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 15-1: WORKING WITH A PATIENT WITH SUBSTANCE USE DISORDERS

Mrs. S. is a 50-year-old female who was admitted to the drug treatment clinic for opiate substance use disorder.

Nurse: "Mrs. S., this is Day 4 of your stay here at the clinic and I am stopping by to see why you declined to attend the Narcotics Anonymous group you were scheduled to attend this morning."	Gathers information to assess treatment compliance
Mrs. S.: "Because it's a bunch of crap! I don't need that, I feel better now. I just need to get out of here."	Exhibits possible signs of denial of disease
Nurse: "I am glad you feel better. The first 48 to 72 hours coming off of opiates can be rough."	Provides validation and education
Mrs. S.: "You make it sound as though I was addicted! I only took the Vicodin as prescribed."	Defends and rationalize her behavior
Nurse: "I understand that you believe this. Let's talk about what happened even though you thought you took it as prescribed."	Lays the groundwork for gentle confrontation
Mrs. S.: "What do you mean what happened?"	Questions the reality of her circumstances
Nurse: "Well, your doctor reported needing to increase your Vicodin, you have incurred two separate driving-while-impaired tickets recently, you are on the verge of losing your job because you don't seem to be able to function in the role as you used to, your family reports you are moody and irritable, you report you can't sleep, and you complain of such severe anxiety that you have gone to several emergency departments seeking Xanax. These are all signs of opiate dependence and side effects of long-term opiate use."	Provides psychoeducation and methodically lays out the facts regarding the patient's circumstances in a nonthreatening, matter-of-fact way
Mrs. S.: (yelling) "But I'm in pain, you moron. You obviously don't know what it's like to live with back pain!"	Vents anger and frustration while trying to validate her use of opiates
Nurse: "Pain can be difficult to live with, but becoming dependent on addictive substances in the long run makes the situation even worse."	Validates the experience of pain but continues to present the reality of the situation in a calm, matter-of-fact manner and not responding to the personal attacks

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 15-1: *(CONT.)*
WORKING WITH A PATIENT WITH SUBSTANCE USE DISORDERS

Mrs. S.: (begins crying) "I don't know what to do, I can't go on like this."	Begins to show signs of accepting her situation
Nurse: "I think this would be a good time to meet others in the program who are in recovery and hear their stories of how they figured out how to move on with their lives without these substances. There is another group after lunch; I would like to introduce you to them."	Recognizes this opportunity to offer treatment in a supportive way

BOX 15-2: AN EXAMPLE OF A SCREENING TOOL FOR ALCOHOL ABUSE

The RAPS4 Questions

1. Have you had a feeling of guilt or remorse after drinking?
2. Has a friend or a family member ever told you about things you said or did while you were drinking that you could not remember?
3. Have you failed to do what was normally expected of you because of drinking?
4. Do you sometimes take a drink when you first get up in the morning?

A "yes" answer to at least one of the four questions suggests that your drinking is harmful to your health and well-being and may adversely affect your work and those around you.

If you answered "no" to all four questions, your drinking pattern is considered safe for most people and your results do not suggest that alcohol is harming your health.

From Alcohol Concern (2007).

TABLE 15-1: RISKY/HAZARDOUS DRINKING FROM THE AUDIT SCREENING TOOL

One drink equals 12 ounces of regular beer (150 calories) or 5 ounces of wine (100 calories) or 1.5 ounces of 80-proof distilled spirits (100 calories)

	MEN	WOMEN	PREGNANT	ADOLESCENTS	ELDERLY
Per day/occasion	4 drinks	3 drinks	Any at all	Any at all	3 drinks
Per week	14 drinks	7 drinks	Any at all	Any at all	7 drinks

AUDIT, Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test.

Part II of the tool is the clinical assessment, consisting of a brief physical exam, questions about trauma history, and liver function testing. The AUDIT has been the basis for many evidence-based nursing research projects and much information is available to assist nurses in conducting the AUDIT and using the information that is collected.

A different assessment tool, the CAGE, is widely used to screen for alcohol abuse. It offers an opportunity for quickly screening and determining a need for a more thorough

BOX 15-3: CAGE ASSESSMENT TOOL QUESTIONS

1. Have you ever felt that you should cut down on your drinking/prescription drug use/illicit drug use?
2. Have people annoyed you by criticizing your drinking/prescription drug use/illicit drug use?
3. Have you ever felt bad or guilty about your drinking/prescription drug use/illicit drug use?
4. Have you ever had a drink or used your drug the first thing in the morning to steady your nerves or get rid of a hangover (eye opener)?

This tool can be downloaded from Project Cork website http://www.projectcork.org/clinical_tools/index.html. There is no fee for use.

assessment. **Box 15-3** lists the four questions used to assess patient responses. This tool can be completed by the nurse during an office visit. The information collected provides prescreening data to determine the need for continued assessment, whereby responses will be further explored to establish the need for treatment with a substance use disorder professional. The CAGE-AID is an assessment tool based on the CAGE tool that has been adapted to screen for drug use.

The psychiatric-mental health nurse could use either tool in any setting because each permits the focus to be on the therapeutic relationship between the nurse and the patient. The role of screening and providing brief interventions is one that fits Peplau's theory of the interpersonal focus that occurs between the nurse and the patient. Just as Peplau's theory is focused on being able to understand one's own behavior to help others identify perceived difficulties, substance abuse counseling is focused on the ability to utilize self and the force of interpersonal processes in the therapeutic relationship, and apply principles of human relations to the problems that arise at all levels of experience (*Current Nursing*, 2009; Konrad, 2005).

The nurse uses reliable and validated screening tools to provide for early detection of substance disorders.

Physical Examination

An individual whose life is being compromised because of a mental disorder due to psychoactive substance use may present in any care setting and for many different reasons. Any of the following conditions, if present, might alert the nurse to ask additional questions about the use of substances. These conditions can be assessed while discussing the individual's lifestyle during the assessment:

- *Vague physical complaints and requests for medication to improve sleep, energy, anxiety, concentration, indigestion, and others*
- *Requests for samples of medications or to refill prescriptions earlier than the recommended schedule, with a variety of reasons why the medication is currently not at the patient's disposal*
- *Unexplained bruises or injuries suggesting falls or other accidents resulting from substance-induced impairment or blackouts*
- *Increased frequency of visits or calls to the primary care provider's office requesting treatment for self or family member that may include prescribing a medication that has the potential for abuse*
- *Unexplained weight loss or symptoms of malnourishment resulting from diminished need for food or the lack of money to buy food*
- *Decline in oral hygiene, resulting from overall neglect of this and other activities of daily living, or eating disorders that cause dental damage*
- *Changes in menstrual cycle associated with weight loss or gain and other eating disorders*
- *Skin conditions indicating poor general hygiene, malnourishment, or injection sites*
- *Overall changes in appearance, presentation, or laboratory values that may include unfavorable response to previously prescribed remedies*
- *Unexplained tremors, ataxic gait, and poor coordination.*

In addition, during the physical examination, the psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to be alert for signs and symptoms of physiological problems that may suggest a substance problem. Special attention should be given to:

- *Changes noted from previous physical examinations (if previous patient)*
- *Odors on the breath and clothing or intoxicated behavior such as slurred speech and staggering gait*
- *Poor nutritional status*

- *Poor personal hygiene*
- *Signs of physical abuse, bruises, lacerations, scratches, burns, needle marks, sores, or abscesses*
- *Skin rashes or discoloration, hair loss, or excessive sweating*
- *Head, eyes, ears, nose, and throat status (inflammation, irritation, blanching of any of the mucosa, gum disease, sinus tenderness or sinusitis, rhinitis, or perforated nasal septum).*

It should also be noted that disorders of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract or the immune, cardiovascular, and pulmonary systems may be a result of addictive behavior; disorders of the liver, hypertension and tachycardia, lymphadenopathy, and coughing with wheezing, rales, and rhonchi are frequently present. There may be neurological impairment that presents as cognitive deficits or sensory, motor, or memory impairment. In addition, there are a number of laboratory values and biological screens that may serve as an alert to pathological processes, indicating the presence of an addictive disorder.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

The therapeutic relationship carries over into all aspects of the planning and treatment process. It is within this nurse–patient relationship that a treatment plan is developed that is "patient-centered, recovery oriented, and evidence-based" (Snow & Delaney, 2006, p. 290). The essential relationship factors of empathy, positive regard, and congruence reinforce the bond and assist the nurse in the task of goal setting (Perraud et al., 2006; SAMHSA TAP 21, 2005). Using the strengths and limitations of the patient, treatment priorities are identified and negotiated. The nurse assists in translating the information into goals, making sure to engage the patient's understanding, cooperation, and motivation. The patient needs to trust the nurse so that he or she will be motivated to follow through with the changes. The stronger the initial therapeutic relationship is, the easier this transition will be.

During this phase a great deal of emphasis and reliance is put on the knowledge, skills, and attitudes of the nurse. The psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to clarify the priorities and goals for the patient and family members, collaborate with them on the development of the goals and objectives of the plan, and then assess the patient's ability and readiness for participation and change. Key to this process is the nurse's theoretical and intuitive knowledge base (Sjostedt, Dahlstrand, Severinsson, & Lutzen., 2001). As the process evolves, awareness grows. Patient and nurse are communicating on a deeper level. With this increased sense of the patient and patient vulnerabilities comes the need to make a moral commitment to provide patient-centered quality care, be flexible to the needs of the situation, and to maintain the professional role (Sjostedt et al., 2001). At the same time, care must be evidence-based using teamwork and collaboration (qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas/).

Assessment findings and identified needs are highly variable for patients with addictive disorders. When developing the plan of care for a patient, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Some may be dependent on the type of substance used. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Risk for injury related to effects of substance abuse, intoxication, or withdrawal*
- *Defensive coping related to denial of substance abuse, inability to perceive problems related to abuse*
- *Impaired social interaction related to guilt, feelings of worthlessness, anxiety, unpredictable behaviors*
- *Dysfunctional family processes related to history of long-term substance abuse*
- *Ineffective role performance related to continued use of substances*
- *Risk for self- or other-directed violence related to impaired judgment, unpredictable behavior, episodes of acting out resulting from substance abuse*
- *Disturbed sensory perception related to altered neurological function secondary to effects of substance use and abuse.*

These nursing diagnoses also will vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. For example, the person with substance intoxication may have risk of injury or disturbed sensory perception. Once the intoxication clears, nursing diagnoses such as defensive coping and dysfunctional family processes may be the priority areas to be addressed.

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, an appropriate outcome for the patient experiencing defensive coping would be that the patient verbalizes acceptance of responsibility for behavior involving substance abuse.

Although nursing diagnoses may vary, a common nursing diagnosis for a patient with a mental disorder due to psychoactive substance use is defensive coping.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

The careful balance of moral commitment, flexibility, and professional role influences how the plan of care is carried out. Using the strength of the initial therapeutic relationship, interpersonal interactions occur between nurse and patient that promote the patient's growth. Beeber et al. (2004) have proposed that these therapeutic interactions use and exchange units of energy to stimulate the development of new patient competencies. Peplau used the term *instrumental inputs* without a definition for the process that she felt occurred. In contrast, Beeber et al. applied the term to the concept. During the work of the treatment plan within the therapeutic relationship, the patient develops vulnerabilities that produce energy units. These energy units are the instrumental inputs to which Beeber et al. refer. As the patient confronts these vulnerabilities or threats with the support of the nurse, interactions, growth, and forward movement occur. An example of integrating the interpersonal approach when intervening is the use of the Five As: assess, advise, agree, assist, and arrange. **Box 15-4** highlights the Five As for behavior change. These patient-centered interactions can be applied to any substance misuse intervention as well as to any time that behavior is evaluated and change is sought.

Competencies, the ability to use skills to perform effectively, develop through repetitive purposeful activities and distinct phases within therapeutic encounters that have clear boundaries. Psychoeducation is an important aspect for developing these competencies. **Patient and Family Education 15-1** provides an example. By completing interventions that address the prioritized needs, problems, and personal challenges, the patient develops these necessary competencies. According to Beeber et al., in Peplau's theory the nurse–patient interactions are carefully shaped verbal

BOX 15-4: THE FIVE As FOR BEHAVIOR CHANGE INTERVENTION

Assess consumption with a brief screening tool and follow with clinical assessment as needed

Advise patients in reducing consumption

Agree on individual goals for reducing use or for abstinence

Assist patients to acquire motivation, self-help skills, and supports

Arrange follow-up, repeat counseling, or specialty referral

From U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Name/browse-tools-and-resources

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 15-1: LIVING WITH A MENTAL DISORDER DUE TO PSYCHOACTIVE SUBSTANCE USE

- Take ownership of your illness (i.e., accept it and become responsible for managing it)
- Remember, the early phase of recovery is critical. Go to as many Alcoholics Anonymous/Narcotics Anonymous meetings as possible. Stay in close contact with your sponsor
- Find things or activities to fill the void that may be left when you stop using (hobbies, classes, recreation)
- Take care of your body: eat well, exercise, get adequate sleep, reduce caffeine, and if you smoke, plan to stop
- Make sure your health care providers know that you are in recovery and that they support your commitment to abstinence from substances of abuse (opiates, benzodiazepines, etc.)
- Become aware of your triggers and recognize what used to prompt you to use
- Take one day at a time! Recovery is a lifelong process and can feel overwhelming unless broken down into smaller parts

exchanges. Through the use of carefully sequenced activities, words, and actions, patients begin to see cause and effect.

Ongoing assessment acknowledges the work the patient is doing, applies corrective feedback, reinforces the collaboration, and keeps the plan relevant. The nurse demonstrates understanding of the patient's suffering, accepts responsibility for a therapeutic relationship, and uses a common language to work with the individual's hopes for the future (Sjostedt et al., 2001). It is important that the

TABLE 15-2: SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS[a] OF ALCOHOL INTOXICATION AND WITHDRAWAL

BLOOD ALCOHOL LEVEL	ALCOHOL INTOXICATION CLINICAL PICTURE	ALCOHOL WITHDRAWAL CLINICAL PICTURE
20–100 mg %	• Mood and behavioral changes • Reduced coordination • Impairment of ability to drive a car or operate machinery	*Uncomplicated or mild to moderate alcohol withdrawal* • Restlessness • Irritability • Anorexia (lack of appetite) • Tremor (shakiness) • Insomnia • Impaired cognitive functions • Mild perceptual changes
101–200 mg %	• Reduced coordination of most activities • Speech impairment • Trouble walking • General impairment of thinking and judgment	*Severe alcohol withdrawal* • Obvious trembling of the hands and arms • Sweating • Elevation of pulse (above 100) and blood pressure (greater than 140/90) • Nausea (sometimes with vomiting) • Hypersensitivity to noises (which seem louder than usual) and light (which appears brighter than usual) • Brief periods of hearing and seeing things that are not present (auditory and visual hallucinations) also may occur • Fever greater than 101°F also may be seen (care should be taken to determine whether the fever is the result of infection)
201–300 mg %	• Marked impairment of thinking, memory, and coordination • Marked reduction in the level of alertness • Memory blackouts • Nausea and vomiting	*Most extreme forms of severe alcohol withdrawal* • Seizures • True delirium tremens
301–400 mg %	• Worsening of aforementioned symptoms with reduction of body temperature and blood pressure • Excessive sleepiness • Amnesia	*Medical complications of alcohol withdrawal* • Infections • Hypoglycemia • Gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding • Undetected trauma • Hepatic failure • Cardiomyopathy with ineffective pumping • Pancreatitis • Encephalopathy (generalized impaired brain functioning).
401–800 mg %	• Difficulty waking the patient (coma) • Serious decreases in pulse, temperature, blood pressure, and rate of breathing • Urinary and bowel incontinence • Death	

[a]*These may vary greatly with level of tolerance (chronic users of alcohol may show less effect at any given blood alcohol level).*
From Consensus Panelist Robert Malcolm, M. (CSAT, 2006b).

TABLE 15-3: SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF OPIOID INTOXICATION AND WITHDRAWAL

OPIOID INTOXICATION	OPIOID WITHDRAWAL
Signs Bradycardia (slow pulse) Hypotension (low blood pressure) Hypothermia (low body temperature) Sedation Meiosis (pinpoint pupils) Hypokinesis (slowed movement) Slurred speech Head nodding	**Signs** Tachycardia (fast pulse) Hypertension (high blood pressure) Hyperthermia (high body temperature) Insomnia Mydriasis (enlarged pupils) Hyperreflexia (abnormally heightened reflexes) Diaphoresis (sweating) Piloerection (gooseflesh) Increased respiratory rate Lacrimation (tearing), yawning Rhinorrhea (runny nose) Muscle spasms
Symptoms Euphoria Analgesia (pain-killing effects) Calmness	**Symptoms** Abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea Bone and muscle pain Anxiety

From Consensus Panelist Charles Dackis, M. (CSAT, 2006b).

nurse remembers at all times that the relationship is therapeutic for the patient only as long as the process is patient-centered. All interventions must be implemented based on the patient's readiness to move to the next stage. The nurse must note not only the accomplishment of each step of the process, but the signs that the patient is preparing for the next step.

The nurse also needs to be familiar with the medications currently used in the treatment of individuals using substances of abuse (see Drug Summary 15-1). In addition, the nurse needs to continually assess for signs and symptoms of intoxication and withdrawal resulting from the use, abuse, and dependence on each type of substance of abuse. **Tables 15-2 and 15-3** highlight the signs and symptoms associated with alcohol and opioid intoxication and withdrawal. **Box 15-5** highlights the key signs and symptoms of stimulant withdrawal.

Individuals who are under the influence or suffering from withdrawal may present in a variety of settings and require or request detoxification. This process has three components that are completed in sequence: evaluation, stabilization, and entry into treatment (CSAT, 2006b). The primary goal is to medically stabilize the patient. Once this occurs, clinical guidelines from the ASAM can be used to determine the intensity of services necessary to support the safe withdrawal from the substance. Psychiatric-mental health nurses play an essential role in this process at all levels of intensity, from the physician's office to the 24-hour care in an acute inpatient setting. Psychiatric-mental health nurses also may be involved during all three components of detoxification. For example, the psychiatric-mental health nurse would be involved in obtaining a complete assessment and providing ongoing evaluation of the type and level of severity of the patient's symptoms. Thus, the nurse needs to be knowledgeable of the signs and symptoms specific to each substance to facilitate this initial intervention and ongoing evaluation. In addition, when medications are involved, the nurse will need to provide education to the patient about what to expect, monitor him or her for side effects, and continually evaluate the patient for a response. During the third stage, the nurse engaged in the

BOX 15-5: STIMULANT WITHDRAWAL SYMPTOMS

- Depression
- Hypersomnia (or insomnia)
- Fatigue
- Anxiety
- Irritability
- Poor concentration
- Psychomotor retardation
- Increased appetite
- Paranoia
- Drug craving

From Consensus Panelist Robert Malcolm, MD (CSAT, 2006b).

TABLE 15-4: TOOLS FOR ASSESSING WITHDRAWAL

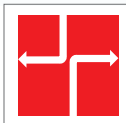
CIWA-Ar: Addiction Research Foundation Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol *Contact Info:* SAMHSA Tip 24	Tool asks patient to rate the following nine areas using a scale from 0 to 7: • Nausea and vomiting • Tactile disturbances • Tremor • Auditory disturbances • Paroxysmal sweats • Visual disturbances • Anxiety • Headache, fullness in head • Agitation The 10th area is orientation and clouding of sensorium and is scored between 0 and 4.	Takes 2 to 5 minutes to administer. • Three areas are scored by observation (tremor, paroxysmal sweats, and agitation). • One area, anxiety, is scored combining the response and observation. • The maximum possible score is 67 points, with a score of 10 or more indicating clinical concern.
SOWS: Subjective Opiate Withdrawal Scale *Contact Info:* Handelsman, L., Cochrane, K. J., Aronson, M. J., Ness, R., Ruginstein, K. J., & Kanof, P. D. (1987). Two new rating scales for opiate withdrawal. *American Journal of Alcohol Abuse, 13*, 293–308.	A 16-item questionnaire seeking responses to the extent the individual is currently experiencing each of the characteristics described.	Each item is scored between 0 and 4. The higher the score, the greater the severity of the associated withdrawal.
OOWS: Objective Opiate Withdrawal Scale *Contact Info:* Handelsman, L., Cochrane, K. J., Aronson, M. J., Ness, R., Ruginstein, K. J., & Kanof, P. D. (1987). Two new rating scales for opiate withdrawal. *American Journal of Alcohol Abuse, 13*, 293–308.	Thirteen manifestations of withdrawal are identified. Staff completing this assessment must be familiar with the signs and symptoms of opiate withdrawal. The clinician completes this by direct observation of the individual.	Observation takes approximately 10 minutes. The rater scores each item on a scale of 0 to 13. The more pronounced the presenting symptom, the higher the score. The higher score indicates the risk of more severe withdrawal.

therapeutic relationship encourages reluctant patients to participate in establishing their treatment program.

When assessing a patient for possible withdrawal, the nurse can use various tools that are available. Examples of these tools are identified in **Table 15-4**. Throughout the process, the therapeutic relationship is integral in facilitating the nurse's ability to assess and manage symptomatology, determine the type of support needed for continuing abstinence, and prepare the patient to enter treatment.

Detoxification involves evaluation, stabilization, and entry into treatment.

This same therapeutic relationship offers the patient an opportunity to learn how to manage relationships within his or her family when the treatment plan includes education on family dynamics, participation in family stabilization, and entry into treatment (CSAT, 2006b). The primary goal is to medically stabilize the patient. Once this occurs, clinical guidelines from the ASAM can be used to determine the intensity of services necessary to support the safe withdrawal from the substance. Psychiatric-mental health nurses play an essential role in this process at all levels of intensity, from the physician's office to the 24-hour care in an acute inpatient setting. Psychiatric-mental health nurses also may be involved during all three components of detoxification. For example, the psychiatric-mental health nurse would be involved in obtaining a complete assessment and groups, or family therapy sessions. Many individuals with behavioral health issues have experienced problem relationships within their families and/or with significant others. Individuals may be estranged from family or have been part of unhealthy family dynamics. Substance use and addictive disorders have long been recognized as a family disease. An example of problems faced by a patient with alcohol dependency and multiple health problems is illustrated in **How Would You Respond? 15-1**. Assessing the individual's family and addressing family issues and



HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 15-1: A PATIENT WITH ALCOHOL ABUSE

S.L. is a 60-year-old female with a long history of depression and anxiety. During one treatment episode, she was diagnosed with attention deficit disorder. She began drinking daily in the early 1990s in an effort to manage work-related stress. After 10 years, she took a forced retirement and applied for Social Security disability. The main people in her life are her ex-husband, her adult son and his family, her siblings, and her employer, a disabled man she assists with household chores. Her ex-husband is an end-stage alcoholic. He lives with their son, who tolerates his father's drinking but pressures his mother for sobriety. Her parents are deceased, but when alive, they experienced major depression, anxiety, and obsessive-compulsive disorder and a psychotic depression. An older sister died recently. She lived out of state and suffered from major depression and alcoholism. Two brothers, residing out of state, meet the criteria for substance abuse or a mild mental health disorder. Two other brothers and a sister reside in the area. Her sister and one brother have anxiety and a form of obsessive-compulsive disorder. Her youngest brother has schizophrenia and is on disability. She is the sibling that everyone looks to for guidance.

Since her retirement 6 years ago, S.L. has been receiving treatment for her depression and anxiety and trying to address her alcohol use. Her current diagnoses are major depression, generalized anxiety disorder, and alcohol dependency. Although the severity of her symptomatology would indicate the need for inpatient treatment at a drug and alcohol rehabilitation facility, followed by a halfway house or partial program treatment episode, her current insurance does not cover these levels of treatment. As she has coverage only for inpatient treatment, her treatment consists of week-long inpatient stays for medical management of her withdrawal from alcohol (detox) followed by Alcoholics Anonymous's 12-step program. Her first treatment episode was in mid-2006. She has had five more episodes since then. Her pattern is to remain abstinent for a week or so postdischarge, attend 12-step groups, and then start drinking as her anxiety increases. As her drinking increases, her AA attendance decreases. Her drink of choice is vodka by the pint, but she will substitute wine to manage intake.

Shortly after her first detox experience, she started working with her current psychiatrist, an addictionologist. He has been trying to address all three disorders with interactive and complementary medications. There have been multiple medication changes. Pharmacological management has been impacted by her resistance to taking medications, sleep disorders including restless legs and vivid dreams, and difficulties with attention and concentration. Currently, she is on quetiapine (Seroquel) to manage anxiety and assist with sleeping; venlafaxine (Effexor) to treat her depression; and gabapentin (Neurontin) for restless legs and withdrawal anxiety. Acamprosate (Campral) is prescribed but not taken consistently. In addition to her psychiatrist, outpatient counseling, and AA, she has been following up with her primary care physician for her hypertension, arthritis, hypothyroidism, seizure disorder, and recent positive hepatitis C screen.

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *What factors may have played a role in this patient's development of alcohol dependency?*
2. *How does acamprosate differ from another drug, disulfiram, used to manage alcohol abstinence?*
3. *How might the nurse involve the patient's family in the treatment plan?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 15-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Substance use and addictive disorders refer to a disease with both neurobiological and psychosocial antecedents (Shaffer et al., 2004). The patient history described in the scenario is positive for a number of neurobiological and psychosocial factors. The family dynamics have been impacted by several generations of alcoholism and mental health disorders. In families impacted by SUDs, members identify with one of several roles. This patient responded to the family's dysfunctional dynamics by identifying with the role of hero child. As the role carried over into adulthood, the individual displayed characteristics of perfectionism and caretaking in all relationships.

The most basic relationships that an individual experiences are within the family unit. Because this is a disease that impacts family members as well as the individual with SUDs, family therapy is an important part of the treatment. All members of the family will need to learn to relate to each other differently. Focus may be on healthier coping skills, problem solving without the substances, sharing and managing feelings, and learning to be assertive about boundaries and limit setting.

Acamprosate is used as a relapse-preventing agent that has minimal side effects. The patient does not experience the toxic reaction that occurs with disulfiram if alcohol is ingested. However, the patient should continue alcohol counseling when taking either drug.

The nurse would encourage the patient and family to continue to engage in family therapy and reinforce the skills learned. Additionally, the nurse would provide patient and family education about the disorder and treatment, including any medications prescribed.

including family members in the treatment plan at the appropriate time offers the chance of better outcomes and longer periods of sobriety once the individual is discharged. If needed, the process of reunification may be started, or, if necessary, entirely new relationships or support systems may be forged.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation occurs as an ongoing assessment of the timelines and objectives met. It is expected that once the therapeutic relationship is established, the process of change will move forward, and the goals of the treatment plan will be met. During the evaluation process, support for the relationship will be measured. The relationship is most effective when the nurse is seen as facilitating progress by being available, consistent, and trustworthy (Stockmann, 2005). The process of change is measured by identifying improvements in the patterns of expression, perception, and behavior that were once problematic for the patient, thus meeting the goals set for the treatment plan (Beeber et al., 2004). The nurse accomplishes this by accepting an ethical commitment to examine the "desires, trusts, hope, powerlessness, and guilt and shame" that make up the patient's suffering (Sjostedt et al., 2001, p. 315).

Part of this ethical commitment is the responsibility for ongoing self-reflection to increase self-awareness, manage countertransference, and ensure that the goals and outcomes sought are patient-centered rather than geared to meet the needs of the nurse or the system. Therapeutic relationships can suffer or fail due to negative or conflicting responses or reactions, unrealistic expectations, poor

boundaries, lack of respect or understanding for individual's communication styles, and cultures (Beeber et al., 2004; Holmqvist et al., 2013; Narayanasamy, 1999; Perraud et al., 2006; Rayner, 2005; Stockmann, 2005). Preventing the therapeutic relationship from weakening and impacting the patient's successful accomplishment of goals is a crucial task of the nurse. If all the tasks are completed, the patient will develop competencies. These competencies help make it possible for alterations to occur in problematic areas. In addition, the patient will have acquired skills that could be used to manage future problems. As the last task of evaluation, the nurse will assist the patient to complete a personal appraisal using reflective thinking and a critique of the progress of treatment. At this point, if the patient is comfortable with the competencies, the therapeutic relationship is terminated and the patient is discharged. Terminating the relationship with mutual respect and consideration for boundaries is important so that the patient can retain a positive view for future treatment opportunities

SUMMARY POINTS

- The disease related to substance use and addictive disorders is defined as a chronic, relapsing condition characterized by compulsive drug seeking and use, even when harmful consequences are present. It involves a spectrum of disorders including substance use and substance dependence, substance intoxication, and substance withdrawal.
- Common substances of abuse have been identified as alcohol, amphetamines, caffeine, cannabis, cathinones, cocaine, hallucinogens, inhalants, nicotine, opioids, phencyclidine, and sedatives, hypnotics, and anxiolytics.
- Current thinking views substance-related disorders as a syndrome, which helps to explain why only some individuals become dependent and others do not.
- An interplay of psychological, environmental, shared experiences, and neurobiological influences is believed to increase a person's vulnerability to substance problems. No one theory is currently available to explain the cause of substance use and addictive disorders (SUDs).
- Treatment options include a mix of therapies such as self-help programs, psychopharmacology, and psychotherapy including cognitive behavioral and insight-oriented therapy.
- Substance use is a progressive disorder that requires ongoing relationships to prevent additional physical and behavioral health consequences and progression of the disease. Nurses establish rapport for the therapeutic relationship and demonstrate empathy, respect or positive regard, congruence, and genuineness.
- Nurses need to be able to use screening tools and assessment skills for early detection of addictive disorders.
- The therapeutic relationship between the nurse and the patient offers the patient the opportunity to learn how to manage relationships with his or her family.
- Terminating the nurse–patient relationship with mutual respect and consideration for boundaries is important so that the patient can retain a positive view for future treatment opportunities
- The Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) competencies most applicable to SUDs nursing practice are patient-centered care, evidence-based practice, and teamwork and collaboration.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of students are reviewing information about the classification of addictive disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as a substance use disorder?
   a. Substance dependence
   b. Substance-induced disorder
   c. Substance intoxication
   d. Substance withdrawal

2. The psychiatric-mental health nurse is working with a patient diagnosed with alcohol abuse and is describing the 12-step program of Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). Which of the following would the nurse include?
   a. Participants are selected based on their ability to attend meetings.
   b. The desire to quit drinking is the underlying concept.
   c. Sponsors are selected by the leader of the group meeting.
   d. Sobriety requires that the person focus on future events.

3. A patient is experiencing heroin withdrawal and develops hypertension. Which of the following would the nurse expect to administer?
   a. Phenobarbital
   b. Diazepam
   c. Clonidine
   d. Acamprosate

4. A patient with substance use and addictive disorders (SUDs) is undergoing treatment that focuses on redirecting dysfunctional thought processes. The patient is involved in which of the following?
   a. Motivational enhancement therapy
   b. Cognitive behavioral therapy
   c. Mindfulnesss
   d. Community reinforcement

5. A patient with alcohol intoxication and a blood alcohol level of 190 mg % is exhibiting signs of withdrawal. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess? Select all that apply.
   a. Restlessness
   b. Visible hand trembling
   c. Hypersensitivity to light
   d. Auditory hallucinations
   e. Pulse rate less than 89 beats per minute
   f. Seizures

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Alcohol Concern. (2007). *Primary Care Alcohol Information Service–Screening tools for health care settings*. Retrieved from http://smchealth.org/sites/default/files/docs/1309587953TheRAPS4Questions.pdf.

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). Substance related and addictive disorders. In the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.

American Society of Addiction Medicine. (2011). *For the public. Definition of substance use and addictive disorders*. Retrieved from http://www.asam.org/for-the-public/definition-of-addiction (substitution issue)

American Society of Addiction Medicine. (2015, May 27). The national practice guideline for the use of medications in the treatment of addiction involving opioid use (practice guideline). Retrieved from http://www.asam.org/docs/default-source/practice-support/guidelines-and-consensus-docs/national-practice-guideline.pdf?sfvrsn=18

Angres, D. H., & Bettinardi-Angres, K. (2008, October). The disease of addiction: Origins, treatment and recovery. *Disease a Month, 54*(10), 696–721. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18790142

Antai-Otong, D. (2006). Women and alcoholism: Gender-related medical complications: Treatment considerations. *Journal of Addictions Nursing, 17*(1), 33.

Baird, C. (2008).Treating women with children: What does the evidence say? *Journal of Addictions Nursing, 19*(3), 83–85.

Baird, C. (2009, July/August). Spotting alcohol and substance abuse: How to start a screening program for primary care patients. *American Nurse Today, 4*(7), 29–31.

Baird, C. (2014). Guest editorial—Prescription drugs or heroin: The overdoses continue. *Journal of Addiction Nursing (JAN), 25*(2), 63–65.

Baird, C., & Fornili, K. (2008). Effective health care delivery and integrated behavioral health screening. *Journal of Addictions Nursing, 19*(3), 174–177. Retrieved from http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10884600802306180

Baird, C., Pancari, J. V., Lutz, P. J., & Baird, T. (2009). Addiction disorders. In J. C. Urbanic & C. J. Groh (Eds.), *Women's mental health: A clinical guide for primary care providers* (pp. 125–179). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams, & Wilkins.

Bart, G. (2012). Maintenance medication for opiate addiction: The foundation of recovery. *Journal of Addictive Diseases, 31*(3), 207–225.

Beeber, L. S., Canuso, R., & Emory, S. (2004, October). Instrumental inputs: Moving the interpersonal theory of nursing into practice. *Advances in Nursing Science, 27*(4), 275–286. Retrieved from MEDLINE with Full Text database.

Bloomfield, K., Stockwell, T., Gmel, G., & Rehn, N. (2003, December). *International comparisons of alcohol consumption*. National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). Retrieved from http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/arh27-1/95-109.htm

Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (1999). *Brief interventions and brief therapies for substance abuse counseling.* Technical Assistance Publication [TAP] Series, 34. DHHS Publication No. (SMA) 99–3353. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (2005a). *Addiction counseling competencies: The knowledge, skills and attitudes of professional practice.* Technical Assistance Publication [TAP] Series, 21. DHHS Publication No. (SMA) 05–4087. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (2005b). *Substance abuse treatment for persons with co-occurring disorders.* Treatment Improvement Protocol [TIP] Series, 42. DHHS Publication No.(SMA) 05–3992. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (2006a). *Detoxification and substance abuse treatment.* Treatment Improvement Protocol [TIP] Series, 45 DHHS Publication No. (SMA) 06–4131. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (2006b). *Addiction counseling competencies: The knowledge, skills, and attitudes of Professional Practice.* Technical Assistance Publication [TAP] Series 21 HHS Publication No. (SMA) 08-4171. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Cicero, T. J., & Ellis, M. S. (2015, March). Abuse-deterrent formulations and the prescription opioid abuse epidemic in the United States. *JAMA Psychiatry*. doi:10.1001/jamapsychiatry.2014.3043

Committee on Quality of Health Care in America, Institute of Medicine. (2001, March). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health system for the 21st century.* Retrieved from https://iom.nationalacademies.org/~/media/Files/Report%20Files/2001/Crossing-the-Quality-Chasm/Quality%20Chasm%202001%20%20report%20brief.pdf

Cooke, M., & Matarasso, B. (2005, December). Promoting reflection in mental health nursing practice: A case illustration using problem-based learning. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing, 14*(4), 243–248. Retrieved from MEDLINE with Full Text database.

Current Nursing. (2009). *Application of interpersonal theory in nursing practice*. Retrieved from http://currentnursing.com/nursing_theory/interpersonal_theory.htm

Davis, C. (2015, March). *Legal interventions to reduce overdose mortality: Naloxone Good Samaritan laws.* Network for Public Health Law. Robert Wood Johnson Foundation. Retrieved from https://www.networkforphl.org/_asset/qz5pvn/legal-interventions-to-reduce-overdose.pdf

Doweiko, H. E. (2006). *Concepts of chemical dependency.* Belmont, CA: Thomson Brooks/Cole.

Executive Office of the President of the United States. (2011). *Epidemic: Responding to America's prescription drug abuse crisis.* Retrieved from http://www.whitehouse.gov/sites/default/files/ondcp/issues-content/prescription-drugs/rx_abuse_plan.pdf

Fortier, C. B., Leritz, E. C., Salat, D. H., Lindemer, E., Maksimovskiy, A. L., Shepel, J.,…McGlinchey, R. E. (2014, November 18). Widespread effects of alcohol on white matter microstructure. *Alcoholism: Clinical & Experimental Research*. [Epub ahead of print]. PMID: 25406797.

Furek, M. W. (2008). *The death proclamation of generation X: A self-fulfilling prophecy of goth, grunge, and heroin*. New York, NY: iUniverse, Inc.

Hedegaard, H., Chen, L. H., & Warner, M. (2015). *Drug-poisoning deaths involving heroin: United States, 2000–2013*. NCHS data brief, no 190. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/databriefs.htm

Holmqvist, K., Holmefur, M., & Ivarsson, A.-B. (2013). Therapeutic use of self as defined by Swedish occupational therapists working with clients with cognitive impairments following acquired brain injury: A Delphi study. *Australian Occupational Therapy Journal, 60*, 48–55. doi:10.1111/1440–1630.12001

Jellinek, E. M. (n.d.). *Jellinek curve of alcoholism*. Retrieved from http://www.in.gov/judiciary/ijlap/files/jellinek.pdf

Kane, I., Mitchell, A. M., Puskar, K. R., Hagle, H., Talcott, K., Fioravanti, M.,…Lindsay, D. (2014). Identifying at risk individuals for drug and alcohol dependence: Teaching the competency to students in classroom and clinical settings. *Nurse Educator, 39*(3), 126–134.

Konrad, S. (2005). Addictions and disability counseling. In *An introduction to counseling in Canada*. Retrieved from http://psych.athabascau.ca/html/Resources/Psych388/CanadianSupplement/Chapter13/print.shtml

Koob, G. F. (2006). The neurobiology of addiction: A neuroadaptational view relevant for diagnosis. *Addiction, 101*(Suppl. 1), 23–30.

Koola, M. M., Qualls, C., Kelly, D. L., Skelton, K., Bradley, B., Amar, R., & Duncan, E. J. (2013). Prevalence of childhood physical and sexual abuse in veterans with psychiatric diagnoses. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease, 201*(4), 348–352.

Minkoff, K. (2005). *Comprehensive continuous integrated system of care (CCISC): Psychopharmacology practice guidelines for individuals with co-occurring psychiatric and substance use disorders (COD)*. Retrieved from http://www.kenminkoff.com/articles.html

Mitchell, A. M., Hagle, H., Puskar, K., Kane, I., Lindsay, D., Talcott, K.,…Goplerud, E. (2015). Alcohol and other drug use screenings by nurse practitioners: Clinical issues and costs. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners, 11*(3), 347–335.

Mitchell, A. M., Puskar, K., Hagle, H., Gotham, H. J., Talcott, K. S., Terhorst, L.,…Burns, H. K. (2013). Screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment: Overview of and student satisfaction with an undergraduate addiction training program for nurses. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 51*(10), 29–37.

Narayanasamy, A. (1999, June 10). Transcultural mental health nursing. 2: Race, ethnicity and culture. *British Journal of Nursing (Mark Allen Publishing), 8*(11), 741–744. Retrieved from MEDLINE with full text database.

National Center for Injury Control and Prevention. (2014, January). *Drug overdose.* Centers for Disease Control. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/pubs/index.html#tabs-760094-4

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2005, March). *Module 10H: Ethnicity, culture and alcoholism*. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/index.html

National Institute on Drug Abuse. (2009a). *NIDA InfoFacts treatment approaches for drug addiction*. Retrieved from http://drugabuse.gov/infofacts/treatmeth.html

National Institute on Drug Abuse. (2009b). *The neurobiology of drug addiction. Section II: The reward pathway and addiction*. Retrieved from http://www.nida.nih.gov/pubs/teaching/teaching2/Teaching3.html

National Institute on Drug Abuse. (2010). *Drugs, brains, and behavior. The science of addiction*. Retrieved from http://www.nida.nih.gov/scienceofaddiction/

National Institute on Drug Abuse, National Institutes of Health, and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2012). *Principles of drug addiction and treatment. A research based guide* (3rd ed.). Bethesda, MD: NIH.

National Institute on Drug Abuse, Public Information and Liaison Branch, Office of Science Policy and Communications. (2014). The National Institute on Drug Abuse. A Media Guide. Retrieved from http://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/media-guide/dear-journalist

National Quality Forum. (2007). *National voluntary consensus standards for the treatment of substance use conditions: Evidence-based treatment practices. A consensus report*. Retrieved from http://www.qualityforum.org/Search.aspx? keyword=substance+abuse+treatment+consensus+document

Palladini, M. (2011). *Drugs of abuse: From doctors and dealers, users and healers*. Beaver, PA: Three Suns Publishing.

Perraud, S., Delaney, K. R., Carlson-Sabelli, L., Johnson, M. E., Shepard, R., & Paun, O. (2006, November). Advanced practice psychiatric mental health nursing, finding our core: The therapeutic relationship in 21st century. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 42*(4), 215–226. Retrieved from Medline with Full Text database.

Rayner, L. (2005, August). Language, therapeutic relationships and individualized care: Addressing these issues in mental health care pathways. *Journal of Psychiatrics and Mental Health Nursing, 12*(4), 481–487. Retrieved from Medline with Full Text database.

Satel, S., & Lilienfeld, S. O. (2013). Addiction and the brain-disease fallacy. *Frontiers in Psychiatry, 4*, 141. doi:10.3389/fpsyt.2013.00141

Shaffer, H. J., LaPlante, D. A., LaBrie, R. A., Kidman, R. C., Donato, A. N., & Stanton, M. V. (2004). Toward a syndrome model of addiction: Multiple expressions, common etiology. *Harvard Review Psychiatry, 12*, 367–374. Retrieved from http://www.expressionsofaddiction.com/docs/shafferetalsyndrome.pdf

Sjostedt, E., Dahlstrand, A., Severinsson, E., & Lutzen, K. (2001, July). The first nurse-patient encounter in a psychiatric setting: Discovering a moral commitment in nursing. *Nursing Ethics, 8*(4), 313–327. Retrieved from Medline with Full Text database.

Snow, D., & Delaney, K. R. (2006, December). Substance use and recovery: Charting a course toward optimism. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 20*(6), 288–290.

Stockmann, C. (2005, November). A literature review of the progress of the psychiatric nurse-patient relationship as described by Peplau. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 26*(9), 911–919. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16203645 10.1080/01612840500248197

Strobbe, S., & Broyles, L. M. (2013, May). *Expanded roles and responsibilities for nurses in screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment (SBIRT) for alcohol use: A joint position statement.* International Nurses Society on Addiction (IntNSA) and the Emergency Nurses Association (ENA). Retrieved from http://www.intnsa.org/resources/publications/position_may_2013.pdf

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2012). *Substance abuse treatment: Group therapy in service training*. HHS Publication No. (SMA) SMA-11–4664. Rockville, MD: Author.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2013). *Opioid overdose prevention toolkit.* HHS Publication No. (SMA) 13–4742. Rockville, MD: Author.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2014). *Results from the 2013 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Summary of National Findings.* NSDUH Series H-48, HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14–4863. Rockville, MD: Author. Retrieved from http://www.samhsa.gov/data/

sites/default/files/NSDUHresultsPDFWHTML2013/Web/NSDUHresults2013.pdf

Trust for America's Health. (2013, October). *Prescription drug abuse: Strategies to stop the epidemic.* Robert Wood Johnson Foundation. Retrieved from www.healthyamericans.org/reports/drugabuse2013

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (2015, Jan). *Evidence-based methods for evaluating behavioral counseling interventions.* Retrieved from http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Name/behavioral-counseling-interventions-an-evidence-based-approach

Valdiva, J. F., & Khattak, S. (2000, October–November). Effects of LAAM and methadone utilization in an opiate agonist treatment program. *Mount Sinai Journal of Medicine, 67*(5–6), 398–403.

Weaver, M. F., Hopper, J. A., & Gunderson, E. W. (2015). Designer drugs 2015: Assessment and management. *Substance Use and Addictive Disorders Science & Clinical Practice, 10*(8). doi:10.1186/s13722–015-0024–7

World Health Organization. (1995). *The ICD-10 classification of mental and behavioural disorders: Clinical descriptions and diagnostic guidelines*. Geneva: Author. Retrieved from http://www.who.int/substance_abuse/terminology/ICD10ClinicalDiagnosis.pdf

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *neurocognitive disorders*
2. Identify the major neurocognitive disorders
3. Describe the historical perspectives and epidemiology of neurocognitive disorders
4. Discuss current scientific theories related to the etiology and pathophysiology of neurocognitive disorders, specifically dementia of the Alzheimer's type (DAT)
5. Identify the diagnostic criteria for neurocognitive disorders
6. Explain the pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatment options for persons with neurocognitive disorders

CHAPTER 16

NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS

Mark P. Tyrrell
Geraldine McCarthy
Lynn Pebole Shell

7. Describe common assessment strategies for individuals with neurocognitive disorders
8. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with neurocognitive disorders, demonstrating an appreciation of the challenges that face family caregivers in caring for someone with dementia

KEY TERMS

Delirium
Dementia
Enriched model of dementia
Malignant social psychology
Neurocognitive disorders
Neurofibrillary tangles
Positive person work
Progressively lowered stress threshold (PLST)
Reality orientation
Reminiscence therapy
Senile dementia
Validation therapy

NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS refer to a group of disorders in which a person experiences a disruption in areas of mental function. These areas include orientation, attention, logic, awareness, memory, intellect, language, abstract thinking, and reasoning. Two major neurocognitive disorders identified by the American Psychiatric Association (APA) are **DELIRIUM** and **DEMENTIA**. Delirium refers to an acute disruption in consciousness and cognitive function. Dementia refers to a group of conditions that involve multiple deficits in memory and cognition. With the exception of delirium, which tends to be sudden in onset and short-lived, neurodegenerative processes characterize many neurocognitive disorders. Those resulting from dementia are insidious, and usually present for a number of years by the time symptoms become apparent. Moreover, symptoms may be so insidious that they are ignored or misinterpreted by the individual, or by family members, or by health care professionals as being insignificant or representative of normal aging. Symptoms are typically present between 1 and 2 years before family members bring the person for medical attention (Wilkinson et al., 2005). The average length of time from onset of symptoms until diagnosis is 20 months; however, it can be up to 3 years before a firm diagnosis is made (Speechly, Bridges-Webb, & Passmore, 2008; Wilkinson et al., 2005). This often results in delay in reaching diagnosis. Subsequently, there is a lost opportunity to initiate an early treatment plan, one that might afford sufferers additional months of neurocognitive competence, preserve their quality of life longer, and afford them the opportunity to put their financial and personal affairs in order before significant neurocognitive decline takes hold (Giaquinto & Parnetti, 2006).

This chapter focuses on dementia and delirium because these are the two most common types of neurocognitive disorders found in clinical practice. Although both result in cognitive impairment and have profound implications for patients and their caregivers, the respective etiologies, treatments, and outcomes are distinctly different. Although delirium is commonplace, particularly among the hospitalized elderly, it usually arises from an underlying medical condition. Furthermore, in the majority of cases, the cause is readily identified and treatable, thus enabling the person to return to the community. For these reasons, delirium is addressed only briefly in this chapter.

This chapter covers the historical aspects and epidemiology of neurocognitive disorders and includes a detailed description of the major neurocognitive disorders as described according to discrete symptoms in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*; APA, 2013). Relevant scientific theories related to the etiology and pathophysiology of dementia are described along with common pharmacotherapy and nonpharmacotherapy strategies used in the treatment of dementia, specifically dementia of the Alzheimer's type (DAT). Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is discussed, including a plan of care for a patient with dementia.

Delirium occurs suddenly and is the result of an underlying medical condition. Dementia occurs gradually and involves multiple problems of memory and cognition.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

Cognitive impairment has been documented as a health concern for many centuries. Indeed, there are apparent references to such conditions in the literature of ancient Greece and Rome. For example, Juvenal (AD 60–130) wrote:

> But worse than all bodily failing is the weakening mind which cannot remember names of slaves nor the face of a friend he dined with last evening, cannot remember the names of offspring begotten and reared. (Juvenal, cited in Gilliard, 1993)

Up until the 20th century, older adults with organic brain disease were generally diagnosed as having **SENILE DEMENTIA**. This was a term that categorized memory loss as part of normal aging. In the early part of the 20th century, neuropathologists began to recognize that a number of conditions could lead to senile dementia including Alzheimer's disease (now referred to as DAT), arteriosclerotic brain disease, and neurosyphilis. In 1903, a young German physician, Alois Alzheimer, established a laboratory for brain research at the Munich Medical School. Three years later, Alzheimer presented a case study of a 55-year-old woman in which he described an unusual disease of the cerebral cortex characterized by memory loss, disorientation, and hallucinations. The woman in question died shortly afterward and Alzheimer carried out a postmortem examination that showed various anomalies in her brain, including a thinning of the cerebral cortex, senile plaques, and neurofibrillary tangles. The disease that Alzheimer first described more than a century ago bears his name to this day. In 1968, the link between the neuropathological features of DAT and the cognitive disorder of DAT were established by Blessed, Tomlinson, and Roth (1968). In the following decade, the biochemistry of DAT became more clearly understood, initially with the discovery of the cholinergic deficit, and later with the identification of beta-amyloid peptide.

Subsequent work throughout the 20th century revealed that a number of different types of dementia exist and that a myriad of other conditions could result in neurocognitive impairment such as that seen in senile dementia. The

symptoms presented may be similar; however, the neurocognitive disorders differ in their etiology.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The increase in life expectancy in industrialized countries over the past few decades has resulted in a greater incidence of neurocognitive disorders, particularly those resulting from neurodegenerative conditions such as dementia. One reason for the increased incidence is that dementias are age related; hence, the longer one lives, the greater the chance of being diagnosed with a dementia. Indeed, dementias account for the majority of neurocognitive disorders seen in mental health care, and DAT is by far the most common dementia in the Western world, accounting for between 55% and 65% of all cases.

Current statistics reveal that delirium is a common neurocognitive disorder in debilitated and elderly patients, including those with dementia (Sousa-Ferreira, Ferreira, Ferreira, Amaral, & Cabral, 2015). It is estimated that about 50% of people with delirium have an overt psychosis (Boyle & Hands, 2009).

In both developed and developing countries, the number of people older than 65 years of age is rising steeply, and as dementia is age related this will inevitably lead to a rise in the number of people who have dementia. Indeed, recent estimates suggest that this number will double every 20 years and that by 2040, this number will amount to more than 115.4 million people globally who have some form of dementia (Prince et al., 2013).

DAT accounts for between 60% and 80% of all dementias and is found in all human populations worldwide (Alzheimer's Association, 2014). In the United States, it is estimated that one in nine people aged 65 years and older has DAT. By age 85 years, approximately one third of individuals have the disease. In 2050, the total number of individuals diagnosed with DAT in the United States is projected to be 13.8 million (Alzheimer's Association, 2014). More women than men are diagnosed with the disease, probably due to the greater longevity of females. Although DAT is primarily a disease of old age, occasionally people in their 40s or 50s are diagnosed with the condition.

Delirium is the most commonly occurring neurocognitive disorder. DAT accounts for more than half of all dementias globally.

Dementia of the vascular type affects men more often than women. Because the symptoms are similar to Alzheimer's, definitive diagnosis can be difficult. To complicate matters, dementia of the vascular type and DAT can coexist in the same person.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

Neurocognitive disorders include delirium and dementia. Although several types of dementia have been identified, four major types are presented here: DAT, dementia of the vascular type, dementia with Lewy bodies, and frontotemporal dementia.

Although each type of dementia has its own distinctive set of clinical features, a number of common features exist. It is not unusual for some individuals to have more than one dementia at the same time; for example, someone may have both DAT and dementia of the vascular type and will present with some of the features of both conditions. In this regard, Smith and Buckwalter (2005) describe four groups of symptoms that are commonly seen in dementia. These are summarized in **Table 16-1**.

Delirium

Delirium is a medical condition characterized by fluctuating levels of disorientation and clouded consciousness, accompanied by cognitive impairment, altered mood states, altered perception, altered self-awareness, and an inability to focus and maintain attention (APA, 2013). The person is often drowsy during the day; however, at night the person experiences sleeplessness, agitation, and restlessness. It is an acute state with a rapid onset. Some of the many causes of delirium are outlined in **Box 16-1**.

In extreme cases, delirium represents a medical emergency and carries a high morbidity and increased mortality. In some cases, it may result in a permanent cognitive impairment (Hsieh, Madahar, Hope, Zapata, & Gong, 2015). Therefore, a sudden onset of delirium in an otherwise healthy individual may indicate an underlying life-threatening condition.

Dementia

Dementia is an umbrella term used to describe various conditions that cause brain cells to die, leading to a progressive deterioration in memory and the ability to carry out everyday activities such as washing, dressing, eating, and communicating. Dementia may also affect a person's mood and personality.

Many diseases can result in dementia. Four of these account for almost 90% of cases, with the most common being DAT, accounting for more than half of all the cases of dementia encountered in clinical practice.

TABLE 16-1: COMMON CLINICAL FEATURES OF DEMENTIA

CLINICAL FEATURE	MANIFESTATIONS
Personality changes	Apathy Loss of interest Decreased control over one's behavior Increased self-absorption Apparent selfishness, with lack of ability to consider the needs of others
Cognitive changes	Memory loss of recent events Confabulation to make up what is forgotten Difficulty learning new things Poor judgment Deterioration of written and verbal language skills Loss of the concept of time
Functional changes	Decreased ability to carry out skills and activities of daily living Inability to put steps in correct sequence to get job done despite knowing what he or she wants to do
Altered stress threshold	Decreased ability to tolerate stress Easy fatigue Prone to anger Irritation or becoming overwhelmed with situations that were not a problem previously; becoming more problematic and evident as disease progresses

BOX 16-1: CAUSES OF DELIRIUM

- Dehydration
- Sensory impairment
- Metabolic disorders
- Pain
- Emotional distress
- Social isolation
- Electrolyte imbalance
- Dementia
- Sleep deprivation
- Neurological conditions
- Severe medical illness
- Diabetes mellitus
- Myocardial infarction
- Thyroid crisis
- Liver or renal failure
- Anesthetic exposure
- Infections
- Hypoxia
- Fever
- Hypothermia
- Trauma
- Surgery
- Drugs and medications

Dementia of the Alzheimer's Type

DAT is a progressive neurological condition characterized by the buildup of proteins in the brain called "plaques" and "tangles." These proteins gradually damage and eventually destroy the nerve cells. Subsequently, it becomes more and more difficult to remember and to perform higher neurocognitive functions such as reasoning and use of language. The loss of memory of recent events may be one of the first difficulties noticed. The person may also become disorientated, be at a loss for a word when speaking, and have increasing difficulty with simple daily tasks such as using the telephone, preparing meals, or managing money.

Although the early signs and symptoms of DAT may vary from person to person, increasing memory loss over time is often the first noticeable symptom. Other common signs include getting stuck for words or having language difficulties; forgetting things (names, dates, places, and people); loss of interest in things of interest previously; difficulty in solving problems or in performing everyday tasks; misplacing things; poor or decreased judgment; changes in mood, behavior, and overall personality; and becoming easily disorientated, even in familiar surroundings.

Although signs and symptoms may vary in patients with DAT, often progressive memory loss is noticed first.

Dementia With Lewy Bodies

Dementia with Lewy bodies, which accounts for approximately 20% of all causes of dementia, is characterized by: progressive decline in neurocognitive functioning, drowsiness, lethargy, lengthy periods of time spent staring into space, disorganized speech, visual hallucinations, delusions, and motor symptoms including muscle rigidity and the loss of spontaneous movement. These latter features may result in falls. Depression is also common. This type of dementia results from the buildup of Lewy bodies (accumulated bits of alpha-synuclein protein) inside the nuclei of neurons in areas of the brain that control particular aspects of memory and movement. Although the reasons for this buildup are unknown, what is known is that alpha-synuclein accumulation is also linked to Parkinson's disease (another movement disorder). People with dementia with Lewy bodies usually have no known family history of the disease. Average survival after the time of diagnosis is about 8 years, with progressively increasing disability (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke [NINDS], 2010a).

Dementia of the Vascular Type

Dementia of the vascular type, also called vascular dementia, is caused by multiple mini strokes that lead to a disruption in blood flow to the brain. This disruption results in damaged brain tissue and subsequent loss of function. Some of these strokes may occur without noticeable clinical symptoms and hence are often termed as "silent strokes." The onset of dementia of the vascular type is insidious. Thus, the person experiencing these mini strokes is unlikely to know that anything is wrong initially. With time, and as more areas of the brain are damaged and more small blood vessels are blocked, the symptoms become apparent. In some instances, however, the onset of symptoms may be sudden and may progress in a stepwise fashion, unlike the downward linear progression of DAT. Common presenting symptoms include: confusion, short-term memory deficits; wandering, getting lost in familiar places; rapid, shuffling gait; loss of bladder or bowel control; laughing or crying inappropriately; difficulty following instructions; and problems counting money and making monetary transactions. Unfortunately, the prognosis for those who have dementia of the vascular type is generally poor, thus emphasizing the importance of early life prevention. Although some people may appear to improve for short periods, resulting in episodes of lucidity, this is often followed by further decline when the individual has another stroke, thus the stepwise nature of the disease progression (NINDS, 2010b). Typically, individuals die from one of these strokes or from an associated heart disease. Thus, life expectancy with this type of dementia is typically shorter than for other forms of dementia.

Frontotemporal Dementia

Frontotemporal dementia is characterized by changes in the frontal and temporal lobes of the brain that control reasoning, personality, social behavior, and speech. This type of dementia was originally known as Pick's disease because of the intracytoplasmic inclusions (Pick bodies) that are found in the neurons of those with the disease. The term *Pick's disease* is now more commonly used in discussing the specific pathology involved in the clinical syndrome now known as frontotemporal lobar degeneration. Typically, a person with this type of dementia presents with two groups of symptoms: behavioral changes and problems with language. The behaviors involved are often antisocial in nature, including loss of social tact, inappropriate sexual behavior, lack of empathy, or lack of insight. Language problems include difficulty in understanding speech or articulating what one wants to say. Frontotemporal dementia has a strong genetic component and runs in families (NINDS, 2010c). Unlike other major dementias, memory remains intact.

Frontotemporal dementia is manifested by changes in behavior and language.

ETIOLOGY

The majority of research addressing delirium and dementia focuses on the neurobiological influences for the disease. As stated earlier, delirium almost always results from a physiological disturbance that is a direct result of an underlying general medical condition. The neurobiological influences for the development of DAT are presented here.

Neurobiological Influences

The progressive brain dysfunction that characterizes DAT occurs in a staged biological sequence beginning with neuronal injury, leading to synaptic failure, and, in time, neuronal death (Nelson et al., 2012; Silvestrelli, Lanari, Parnetti, Tomassoni, & Amenta, 2006). Initially, **NEUROFIBRILLARY TANGLES** occur at various parts of the cerebral cortex. These tangles are thick clots of protein that reside inside damaged neurons and are made from a protein called tau (τ). They spread in a sequential and generally predictable manner to other parts of the cortex.

The neurofibrils become entangled for as yet unknown reasons. In general, the denser these filaments are, the more severe the dementia is (Nelson et al., 2012).

The neurofibrillary tangle process typically begins in the limbic system, an area of the brain concerned with emotion and memory storage. The hippocampus, one part of the

limbic system, is primarily involved in the storage of recent memories, which may explain why recent memory loss is a common feature of this type of dementia. Moreover, damage to the locus ceruleus and associated parts of the limbic system may help explain why depression is a common feature of the disease. Deterioration of long-term memory tends to be delayed, probably because these memories are stored in a number of areas of the brain (Garand, Buckwalter, & Hall, 2000; Serrano-Pozo, Frosch, Masliah, & Hyman, 2011).

Later in the disease another major pathological feature appears. Cerebral beta-amyloid (Aβ) plaques form on the outside of dead and damaged neurons, initially in poorly myelinated areas of the cortex. The plaques consist of fragments of dying cells mixed with Aβ protein. It appears that Aβ plaque enters the mitochondria of affected neurons wherein it interacts with a number of enzymes resulting in cell death. Some evidence suggests that inflammation around these Aβ plaques spreads to other neurons in the vicinity, leading to their destruction (Cummings, 2004; Nelson et al., 2012). Aβ protein is made from amyloid precursor protein (APP), which is coded on chromosome 21. Individuals with Down's syndrome have an extra copy of this chromosome, thus increasing their risk of developing dementia. Indeed, almost three quarters of people with this condition who are older than 60 years of age have dementia.

A second protein, apolipoprotein E (Apo-E), is also implicated in the pathology of DAT. Apo-E plays a role in the transportation of cholesterol in the brain. Among the effects of Apo-E is the deposition of cerebral amyloid in the brain. Certain subtypes of Apo-E, specifically Apo-E3 and Apo-E4, have been found to increase the risk of dementia. However, Apo-E2 has been shown to decrease the risk.

A further feature of the etiology of DAT involves a deficiency of the neurotransmitter, acetylcholine (ACh), first discovered in the 1970s. ACh is manufactured in the brain from choline and acetyl coenzyme A in the presence of the enzyme choline-acetyl transferase (ChAT). Another enzyme, cholinesterase (ChE), "mops up" excess ACh at the synapse after neurotransmission has occurred. Studies have shown a deficiency in both ACh and ChAT and an excess of ChE in people with DAT. This has become known as the "cholinergic hypothesis." Essentially, the cholinergic hypothesis suggests that "cognitive, functional, and behavioral dysfunction associated with DAT may be caused by an inability to transmit nerve cell impulses across cholinergic synapses" (Silvestrelli et al., 2006, p. 150). ACh increases attention span and facilitates learning. Furthermore, depletion of ACh has also been shown to result in memory impairment.

Although other neurotransmitters are also implicated in the etiology of Alzheimer's, the cholinergic hypothesis has been most prominent in this area of research. Other neurotransmitters have been studied. For example, serotonin (5-HT) is also decreased in patients with DAT, leading to anxiety, agitation, and depression. Low levels of dopamine have also been observed, which may result in problems with mobility, psychosis, and apathy (Garand et al., 2000; Strac, Muck-Seler, & Pivac, 2015). In time, the destructive processes involved in this type of dementia spread to all parts of the brain, resulting in a wide variety of symptoms. In later stages of the disease, gross anatomical changes such as brain atrophy, enlarged ventricles, and widened sulky become apparent using neuroimaging techniques.

Pathological changes involved with DAT include neurofibrillary tangles, Aβ plaques, and Apo-E. ACh deficiency, referred to as the cholinergic hypothesis, is also implicated in the etiology of DAT. Other neurotransmitters, such as a deficiency of serotonin and dopamine, also may be involved.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Various treatment options are available for patients with neurocognitive disorders, specifically dementia. These include but are not limited to: psychopharmacology, reality orientation, validation therapy, reminiscence therapy, person-centered care, the enriched model of dementia, and the progressively lowered stress threshold (PLST) model. The focus of the discussion here is on DAT. **Table 16-2** summarizes the major treatment options for the other types of dementia.

Treatment for delirium differs somewhat from that for dementia. With delirium, the main approach to treatment is the rapid identification and elimination or management of the cause, as well as symptomatic treatment until the person's condition stabilizes. In cases where the person's behavior is very disturbed, a low-dose antipsychotic or a benzodiazepine is useful in the short-term management of psychosis associated with delirium (Boyle & Hands, 2009). In addition, management also involves a low-stimulus environment, adequate hydration, normalization of the sleep-wake cycle, and the use of reality orientation.

Psychopharmacology

Currently, there is no known cure for DAT or other related dementias. However, some drugs have been developed that have been shown to slow the progression of the disease.

TABLE 16-2: TREATMENT FOR DEMENTIAS OTHER THAN DAT

TYPE OF DEMENTIA	TREATMENT OPTIONS
Dementia of Lewy bodies	Management of psychiatric, behavioral, and motor symptoms Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (donepezil and rivastigmine) for cognitive symptoms; also helpful for psychiatric and motor symptoms Antipsychotic agents for hallucinatory symptoms are avoided due to risk of neuroleptic sensitivity worsening motor symptoms
Dementia of the vascular type	Alleviation of symptoms Prevention of future mini strokes through dietary and lifestyle measures: • Smoking cessation • Hypertension control • Cholesterol lowering • Diabetes management • Regular exercise • Maintenance of healthy body weight (Nazarko, 2006)
Frontotemporal dementia	Behavior modification (some success) Antidepressant agents to manage some behavioral symptoms

DAT, dementia of the Alzheimer's type.

Cholinesterase Inhibitors

Most of the drugs that have been approved for clinical practice focus on the cholinergic hypothesis. They attempt to boost the remaining activity at cholinergic synapses. Although a number of agents have the ability to do this, only cholinesterase inhibitors are currently licensed for use. These drugs delay the degradation of ACh at the synapse, theoretically prolonging its effect at this site and thus augmenting neurotransmission. Three such drugs are currently in use: donepezil (Aricept), rivastigmine (Exelon), and galantamine (Reminyl). These drugs, listed in **Drug Summary 16-1**, are used mainly in patients with mild to moderate DAT. Donepezil has also been approved for use in moderate to severe DAT. Although these drugs may enhance neurocognitive functioning in some patients, they do not alter the overall course of the disease.

A fourth drug, memantine (Namenda), is an *N*-methyl d-aspartate (NMDA) antagonist. NMDA receptor antagonists are a class of drugs that work to inhibit the action of the NMDA receptor. This drug has been developed for the treatment of people with moderate to severe dementia. It acts with a novel mechanism of action that targets glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter in the brain. Excessive activity of this neurotransmitter (excitotoxicity) has been shown to result in neuronal damage, neuronal cell death, and cognitive dysfunction. The drug acts to reduce this glutamatergic excitotoxicity. Recent research also suggests that memantine diminishes the toxic effects of Aβ and that it may also inhibit its production (Annweiler, Brugg, Peyrin, Bartha, & Beauchet, 2014; Silvestrelli et al., 2006).

Given the different mechanism of action of memantine and cholinesterase inhibitors, trials are underway to determine the effect of coadministration of memantine and cholinesterase inhibitors. Early findings suggest greater improvement in behavior, cognition, and activities of daily living (ADLs) in individuals receiving memantine and a cholinesterase inhibitor than those receiving either one alone (Matsunaga, Kishi, & Iwata, 2015).

Cholinesterase inhibitors are used to treat DAT. These agents do not cure the disease; rather, they are believed to help slow the progression of cognitive decline.

Antioxidants

Free radicals are known to play a role in the aging process and, in particular, have been implicated in the etiology of some forms of dementia, including DAT. Antioxidants act as free radical scavengers and, among other things, appear to protect neurons from the damaging effects of Aβ. Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) and melatonin are powerful natural antioxidants.

Hormone Replacement Therapy

The incidence of DAT is particularly low in postmenopausal women who take estrogen. Therefore, some authorities recommend estrogen therapy as a protective mechanism against this type of dementia.

DRUG SUMMARY 16-1: DRUGS USED TO TREAT DEMENTIAS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
CHOLINESTERASE INHIBITORS	
donepezil (Aricept) rivastigmine (Exelon) galantamine (Reminyl)	■ Explain to the patient and family that the drug does not cure the disorder but rather works to control the symptoms ■ Emphasize the need to take the drug as prescribed; for example, advise the patient and family to administer donepezil at bedtime or advise the patient and family to take or give rivastigmine or galantamine in the morning and evening with food ■ Instruct the patient and family about dosage increases that may be necessary to promote maximum effectiveness ■ Assist the patient and family with measures to combat nausea and vomiting ■ Encourage the patient and family to check with the health care provider before taking any over-the-counter medications for colds or sleep that may interact with the drug ■ Work with the patient and family on ways to promote optimal cognitive function within the limits of the patient's disease ■ Emphasize that changes in cognition function are often subtle
NMDA ANTAGONIST	
memantine (Namenda)	■ Explain to the patient and family that the drug does not cure the disorder but rather works to control the symptoms ■ Emphasize the need to take the drug as prescribed ■ Encourage the patient and family to check with the health care provider before taking any over-the-counter medications or herbal preparations as these may interact with the drug ■ Work with the patient and family on ways to promote optimal cognitive function within the limits of the patient's disease ■ Instruct the patient and family in how to use the oral solution form

NMDA, N-methyl-d-aspartate.

Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs

Epidemiological evidence suggests that people who are on long-term nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) treatment, such as ibuprofen and naproxen sodium, seem to be protected in some way from developing DAT. It may be that NSAIDs, particularly those that target cyclooxygenase-1, inhibit inflammation around Aβ plaques, thus preventing this inflammatory process from affecting other neurons in the vicinity (Kumar, Singh, & Ekavali, 2015).

Lipid-Lowering Agents

Cholesterol has been implicated in the etiology of both DAT and vascular dementia for many years now. The understanding of the role of Apo-E further reinforces this

belief. The Apo-E gene provides instructions for making a protein called apolipoprotein E. This protein combines with fats (lipids) in the body to form molecules called lipoproteins. As a result, drugs such as statins and other cholesterol-lowering agents have become a major component of therapy as they have been shown to decrease the risk of developing DAT.

Other Agents

In addition to the above, the benefits of omega-3 fish oil, lecithin for those taking niacin, selegiline, and dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), to name but a few, are now established and are recommended by some authorities as agents for the prevention and treatment of dementia. Some interesting research is underway on the potential benefits of anti-amyloid pharmacotherapies, immunotherapy, substances that target mitochondrial dysfunction, and anti-apoptosis compounds.

Herbal Remedies

For millennia, traditional herbal medicine has offered many plant-based remedies to treat age-related conditions including dementias. Some of these have been used with varying levels of success. Although the pharmacology underpinning many of these compounds has yet to be established, some compounds have been researched and their pharmacology has been validated. However, little evidence is available at the present time about their clinical application and utility. Nevertheless, a few exceptions exist, including ginkgo biloba extracts, some species of the herb sage (salvia), and the plant extracts galantamine and huperzine A. Many of these extracts inhibit cholinesterase and are antioxidant in nature. Ginko biloba enhances cerebral circulation.

Reality Orientation

REALITY ORIENTATION is a technique used to improve the quality of life of confused older adults by assisting them to gain a more accurate understanding of their surroundings. In this approach, people who are confused are regularly presented with information about time, place, and person in an effort to orientate them to the here and now. It is based on the assumption that people who are disorientated can return to the present if given sufficient information. The technique often entails the use of signs on bathroom and bedroom doors, for example, or the use of a reality orientation board displaying large-faced clocks and notices indicating the day, date, year, and so on. In addition, staff using this approach consistently orient the confused individual to his or her surroundings. However, evidence supporting the benefits of this therapy for people with dementia is mixed. Some suggest that it contradicts the person's "reality" and thus increases frustration, anxiety, and anger (Haberstroh, Hampel, & Pantel, 2010). Another view is that reality orientation works well with people who are temporarily confused, such as those who are suffering from delirium or concussion, or who are experiencing disorientation as a result of relocation. However, it is of limited utility in dementia except perhaps in the early stages of the disease (Smith & Buckwalter, 2005).

Validation Therapy

VALIDATION THERAPY is one of the most popular psychosocial interventions for people with dementia. It is based on a number of principles, including the affirmation of the person's feelings and the adoption of a nonjudgmental approach on the part of the caregiver. It was developed by Feil in the 1960s (Feil, 1967) and four stages of cognitive impairment are featured in her work: malorientation, time confusion, repetitive motion, and vegetation (Feil, 1992). Feil proposes that the disorientation observed in many people with dementia is a defense mechanism that may be a solution to past conflicts in their lives. Essentially, according to the theory, the person with dementia retreats into the past to resolve painful emotions. Therefore, validating the person's reality can assist him or her in resolving some of these past conflicts. Thus, the emphasis is on going with the person to his or her reality (Feil, 1992). This would mean allowing the person to express emotions such as anger or sadness and then validating that emotion.

Traditionally, many lay and professional caregivers have been taught to use principles of reality orientation. However, some, such as Woods (2014), suggest that validation therapy principles are more useful. The person with dementia has a deteriorating short-term memory. Thus, it is difficult, if not impossible, for that person to be in the here and now. Recent memories are not as firmly established in the brain. Once the dementia has started to progress, it becomes increasingly difficult for the person to remember what he or she has just been told or what has happened in the immediate past because the person no longer has the ability to retain this information. Long-term memories, on the other hand, appear to be stored in a number of places in the brain and are likely to survive longer after the dementia has been established. Hence, the person with dementia is often able to talk at length and in great detail about events that occurred in the distant past. If reality orientation principles are used, the person with dementia is likely to fail or be unsuccessful because the brain no longer has the capacity to allow him or her to remember enough about the present. It cannot adequately store memories of the present and recent events. This may lead to anxiety and frustration and, consequently may result in deterioration of behavior.

On the other hand, because people with dementia generally have a more intact long-term memory, they can remain competent and be successful if caregivers go with them to "their reality" through the use of reminiscence therapies, for example. Although the experience can be "validating," reminiscence therapy is separate from validation therapy.

Validation therapy focuses on the premise that past conflicts can be resolved by validating the person's reality.

Reminiscence Therapy

REMINISCENCE THERAPY involves the discussion of past activities, events, and experiences with another person or group of people. Aids such as videos, pictures, archives, and life story books often are used (Subramaniam & Woods, 2012). It can be formal or informal, using either an individual or group approach. Formal reminiscence is a structured activity. The caregiver schedules a reminiscence session in which the patient is prompted to recollect past events and memories. Informal reminiscence, on the other hand, is opportunistic. The caregiver engages the patient in discussion of past events or experiences, for example, after watching an old film or when the caregiver discovers the patient is perusing old family photographs (Hong & Song, 2009). A systematic review of studies on reminiscence therapy (Subramaniam & Woods, 2012) revealed an association among individual reminiscence work and psychosocial benefits, cognition, and well-being.

Reminiscence therapy can be formal, using a structured activity, or informal, using a specific event to stimulate discussion of past events.

Person-Centered Care

The term *person-centered care* is used in many different contexts in health care and can mean different things to different people. Some people equate it to the individualization of care, whereas others see it as a philosophical approach with a particular value base. Still others see it as a set of techniques to assist those who work with people with dementia (Brooker & Surr, 2005). Regardless of the definition, person-centered care is seen as an approach to delivering high-quality care. However, it can only do so if the recipient of care is placed at the heart of the care agenda (Edvardsson, Winblad, & Sandman, 2008). The Bradford Dementia Group, established in 1992, is a multidisciplinary, multiprofessional group committed to making a difference to policy and practice in dementia care, through excellence in research, education, and training. They offer a comprehensive definition of person-centered care as it relates to caring for people with dementia. This definition emphasizes "respecting and valuing the individual as a full member of society" and recognizing that they have "all the rights of citizenship." It focuses on rooting out discriminatory practices against people with dementia and their caregivers and on individualizing a plan of care that "is in tune with people's changing needs giving increasing compensation and reassurance as cognitive disability increases." The need to try to understand the perspective of the person with dementia and the importance of providing a supportive social psychology (explained in the following) are also enshrined in the definition, as these are key to ensuring that the person can "live a life where they can experience relative well-being" (Brooker & Surr, 2005, p. 13).

A number of models exist that help one understand key aspects of dementia from a psychodynamic perspective and help to ensure that the care of the person with dementia is person centered. In particular, these models help explain many of the behaviors in dementia, emphasizing that these behaviors are not just a result of the person's neurological impairment. Two such models are Kitwood's Enriched Model of Dementia and the PLST Model.

Kitwood's Enriched Model of Dementia

Kitwood's **ENRICHED MODEL OF DEMENTIA** acknowledges that the primary cause of problems for the person with dementia stems from the person's neurological impairment. It also argues that other factors play a role in determining how the person with dementia lives with his or her illness. These factors include the person's level of health and physical fitness, life history, personality, and social psychology. The model suggests that it is the complex interplay among these factors plus the person's degree of neurological impairment that determines how dementia affects the way the person lives.

The inspiration for the model arose from Kitwood's observation that some people with dementia who had considerable neurological impairment seemed to function better and have a better quality of life than others who had a lesser degree of neurological impairment. Kitwood hypothesized that the social and psychological environment in which the person with dementia lives could be supportive or damaging to his or her well-being. He used the term "**MALIGNANT SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY**" to describe the damaging effects of the negative attitudes and prejudices of other people on someone's personhood. He uses an opposite term, "**POSITIVE PERSON WORK**," to describe how

one could uphold the personhood of an individual with dementia. These are outlined in **Table 16-3**. The goal when working with this model is to maximize interventions that incorporate aspects of positive person work and minimize those that lead to malignant social psychology.

The Enriched Model of Dementia focuses on minimizing the damaging negative social and psychological environment (termed "malignant social psychology") and maximizing the supportive aspects (termed "positive person work").

The PLST Model

The **PROGRESSIVELY LOWERED STRESS THRESHOLD (PLST)** model proposes that a person has a stress threshold firmly established by adulthood but that can be temporarily altered during times of illness, or permanently altered during episodes of brain damage such as in dementia. Normally, adults have a relatively high threshold to stress. People with dementia, however, have a diminished ability to interact with their environment. They find things in their environment confusing because their brain is no longer able to process information accurately. Consequently, they have a heightened potential for anxiety and dysfunctional behavior. As a result, their stress threshold is lower. The model proposes that "persons with dementia need environmental conditions modified as they experience progressive cognitive decline so that cues can be more easily processed and are thus less stressful" (Smith, Gerdner, Hall, & Buckwalter, 2004, p. 1756).

The principles underpinning this model have been adapted to form the PLST intervention for lay caregivers. The main focus is on the caregiver modifying the home environment to accommodate the care recipient's diminishing stress threshold. Some of the key stressors identified by the model are fatigue; multiple competing stimuli or too many things going on at once (such as eating dinner, receiving medicines, background music playing, and visitors calling all at once); illness; side effects of medicines; and changes in caregiver, routine, or environment. The model recommends that caregivers:

- *Establish simple routines and stick to them*
- *Assess stressors in the person's environment on an ongoing basis*
- *Eliminate or modify environmental stressors to make the world appear less stressful*

According to this model the caregiver needs to take immediate action if the patient exhibits key warning signs indicating that he or she is reaching the stress threshold. These signs include anxiety, agitation, and avoidance or escape behaviors. Actions to initiate include promoting rest, decreasing stimuli (such as noise, too many people, television, or radio), and assessing for and eliminating internal stressors such as hunger, pain, or constipation.

The PLST intervention has been shown to significantly benefit individuals with dementia and their family caregivers. Findings reveal improved patient behavior (Gerdner, Buckwalter, & Reed, 2002); reduced caregiver

TABLE 16-3: FACTORS THAT SUPPORT OR DENY PERSONHOOD

TYPES OF MALIGNANT SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY	TYPES OF POSITIVE PERSON WORK
• Intimidation	• Warmth
• Withholding	• Holding
• Outpacing	• Relaxed pace
• Infertilization	• Respect
• Labeling	• Acceptance
• Disparagement	• Celebration
• Accusation	• Acknowledgment
• Treachery	• Genuineness
• Invalidation	• Validation
• Disempowerment	• Empowerment
• Imposition	• Facilitation
• Disruption	• Enabling
• Objectification	• Collaboration
• Stigmatization	• Recognition
• Ignoring	• Including
• Banishment	• Belonging
• Mockery	• Fun

Source: Brooker (2007).

depression (Buckwalter et al., 1999); decreased caregiver burden, increased caregiver satisfaction (Stolley, Reed, & Buckwalter, 2002); and improved caregiver immune function (Garand et al., 2002). Originally developed for one-on-one delivery, Tyrrell (2014) adapted the PLST intervention for delivery to groups of family caregivers. Using the same content, Tyrrell demonstrated that group delivery of the PLST intervention reduced both informal caregiver level of burden and symptoms of depression. In addition, family caregivers find the care strategies to be logical and easy to implement when caring for the family member with dementia. Meeting with other family caregivers is being shown to be both a source of support and a valuable social outlet.

A person with dementia experiences a diminished stress threshold. The PLST model focuses on modifying the environment to reduce stress for the patient with dementia who is nearing his or her stress threshold.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Patients with neurocognitive disorders may be seen in a variety of settings, such as acute care settings, day hospitalization programs, community and outpatient centers, long-term care facilities, and the home. Many individuals have underlying medical comorbidities such as diabetes or cardiovascular or respiratory disorders. As a result, patients often can be encountered in general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with neurocognitive disorders. The information provided here focuses on the patient with dementia. **Plan of Care 16-1** provides an example of a patient with a neurocognitive disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

Therapeutic use of self is recognized as an important therapeutic tool and a core skill of the psychiatric-mental health nurse. It involves a planned interaction with another person to alleviate fear or anxiety, provide reassurance, obtain necessary information, provide information, give advice, and assist the other individual to gain more appreciation, more expression, and more functional use of his or her latent inner resources.

At the onset of the relationship, the nurse and patient meet for the first time. Due to the neurocognitive difficulties involved with dementia, in most cases the nurse will also be developing the relationship with the patient's family members or caregivers. Regardless of who is involved, all are strangers to each other. The nurse can also be viewed as an authority figure for the patient. The nurse is responsible for beginning to establish trust and rapport with the patient and family. This can be done by showing concern, empathy, and honesty. Pay attention to verbal and nonverbal cues and use therapeutic verbal techniques. Be alert to the possible issues and problems associated with patients experiencing a neurocognitive disorder and the impact on their families. **Consumer Perspective 16-1** provides insight from the wife of a patient with DAT.

Self-Awareness

To develop an effective therapeutic relationship, the nurse also must be self-aware of attitudes, beliefs, prejudices, or philosophical stances that could interfere in the relationship with a patient (Edwards & Bess, 1998). Working with a patient with dementia can be frustrating due to the demand for time. During a busy shift, having someone follow you around asking the same questions over and over can be taxing. The nurse needs to monitor his or her own frustration level and ask for assistance when needed. The nurse also needs to monitor his or her own feelings of transference if someone in the nurse's own family is also suffering from dementia.

Environmental Management

Providing a safe, comfortable environment with minimal external stimulation is necessary to establish an atmosphere of trust. Minimizing stimulation and external stressors also are key to preventing the patient from becoming overwhelmed.

Once trust is established, the nurse must provide an assessment whereby the patient feels that there is genuine interest, acceptance, and positive regard. This is accomplished primarily through therapeutic communication techniques including restating, reflecting, and clarifying. (See Chapter 3 for more information on therapeutic communication.)

Data Collection

In the assessment phase, data are collected and documented using observation and interview on all aspects of the patient's illness. Occasionally, assessment scales are used to evaluate the patient's status. Typically in dementia, assessment tools or scales are used to assess a patient's cognitive

PLAN OF CARE 16-1: THE PATIENT WITH A NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Chronic confusion; related to neurological changes; manifested by memory impairment, disorganized thinking, and impaired judgment

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate adequate level of orientation and mental function within the limits of the disorder

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess patient's neurological status	Assessing neurological status provides information about the degree and extent of the patient's level of confusion
Approach the patient calmly and from the front; address the patient by name; speak directly to the patient using a normal tone of voice	Approaching the patient calmly, from the front, and speaking directly to the patient helps the patient to focus on the nurse and on what is being said. Calling the patient by name helps to reorient the patient
Orient the patient to person, place, and time; reinforce and repeat information as necessary	Orienting the patient and reinforcing the information helps to refocus and reorient the patient
Use environmental cues as appropriate; provide cues to current events, seasons, locations, and names; consider using symbols instead of written signs for key locations such as the bathroom	Using cues—whether words or symbols—helps stimulate the patient's memory and assists in reorienting the patient
Provide a low-stimulus environment; eliminate competing stimuli; keep decorative changes in the home to a minimum	Controlling environmental stimuli promotes feelings of security and prevents overwhelming the patient, which could lead to increased anxiety and agitation
Provide ample time for responding to questions; do not pressure the patient to respond or assume that no response indicates lack of understanding	Allowing for ample time in responding is necessary because of the patient's diminished cognitive ability; pressuring can lead to frustration and possible agitation
Use simple, straightforward language when communicating with the patient; break tasks and activities down into simple steps	Using simple language and simple steps prevents overwhelming the patient, thus minimizing frustration and stress
Administer prescribed medications for symptomatic control	Administering medication such as that for Alzheimer's disease can slow the progression of the disease; other medications may be needed to address agitation or inability to sleep

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 16-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for injury; related to neurocognitive impairment, impaired judgment, and wandering behavior

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will remain free of harm

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Institute safety measures and fall precautions	Instituting safety measures reduces the risk of injury and falls
Arrange the environment so that it is free of obstacles and allows for ease of access and ambulation	Ensuring that the environment is free of obstacles reduces the risk for injury from falls
Work with patient and family to address potential hazards in the home, such as removing loose rugs, putting locks on windows and/or doors, adjusting the thermostat on the water heater, putting safety guards on electrical outlets, and removing knobs from stove and oven	Identifying potential hazards allows for action to reduce possible effects
Teach family members about ways to help reorient the patient; suggest the use of environmental cues	Teaching the family about ways to help the patient fosters participation in care
Encourage family to maintain consistency in caregivers and routines as much as possible	Maintaining consistency helps promote feelings of comfort and familiarity and decrease stimulation
Suggest the use of protective or adaptive devices if the patient wanders; suggest providing boundaries such as tape on the floor in front of an exit or disguising an exit with drapes or wall hangings	Using protective or adaptive devices can alert the family to the patient's movement; using boundaries acts as cues to stall the patient's movement
Ensure that emergency telephone numbers are readily available	Ensuring ready access to phone numbers is crucial if an emergency arises

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 16-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for caregiver role strain; related to progression of the disease and increased care needs/demands of client

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Caregiver will verbalize a need for help in providing care to patient to maintain own health and well-being

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the level of care required and the caregiver's knowledge and ability to provide care	Assessing the level of care needed and the caregiver's ability to provide that level of care provides a baseline for individualizing interventions
Assist the caregiver in identifying areas of needed help or support	Identifying areas of need ensures provision of appropriate services
Encourage the caregiver to ask for help; investigate sources for help as appropriate, such as other family members, friends, neighbors, church or organization members; provide emotional support	Determining potential sources for support enhances the chances that the caregiver will use them
Teach the caregiver how to manage stress and maintain physical and mental well-being; encourage the caregiver to take breaks periodically to address personal care needs	Managing stress and taking periodic breaks help to reduce anxiety and stress associated with caregiving
Provide positive feedback and emotional support for caregiving activities	Providing support and positive feedback promotes feelings of accomplishment and positive self-esteem even if setbacks occur
Refer the patient and caregiver for community support services as appropriate; arrange for respite care as indicated	Arranging for additional support and/or respite care provides time for the caregiver to recover without feeling guilty and minimizes the risk for social isolation from full-time caregiving activities

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 16-1: A WIFE'S VIEW

Hello, my name is Ethel. My husband David and I have been married for 55 years now and we have two grown-up children, both of whom live a considerable distance from our home. I would say that overall, our marriage was a very happy one and David was always caring and kind—I suppose you could say a perfect husband! Sadly, that has all changed in the past 3 years. David was diagnosed with probable DAT 6 months ago but I now realize that many of the signs were there for at least a year before that. I thought he was just becoming a little forgetful and that that was normal for an 88-year-old. What really upset me, however, was that he has become very selfish and seems to be unaware of my needs and feelings. He was never like that, always caring and kind. Lately, he has started to wander about the house at night. When I ask him what he is doing, he says that his father is calling to take him to the cinema and he must not be late. His father has been dead for more than 30 years! I have tried telling David that and tried to get him to come back to bed; however, this just makes him angry. I'm a little scared now that he might hurt me—he pushed me last week when I confronted him. He was never like that. I'm really upset and find that I am getting tearful when I think about what is happening to us. Our family doctor gave us a referral to our local branch of the Alzheimer's Society. I didn't want to trouble them by telephoning—they are busy people; I'm sure others are more needy. Maybe I will give them a call though. I do feel that I need help. I'm at my wit's end trying to cope at the moment.

and functional capacity as well as any behavioral features that are present. The Mini Mental State Exam (MMSE; Folstein, Folstein, & McHugh, 1975) is a commonly used assessment tool to determine a patient's cognitive status. The Katz Index (Katz, Ford, Moskowitz, Jackson, & Jaffe, 1963) and the Revised Memory and Behavior Problems Checklist (RMBPC; Teri et al., 1992) are useful in assessing functional capacity and behaviors, respectively.

Data collection must also include the family and other caregivers. Due to the nature of neurocognitive impairments and the specific perceptual and communication limitations associated with dementia, the patient is often unable to provide sufficient data. Consequently, the nurse and the other team members must rely on data from key informants such as family members and other caregivers. Information also is obtained from friends, health records, and other health care professionals. In such situations, the nurse must be mindful of the need to corroborate information from several sources because secondary sources such as these are not always accurate. Nevertheless, despite these limitations, it is imperative that the nurse makes every effort to genuinely involve the patient in the assessment process. Patients in the early stages of dementia often retain enough ability to contribute to this assessment process in a meaningful way.

Important information to gather during the assessment includes information related to:

- *General appearance and behavior*
- *Mood and affect*
- *Thought processes and thought content (abstract thinking, perception, organization, delusions, hallucinations)*
- *Intellectual processes (memory [recent and long term], attention span)*
- *Reasoning, judgment, and insight (decision-making ability)*
- *Self-concept*
- *Participation in usual roles*
- *Self-care capabilities*

Assessment of a patient with dementia requires patient, family, and caregiver involvement to ensure that enough information is collected to develop a complete picture of the patient's status.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Once a full assessment is completed, the nurse, the patient, and the family proceed to develop a plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. The nurse collaborates with the patient and the family to identify their needs and specific problems and then begins a plan for care (Peplau, 1991). Focusing on the patient's strengths identified

in the assessment stage is key when planning interventions. Doing so will also allow for an increased sense of collaboration on the part of the patient and family. Patient care needs are addressed in order of priority, and goals that are realistic and achievable are established. The nurse ensures that appropriate evidence-based interventions feature in the plan. Therefore, it is imperative that the nurse remains up to date with literature relevant to his or her field of practice. **Evidence-Based Practice 16-1** summarizes a study about methods to decrease wandering in patients with DAT.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 16-1: FAMILIAR ENVIRONMENT AND WANDERING

STUDY

Hong, G. R., & Song, J. A. (2009). Relationship between familiar environment and wandering behaviour among Korean elders with dementia. *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 18*(9), 1365–1373.

SUMMARY

The researchers in this study hypothesized that establishing a familiar environment would decrease purposeless wandering in a community in which people with dementia reside. They used a descriptive cross-sectional survey design and a convenience sample of 77 noninstitutionalized, community-dwelling persons with dementia and their family caregivers in Seoul and Wonju, South Korea. The researchers explored the relationship between wandering behavior and familiar environment in this cohort. Data were analyzed using *t*-tests and multiple regression analysis. The results indicated that providing persons with dementia with a familiar feeling in daily clinical practice through the establishment of a familiar physical as well as psychosocial environment may assist in decreasing wandering behavior.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Behavioral and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) are common in patients with DAT. Estimates suggest that more than 90% of people exhibit these behaviors at some time during their illness (Boustani & Ham, 2007). Furthermore, BPSD are documented as perhaps the greatest source of stress for both formal and informal dementia caregivers (Fauth, Zarit, Femia, Hofer, & Stephens, 2006). Among the most troublesome of these behaviors is purposeless wandering. The research illustrates that familiarity with a physical and psychological environment can be helpful in decreasing wandering behavior. Nurses can implement this measure in any setting. In addition, nurses can educate caregivers about how to establish a familiar environment for the patient. Doing so may help to reduce wandering behavior in patients with dementia, thereby alleviating caregivers' concerns about potential harm that might result from such behavior. The ultimate result could lead to an improved quality of life of persons with dementia and their caregivers.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *What interventions would you include when developing a plan to make a patient's physical environment familiar?*
2. *How would you attempt to familiarize a patient's psychological environment?*
3. *What other areas of research might be appropriate to pursue related to this topic?*

Due to the wide range of assessment findings and multiple problems faced by patients with neurocognitive disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses include:

- *Acute confusion related to altered cognitive function*
- *Chronic confusion related to the disease process*
- *Disturbed sleep pattern related to wandering and altered sleep/wake cycle*
- *Risk for injury related to cognitive impairment and wandering behavior*
- *Impaired memory related to cognitive impairment*
- *Caregiver role strain related to demands of caring for parent with dementia*
- *Risk for caregiver role strain related to new diagnosis of parent with dementia*
- *Compromised family coping related to grieving loss of parent functioning*
- *Ineffective role performance related to inability to perform activities of daily living without assistance*
- *Self-care deficit (bathing, dressing, feeding, toileting) related to cognitive impairment*

These nursing diagnoses also will vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, for a patient who was diagnosed with early dementia, the outcome may be that the patient will accept diagnosis as evidenced by use of terms *Alzheimer's* and *dementia* when describing impairments.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

The timing of nursing interventions when caring for someone with dementia is critical. People with dementia are easily fatigued and reach their stress threshold earlier in the day compared with persons who do not have dementia (Hall & Buckwalter, 1987). It is important, therefore, that regular rest periods are built into the person's daily routine (every 90 minutes), and that high stimulus activities are alternated with low-stimulus activities (Smith & Buckwalter, 2005). Therefore, nursing interventions must be spaced appropriately throughout the day.

The activities should occur in a low-stimulus environment with few other stimuli present so that the person can focus on what is being asked and not be distracted. In addition, Smith and Buckwalter (2005) recommend that caregivers observe the patient to determine the best time of the day for that individual. These times can then be used for interventions and aspects of care that are most problematic, such as showering or bathing, foot care, hair care, or shaving. They also recommend that the person with dementia is well rested before these interventions and that some pleasant activity follows afterward.

When planning activities, it is also important that only one care activity or intervention occurs at a time. Otherwise there may be too many stimuli impinging on the person with dementia with resultant negative consequences for behavior (Smith & Buckwalter, 2005). For example, it is unwise to have visitors calling during meal times, or to attempt to administer medications at the same time while the television is on in the room. It is far better to separate these activities to decrease the amount of environmental stimuli, and hence stressors, that are impinging on the person at any given time.

The nurse also must be cognizant of the pacing of activities and interventions. Indeed, outpacing, or providing information and presenting choices at a rate too fast for the person to understand, has been identified by Kitwood as a significant contributor to malignant social psychology, as outlined earlier (Brooker & Surr, 2005). Providing patient-centered care while tailoring activities to the preference of the individual may improve positive affect (Van Haitsma et al., 2015). People with dementia have a decreased ability to process information and hence need more time to respond to questions or instructions. Due to their diminished cognitive capacity, it is harder for their brains to make sense of what is being asked of them and then to select an appropriate response. It is important therefore that nurses give the person adequate time to respond and do not assume that any delays in responding means that the person did not understand the instruction (Smith & Buckwalter, 2005). The nurse must avoid pressuring the patient into responding, getting angry or frustrated at a lack of response, or not waiting for a response. Reactions such as these are not only disrespectful, they may also lead to frustration and/or anger in the person with dementia who may well be trying very hard to find the correct response to what has been asked. It is also important that the nurse speaks slowly, using simple sentences which are unambiguous. **Therapeutic Interaction 16-1** highlights an interaction with a patient experiencing dementia.

As nursing care is implemented, careful documentation is maintained so that the team can establish that the interventions decided on are being delivered, and that this is done in the manner that was intended. Clear documentation is also necessary for consistency of care delivery. If the plan is clearly written, each nurse on the team should be

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 16-1: COMMUNICATING WITH A PATIENT WITH DEMENTIA

George is 88 years old and has had DAT for more than 6 years. Until recently he had been living at home with his wife Alice; however, Alice is no longer able to care for her husband because of her failing health. Eight months ago, George was admitted to St. Raphael's nursing home for long-term care. His short-term memory is particularly poor at present, as is his ability to use and understand language. Samantha, a nurse, has been caring for George over the past 6 months, taking him for a walk on the grounds as part of his daily therapeutic program. Samantha has also noticed recently that he is easily startled when approached by other residents or staff.

Samantha approaches George slowly from the front and stops about 10 feet away. She ensures that George can see her and is making facial contact.	Approaching slowly from the front and allowing adequate personal space is likely to be perceived by George as less threatening. Approaching him hastily from the side is likely to have the opposite effect. Because George's short-term memory is very poor, he easily forgets people he has met before. Addressing him by name tells him that this is someone who knows him and hence decreases any perceived threat.
Samantha: "Hello George, this is Samantha." (adopts an open posture and smiles widely when speaking; also wearing own coat, hat, and scarf)	Introducing oneself by name also conveys respect for George and may help orient him. It is also important to ensure that you have the person's attention before beginning the interaction. In this instance, Samantha did not speak until she was sure that George could see her and that he was looking at her face, indicating that she had his attention. An open posture minimizes threat and risk of the patient becoming startled; adopting a broad smile sends the signal that this is someone friendly and, hence, nonthreatening.
Samantha: "We are going for a walk." (speaks in a slow manner)	People with DAT find it increasingly difficult to process information; hence, the use of simple instructions is more likely to succeed. Avoid pronouns such as "there," "that," "them," "him," "her," and "it." Also avoid sentences that have a number of components or meanings. Speaking slowly increases the chances of being understood.

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 16-1: *(CONT.)*
COMMUNICATING WITH A PATIENT WITH DEMENTIA

Samantha waits patiently for George's reply. (up to 30 seconds)	Again, because of the difficulty with processing information in the brain, people with DAT need more time to make sense of what they have been asked to do, and then to select and communicate an appropriate response. It is important, therefore, to be patient. George may become frustrated if he is rushed into replying within too short a timeframe with resultant negative consequences. In addition, moving at too fast a pace may also be perceived as disrespectful.
Samantha: (repeats previous sentence) "George, we are going for a walk." (holds out George's coat and hat and points at the exit door; waits for his response)	It is important to repeat phrases using the exact same words. Using different words is confusing and has the effect of asking persons with DAT a different question, one that their brain now has to process in addition to the earlier question/instruction. Gestures (holding out his coat and pointing to the exit door) augment the spoken word and have the effect of cueing George to what is being asked of him. Wearing her coat, hat, and scarf while at the same time holding out George's coat and hat may assist in orienting him toward the instruction—that he is going outdoors.

Source: Adapted from Smith and Buckwalter (2005); Kitwood (1997).

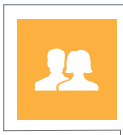
able to deliver care, again, in the manner that was intended by the designer of the plan. Moreover, documentation is also a necessary legal requirement.

Safety Issues

People with dementia lose many abilities over time, among which is their ability to judge what is safe and what is dangerous. Thus, as brain functioning deteriorates, the patient's ability to maintain personal safety diminishes (National Institutes of Health [NIH] and National Institute on Aging [NIA], 2010). They may no longer be able to perceive danger. In addition, they may begin to wander, a common feature of dementia. Thus, if doors are easily opened, the person may wander off and get lost or may get into dangerous situations. Also, with dementia, the person's ability to perceive the world accurately is diminishing. Therefore, patients may misinterpret their surroundings and become fearful of what is happening around them. Environmental safety, both physical and psychological, is a priority. For patients cared for in their homes, caregivers and family members need teaching about how to keep the patient safe and make him or her feel safe. **Patient and Family Education 16-1** highlights some important safety measures to stress with the patient and family.

Environmental Management

In addition to the safety considerations, nursing staff and informal caregivers must also consider other aspects of the environment that need to be managed to achieve an optimal milieu for the person with dementia. A central tenet of Hall and Buckwalter's (1987) PLST model is that caregivers should modify the environment to make it



PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 16-1: MAINTAINING PHYSICAL AND PSYCHOLOGICAL SAFETY

Maintaining physical safety

- Be sure to supervise the person when in the bath to prevent drowning or slips and falls; when shaving to prevent cuts; and when eating and drinking to prevent choking.
- Keep stairs and doors secure. Consider installing a stair gate or door alarms or locks. You may also have to place locks on windows, especially upstairs.
- As the dementia progresses, watch for new safety hazards and keep them under control; for example, the individual may no longer be safe with teapots, stoves, heating appliances, or hot water (faucets, kettles, hot water bottles).
- Keep medicines and household cleaning products in a locked cupboard to avoid poisoning.
- Keep sharp knives or other potentially dangerous objects or materials under lock and key.
- Clean up any spills immediately to avoid slips and falls.
- If the person has used a walking stick or some other object in a threatening way, carefully supervise his or her use of these items.
- Keep car keys in a safe place when the person can no longer safely drive (in case he or she forgets and attempts to drive).
- Keep gas or electric stoves safe; have a control switch installed in a place where the person is unlikely to reach and turn the stove off with this switch each time.
- Keep a careful eye on the person when cooking so that he or she does not spill hot food on himself or herself.
- Consider installing heat sensors beside the stove.
- Keep matches and cigarette lighters in a safe place and be sure you have smoke alarms installed and that they are checked regularly.
- Be sure to lock garden sheds and to keep gardening equipment such as lawnmowers, garden shears, spades, and garden chemicals locked in the shed.
- Establish a predictable daily routine. This eliminates uncertainty and anxiety for the person with dementia.

Maintaining psychological safety of the person with dementia

- Use nonthreatening body postures and movements, and use eye contact when you are speaking to the person. Slow movements, use of smiles, open palms, and a relaxed body posture are perceived as less threatening than quick hurried movements, a grimacing or scowling face, tense posture, and clenched fists.
- Avoid standing too close or standing over the person when he or she is sitting down. Rather, sit in front of the person, allowing enough space. Lean forward a little toward the person and use a gentle touch.
- Use a calm, friendly tone of voice and gentle touch (an arm on the shoulder or holding the hand, for example); these are more likely to make the person with dementia feel safe and less threatened.
- Explain what you are going to do before you move closer to the person. Always address the person by name and tell him or her who you are if he or she is inclined to forget you.
- If the person becomes agitated or upset when you are trying to get him or her to do something, it is probably best to stop and leave the person alone to settle down. It is far better to avoid conflict. Come back in a short while with something the person likes, such as a snack or drink, and do not try to reengage the person in the activity that caused the previous upset unless the patient is clearly more relaxed.

less stressful for the person with dementia. Key points to address include:

- *Provide a low-stimulus environment by eliminating multiple competing stimuli such as radio, television, too many people, and too many things going on at once. Also eliminate overstimulation (crowds, noisy children), understimulation (isolation, boredom, rooms with few decorations and monochromatic colors), and misleading stimuli (television, reflections in mirrors or windows). Remove or cover mirrors if the person becomes agitated or frightened by them.*
- *Keep decorative changes in the home to a minimum; for example, new furniture, changing drapes, new wallpaper, or paint. Also, use minimal decorations at holiday times such as a Christmas tree or menorah.*
- *Avoid changes in caregiver and daily routines, especially when the person becomes more disabled. Consistency in caregivers, care routines, and the physical surroundings are a source of comfort to the person with dementia and gives a sense of security.*
- *Provide cues to current events, seasons, location, and names of people present to assist orientation.*
- *Consider using symbols instead of written signs to key locations such as bathroom, kitchen, or the person's bedroom.*
- *If wandering is a risk, provide boundaries such as red tape on the floor in front of exit doors or disguise with drapes, wall hangings, or wallpaper.*
- *If the person with dementia has to be transferred to a long-term care setting, ensure that personal belongings (and, if possible, items of furniture) accompany him or her in order to have some familiar objects in the new surroundings.*
- *Also consider the person's physical sensations (cold, pain, hunger, thirst), thoughts and beliefs (delusions, visual misinterpretations, and hallucinations), and psychological and emotional needs (boredom, loneliness, or fear).*

Medication Management

Dementia has long been identified as a significant factor in poor medication management among older adults and hence is an issue that needs careful coordination and management (Erlen et al., 2013). In the interests of person-centered care and patient autonomy, however, every effort should be made to allow persons with dementia to manage their own affairs, including their medications, for as long as possible. As the disease progresses, the degree of supervision required to ensure that the person can continue to do this safely will increase. A number of assessment tools exist that can assist in determining the person's competence. One such example is the Medication Administration Test (MAT), an instrument that was developed by Schmidt and Lieto (2005).

Inevitably, however, patient self-medication may no longer be possible. For those patients living in their homes, informal caregivers often assume this responsibility (Erlen et al., 2013). The extent to which these caregivers are successful and comfortable in this regard depends on a number of factors. These include their past experience of medication management, their degree of self-confidence, their level of literacy, the quality of their relationship with the patient, the presence of negative emotional states and cognitive impairment, and physical disability in the caregiver (Lau et al., 2010).

Therefore, a key role of the nurse in coordinating medication management of community-dwelling older adults with dementia is to assess the person's ability to self-medicate, and assess the informal caregivers' suitability to take over this role when the patient can no longer manage. In addition, the nurse plays a pivotal role in educating caregivers about the principles of medication management, key aspects of which are identified in **Patient and Family Education 16-2**.

Caregiver Stress

In addition to the nurse serving as a therapeutic instrument, family caregivers also represent a significant therapeutic force in the care of someone with dementia. Most people with dementia live in the community and are cared for primarily by family members in the home setting. Family caregiving can be stressful, however, and can have significant negative consequences for the caregiver's physical and mental health, especially if they are inadequately supported. It is imperative that family caregivers are adequately prepared for and supported in their caregiving role. **How Would You Respond? 16-1** provides a practical example of the impact of a patient experiencing dementia on a family member.

The caregiver in the home is typically a spouse or other family member (Adelman, Tmanova, Delgado, Dion, & Lachs, 2014). As the patient's disease progresses, many patients develop challenging behaviors such as sleep disturbances, problems with elimination, anxiety and aggression, falls, wandering, and inability to recognize familiar faces. As a result, caregiving becomes very difficult, so much so that the caregivers may jeopardize their ability or inclination to continue with their caregiving role (Nikzad-Terhune, Anderson, Newcomer, & Gaugler, 2010).

Providing care for a family member with dementia can be highly stressful and overwhelming. Family caregivers need to receive adequate preparation and support when caring for the individual.

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 16-2: MEDICATION MANAGEMENT

- Always store the medications in a safe place; be aware of any special requirements such as refrigeration or the need to protect the medication from light.
- Allow the person with dementia to self-medicate for as long as it is safe; if there is a question, have your home care nurse evaluate the patient's ability to do this on a regular basis.
- Follow the prescribed medication plan. Do not make any changes to the person's medication regimen without talking with the patient's primary health care provider.
- Know the names of the medications, when to administer them, and the intended and unwanted effects for each medicine. Be knowledgeable about which side effects to report immediately.
- Know what to do if a dose is missed or an adverse reaction occurs.
- Check to make sure that the patient can swallow; ensure that this is assessed regularly as the disease progresses.
- Ensure that the person has swallowed each medicine; visually inspect the mouth if necessary.
- Do not crush or break medicines or open capsules unless specifically instructed to do so. In cases where the patient is having difficulty swallowing the medicines that are prescribed, consult with the home care nurse, primary health care provider, or pharmacist so that an alternative form of the medicine can be used if available.
- Inform your home care nurse, health care provider, and/or pharmacist if any over-the-counter (OTC) medicines or herbal remedies are being taken.
- Know what to do if the person refuses to take the medication.
- Report any concerns you might have about the amount of medicines the patient is prescribed, especially if you feel this is having a damaging effect.
- Adopt as simple a dosing schedule as possible; using medicine cups, charts, or checklists as necessary to keep track.
- Where possible, use one pharmacy for all prescriptions.

Research has consistently shown that informal caregiving for a relative or friend with DAT can have significant negative consequences on that person's physical, psychoemotional, social, and, indeed, spiritual well-being (Adelman et al., 2014; Schulz, Martire, & Klinger, 2005). To complicate matters further, research has also shown that informal caregivers in this context often feel unsupported and taken for granted (Adelman et al., 2014; Schulz et al., 2005). Thus, interventions to reduce these difficulties associated with caregiving have been the focus of numerous studies over the past two decades (Adelman et al., 2014). **Patient and Family Education 16-3** provides some helpful tips for caregivers to maintain their health.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

In the evaluation phase, the nurse makes a judgment as to whether or not the plan of care is effective. The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care. In addition, plan modification and further assessment needs to be done. Evaluation should be done early and in an ongoing fashion. If not, an ineffective plan of care may be allowed to run its course even though it is not delivering the goals that were

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 16-1: A PATIENT EXPERIENCING DEMENTIA

Catherine is an 84-year-old retired school teacher who lives at home with her husband George. George has contacted the family physician as he is worried about his wife's recent behavior. He reports that she has been becoming forgetful for the past 2 years and initially thought this was just a normal part of aging. Recently, on two occasions George was awakened in the middle of the night by the sound of the kitchen smoke alarm. He also noticed that Catherine was not in bed. On investigation he found an empty saucepan on the stove and the kitchen filling with smoke. After switching off the stove and opening the windows, George searched for his wife, finding her fully dressed wandering about the garden. When he asked Catherine to come back to bed, she insisted that it was daytime and that she had to get ready for work. She also indicated that she did not know who he was and why he was in her home. George tried to further persuade Catherine, but she became very agitated, angry, and began using abusive language toward him, suggesting that he was not her husband and that if he did not leave her house, she would telephone the police. This upset George greatly, as in 52 years of marriage, he had never witnessed any such behavior from his wife. How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

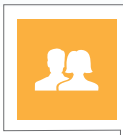
1. *Based on the situation, how does Catherine meet the diagnostic criteria for dementia of the Alzheimer's type?*
2. *What nursing diagnosis would be a priority for Catherine at this time? For her husband?*
3. *What suggestions would be appropriate to include in Catherine's plan of care to lower her stress threshold?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 16-1: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Catherine is exhibiting several cognitive deficits. First, George has noticed a gradual onset of increasing forgetfulness. In addition, she is experiencing agnosia (not recognizing her husband) and disturbances in executive functioning (episodes of leaving an empty saucepan on the stove, insisting that it was daytime, and needing to get ready for work). Her behavior represents a significant change from her previous level of functioning as evidenced by her husband's upset.

The priority nursing diagnosis for Catherine would be risk for injury related to her wandering behavior, leaving the empty saucepan on the stove, and her agitation. The priority nursing diagnosis for George would most likely be deficient knowledge related to his upset about his wife's behavior and lack of understanding about what is happening to her and why.

To assist in lowering Catherine's stress threshold, suggestions would focus on modifying Catherine's environment. These might include establishing simple routines for her and having George adhere to them and continually evaluating her environment, making the necessary changes to reduce stress. George also would need instruction about monitoring Catherine for signs, such as increasing anxiety, agitation, and avoidance or escape behavior, that indicate she is reaching her stress threshold. George could then be taught how to take action to reduce the stress such as by promoting rest, decreasing external stimuli, and assessing for and eliminating internal stressors such as hunger or pain.



PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 16-3: PREVENTING CAREGIVER STRESS

Caring for someone with dementia can become a round-the-clock job and it is very easy for the family caregiver to neglect his or her own health. It is also a stressful undertaking. It is important, therefore, that the caregiver give consideration to his or her own health, as failing health may mean that the caregiver will no longer be able to care for the loved one at home. Consider the following tips:

- Be sure to eat a balanced nutritious diet. This can be a challenge if the person you are caring for no longer conforms to a three-meals-a-day routine. Use periods when the person is resting or napping during the day, or if they go out to a day care facility, to have a meal yourself. Your family physician or home care nurse can give you information about a balanced nutritious diet.
- Get enough sleep. Again, this can be a challenge, especially if the person with dementia wanders at night. Take advantage of any daytime naps and try to get some rest yourself at these times. Arrange for respite care periodically; try to arrange for someone else to take over caring one night per week or more often so that you can get a good night's sleep. Sleeping aids can help, but these should not be considered as a long-term solution. Discuss this with your primary care provider.
- See your own primary care provider on a regular basis to keep a check on your own health. Be sure to keep all hospital, doctor, and dental appointments. Arrange in advance for a family member or friend to care for the person with dementia so that you can maintain these appointments. Where possible, try to schedule appointments on the same day.
- Take any medicines that you have been prescribed, and if you are feeling unwell, see your health care provider promptly. Do not delay because this could jeopardize your ability to continue as a family caregiver and could delay your recovery.
- Being a family caregiver can be physically demanding. Take special care with your back if you have to help the person get in or out of bed. Ask for advice from a health care professional on how to move someone without injuring the patient or you.
- Engage in regular exercise. Perhaps take the person for a walk each day; this provides both you and your loved one with some healthy exercise together. This time could also be used to reminisce (to talk about old times) and to explore nature (plants, flowers, trees). If you have a secure garden, you could use gardening as a means of exercise that both of you could engage in together.
- Maintain at least one hobby and schedule time each day or week (whichever is appropriate) so that you can engage in your hobby. If necessary, get family or friends to help with care for a few hours so that you can keep up your hobby.
- Similarly, keep contact with family and friends. If you were accustomed to socializing outside of the home with family or friends, try to maintain this. Again, schedule time each week for this and get someone else to help with care for a few hours so that you can socialize.
- Plan for respite care. Discuss this with your home care nurse. You may be able to arrange some time each year so that you can go on a short holiday, or it may be possible to arrange weekend or overnight respite so that you can take a short break.
- Try to involve other family and friends in caring. This will not only lighten your workload, but will also enable them to maintain contact with the person with dementia and to develop some of the necessary skills to care for a person with dementia. That way, you can be confident that they know what to do when they take over caring while you are having a short break. Always accept help from family or friends when offered. If you say you can manage, they may not think to offer help again.
- If you find that you are becoming very stressed or depressed, talk to your primary health care provider who may recommend some counseling or other therapy. It is very important that you do not try to "soldier on" and suffer in silence. Seek help as soon as possible.

anticipated. Not only is this a waste of time, it may also be harmful to the client.

Evaluate how the patient presented initially and where he or she is as termination nears. During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse, patient, and family should reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient goals. Point out positives to the patient and family and include a plan for aftercare and referral as appropriate.

This phase is also part of the termination of the nurse–patient relationship. Many times a patient or caregiver will have a setback due to a feeling of loss of this relationship. The nurse's role is to help them explore their feelings and ease this transition while maintaining boundaries (Peplau, 1991).

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

The goal of improving the quality and safety of patient care can best be achieved when nurses have mastered the necessary core competencies. One identified competency is the integration of current best-practice evidence with clinical expertise and patient/family preferences and values for delivery of optimal health care (Cronenwett et al., 2007). It will be particularly important when working with this population for you to be able to describe how the strength and relevance of available evidence influences the choice of interventions in provision of patient-centered care. The Portal of Geriatrics Online Education (POGOe; www.pogoe.org) is a free resource that provides a comprehensive collection of geriatric educational materials to meet the core competencies, including evidence-based research articles, screening tools, and practice guidelines for neurocognitive disorders. You are encouraged to go to the POGOe website and become familiar with the resources available to you as you care for your patients with neurocognitive disorders. Review the information about safety in your clinical setting and consider ways to improve the safety of your patient living with neurocognitive disorder.

SUMMARY POINTS

- The major neurocognitive disorders that are encountered in clinical practice are delirium and dementia.
- Essential features of neurocognitive impairment include disorientation, confusion, impaired memory, impaired function, and behavioral symptoms such as agitation and restlessness.
- Delirium is an acute-onset, short-lived medical condition caused by an underlying illness; it can be treated by identifying and treating the cause, and by providing supportive therapy until the patient's condition has stabilized
- Several different types of dementia have been identified. Dementia of the Alzheimer's type (DAT) accounts for more than one-half of all cases of dementia.
- Features common to all types of dementia include personality changes, neurocognitive changes, functional changes, and altered stress threshold.
- Neurobiological influences including neurofibrillary tangles, Aβ plaques, Apo-E, and neurotransmitter deficiencies. Acetylcholine has been identified as playing a role in the development of DAT.
- There are no cures for dementia. Cholinesterase inhibitors are available that may slow the rate of neurocognitive impairment and improve the patient's overall functioning. Other therapies available include reality orientation, environmental stress management, validation and reminiscence therapies, and maintenance of the patient's personhood.
- Assessment of the patient with dementia requires evaluation of the patient's neurocognitive and functional capacity along with any behavioral features. Family and other caregivers are included in the assessment to ensure that sufficient data are collected.
- Care of the patient with dementia focuses on maintaining safety, providing a supportive environment that decreases stress and confusion, and assisting family and caregivers to understand patient behaviors and to participate in care.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local senior citizen group about dementia and delirium. When describing delirium, which of the following would the nurse include?
   a. It occurs gradually over a period of time.
   b. It is usually due to an underlying medical condition.
   c. It requires medication to slow its progression.
   d. It remains fairly constant throughout the day.

2. A group of nursing students is reviewing the different types of drugs that may be used to treat dementia of the Alzheimer's type. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following as an example of a cholinesterase inhibitor?
   a. Donepezil
   b. Rivastigmine
   c. Galantamine
   d. Atorvastatin

3. The nurse is providing care to a patient with frontotemporal dementia. The nurse develops a plan of care for this patient, integrating knowledge about which of the following?
   a. The patient has a much shorter life expectancy.
   b. The patient has probably experienced multiple ministrokes.
   c. The patient's memory will remain intact.
   d. The patient is at risk for falls due to muscle rigidity.

4. A patient with dementia of the Alzheimer's type is demonstrating increasing problems with wandering. In addition, the patient's caregiver reports that the patient has wandered into the kitchen during the night and left the stove on several times over the past few weeks. Which of the following would be a priority nursing diagnosis for this patient?
   a. Chronic confusion related to effects of dementia
   b. Risk for injury related to increased wandering
   c. Deficient knowledge related to effects of illness
   d. Disturbed sleep pattern related to frequent nighttime awakenings

5. The nurse is implementing validation therapy with a patient diagnosed with dementia of the Alzheimer's type. Which of the following would the nurse do?
   a. Confirm the patient's version of reality
   b. Place cards on the bathroom and bedroom doors
   c. Repeatedly tell the patient what day it is
   d. Have the patient discuss past events

6. A nurse is working with a patient diagnosed with dementia to foster the patient's personhood. Which of the following would be appropriate to use? Select all that apply.
   a. Intimidation
   b. Labeling
   c. Acceptance
   d. Objectification
   e. Collaboration
   f. Recognition

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Adelman, R. D., Tmanova, L. L., Delgado, D., Dion, S., & Lachs, M. S. (2014). Caregiver burden: A clinical review. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 311*(10), 1052–1060.

Alzheimer's Association. (2014). 2014 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. *Alzheimer's & Dementia, 10*(2), e47–e92.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Annweiler, C., Brugg, B., Peyrin, J. M., Bartha, R., & Beauchet, O. (2014). Combination of memantine and vitamin D prevents axon degeneration induced by amyloid-beta and glutamate. *Neurobiology of Aging, 35*(2), 331–335.

Blessed, G., Tomlinson, B. E., & Roth, M. (1968). The association between quantitative measures of dementia and of senile change in the cerebral grey matter of elderly subjects. *British Journal of Psychiatry: Journal of Mental Science, 114*(512), 797–811.

Boustani, M., & Ham, R. J. (2007). Alzheimer disease and other dementias. In R. J. Ham, P. D. Sloane, G. A. Warshaw, M. A. Bernard, & E. Flatley (Eds.). *Primary care geriatrics: A case-based approach* (5th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Mosby.

Boyle, A., & Hands, O. (2009). Acute psychosis. *General Practice Update, 2*(3), 42–45.

Brooker, D., & Surr, C. (2005). Dementia care mapping: A review of the research literature. Bradford: University of Bradford.

Brooker, D. (2007). *Person centered dementia care: Making services better.* London, UK: Jessica Kingsley.

Buckwalter, K. C., Gerdner, L., Kohout, F., Hall, G. R., Kelly, A., Richards, B., & Sime, M. (1999). A nursing intervention to decrease depression in family caregivers of persons with dementia. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 13*(2), 80–88.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Cummings, J. L. (2004). Advances in the neuropsychopharmacologic management of behavioral alterations in Alzheimer's disease. *Dementia and Geriatric Cognitive Disorders, 17*(1/2), 54.

Edvardsson, D., Winblad, B., & Sandman, P. O. (2008). Person-centered care of people with severe Alzheimer's disease: Current status and ways forward. *The Lancet. Neurology, 7*(4), 362–367.

Edwards, J. K., & Bess, J. M. (1998). Developing effectiveness in the therapeutic use of self. *Clinical Social Work Journal, 26*(1), 89–105.

Erlen, J. A., Lingler, J., Sereika, S. M., Tamres, L. K., Happ, M. B., & Tang, F. (2013). Characterizing caregiver-mediated medication management in patients with memory loss. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing, 39*(4), 30–39.

Fauth, E. B., Zarit, S. H., Femia, E. E., Hofer, S. M., & Stephens, M. A. (2006). Behavioral and psychological symptoms of dementia and caregivers' stress appraisals: Intra-individual stability and change over short-term observations. *Aging & Mental Health, 10*(6), 563–573.

Feil, N. W. (1967). Group therapy in a home for the aged. *The Gerontologist, 7*(3), 192–195.

Feil, N. W. (1992). The validation helping techniques can be used in each of the four stages that occur with late-onset demented populations. *Geriatric Nursing, 3*, 192–195.

Folstein, M. F., Folstein, S. E., & McHugh, P. R. (1975). "Mini-mental state."A practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. *Journal of Psychiatric Research, 12*(3), 189–198.

Garand, L., Buckwalter, K. C., & Hall, G. R. (2000). The biological basis of behavioral symptoms in dementia. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 21*(1), 91–107.

Garand, L., Buckwalter, K. C., Lubaroff, D., Tripp-Reimer, T., Frantz, R. A., & Ansley, T. N. (2002). A pilot study of immune and mood outcomes of a community-based intervention for dementia caregivers: The PLST intervention. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 16*(4), 156–167.

Gerdner, L. A., Buckwalter, K. C., & Reed, D. (2002). Impact of a psychoeducational intervention on caregiver response to behavioral problems. *Nursing Research, 51*(6), 363–374.

Giaquinto, S., & Parnetti, L. (2006). Early detection of dementia in clinical practice. *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development, 127*(2), 123–128.

Gilliard, J. (1993). On course for success. *Elderly Care, 5*(5), 32–34.

Haberstroh, J., Hampel, H., & Pantel, J. (2010). Optimal management of Alzheimer's disease patients: Clinical guidelines and family advice. *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment, 6*, 243–253.

Hall, G. R., & Buckwalter, K. C. (1987). Progressively lowered stress threshold: A conceptual model for care of adults with Alzheimer's disease. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 1*(6), 399–406.

Hong, G. R., & Song, J. A. (2009). Relationship between familiar environment and wandering behaviour among Korean elders with dementia. *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 18*(9), 1365–1373.

Hsieh, S. J., Madahar, P., Hope, A. A., Zapata, J., & Gong, M. N. (2015). Clinical deterioration in older adults with delirium during early hospitalisation: A prospective cohort study. *British Medical Journal Open, 5*(9), e007496.

Katz, S., Ford, A. B., Moskowitz, R. W., Jackson, B. A., & Jaffe, M. W. (1963). Studies of illness in the aged. The index of ADL: A standardized measure of biological and psychosocial function. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 185*, 914–919.

Kitwood, T. (1997). *Dementia reconsidered.* Buckingham, England: Open University Press.

Kumar, A., Singh, A., & Ekavali. A. S. (2015). A review on Alzheimer's disease pathophysiology and its management: An update. *Pharmacological Reports: PR, 67*(2), 195–203.

Lau, D. T., Berman, R., Halpern, L., Pickard, A. S., Schrauf, R., & Witt, W. (2010). Exploring factors that influence informal caregiving in medication management for home hospice patients. *Journal of Palliative Medicine, 13*(9), 1085–1090.

Matsunaga, S., Kishi, T., & Iwata, N. (2015). *Memantine monotherapy for Alzheimer's disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS ONE, 10*(4), e0123289. Retrieved from http://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0123289

National Institutes of Health (NIH) and National Institute on Aging (NIA). (2010). *Home safety for people with Alzheimer's disease*. NIH Publication No. 02–5179.

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). (2010a). *NINDS dementia with Lewy bodies information page*. Retrieved from www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/dementiawithlewybodies/dementiawithlewybodies.htm

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). (2010b). *NINDS multi-infarct dementia information page*. Retrieved from www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/multi_infarct_dementia/multi_infarct_dementia.htm

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). (2010c). *NINDS fronto-temporal dementia information page*. Retrieved from www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/picks/picks.htm

Nazarko, L. (2006). Recognizing the signs and symptoms of dementia. *Nursing and Residential Care, 8*(1), 32–34.

Nelson, P. T., Alafuzoff, I., Bigio, E. H., Bouras, C., Braak, H., Cairns, N. J.,…Beach, T. G. (2012). Correlation of Alzheimer disease neuropathologic changes with cognitive status: A review of the literature. *Journal of Neuropathology and Experimental Neurology, 71*(5), 362–381.

Nikzad-Terhune, K. A., Anderson, K. A., Newcomer, R., & Gaugler, J. E. (2010). Do trajectories of at-home dementia caregiving account for burden after nursing home placement? A growth curve analysis. *Social Work in Health Care, 49*(8), 734–752.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing.* New York, NY: Springer Publishing Company.

Prince, M., Bryce, R., Albanese, E., Wimo, A., Ribeiro, W., & Ferri, C. P. (2013). The global prevalence of dementia: A systematic review and metaanalysis. *Alzheimer's & Dementia: The Journal of the Alzheimer's Association, 9*(1), 63–75.

Schulz, R., Martire, L. M., & Klinger, J. N. (2005). Evidence-based caregiver interventions in geriatric psychiatry. *The Psychiatric Clinics of North America, 28*(4), 1007–1038, x.

Schmidt, K. S., & Lieto, J. M. (2005). Validity of the Medication Administration Test among older adults with and without dementia. *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy, 3*(4), 255–261.

Serrano-Pozo, A., Frosch, M. P., Masliah, E., & Hyman, B. T. (2011). Neuropathological alterations in Alzheimer disease. *Cold Spring Harbor Perspectives in Medicine, 1*(1), a006189.

Silvestrelli, G., Lanari, A., Parnetti, L., Tomassoni, D., & Amenta, F. (2006). Treatment of Alzheimer's disease: From pharmacology to a better understanding of disease pathophysiology. *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development, 127*(2), 148–157.

Smith, M. & Buckwalter, K. C. (2005). *When you forget that you forgot: Recognizing and managing Alzheimer's type dementia. The geriatric mental health training series.* Iowa City: Hartford Centre for Geriatric Nursing Excellence, College of Nursing, University of Iowa.

Smith, M., Gerdner, L. A., Hall, G. R., & Buckwalter, K. C. (2004). History, development, and future of the progressively lowered stress threshold: A conceptual model for dementia care. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 52*(10), 1755–1760.

Sousa-Ferreira, T., Ferreira, M. C., Ferreira, S., Amaral, J., & Cabral, T. (2015). Delirium in psychiatry, the underdiagnosed deadly chameleon: Approach to patient evaluation. *European Psychiatry, 30*, 1458.

Speechly, C. M., Bridges-Webb, C., & Passmore, E. (2008). The pathway to dementia diagnosis. *Medical Journal of Australia, 189*(9), 487–489.

Stolley, J. M., Reed, D., & Buckwalter, K. C. (2002). Caregiving appraisal and interventions based on the progressively lowered stress threshold model. *American Journal of Alzheimer's Disease and Other Dementias, 17*(2), 110–120.

Strac, D. S., Muck-Seler, D., & Pivac, N. (2015). Neurotransmitter measures in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with Alzheimer's disease: A review. *Psychiatria Danubina, 27*(1), 14–24.

Subramaniam, P., & Woods, B. (2012). The impact of individual reminiscence therapy for people with dementia: Systematic review. *Expert Review of Neurotherapeutics, 12*(5), 545–555.

Teri, L., Truax, P., Logsdon, R., Uomoto, J., Zarit, S., & Vitaliano, P. P. (1992). Assessment of behavioral problems in dementia: The revised memory and behavior problems checklist. *Psychology and Aging, 7*(4), 622–631.

Tyrrell, M. P. (2014). The progressively lowered stress threshold model. In J. Fitzpatrick & G. McCarthy (Eds.), *Theories guiding nursing research and practice: Making nursing knowledge development explicit* (pp. 141–158). New York, NY: Springer.

Van Haitsma, K. S., Curyto, K., Abbott, K. M., Towsley, G. L., Spector, A., & Kleban, M. (2015). A randomized controlled trial for an individualized positive psychosocial intervention for the affective and behavioral symptoms of dementia in nursing home residents. *Journals of Gerontology. Series B, Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences, 70*(1), 35–45.

Wilkinson, D., Sganga, N., Stave, C., & O'Connell, B. (2005). Implications of the facing dementia survey for health care professionals across Europe. *International Journal of Clinical Practice, 59* (Suppl. 146), 27–31.

Woods, B. (2014). Reality orientation? *Care-Giving in Dementia: Volume 1: Research and Applications,* 121.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 17

IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDERS

Amanda Alisa Townsend
David S. Kwon

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the disorders that can be described as impulse control disorders
2. Discuss the history and epidemiology of impulse control disorders
3. Describe possible theories related to the etiology of impulse control disorders
4. Explain various treatment options for persons experiencing impulse control disorders
5. Discuss common assessment strategies for individuals with impulse control disorders
6. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with impulse control disorders

KEY TERMS

Gambling disorder
Impulse control disorder
Intermittent explosive disorder
Kleptomania
Pyromania
Trichotillomania

A difficulty in exercising control over one's impulses occurs in a number of psychiatric-mental health disorders, including substance abuse–related conditions, conduct disorders, and psychotic disorders. However, the classification of **IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER** involves those disorders whose defining feature is the inability to control or inhibit acting on impulses that might be harmful to self or others. Impulse control disorders include **GAMBLING DISORDER** (persistent maladaptive gambling behavior), **KLEPTOMANIA** (recurrent failure to resist the impulse to steal), **PYROMANIA** (fire setting for pleasure and gratification), **INTERMITTENT EXPLOSIVE DISORDER** (failure to resist aggressive impulses leading to serious property destruction or assaults), and **TRICHOTILLOMANIA** (recurrent pulling out of one's hair for pleasure or tension relief; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013; Grant & Kim, 2003). In these disorders, there is an increasing sense of tension before acting out. However, pleasure, gratification, relief, or guilt often occurs shortly following the act.

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of impulse control disorders followed by a detailed description of these disorders. Scientific theories focusing on psychodynamic and neurobiological influences are described along with common treatment options, including pharmacotherapy and nonpharmacotherapy strategies. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a plan of care for a patient with an impulse control disorder.

Impulse control disorders are characterized by the inability to control or suppress acting on an impulse that has the potential for harm to one's self or others.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

Available literature in the area of impulse control disorder is sparse in comparison with other psychiatric conditions. It is generally accepted that impulse control disorder is a key feature found in many other Axis I mental disorders, such as alcohol and drug dependence and eating disorders (Fontenelle, Mendlowicz, & Versiani, 2003). When compared with other psychiatric-mental health conditions, little historical information on impulse control disorders is available. Only kleptomania and trichotillomania have any specific historical prospective.

The first clinical cases of kleptomania date back two centuries, although some court cases are older. The term was modified from two Greek words meaning "to steal" and "insanity." Kleptomania was a supplementary term but was not considered a distinct diagnosis in the first edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*. In the second edition, the term was ignored. No substantive changes were made for the diagnosis of kleptomania in the more recent *DSM* manuals (Presta et al., 2002).

Trichotillomania was first described by a French dermatologist more than 100 years ago. In early literature, the hair was a symbolic object used to work through feelings of aggression or abandonment. This psychoanalytical approach did not prove to be helpful to patients with trichotillomania. More recent avenues of exploration in trichotillomania have noted similarities with obsessive-compulsive disorder and Tourette's syndrome. Most researchers and clinicians agree that the etiology of trichotillomania is multifactorial (Whitaker, Wolf, & Keuthen, 2003).

In recent psychological history, information about impulse control disorders is beginning to evolve. For example, in the 1990s, some research suggested that impulse control disorders could be viewed as part of an obsessive-compulsive spectrum. This conceptualization arose from the clinical presentation of the disorder, familial or genetic links, and the documented treatment responses. Further study and research are leading to the identification of new compulsive-impulsive disorders, such as Internet usage disorder, sexual behaviors, video game addiction, skin picking, and excessive shopping. The impulsive features of arousal and initiation of the act or behavior, and the compulsive aspect causing the behavior to continue over time, are the central focus (Dell'Osso, Altamura, Allen, Marazziti, & Holland, 2006; Yau & Potenza, 2015).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Reliable information related to the epidemiology of impulse control disorders is lacking. It is believed that intermittent explosive disorder is rare, but that when it occurs, it is believed to be more common in males (McCloskey, Noblett, Deffenbacher, Gollan, & Coccaro, 2008). Some nonspecific "soft" findings may present on a neurological exam, such as reflex asymmetries and delays in speech and coordination.

Kleptomania occurs in about 4% to 24% of shoplifters and approximately 0.3% to 0.6% of the general population. Most kleptomaniacs are female. Three courses of kleptomania exist in the literature. These courses are as follows: sporadic with brief episodes and long periods of remission; episodic with prolonged periods of stealing and remission; and chronic with some fluctuation (APA, 2013). Despite convictions, the disorder continues and the items stolen are most often of little value (Grant, 2003).

Pyromania is a rare condition, occurring most often in males, with no established typical age of onset. Incidents of fire setting are episodic with frequencies that wax and wane. Pyromania is found more often in those with poorly developed social skills and learning delays (APA, 2013).

Gambling disorder, like alcohol dependence, is more prevalent among those whose parents were pathological gamblers. However, the prevalence of this condition could be as high as 1% to 3% of the general population. One third of pathological gamblers are female. The progression of the condition is insidious, with the urge to gamble often increasing during stressful periods of life (Grant, Kim, Odlaug, Buchanan, & Potenza, 2009).

Trichotillomania is more likely to occur during reported periods of stressful life events. However, a second pattern of this disorder occurs during sedentary activity, such as while watching TV or talking on the phone. This condition, which begins in childhood, may affect 3% of the U.S. population. The condition can be self-limiting or it can progress to adulthood. Females are more often affected by this condition. The shame surrounding trichotillomania can be so great that its victims avoid basic health services for fear of discovery (Ferrao, Almeida, Bedin, Rosa, & Busnello, 2006; Whitaker et al., 2003).

Intermittent explosive disorder and pyromania are more common in males; kleptomania and trichotillomania are more common in females. Two thirds of those with pathological gambling are male.

ESSENTIAL FEATURES

The essential feature of impulse control disorders is a failure to resist an impulse, drive, or temptation to act in a way that is harmful to one's self or others. The individual will often report a heightened sense of stress, tension, or arousal just before committing the act. Following the commission of the act, the individual may report relief followed by a combination of guilt and regret (Fontenelle, Mendlowicz, & Versiani, 2003). **Figure 17-1** depicts the cycle of the impulse response in persons with impulse control disorders.

Intermittent explosive disorder is characterized by failure to resist aggressive impulses that result in either regular occurrences of verbal aggression or physical aggression that does not result in injury to others or destruction of property; or numerous acts involving injury to others or destruction of property. The degree of the outbursts should be significantly out of proportion to the precipitating stressors.

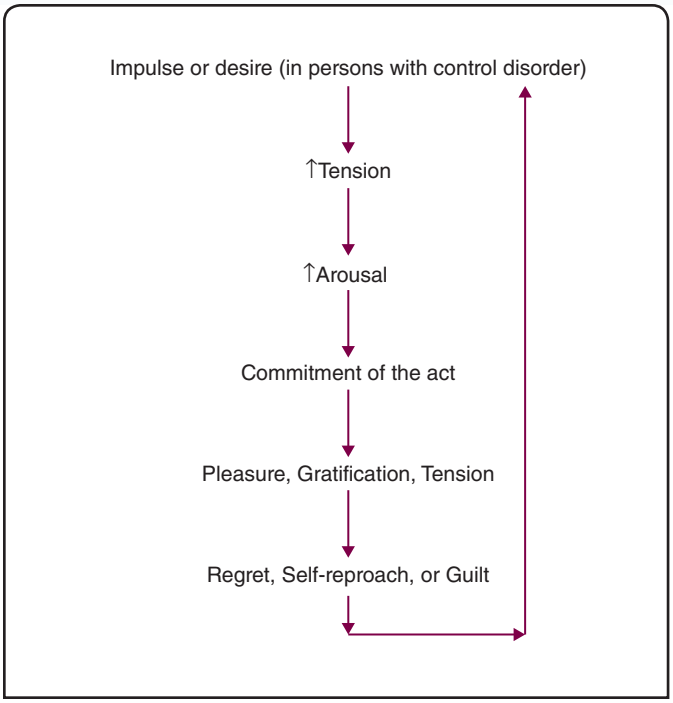


Figure 17-1 *Cycle of impulse response.*

Kleptomania is characterized by recurrent failures to resist impulses to steal objects that are not desired for personal use or for their monetary value. Rather, it is the pleasure or relief that results from stealing the object, after the initial sense of tension, that is the motivating factor.

Pyromania is a failure to resist impulses to set fires on multiple occasions. There is no motivation other than the pleasure or relief that is experienced from the act of setting a fire.

Trichotillomania's main feature is the recurrent pulling out of one's hair that results in noticeable hair loss. This continues to occur despite repeated attempts to decrease or stop the hair pulling.

Gambling disorder involves a pattern of persistent and recurrent maladaptive gambling behavior. Similarly to substance use disorders, those with gambling disorder are often preoccupied with gambling, attempt to hide the extent of their gambling from others, and have unsuccessfully tried to cut back or stop.

One cannot be diagnosed with an impulse control disorder if the behavior is better explained to be the result of any other disorder, such as conduct disorder, a manic episode, or a personality disorder. In order to be diagnosed with an impulse control disorder, the symptoms should be severe enough to lead to clinically significant impairment or distress (APA, 2013).

The impulse response follows a predictable pattern: an increase in stress followed by an increase in arousal, which leads to the act and subsequent experience of pleasure, gratification, and release of tension followed by feelings of regret, self-reproach, or guilt.

ETIOLOGY

The etiology of impulse control disorders is less understood than some psychiatric-mental health disorders. Impulse control disorders and obsessive-compulsive disorders appear to be closely linked clinically (Dell'Osso et al., 2006). However, no single scientific theory has been proposed to explain the cause of impulse control disorders. Many theorists suggest that the causes are multifactorial. Psychodynamic and neurobiological influences are addressed here.

Psychodynamic Influences

The known psychodynamic influences associated with impulse control disorders vary based on the specific diagnosis. For individuals with intermittent explosive disorder, revenge for a minor injustice is often the motivation for aggression (McCloskey, Deffenbacher, Noblett, Gollan, & Coccaro, 2008). Highly aggressive individuals with intermittent explosive disorder appear to be more treatment resistant to cognitive behavioral therapy. In children with this disorder, anger may take the form of severe temper tantrums, property destruction, and running away. Children often respond best to the use of child-centered play therapy (CCPT) with parental involvement (Paone & Douma, 2009).

Deviant peer groups have been linked to substance use, theft, violence, and gambling that begin in middle adolescence and continue into young adulthood. Parental supervision may have a moderating effect on the other behaviors but it does not apparently affect the youth's problem gambling. The heightened awareness of problem gambling, however, may motivate parents to seek help for their troubled youth (Wanner, Vitaro, Carbonneau, & Tremblay, 2009).

Trichotillomania generally exhibits two patterns of hair loss related to chronic hair pulling. With the binge type, the individual may extract a large amount of hair during a brief period of negative intense feelings such as anxiety or depression. The second pattern occurs when the individual is sedentary—reading, driving, watching television, or talking on the telephone. People with this second type of trichotillomania are often unaware of the behavior and pull their hair less often than those with the first type (Whitaker et al., 2003).

The major complication of trichotillomania is fear of discovery. This frequently leads to the avoidance of basic health care services. Research has shown that this fear is so great that women will forego reporting sexual assaults due to pubic hair loss. They may also avoid dermatological follow-ups for skin cancer due to shame (Whitaker et al., 2003).

Neurobiological Influences

Alterations in neurotransmitters in certain brain regions and the neural circuitry are thought to occur in impulse control disorders. Neurotransmitters in the mesocorticolimbic pathway play a critical role in reinforcement within the brain and have been observed to play a role in impulse control disorders (Probst & Eimeren, 2013). The regions of the brain most involved are the nucleus accumbens (urges and impulses) and the amygdala (emotions). Other areas implicated are the frontal and prefrontal cortex. These regions govern risky or compulsive behavior and control planning and judgments (Weintraub, 2008). A positron emission tomography (PET) study found a correlation between impulse control and dopamine release in the striatum (Buckholtz et al., 2010). Considerable research is still needed to determine the complex relationship between impulsivity and compulsivity (Fontenelle et al., 2003).

A decrease in serotonin has been linked to disorders characterized by poor control or impulse control issues. Thus, in more recent years, some individuals with impulse control disorders have responded to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs; Krakowski, 2003).

With intermittent explosive disorder, some features occur during or are congruent with nonspecific slowing on an EEG. Serotonin metabolism may be altered in impulsive and temper-prone individuals, but this is not a clear finding. Therefore, the diagnosis of intermittent explosive disorder is made only after other mental disorders are ruled out and the aggressive episodes, sometimes described as "spells," are determined not to be the result of mind-altering substances.

Serotonin and dopamine have been identified as the primary neurotransmitters involved in kleptomania. Kleptomania has been found to be an emergent side effect of dopamine agonists during the treatment of Parkinson's disease (Mangot, 2014). Even though SSRIs are used as first-line agents in the treatment for kleptomania, there have also been some reported cases of kleptomania that emerged during treatment with SSRIs (Gupta, 2014). In addition to serotonin and dopamine, the opioid and

glutamatergic systems may also play a role in kleptomania (Grant, Odlaug, Schreiber, Chamberlain, & Kim, 2013).

Alterations in neurotransmitter levels, such as serotonin, are associated with the etiology of impulse control disorders.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Treatment options for impulse control disorders consist of both pharmacological and nonpharmacological therapies. However, no one therapy has been shown to be consistently effective.

Nonpharmacological Therapies

Nonpharmacological therapies found to be helpful in the treatment of impulse control disorders include cognitive restructuring, relaxation, anger management, family therapy, support groups, and coping skill training. The nurse can assist the patient in developing better coping skills by assisting the patient in identifying positive adaptive ways to manage stressful situations in the future and to take responsibility for wrongdoing. The use of psychosocial interventions for anger control and interpersonal aggression is well documented (McCloskey et al., 2008). CCPT is often used when working with children dealing with a wide range of psychiatric issues. This form of therapy has also been supported in children with intermittent explosive disorder (Paone & Douma, 2009). For the person with intermittent explosive disorder where anger management becomes a primary issue, several nonpharmacological therapies may be helpful. With cognitive restructuring, patients are taught to have more useful thoughts rather than acting out in anger or impulsively. Beginning yoga may be a helpful relaxation therapy. Breathing techniques can be very beneficial coping skills for those with anger impulsivity and anxiety concerns.

Pharmacological Therapies

Currently, the primary pharmacological treatment for impulse control disorders is with SSRIs, such as sertraline (Zoloft) and fluvoxamine (Luvox). The data concerning pharmacological treatment for impulse control disorders are limited. Serotonergic antidepressants may be useful for some impulse control disorders, although they may not all be equally effective (Schreiber, Odlaug, & Grant, 2011). Intermittent explosive disorder has been treated with phenytoin (Dilantin), mood stabilizers such as lithium or Depakote, SSRIs, beta-blockers such as propranolol, alpha-2-agonists such as clonidine, and atypical antipsychotic medications such as risperidone. Trichotillomania has responded best to SSRIs. Gambling disorder responds well to SSRIs, mood stabilizers such as lithium, and opioid antagonists such as naltrexone. There is a lack of research on effective medication interventions for pyromania (Dell'Osso et al., 2006). SSRIs are the primary treatment for kleptomania (Gupta, 2014); however, good results have also been seen with the use of memantine (Grant et al., 2013). See **Drug Summary 17-1** for a partial listing of medications that may be used to treat impulse control disorders.

SSRIs are commonly used to treat impulse control disorders.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Patients with impulse control disorders may be seen in a variety of settings, but most commonly in community and outpatient centers. If the patient has a comorbid condition or experiences injury as a result of the impulsive act, he or she may be encountered in general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with impulse control disorders. **Plan of Care 17-1** provides an example of a patient with an impulse control disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

The therapeutic use of self as described by Joyce Travelbee is "the ability to use one's personality consciously and in full awareness in an attempt to establish relatedness and to structure nursing intervention" (Travelbee, 1971, p. 18). In this type of relationship, the nurse needs insight into his or her own behaviors and needs to possess the ability to understand the behaviors of others to ensure effective outcomes. In addition, the nurse employs the therapeutic use of self to collect data for documentation.

Self-Awareness

Before beginning the assessment, the nurse uses this time to explore his or her own self-perceptions and fears about a patient. For example, the nurse may have gathered information from the patient's medical record that the person has a diagnosis of gambling disorder. Perhaps someone close to the nurse has struggled with gambling issues.

DRUG SUMMARY 17-1: PARTIAL SELECTION OF MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SSRIs)	
fluoxetine (Prozac) paroxetine (Paxil) sertraline (Zoloft) fluvoxamine maleate (Luvox) citalopram (Celexa) escitalopram (Lexapro)	■ Advise the patient to take the drug in the morning; if sedation occurs, encourage the patient to take the drug at bedtime ■ Monitor the patient for signs of serotonin syndrome such as fever, sweating, agitation, tachycardia, hypotension, and hyperreflexia ■ Inform the patient about possible sexual dysfunction with the drug; if this occurs and causes the patient distress, advocate for a change in the drug ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 3 to 6 weeks before symptoms begin to improve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, particularly for those younger than 25 years of age.
SEROTONIN/NOREPINEPHRINE REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SNRIs)	
desvenlafaxine (Pristiq) duloxetine (Cymbalta) venlafaxine (Effexor and Effexor XR)	■ Advise the patient taking desvenlafaxine or duloxetine to have blood pressure monitored because the drug may increase blood pressure ■ Instruct the patient taking venlafaxine to take the drug with food and a full glass of water; if the patient has difficulty swallowing capsules, suggest the patient open the capsule and sprinkle contents on a spoonful of applesauce and take immediately; reinforce the need to follow the capsule with a full glass of water ■ Encourage the patient to check with the prescriber before taking any other prescription or over-the-counter drugs ■ Warn the patient of possible sedation and dizziness and the need to avoid hazardous activities until the drug's effects are known ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
MOOD STABILIZERS	
lithium carbonate (Lithobid, Lithotabs, Lithonate) carbamazepine (Tegretol)	■ Work with the patient to develop a schedule for laboratory testing of drug levels to promote compliance; remind the patient that the level must be obtained 12 hours after the last dose has been taken

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 17-1: *(CONT.)*
PARTIAL SELECTION OF MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
MOOD STABILIZERS (*CONT.*)	
divalproex sodium (Depakote) oxcarbazepine (Trileptal) lamotrigine (Lamictal) tiagabine HCL (Gabitril)	■ Discuss with the patient the signs and symptoms of lithium toxicity: – Levels 1.5 to 2.0 mEq/L: blurred vision, ataxia, tinnitus, persistent nausea and vomiting, severe diarrhea – Levels 2.0 to 3.5 mEq/L: excessive dilute urine output, increasing tremors, muscle irritability, psychomotor retardation, mental confusion – Levels of more than 3.5 mEq/L: impaired level of consciousness, nystagmus, seizures, coma, oliguria or anuria, arrhythmias, cardiovascular collapse ■ Collaborate with the patient how to ensure adequate sodium intake; reinforce the need for six to eight large glasses of fluid each day; urge the patient to avoid caffeine beverages, which increase urine output ■ Advise the patient to increase fluid intake if sweating, fever, or diuresis occurs ■ Suggest the patient take the drug with food if gastrointestinal upset occurs ■ Collaborate with the patient to develop a schedule for blood-level testing to promote adherence ■ Institute safety measures to reduce the risk of falling secondary to drowsiness or dizziness ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens
SECOND-GENERATION (ATYPICAL) ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUGS	
risperidone (Risperidone) olanzapine (Zyprexa) quetiapine (Seroquel) ziprasidone (Geodon) aripiprazole (Abilify) paliperidone (Invega) iloperidone (Fanapt) asenapine (Saphris) lurasidone (Latuda)	■ Instruct the patient using aripiprazole (Abilify) or lurasidone (Latuda) not to take the drug with grapefruit juice ■ For the patient taking clozapine, obtain baseline white blood cell counts to assess for agranulocytosis; explain to the patient that he or she will receive only a 1-week supply of the drug; assist the patient in arranging for follow-up weekly blood tests for the first 6 months of therapy; monitor the patient closely for signs and symptoms of infection; stress the need for not stopping the drug abruptly ■ Allow the patient to verbalize feelings and issues related to drug therapy; work with the patient and family to develop a method for ensuring adherence to drug therapy ■ Monitor the patient for development of extrapyramidal side effects ■ Be alert that neuroleptic malignant syndrome most often occurs during the first 2 weeks of therapy or after a dosage increase

PLAN OF CARE 17-1: THE PATIENT WITH AN IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Risk for other-directed violence; related to lack of impulse control, rage reaction with violent outbursts, and agitation.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: The patient will demonstrate control of behavior to remain safe, without harm to self or others.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Approach the patient calmly; appear in control of own behavior, using a calm tone of voice and nonjudgmental attitude	Approaching the patient calmly and nonjudgmentally helps to build trust and foster the nurse–patient relationship
Assess the patient for indicators suggesting potential for harm to self or others, such as irritability, intimidation, restlessness, shouting or loud voice, or overt threats; ensure the safety of the patient and others; be alert for these possible triggers	Identifying indicators of potential harm allows for early intervention
Minimize the patient's exposure to stimuli; keep environment calm, quiet with little distraction; remove all hazardous items from the patient's environment	Limiting stimuli helps to prevent overwhelming the patient, which could lead to increased anxiety and agitation; removal of items reduces the risk of use if behavior escalates
Set firm, reasonable expectations for patient's behavior; ensure that the patient understands the limits and the consequences associated with violating limits; teach the patient about limits and boundaries and consistently reinforce them	Using limit setting establishes the boundaries for behavior and helps to minimize manipulation by the patient
Assist the patient in identifying signs and symptoms of increasing anxiety and in using measures to reduce anxiety and agitation when they occur; suggest the use of physical activity, talking about feelings, or asking for medication	Being able to identify signs and symptoms promotes early intervention; using measures such as physical activity or talking provides an outlet for reducing anxiety without harming self or others
Work with the patient on impulse control including explaining the benefits of control; assist the patient to employ strategies such as behavior modification to control impulses; redirect the patient to more appropriate or productive activities	Working toward impulse control provides the patient with insight about behavior and positive ways to deal with feelings rather than using violence or aggression; using behavior modification reinforces a positive method of handling feelings

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 17-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH AN IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER

Assist the patient in role-playing and practicing techniques; provide positive reinforcement	Using role-play and practice help reinforce use of appropriate behaviors; positive reinforcement fosters self-esteem and enhances the possibility of successful use in the future
Administer prescribed medication therapy such as SSRIs	Using prescribed pharmacological therapies may help to control behaviors associated with the disorder
Ensure the development of a plan should behavior escalation occur; ensure a unified approach to the patient; contract with the patient for no self-harm	Having a plan is necessary to reduce the safety risk for all involved; employing a unified approach demonstrates control over the situation Using a no-harm contract emphasizes expectations, fosters participation in care and feelings of control over the situation, and promotes safety
If behavior escalation occurs, place the patient in the least restrictive environment; move others from the area of escalation	Using the least restrictive environment is necessary to protect the patient's rights; moving others away protects their safety

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Ineffective coping related to conflict and stress; manifested by violent behavior, anger and aggression, and rage reaction.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: The patient will begin to demonstrate use of positive coping strategies to deal with underlying feelings and emotions.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient's level of anger, aggression, and impulsivity; stay with the patient and provide for safety and security	Determining the level of the patient's anger and aggression provides a baseline from which to intervene
Maintain a calm, reassuring approach; keep verbal exchanges short and direct	Maintaining a calm, reassuring approach prevents adding to the patient's anger and aggression Keeping exchanges short and direct reduces the risk of overwhelming an already overwhelmed patient
Once the level of aggression or anger has diminished, assist the patient in exploring feelings and precipitating factors; if necessary, encourage the patient to keep a journal or diary related to feelings associated with anger and aggression	Identifying feelings and precipitating factors can help to prevent recurrence; using a journal or diary promotes insight into possible triggers related to behavior; objectively viewing the situation can help the patient identify faulty thinking patterns

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 17-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH AN IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER

Encourage the patient to discuss feelings and assist the patient in viewing situations related to feelings objectively	
Assist the patient in identifying signs and symptoms of increasing anger and agitation	Being able to identify signs and symptoms facilitates early intervention
Work with the patient to determine usual methods of problem solving; identify effective and ineffective methods; suggest appropriate methods and encourage the patient's participation in problem solving	Identifying usual methods of coping provides information about possible maladaptive strategies and opportunities for teaching more adaptive ones; encouraging patient participation promotes feelings of control over the situation, self-esteem, and self-worth
Reinforce the use of appropriate prescribed therapies such as cognitive restructuring, relaxation techniques, and controlled breathing	Using various methods for reducing anger and aggression provides the patient with options to manage these feelings effectively
Assist the patient in practicing appropriate strategies; provide positive reinforcement	Practicing promotes success; positive reinforcement promotes self-esteem

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

The nurse needs to examine his or her ability to engage in a therapeutic relationship with this patient. Reflecting on one's own attitudes, values, and prejudices is a critical component of being able to calmly intervene and work with patients who suffer with impulse control disorders. Doing so will help to decrease the chance of countertransference or the emotional involvement that can interfere with the therapeutic process.

The self-aware nurse is pivotal in coming together with a patient to assess the patient's understanding of his or her condition. This is an essential step for developing empathy. **Consumer Perspective 17-1** provides insight into what it is like to experience an impulse control disorder from the patient's viewpoint.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

Being self-aware of how your attitudes, values, and prejudices can influence your interactions with a patient is necessary in order to deliver patient-centered care. This is especially important because impulse control disorders can result in a lot of shame for the patient and a need to feel guarded. The QSEN initiatives list a number of knowledge and skills that you would be expected to use. Some of these knowledge and skills include the following: Recognize the boundaries of therapeutic relationships. Continuously analyze and improve one's own level of communication skill in encounters with patients, families, and teams. Seek to understand one's personally held attitudes about working with patients from different ethnic, cultural, and social backgrounds.

Data Collection

During assessment, the nurse obtains information from a patient in a goal-directed manner through observation, interview, and evaluation (**Evidence-Based Practice 17-1**). Information is also often obtained from other sources

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 17-1: A PATIENT WITH KLEPTOMANIA

"Hi. My name is Jill and I take things from stores. Usually, the stuff is just junk but I see it and I've got to have it. I could buy it if I wanted to. I am 17 years old and I guess the psych diagnosis on my chart is kleptomania. I steal little things like lip gloss and earrings. I have gotten busted before for shoplifting. It is so embarrassing but I can't stop on my own. I get so excited; it's intense, and it's kinda like getting off. I wish I could stop but sometimes I just can't help myself."

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 17-1: PLAY THERAPY AND INTERMITTENT EXPLOSIVE DISORDER

STUDY

Paone, T. R., & Douma, K. B. (2009). Child-centered play therapy with a seven-year-old boy diagnosed with intermittent explosive disorder. *International Journal of Play Therapy, 18*(1), 31–44.

SUMMARY

This is a case study report of the use of CCPT with a child with intermittent explosive disorder. Parent consultation and involvement were included throughout the therapy. Sixteen CCPT sessions were conducted; highlights of each of the sessions are described. The child did not talk to the therapist often during the therapy, but communicated most often through the type of toys he chose in the session. At the conclusion of the therapy, the child was exhibiting age-appropriate behaviors both in school and at home.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Various forms of play therapy can be used with children and adults. For example, role-playing is a form of play therapy. Patients also can be observed in recreational activities on the unit, to both assess their behaviors and learn about impulse control based on their behaviors and interactions with others in the recreational activity. Also, as part of the assessment process, patients can be asked to describe their play activities.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How can nurses use modified forms of play therapy, for example, role-playing, to assess a patient's behavior?*
2. *Do you think the play therapy would have been as successful without the parents' involvement?*

such as family members, health records, health care staff, or others on the treatment team. Throughout assessment, the nurse establishes trust and builds rapport while providing the necessary support and structure. The nurse and the patient work together to set realistic goals for the relationship. In this phase, the psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to explore and investigate any patient-specific behaviors. Specifically, does anything precipitate the impulsive act or are there any antecedents or triggering phenomena that have been identified? What was the patient thinking about before committing the impulsive act? These specific questions may help the nurse devise an intervention plan for the client (Beck, 2013).

The nurse must treat the patient as an equal to foster the patient's regaining of control over his or her health. The nurse must trust the patient's ability to make good health decisions. This health-promoting trust encourages the patient's growth and development (Svedberg, Jormfeldt, & Arvidsson, 2003).

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Meeting the patient's focused needs during the planning stage of the nursing process can only happen if the nurse has accurately completed an assessment of the patient and his or her perception of the condition. Focusing on the patient's strengths that were identified in the assessment stage is key when planning interventions. Doing so will also allow for an increased sense of collaboration on the part of the patient. Priorities are identified, treatment goals are established, specific actions are selected, and a plan of care is customized that is tailored to meet the individual patient's needs.

Due to varying assessment findings and the wide range of problems faced by patients with impulse control disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include the following:

- *Risk of other-directed violence related to rage reaction/antisocial characteristics*
- *Risk of self-directed violence related to rage reaction*
- *Anxiety related to threat to or change in environmental pattern*
- *Anxiety related to threat to or change in interaction pattern*
- *Ineffective coping related to inadequate coping method*
- *Ineffective coping related to situational crisis*
- *Powerlessness related to interpersonal interactions*
- *Impaired social interaction related to altered thought processes*
- *Ineffective role performance related to rage reaction*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, for the nursing diagnosis of risk of other-directed violence related to rage, an appropriate outcome would be that the patient will identify antecedents to anger and explosive behavior in an attempt to stop escalation by a planned walking away and cooling down period.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

In the implementation phase of the nursing process, the nursing care plan is carried out. The nurse provides both nonpharmacological and pharmacological therapy and monitoring where appropriate. The care plan must ensure good documentation for legal and therapeutic reasons. The nurse is in an ongoing state of assessment to determine if the intervention is helpful or not. This phase is composed of both dependent nursing actions (giving medications) and independent/interdependent nursing actions. In this phase, the patient will actively seek knowledge from the nurse and the treatment team to address the mutually identified issues. This active involvement in the therapeutic relationship shows a readiness for assistance (Beck, 2013).

A common priority nursing diagnosis for a patient with an impulse control disorder is risk of other-directed violence.

In developing interventions, the nurse should consider the need for setting limits with the patient, as these individuals often test the boundaries and push the limits of rules and regulations. An important therapeutic technique is that of psychoeducation in which the focus is on teaching the patient the boundaries and the consequences of not controlling impulses (**Therapeutic Interaction 17-1**). Role-play

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 17-1: A PATIENT WITH PATHOLOGICAL GAMBLING

R.B. presents for inpatient treatment after his gambling has gotten out of hand. He has depleted all of his family's savings, retirement funds, and has written a number of bad checks. The creditors are calling, he is depressed, and his wife is threatening to leave him. He has passive suicidal ideations.

R.B.: "I have really messed up this time. I have lost everything."	Desperation stage of gambling cycle, may contemplate suicide.
Nurse: "Do you currently want to hurt yourself or others?"	Clarifying/asking directly about self-harm, a top priority for any patient who has threat-to-harm thoughts to assess/monitor safety risks.
R.B.: "No, I'm not going to kill myself, or off anybody else."	With any patient that has threat-to-harm thoughts, the nurse must attempt to get the patient to contract for safety.
Nurse: "If you feel unsafe or like you are going to harm yourself or someone else, can you let me, one of the nurses, or a psych care staff know if you feel unsafe?"	The nurse suggests a no-harm contract.
R.B.: "Ok, I will. But I wish I could stop gambling, but I can't. I drive by the casino, and before I know it, I'm in there. No one understands me."	Agrees to contract.
Nurse: "You mentioned driving by the casino. Is there another way home you could take?"	Beginning to assist the patient in cognitive restructuring.
Nurse: "You are not alone. Your treatment team will help you identify strategies to assist you to more effectively cope with your gambling addiction, like individual group therapy and gambler's anonymous (GA)."	Identifying for the patient that staff is there to help him, that he is not alone and there are strategies that have been proven helpful (support groups and therapy for addiction have been proven effective); fosters some hope without providing false reassurance.

can also help the patient learn boundaries and consequences of the inappropriate impulsive behavior. **How Would You Respond? 17-1** provides an example of a patient with an impulse control disorder requiring intervention.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. For any goals not

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 17-1: A PATIENT WITH AN INTERMITTENT EXPLOSIVE DISORDER

Tonya is a 16-year-old female who lives with her grandmother because her mother has a drug problem. Usually, Tonya and her grandmother get along well, but both agree that Tonya's temper is a problem. Recently, her grandmother reported that Tonya snapped after being asked to sweep the porch before Tonya's girlfriend came over to watch movies. The grandmother reports that "Tonya flipped out and took the broom handle and was knocking all the stuff off the front porch, broke it and hit me upside the head with the broom handle." The police were called and Tonya was taken to the police station. Her grandmother reports bailing Tonya out of jail the next day, but stated that Tonya must get help or she will no longer be permitted to stay with her grandmother for safety reasons. The grandmother said, "I am scared of her when she snaps." Tonya reports feeling bad afterward and crying and saying she was sorry. "I just could not stop! I just got so mad and the next thing I knew I had torn up the porch and hit my grandma. I scared myself." How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *Based on the situation, how does Tonya meet the diagnostic criteria for intermittent explosive disorder?*
2. *What nursing diagnosis would be a priority for Tonya?*
3. *What suggestions might be appropriate to include in the plan of care for Tonya's explosive episodes?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 17-1: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Based on the situation, Tonya has a problem with her temper, suggesting that there have been other episodes of "snapping." Tonya also exhibited aggressiveness that was out of proportion to the request by her grandmother, ultimately resulting in Tonya physically assaulting her grandmother and destroying the items on the porch. Additionally, Tonya felt remorse and regretted her actions afterward.

As a result of Tonya's actions, safety, primarily for her grandmother and also for herself, is the priority. Appropriate priority nursing diagnoses would be risk for other-directed violence related to assaultive acts on her grandmother and risk for self-directed violence related to an inability to resist aggressive impulses.

Tonya might benefit from pharmacological therapy, such as SSRIs, because there is some belief that serotonin metabolism may be altered in individuals with intermittent explosive disorder. In addition, cognitive restructuring, limit setting, coping skills training, and anger management techniques would be appropriate.

met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care and evaluate how the patient presented initially and where he or she is at this time. During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse and the patient should reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient's goals, with the nurse pointing out positives to the patient and including a plan for aftercare as appropriate.

Evaluation also provides a feedback mechanism for judging the quality of care given. The demand for health care services and the growing cost of these services have led to a focus on outcomes as a means for effectiveness and efficiency. Evaluation of the progress indicates which problems have been solved, which needs have been met, and which require reassessment, replanning, implementation, and reevaluation. The ongoing process of evaluation and reevaluation provides a realistic mechanism for judging the quality of care given (Beck, 2013).

SUMMARY POINTS

- Impulse control is a common central feature in many psychiatric-mental health disorders. They include intermittent explosive disorder, kleptomania, gambling disorder, trichotillomania, and impulse control disorder not otherwise specified.
- Essential features of any impulse control disorder are (a) failure to resist the impulse to act, (b) an increasing sense of tension or arousal before committing the act, and (c) an experience of pleasure or sense of gratification or release at the time of the commission of the act.
- Impulse control disorders are treated with pharmacotherapy such as SSRIs and nonpharmacological therapies, such as cognitive restructuring, relaxation, and training of coping skills.
- During assessment, the psychiatric-mental health nurse needs to explore and investigate any patient-specific behaviors, including precipitating factors, antecedents or triggers, and patient thinking before committing the impulsive act.
- Several interventions can be implemented by the nurse to address the symptoms and underlying causes of impulse control disorders.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. The nurse is developing a teaching plan for a patient with an impulse control disorder. The nurse integrates knowledge of which of the following in this plan?
   - **a.** An increase in tension leads to an increase in arousal.
   - **b.** The act immediately leads to feelings of regret.
   - **c.** A need for pleasure is the driving force for acting.
   - **d.** Increased arousal leads to a rise in stress.
2. A group of nursing students are reviewing information related to impulse control disorders. The students demonstrate an understanding of the information when they identify which behavior as characteristic of trichotillomania?
   - **a.** Fire setting
   - **b.** Stealing
   - **c.** Pulling out of hair
   - **d.** Property destruction
3. A nursing instructor is preparing a class lecture about impulse control disorder. When describing kleptomania, which of the following would the instructor include?
   - **a.** The patient needs the item for personal use.
   - **b.** The item is too expensive for the patient to purchase.

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

c. The object reflects an expression of anger.
d. The person lacks a need for the object.

4. The nurse is assessing a patient in whom gambling disorder is suspected. Which statement(s) would the nurse interpret as reflecting the diagnostic criteria for this condition? Select all that apply.
   a. "I find myself going back to the casino the next day to get even."
   b. "I started out with small amounts, but now I'm using half of my paycheck."
   c. "I might bet $5 on a football pool every so often."
   d. "I'm going to hit the jackpot again, like I did once before."
   e. "I went to the racetrack after I told my wife I had to work late."

5. Which of the following would the nurse identify as a major issue involved with intermittent explosive disorder?
   a. Fear of discovery
   b. Ineffective health maintenance
   c. Injury
   d. Substance abuse

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (5th ed.)*. Washington, DC: Author.

Beck, J. (2013). *Nursing process in psychiatric nursing.* Retrieved from http://nursingplanet.com/pn/nursing_process_psychiatric_nursing.html

Buckholtz, J. W., Treadway, M. T., Cowan, R. L., Woodward, N. D., Li, R., Ansari, M. S.,… Zald, D. H. (2010). Dopaminergic network differences in human impulsivity. *Science, 329*(5991), 532.

Dell'Osso, B., Altamura, C., Allen, A., Marazziti, D., & Hollander, E. (2006). Epidemiologic and clinical updates on impulse control disorders: A critical review. *Europe Archive Psychiatry Clinical Neuroscience, 256*, 464–475.

Ferrao, Y. A., Almeida, V. P., Bedin, N. R., Rosa, R., & Busnello, E. D. (2006). Impulsivity and compulsivity in patients with trichotillomania or skin picking compared with patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 47*(4), 282–288.

Fontenelle, L. F., Mendlowicz, M. V., & Versiani, M. (2003). Impulse control disorders in patients with obsessive-compulsive disorders. *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences, 59*, 30–37.

Grant, J. E. (2003). Family history and psychiatric comorbidity in person with kleptomania. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 44*(6), 437–441.

Grant, J. E., Kim, S. W., Odlaug, B. L., Buchanan, S. N., & Potenza, M. N. (2009). Late onset pathological gambling: Clinical correlates and gender differences. *Journal of Psychiatric Research, 43*, 380–387.

Grant, J. E., & Kim, W. (2003). Comorbidity of impulse control disorder in pathological gambler. *Acta Psychiatric Scandinavia, 108*, 203–207.

Grant, J. E., Odlaug, B. L., Schreiber, L. R., Chamberlain, S. R., & Kim, S. W. (2013). Memantine reduces stealing behavior and impulsivity in kleptomania: A pilot study. *International Clinical Psychopharmacology, 28*(2), 106–111.

Gupta, P. R. (2014). Emergence of kleptomania during treatment for obsessive compulsive disorder with fluvoxamine. *Indian Journal of Psychiatry, 56*(1), 100–101.

Krakowski, M. (2003). Violence and serotonin influence of impulse control, affect regulation, and social functioning. *Journal of Clinical Neurosciences, 15*, 294–305.

Mangot, A. G. (2014). Kleptomania: Beyond serotonin. *Journal of Neurosciences in Rural Practice, 5*(5), 105–106.

McCloskey, M. S., Noblett, K. L., Deffenbacher, J. L., Gollan, J. K., & Coccaro, E. F. (2008). Cognitive behavioral therapy for intermittent explosive disorder: A pilot randomized clinical trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 76*(5), 876–886.

Paone, T. R., & Douma, K. B. (2009). Child-centered play therapy with a seven-year-old boy diagnosed with intermittent explosive disorder. *International Journal of Play Therapy, 18*(1), 31–44.

Presta, S., Marazziti, D., Dell'Osso, L., Pfarner, C., Pallanti, S., & Cassano, G. B. (2002). Kleptomania: Clinical features and comorbidity in an Italian sample. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 43*(1), 7–12.

Probst, C. C., & Eimeren, T. V. (2013). The functional anatomy of impulse control disorders. *Current Neurology and Neuroscience Reports, 13*(10), 386.

Schreiber, L., Odlaug, B. L., & Grant, J. E. (2011). Impulse control disorders: Updated review of clinical characteristics and pharmacological management. *Frontiers in Psychiatry, 2*, 1.

Svedberg, P., Jormfeldt, H., & Arvidsson. B. (2003). Patients' conception of how health process are promoted in mental health nursing. A

qualitative study. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 10*, 448–456.

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Wanner, B., Vitaro, F., Carbonneau, R., & Tremblay, R. E. (2009). Cross-tagged links among gambling, substance use, and delinquency from midadolescence to young adulthood: Addictive and moderation effects of common risk factors. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 23*(1), 91–104.

Weintraub, D. (2008). Depamire and impulse control disorders in Parkinson's disease. *Annals of Neurology, 64*, 93–100.

Whitaker, H., Wolf, K. A., & Keuthen, N. (2003). Chronic hair pulling recognizing trichotillomania. *Clinician Reviews, 13*(3), 37–44.

Yau, Y. H., & Potenza, M. N. (2015). Gambling disorder and other behavioral addictions: Recognition and treatment. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry, 23*(2), 134–146.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *sexuality*
2. Differentiate between a sexual dysfunction and paraphilic disorder
3. Discuss the history and epidemiology of sexual dysfunctions
4. Identify diagnoses that constitute a sexual dysfunction
5. Discuss possible theories related to the etiology of sexual disorders and dysfunction
6. Explain the various treatment options available for persons experiencing sexual disorders and dysfunctions

CHAPTER 18

SEXUAL DYSFUNCTIONS, PARAPHILIC DISORDERS, AND GENDER DYSPHORIA

Jeffrey S. Jones

7. Discuss the common assessment strategies for individuals with sexual dysfunctions, identifying the importance of assessing sexual functioning as part of the nursing assessment
8. Describe the role of the nurse in promoting sexual health for patients
9. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with sexual disorders and dysfunctions, with an emphasis on boundary management when dealing with sexual health promotion of patients

KEY TERMS

Human sexuality
Paraphilic disorders
Sexual dysfunctions
Sexual functioning
Sexual health promotion

HUMAN SEXUALITY (how people experience themselves as sexual beings) and **SEXUAL FUNCTIONING** (the actual act of expressing yourself sexually either for pleasure or for reproductive purposes with others) are woven into the fabric of human life throughout the life cycle. Sexuality and sexual functioning play a major role in everything from basic reproduction to childhood development, maturation, adult lifestyle, and sexual satisfaction (Fogel & Lauver, 1990). Sexual feelings, functioning, and behaviors comprise an important part of each person, no matter age or situation, and should not be neglected or ignored by health care providers. Nurses provide care for the young as well as the old and need to be comfortable in incorporating sexual health assessments and development of a treatment plan regarding **SEXUAL HEALTH PROMOTION** (the integration of the somatic, emotional, intellectual, and social aspects of sexual beings, in ways that are positively ensuring) for clients.

SEXUAL DYSFUNCTIONS are conditions characterized by a disturbance in the sexual response cycle (desire, excitement, orgasm, or resolution) or pain associated sexual intercourse. **PARAPHILIC DISORDERS** are more characterized by recurrent, intense sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors involving certain activities or situations. Sexual preoccupation involving objects is termed as fetish disorder. Gender dysphoria specifically relates to an individual experiencing incongruence between his or her expressed gender and his or her assigned gender (American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013).

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of sexual disorders and dysfunctions. Scientific theories focusing on psychodynamic and neurobiological influences are described along with a summary of common treatment options. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a plan of care for a patient with a sexual dysfunction. Assessment of sexual functioning and the role of the nurse in promoting sexual health through therapeutic use of self skills, such as listening, and through psychoeducation are emphasized.

Difficulties with sexual functioning typically are classified as sexual dysfunctions.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

The origin of modern understanding of sexual functioning from a mental health perspective can be traced to Freud (Fogel & Lauver, 1990). Freud was one of the first psychiatrists to try to understand how sexual drives and urges manifest and are expressed. In particular, his understanding of the role of the unconscious in dealing with repressed feelings continues to play a fairly prominent role in psychoanalysis. Freud's theory on psychosexual development and the oral, genital, and anal phases of development were some of the first efforts at describing the transition from infancy to childhood. More recently, scientists such as William Masters, Virginia Johnson, and Alfred Kinsey studied the human sexual response cycle, women's sexuality, and sexuality and orientation as viewed on a continuum.

Sexual orientation can be viewed on a continuum from exclusively heterosexual to exclusively homosexual.

As theories are refined and knowledge is gained from further research into human sexuality, some topics that were previously referred to as disorders are now understood to be degrees of variance on a continuum. Homosexuality is such an example. Until the 1950s in the United States, homosexuality was considered by many to be a sexual (deviant) disorder. After years of research with psychologists and psychiatrists working in the field of sex therapy, it was concluded that homosexuality is not a disorder because it does not meet the necessary criteria in terms of impairment. Additionally, the particular work of zoologist and taxonomist Alfred C. Kinsey furthered this conclusion. Kinsey, in his groundbreaking empirical studies of sexual behavior among American adults, revealed that a number of his research participants reported having engaged in homosexual behavior to the point of orgasm after age 16 years (Kinsey, Pomeroy, & Martin, 1948; Kinsey, Pomeroy, Martin, & Gebhard, 1953). Furthermore, Kinsey and his colleagues reported that 10% of the males in their sample and 2% to 6% of the females (depending on marital status) had been more or less exclusively homosexual in their behaviors for at least 3 years between the ages of 16 and 55 years. This research prompted the view of sexuality as occurring on a continuum (**Figure 18-1**). In 1973, the weight of empirical data, coupled with changing social norms and the development of a politically active gay community in the United States, led the Board of Directors of the American Psychiatric Association to remove homosexuality from the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM*). It is also worth noting that current studies involving sexual orientation are finding that there appears to be a much greater fluidity in both male and female orientation than was previously thought (Kort, 2014).

In discussing sexual disorders and sexual dysfunction from a historical perspective, progress on this topic has always been influenced by political, cultural, and theological aspects. The concept of monogamy or sexual fidelity within a relationship or marriage is such an example.

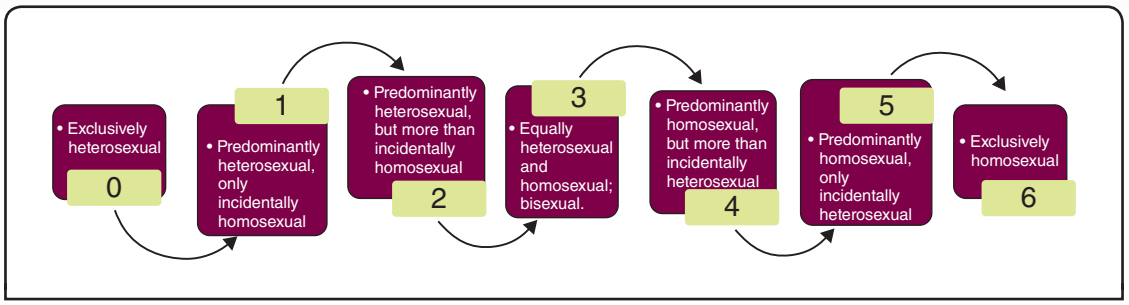


Figure 18-1 *Degrees of sexual orientation as viewed on a continuum.*
Source: Kinsey Scale as conceptualized by J. Jones.

The Western view has been influenced heavily by the variety of religious doctrines in our culture. Most have a negative, intolerant view of affairs. In some cases, those who have or had affairs are labeled as having a compulsive sexual disorder. This view must be compared with the cultural mind-set in other countries. Although not as prevalent in today's European culture, previously, certain fractions of French culture had a slotted time between the end of the workday and the beginning of evening hours that was set aside and referred to as "le temps d'affaires." During this time, a man or woman would have approximately 2 hours of private time between work and home in which he or she was allowed to do whatever he or she wanted to do. The partner was not to ask where the other had been. It was assumed that it was "none of their business." If the man or woman had decided to spend those hours between work and home with a lover, it was part of the accepted culture. This example is a glimpse into subtle, nuanced cultural differences on topics such as affairs that illustrate variations in perspective. However, this is not a generalization of the French culture because many French couples enjoy a monogamous relationship (Ubillos, Paez, & Gonzalez, 2000).

Sexual problems occur in approximately 31% of men and 43% of women.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Incidence and frequency of sexual disorders and dysfunctions can be difficult to obtain because this area is understudied and underreported. It is estimated that between 10% and 52% of men and 25% and 63% of women experience some sexual problems. The percentages that meet the diagnostic criteria for a sexual dysfunction are probably lower and less established (Heiman, 2002). **Box 18-1**

BOX 18-1: STATISTICS ON SEXUAL DISORDERS AND DYSFUNCTIONS

- Sexual problems occur in 43% of American women.
- Sexual problems occur in 31% of American men.
- About 10% of women have never had an orgasm.
- Painful intercourse has been experienced by almost two out of three women at some time in their lives.
- It is common for breastfeeding women to have inadequate vaginal lubrication.
- About 15% of postmenopausal women experience a decrease in their sexual desire.
- The success rate for women's orgasmic dysfunction treatment by sex therapists tends to range from 65% to 85%.
- About 22% of women experience low sexual desire (compared with 5% of men).
- Some 21% of men experience premature ejaculation.
- A woman's level of androgen (a hormone that develops and maintains masculine characteristics) typically falls 50% during and after menopause (but it is unclear whether the drop translates into decreased sex drive in a large percentage of women).

Source: From National Library of Medicine; National Women's Health Resource Center; Journal of the American Medical Association, health.www.howstuffworks.com

provides some statistical information about sexual disorders and dysfunctions.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

The term *dysfunction* is used to describe variations in sexual functioning that result in either distress when functioning sexually or inability to function sexually at all. The term *disorder* is usually diagnosed in the individual who, for either physiological or psychological reasons, cannot engage in sexual activity as desired. Penetration disorder, pain felt during intercourse, is an example. Sometimes the word *disorder* is used in the title of the diagnosis, such as erectile disorder, but the diagnosis is actually classified as a dysfunction. With that in mind, here are is an overview of common sexual concerns.

Delayed Ejaculation

There is a marked delay in the ability to ejaculate during sexual activity when desired. Sometimes there is a total inability to ejaculate, particularly during vaginal intercourse.

Erectile Disorder

A marked difficulty in achieving or maintaining an erection during sexual activity to the extent of inability to complete the activity. It may be acute or chronic and may be newly acquired or lifelong.

Female Orgasmic Disorder

A significant decrease in frequency of or a total absence of ability to achieve orgasm during sexual activity.

Female Sexual Interest/ Arousal Disorder

There is a significant decrease or total absence in psychological thoughts or fantasies involving sexual activity to the extent that there is little to no desire to engage in sexual activity. When sexual activity is attempted there is little to no physiological arousal or excitement with little to no genital sensation.

Genitopelvic Pain/ Penetration Disorder

Significant experience of pain during vaginal intercourse or attempts at vaginal intercourse. Severe anxiety around thoughts of or attempts at genital contact leading to any type of vaginal penetration.

Male Hypoactive Sexual Desire Disorder

A pattern of persistent decreased sexual thoughts or fantasies leading to noninterest in sexual activity, causing distress in relational functioning.

Premature Ejaculation

Frequent ejaculation when with a partner earlier than desired, usually within 60 seconds of activity such as intercourse.

Substance-Induced Sexual Disorder

An occurrence of any of the preceding sexual dysfunctions due to presence of a substance. Opiates, for example, commonly cause decreased desire in both males and females. Serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) medications frequently cause erectile disorders in men and arousal and orgasmic disorders in both men and women.

Paraphilic Disorders

These are a separate category of disorders that are characterized by sexual urges/fantasies around specific objects (fetish) or behaviors. It is important to note that only those who have acted on the urges in a manner that has caused distress in social or occupational functioning are diagnosed with a disorder. Having the thoughts or fantasies themselves may only constitute having paraphilic tendencies and not necessarily the disorder.

Voyeuristic Disorder

Sexual arousal from watching others (unsuspecting) nude, or engaged in sexual activity.

Exhibitionistic Disorder

Sexual arousal from exposing genitals to an unsuspecting person.

Frotteuristic Disorder

Sexual arousal from rubbing up against an unsuspecting person.

Sexual Masochism Disorder

Intense sexual arousal from being humiliated, bound, beaten, or made to suffer.

Sexual Sadism Disorder

Intense sexual arousal from witnessing or causing the suffering of another person (emotional or physical).

Pedophilic Disorder

Intense sexual arousal or urges involving prepubescent children (under age 13 years).

Fetishistic Disorder

Sexual arousal stemming from a nongenital body part (ears, legs) or a nonliving item (certain article of clothing, etc.).

Transvestic Disorder

Sexual arousal from dressing as the opposite gender (this is not to be confused with gender dysphoria).

Specified Paraphilic Disorder

Sexual arousal from entities other than the previous categories (i.e., urine, corpses, feces, etc.).

Gender Dysphoria

This has its own subcategory due to its unique nature. This disorder is usually characterized by individuals identifying themselves as the opposite gender and experiencing an incongruence between their expressed gender and their assigned gender. Gender dysphoria is more prevalent in childhood than in adulthood, but can be experienced by children, adolescents, or adults (Leiblum, 2007).

ETIOLOGY

Various theories have been proposed to explain the etiology of sexual dysfunctions. It is usually a blend of cultural, biological, relational, and belief system conflict.

Psychodynamic Influences

Professional sex therapists report that the work required with patients in sex therapy frequently has to do with the resolution of a psychodynamic conflict. For example, erectile disorder has received much attention lately with the advent of medications aimed at resolving the problem from a physiological perspective. Often the problem is not one of physical dysfunction but of an emotional stressor such as anxiety or depression. **Evidence-Based Practice 18-1** summarizes an important study related to anxiety and sexual functioning.

Anxiety has both emotional and physical consequences that can affect erectile function. It is among the most frequently cited contributor to psychological impotence. Excessive concern about sexual performance is often referred to as performance or honeymoon anxiety and may provoke an intense fear of failure and self-doubt. It can sometimes set off a cycle of chronic impotence. In response to anxiety, the brain releases chemicals that constrict the smooth muscles of the penis and its arteries. This constriction reduces the blood flow into and out of the penis. Even simple stress may promote the release of brain chemicals that disrupt potency in a similar way. Men in predominantly Western cultures fear two things when it comes to their sexual functioning: The first one has to do with the penis size; the second with the ability to maintain an erection. Add to this cultural mind-set the psychodynamic influences of issues such as guilt and shame and it is not difficult to see how mounting anxiety interrupts the sexual response cycle for men.

There may be further underlying forces interfering with the sexual process for men. Some men report that they end up marrying women who have traits similar to their mother. Depending on the nature of the relationship and the strength of the attachment between the man and his mother, the relationship between the man and his wife may begin to take on characteristics of the relationship he has with his mother. He may begin to develop what is termed a "Madonna complex." According to Freudian psychology, this complex often develops when the sufferer is raised by a cold and distant mother (Freud & Gay, 1989). This man will often date women with qualities of his mother, hoping to fulfill a need for intimacy unmet in childhood. Often, the wife begins to be seen as mother to the husband—a "Madonna" figure—and thus not a possible object of sexual attraction. For this reason, in the mind of the sufferer, love and sex cannot be mixed. The man is reluctant to have sexual relations with his wife because he thinks unconsciously that it would be incest. He will reserve sexuality for "bad" or "dirty" women, and will not develop "normal" feelings of love in these sexual relationships (Freud & Gay, 1989).

These types of psychodynamic forces influencing sexual intimacy are not exclusive to men. A disorder more frequent in woman than men is hypoactive sexual desire disorder (Leiblum, 2007). This disorder is associated with a relative deficiency or absence of sexual fantasies and/or desire to engage in sexual activity. New understanding around female sexual arousal has shed light on this phenomenon.

Previously, it was thought that females followed the same arousal patterns as men; that is, they felt desire, became aroused, experienced orgasm, then went through a resolution phase. It is now understood that the desire and arousal pattern for woman is much more complex and key elements such as emotional intimacy and emotional and physical satisfaction in the relationship need to exist before desire and arousal are triggered (Basson, 2001). **Figure 18-2** depicts the interplay of these elements. The belief is that females view sexual activity as an extension

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 18-1: DEPRESSION TREATMENT AND SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

STUDY

Baldwin, D. S., Palazzo, M. C., & Masdrakis, V. G. (2013). Reduced treatment-emergent sexual dysfunction as a potential target in the development of new antidepressants. *Depression Research and Treatment, 2013*, 256841. doi:10.1155/2013/256841

SUMMARY

Although most people value the sexual part of their life, having to choose between sexual functioning and relief of depressive symptoms is now an all too common dilemma for individuals receiving treatment for depression and anxiety. Although the illness of depression by itself can cause decreased sexual functioning, most, if not all, of the current antidepressant medications have potentially serious sexual side effects. The SSRI category appears to be the most assaultive, causing decreased libido, decreased arousal, and difficulty with erection, lubrication, and orgasm. The serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) may be overall less problematic in this regard but many individuals still experience problems with this class as well. Wellbutrin appears to be best tolerated for low incidence of sexual side effects and Remeron and Trazodone may have fewer side effects than their SSRI/SNRI counterparts. This puts forth the question of why aren't developers of antidepressants engineering new drugs to better reduce sexual side effects? The authors pose this question to researchers and urge providers to consider a drug's sexual side effect profile before prescribing so as not to put the client in the catch-22 dilemma of taking a medication that may offer relief of depressive symptoms yet compromise his or her sexual functioning.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Psychiatric-mental health nurses need to be cognizant of the influence that psychiatric medications have on numerous areas of functioning. The results from this study illustrate the many difficulties that psychiatric medications can play in causing sexual disorders and dysfunctions. Thus, psychiatric-mental health nurses need to integrate information from this study when obtaining a sexual history from a patient. However, nurses also need to ensure that they do not attribute depression or anxiety as the sole reason for the patient's complaints, but also consider potential medication-induced sexual dysfunction.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *In working with a patient who has depression, would it be important to assess sexual functioning to see if the depression is impairing this part of the patient's life?*
2. *If a patient reports during an assessment that he or she has "no desire" for sexual activity, how would you further assess this area?*

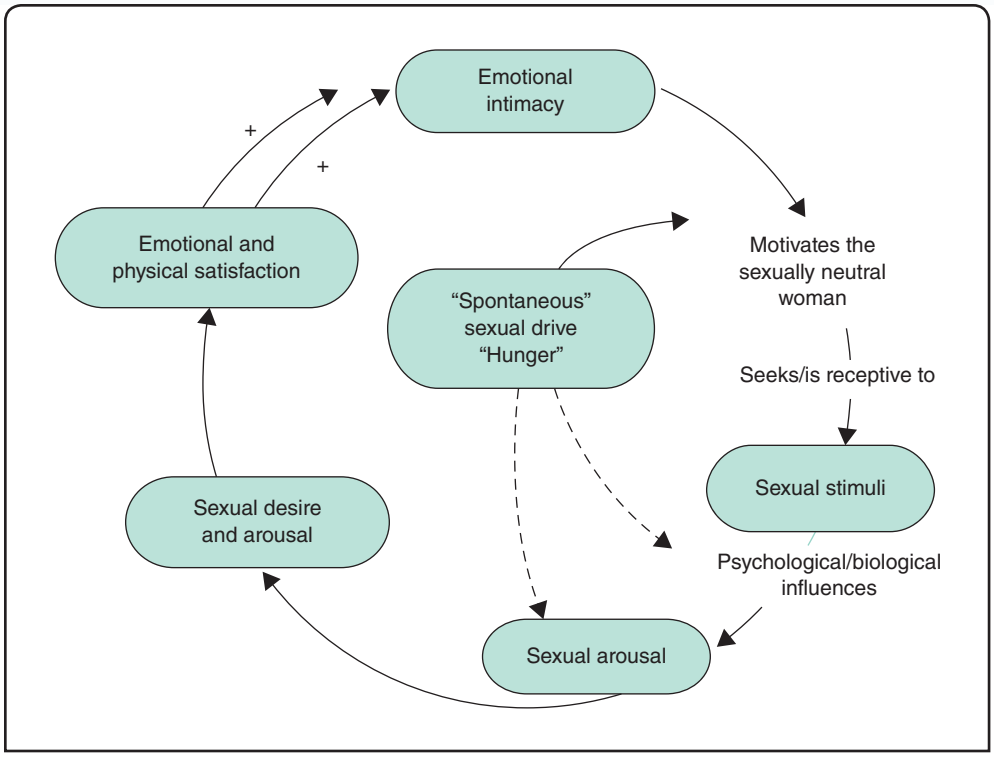


Figure 18-2 *Desire and arousal pattern in women.*

Source: From Basson (2002). Copyright 2002 by Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

of these elements of the interpersonal relationship. Thus, if key relationship components of emotional intimacy, safety, or trust are absent, the female partner may find interest in sexual activity diminished.

Neurobiological Influences

Many sexual dysfunctions, although still containing a psychological component, are biological or neurobiological in their primary cause. Many medical illnesses including cardiovascular disease and diabetes may alter the ability of the individual to function sexually. Additionally, medications that alter brain chemistry have been shown to influence sexual dysfunction. Most antidepressants that increase serotonin such as fluoxetine (Prozac), sertraline hydrochloride (Zoloft), and others potentially lower desire and inhibit or prevent orgasm. Women tend to report lower desire and more orgasmic problems with this class of medication (Heiman, 2002).

The mechanism of action causing dysfunction is thought to arise from the serotonin cell bodies on the brainstem in a raphe nuclei region of the brain. Some of these project into the cortical area of the brain. Sexual dysfunctions of lower desire may result due to inhibition from SSRIs in this region. Serotonergic projections also travel down the spine, and, when stimulated by SSRIs, inhibit aspects of sexual function such as vaginal lubrication and orgasm (Keltner, McAfee, & Taylor, 2002). The result is that intercourse may be painful and orgasm may be delayed or may not occur.

Emotional stressors, such as anxiety or depression, medical illnesses, and medications that alter the brain's chemistry, have been linked to the development of sexual disorders and dysfunctions.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Treatment options for patients with sexual disorders range from generalist interventions, such as psychoeducation and medication provided by nurses and other health care providers, to specialized intervention, such as psychotherapy from professionals credentialed as sex therapists.

Therapy

Psychotherapy is the preferred treatment intervention for most sexual disorders. Often the concern can be addressed by a therapist who specialized in sexual disorders and

DRUG SUMMARY 18-1: AGENTS USED FOR SEXUAL DISORDERS

DRUG/USE	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
sildenafil (Viagra)/erectile disorder tadalafil (Cialis)/erectile disorder vardenafil (Levitra)/erectile disorder	■ Investigate with the patient any underlying heart disease and use of nitrates as treatment; advise the patient that the drug should not be taken with nitrates because the patient could experience a significant drop in blood pressure. ■ Work with the patient to establish ways to reduce possible anxiety associated with sexual activity. ■ If appropriate and with the patient's permission, include the patient's partner in discussion and education. ■ Advise the patient to take the drug anywhere from 30 minutes to 4 hours before sexual activity; explain that the maximum benefit of the drug can be expected less than 2 hours after taking the drug. ■ Encourage the patient to engage in sexual stimulation because the drug is effective only when stimulation occurs. ■ Instruct the patient to notify the prescriber or seek emergency medical attention if he experiences an erection that lasts more than 4 hours.
flibanserin (proposed trade names Girosa and Addyi)/female arousal disorder (pending Food and Drug Administration [FDA] approval) bupropion (Wellbutrin)—off label/SSRI/SNRI-induced sexual side effects	■ Educate client on possibility of blood pressure changes as well as the potential for: Nausea Insomnia Upset stomach Dizziness Fatigue Dry mouth Anxiety ■ See Chapter 12 for nursing implications. ■ Educate on risks of use in androgen therapy.
Androgen therapy, that is, testosterone, estrogen/low testosterone in men. Estrogen replacement therapy in postmenopausal women	■ *For men* Increased risk of blood clots, heart attack, blood pressure. Caution to not let females touch area of application until gel is dry. May take 4 to 8 weeks before any sexual benefit is noted. ■ *For woman* Headaches Nausea; vaginal discharge; fluid retention; weight gain; breast tenderness; spotting or darkening of the skin, particularly on the face; in rare cases, an increased growth of preexisting uterine fibroids or a worsening of endometriosis.

through a variety of strategies such as the use of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), or insight-oriented therapy, and so on. For a list of therapists who specialize in this field, the nurse can consult the American Association of Sexuality Educators, Counselors, and Therapists at www.aasect.org to aid in the referral process.

Pharmacological

Medications can sometimes be helpful in treating erectile dysfunction **(Drug Summary 18-1)**. For example, sildenafil citrate (Viagra) helps treat erectile dysfunction by preventing the breakdown of a chemical called phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5). Normally, with arousal, nerve signals are sent from the brain to the penis, causing chemicals to be released that relax muscles in the penis. When these muscles relax, large amounts of blood are able to enter the penis, resulting in an erection. The erection is reversed when PDE5 breaks down the other chemicals that caused the muscles to relax. When muscles in the penis constrict again, blood leaves the penis. Thus, when sildenafil prevents the breakdown of PDE5, the erection is achieved and prolonged.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Although generalist nurses may not find themselves directly treating or caring for patients with sexual disorders, an understanding and awareness of this spectrum of disorders are helpful. More commonly, the nurse generalist will encounter patients with sexual dysfunctions that may be uncovered through skillful questioning. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients who may be experiencing a sexual disorder or dysfunction. **Plan of Care 18-1** provides an example for a patient with a sexual dysfunction.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

Travelbee offered an interpersonal model to guide practice from a human-to-human perspective. The first phase of the relationship according to Travelbee is the original encounter. For many nurses, this is during the patient's admission when the nurse performs the initial assessment. The original encounter is characterized by first impressions of each other. The nurse and the patient initially perceive each other in stereotypical roles (Travelbee, 1971). The nurse needs to be able to gather data related to sexual function in a competent, coherent, and comfortable manner. This requires that the nurse be very clear and in tune with how he or she feels about sexual functioning. The nurse must understand and acknowledge his or her own sexual feelings, biases, and beliefs. If any are negative or biased, the nurse must temporarily suspend them when working with patients.

When gathering such personal data during an assessment, the patient needs to sense unconditional acceptance by the nurse. **Therapeutic Interaction 18-1** provides an example of the therapeutic use of self when performing a sexual assessment. The moment a patient even slightly senses a prejudicial attitude, voice inflection, change of tone, or change in body posture during the interview, the chance that the person will self-disclose important information relative to this area of assessment lessens.

Sexual Health Assessment

Often, the opportunity for sexual health assessment can be performed during the initial assessment. This sometimes is awkwardly presented during the genitourinary or reproductive section of the nursing assessment. When approaching this section of the assessment, it may be helpful to quickly plan ahead and consider some of the following:

- *Are you alone with the patient?*
- *Is the spouse or significant other with the patient?*
- *Are there family members around?*
- *What is the age of the patient, spouse, or family members?*
- *What are the cultural beliefs?*
- *Have you established if there are any religious beliefs?*
- *What is the overall nature of the illness that has brought the patient for care?*
- *How has the patient answered the questions so far?*
- *Does the patient seem comfortable proceeding with more personal information?*
- *Do you need to ask others to leave the room while you finish the assessment?*
- *Do you need to pull the curtain or otherwise arrange for privacy?*
- *What is your body posture? Are you relaxed/tense? Are you making eye contact? Are your actions establishing clear and healthy boundaries?*

PLAN OF CARE 18-1: THE PATIENT WITH A SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Sexual dysfunction; related to potential side effects of medication and anxiety; manifested by inability to attain or sustain an erection, concerns related to sexual performance, and decreased pleasure with sexual activity.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will verbalize an increase in pleasure and ability to engage in sexual activity with less anxiety.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Establish rapport and provide for privacy. Demonstrate unconditional acceptance, obtain the patient's permission, and begin assessment with least sensitive topics	Establishing rapport is essential for developing the nurse–patient relationship, especially in light of the sensitive nature of the topic. Obtaining the patient's permission is important for developing trust and demonstrates respect for the patient. Providing for privacy and demonstrating unconditional acceptance are important for developing trust. Beginning with the least sensitive topics first promotes the patient's comfort with the discussion
Review the patient's history and physical exam for possible underlying contributing factors related to the dysfunction. Assess the patient's feelings related to sexual functioning and dysfunction	Reviewing the history and physical exam provides information about possible causes, such as underlying medical conditions or use of medications that can contribute to the dysfunction; assessing the patient's feelings provides insight into the patient's view and significance of the condition
Provide the patient with information related to the specific disorder as appropriate. Help clarify any myths or misconceptions the patient may have	Explaining and clarifying help to provide the patient with an understanding of the condition and dispel myths or misconceptions that may be contributing to feelings
Explain and/or administer prescribed medications such as phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (i.e., sildenafil)	Using medications may be necessary to address the underlying physiological issue related to the dysfunction
Discuss methods for sexual expression other than sexual intercourse; include the patient's partner in the discussion and encourage the patient and partner to communicate openly	Discussing other methods of sexual expression can help the patient and partner attain and/or maintain intimacy. Including the partner in the discussion promotes sharing and enhances feelings of intimacy
Obtain referral for counseling or sex therapy if appropriate	Referring the patient and partner to a sex therapist may be necessary to promote sexual functioning

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 18-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Disturbed body image; related to recent mastectomy; manifested by feelings of inadequacy, shame or guilt, and sexual relationship difficulties.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will verbalize positive statements about sexual self.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient's view of self and influence of dysfunction on this view; include the patient's partner in assessment	Assessing the patient's and partner's views provides information from which to individualize interventions
Assist the patient in looking at himself or herself realistically; help the patient acknowledge the link between feelings, self-esteem, and sexual functioning	Assisting the patient in looking at self realistically and acknowledging the link help the patient to correct misconceptions and promote feelings of self-esteem
Work with the patient to refocus thinking; assist the patient in identifying strengths and resources; emphasize the patient's strengths and positive aspects of self	Assisting the patient in identifying strengths promotes feelings of self-worth and self-esteem
Help patient and partner discuss feelings related to body image and self-esteem and how these influence sexual activity; assist them in separating feelings from behaviors	Identifying feelings and influence on sexual activity can promote understanding of the connection and insight into behaviors
Work with the patient and partner on ways to alleviate feelings that can interfere with sexual activity; encourage open, honest communication	Encouraging ways to alleviate feelings related to sexual dysfunction and open honest communication can facilitate self-esteem and self-confidence
Assist the patient and partner in appropriate problem solving and provide positive reinforcement	Using appropriate problem solving and reinforcing it promote feelings of self-confidence and self-worth

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

Assuming that the nurse has gone through these questions and feels that it is appropriate to move ahead with a sexual assessment, the following statement may provide an opening: "Mr./Mrs. Smith, I need to ask you some questions about your reproductive health. This is a chance for us to talk about any concerns you may have and a chance for me to assist you in this area. Are you ok with my discussing this with you?" Once permission is granted, proceed while conveying a comfortable, relaxed, yet interested attitude.

The ability to proceed with the discussion may signal the transition to the next phase of Travelbee's model, emerging identities. The nurse may be aware that he or she and the patient perceive each other as unique individuals.

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 18-1: OBTAINING A SEXUAL ASSESSMENT

Ms. Stevens is admitted to the unit with severe depression. The nurse is performing a nursing assessment.

The nurse enters the room and introduces self while smiling; pulls the curtain closed and sits down in a chair next to the bed, facing the patient at eye level. The nurse proceeds with the assessment and is now ready to assess the patient's sexual health.	Provides introduction and sets the tone for the rest of the interaction; pulling the curtain closed allows for privacy; sitting at the level of the patient demonstrates a willingness to engage with the patient
Nurse: "Ms. Stevens, I need to learn more about your reproductive/sexual functioning now. Do you mind if I ask you questions concerning these matters?" (maintains eye contact)	Gains permission and shows respect; eye contact demonstrates interest
Ms. Stevens: "Yes, that's fine."	Indicates comfortableness in proceeding
Nurse: "Are you in a sexual relationship at the present?"	Provides a beginning point without making any assumptions as to the nature of the relationship
Ms. Stevens: "Yes, I am with my husband."	Clarifies the nature of the relationship as sexual and that she is sexually active
Nurse: "Are there any concerns related to sexual functioning?"	Focuses on concerns and provides segue into opportunities for exploration of problems and sexual health promotion
Ms. Stevens: "Yes, he wants it more than I do."	Indicates possible area for concern
Nurse: "Tell me more about that, for example, has it always been that way or is this a recent issue?"	Inquires about the matter to get perspective as to this being a new concern or one that was preexisting
Ms. Stevens: "It's been more recently since I've been depressed and on medication." (starts to cry)	Provides information as to the nature of the concern and reveals the emotional impact of the problem
Nurse: "Talk about what you are feeling now."	Seeks clarification of patient's feelings

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 18-1: *(CONT.)*
OBTAINING A SEXUAL ASSESSMENT

Ms. Stevens: "I worry that I'm going to lose him, he's going to have an affair or something. We used to be so close; our sex life was great when we were first married. I feel like we are drifting apart. I just have no desire at all."	Answers in a manner that reveals the enormity of the problem, indicating a broader relationship issue
Nurse: "Have you and your husband had a chance to seek professional help regarding these matters?"	Tries to determine if any interventions have been attempted
Ms. Stevens: "No, we've been too embarrassed to talk about it with anyone."	Indicates her level of discomfort around this issue
Nurse: "I can refer you to a local sex therapist after discharge who specializes in working with couples on such matter if you like." (smiles)	Provides opportunity for psychoeducation and sexual health promotion
Ms. Stevens: "Really (laughs), I didn't know there were such things out there."	Indicates curiosity and potential openness to the idea. Laughter indicates a brief shift in mood

A connection has been established and the bond of a relationship is beginning to form. Now is a good time to take a quick moment to ask "What has allowed me to feel this connection?" Most important, are you ready from a boundary perspective to proceed? If so, the 10 questions included in **Box 18-2** can help structure the experience. The flow of the questioning will depend on the facility's nursing assessment form. Box 18–2 highlights the important elements to include regardless of the structure of the form.

The nurse needs to obtain permission from the patient before proceeding with an assessment of sexual functioning.

Boundary Maintenance

Working with patients when the focus is on sexual issues can be uncomfortable. The subject matter combined with the expectation of practicing psychiatric-mental health nursing from a relationship-based perspective will challenge the skillful navigation of boundaries. The need to stay within the boundaries of a healthy nurse–patient relationship means that the nurse does not become overinvolved with the patient just because the treatment issue is one of a sexual nature. Conversely, the subject matter may also be awkward for the nurse. Therefore, the nurse must avoid failing to engage the patient, becoming underinvolved, or being neglectful with treatment just because the treatment issue is one of a sexual nature.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

The next phase of the nursing process is planning. After concluding an interview in which assessment data were gleaned implicating a sexual dysfunction, deciding on

BOX 18-2: 10 ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS FOR A NURSING SEXUAL HEALTH ASSESSMENT

1. Do you consider yourself sexually active?
2. If so, please discuss any concerns related to your sexual functioning; for example, pain, or any difficulty functioning as you would like.
3. If you are not sexually active, please share with me the reason(s) for this? (belief system, illness, etc.)
4. Please discuss any illness (medical or emotional) that may be concerning you regarding your ability to function as desired sexually.
5. How do you maintain your sexual health; that is, breast exams, testicular exams, prostate exams, Pap tests?
6. Please discuss any experience of sexual trauma such as rape, sexual abuse, or anything you felt was sexually abusive or exploitive.
7. Have there been any changes in your level of interest in sexual functioning (either increase or decrease) and if so, has this caused any difficulties?
8. Based on our conversation so far, what would you like to talk about further?
9. Is there anything you would like more information on?
10. I will be developing a nursing treatment plan based on my whole assessment. Would you like me to focus on any area of concern regarding sexual health promotion?

Source: Developed by J. Jones.

how to incorporate this into the treatment plan must involve a sense of where the patient feels this need falls. This can be best accomplished by ensuring empathetic practice. As described by Travelbee (1971), the empathy phase is characterized by the ability to share in the other person's experience. The nurse may begin to imagine how having a sexual dysfunction has affected this patient's overall well-being. **Consumer Perspective 18-1** provides insight into what it is like to experience a sexual dysfunction.

The nurse's desire to address this issue and make it a treatment goal indicates movement into sympathy. This next phase of the therapeutic relationship, sympathy, goes beyond empathy and occurs when the nurse desires to alleviate the cause of the patient's illness or suffering. This is where the appropriate plan of care is generated. This phase requires a combination of the disciplined intellectual approach combined with the therapeutic use of self-using appropriate boundaries.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

In addition to the previous strategies, it is important to remember that you will also be held to these following patient-centered care practice knowledge and skills in accordance with QSEN initiatives.

- Explore ethical and legal implications of patient-centered care
- Describe the limits and boundaries of therapeutic patient-centered care
- Recognize the boundaries of therapeutic relationships
- Facilitate informed patient consent for care

Source: Cronenwett et al. (2007).

For example, the nurse discovers during the course of an assessment that a patient is experiencing erectile dysfunction and this problem has never been disclosed before. Thus, the nurse, in collaboration with the patient who believes this to be a significant issue for him and his partner, includes this as part of the treatment plan. This decision is not because the nurse has determined that this is a problem. Rather, it is because the nurse has experienced sympathy and understood the importance of the matter to the patient because they are now in a therapeutic relationship.

Due to the wide range of assessment findings and multiple problems faced by patients with sexual disorders and dysfunctions, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Sexual dysfunction related to painful intercourse*
- *Ineffective sexuality patterns related to low desire*

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 18-1: A COUPLE EXPERIENCING GENITOPELVIC PAIN/PENETRATION DISORDER

Penetration disorder strikes young and old, sexually experienced and inexperienced. In our case, we were young and inexperienced. Marrying right after graduation from college, neither of us had had intercourse before and we really didn't know a lot about sex. We were basically college sweethearts that loved each other, had plans for a family, and hopes for the "American Dream." We were both brought up in caring, loving families.

We discovered genitopelvic pain on our honeymoon—the classic primary penetration disorder story about the young couple that couldn't consummate, no matter how hard they tried. Calls back home to the family physician were met with the standard advice to "Try using more foreplay or more lubricant—and just keep trying. Don't worry, you'll figure it out." We tried again and again using every method we could think of, but it was like "hitting a wall"; penetration was simply impossible. We were confused and felt utterly foolish and embarrassed.

When this happened to us, the Internet was still in its infancy. Endless searches revealed little useful information. With the honeymoon over, we worked hard adjusting to our new careers in a new city. We relocated all our possessions and created a home, all the while carrying on as if everything was perfect. Our family and friends had no idea what we were experiencing. We assumed somehow that we would eventually figure it out and didn't dream of suffering the embarrassment of letting anyone know about our strange honeymoon problem and ongoing failure.

As is typical for couples going through penetration disorder, the passage of time began to create difficult paradoxes. How do you simply go in to a new doctor and say "By the way, we've been married for 7 months and we haven't had sex yet. Any ideas?" A person feels extreme shame and failure, to the point that it becomes very difficult to be courageous enough to seek help. In our case, we reluctantly got up our courage out of necessity and kept asking more professionals, until finally we were referred to a sex therapist who knew exactly how to begin helping us.

- *Situational low self-esteem related to erectile dysfunction*
- *Chronic low self-esteem related to changes in body following mastectomy for breast cancer*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support.

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient would collaboratively determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, possible causes such as medication side effects for the erectile dysfunction will be explored and identified.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

After the patient's needs have been identified and outcomes and goals have been set, the nurse works with the patient to implement interventions. These interventions will vary depending on the actual diagnosis. Before proceeding, the nurse needs to make sure that he or she has established rapport with the patient. This last phase of Travelbee's model is characterized by nursing actions that alleviate an ill person's distress. The nurse and the patient are relating as human being to human being (Travelbee, 1971). The patient exhibits both trust and confidence in the nurse. **How Would You Respond? 18-1** provides an example of a patient with a sexual dysfunction requiring intervention.

Consider the example of a patient with erectile dysfunction in which the problem is disrupting his relationship. Possibly, one of the interventions may be to rule out potential side effects of the patient's current medications. There may be a combination of medications that the patient is taking that could be contributing to this dysfunction, for example, antihypertensives or antidepressants. Several levels of intervention would be appropriate. First, the nurse would share education about potential side effects of medication to establish the patient's knowledge base and determine what would be the next course of action. The patient may have an awareness of these potential side effects and has raised this concern with the provider on several occasions, but

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 18-1: MAJOR DEPRESSION AND LOSS OF INTEREST

Mrs. Rittenour is a 47-year-old Caucasian female homemaker, mother of two teenagers, admitted to the mental health unit with a diagnosis of Major Depressive Disorder Recurrent, Most Recent Episode Severe. She had been on the antidepressant escitalopram (Lexapro) at 20 mg for over the past 3 years with good results. Recently, she reported experiencing depressed mood, sleep disturbance, change of appetite, and vague suicidal ideations. Her primary mental health care provider, a psychiatric clinical nurse specialist, added aripiprazole (Abilify) 5 mg to augment the regimen. Mrs. Rittenour reported almost immediate relief of her symptoms and for approximately 1 month claimed she "felt like her old self." Unfortunately, the following month her husband announced he wanted a divorce as he had decided to pursue a relationship with someone else. Mrs. Rittenour quickly decompensated and presented to the emergency department with suicidal ideation. She was admitted for observation and possible medication reevaluation.

During the nursing assessment, Mrs. Rittenour reveals that she had lost her interest in sexual activity about 3 years ago and that she and her estranged husband rarely engaged in any form of intimacy. She also reported that he noted her cycles were very irregular and her moodiness seemed to correlate to her cycles. She reported increased sleep disturbance in the past 3 years, trouble focusing and concentrating, and painful intercourse on the few occasions she did engage in sexual activity with her husband. How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *During the sexual health portion of Mrs. Rittenour's history, what areas would need further exploration?*
2. *Suppose Mrs. Rittenour asks you what you would do about the marriage if you were in her shoes. How would you respond?*
3. *When working with this patient, you notice yourself becoming angry and frustrated with her at times. This seems to occur primarily when she discusses her interest in reconciling with her husband, imagining that, when you were young your father frequently left your mother and then would come back. What might you be experiencing?*

nothing has been changed. This may present an opportunity for the nurse, in treatment team meetings with the provider, to advocate on the patient's behalf. The timing and pacing of these interventions are key factors. First is the manner in which the nurse approaches the patient with the suspicions about potential side effects. When does the nurse do this? Should it be done when the patient's partner is visiting? Should the nurse gather some printed information about the medication regimen and discuss it with the patient? How should the nurse begin the conversation? A possible start may go something like this:

"Hello, Mr. Smith, I am the nurse on duty today and will be meeting with you periodically throughout the shift. Do you mind if we review your treatment plan during one of those meetings to see how things are going?" Later, when the nurse senses that the timing is right, he or she might bring in the treatment plan and briefly review the problems identified. When the nurse gets to the sexual dysfunction problem, it will have been

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 18-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Several areas need to be addressed during the sexual health portion of the assessment. This, however, would only occur after the patient's suicidality is assessed and immediate interventions are implemented to ensure the patient's safety. Once the patient's condition stabilizes, then the nurse would continue with the assessment. Areas to address would include the patient's change of sexual function, along with her change in menstrual cycle and medications used for treating her depression. According to her statement, the patient's loss of interest occurred around the same time that she was prescribed the antidepressant.

When responding to Mrs. Rittenour about what you would do if you were her, it would be important to clarify why she is asking you. Is she doing so because she doesn't know what to do? It would be best to reflect the question back to her to encourage her to process what her options are. Another area for self-reflection may be your frustration in dealing with the situation as some of the key elements mirror your own life (i.e., your father left your mother periodically). If you do find yourself experiencing some countertransference, it is all the more important that you do not provide your opinion, but focus on the patient as you may have lost some objectivity.

introduced within the context of his overall health and may be less threatening to discuss. The next conversation may go accordingly:

"I see that one of the problems listed is sexual dysfunction related to an inability to engage in intercourse manifested by inability to achieve and/or maintain erection. One of the interventions listed is an opportunity to rule out potential side effects of medications known to cause this problem. Were you aware that some of the medications you are taking may be causing this problem?"

The nurse then assesses the patient's knowledge base, provides information as appropriate through patient education about medication and potential side effects, and together with the patient plans on the next, if any, intervention. As mentioned, this may involve the nurse advocating on the patient's behalf with the provider coordinating the medicine regimen. Again, deciding how to approach the person(s) responsible for this and in what forum will be important: approach them privately or at the nursing station? Wait until the treatment team is available or when they are making rounds, joining them in the patient's room? The nurse's assessment and judgment of when and how to do this may determine the success or failure of this intervention.

Psychoeducation and acting as a patient advocate are two key nursing interventions for patients with sexual dysfunction.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The nurse may have successfully provided education regarding potential medication side effects to the patient, and may have also further successfully advocated for the patient about changes in medications with the treatment team. Evaluation of successful goal attainment may not be identified immediately or ever known to the nurse because the patient may be discharged right after the interventions. The nurse would focus evaluation on the interventions, which in this case would be that the nurse provided appropriate education after identifying a problem, and successfully advocated on the patient's behalf for change in a medication regimen to try to address the identified sexual dysfunction. The resolution of the actual sexual dysfunction would have to be evaluated as "unknown or partially met."

The nurse should reflect on his or her own feelings as the scenario unfolded with regard to such intimate issues. When evaluating the treatment plan, the nurse needs to determine if the goals were reflective of the patient's needs and if healthy boundaries were maintained. The nurse also needs to determine if there were any areas at issue that became uncomfortable and, if so, how the nurse dealt with them. The nurse questions himself or herself about the possibility of self-discomfort interfering with not meeting certain goals. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Sexual dysfunctions involve a disturbance in the sexual response cycle. Paraphilias involve recurrent intense sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors.
- Freud was one of the first psychiatrists to attempt to understand how sexual drives and urges are manifested and expressed. Political, cultural, and theological issues of the time influence the approach and discussion of sexual disorders and dysfunctions.
- Treatment options range from psychoeducation and medication administration to specialized interventions such as sex therapy.
- Assessment of a patient with a sexual disorder requires the nurse to understand and acknowledge his or her feelings, beliefs, and biases related to sexual functioning.
- Identifying and maintaining appropriate boundaries are priorities when caring for a patient with a sexual disorder or dysfunction.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. When assessing a patient with genitopelvic pain/penetration disorder, which of the following would the nurse expect the patient to report?

a. Inability to attain adequate lubrication in response to sexual excitement
b. Recurrent pain in the genital area with sexual intercourse
c. A deficient lack of desire for sexual activity
d. An avoidance for engaging in sexual activity

2. A nurse is engaged in assessing a male patient and has determined that it is appropriate to move on to assessing the patient's sexual history. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do first?

a. Make sure that the nurse and the patient are alone
b. Ask the patient about whether or not he is sexually active
c. Question the patient about any history of sexual abuse
d. Obtain the patient's permission to ask him questions about this area
e. All of the above

3. A group of students are reviewing information about the various types of sexual dysfunctions. The students demonstrate understanding of this topic when they identify which of the following as *not* an example of a sexual dysfunction?

a. Genitopelvic pain/penetration disorder
b. Gender dysphoria
c. Premature ejaculation
d. Erectile disorder

4. A client reports that since being placed on Prozac she notices a decrease in her interest in sexual desire, and difficulty becoming aroused and achieving orgasm when she does engage in sexual activity. You would plan your nursing intervention around the likelihood that she is suffering from:

a. Substance/medication-induced sexual dysfunction
b. Female sexual interest/arousal disorder
c. Genitopelvic pain/penetration disorder
d. Female orgasmic disorder

5. A nurse is preparing an in-service presentation about sexual dysfunction for a group of nurses involved in a continuing education course. As part of the presentation, the nurse is planning to describe the classic male sexual response cycle. Place the phases of the cycle in the order in which the nurse would present the information.

a. Resolution
b. Desire
c. Orgasm
d. Excitement

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Baldwin, D. S., Palazzo, M. C., & Masdrakis, V. G. (2013). Reduced treatment-emergent sexual dysfunction as a potential target in the development of new antidepressants. *Depression Research and Treatment, 2013*, 256841. doi: 10.1155/2013/256841

Basson, R. (2001). Female sexual response: The role of drugs in the management of sexual dysfunction. *Obstetrics and Gynecology, 98*(2), 350–353.

Basson, R. (2002). Rethinking low sexual desire in women. *BJOG: An International Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, 109*(4), 357–363.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Fogel, C. A., & Lauver, D. (1990). *Sexual health promotion.* Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders Company.

Freud, S. & Gay, P. (1989). *The Freud reader.* New York, NY: W. W. Norton and Company.

Heiman, J. R. (2002). Sexual dysfunction: Overview of prevalence, etiological factors, and treatments. *Journal of Sex Research, 39*(1), 73–78.

Keltner, N. L., McAfee, K. M., & Taylor, C. L. (2002). Mechanisms and treatment of SSRI-induced sexual dysfunction. *Perspectivesin Psychiatric Care, 38*(3), 111–116.

Kinsey, A. C., Pomeroy, W. R., & Martin, C. E. (1948). *Sexual behavior in the human male.* Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders.

Kinsey, A. C., Pomeroy, W. R., Martin, C. E., & Gebhard, P. H. (1953). *Sexual behavior in the human female.* Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders Company.

Kort, J. (2014). *Is my husband gay, straight, or bi?:* A *guide for women concerned about their men.* Lanham, MD: Rowman & Littlefield.

Leiblum, S. R. (2007). *Principals and practice of sex therapy* (4th ed.). New York, NY: Guilford Publications.

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Ubillos, S., Paez, D., & Gonzalez, J. (2000). Culture and sexual behavior. *Psicothema, 12*, 70–82.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 19

FEEDING AND EATING DISORDERS

James O'Mahony

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define *eating disorders*
2. Discuss the history and epidemiology of eating disorders
3. Identify the different eating disorders
4. Distinguish among the diagnostic criteria for eating disorders
5. Discuss possible theories related to the etiology of eating disorders, differentiating the biological, sociocultural, and familial influences, as well as psychological and individual risk factors associated with these disorders
6. Explain various treatment options for persons experiencing eating disorders
7. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of patients with eating disorders

KEY TERMS

Anorexia nervosa
Avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder
Binge eating disorder
Bulimia nervosa
Eating disorder
Feeding disorder
Obesity
Pica
Rumination disorder

FEEDING and **EATING DISORDERS** are characterized by a persistent disturbance of eating or eating-related behavior that results in the altered consumption or absorption of food and that significantly impairs physical health or psychosocial functioning. Eating disorders include **PICA**, **RUMINATION DISORDER**, **AVOIDANT/RESTRICTIVE FOOD INTAKE DISORDER**, **ANOREXIA NERVOSA** (refusal or inability to maintain a minimally normal body weight), **BULIMIA NERVOSA** (repeated episodes of binge eating followed by compensatory behaviors), and **BINGE EATING DISORDER** (characterized by episodes of binge eating, i.e., eating in a discrete period of time an amount of food that is larger than most other people would eat in a similar period under comparable circumstances). The most common eating disorders include anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, and binge eating disorder; therefore, these disorders will be the primary focus of this chapter.

The diagnostic criteria for rumination disorder, avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder, anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, and binge eating disorder result in a classification scheme that is mutually exclusive, so that during a single episode, only one of these diagnoses can be assigned. The rationale for this approach is that, despite a number of common psychological and behavioral features, the disorders differ substantially in clinical course, outcome, and treatment needs. A diagnosis of pica, however, may be assigned in the presence of any other feeding and eating disorder (American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013). Obesity (a body mass index [BMI] greater than or equal to 30) is not included in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 5th Edition (*DSM-5*; APA, 2013) as a mental disorder. Obesity (excess body fat) results from the long-term excess of energy intake relative to energy expenditure. A range of genetic, physiological, behavioral, and environmental factors that vary across individuals contributes to the development of obesity; thus, obesity is not considered a mental disorder. However, there are robust associations between obesity and a number of mental disorders (e.g., binge eating disorder, depressive and bipolar disorders, schizophrenia; APA, 2013). Feeding and eating disorders have become increasingly prevalent and of great concern to mental health professionals.

To understand eating disorders, it is important to understand the concept of eating. Human eating serves many functions in addition to nutrition. Normal healthy eating is not only about what a person eats but also how and why a person eats, and the attitudes and beliefs held in relation to food and eating. How a person eats differs from individual to individual, and is dependent on many factors such as:

- *Physical needs (biological)*
- *Cultural needs (cultural)*
- *Lifestyle (social)*
- *Emotional needs (psychological)*

Healthy eating behaviors are characterized by balanced eating patterns, appropriate calorie intake, and body weight appropriate for gender, height, age, and level of activity. Nurses need to be aware of the various factors pertaining to the functions of eating and food to provide appropriate care for recovery to those who are experiencing eating disorders.

This chapter addresses the historical perspectives and epidemiology of eating disorders, followed by a detailed description of eating disorders and the development of a greater phenomenological understanding of eating disorders through collaborative case conceptualization (Kuyken, Padesky, & Dudley, 2011). Biological, sociocultural, familial, and psychological factors that may potentially contribute to eating disorders are described along with common treatment options, including pharmacotherapy, psychoanalytical approaches, cognitive and behavioral treatments, group and family therapy, supportive therapy, and nutritional therapies. Application of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective is presented, including a plan of care for a patient with an eating disorder.

Numerous factors affect an individual's eating patterns. Eating provides nutrition but also other functions.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

In the past 30 years, eating disorders have become more clearly defined. In Western culture, society and, in particular, the media offer contrasting messages about food and eating (Abraham & Llewellyn-Jones, 2005; Hausenbias et al., 2013). The first message is that a slim woman is a successful, attractive, healthy, happy, fit, and popular person. Most teenagers believe that being slim will help them secure a good job, find a boyfriend, be popular with their peers, be and look fit and healthy, and get on well with their family. The second message is that eating is pleasurable.

Today's society is communicating mixed messages. For example, in nearly every issue of women's magazines, there are new diets to ensure thinness followed by photographs of luscious cakes. Furthermore, the provision of food in our society is viewed as a sign of caring. The cultural imperatives place a burden on parents to provide abundant quantities of food for their children. Therefore, it is not surprising that in the face of two contradictory messages, most young women diet, with some of them developing eating disorders.

The wider societal influences of the media and popular culture have recently received much scrutiny and criticism for their negative aspects in relation to body size and its importance (Ringwood, 2010). Thinness is highly prized. People who can remain slender, lose weight, or are seen to be in control of their appetites are praised and rewarded. Celebrity culture is fixated on issues of weight and shape—the final domain where personal comments are unchallenged and not taboo. Issues such as sexual orientation, religion, race, and even age are no longer acceptable topics for derogatory remarks; however, weight and shape continue to be (Ringwood, 2010). As with families, the media itself does not cause eating disorders. However, it can contribute to the continuation of the myth and condition. Surrounded by hyperperfect images of celebrated thinness, individuals reinforce their strongly held belief that their weight and shape are the most important aspects of their being (Ringwood, 2010).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Eating disorders are relatively rare among the general population. The overall incidence rate has remained stable over the past decades; however, there has been an increase in the high-risk group of 15- to 19-year-old girls (Smink, van Hoeken, & Hoek, 2012). Eating disorders have long been perceived to occur primarily in women; few disorders in general medicine or psychiatry exhibit such a skew in gender distribution (Rhys Jones & Morgan, 2010). Recent research has focused on the assumption and stereotype that eating disorders in men are associated with homosexuality. Feldman and Meyer (2007) demonstrated a much higher prevalence for eating disorders among gay and bisexual men than their heterosexual counterparts, with more than 15% of gay or bisexual men suffering from anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, or eating disorder not otherwise specified. It has been suggested that gay men may be under more pressure to conform to being thin, are more dissatisfied with their bodies, and tend to diet more. This may be related to the fact that values and norms place a heightened focus on physical appearance to which men may feel pressured to conform, ultimately influencing self-esteem and body image satisfaction. However, Morgan and Arcelus (2009) found widespread body image dissatisfaction among younger men, regardless of sexual orientation. Media and peer group influences appeared particularly relevant among gay men, but there were more similarities than differences between gay and heterosexual men, with both groups exposed to pressures to manipulate body shape and both aware of such pressures sufficient to resist them. Male beauty ideals differed from that of women in that they appeared compatible and consistent with healthy physiology, and health appeared less divorced from the aesthetic ideal for men than women.

In the late 1960s, anorexia nervosa became a much more prevalent disorder in Western societies. Young females from middle- and upper-class families were beginning to deprive themselves of food. The following decade saw the emergence of bulimia nervosa, where young women alternated self-starvation with binging, usually followed by purging. Although the number of men experiencing eating disorders is increasing, the majority of people who experience eating disorders are young women in late adolescence or early adulthood. The group at highest risk is young women between the ages of 15 and 30 years. Anorexia nervosa appears to strike at a younger age, with bulimia nervosa being more prevalent in the older group. Anorexia nervosa occurs in about 1% of the world population, being more prevalent among White females younger than 25 years of age from middle to upper social classes in Western cultures (Abraham & Llewellyn-Jones, 2005). Men represent 10% to 20% of cases of anorexia nervosa (Rhys Jones & Morgan, 2010). The age of onset for females is around 16 years of age; for males, it tends to be younger. About one third of people experiencing anorexia nervosa become chronically ill. The mortality rate for anorexia from a recent meta-analysis of 35 published studies was 5.1% per decade or 0.51% per year. One in five individuals with anorexia dies by suicide. The overall mortalist rate of anorexia is falling due to the introduction of specialized units to care for those experiencing anorexia (Smink et al., 2012).

Bulimia nervosa is one of the most common eating disorders, affecting 1% to 3% of adolescents and young females. Men account for 10% to 20% of the cases (Rhys Jones & Morgan, 2010). Before being diagnosed with bulimia nervosa, nearly all sufferers, when they were between 15 and 24 years of age, had periods of severely restricting food or extreme fasting that led to episodes of binge eating. Over time, the frequency and severity of the binge eating increased and bulimia nervosa developed. It is also believed that many people with bulimia nervosa will have met the criteria for anorexia nervosa at some time in their lives. Although anorexia nervosa is more prevalent among the middle and upper socioeconomic groups, bulimia is prevalent among all groups equally. Both conditions are less common in ethnic minority groups.

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines overweight as a BMI less than or equal to 25 (kg/m^2) and obesity as a BMI greater than or equal to 30.0 (kg/m^2). Obesity is a global public health problem affecting both developed and developing countries. Worldwide, the proportion of adults with a BMI greater than 25 kg/m^2 increased between 1980 and 2013 from 28.8% to 36.9% in men and from 29.8% to 38% in women (Ny, Fleming, Robinson,

Thompson, & Graetz, 2014). The prevalence in children and adolescents has increased substantially in developed countries; 23.8% of boys and 22.6% of girls were overweight or obese in 2013. The prevalence in children and adolescents has also increased in developing countries; 12.9% of boys and 13.4% of girls were overweight or obese in 2013 (Ny et al., 2014). According to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (2015) in their Health Report, 69% of adults aged 20 years and older are overweight or obese. More specifically, 71% of men and 65% of women are overweight or obese (Ogden et al., 2006). In addition, prevalence rates for conditions such as diabetes, cardiovascular disease, hypertension, and cancer are higher among those who are obese. Other adverse health conditions associated with obesity include musculoskeletal problems such as arthritis, chronic respiratory diseases, and reproductive problems such as infertility and impotence (Cawley & Meyerhoefer, 2012).

The populations affected by anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa are different from those affected by binge eating disorders. The prevalence rate for binge eating disorder varies between 0.7% and 6.6% for the general population and 30% for persons applying for weight loss treatment (Grucza, Przybeck, & Cloninger, 2007). Anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa primarily affect women and rarely affect men. In contrast, the male-to-female ratio among individuals with binge eating disorder is 2:3. This disorder also occurs across ethnically diverse samples, whereas most individuals with anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa are Caucasians.

Anorexia is more commonly found in females than in males, occurring more in adolescents and young adults.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA/CASE CONCEPTUALIZATION

Case conceptualization involves clinicians staying attuned to the patient's unique experiences while also understanding the scientific theories and research related to eating disorders (Kuyken et al., 2011). In other words the nurse aims to gain a comprehensive understanding of the patient's idiographic (individual) phenomenological (lived) experience and incorporates the scientific theories to help both the patient and the nurse develop a deeper contextualized understanding of their experience. This is known as collaborative case conceptualization. Eating disorder is characterized by severe disturbances in eating behavior (APA, 2013). It includes pica, rumination disorder, avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder, anorexia nervosa (refusal or inability to maintain a minimally normal body weight), bulimia nervosa (repeated episodes of binge eating followed by compensatory behaviors), and binge eating disorder. Each disorder has a specific set of defining characteristics that a patient must meet for diagnosis. **Box 19-1** highlights the defining characteristics of each eating disorder.

Pica

Pica, the persistent mouthing or eating of nonnutritive substances, is an eating behavior that occurs most commonly in young children, individuals with intellectual and developmental disabilities, and pregnant women (Williams, Kirkpatrick-Sanchez, Enzinna, Dunn, & Borden-Karasack, 2009). Prevalence rates of pica in the general population are unclear, though estimates have ranged from 25% to 50% in high-risk groups. Ingestion of nonnutritive substances such as paper, foam, and powders can result in serious health complications, including abdominal pain, intestinal obstruction, lead poisoning and cognitive dysfunction, and gastric bezoars, which are solid masses of indigestible material that accumulate in the digestive tract. Although the etiology of pica is not well understood, pica has been associated with iron, zinc, and other mineral and nutritional deficiencies (Khan & Tisman, 2010), as well as anxiety and psychosocial stressors (O'Callaghan & Gold, 2012).

Rumination Disorder

The essential feature of rumination disorder is the repeated regurgitation of food occurring after feeding or eating over a period of at least 1 month. Previously swallowed food that may be partially digested is brought up into the mouth without apparent nausea, involuntary retching, or disgust. The food may be re-chewed and then ejected from the mouth or re-swallowed. The behavior is not better explained by an associated gastrointestinal or other medical condition (e.g., gastroesophageal reflux, pyloric stenosis) and does not occur exclusively during the course of anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, binge eating disorder, or avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder. If the symptoms occur in the context of another mental disorder (e.g., intellectual disability [intellectual developmental disorder], neurodevelopmental disorder), they must be sufficiently severe to warrant additional clinical attention and should represent a primary aspect of the individual's presentation requiring intervention. The disorder may be diagnosed across the life

BOX 19-1: DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

ANOREXIA NERVOSA

- Restriction of energy intake relative to requirements, leading to a significantly low body weight in the context of age, sex, developmental trajectory, and physical health. *Significantly low weight* is defined as a weight that is less than minimally normal or, for children and adolescents, less than that minimally expected.
- Intense fear of gaining weight or becoming fat, or persistent behavior that interferes with weight gain, even though at a significantly low weight.
- Disturbance in the way in which one's body weight or shape is experienced, undue influence of body weight or shape on self-evaluation, or persistent lack of recognition of the seriousness of the current low body weight.

BULIMIA NERVOSA

- Recurrent episodes of binge eating as characterized by both of the following:
  - Eating in a discrete period of time (e.g., within any 2-hour period) an amount of food that is definitely larger than most people would eat during a similar period of time under similar circumstances
  - A sense of lack of control over eating during the episode (e.g., a feeling that one cannot stop eating or control what or how much one is eating)
- Recurrent inappropriate compensatory behavior to prevent weight gain, such as self-induced vomiting; misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications; fasting; or excessive exercise
- The binge eating and inappropriate compensatory behavior both occurring, on average, at least twice a week for 3 months
- Self-evaluation unduly influenced by body shape and weight
- The disturbance not occurring exclusively during episodes of anorexia nervosa

BINGE EATING DISORDER

- Recurrent episodes of binge eating, with episodes characterized by both of the following:
  - Eating, in a discrete period of time (e.g., within any 2-hour period), an amount of food definitely larger than most people would eat in a similar period of time under similar circumstances.
  - A sense of lack of control over eating during the episode (e.g., a feeling that one cannot stop eating or control what or how much one is eating)
- The binge eating episodes associated with three or more of the following:
  - Eating much more rapidly than normally
  - Eating until feeling uncomfortably full
  - Eating large amounts of food when not physically hungry
  - Eating alone because of being embarrassed by how much one is eating
  - Feeling disgusted with oneself, feeling depressed, or very guilty after eating
- Marked distress related to binge eating present
- The binge eating occurs, on average at least 2 days a week for 6 months.
- The binge eating is not associated with the regular use of inappropriate compensatory behaviors as in bulimia nervosa and does not occur exclusively during the course of bulimia nervosa or anorexia nervosa.

span, particularly in individuals who also have intellectual disability. Many individuals with rumination disorder can be directly observed engaging in the behavior by the clinician. In other instances, diagnosis can be made on the basis of self-report or corroborative information from parents or caregivers. Individuals may describe the behavior as habitual or outside of their control (APA, 2013). Prevalence data for rumination disorder are inconclusive, but the disorder is commonly reported to be higher in certain groups, such as individuals with intellectual disability.

Avoidant/Restrictive Food Intake Disorder

Avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder replaces and extends the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM–5*; APA, 2013) diagnosis of feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood. The main diagnostic feature is avoidance or restriction of food intake manifested by clinically significant failure to meet requirements for nutrition or insufficient energy intake through oral intake of food. One or more of the following key features must be present: significant weight loss, significant nutritional deficiency (or related health impact), dependence on enteral feeding or oral nutritional supplements, or marked interference with psychosocial functioning. In severe cases, particularly in infants, malnutrition can be life threatening. "Dependence" on enteral feeding or oral nutritional supplements means that supplementary feeding is required to sustain adequate intake. Examples of individuals requiring supplementary feeding include infants with failure to thrive who require nasogastric tube feeding, children with neurodevelopmental disorders who are dependent on nutritionally complete supplements, and individuals who rely on gastrostomy tube feeding or complete oral nutrition supplements in the absence of an underlying medical condition. Inability to participate in normal social activities, such as eating with others, or to sustain relationships as a result of the disturbance would inculcate marked interference with psychosocial functioning. Avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder does not include avoidance or restriction of food intake related to lack of availability of food or to cultural practices (e.g., religious fasting or normal dieting) nor does it include developmentally normal behaviors (e.g., picky eating in toddlers, reduced intake in older adults; APA, 2013).

Anorexia Nervosa

Anorexia nervosa is characterized by the maintenance of low body weight, fear of weight gain, and indifference to the seriousness of the illness (Kanye, Bulik, Plotnicov, & Thornton, 2008). It involves an intense fear of becoming obese. Therefore, the person experiencing anorexia nervosa will not eat sufficient food to maintain a normal body weight. Anorexia can occur in two forms: the restricting type, in which the person has not participated in binge eating or purging behavior, and binge eating/purging type, in which the person has engaged in behaviors such as self-induced vomiting or misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or enemas. Although many individuals with anorexia nervosa engage in compulsive exercising, individuals with restrictive-type anorexia nervosa are distinguished by their refusal to eat (much).

Anorexia is characterized by a low body weight (less than 85% of minimally normal weight for age and height), intense fear of gaining weight or becoming fat, disturbed perception of the body, and amenorrhea for at least three consecutive menstrual cycles.

Bulimia Nervosa

Bulimia nervosa is characterized by recurrent episodes of binge eating in combination with some form of inappropriate compensatory behavior (Berkman, Lohr, & Bulik, 2007), such as frequent vomiting or diuretic and/or laxative misuse. It is important to highlight the difference between binge eating/purging type of anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa. Individuals with bulimia nervosa may not be able to suppress their weight less than the 85% cut off and thus fail to display amenorrhea.

Bulimia is characterized by binge eating in combination with an inappropriate means to compensate for the binge eating, such as self-induced vomiting; misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or enemas; fasting; or excessive exercise.

Binge Eating Disorder

Binge eating disorder is associated with overweight and obesity. However, not all obese people have this disorder. Obese people with binge eating disorder display more chaotic eating habits, exhibit higher levels of eating disinhibition (i.e., eating in response to emotional states), and show substantially higher rates of psychiatric comorbidity. Individuals with binge eating disorder, like those with anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa, are preoccupied with shape and weight concerns, with self-worth strongly influenced. However, the characteristics of binges among individuals with binge eating disorder differ from those with

bulimia nervosa. Individuals with bulimia nervosa consume more calories during a binge meal but their caloric intake is less during non-binge meals than those with binge eating disorder. Furthermore, unlike individuals with bulimia nervosa, whose binge eating takes place against a background of extreme dietary restraint, binge eating is part of a pattern of chaotic eating and general overeating for those with binge eating disorder.

ETIOLOGY

The exact etiology of eating disorders is not fully known. Numerous research studies have attempted to address the underlying causes but without a consensus. However, various factors have been identified as contributing to the development of eating disorders.

Biological Factors

There is evidence for the genetic transmission of eating disorders, although such evidence is not conclusive. It is argued that a hereditary predisposition to eating disorders exists in families. For example, anorexia nervosa has been found to be more common among sisters and mothers of those with the disorder than among the general population.

In addition, it has been hypothesized that a dysfunction in the hypothalamus, the "seat" of appetite, may be a factor in the development of eating disorders. Although tests of hormonal functioning and evidence of hormonal aberrations in anorexia nervosa are both prevalent, the fact is that refeeding alone, leading to consistent weight gain and balanced nutrition, reverses the endocrine changes observed in anorexia nervosa. The opinion is that these aberrations are not a cause of the disorder.

Sociocultural Factors

It is argued that an obsession with slimness, a core feature in eating disorders, is concentrated in cultures in which food is abundant. This ideal of slimness and derogation of fatness in cultures of abundance is more intense for females than males and may account for the higher incidence of eating disorders among females than males. This ideal of slimness is often portrayed in the media. However, not all individuals who are exposed to this ideal develop an eating disorder, indicating that other factors contribute to the development of eating disorders. Peer influence is also considered to be an important factor in the development of eating disorders. Adolescent girls learn certain attitudes and behaviors, such as dieting and purging, from their peers. These, in turn, may contribute to the development of an eating disorder.

Familial Factors

Family dynamics have been implicated in the development and perpetuation of eating disorders. Studies show that individuals with eating disorders have families that tend to be enmeshed, intrusive, hostile, and negative to the individual's emotional needs or are overly concerned with parenting. Also, abnormal attachment processes and insecure attachment are recognized as common in individuals with eating disorders. Generally, individuals with eating disorders describe a critical family environment, featuring coercive parental control and a high value placed on perfectionism. The individual feels that he or she must satisfy these standards. Thus, the issue of control becomes the overriding factor in the family of the individual with an eating disorder (Townsend, 2004).

Familial factors associated with eating disorders commonly involve the issue of control due to enmeshment, overly concerned parenting, abnormal attachment processes, and insecure attachments.

Psychological and Individual Factors

Many factors specific to the individual may contribute to the development of an eating disorder. These include personality traits, self-esteem deficits, and environmental factors. Interpersonal factors that have been most frequently linked to the development of eating disorders include abuse, trauma, and teasing. Individuals experiencing eating disorders commonly report more life stresses. These stresses occur jointly with affective deficiencies such as low self-esteem, depressed mood, generalized anxiety, and irritability. This combination may be particularly significant for the development of bulimia nervosa. More recent theorists concur that an extreme need to control both eating and other aspects of behavior is a central feature of eating disorders (Palmer, 2008; Read & Morris, 2008). Gaining a sense of control and pride in one's ability to control one's eating combats the feeling of being taken over by thoughts of food or of lacking control of one's thoughts, eating, and weight.

Other individual factors contributing to the development of eating disorders may include:

- *Low self-esteem, which reflects how others react to an individual. Perceived rejection may cause lower self-esteem and maladaptive behaviors contributing to eating disorders. Dieting often results in overeating, further lowering self-esteem.*
- *Body dissatisfaction, which occurs when negative affect and negative feelings about one's self are channeled in eating disorders, promoting further negative feelings about the body.*

- *Cognitive factors such as cognitive aberrations, including obsessive thoughts, inaccurate judgments, and rigid thinking patterns.*
- *Perfectionism, which relates to the belief that one must be perfect, contributes to eating disorders by making normal shortcomings more traumatic or by making a normal body a sign of imperfection.*

TREATMENT OPTIONS

The treatment of eating disorders is complex and requires a multidisciplinary approach, drawing on a number of therapies in relation to the biological, psychological, social, and cultural needs of the individual experiencing an eating disorder. Various treatments have been employed to treat the various eating disorders, including psychopharmacological interventions with SSRIs (**Drug Summary 19-1**), psychoanalytic approaches (self-psychology, feminist psychoanalytic approaches), cognitive and behavioral treatments, group psychotherapy, family therapies, support and educative treatment (self-help groups, support groups, and psychoeducational groups), and nutritional therapies. **Table 19-1** highlights some of these modalities.

In practice, many of these therapies are used in collaboration with one another, such as cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), family therapy, group therapy, and nutritional counseling. **Evidence-Based Practice 19-1** highlights a study demonstrating the effectiveness of family therapy. It is recommended that a combination of cognitive restructuring therapy, meal planning, the introduction of avoided foods, and regular weighing is helpful in treating eating disorders (Morris & Harrison, 2008).

The National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE, 2004) has issued guidelines for the treatment of eating disorders based on a review of all published treatment trials and systematic reviews. It also has provided recommendations for assessing eating disorders such as anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, and binge eating disorder.

A handful of studies explored the effects of CBT in treating anorexia nervosa and suggest that CBT is moderately effective in treating this disorder. However, due to the paucity of research studies, NICE cannot recommend it over other therapies. NICE recommends that treatment of anorexia nervosa requires consideration for the appropriate service setting and the psychological and physical management. Additional research is needed. In contrast, bulimia nervosa has been researched extensively and CBT, consisting of 16 to 20 sessions over 4 to 5 months, is identified as the gold standard treatment.

DRUG SUMMARY 19-1: PARTIAL SELECTION OF MEDICATIONS USED TO TREAT EATING DISORDERS

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITORS (SSRIs)	
fluoxetine (Prozac) paroxetine (Paxil) sertraline (Zoloft) fluvoxamine maleate (Luvox) citalopram (Celexa) escitalopram (Lexapro)	■ Advise the patient to take the drug in the morning; if sedation occurs, encourage the patient to take the drug at bedtime ■ Monitor the patient for signs of serotonin syndrome such as fever, sweating, agitation, tachycardia, hypotension, and hyperreflexia ■ Inform the patient about possible sexual dysfunction with the drug; if this occurs and causes the patient distress, advocate for a change in the drug ■ Discuss with the patient the time to achieve effectiveness and that it may take from 2 to 4 weeks before symptoms resolve ■ Emphasize the need for adherence to therapy and to not stop taking the drug abruptly to prevent withdrawal symptoms ■ Assess the patient for evidence of suicidal thoughts, especially as depression lessens

TABLE 19-1: TREATMENT MODALITIES FOR INDIVIDUALS WITH AN EATING DISORDER

ANOREXIA NERVOSA	BULIMIA NERVOSA	BINGE EATING DISORDER
SSRIs In-patient contingency management in relation to short-term weight gain (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Cognitive behavioral approaches (relapse prevention; Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Focal psychodynamic therapy (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Cognitive analytic therapy (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Nutritional counseling (dietitian; Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Motivational interviewing (Morris & Harrison, 2008) Bibliotherapy (Williams & Schmidt, 2008)	CBT (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Dietary management/nutritional counseling (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Interpersonal therapy (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Psychoeducation with individual psychotherapy (CBT; Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Bibliotherapy (Williams & Schmidt, 2008) Motivational interviewing (Morris & Harrison, 2008)	SSRIs Nutritional counseling (dietitian; Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Motivational interviewing (Morris & Harrison, 2008) CBT (Roth & Fonagy, 2005) Bibliotherapy (Williams & Schmidt, 2008)

CBT, cognitive behavioral therapy; SSRI, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

CBT is the treatment of choice for individuals with bulimia nervosa.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Patients with eating disorders may be seen in a variety of settings such as acute care settings, day hospitalization programs, and community and outpatient facilities. Many individuals may be encountered in general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics because of medical problems secondary to the eating disorder. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for patients with eating disorders. **Plan of Care 19-1** provides an example of a patient with an eating disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

When working with an individual experiencing an eating disorder, a comprehensive nursing assessment that includes biological, psychological, social, and cultural needs must be completed. Furthermore, the first few minutes of the interaction with the individual is crucial for a number of reasons. First, the nurse must use the time to begin developing the therapeutic relationship. The nurse must be cognizant of his or her own beliefs and attitudes related to eating and eating disorders. This self-awareness is critical to developing the therapeutic relationship. In addition, as the nurse is assessing the individual and the eating disorder, the individual will also be assessing the nurse. The individual will be attempting to determine whether or not the nurse is knowledgeable about eating disorders, will understand his or her experience, is willing to listen nonjudgmentally, and is trustworthy. Therefore, the nurse must have a knowledge and understanding of eating disorders and work with the individual in an open empathic manner to build a trusting therapeutic relationship.

The Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) concepts of patient-centered care are integral to successful working with clients diagnosed with an eating disorder, in particular the unique psychodynamics of power and control.

Recognize the patient or designee as the source of *control* and full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for the patient's preferences, values, and needs. You will need to elicit patient values, preferences, and expressed needs as part of the clinical interview, implementation of care plan, and evaluation of care as well as communicate patient values, preferences, and expressed needs to other members of the health care team. Above all, you will need to provide patient-centered care with sensitivity and respect for the diversity of the human experience (Cronenwett et al., 2007).

Assessing Physical Status

Nurses have an advantage in the treatment of eating disorders due to their knowledge and background in physical assessment. A complete assessment of vital signs, including blood pressure, pulse, respiration, and temperature, as well as the patient's weight is carried out to determine any medical complications. In addition, the nurse assesses the

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 19-1: FAMILY THERAPY FOR ADOLESCENT ANOREXIA NERVOSA

STUDY

Eisler, I., Simic, M., Russell, G. M., & Dare, C. (2007). A randomized controlled treatment trial of two forms of family therapy in adolescent anorexia nervosa: A five-year follow-up. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry, 48*(6), 552–560.

SUMMARY

There is growing evidence that family therapy is an effective evidence-based intervention for adolescent anorexia nervosa. The researchers aimed to ascertain the long-term impact of two forms of outpatient family intervention previously evaluated in a randomized controlled trial (RCT). This was achieved by conducting a 5-year follow-up on a cohort of 40 patients who had received either conjoint family therapy (CFT) in which the whole family was seen together for treatment, or separated family therapy (SFT) in which the adolescent was seen individually, with the parents attending for separate sessions with the same psychotherapist. All patients were traced and 38 agreed to be reassessed. Overall findings revealed that there was little to distinguish between the effects of the two treatments at 5 years. More than 75% of subjects had no eating disorder symptoms. Furthermore, they identified that there were no deaths in the cohort and only 8% of those who had achieved a healthy weight by the end of the treatment reported any kind of relapse. Three patients developed bulimic symptoms but only one to a degree warranting a diagnosis of bulimia nervosa. The one difference between the treatments was in patients from families with raised levels of maternal criticism. This group of patients did less well at the end of treatment if they had been offered conjoint family meetings. At follow-up, this difference was still evident, as shown in the relative lack of weight gain since the end of outpatient treatment.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

In this follow-up study, the researchers demonstrated the efficacy of family therapy for adolescent anorexia nervosa, showing that those who respond well to outpatient family intervention generally stay well. In addition, their findings provide support for other studies about the long-term efficacy of family therapy in adolescents experiencing anorexia nervosa. Although the two methods of treatment (CFT and SFT) did not appear to differ in relation to the long-term outcome, the results support the conclusion that CFT is less effective in families with high levels of expressed emotion. This has practical implications, such that it may be inadvisable to use conjoint family meetings, at least early on in treatment, when raised levels of parental criticism are evident. The researchers suggest that once the family is well engaged, conjoint meetings later on in treatment may still have a useful role to play even with this group of families.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How important is the interpersonal therapeutic relationship between the patient and nurse?*
2. *What role does the nurse have in working with families of patients experiencing an eating disorder?*
3. *How important is it for mental health nurses to be informed on systemic (family) approaches when caring for patients experiencing an eating disorder?*

PLAN OF CARE 19-1: THE PATIENT WITH AN EATING DISORDER

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Imbalanced nutrition: Less than body requirements; related to distorted sense of self and need for control; manifested by inability/refusal to ingest food or retain food consumed, and failure to maintain weight within acceptable parameters.

Deficient fluid volume related to purging behaviors.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate an adequate nutritional intake to meet body requirements with gradual increase in weight to acceptable parameters for age and height.

Patient will identify the consequences of fluid loss due to self-induced vomiting and acknowledge the importance of adequate fluid intake.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Perform an initial assessment: obtain weight, assess usual nutritional patterns, and review results of laboratory testing such as serum electrolyte levels, serum albumin, total protein, hemoglobin, and hematocrit levels	Performing an initial assessment provides a baseline from which to develop individualized interventions; evaluating laboratory test results provides objective evidence of severity of the condition
Work with the patient to determine food preferences and collaborate with dietitian related to specific nutrient and caloric requirements; encourage fluid intake; administer supplements such as electrolytes, as ordered	Identifying food preferences helps to promote compliance; working with a dietitian ensures appropriate nutrient intake; encouraging fluid intake and administering supplements help restore fluid and electrolyte balance
If necessary, provide liquid nutrition or tube feedings if patient's status is severe	Using other methods for the ingestion of nutrients may be necessary to prevent complications secondary to refusal to eat
Work with the patient and dietitian to establish a plan for weight gain and appropriate meal plans; employ measures for behavior modification to allow for gradual weight gain	Working with the patient promotes participation and feelings of control over the situation, with empowerment leading to increased chances of compliance and ultimately success; employing behavior modification techniques helps to facilitate behavior change and promote compliance
Ensure adherence to meal plans	Ensuring adherence to meal plans prevents manipulation or playing games with food
Monitor the patient for 1 hour after eating and with snacks; be firm but supportive and nonjudgmental in approach	Monitoring helps to prevent patient from engaging in not eating or purging behaviors; a firm, nonjudgmental approach promotes rapport and trust

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 19-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH AN EATING DISORDER

Reinforce concepts of healthy nutrition; correct myths and misconceptions related to food intake; remind patient that physical activity is necessary for good health but that excessive exercise is unhealthy	Reinforcing healthy nutrition and physical activity helps to promote understanding and ultimately promote compliance with therapy
Encourage the patient to keep a journal or log of feelings, eating, and any binge/purging behaviors	Keeping a log or journal helps the patient gain insight into his or her condition and helps to identify potential triggers for behavior
Continually monitor vital signs, laboratory test results, intake and output, skin turgor, and trends in weight; weigh the patient at the same time and in the same clothing	Continued monitoring provides evidence of effectiveness of therapy and compliance; weighing at the same time and in the same clothing ensures accurate results
Provide support and positive reinforcement as the patient begins to make changes, regardless of how small the changes may be	Providing support and positive reinforcement promotes feelings of self-worth and increases the chance for compliance and a successful outcome

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Disturbed body image; related to disease process; manifested by inaccurate perception of physical appearance, preoccupation with body size, and fears of gaining weight.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will verbalize positive statements about self.

Patient will state a realistic self-appraisal.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient's feelings about self and appearance using a caring, nonjudgmental approach	Understanding of the patient's feelings related to self-help provides focus for individualized interventions
Work with the patient to help view his or her body realistically; compare actual body measurements with the patient's perception of measurement; provide objective realistic feedback	Working with the patient to view his or her body realistically, such as with actual measurements, helps to replace the distorted view with a realistic view
Help the patient identify feelings related to unrealistic high self-expectations and feelings of inadequacy. Assist the patient to identify strengths and resources; provide reinforcement of strengths	Identifying feelings related to excessive high expectations and feelings of inadequacy promotes insight into underlying feelings related to eating behaviors; reinforcing strengths promotes self-esteem and empowerment over situation and enhances motivation to change

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 19-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH AN EATING DISORDER

Reinforce prescribed therapies such as CBT; help the patient address cognitive distortions	Reinforcing prescribed therapies helps to alter the patient's current view of self to achieve a healthier, more realistic body image
Educate the patient about normal growth and development related to female body structure	Educating the patient helps to correct any misconceptions about the body

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Ineffective coping; related to distorted sense of cause and effect relationships; manifested by conflict avoidance and use of restricted eating to feel a sense of control in life circumstance.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will begin to demonstrate appropriate positive coping strategies.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Use a calm, nonjudgmental approach and establish rapport with the patient	Using a nonjudgmental, calm approach with rapport promotes the development of trust and the nurse–patient relationship
Work with the patient to discuss feelings of anxiety, fear, powerlessness, and helplessness. Assist the patient in identifying feelings related to family role, functioning, and possible issues related to conflict, independence, and dependence	Discussing feelings associated with eating behaviors and family provides insight into behavior
Assist the patient in objectively appraising the situation	Identifying feelings objectively helps to restructure faulty beliefs
Help the patient identify the connection between feelings and eating behavior	Identifying the connection helps the patient to gain insight into behavior in the hopes of changing that behavior
Reinforce prescribed therapies, such as CBT, supportive therapy, and family therapy	Reinforcing therapies helps to promote success

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

patient for evidence of any serious life-threatening medical conditions that can occur as complications of the eating disorder. These complications include effects on the cardiovascular, renal, and endocrine systems as well as other body systems. These problems are highlighted in **Table 19-2**.

TABLE 19-2: MEDICAL COMPLICATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH EATING DISORDERS

BODY SYSTEM	PROBLEMS
Gastrointestinal	Bloating secondary to delayed gastric emptying Gastric dilation and perforation Parotid enlargement Dental erosion Gastroesophageal reflux Esophagitis and bleeding Rupture of the esophagus Unexplained diarrhea
Reproductive/endocrine/metabolic	Amenorrhea Infertility Irregular menses Low estrogen, luteinizing hormone, and follicle stimulating hormone Reduced uterine size; immature multifollicular or follicular pattern of ovarian structure Hypothyroidism Hypoglycemia Electrolyte abnormalities
Musculoskeletal	Osteoporosis Loss of muscle mass
Cardiovascular	Postural hypotension Bradycardia Cold intolerance; complaints of chills due to poor peripheral circulation and loss of subcutaneous fat Dysrhythmias, including those related to electrolyte imbalances such as potassium Heart failure
Hematologic	Anemia Thrombocytopenia Leukopenia
Renal	Hematuria Proteinuria Renal insufficiency

Nurses need to perform a comprehensive physical assessment of individuals with eating disorders because acute and chronic complications can occur that can affect any body system.

Complications requiring immediate medical attention include dehydration, hypokalemia, or both, resulting in cardiac dysrhythmias; an esophageal tear resulting in hemorrhage from the mechanical trauma of vomiting; and decreased glomerular filtration rate, resulting in renal insufficiency. Serious complications of the endocrine system include abnormal thyroid function, abnormal female hormone levels, and the potential for sterility. Amenorrhea is an important indicator for anorexia nervosa.

Assessing Psychosociocultural Status

It is also necessary to assess the psychological, social, and cultural status of the patient to aid in providing a baseline for the patient's current status in relation to his or her motivation to make psychological and behavioral changes. **Box 19-2** describes the stages associated with motivation for change.

At this time, the nurse needs to assess the behaviors that the individual engages in related to eating, such as binge eating, fasting, purging, and/or excessive exercise. The nurse also needs to obtain a history of the weight loss and/or weight gain and current eating habits. Some important questions to ask include:

- *What is it about your weight that makes you unhappy?*
- *When did you first become concerned about your weight?*

BOX 19-2: MOTIVATION AND STAGES OF CHANGE

The Transtheoretical Model suggests that individuals may be thought of as occupying a number of positions with regard to the prospect of psychological or behavioral change. The person is described as being in one of five stages.

STAGE 1 Precontemplation: The person does not see a problem and does not consider attempting to change.

STAGE 2 Contemplation: The person can see that the issue is problematic but may also be aware of the advantages of staying as he or she is; however, he or she is thinking about the possibility of change.

STAGE 3 Preparation: Person is convinced of the need to change and is planning to do something.

STAGE 4 Action: Stage of doing something and actively changing.

STAGE 5 Maintenance: Change is accomplished and person makes it part of his or her life.

From Miller and Rollnick (2012).

- *When did you first start dieting/overeating/binge eating and what prompted you to do so?*
- *What has been your highest weight and how did you feel about yourself at that time?*
- *What has been your lowest weight and how did you feel about yourself at that time?*
- *What weight would you like to be?*
- *What is a typical day's eating to you?*
- *Do you avoid any foods? Do you binge eat, fast, purge, or engage in excessive exercise?*
- *How do you feel about your body?*
- *What do you feel would happen if you did not control your eating?*

By asking these questions, the nurse will be able to gather a comprehensive assessment of the psychological and cultural factors contributing to the patient's eating disorder. **Consumer Perspective 19-1** provides insight into what it is like to have bulimia nervosa.

Assessing for Motivation for Change

Motivation for change or readiness for change is in many ways an interpersonal process, the product of an interaction between people, which in this situation is the patient and the nurse (Miller & Rollnick, 2012). As stated previously, the nurse determines the patient's current stage related to his or her motivation for change. Next, the nurse assesses the patient's readiness for change. One simple way to accomplish this is to use a ruler with gradations from 0 to 10, with 0 being not at all important to change and 10 being extremely important to change. This same method can be used to assess a patient's confidence in making the change, with 0 being not at all confident and 10 being extremely confident of making the change (Miller & Rollnick, 2012). The nurse, in collaboration with the patient, can assess the importance of bringing about change and also assess how confident the patient is in bringing about change. This measure can be repeated throughout the treatment process in order to evaluate progress and to identify any further obstacles in the patient's recovery.

A key component of assessment is determining how motivated the patient is to change and his or her readiness to change.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Meeting the patient's focused needs during the planning stage of the nursing process can only happen if the nurse has accurately completed an assessment of the patient, his or her perception of the eating disorder, and motivation for change. When planning appropriate interventions, all members of the team must be involved. The team commonly includes the nurse, dietitian, medical colleagues,

CONSUMER PERSPECTIVE 19-1: A PATIENT WITH BULIMIA NERVOSA

I have been living with bulimia nervosa since I was 17 years old. I am now 27 years old. I always felt that my life was disorganized and out of control. I never felt good enough and felt that everyone else had their lives in order and were happy. I believed that if I was thinner, I would have one less thing to worry about and I would be happier. I believed that thin people were happier people. The only way I had control in my disorganized life was when I purged myself after I engaged in binge eating. I felt most relaxed at this time. Before I finally admitted that I could no longer live my life like this, I wondered if I could make the change. Because I have sought help, I now understand more about myself and my relationships with food and those around me. I know that I will always struggle with food during my life but I do not want to go back to that dark place. I realize now that I need to trust and accept myself more and also I accept that bulimia is something I will struggle with at times but feel stronger now more than ever to cope with it.

psychologists, clinical nurse specialists (CNS) or nurse practitioners (NPs) with a speciality in eating disorders, psychotherapists, and occupational therapists. Due to the varying assessment findings noted and wide range of problems faced by patients with eating disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Imbalanced nutrition less than body requirements related to anorexia nervosa*
- *Imbalanced nutrition more than body requirements related to bulimia nervosa and binge eating disorder*
- *Deficient fluid volume related to anorexia nervosa*
- *Risk for electrolyte imbalance related to anorexia nervosa*
- *Disturbed body image related to eating disorder*
- *Chronic low self-esteem related to eating disorder*
- *Ineffective coping related to eating disorder*
- *Powerlessness related to eating disorder.*

These nursing diagnoses also will vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, any underlying comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, an outcome related to deficient fluid volume would be to ensure that the individual would be able to identify the consequences of fluid loss due to self-induced vomiting and acknowledge the importance of adequate fluid intake. When planning nursing interventions it is helpful to integrate the objectives of treatment, which include the following:

- *To eliminate maladaptive patterns of eating such as fasting, binge eating, purging*
- *To establish a more normal eating pattern with regular balanced meals*
- *To address any physical complications of the illness, such as dental enamel erosion or fluid and electrolyte abnormalities*
- *To address the psychological issues that accompany the illness, including low self-esteem, body dissatisfaction, and other dysfunctional thinking patterns*
- *To address comorbid conditions such as mood disorders*
- *Finally, and over time, to prevent relapse.*

When planning care, the nurse also needs to consider the treatment setting. Most eating disorders are treated in outpatient settings. However, if the individual's physical state deteriorates to a dangerous level, inpatient treatment is necessary. Outpatient treatment is helpful as it avoids the difficulties associated with admission. These include separation from family and friends and excessive dependency on the staff because patients typically are admitted for several months. Outpatient treatment also allows the individual to take responsibility for his or her own recovery and ensures that the individual is ready to make the change, thereby increasing the chances for recovery.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

To be effective, interventions must be implemented at the appropriate time and in a manner that does not overwhelm the patient. **How Would You Respond 19-1** provides an example of a patient with an eating disorder who requires implementation. Effective interventions can include:

- Enhancing the patient's motivation to change (motivational interviewing): *Helping the patient acknowledge*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 19-1: A GIRL WITH ANOREXIA NERVOSA

Ann was the younger of two daughters. Her mother worked as a nurse and her father as a teacher. When she was younger, she had a happy settled life. At age 13 years, Ann's father was in a car accident and lost both of his legs. Following this, he suffered bouts of depression and anxiety. It was difficult for all members of the family and the strain was evident between her parents, as they often argued. Ann spent much time caring for her father and feared upsetting him because she felt that it may lead to a deterioration in his mood. She believed that if she worked hard at her studies and went to a university, she would make her father happy and proud. At age 15 years, Ann began dating a boy from her school. This became a source of conflict between her and her father. Finally, Ann began spending less and less time with this boy and he eventually began dating another girl. Ann was very hurt and angry with her father but she did not express this to him. Instead, she focused on her school work and also decided to lose some weight. So she began dieting. At first she lost some weight and felt happy about this. Over the next year, her weight went from 127 pounds to 92 pounds. Ann then began fasting for long periods, then binge eating, and then purging. She also began exercising excessively. She thought about food a lot and studied and exercised to distract herself from food. Her weight continued to fall; she ceased menstruating, and her weight fell to 82 pounds. At this point her parents brought her to her general practitioner. How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *Based on the scenario, which eating disorder would you suspect and why?*
2. *What factors have played a role in contributing to Ann's eating disorder?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 19-1: (*CONT.*) APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

Ann has lost 45 pounds and has been engaging in dieting, fasting for long periods, binge eating, and purging along with excessive exercise. Additionally, she has ceased menstruating, suggesting anorexia nervosa. Her other behaviors indicate the binge eating/purging type of anorexia. Based on her initial weight of 127 pounds, considered appropriate for her height and weight, her current weight of 82 pounds is significantly lower than 85% of her 127 pounds.

Possible factors contributing to her eating disorder include her desire to be the perfect daughter for her father, her inability to verbalize her feelings to her father about losing her boyfriend, probably issues related to self-esteem based on the boyfriend dating another girl, and the conflicts with her father.

that he or she has a problem and then determining the stage related to change (see Box 19-2); the individual is then encouraged to consider the positive and negative aspects of changing or staying the same

- Monitoring the physical and psychological status of the patient: *Evaluating for acute and chronic complications; monitoring weight and BMI and keeping a weight chart; assessing for possible depression with or without suicidal ideation*

BOX 19-3: COGNITIVE DISTORTIONS RELATED TO EATING DISORDERS

Magnification

Superstitiousness

All-or-nothing thinking

Overgeneralization

Selective abstraction

Personalization and self reference

From Wills and Sanders (2012).

- Assisting with dietary measures: *Working with a dietitian and the individual to plan meals; assessing for any nutritional deficits*
- Assisting with supportive therapy: *Supportive therapy by a counselor or a nurse trained in eating disorders; providing psychoeducation and supportive therapy in managing eating disorders*
- Reinforcing CBT: *CBT performed by advanced practice nurses to bring about change for individuals experiencing eating disorders and to help improve coping skills and self-esteem; assisting the patient in keeping a dietary diary, and learning techniques to deal with other problems such as binge eating, purging, laxative use, and excessive exercise; challenging cognitive distortions related to self-esteem and body image (summarized in* **Box 19-3***)*
- Encouraging family intervention: *Exploring family issues and providing education about eating disorders; encouraging family to be supportive*
- Addressing social and occupational issues: *Identifying any social or occupational problems that may be exacerbating the eating disorder; for example occupations such as modeling, dancing, acting, and athletics may make an individual prone to developing eating disorders.*

When working with individuals with an eating disorder it is important to include the individual's family (be sure consent is given if the patient is older than 18 years of age). Abraham and Llewellyn-Jones (2005) advocate that the family/parents "fight the illness, not the person," "don't blame yourself for causing the illness,""try to normalize family life,""educate yourself about the illness,""give unconditional love and support," and "give respect to the person with the illness." The nurse can ensure that literature pertaining to the eating disorder is given to the family and can support family members in being proactive in their loved one's recovery.

When implementing interventions, a strong trusting interpersonal relationship between the nurse and individual experiencing the eating disorder is necessary to ensure effective outcomes.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluating the nursing care provided is of vital importance not only for the individual experiencing an eating disorder, but also for the psychiatric-mental health nurse's practice. By evaluating and reflecting on the process of care, the psychiatric-mental health nurse can identify areas of effective practice and areas that need to be improved on, thereby developing and promoting best nursing practice.

During the evaluation phase, review all of the activities during the previous phases and determine whether outcomes identified with and for the patient have been met. Once again, self-reflection is an invaluable tool at this point. This can be done by asking: Have I provided the best nursing practice for my patient? Is my patient better after the planned care?

During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse and the patient should reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient's goals. Point out positives to the patient and include a plan for continued care as appropriate.

This phase is also part of the termination of the nurse–patient relationship. The patient may experience a setback due to a patient feeling of loss of this relationship. The nurse's role is to help the patient explore his or her feelings and ease this transition while maintaining boundaries (Peplau, 1991). Additionally, reflecting on the therapeutic relationship as described by Peplau (1952) is of vital importance, as studies show that the therapeutic relationship is paramount in recovery from eating disorders.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Eating disorders are characterized by severe disturbances in eating behavior. Eating disorders include pica, rumination disorder, avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder, anorexia nervosa (refusal or inability to maintain a minimally normal body weight), bulimia nervosa (repeated episodes of binge eating followed by compensatory behaviors), and binge eating disorder (characterized by episodes of binge eating, i.e., eating in a discrete period of time an amount of food that is larger than most other people would eat in a similar period under comparable circumstances).
- The majority of individuals who experience eating disorders tend to be female and most appear to be in their late adolescence or early adulthood, although the amount of men experiencing eating disorders is on the increase. The group at highest risk is young females between ages 15 and 30 years, with anorexia striking at a younger age and bulimia nervosa more common in the older range.
- Numerous factors have been implicated in the development of eating disorders. These include biological, sociocultural, familial, and individual risk factors.
- CBT is the standard of care for treatment of bulimia nervosa; more research is needed to determine its effectiveness as a treatment modality for anorexia nervosa.
- When working with an individual experiencing an eating disorder, a comprehensive nursing assessment needs to be completed.
- All members of the treatment team must be involved in the delivery of care to the patient with an eating disorder. The nurse works closely with the dietitian, medical colleagues, psychologists, CNSs or NPs trained in eating disorders or psychotherapy and occupational therapists.
- The implementation of effective nursing interventions is necessary to aid recovery, such as enhancement of the motivation to change, supportive therapy, CBT techniques, family intervention, and the identification of any social or occupational issues that may be affecting recovery.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A patient with anorexia is admitted to the inpatient facility because of cardiovascular problems. The patient's minimal normal acceptable weight is 125 pounds. Which weight would the nurse interpret as indicative of anorexia?

a. 118 pounds
b. 112 pounds
c. 107 pounds
d. 100 pounds

2. A group of students are reviewing information about eating disorders. The students demonstrate an understanding of the topic when they identify which of the following as being associated with bulimia nervosa?

a. Greater occurrence in males
b. Use of severe fasting rituals
c. More common in women in their 20s and 30s
d. High correlation with overweight and obesity

3. A patient with anorexia nervosa disorder engages in binge eating and purging behaviors. Which of the following would the patient be least likely to use for purging?

a. Diuretics
b. Enemas
c. Laxatives
d. Antiemetics

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

4. A nurse is assessing a patient with an eating disorder for complications. Which of the following might the nurse assess?
   a. Hypertension
   b. Increased muscle strength
   c. Cold intolerance
   d. Tachycardia
5. While performing a routine health checkup on a teenager who is 5 feet tall and 100 pounds, a nurse begins to suspect that the patient may be experiencing an eating disorder. Which statement by the patient would lead the nurse to suspect this?
   a. "Look at me, look at how fat I am."
   b. "My last period was about 6 weeks ago."
   c. "I just lost 5 pounds so I could fit into my prom dress."
   d. "I usually like to swim about three times a week."

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Abraham, S., & Llewellyn-Jones, D. (2005). *Eating disorders: The facts*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC.

Berkman, N. D., Lohr, K. N., & Bulik, C. M. (2007). Outcome of eating disorders: A systematic review of the literature. *International Journal of Eating Disorders, 40*(4), 293–309.

Cawley, J., & Meyerhoefer, C. (2012). The medical care costs of obesity: An instrumental variables approach. *Journal of Health Economics, 31*(1), 219–230.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Eisler, I., Simic, M., Russell, G. M., & Dare, C. (2007). A randomised controlled treatment trial of two forms of family therapy in adolescent anorexia nervosa: A five-year follow-up. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry, 48*(6), 552–560.

Feldman, M. B., & Meyer, I. H. (2007). Eating disorders in diverse lesbian, gay, and bisexual populations. *International Journal of Eating Disorders, 40*(3), 218–226.

Grucza, R. A., Przybeck, T. R., & Cloninger, C. R. (2007). Prevalence and correlates of binge eating disorder in a community sample. *Comprehensive Psychiatry, 48*, 124.

Hausenbias, H. A., Campbell, A., Menzel, J. E., Doughty, J., Levine, M., & Thompson, J. K. (2013). Media effects of experimental presentation of the ideal physique on eating disorder symptoms: A meta-analysis of laboratory studies. *Clinical Psychology Review, 33*(1), 168–181.

Kanye, W. H., Bulik, C. M., Plotnicov, K., & Thornton, L. (2008). The genetics of anorexia nervosa collaborative study: Methods and sample description. *International Journal of Eating Disorders, 41*(4), 289–300.

Khan, Y., & Tisman, G. (2010). Pica in iron deficiency: A case series. *Journal of Medical Case Reports, 4*, 86.

Kuyken, W., Padesky, C. A., & Dudley, R. (2011). *Collaborative case conceptualisation. Working effectively with clients in cognitive-behavioural therapy.* New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2012). *Motivational interviewing: Helping people change*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Morgan, J. F., & Arcelus, J. (2009). Body image in gay and straight men: A qualitative study. *European Eating Disorders Review, 17*(6), 435–443.

Morris, J., & Harrison, N. (2008). *Psychological support within general practice cited in ABC of eating disorders*. London, UK: British Medical Journal Books, Wiley-Blackwell.

National Institute for Clinical Excellence. (2004). *Treatment of anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa and related eating disorders: A clinical guideline*. London, England: Author.

Ny, M., Fleming, T., Robinson, M., Thompson, B., & Graetz, N. (2014). Global, regional, and national prevalence of overweight and obesity in children and adults during 1980–2013: A systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study 2013. *The Lancet, 384*(9945), 766–781.

O'Callaghan, E. T., & Gold, J. I. (2012). Pica in children with sickle cell disease: Two case reports. *Journal of Pediatric Nursing, 27*, e65–e70.

Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., McDowell, M. A., Tabal, C. J., & Flegal, K. M. (2006). Prevalence of overweight and obesity in the United States, 1999–2004. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 295*, 1549–1555.

Palmer, B. (2008). *Causes of eating disorders cited in ABC of eating disorders*. London, UK: British Medical Journal Books, Wiley-Blackwell.

Peplau, H. E. (1952). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: GP Putnam.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Read, G., & Morris, J. (2008). *Body image disturbance in eating disorders cited in ABC of eating disorders*. London, UK: British Medical Journal Books, Wiley-Blackwell.

Rhys Jones, W., & Morgan, J. F. (2010). Eating disorders in men: A review of the literature. *Journal of Public Mental Health, 9*(2), 23–31.

Ringwood, S. (2010). Eating disorders: Your guide to today's mental health issues. *Mental Health, 10*, 21–23.

Roth, A., & Fonagy, P. (2005). *What works for whom; a critical review of psychotherapy research*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Smink, F. R. E., van Hoeken, D., & Hoek, H. W. (2012). Epidemiology of eating disorders: Incidence, prevalence and mortality rates. *Current Psychiatry Reports, 14*(4), 406–414.

Stein-Wexler, R., Wootton-Gorges, S., Shakibai, S., Graf, J., Miller, S., Taylor, D., & Zwerdling, T. (2006). Trichobezoar: An unusual cause for pancreatitis in a patient with sickle cell anemia. *Clinical Advances in Hematology & Oncology: H&O, 4*, 471–473.

Townsend, M. C. (2004). *Nursing diagnoses in psychiatric nursing: Care plans and psychotropic medications*. Philadelphia, PA: Davis Company.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2015). *Health, United States, 2014*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centres for Disease Control and Prevention, National Centre for Health Statistics.

Williams, D. E., Kirkpatrick-Sanchez, S., Enzinna, C., Dunn, J., & Borden-Karasack, D. (2009). The clinical management and prevention of pica: A retrospective follow-up of 41 individuals with intellectual disabilities and pica. *Journal of Applied Research in Intellectual Disabilities, 22*, 210–215.

Wills, F., & Sanders, D. J. (2012). *Cognitive behavior therapy: Foundations for practice*. London, England: Sage.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 20

PSYCHOLOGICAL PROBLEMS OF PHYSICALLY ILL PERSONS

Patrice E. Rancour

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe how mental and physical health are interrelated
2. Define *suffering*
3. Identify the key concepts of suffering
4. Explain how compassion fatigue can impact the nurse
5. Describe and apply mental health care concepts to physically ill patient populations
6. Demonstrate understanding of the nurse's role in addressing end-of-life issues
7. Describe the role of the mental health liaison/consultation nurse
8. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to a physically ill patient with mental health issues

KEY TERMS

Assisted suicide
Bad news
Compassion fatigue
Complementary and integrative therapies
Courageous conversations
Critical incident debriefing
Delirium
Endorphins
Psychoneuroimmunology
Suffering

All nursing practice is predicated on viewing the whole of a person as a mental/physical/spiritual unity. Providing care to a patient whose primary diagnosis is a physical illness would be incomplete without attending to the mental, emotional, and spiritual experiences captured within that illness experience. In fact, many physical illnesses offer the patient an opportunity to heal far beyond the merely physical. And this opportunity exists at the crossroads of where therapeutically conscious nurses meet their patients.

Consider this statement: "Every nurse is a mental health nurse." In every interaction that nurses have with patients who are experiencing physical illness, whether in the home or inpatient or outpatient medical–surgical settings, the nurse must care for the whole person by also rendering competent mental health care. Doing so can often make the difference between successful or unsuccessful outcomes for the patient and his or her family.

This chapter addresses the concept of suffering as it relates to the therapeutic use of self and its impact on the nurse. It describes the most common issues that affect the mental health of physically ill patients, end-of-life care, and the role of the mental health liaison/consultation nurse. It concludes by applying the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to promote the mental health of patients with physical illness.

SUFFERING AND THE THERAPEUTIC USE OF SELF

SUFFERING is often defined as the experience of distress or pain, which can be emotional, mental, spiritual, or physical. It is often synonymous with words such as agony, torment, and torture. Several theorists have addressed this concept as it relates to mental health.

Theoretical Views of Suffering

Recall from Chapter 2 that suffering is a key concept identified by Joyce Travelbee's interpersonal theory of nursing. Travelbee built her theory on the works of existentialists including Viktor Frankl, noting that his work, *Man's Search for Meaning* (Frankl, 1959), played a significant role in the development of her own theory. Frankl believed that in a world over which humans have little control, the way a person chooses to respond to his or her experience determines whether and how that person survives and/or thrives. These beliefs were the result of his observations while being incarcerated in a World War II concentration camp. He noticed that some of the prisoners lived while others did not, although camp conditions were the same for all of them.

Travelbee's definition addresses suffering as ranging from simple mental, physical, or spiritual discomfort to extreme anguish. She also describes phases beyond anguish, which include the malignant phase of despairful not caring, and a terminal phase of apathetic indifference (Travelbee, 1971). Travelbee insisted that suffering is a key element in the exploration of illness. Therefore, suffering can be addressed within the scope of the nurse–patient relationship through therapeutic communication. (See Chapter 2 for a more in-depth discussion of Travelbee's theory on suffering.)

According to Travelbee, suffering can be explored within the nurse–patient relationship.

These concepts were further expanded by Shinoda Bolen, a physician who practices Jungian psychology (Shinoda Bolen, 1996). This school of thought emphasizes the individual psyche and the quest for wholeness through the uses of symbolism, archetypes, and spiritual principles. Shinoda Bolen built on these concepts by contending that illness can often be experienced as an archetypal descent into the underworld. She likened common occurrences such as receiving a life-threatening diagnosis or passing through the threshold of the treatment center (e.g., hospital entrance, etc.) to being ferried across the River Styx. Once the patient's needs during the healing journey are met, and teachings are received, the patient's identity is then transformed (healed) and the patient returns to his or her community.

Frequently, nurses are witnesses at the crossroads of such experiences. Thus, nurses can employ the therapeutic use of self to suggest ways so that the patient can reframe these periods of physical suffering into opportunities for expansion. When this happens, patients are better able to bear the burdens of such suffering because they are being assisted to find meaning in experiences that otherwise would be experienced as futile, mundane, or merely banal (Rancour, 2008c).

Another psychotherapist, Miriam Goodman, suggests one can transform suffering by attending to it and, as a result, grow in compassion with others:

> we carry this mistaken belief that enlightenment means we do not suffer anymore. But it is possible to suffer with a calm, loving heart. These two are not mutually exclusive. Enlightenment for me is about growing in compassion, and compassion means "suffering with." Enlightenment has something to do with not running from our own pain or the pain of others. When we don't turn away from pain, we open our hearts and are more able to connect to the best part of ourselves

and others—because every human being knows pain. (Platek, 2008)

Goodman's view suggests that nurses work on their own healing by refusing to turn away from the pain of others; that nurses recognize their call to service as the way they have decided to manifest their own purpose in the world.

Unless nurses have a relationship basis for their practice, what Travelbee calls "the therapeutic use of self," it is fairly easy to medicalize normal human experiences such as birth, illness, and death, and the subsequent pain and suffering that accompany them. When this occurs, the humanity of the experience and the potential for healing by transformation and self-actualization can be lost. Compassion as the essential human trait becomes replaced with pharmacology and the starkness of procedure. Vigilance toward making one's own self a therapeutic tool is often one's best defense in a world that too often depends on technology alone to save individuals from the inevitability of the human condition.

Adopting such a perspective encourages the patient and the nurse to seek meaning in traditionally painful experiences such as illness, thereby helping each bear the ordeal of the patient's suffering. Within the context of the relationship, the patient is not only able to survive, but to thrive as well.

Suffering and Its Impact on Nurses

It would be an error in judgment to believe that nurses are not affected by the suffering of their patients. Providing care to people who are ill and in pain challenges nurses to be mindful of their own mental health and the mental health of their colleagues. The provision of mental health care is especially challenging because one needs to remain vigilant for the unconscious tendency to allow tasks and procedures to distract and distance one's self from the suffering of those for whom one cares. The very nature of the therapeutic use of self transports the nurse directly into the very heart of suffering so that its effect on the caregiver becomes inescapable (Pendry, 2007).

Nurses need to understand that **COMPASSION FATIGUE**, and its cousin, burnout, may interfere with caring, and is an occupational hazard that does not constitute a character defect. When nurses begin to exhibit symptoms of such occupational stress or recognize it in others, a rapid response is necessary to help the nurse achieve rebalance. Such symptoms can include reduced ability to concentrate, preoccupation with traumatic patient experiences, rigidity, powerlessness, guilt, anger, shock, depression, insomnia, nightmares, irritability, social isolation, appetite disturbances, despair, hopelessness, frequent bouts of physical illness, headaches, gastrointestinal problems, and other stress-related symptoms (Boyle, 2011). These symptoms can be escalated when nurses work in environments that do not address moral dilemmas (usually end-of-life scenarios that nurses may find morally compromising), and can also intensify into lateral violence against one another. This occurs when nurses feel powerless to control their own scope of practice within an organization and, without recourse, begin to redirect their anger toward one another.

CRITICAL INCIDENT DEBRIEFING is a structured response to compassion fatigue whereby trained staff assist nurses to express and process feelings in a structured way after particularly stressful patient contacts. Such sessions can help nurses acknowledge the special nature of the work in which they are engaged and to regain balance. Reaching for balance also includes ensuring that nurses are eating healthy foods, getting rest and exercise, and making sure that other parts of their lives are also in balance.

Developing such self-awareness helps the nurse identify the physical, emotional, and spiritual needs that he or she has, and to give oneself permission to get these legitimate needs met. **Box 20-1** lists questions to assess compassion fatigue and ways to intervene. Doing so frees the nurse to participate in the dynamics of a therapeutic relationship more fully with the patient. When one loses the connection to the meaning of one's work, one loses the energy to accomplish it.

Healing is a very complex process that occurs within the framework of the relationship and is affected by multiple variables, many of which exist outside of the nurse's control or awareness. As the relationship includes the nurse, the nurse needs to pay attention to his or her own needs for the relationship to remain therapeutic. For example, if the nurse is tired, frustrated, defensive, angry, anxious, or sad, and is not aware of these feelings, the likelihood is high that such feelings will be acted out within the context of the nurse–patient relationship rather than being worked through properly. When this happens, the nurse is unable to accurately perceive what the patient needs and how to meet those needs. As a result, the nurse is in danger of meeting his or her own needs at the expense of the patient. Debriefing with a colleague can provide support, feedback, and insight.

Within the context of the therapeutic relationship itself, experienced nurses understand the value of simultaneously moving in close and letting go. In other words, seasoned nurses understand how to stay attached to the process of providing care (under their control) and to let go of the need to control the outcome (not under their control). The experienced nurse does not allow feelings for the patient to undermine expert clinical judgment, but always reviews his or her own reactions to the patient, and uses that knowledge to monitor for counter-transference, which can interfere with quality patient care.

BOX 20-1: COMPASSION FATIGUE: ASSESSMENT AND INTERVENTION

ASSESSMENT

- What physical, mental, emotional, social, and spiritual signs and symptoms of compassion fatigue do I most commonly exhibit when I am distressed?
- Who/what has helped me in the past to prevent such compassion fatigue?
- Who/what has helped me in the past to heal such compassion fatigue once it presents?
- Are there any new beliefs or practices that could help me prevent or heal compassion fatigue?

INTERVENTIONS

- Adopt healthy lifestyle behaviors to ensure that I can successfully inoculate myself against stress in general (healthy nutrition, exercise, social support, sleep hygiene, etc.).
- Once compassion fatigue is identified, get help as soon as possible from identified resources.
- Reach out to colleagues who exhibit signs and symptoms of compassion fatigue and recognize this as a part of legitimate mental health care rendered in the work environment.

Compassion fatigue can make colleagues vulnerable to burnout as well. Responding to the emotional exhaustion of co-workers in compassionate ways helps to forge strong interdisciplinary teams. According to the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) project, this is an example of a knowledge base, attitude, and skill set which is a prerequisite to delivering safe care as part of a health care team (QSEN project, 2015).

The therapeutic use of self places nurses at risk of compassion fatigue because they are directly involved in the patient's experience of suffering.

SPECIAL ISSUES RELATED TO MENTAL HEALTH AND PHYSICAL ILLNESS

Nurses are routinely involved in procedural interventions such as collecting vital signs, administering medications, and performing treatments for individuals with physical illness. In addition, nurses also continually assess the mental health of their patients by regularly assessing patient orientation, comprehension, memory, cognition, mood, and reasoning judgment. These areas are vital, for example, when determining potential cognitive dysfunction related to prescribed therapies or the capacity for informed consent. However, assessing a physically ill patient's mental health is additionally important because stress, loss, changes in body image, or pain can impact the patient's physical status as well as place the patient at risk of developing depression, anxiety, or delirium, the most common mental health comorbidities of physical illness.

Impact of Stress

Just as patients with schizophrenia and bipolar disease present with physical illnesses, numerous patients without identifiable mental health disorders must contend with mental health distress that occurs during the course of their physical illness. This distress may be secondary to the physical illness itself. Additionally, it may be the result of the hospitalization and treatments required. As much as 75% to 90% of all visits to primary care providers are due to stress-mediated causes (American Institute of Stress, 2015). The role of prolonged exposure to unremitting stress is implicated in the inflammatory responses associated with many chronic diseases. As such, teaching patients stress management skills to promote resilience is well within the scope of nursing practice.

Adverse Childhood Events and Stress

The impact of mental health on physical health has been identified in numerous research studies. One research study, known as the Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACE) study (www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/acestudy/pyramid.html), demonstrates this strong relationship. This research addresses the relationship between ACE and adult health (Anda et al., 2006). It documents that

unhealthy adult lifestyle behaviors, such as tobacco use, alcoholism, poor nutritional choices, sedentary lifestyles, and stress, contribute to at least 50% of all morbidity and mortality in this country. According to the study, these lifestyle behaviors may actually originate as behaviors designed to reduce stress in people who, as children, were victims of sexual, physical, or emotional abuse.

Stress, when not addressed in childhood, results in poor stress management and lifestyle choices later in life. Such stress and unhealthy behavioral choices then contribute to the development of chronic illnesses. These chronic illnesses then increase the likelihood of increasing inflammation and subsequent psychosocial distress, setting up recurring feedback loops. Developmentally throughout the life span, nurses are in excellent positions to intervene in such cycles and to interrupt the cascade effect they can produce.

Consider the popular truism: "While genetics loads the gun, lifestyle choices pull the trigger." Thus, for example, focusing exclusively on calorie counts with morbidly obese individuals who cannot seem to shed their weight, or tobacco users who cannot seem to stop smoking, lacks the more holistic approach needed to address such public health problems.

Adverse childhood events have been shown to lead to unhealthy lifestyle behaviors that contribute to the development of chronic diseases later in adulthood.

Mind–Body Interactions and Stress

Stress is well known to be directly linked to many chronic illnesses prevalent today and is often considered the primary cause of many illnesses (Cohen, Janicki-Deverts, & Miller, 2007). Chronic stress can trigger insulin-resistance diseases such as diabetes, autoimmune diseases such as asthma, and cancers due to unremitting immunosuppression resulting from perpetually high circulating cortisol levels. Such relentlessly high cortisol levels contribute to chronic inflammation in the body (Kiecolt-Glaser, 2009). These levels interfere with the immune system's ability to repair itself and can contribute to a cascade effect of neuroendocrine, immunological, and metabolic problems resulting in the numerous chronic illnesses so prevalent today (Cohen et al., 2007).

Scientists such as Candace Pert have described the biochemical molecule responsible for translating psychoemotional phenomena into anatomical–physiological phenomena and vice versa (Pert, 1997). These molecules, called neuropeptides, which are located throughout the entire body, are concentrated in select areas such as the hypothalamus and the gastrointestinal tract. **PSYCHONEUROIMMUNOLOGY** is the study of the complex relationships between the immune, nervous, and endocrine systems, and these relationships are mediated through neuropeptides.

COMPLEMENTARY AND INTEGRATIVE THERAPIES provide healing strategies that target the psychoneuroimmunological basis for health and illness. They are often employed prophylactically to keep the system in balance in order to promote or restore health. These therapies use physical, psychological, energetic, spiritual, and nutritional means to strengthen a person's capacity to heal. While allopathic approaches to healing tend to be disease-focused, complementary and integrative approaches are more holistic in nature.

The National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health (NCCIH; nccih.nih.gov) is part of the National Institutes of Health. The NCCIH classifies these practices into two subgroups:

1. Natural products, which include herbal supplements, biological, nutraceuticals, essential oils, and dietary supplements.
2. Mind–body therapies including:
   - *Acupuncture*
   - *Massage therapy*
   - *Meditation, mindfulness, and transcendentalism*
   - *Movement therapies such as Feldenkrais, Alexander technique, Pilates, Rolfing, and Trager*
   - *Relaxation techniques, such as breathing exercises, guided imagery, progressive muscle relaxation, and hypnotherapy*
   - *Spinal manipulation*
   - *Tai Chi and Qi Gong*
   - *Yoga*
   - *Energy therapies such as Healing Touch and Reiki*
   - *Whole systems of healing, such as Traditional Chinese Medicine, Ayurveda, Naturopathy, Homeopathy*

Increasingly, the population is using these modalities to promote health, prevent illness, and to counter the side effects of allopathically prescribed treatments. For example, acupuncture is used to treat chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting. Many people turn to these healing approaches because of dissatisfaction with the current allopathic (medical) model. An integrative approach to patient care incorporates and customizes the best of complementary practices with the best of allopathic practices.

Stress can disrupt the functioning of the nervous, immune, and endocrine systems. Integrative approaches to healing can restore homeostasis.

The Role of Nursing in the Provision of Integrative Care

To address the impact of stress on patients, nurses need to assess the patient and family carefully. Questions that can help focus the assessment include the following:

- *What is the patient's perception of the current stressors he or she and family are presently facing? "Of everything happening to you right now, what seems to be the hardest?"*
- *How do the patient and family typically cope with stress? "When you have faced difficult times in the past, what has worked the best for you?"*
- *What resources are the patient and family missing that could help them in the current situation? "What is it that you think you need to help you get through the current situation?"*

Within the context of the therapeutic relationship, the nurse uses active listening skills to assist the patient and family to identify their feelings and put them into words to foster communication. A statement such as, "*You sound scared. Would you like to talk about it?*" demonstrates concern for the patient and allows the patient the opportunity to share his or her feelings if he or she wishes. Providing empathetic responses to distressed patients and families, such as, "*I understand how difficult this is; you don't have to go through this alone,*" helps to validate their emotional distress and to provide support. The nurse collaborates with the patient and family about those people or resources that can assist them to successfully navigate the current situation. For example, the nurse could ask, "*Is there someone from your faith community you would like for me to call for you?*" Again, the nurse demonstrates a concern and interest in the patient.

Nurses may also offer mind–body interventions within the context of the therapeutic relationship. As the immune system has the capacity to learn, these interventions are designed to induce relaxation responses during which the immune system can repair itself. The subsequent release of **ENDORPHINS**, which are chemicals in the body that are responsible for producing a sense of well-being and are potent mood elevators, lays the groundwork for subsequent healing responses.

Nurses can incorporate many integrative therapies into their nursing care to tend to the whole person. However, the nurse needs to assess the patient's health beliefs and practices before implementing specific therapies. **Box 20-2** highlights appropriate assessment questions and provides suggestions for interventions.

The use of complementary and integrative interventions with patients presenting with physical illness can provide teachable moments whereby nurses can use their counseling skills to influence not only the patient's mental health, but physical health as well. Nurses interested in learning more about such integrative practices can search the Internet for numerous clinical, educational, and research resources that are available (e.g., www.wholehealthmd.com, www.imconsortium.org, nccih.nih.gov, www.consumerlab.com, www.naturalstandard.com, mindbodyhealth.osu.edu, herbs-supplements.osu.edu). In addition, many nurses become licensed and certified in complementary and integrative therapy practices to extend the reach of their healing into areas such as the patient's bioenergy field, tapping into the mind–body connection to evoke a healing response, use of somatic modalities such as massage therapy, and making use of more psychospiritual approaches in their work (Rancour, 1994, 2010). The holistic benefit of incorporating such modalities into nursing care practice is that their healing benefit extends not only to the patient, but to the nurse as well (Rancour, 2008a, 2008b, 2008c).

Loss and Grief

Physical illness changes people's lives often in ways that are not readily self-evident to anyone except the patient. Consider the many losses that are inherent in illness: loss of well-being, autonomy, time, body parts and functions, money, relationships, jobs, a predictable future, mobility, freedom from pain, body image, lifestyle, role changes, and time, to name but a few.

The normal response to all such loss is the healing, yet painful, experience of grief. It can manifest itself in many ways, such as shock, denial, anger, anguish, and deep sadness. A grief model, developed by Bailey, a hospice nurse, illuminates the trajectory of the grief journey (Bailey, 1986). This model is highlighted in **Box 20-3**.

Nurses need to assess for signs and symptoms of the grief response in all patients facing illness. Acknowledging the validity of these feelings is important to promote working through them. Otherwise, these feelings can interfere with the patient's ability to adhere to a treatment regimen and recover. For example, a patient who is newly diagnosed

BOX 20-2: COMPLEMENTARY AND ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE (CAM) THERAPIES: ASSESSMENT AND INTERVENTION

ASSESSMENT

- Determine the patient's belief about what made him or her sick and what he or she believes would heal the sickness. "*Tell me about why you think you became sick and what you think will heal you.*"
- Assess the patient's current use of complementary and integrative therapies. "*What healing practices, beliefs, preparations, or herbs do you currently use to help you heal?*"
- Assess the patient's willingness to explore new healing practices based on whether or not the current healing practices are helping him or her cope. "*It sounds like your pain is getting worse. Would you be willing to try something new to see if we could get better results from the medication?*"

INTERVENTIONS

- Provide evidence-based information on the clinically demonstrated effectiveness of complementary and integrative therapies, how to locate credentialed practitioners, and how to assist patients to become savvy health care consumers of these services. "*Looks like that massage helped you maximize the benefit from your pain medication. When it's time for you to go home, let's check with your insurance company to determine if they have any licensed massage therapists on their provider network that you can be referred to after your discharge.*"
- Integrate as many evidence-based modalities into your practice as possible by becoming credentialed in modalities that add value to the care you provide. "*While we talk about how you can cope with fatigue since your heart attack, if you like, I can give you a Reiki treatment to boost your energy level.*"
- Teach patients the value of inducing the relaxation response (meditation, prayer, Reiki, etc.) as a means of assisting them to reduce circulating cortisol levels on a regular basis, thereby reducing systemic inflammation which contributes to disease. "*What do you usually do to relax?*"

BOX 20-3: BAILEY'S JOURNEY OF GRIEF MODEL

- *Loss occurs*
- *Protest*: Characterized by shock, numbness, confusion, anger, and physical symptoms
- *Searching*: A preoccupation with what will or what has been lost, presence of vivid dreams
- *Despair*: Anguish, depression, social withdrawal, hopelessness, and slowing down of thinking and behavior
- *Reorganization*: Bursts of energy, intermittent interest, indifference, fatigue, detachment, apathy, and survivor guilt
- *Reinvestment*: Integration of the old with an emerging new way of life; learning to live with the loss

From Bailey (1986).

with diabetes continues to deny the illness despite his or her symptoms. As a result, the patient is likely to experience increasing morbidity from failure to come to terms with the necessary lifestyle changes required by the diagnosis. If the nurse is not attending to the patient's grief response, diabetic teaching is likely to be ineffective as the patient resists it.

Nurses who understand the nature of deep emotions such as denial, anger, and intense sadness are better able to develop plans of care that incorporate attention to these emotions in addition to providing disease-related treatments. Assisting patients to identify what they are feeling helps to minimize the potential for acting out. In addition, the ongoing use of active listening skills such as reflection and paraphrasing dynamically facilitates grief work. Active listening skills also provide ego strength and indicate confidence in the patient's ability to ultimately adapt (Rancour & Cluxton, 2000).

Nurses also need to consider the family, because just as patients grieve their losses, so too do their families. High rates of morbidity and mortality often occur in family caregivers as well as those who lose life partners. Providing

family-focused care signifies the nurse's recognition that family members will be at varying stages of their own grief cycles in coping with and adapting to the patient's illness. In addition, the culturally competent nurse will address these responses in such a way that he or she communicates an understanding of and empathy with families whose culture and spiritual outlooks—and therefore whose mourning and its rituals—are different from his or her own.

Grief and loss affect not only the patient but the family as well. Active listening skills are important to help patients and families identify their feelings and put them into words.

Body Image Changes and Stigma

In a culture that prizes youth and beauty, there is little room for individuals whose physical illnesses create diversions from some imagined or idealized norm. Many losses that prompt grief responses may involve changes in body appearance and/or functioning. Experiences such as chemotherapy-induced alopecia (hair loss), amputations, or ostomies can provoke body image disturbances with subsequent stigma. Difficulties adapting to one's changed body can create self-esteem issues, making acceptance of one's new body and its altered functioning a challenge. For example, when does a young woman mention to her new dating partner that she has had a mastectomy? Often, patients are angry about what is happening to them, asking "Why me?" When seen as a grief response, the nurse can help the patient reframe his or her relationship with the injured or changed body part from one of anger to one of forgiveness and even compassion that can be visualized as being sent to the injured body part (Rancour, 2006; Rancour & Brauer, 2003). **Box 20-4** highlights appropriate assessments and interventions for dealing with changes in body image and the attendant stigma.

BOX 20-4: CHANGES IN BODY IMAGE AND STIGMA: ASSESSMENT AND INTERVENTION

ASSESSMENT

- Assess the patient's emotional response toward the threatened or lost body part or function. "*You mention that since your stroke, the right side of your body doesn't feel like it belongs to you anymore. Can you help me better understand how you feel about it?*"
- Assess for evidence of pathological grief response, which might interfere with the integration of a new body image. "*Nancy, I notice that since you were diagnosed with your epilepsy several months ago, you've shown little interest in your friends or your job. Tell me how you are feeling about all of this.*"
- Explore the patient's concerns about how he or she will be perceived by others. "*What are you most concerned about regarding how other people will respond to you once your Parkinson's disease becomes more evident?*"

INTERVENTION

- Acknowledge and normalize the patient's concern about altered body image. "*Most people facing a colostomy express the same kinds of concerns that you do. Tell me more about what worries you the most.*"
- Provide patient education materials and resources that demonstrate how people cope with such an altered body image. "*I wanted to show you this video of how one of our patients won a golf championship recently while wearing a prosthetic leg.*"
- Re-people the patient's social world with other survivors who have gone on to live full and productive lives. "*John, would you be interested in meeting another man who had his laryngectomy 5 years ago and still runs his own company?*"
- Use creative interventions such as guided imagery, expressive arts, or journaling to help patients work through their feelings toward their altered physical body. "*If you could write a letter to your heart right now, what would it say?*"
- If the patient is angry, assist him or her to identify this and work toward generating forgiveness and compassion to the part of the self that is in pain. "*I realize you are frustrated that your arthritis flare-up is interfering with your travel plans, but I wonder if you might stop, take some deep breaths, and open your heart a little to sending your joints some warmth and tenderness since they seem to be in so much pain right now.*"

Changes in body image and the stigma attached to such changes can elicit a grief response. Nurses need to help the patient reframe his or her relationship to the body.

Pain and Other Physical Symptoms

Pain, as an indicator of the presence of disease, must be addressed because it is associated with so many physical illnesses. Pain is a complex and subjective phenomenon requiring nurses to recognize that pain is whatever the patient says it is and, as such, needs ongoing monitoring. Palliative care or symptom management, with special attention to pain relief, is one of the most important psychosocial interventions that can be employed to assist patients with physical illness to heal (Fink & Gates 2015). As one patient put it,"I'm in so much pain that I don't have any energy left to deal with anything else."

As early as 1991, it was recognized that "pain can kill" (Liebeskind, 1991). The presence of pain stimulates high levels of circulating stress hormones, most importantly cortisol, which disrupt immune system function. At times of illness, such interference can result in additional cascades of stress responses leading to further debility, infection, and even death (Paice, 2015). Therefore, nurses need to assess pain thoroughly using numerical scales and/or patient descriptions of their pain and symptoms. Based on such an assessment, nurses provide appropriate pharmacological and nonpharmacological measures for pain and symptom management, including patient education about assessing, anticipating, and intervening in their own pain management. Increasingly, the use of complementary modalities has been shown to be effective in reducing many painful symptoms, especially when integrated with more conventional treatments.

After pain, fatigue is one of the most distressing symptoms affecting patients with physical illness. Patients who are fatigued lack energy and often do not engage in normal activities of daily living. They pay less attention to personal appearance, have trouble thinking or concentrating, and can often self-isolate as a result. Interventions designed to address fatigue include teaching patients the importance of energy conservation through the balance of activity with rest, nutritional support, restoration of disturbed sleep patterns, and other symptom management strategies (O'Neil-Page, Anderson, & Dean, 2015).

Other physical symptoms that need to be regularly assessed include headache, gastrointestinal distress (nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, anorexia and cachexia), dyspnea, dehydration, and fever. All of these basic physical symptoms affect one's mental health. Energy is depleted and thus the person may not be able to engage in higher personal and interpersonal healing processes. According to the QSEN project (2015), attention to pain appraisal and treatment is one of the hallmarks of providing safe nursing care.

Nurses need to assess the patient's pain understanding that pain is highly subjective and is always whatever the patient says it is.

Anxiety and Depression

Physical illness may be acute or chronic. Although acute illness is often accompanied by high levels of anxiety, and chronic illness may be attended by depression, anxiety and depression are frequently comorbid conditions occurring during bouts of physical illnesses. The inflammatory responses of the body to persistently high levels of stress hormones found in patients with anxiety and depression can often result in physical illness. Several studies have documented this relationship.

One study demonstrated correlation between worsening anxiety and depression and congestive heart failure in patients (Yohannes, Willgoss, Baldwin, & Connolly, 2010). The Safety and Efficacy of Sertraline for Depression in Patients with Congestive Heart Failure (SADHART–CHF) study showed that a nurse relationship-based intervention was superiorly more effective than the use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

> The enormous impact that the nurse facilitators had on this patient population and the reduction in the [Hamilton] scale within a two-week period of about 40%, from a very high level, was just extraordinary and points out what simply seeing these patients, the laying-on of hands, will do for these depressed heart-failure patients. It's really quite striking. (Stiles, 2008)

Currently, there is controversial debate occurring as to whether patients with anxiety and depression have increased serum cholesterol, triglycerides, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C), and reduced high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) levels, increasing the patients' risk for coronary artery disease (Persons, Coryell, & Fiedorowicz, 2012). A number of studies demonstrate that untreated anxiety and depression in cancer

patients can affect outcomes (Hulbert-Williams, Neal, Morrison, Hood, & Wilkinson, 2012). A third study demonstrates that the ability to respond with resilience to a diagnosis such as diabetes is clearly related to improving the ability to cope with attendant stress, anxiety, and depression (Yi-Frazxier et al., 2014).

Assessment tools such as the Beck Depression Inventory, Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale, Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9), Symptom Checklist (SCL-90), and Hamilton Depression Rating Scale have long been used for their reliability and validity. However, simply asking the patient direct questions, such as "Do you feel depressed?" or "Do you feel anxious?" has also proven to be reliable. Many patients are readily able to distinguish the difference between sadness and depression, and often respond accordingly.

When assessing a patient, the nurse needs to be able to distinguish clinical depression from grief and complicated grief. **Table 20-1** provides a comparison. Normal grief requires facilitation, and complicated grief requires intervention, whereas depression requires active treatment. For example, it would be inappropriate to sedate a patient who is upset on receiving bad news such as the diagnosis of cancer. Such sedation would impair the patient's ability to move ahead in his or her adaptation to an altered health status. However, if that patient experiences suicidal ideation months later, it would be critical to ensure that he or she is assessed for and receives any treatment necessary to resolve any depression that could be as lethal as any malignancy (Schneider, 1980).

Continued anxiety and/or depression without relief can be life threatening. In addition, as medical treatments have become more toxic, such as radical surgeries or hyper-targeted chemotherapies, many patients find them increasingly burdensome. Thus, **ASSISTED SUICIDE** has emerged as a potential option for patients whose physical illness has pushed them beyond the ability to cope. Suicide, assisted or otherwise, can be a direct consequence of failing to respond to the need for aggressive palliative care and management of symptoms such as pain and depression.

Assisted suicide refers to providing a person with an available means for death such as pills or weapons, with the knowledge of the person's intent to use those means to die, but without acting as the direct agent for the death. This issue is highly controversial and the subject of much debate. In the United States, laws regulate assisted suicide on a state-by-state basis (www.patientsrightscouncil.org/site/assisted-suicide-state-laws/). The American Nurses Association, in its Position Statement (2013), states that "the nurse should not participate in assisted suicide. Such an act is in violation of the Code for Nurses and the ethical traditions of the profession. Nurses are obligated to provide comprehensive and compassionate end-of-life care which includes the promotion of comfort and the relief of pain." If a patient is considering assisted suicide or verbalizes a request for it, the nurse employs the therapeutic use of self to understand the meaning of the request, demonstrating respect for and commitment to the patient. In addition, continued assessment can help to uncover factors that may be contributing to the patient's feelings, such as unrelieved pain, or feelings related to loss of control, fear of isolation, depression, or hopelessness. As factors are identified, the nurse can

TABLE 20-1: COMPARISON OF NORMAL GRIEF, PATHOLOGICAL GRIEF, AND DEPRESSION

	NORMAL GRIEF	PATHOLOGICAL GRIEF	DEPRESSION
Time:	Self-limiting	No resolution	Longer than 2 months
Preoccupation:	Variable	Active	With self
Emotional states:	Variable	Hope for reunion	Consistent dysphoria
Sleep/eat problems:	Episodic	Persistent	Persistent
Energy level:	Moderate	Stressful	Extreme lethargy
Extent of loss:	Can identify	Avoids	Cannot identify
Presence of crying:	Evident	Avoidant	Absent or persistent
Social response:	Responsive	Avoidant	Socially unresponsive
Dreams:	Vivid	Rescue fantasies	No memory of dream
Presence of anger:	Open expression	Variable	No expression
Recovery:	No professional treatment	Requires professional treatment	Requires professional treatment
Reality testing:	Intact	Not intact	Latent
Approach/avoidance:	Willing to accept	Avoids acceptance	Avoidant

explore the patient's feelings and work with the patient and family to address these problems. Thus, nurses need to be vigilant in assessing patients experiencing anxiety and depression regularly for suicidal ideation so that these issues can be addressed promptly. (Refer to Chapter 12 for a review of suicide lethality assessment and intervention.)

Depression differs from grief and complicated grief. It requires active treatment, whereas grief requires facilitation and complicated grief requires intervention.

Moreover, traumatizing periods of illness and treatment such as bone marrow transplant may be accompanied by another anxiety disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD; Pasacreta, Minarik, Nield-Anderson, & Paice, 2015; Rustad, David, & Currier, 2012). Patients may remark that certain sensory experiences may trigger flashbacks, that they are afraid to go to sleep, or that they have nightmares of the treatment period that will not resolve on their own. Cognitive behavioral therapy in conjunction with antianxiety and antidepressant medication is frequently effective. Of all the antidepressants, the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors seem to be tolerated best by patients with multiple physical problems. Their mild side-effect profile often makes them the drug of choice. Mind–body techniques such as guided imagery, mindfulness, meditation, Reiki, and healing touch are increasingly being advocated for treatment of PTSD as many populations, such as veterans returning from deployment, find them less stigmatizing and more effective in reducing/eliminating symptoms (Jain et al., 2012; Kearney et al., 2013). This is particularly important in populations which do not respond to conventional treatments, as evidenced by high suicide rates in veterans receiving talk therapies and psychoactive drugs.

Delirium

DELIRIUM is another common mental health condition associated with physical illness. It is often characterized by changes in levels of alertness, perception, awareness, sleep patterns, confusion, disorientation, memory deficits, disorganized thinking, problems with attention, as well as mood lability that may be laced with agitation, anxiety, or lethargy. This rapid change in mentation and mood can be intense. To complicate matters further, the etiology of delirium can be complex and includes a multitude of problems such as self-administered or prescribed medication; thyroid disorders; liver, kidney, or heart failure; psychiatric conditions; sensory deprivation; infections (especially urinary tract in the elderly); anemia; hypoxia; fluid and electrolyte disturbances (especially dehydration); urinary or stool retention; sleep deprivation; stress; neurological disorders; and disturbances having to do with circadian rhythms (e.g., sundowner's syndrome). Typically, eliminating or reversing the underlying cause is effective.

Nursing focuses on assessing the patient for the cause of the delirium, implementing interventions to correct the cause, and performing mental health status exams frequently to monitor for changes. In addition, nurses need to provide a calm, restful environment so that care is provided by consistent people as much as possible to reduce confusion and to communicate to the patient that he or she is safe while the diagnosis is being made and the treatment plan is implemented. It is important to ensure that the patient has any sensory aids such as eyeglasses or hearing aids in place and that lighting is appropriate. Again, use of mind–body or energy therapies can be very therapeutic in lowering stress levels. For example, the use of lavender essential oils in a diffuser is known to lower blood pressure, reduce anxiety, and assist with sleep. The administration of antianxiety or sedative agents may be indicated if environmental and interpersonal interventions are ineffective; however, these should be used selectively because they may exacerbate the delirium in some patients, and so are not without some risk (Heidrich & English, 2015).

THE NURSE'S ROLE IN BREAKING BAD NEWS

An old adage has it that patients enter doctors' offices with symptoms, but leave with diseases. What happened in those doctors' offices was that people received **BAD NEWS**. Bad news is defined as any new information that the patient interprets as representing significant loss. Examples of such news might include a diagnosis of diabetes, news that the injury sustained in an automobile accident will require an amputation, an amniotic fluid test that reveals that the baby a mother is carrying has trisomy-21 (Down's syndrome), that a patient's brain tumor is not resectable, or that the pain the patient experienced was not heartburn after all, but a myocardial infarction. And of course, one of the most extreme kinds of bad news one receives is that one has a severe life-threatening illness or that a loved one has died of such an illness. **Therapeutic Interaction 20-1** provides

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 20-1: DELIVERING BAD NEWS

The nurse is meeting with Mary, a 60-year-old, whose 25-year-old son has been brought to the emergency department following a car accident. The son, David, was dead on arrival, and Jane is the first nurse to meet Mary when she comes to the emergency department.

Nurse: "Hello, Mrs. R. I know you must want to see your son, but I have some bad news to share with you first. The car accident was very serious: I'm sorry to tell you that your son did not survive." (establishes eye contact, and takes Mary's hand) "I know you must be very upset. Is there anyone else you would like to have with you at this time?"	Initiating the interaction and providing direct information, as Mary will want to know her son's status as soon as possible, provides a warning that bad news is about to be delivered before it is because Mary needs to be prepared for the shock of seeing her son's body ahead of time. Eye contact and a warm response to Mary by taking her hand is a way of demonstrating concern for Mary and the shock she must be experiencing. The nurse also is trying to determine who could be helpful in supporting Mary
Mary: (sobbing) "This could not have happened to him; he was so careful whenever he drove. He was my only child. This can't be true."	Expressing shock and disbelief
Nurse: "When you are ready to see him, I will be glad to take you and I will stay with you as long as you want me to." (Guides her down the hallway with an arm around her shoulders.)	Providing support and staying with Mary so she will not be alone, especially because she has indicated that there is not anyone else that she can expect to be here
Mary (Repeating): "David is all I have. He can't be gone. He is all I have." (Deep sobbing.)	Still in shock
Nurse: "This must be extremely difficult for you. Is there anything that you would like to know about what happened? I know that the policemen who found the car are still here and can talk with you." (Maintaining eye contact.)	Validating Mary's need for information; demonstrating empathy and showing concern and interest for Mary by continuing to stay with her
Mary: "Yes, I would like to know what happened to him. I would like to talk with the police and the ambulance drivers and anyone else who was with my son when this happened."	Acknowledging her need for information
Nurse: "Is there someone I can call for you, perhaps a friend who can come here, or someone from your church?"	Further exploration to gather information about who might be able to provide support to Mary in her time of need. Encouraging Mary to identify someone who can be here with her

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 20-1: *(CONT.)* DELIVERING BAD NEWS

Mary: "Would you please call my friend Bess and ask her if she can come here to meet me?"	Reaching out to a friend
Nurse: "Of course I will. And I will stay with you until she comes."	Acknowledge and encourage the patient's expression of feelings. Notice that the nurse is in no hurry to relieve Mary of the burden of her suffering by offering to medicate her discomfort. The nurse also does not run away from the intense pain that Mary is feeling. How might the nurse take care of herself later after this exposure to Mary's suffering?

an example of applying the interpersonal process when delivering bad news.

What is also true is that the delivery of bad news has cultural implications. In the United States, there is a strong tradition of informed consent, that is, the belief that patients have the right to know about their illness and treatment. Other cultures prescribe different protocols about with whom the news is shared. For example, in some Eastern cultures, bad news is not shared with the patient for fear this will destroy hope. Some native cultures believe that talking about death makes it happen. In other cultures, the news is shared only with the identified head of the family. When caring for patients of diverse cultures, the nurse can head off confusion by asking the patient ahead of time, "When we have new information to share with you regarding your illness and its treatment, with whom do you wish us to talk?"Documenting it in the patient's record will assist all health care providers to be consistent in avoiding a cultural mis-step.

Nurses can use the SPIKES protocol to deliver bad news therapeutically. The SPIKES protocol addresses setting, perception, invitation, knowledge, emotions and empathy, and summary and strategy.

The delivery of bad news provides opportunities for nurses to help deliver such news or to help patients begin to cope with it. To foster a more therapeutic approach for delivering bad news, a structured format, called Buckman's SPIKES Protocol, was developed (Buckman, 1992). The SPIKES Protocol, described in **Box 20-5**, is an acronym that stands for setting, perception, invitation, knowledge, emotions and empathy, and summary and strategy.

The nurse can use the following strategies to assist in breaking bad news:

- *Provide for privacy and confidentiality. "I have some important information for you and wondered who you want with you and who you don't."*
- *Assess for what the patient already understands about his or her health status. "Tell me what you already know about your illness."*
- *Assess for what the patient is ready to hear. "What is it that you would like to know about your illness and its treatment today?"*
- *Provide information in small chunks. "Now that we've talked about your illness, let's review what your treatment options are."*
- *Regularly determine the patient's comprehension of information that he or she receives during the interview. "Can you please repeat to me what you just heard me say?"*
- *Assess patient's affective response to the information by noting nonverbal behavior and other cues. "I notice that you started crying when I mentioned the surgical option. How do you feel about that?"*
- *Demonstrate empathy throughout the interview by employing active listening skills. "I hear you saying that you are*

BOX 20-5: BUCKMAN'S SPIKES PROTOCOL

- *Setting:* Provide for privacy. Ensure that only those people the patient wants involved in the discussion are present. Sit down at eye level without the barrier of furniture. Provide eye contact and physical touch such as a hand on arm or shoulder according to the patient's comfort level. Manage interruptions.
- *Perception:* Ask the patient what he or she already knows about the condition and listen for any misunderstanding. Assess for denial and correct any information deficits to ensure that the patient understands correctly and has realistic expectations.
- *Invitation:* Ask the patient what he or she wants to know today. The patient will relay what he or she is ready to hear and ways to hear it, that is, not at all today, in small chunks, or as much as the patient can tolerate.
- *Knowledge:* Alert the patient that bad news is coming. Use words that are part of the patient's own vocabulary and avoid technical jargon. Avoid making blunt statements. Assess for patient's comprehension regularly before moving on. Assess for what patient is hoping for. Never say: "There is nothing more that we can do for you." Although the illness may be incurable, suffering can always be addressed and alleviated.
- *Emotions and Empathy:* Be alert that patients will have verbal and nonverbal emotional reactions to the news. When this happens, stop giving information and begin to identify the feeling and respond empathetically until the patient indicates he or she is ready to proceed further. Use of active listening skills such as reflection, paraphrasing, and reframing are all helpful.
- *Strategy and Summary:* Know that patients cope better, even in the face of bad news, when they have a plan based on shared decision making. Summarizing the news and developing a plan to cope with it serves as a touch-point in the ongoing relationship with the patient. This communicates to the patient that he or she will not be abandoned despite the bad news.

From Buckman (1992).

more afraid of pain than you are of dying. We can do a lot to help you with your pain."

- *Summarize the strategy. "While your baby's diagnosis of cerebral palsy may feel overwhelming to you right now, we'll have the entire team meet with you and your husband next time to help you develop a comprehensive plan of care. Do you have any more questions right now?"*

END-OF-LIFE CARE AND COURAGEOUS CONVERSATIONS

Although not everyone will experience a heart attack, develop tuberculosis, have a baby, or fracture a pelvis, it is true that everyone will eventually die. Death is universal and, as such, deserves special mention because it remains such an emotionally laden topic for so many people, including many health care professionals. Despite patient wishes to the contrary, death still happens too frequently in the hospital rather than in the home.

The first step in becoming proficient in providing care for those facing end of life and their families is to become comfortable with facing one's own mortality. Developing a philosophy that helps the nurse find meaning in the larger picture will ultimately inspire end-of-life care practice that is not only competent, but also compassionate, which is a prerequisite to any relationship-based intervention.

Health care institutions in the United States are staffed by providers, many of whom unfortunately fear death. In the mid-1990s, the historic SUPPORT Study (Hardwig, 1995; Moskowitz & Nelson, 1995) identified the poor state of care being delivered to the dying in this country and called for changes. Since that time, despite numerous efforts to rectify this problem, end-of-life care is still fraught with many difficulties. One area is the training and education of health care providers to deal with end-of-life care more effectively, thereby simultaneously improving cost-effectiveness and delivery of quality care.

Critical junctures occur during the trajectory of most illnesses that provide opportunities for health care providers to assist patients to successfully navigate the predictable and sometimes unpredictable pitfalls that accompany them. So-called "**COURAGEOUS CONVERSATIONS**" require communication skill sets that can be learned (Rancour, 2000). Such communication skills are part of the palliative care competencies that *all* nurses need to be able to respond to their patients' illness experiences. As evidenced by the

QSEN project (2015), such conversations promote effective communication in engaging patients into their treatment, and improving the quality *and* cost-effectiveness of the care rendered. These conversations are well within nursing scope of practice, which is especially critical as many physicians often have trouble engaging in them (www.pbs.org/wgbh/pages/frontline/being-mortal/).

Nurses are in an ideal position to engage in these "courageous conversations" with patients and their families. Doing so can help prevent merely "sad" experiences from becoming "bad" experiences. As with any other care, the nurse needs to consider the patient's and family's spiritual and cultural background, including religious rituals, special dietary regimens, prayers, and votives, that may help to enrich the meaning of this important life event. Nurses engaged in courageous conversations often address these key areas: death and dying, code status, shift from curative to palliative care goals, and hospice care.

Conversations About Death and Dying

Patients often know they are dying long before we do. Questions they might ask, such as "Am I dying?" or "When will I die?" more often reflect the need for human connection rather than a plea for an exact and precise answer. When asked such questions, the nurse should first center, that is, take the time to concentrate his or her energy and attention to the present situation. (Often, remembering to breathe deeply can assist before proceeding.) The therapeutic goal of such conversations should be to keep the line of communication open. Conversations can frequently be accomplished by asking open-ended questions designed to elucidate more information and provide support through therapeutic contact with the nurse. For example, responses to the aforementioned questions might be: "*What makes you believe you are dying?*" "*How long have you been thinking like this?*" or "*Tell me more about what you are thinking.*"

Conversations About Code Status

Seriously ill patients should never be allowed to reach advanced stages of illness without exploring their end-of-life care preferences. A courageous conversation can be as simple as asking a patient: "*I know you understand how seriously ill you are. In the event you should stop breathing or your heart should stop beating, what would you like for us to do for you?*" This is a process of exploration. It can also include the completion of advance directives (living will and durable power of attorney for health care) to fully document the patient's preferences. A free and complete listing of the advance directives of all states can be located at www.caringinfo.org/stateaddownload. Waiting until a patient with dementia of the Alzheimer's type is too cognitively impaired to explore whether he or she will want to have a feeding tube placed for the inevitable gag reflex failure is simply poor care. It creates needless suffering, expense, and futile treatment.

Conversations Involving a Shift From Cure-Driven Care to Palliative Care

Patients often give their caregivers cues that they are ready to stop curative-driven care if its burdens begin to outweigh its benefits. The patient might say, "I can't take much more of this," or "I'm tired of living from one emergency room visit to the next." Failing to explore these statements leaves the patient feeling isolated rather than cared for during the illness journey. Conversations that help them explore whether they are more interested in quality versus quantity of life, how their values align with proposed treatment goals, and what they hope for the future are indicated. Such courageous conversations can begin with statements such as: "*I know you understand how sick you are. We are all disappointed that your illness has not responded to the treatment as we had all hoped. Given that, what is it that you are hoping for now?*" The patient hears the truth of the real situation, and experiences support rather than abandonment. The health care provider is working to develop a new plan because the cure-driven plan is no longer achieving desired outcomes.

Conversations About Hospice Care

Conversations about palliative care can become opportunities to introduce hospice care. Hospice care is considered the gold standard of end-of-life care, allowing patients to remain at home in their own community. Hospice care is associated with a higher quality of life. More recently, research has indicated that hospice care is also often associated with a longer life (Connor, Pyenson, Fitch, Spence, & Iwasaki, 2007; Huo et al., 2014).

Hospice is an emotionally laden word. Therefore, the nurse can help the patient and family adjust to its introduction by speaking to what it can accomplish for them first before naming it. "*Would you like to discuss a home care program that can help ensure you stay in your home, and receive care provided by nurses, social workers, doctors, aides, and chaplains? Would you be interested in care that is focused on you and your family in terms of keeping you as functional and symptom free as possible? Would you like more information about a program that makes all these services available to you 24/7? Would*

you like information on such a program that provides little to no cost to you? If so, that program is hospice. Would you like me to give you more information?" This is the opposite of the very abandoning "There is nothing more we can do; we'd like to refer you to hospice," a statement which should be avoided because it is simply not true.

Nurses involved in end-of-life care need to be prepared to have courageous conversations about death and dying, code status, palliative care, and hospice care. This is well within the nursing scope of practice.

THE ROLE OF THE MENTAL HEALTH LIAISON/CONSULTATION NURSE

In numerous facilities nationwide, recognition that medical–surgical patients present with psychosocial distress due to their illnesses, treatments, and hospitalizations has led to the creation of the mental health liaison/consultation nurse role and similar interdisciplinary mental health teams. These teams are usually composed of a psychiatrist, psychologist, psychiatric clinical nurse specialist, and a social worker. As patient acuity and volume have increased, so too have the negative effects of high-tech treatment. This, coupled with the fragmentation of care, has made delivering care that is also therapeutic even more challenging. One response to these developments is to ensure that hospital staff has access to clinical experts who have demonstrated capability in this arena. Such clinicians deliver direct care to patients, develop programs for patient groups and subpopulations, and provide consultation and education to health care professionals delivering hospital-based care. Such nurses often function in an advance practice capacity (Harrison & Hart, 2006; Rancour, 1993; Rancour & Cluxton, 2000).

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

The therapeutic nurse–patient relationship derived from Peplau's Interpersonal Theory of Nursing is the cornerstone of intervention. The nurse uses the interpersonal process not only to develop the relationship with the patient, but also to move through the stages of the nursing process. The specific interventions that are initiated will depend on the mental health challenge that the patient is experiencing with his or her physical illness.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

As previously stated, the first step in providing any kind of patient care is to ensure that the nurse is self-aware enough to understand how she is reacting in the patient care situation. This self-awareness is necessary to perceive the patient's need accurately and to provide a balanced outflow of energy on the nurse's part. This ensures that patients' needs are being accurately perceived and met, and that the nurse can remain balanced in his or her own energies. Look for feelings of empathy and sympathy within yourself and begin expressing them to the client during the discussion with statements such as "I am so sorry this is happening to you" (**Plan of Care 20-1**).

Nurses need to be mindful of their body language, especially in terms of the effect the patient's illness has on them, because it impacts the nonverbal communication sent to the patient. Unpleasant bodily functions and appearance or anticipation of serious losses such as death can provoke personal feelings that impact the nurse–patient relationship. Look for support from more experienced practitioners if necessary to explore these issues, bearing in mind that this exploration is a life-long learning process.

Physical illness involves many psychospiritual issues as patients come to terms with what the illness means for them on so many levels. It is critical for nurses to provide care without imposing their own spiritual or cultural beliefs on others who may be especially vulnerable.

Conducting assessment interviews on a busy unit is challenging due to the need to control for interruptions and to protect the patient's privacy. Nurses must clarify with the patient which individuals he or she wants present and ensure that only they are included. Doing so promotes the development of trust.

When conducting the assessment, the following questions may be helpful:

- *Overall, what would you say has been the hardest part of this illness for you?*
- *What symptoms are you having right now that interfere with your ability to cope with your illness?*
- *What are you discovering about yourself through this illness experience that perhaps you might have been unaware of before?*
- *What special healing beliefs, rituals, or practices do you usually use that we could incorporate into your plan of care here?*
- *When you think about your illness, what are your primary feelings about it?*
- *Are you feeling anxious or depressed?*

PLAN OF CARE 20-1: THE PATIENT WITH A SERIOUS MEDICAL ILLNESS

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Grieving; related to recent diagnosis of terminal illness; manifested by expression of anger and depression.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will demonstrate movement toward acceptance of illness.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Schedule private time with the patient to discuss the illness, beginning with an educational approach	Sometimes patients are not ready to discuss the emotional part of their experience. Starting off with informal information sharing can be less threatening
Look for opportunities to begin asking "How do you feel about all of this?" and encourage expressions of emotion to better gauge where the patient is in the grieving process	Slowly easing into the emotional realm of care and inviting patients to discuss their feelings often are more comfortable for patients with a serious medical problem
Look for feelings of empathy and sympathy within yourself and begin expressing them to the client during the discussion with statements such as "I am so sorry this is happening to you"	Patients are more likely to open up if they feel "connected" to their health care provider
Assess for the kind of support the patient would like at the present (i.e., clergy, family meeting, reading material, etc.)	Providing the appropriate level of support will help facilitate grieving
Provide education on the stages of grieving	Educating the patient about phases of grieving helps the patient understand his or her experience
Continue to assess the patient daily through one-on-one conversation regarding where the patient thinks he or she is with the process	Continuing to be present and available to discuss this subject reassures the patient that this is an ongoing process

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Powerlessness; related to perceived lack of control of life circumstances; manifested by indecisiveness and dependency on others in decision making.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will begin verbalizing awareness of areas of life for which he or she still has no control.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assist the patient in identifying the underlying reasons for feeling hopeless and powerless; encourage the patient to discuss feelings; listen actively in an accepting, nonjudgmental manner	Expressing feelings helps to identify the patient's view of the situation and to plan appropriate interventions; active listening provides opportunities for validation and clarification and helps promote trust and the nurse–patient relationship

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 20-1: *(CONT.)* THE PATIENT WITH A SERIOUS MEDICAL ILLNESS

Provide education regarding the medical illness and highlight areas for which he or she still is in control (type of end-of-life care preferred, etc.)	Identifying more realistic interpretations or ways to address the situation promotes feelings of control and self-confidence; pointing out realities helps clarify the patient's perception and expectations of the situation
Work with the patient to identify situations that can precipitate feelings of helplessness and lack of control; assist the patient in interpreting situations objectively	Helping the patient discern between what is under his or her control and what is not helps the patient to accept what cannot be changed, and to exert some influence among variables that can be manipulated
Assess the patient's usual methods for problem solving and decision making; help the patient identify problematic or maladaptive methods; offer suggestions for more adaptive methods; encourage the patient's participation in care and decision making, addressing one item or issue at a time	Helping the patient change maladaptive methods to adaptive ones promotes feelings of success and control; encouraging the patient's participation provides the patient with a "voice" and fosters feelings of control; focusing on one item or issue prevents overwhelming the patient and enhances the chances of success

NURSING DIAGNOSIS: Disturbed body image; related to recent leg amputation; manifested by refusal to look at the stump, refusal to care for the wound, and distraught emotional expression.

OUTCOME IDENTIFICATION: Patient will acknowledge the loss of the leg.

INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
Assess the patient's feelings about self and appearance using a caring, nonjudgmental approach	Understanding and acceptance of the patient's feelings related to self-help provide focus for individualized interventions
Work with the patient to help view his or her body realistically; engage the patient in discussion of expectations of life after amputation; provide objective realistic feedback	Working with the patient to view his or her body realistically helps to replace the distorted view with a realistic view

(*cont.*)

PLAN OF CARE 20-1: *(CONT.)*
THE PATIENT WITH A SERIOUS MEDICAL ILLNESS

Work with the patient to establish where he or she is comfortable beginning to address the stump. Invite the patient to assist you with dressing changes. Provide education in a matter-of-fact manner	Discovering where the patient is able to begin allows the process of acceptance to start on the patient's terms. Inviting the patient to watch or assist you as you provide care to the stump creates collaborative experience for the patient rather than something to deal with alone. Providing matter-of-fact education encourages objective assessment of the situation for the patient. Helping the patient to adopt a more healing attitude toward the stump increases acceptance of the wounded body part back into a reintegrated body image
Provide the patient with positive reinforcement and recognition for gradual increased completion of stump care activities	Providing positive reinforcement promotes feelings of self-worth and enhances the chances for continued participation, compliance, and success

Source: NANDA International Nursing Diagnosis: Definitions and Classifications 2015–2017. Copyright © 2015 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

- *What do you already know about your illness and what would you like to know today?*
- *Are you having any strong feelings about a particular part of your body or how it is functioning that makes this illness even more difficult?*
- *When you think of the future, what are you hoping for?*
- *As we develop your care plan, are there any other special issues you would like for us to address?*

The therapeutic use of self is an important skill used throughout the nursing process when dealing with mental health issues in patients with physical illnesses.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Prioritizing and meeting patient needs when the presenting problems are medical usually require that emergent physical needs be met before emotional or spiritual needs. However, at end of life, this may not hold true, and in fact, doing so can often interfere with a healing outcome for the patient and family if futile treatment that prolongs dying is chosen over the need to assist the patient and family to navigate this transition well. Participating in such care can often put nurses in ethically compromising positions and can precipitate professional burnout.

Once a full assessment is completed, the nurse and the patient proceed to develop a plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. Due to the wide range of assessment findings noted and multiple problems faced by patients, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Hopelessness related to inability to live independently*
- *Powerlessness related to inability to control own bodily functions*
- *Death anxiety related to terminal illness*
- *Grieving related to anticipation of dying and death*
- *Ineffective coping related to lack of support resources*
- *Situational low or chronic low self-esteem related to change in physical appearance*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, developmental stage, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. For example, the acutely ill person may have more nursing diagnoses addressing physiological concerns such as imbalanced nutrition, nutrition less than body requirements, or acute pain. As the patient's condition stabilizes, nursing diagnoses such as ineffective coping, situational low self-esteem, or grieving may become the priority areas to be addressed.

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and patient collaboratively determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, if the patient is experiencing death anxiety related to diagnosis of terminal illness, the outcome to be achieved is a better understanding of the illness trajectory that can be expected, including preparation for dying. For example, nurse Barbara Karnes' booklet, *Gone From My Sight*, is a compassionate, easily understandable patient and family education tool in this regard (Karnes, 2015). The nurse assists the patient to develop knowledge and understanding of the particular disease progression, and prepare himself or herself and family members for the eventual death (no matter the time frame). The patient is encouraged to identify what he or she hopes for even in the face of terminal illness and to engage in any therapeutic interventions that reduce the symptom burden, make life meaningful, and keep him or her surrounded by caring people. Remember that patients hope for many things, even when they cannot hope for cure. The ultimate desirable outcome is a peaceful death.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

In many situations, providing psychosocial care can be accomplished as the nurse provides physical care for the patient. For example, a dressing change may prompt a conversation about how the patient is coming to terms with the loss of the leg from the amputation. Changing a syringe on a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pump can prompt discussions on how fatigue and pain may be contributing to a patient's anxiety or depression. Assisting a patient to ambulate down a hallway can be an opportunity to explore how his lack of progress may be signaling him to move from a curative to a more palliative care plan goal. The integration of such conversations with physical care communicates to the patient that he or she is being viewed as a whole person, and not just a person with a physical disorder or illness.

At other times, the significance of events at various turning points in the patient's illness may suggest the need for carving out time specifically dedicated to "courageous conversations." These conversations may be aimed at helping the patient to focus on making important treatment decisions or on communicating thoughts and feelings with family or other health care providers. The conversations do not need to be lengthy. As the nurse becomes more comfortable addressing these areas, he or she will be able to focus the conversations more directly and therapeutically.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation is a function that involves asking the following questions:

- *Is the patient learning to adapt to any health status changes triggered by the illness experience?*
- *Is the patient's grief response to the sustained losses fluid or fixed?*
- *Is the patient able to identify his or her feelings regarding the illness experience and is he or she able to communicate them to caregivers and family/friends to receive the support needed to mobilize for recovery?*
- *Is the patient gaining insight into how he or she might use the illness experience to emerge at a higher level of wellness than when the patient entered it?*
- *Are the patient and health care team incorporating the patient's spiritual and cultural beliefs and practices into the plan of care to facilitate healing?*
- *Are the patient's physical and psychospiritual symptoms being alleviated?*
- *Does the patient have a realistic perception of the illness and its treatment?*
- *Is the patient knowledgeable about the illness and its treatment?*
- *Is the patient's body image adapting, such that he or she can accept an altered body image with compassion and understanding?*
- *What hope is the patient expressing for the future?*

All such evaluations should also encourage self-reflection, including whether or not the nurse capitalized on his or her own strengths. Look for mentorship in areas that need improvement and continue to refine therapeutic communication and critical thinking skills.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Mental and physical health are closely interrelated such that physical illness can affect a person's mental health, and changes in mental health can affect a person's physical health.
- Suffering is a key component of a person's illness and can be addressed within the scope of the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship; however, nurses can experience compassion fatigue resulting from this intense relationship. A nurse's self-awareness of personal needs and permission to meet these needs aids in preventing compassion fatigue.
- Research has demonstrated that adverse childhood events are associated with the adoption of unhealthy lifestyle behaviors that can contribute to psychoneuroimmunological disruptions in various body systems, eventually leading to physical illness.
- Illnesses involve loss to some degree; thus, all patients with physical illnesses can be expected to experience grief.
- Changes in body image, pain, and other physical symptoms can impact the mental health of a person with a physical illness. Anxiety and depression are often comorbid conditions occurring during physical illness.
- The SPIKES protocol can be used to therapeutically deliver bad news.
- A familiarity and a feeling of being comfortable with one's own mortality are important when providing end-of-life care.
- The mental health liaison/consultant nurse has expertise in dealing with patients experiencing psychosocial distress due to illness, treatments, and hospitalizations.
- Self-awareness is important for the nurse when engaging in the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship with a patient who has a physical illness and is experiencing mental health issues.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. When describing Travelbee's view of suffering to a class, which of the following would the instructor include?

a. It is confined to situations involving physical illness.
b. It is easily controlled through communication.
c. It can range from simple discomfort to extreme anguish.
d. It determines how a person will survive.

2. The following are the steps of Bailey's Journey of Grief Model. Place the steps in their proper sequence after the experience of loss

a. Searching
b. Reinvestment
c. Protest
d. Reorganization
e. Despair

3. The nurse is assessing a patient and determines that the patient is experiencing a normal grief response based on which of the following?

a. Openly expresses anger
b. Nonintact reality testing
c. Persistent sleeping problems
d. Consistently dysphoric

4. A nurse is planning to implement complementary and alternative medicine therapies with a patient. In which of the following would the nurse include energy biofield therapies?

a. Meditation
b. Visualization
c. Aromatherapy
d. Acupuncture

5. A group of students is reviewing information about the numerous issues that impact the mental health of physically ill patients. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following?

a. Unhealthy lifestyle practices as an adult can be traced to negative events in childhood.
b. Grief is an abnormal response that interferes with a person's ability to heal.
c. Neuropeptides and their actions are addressed with psychoneuroimmunology.
d. Pain causes increased secretion of cortisol, which disrupts the immune system.

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACE) Study (1998). Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/acestudy/pyramid.html

American Institute of Stress. (2015). Retrieved from http://www.stress.org/americas-1-health-problem

American Nurses Association. (2013). *Position statement: Assisted suicide*. Retrieved from http://www.nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/EthicsStandards/Ethics-Position-Statements/Euthanasia-Assisted-Suicide-and-Aid-in-Dying.pdf

Anda, R. F., Felitti, V. J., Bremner, J. D., Walker, J. D., Whitfield, C., Perry, B. D.,…Giles, W. H. (2006). The enduring effects of abuse and related adverse experiences in childhood. A convergence of evidence from neurobiology and epidemiology. *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience, 256*(3), 174–186.

Bailey, B. (1986). *Strategies for coping with loss*. Branford, CT: The Connecticut Hospice.

Boyle, D. A. (2011). Countering compassion fatigue: A requisite nursing agenda. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 16*(1), 2.

Buckman, R. (1992). *How to break bad news; A practical guide for health care professionals.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins.

Cohen, S., Janicki-Deverts, D., & Miller, G. E. (2007). Psychological stress and disease. *JAMA, 298*(14), 1685–1687.

Connor, S. R., Pyenson, B., Fitch, K., Spence, C., & Iwasaki, K. (2007). Comparing hospice and nonhospice patient survival among patients who die within a three-year window. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management, 33*(3), 238–246.

Fink, R., & Gates, R. (2015). Pain assessment. In B. Ferrell, N. Coyle, & J. Paice (Eds.), *Textbook of palliative nursing* (pp. 113–134). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Frankl, V. (1959). *Man's search for meaning.* Boston, MA: Beacon Press.

Hardwig, J. (1995). SUPPORT and the invisible family. *The Hastings Center Report, 25*(6), S23–S25.

Harrison, A., & Hart, C. (2006). *Mental health care for nurses, applying mental health skills in the general hospital.* Hoboken, NJ: Blackwell Publishing.

Heidrich, D., & English, N. (2015). Delirium, confusion, agitation and restlessness. In B. Ferrell, J. A. Paice, & N. Coyle (Eds.), *Textbook of palliative nursing* (pp. 385–403). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Hulbert-Williams, N., Neal, R., Morrison, V., Hood, K., & Wilkinson, C. (2012). Anxiety, depression and quality of life after cancer diagnosis: What psychosocial variables best predict how patients adjust? *Psycho-Oncology, 21*(8), 857–867.

Huo, J., Lairson, D. R., Du, X. L., Chan, W., Buchholz, T. A., & Guadagnolo, B. A. (2014). Survival and cost-effectiveness of hospice care for metastatic melanoma patients. *American Journal of Managed Care, 20*(5), 366–373.

Jain, S., McMahon, G. F., Hasen, P., Kozub, M. P., Porter, V., King, R., & Guarneri, E. M. (2012). Healing touch with guided imagery for PTSD in returning active duty military: A randomized controlled trial. *Military Medicine, 177*(9), 1015.

Karnes, B. (2015). *Gone from my sight*. Retrieved from https://www.bkbooks.com/shop/gone-my-sight

Kearney, D. J., Malte, C. A., McManus, C., Martinez, M. E., Felleman, B., & Simpson, T. L. (2013). Loving-kindness meditation for posttraumatic stress disorder: A pilot study. *Journal of Traumatic Stress, 26*(4), 426–434.

Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2009). Psychoneuroimmunology: Psychology's gateway to the biomedical future. *Perspectives on Psychological Science: A Journal of the Association for Psychological Science, 4*(4), 367–369.

Liebeskind, J. C. (1991). Pain can kill. *Pain, 44*(1), 3–4.

Moskowitz, E., & Nelson, J. L. (1995). Dying well in the hospital: Lessons of SUPPORT, Special Supplement. *Hastings Center Report, 25*(6), S3–S6.

O'Neil-Page, E., Anderson, P. R., & Dean, G. E. (2015). Fatigue. In B. Ferrell, N. Coyle, & J. Paice (Eds.), *Textbook of palliative nursing* (pp. 154–166). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Paice, J. (2015). Pain at the end-of-life. In B. Ferrell, N. Coyle, & J. Paice (Eds.), *Textbook of palliative nursing* (pp. 136–153). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Pasacreta, J. V., Minarik, P. A., Nield-Anderson, L. & Paice, J. A. (2015). Anxiety and depression. In B. Ferrell, N. Coyle, & J. Paice (Eds.), *Textbook of palliative nursing* (pp. 366–384). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Pendry, P. S. (2007). Moral distress: Recognizing it to retain nurses. *Nursing Economics, 25*(4), 217–221.

Persons, J. E., Coryell, W. H., & Fiedorowicz, J. G. (2012). Cholesterol fractions, symptom burden, and suicide attempts in mood disorders. *Psychiatry Research, 200*(2–3), 1088–1089.

Pert, C. (1997). *Molecules of emotion, the science behind mind and body medicine*. New York, NY: Simon & Schuster.

Platek, B. (2008). Through glass darkly, Miriam Greenspan on moving from grief to gratitude. *Sun, 385*, 4–11.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) Project. (2015). Retrieved from http://qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas

Rancour, P. (1993). The development of a comprehensive psychosocial oncology program. *Journal of Oncology Management, 2*(5), 33–35.

Rancour, P. (1994). Interactive guided imagery with oncology patients. A case illustration. *Journal of Holistic Nursing: Official Journal of the American Holistic Nurses' Association, 12*(2), 148–154.

Rancour, P. (2000). Those tough conversations. *American Journal of Nursing*, Critical Care Supplement, *100*(4), April, 24HH–24LL.

Rancour, P. (2006). Clinical treatment for body image disturbances: Variations on a theme: Interactive guided imagery, empty chair work, and therapeutic letter-writing. In K. Marlene (Ed.), *Body image: New research* (pp. 263–289). New York, NY: Nova Science Publications.

Rancour, P. (2008a). Integrating complementary and alternative therapies into end-of-life care. *In Touch, A Hospice and Palliative Care Resource.* Ohio Hospice and Palliative Care Organization, *12*(4), 8–10.

Rancour, P. (2008b). *Tales from the Pager Chronicles.* Indianapolis, IN: Sigma Theta Tau International.

Rancour, P. (2008c). Using archetypes and transitions theory to help patients move from active treatment to survivorship. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing, 12*(6), 935–940.

Rancour, P. (2010). *The Pager Chronicles, Vol. II.* Booklocker.

Rancour, P., & Brauer, K. (2003). A matched set: A case study in the use of letter-writing as a means of integrating an altered body image in a patient with recurrent breast cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum, 30*(5), 841–848.

Rancour, P., & Cluxton, D. (2000). Standing with the bereaved: A comprehensive bereavement program in a tertiary care setting. *Journal of Oncology Management, 9*(6), 10–12.

Rustad, J. K., David, D., & Currier, M. B. (2012). Cancer and posttraumatic stress disorder: Diagnosis, pathogenesis and treatment considerations. *Palliative & Supportive Care, 10*(3), 213–223.

Schneider, J. M. (1980). Clinically significant differences between grief, pathological grief and depression. *Patient Counseling and Health Education, 4*, 267–275.

Shinoda Bolen, J. (1996). *Close to the bone, life-threatening illness and the search for meaning.* New York, NY: Simon & Schuster.

Stiles, S. (2008). *SADHART-CHF: Nurse intervention impresses for depression in heart failure, SSRI doesn't, September 23, 2008, HFSA News*. Retrieved from http://www.theheart.org/article/906715.do

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Yi-Frazxier, J. P., Yaptanggco, M., Semana, S., Buscaino, E., Thompson, V., Cochrane, K., … Rosenberg, A. R. (2014). The association of personal resilience with stress, coping and diabetes outcomes in adolescents with type 1 diabetes: Variable and personal-focused approaches. *Journal of Health Psychology, 20*(9), 1196–1206.

Yohannes, A. M., Willgoss, T. G., Baldwin, R. C., & Connolly, M. J. (2010). Depression and anxiety in chronic heart failure and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Prevalence, relevance, clinical implications and management principles. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 25*(12), 1209–1221.

SECTION IV

Growth and Development and Mental Health Concerns Across the Life Span

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 21

WORKING WITH CHILDREN

Emily K. Johnson

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Discuss the major theories related to growth and development in children
2. Identify normative versus non-normative behavioral patterns in relation to developmental milestones
3. Describe the major mental health disorders found in children
4. Identify the primary treatment options available for mental disorders found in children
5. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective that addresses the developmental needs of children experiencing mental health disorders

KEY TERMS

Autism
Circular reactions
Classical conditioning
Cognitive development
Conservation
Echolalia
Libido
Magical thinking
Object permanence
Operant conditioning
Pica
Play therapy
Reversibility
Symbolic play

Childhood behavior varies significantly with developmental stage, psychosocial environment, and genetic influence. Due to differences between childhood and adult behavior, emotional problems and mental health disorders in children can be difficult to determine. As with adults, psychiatric diagnoses in children are made by skilled professionals trained to observe particular signs and symptoms. However, in children, the signs and symptoms must be considered in the context of developmental level and physical and social environment. The signs may be significantly different from those seen in adolescents and adults. Moreover, a young child's inability to express symptoms clearly makes the determination even more challenging. For example, children with depression may display significant irritability (Stringaris, Maughan, Copeland, Costello, & Angold, 2013) and express nonspecific physical complaints. Children commonly find it more difficult to verbalize to an adult that they are feeling sad. As a result, reports from parents, other caretakers, and/or teachers are often used to supplement information gathered during a psychiatric assessment. Accurate diagnoses and effective treatment require a solid knowledge base involving childhood development, specific diagnostic criteria, and assessment techniques.

The following chapter addresses the unique and challenging issues involved in working with children who have a mental disorder. Major theories related to growth and development are reviewed and some of the more common mental health disorders are described. The nursing process is applied from an interpersonal perspective to provide a framework when caring for a child with a mental health disorder.

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT THEORIES

In all scientific fields, theory guides clinical practice and forms the basis for reasoning behind particular treatments. Chapter 10 provides an in-depth discussion of theories in general, including those specifically related to mental illness; this chapter describes the major theories related to an individual's development through the life span. These theories help to provide a foundation from which to explain the reasons why particular disorders affect particular individuals and to assist in understanding the appropriate treatment options and care.

Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development

Knowledge and understanding of cognitive, emotional, and psychological growth is imperative to the assessment and nursing care of children. **COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT** refers to one's ability to understand the world, including interaction with stimuli and objects in the environment, social interactions related to thinking patterns, and how one receives and stores information (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Perhaps the most influential theory associated with cognitive development is that of Jean Piaget, a Swiss theorist who began studying childhood development in the 1920s using his own children as subjects (Sadock & Sadock, 2007). Although this method provided grounds for criticism, his observations of his children's errors in reasoning formed Piaget's theory of cognitive development.

Piaget identified four major developmental stages that children progress through when moving from infancy and continuing into early adolescence. **Table 21-1** summarizes these four stages.

The first stage is known as the sensorimotor stage and spans from birth until age 2 years. Significant growth in this stage occurs as an infant is born with little knowledge beyond instincts and reflexes. Soon after, the newborn's cognition develops into exploration of the environment, curiosity, and mental representation (problem solving using previously experienced events and/or objects; Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Key features of the sensorimotor stage include **CIRCULAR REACTIONS** and **OBJECT PERMANENCE**. Circular reactions initially involve motor reflexes, such as thumb sucking and hand grasping. These then develop into object manipulation that invokes a response from people or the environment (rattle shaking). By 18 months, a circular reaction no longer involves initiating behavior to elicit a response but rather to produce a different outcome, such as trying to place a block in a hole until it fits and falls through. Object permanence refers to the ability of the child to realize that an object is no longer visible despite the fact that it still exists (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). For example, a child will attempt to lift a blanket that he or she knows is covering a toy instead of believing that the toy has disappeared.

The second stage, the preoperational stage, takes place between ages 2 and 7 years. This stage is credited for development of motor skills and language. Key developmental features of the stage include **SYMBOLIC PLAY** and **MAGICAL THINKING**. Symbolic play involves the child's ability to separate behaviors and objects from their actual use and instead use them for play (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). For example, a child takes a wooden block and moves it through the air, stating that it is an airplane. To do this, the child must have a mental representation of an airplane and be able to replace reality (the object is a block) with the mental representation of an airplane. Magical thinking results from the child's belief that a circumstance or event may be brought on by wishing for it or thinking about it. A child exhibiting magical thinking may feel responsible for a friend falling on the playground if the child had been mad at the friend earlier that day.

TABLE 21-1: PIAGET'S THEORY OF COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT

STAGE	AGE	KEY COMPONENTS
Sensorimotor	Birth to 2 years	Circular reactions Object permanence
Preoperational	2–7 years	Symbolic play Magical thinking
Concrete operational	7–12 years	Reversibility Conservation
Formal operational	12 years to adulthood	Abstract thinking Logical thinking

The third stage is the concrete-operational stage. Adult-like characteristics begin to emerge through flexible reasoning, logical thought, and organization. The stage begins around age 7 years and continues until age 11 or 12 years (Sadock & Sadock, 2007). Key features of this stage include **REVERSIBILITY**, in which the child realizes that certain things can turn into other things and then back again, such as water and ice, and **CONSERVATION**—the ability to recognize that despite something changing shape, it maintains the characteristics that make it what it is (clay). Both of the features of the concrete-operational stage are made possible by increased ability to understand spatial operations, distance, time, velocity, and space (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999).

According to Piaget, a child's cognitive development occurs over four developmental stages from infancy through adolescence: sensorimotor, preoperational, concrete operational, and formal operational.

Finally, the formal operational stage is differentiated based on the child's ability to think abstractly. Usually occurring around age 12 years, this stage transitions a child into adolescence as he or she demonstrates the ability to use logic and reasoning to hypothesize, problem solve, and comprehend information (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999).

Erikson's Theory of Emotional and Personality Development

Various theories have been used to describe the development of emotional well-being and personality, but Erik Erikson's stages of human development are commonly used. Although the stages progress throughout the life span, the majority of developmental "crises," as Erikson calls them, occur within the first 20 years of life (Sadock & Sadock, 2007). **Table 21-2** summarizes the major stages of Erikson's theory.

Mastery of the initial stage is dependent on the child feeling nurtured and loved, ensuring the development of a sense of security, trust, and a basic optimism. Children who are mishandled, neglected, or abused often become insecure in their environment and mistrustful of others. Progression of development continues into the second stage in early childhood. A well-adjusted child emerges from this stage with a sense of pride and self-control instead of shame and self-doubt (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). The child demonstrating normal development through this stage displays willpower through tantrums and stubbornness. This is not necessarily a sign of poor development, but rather an indication of testing wills and temperament. Children experiencing poor parenting may show a lack of independence, willpower, and self-esteem.

As children move into late childhood, this newfound independence from the previous stage progresses into self-directed behavior and ability to form goals. This progression is often demonstrated through play. According to Erikson, a healthy developing child will increase imagination through fantasy play, learn to cooperate with others, and lead as well as follow (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Children demonstrating poor development will continue to depend on adult figures, show restrictions in play and imagination, and fail to participate fully in groups.

Children moving into school-age development begin to master more formal skills as rules are enforced, structured activity increases, and the need for self-discipline becomes important. A child successful in this stage gains autonomy by showing competence in self-directed activities and appreciating reward for achievements (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). However, failure at the school-age stage will reveal difficulty learning in traditional settings and subsequently a sense of inferiority.

TABLE 21-2: ERIKSON'S STAGES OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE	AGE (YEARS)	DEVELOPMENTAL TASK	NORMAL DEVELOPMENT	DELAYED DEVELOPMENT
Infancy	0–1	Trust vs. mistrust	Relationship formation; trust in others	Suspiciousness of others; lack of relationships
Early childhood	1–3	Autonomy vs. shame and doubt	Self-esteem; self-control; willpower	Self-doubt; low self-esteem; lack of independence
Late childhood	3–6	Initiative vs. guilt	Self-directed behavior; goal formation	Little sense of purpose; no goal formation
School age	6–12	Industry vs. inferiority	Sense of competency and achievement	Difficulty working/learning; sense of inferiority
Adolescence	12–20	Identity vs. role confusion	Beginnings of self-discovery; identity formation	Identity confusion; difficulty in group settings
Early adulthood	20–35	Intimacy vs. isolation	Committed relationships; ability to give and receive love	Emotional isolation; egocentrism
Middle adulthood	35–65 years	Generativity vs. self-absorption or stagnation	Ability to care for others; giving of time to others	Self-absorption; inability/refusal to care for others
Late adulthood	Older than 65	Integrity vs. despair	Fulfillment in life; willingness to face and accept death; balanced perspective on life events	Bitterness/dissatisfaction with life; despair over impending death

According to Erikson, the majority of an individual's emotional and personality development occurs during the first 20 years of that person's life. This development forms the foundation for continued development in adulthood.

Over the rest of an individual's life span, the remainder of Erikson's stages emerges based on personality formation in the initial childhood stages. Failure to develop mastery at any stage may result in failure at subsequent stages. The progression through stages can be compared with building a house. The foundation is essential for the structure of the house as a whole, and each floor's stability is dependent on proper construction of the floors below it. Through adulthood, an individual will discover intimacy through lasting friendships and marriage and generativity through lasting marriage, productivity, and child rearing. The individual will also learn to maintain integrity through experiencing aging and death (Sadock & Sadock, 2007). Inability to satisfactorily complete any of the adult stages leads an individual to show signs of isolation, egocentrism, and an overall dissatisfaction with life.

Freud's Theory of Psychological Development

Like the development of emotional well-being and personality, a variety of theories exist to outline the psychological development of children. The most notable theories include Sigmund Freud's theory of psychosexual development and Ivan Pavlov and B. F. Skinner's behavioral theories.

According to Freud, if an individual does not resolve issues in an early stage, he or she becomes fixated in that stage. Fixation results in unhealthy behavior.

Freud's psychosexual development theory is one of the best known theories in psychology. He identified five childhood stages: oral, anal, phallic, latent, and genital. Each of these stages is guided by the pleasure-seeking energy of the id. The id, commonly known as the **LIBIDO**, is the driving

TABLE 21-3: FREUD'S STAGES OF PSYCHOSEXUAL DEVELOPMENT

STAGE	AGE	BEHAVIOR	RESULT OF FIXATION
Oral	0–18 months	Rooting and sucking reflex Trust, comfort	Substance abuse, eating disorders, schizophrenia
Anal	18 months–3 years	Bladder and bowel control (toilet training) Control, independence	Destructive personality disorders, obsessive compulsive disorder, depression
Phallic	3–6 years	Discovery of opposite gender; focus on genitals Identification with same-sex parent	Sexual identity disorders
Latent	6 years to puberty	Sexual drives calmed; focus on peer relationships Social/communication skills, self-confidence	Social phobias, anxiety
Genital	Puberty forward	Strong sexual interest in opposite sex balance, concern for others	Sexual perversion disorders

TABLE 21-4: HARRY STACK SULLIVAN'S STAGES OF INTERPERSONAL AND PERSONALITY DEVELOPMENT

STAGE	TIME PERIOD	DEVELOPMENTAL TASK
Infancy	Birth to 18 months	Oral gratification; anxiety occurs for the first time
Childhood	18 months–6 years	Delayed gratification
Juvenile	6–9 years	Forming of peer relationships
Preadolescence	9–12 years	Same-sex relationships
Early adolescence	12–14 years	Opposite-sex relationships
Late adolescence	14–21 years	Self-identity development

force behind specific behaviors (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Healthy psychosexual development occurs when each stage is successfully completed, whereas unresolved issues in a particular stage cause fixation and unhealthy behavior (Sadock & Sadock, 2007). **Table 21-3** summarizes Freud's theory. Refer to Chapter 10 for additional information about Freud.

Sullivan's Theory of Interpersonal and Personality Development

Harry Stack Sullivan, a psychoanalytically trained psychiatrist, believed that children develop a self-system through childhood and adolescence (Rioch, 1985). This system develops over a period of six stages and is based on how an individual interacts with others. **Table 21-4** summarizes Sullivan's six stages.

According to Sullivan, the self-system is composed of personality traits that have been reinforced and maintained through interpersonal relationships, into adulthood, at which point they become rigid and dominant. A person has a need for satisfaction and security. If these needs are not met, anxiety develops (Sullivan, 1953). The purpose of the self-system is to decrease anxiety and sustain security (Rioch, 1985). (See Chapter 2 for additional information on Sullivan.)

According to Sullivan, children develop a self-system from infancy through late adolescence based on their interactions with others.

Behavioral Theories of Pavlov and Skinner

Behavioral theories of child development are based only on observable behaviors influenced by interaction with the environment. Development is a reaction to rewards, reinforcement, and punishment and is described in theories of classical conditioning and operant conditioning. Pavlov made famous the theory of **CLASSICAL CONDITIONING** with his experiment on salivation in dogs. Classical

conditioning refers to a learned behavioral response to a stimulus.

Pavlov's theory consists of four basic principles. The unconditioned stimulus is a naturally occurring event that elicits an unconditioned response, which is unlearned. The conditioned stimulus, although previously neutral, becomes a trigger for the conditioned response after associating with the unconditioned stimulus (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Simply put, Pavlov measured salivation (unconditioned response) in dogs when they were presented with food (unconditioned stimulus). He then rang a bell (unconditioned stimulus) multiple times as he presented the dogs with food; soon, the dogs would begin to salivate at the sound of the bell in expectation of receiving food (conditioned response). Pavlov's theory became the basis of behavioral psychology and is often used in child therapies for phobias, anxiety, panic disorders, and behavioral modification (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999).

The behavioral theories of Pavlov and Skinner form the basis for many of the therapies used for childhood disorders.

Skinner's behavioral theory involving **OPERANT CONDITIONING** holds that learning takes place through rewards (used to increase desired behavior) and punishments (to decrease undesirable behavior). Operant conditioning is used frequently throughout the life span but more commonly as a parenting technique and in the classroom (Bornstein & Lamb, 1999). Examples include time-outs for misbehavior, grounding for missing curfew, candy or praise for success in toilet training, stickers for perfect scores on spelling tests—the list could easily continue. (See Chapter 10 for a more in-depth discussion about the work of Pavlov and Skinner.)

OVERVIEW OF DISORDERS OF CHILDHOOD

Historically, mental illness in children was rarely studied because the general population believed that psychiatric illnesses did not occur in that population.

Currently, diagnosis in children is more common; subsequently, there is now inclusion of childhood mental illnesses in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM-5*; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013). The rates of childhood psychiatric diagnoses have been on a steady rise, with current data showing that one in five children aged 13 to 18 years have had a seriously debilitating mental disorder, either currently or at some point in their lives (Merikangas et al., 2010). Approximately 13% of children aged 8 to 15 years have met diagnostic criteria for a mental disorder in the last year according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) 2015 update. Whether the increase is due to actual increases in childhood mental illness or related to increased comfort and acceptance with diagnoses from providers is unclear. Regardless, disorders of childhood are important to recognize and understand.

Previously, disorders of childhood were separated diagnostically to help providers identify unique signs and symptoms specific to children; however, as psychiatry and psychology move to a life-span approach to mental health, the various mental health conditions are now organized by how they manifest at each developmental stage (APA, 2013). As the practice of working with children evolves, through both clinical and scientific knowledge, changes continue to be made to identification and treatment of childhood disorders. A few of the more common disorders are described in this chapter.

AUTISM SPECTRUM DISORDERS

In the *DSM-IV-TR*, autism was combined with Rett's disorder, childhood disintegrative disorder, and Asperger's disorder as a grouping of diagnoses categorized as pervasive developmental disorders (PDD; APA, 2013). The category was largely debated as some practitioners felt that the disorders were not clearly differentiated, which would increase the possibility of diagnostic errors (Gupta, 2004). In the *DSM-5*, efforts were made to provide more precise descriptions of each disorder as research continued to support the presence of multiple symptoms and behaviors across a spectrum of severity. With this change, children still have to meet a set of diagnostic criteria, but are now grouped according to severity of social communication impairments and restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior (APA, 2013).

The term **AUTISM** literally means "living in self" and was first used in 1911 to describe poor social relatedness in schizophrenics. However, signs of autism are apparent in reports of children with distortions of the developmental process as early as 1867. In the early 1940s, autism was considered a subtype of childhood psychosis carrying the label "childhood schizophrenics of the pseudo-defective type" (Gupta, 2004). Over time, however, autism began to distinguish itself as a unique and independent disorder characterized by impairments in social interactions, ability to relate to others, communication problems, and types of repetitive behaviors.

Before the release of the third edition of the *DSM*, problems arose in the clinical setting because of similarities between autism and schizophrenia. The third edition included autistic disorder under the category of PDD, not

under psychotic disorders. Although clinicians acknowledge the similarities between the diagnostic criteria, there are two significant differences:

- *Schizophrenia occurs after a period of normal development, whereas autism is likely to be present from birth (APA, 2013).*
- *Positive symptoms such as hallucinations and delusions and higher intelligence levels are associated with schizophrenia but not autism (APA, 2013).*

Over the past 30 years, the categories, diagnostic criteria, and subtypes of autistic disorder have undergone many changes due to increased research and diagnoses of the disorder. It is likely that features of autism will continue to change over the next 30 years. The severity of autism varies widely and can range in impact from mild to significantly disabling/severe.

Prevalence studies revealed that an average of 1 out of every 68 8-year-old children was identified as having autism spectrum disorder (ASD), with a five times higher rate in boys (1 in 42) than in girls (1 in 189; Baio, 2010). Over the past 10 years, there has been an increased focus on autistic disorders in the popular media, leading to research, speculations, and controversy about what causes autism. Heredity, environment, brain abnormalities, postnatal infection, and prenatal conditions may lead to an increased risk of autism, but the actual cause remains unknown.

Research demonstrates that genetic factors may play a role in the etiology of autism based on both twin and nontwin sibling studies, with a strong environmental component (Hallmayer et al., 2011). However, no specific genes have been identified. Current research is exploring a number of biomarkers associated with autism, which may aid in the discovery of specific genetic markers. Environmental influences thought to contribute to autism are assumed to be related to the interaction between the environment and genes, not environment alone (Anderson, 2015). Additionally, specific risk factors have not been identified.

Abnormalities in the structure and function of the brain are generally accepted as the underlying cause of autism. Sophisticated imaging techniques have shown that autistic children have disproportionate enlargement of the amygdala, which influences social interaction and processing (Nordahl et al., 2012). Abnormalities have also been noted in the areas of the brain associated with sensory perception, emotion, and empathy. Researchers have yet to identify a primary deficit associated with autism.

Several early developmental problems, both prenatal and postnatal, have been linked to autistic disorders. For example, prenatal viral infections, such as rubella or cytomegalovirus, are thought to activate the maternal immune response. Presence of particular infections and activation of certain cytokines have been associated with the risk of ASDs (Brown, 2012). Additionally, gestational diabetes, teratogenic medications, pesticides, thyroid issues, folic acid deficiencies, and stress are other maternal influences that possibly contribute to autism. A large list of potential postnatal environmental causes of or associations with autism exists and includes everything from viral infections to lead exposure to excess rainfall. One issue related to the development of autism that has raised much debate is the use of vaccines. **Box 21-1** describes this issue. Over the years, most research has not been able to demonstrate a statistically significant relationship among any of these factors and the development of autism. However, current research into the etiology of autism is showing many possibilities and may show promising results in the near future.

Genetics, environment, structural and functional alterations of the brain, and pre- and postnatal problems have been linked to autism.

Children with autism will show marked impairment in social interactions and communication that is sustained throughout childhood and beyond (APA, 2013). Although the individual may speak, there will likely be an inability to initiate or carry on a conversation. It is common for the pitch, intonation, rate, and rhythm of the speech to be abnormal and inappropriate to the context of conversation. Rhyming, **ECHOLALIA** (repeating spoken words like an echo), peculiar languages, and referring to themselves in the third person are common (APA, 2013). A child with autism will also display repetitive and restricted behavior. They may seem to exist in their own world where repetitive routines and fantasy are apparent. Occasionally, a child with autism may exhibit a particular talent in art, music, mathematics, or another area. They are known as savants.

By definition, these symptoms must be pervasive and sustained, and will present initially between 12 and 24 months of age. Parents can often trace abnormalities in social interaction back to birth or shortly afterward. The severity of symptoms through development may continue to change and can be affected by treatment but symptoms remain sufficient enough to cause impairment in functioning (APA, 2013).

At the less severe end of the spectrum, children may not experience a significant delay in early cognitive and language skills, and the preoccupation with objects and rituals that are common at the more severe end are less often observed. The less severe form of autism was formerly known as Asperger's disorder. In addition, the social isolation is much less severe, and individuals may display motivation for approaching others despite the eccentric,

BOX 21-1: DO VACCINES CAUSE AUTISM?

Many studies have researched whether there is a relationship between vaccines and autism. The majority of scientific research has concluded that vaccines are not associated with autism and the risk of not immunizing children against disease supersedes the risk of potentially damaging ingredients in vaccines. In a 2007 court case, three families with autistic children sought compensation from the Vaccine Injury Compensation Program for allegedly triggering autism with a measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine-containing thimerosol, a mercury-based preservative. The court ruled that the three cases presented did not prove a link between autism and particular childhood vaccines, citing insufficient evidence (Hitti, 2009).

Autism Speaks, a well-known autism advocacy organization, supports continuing examination of the factors contributing to autism and encourages increased scientific research to determine the cause. Celebrity influence from Jenny McCarthy and Holly Robinson Peete, both mothers who believe vaccines were the cause of autism in their children, has made the vaccine/autism debate increasingly sensitive. Both women, along with antivaccine groups, trace the emergence of autism in their children to the time when thimerosol-containing vaccines were administered.

Future research will likely focus on genetics and environment to determine the true etiology of autism. Until then, the debate continues in both science and the popular media.

verbose, and insensitive nature of their conversation (APA, 2013). It became quite difficult to differentiate those with Asperger's and those with a mild form of autism as many of the symptoms were similar.

Difficulty with communication, both verbal and nonverbal, can be associated with disorders other than ASD. When a child exhibits significant impairment in communication and social interactions, without the restrictive and repetitive behaviors associated with ASD, and without low cognitive ability associated with an intellectual/cognitive disorder, the diagnosis may be a social communication disorder (SCD; APA, 2013). Addition of this disorder to the *DSM* provides a basis for treatment, which was previously inconsistent and nonspecific.

ATTENTION DEFICIT HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) was formerly grouped with disruptive behavior disorders including oppositional defiant disorder (ODD) and conduct disorder (CD), based on the common, underlying symptom of inability to control impulses. The first documented mention of disruptive behavior disorder-like symptoms occurred in 1902 with a description of impulsiveness in children believed to have a defect of moral control (Londrie, 2006). Throughout the early 1900s, more name changes occurred and, in 1937, the hyperactivity associated with ADHD was singled out as a pharmacologically treatable symptom.

Experiments began testing stimulant drug use in hyperactive children, and a short time later, methylphenidate (Ritalin) was widely accepted as the drug of choice for treatment of hyperactivity. It was not until 1980 that ADHD was documented in the *DSM-III* and accepted as a formal diagnosis (Londrie, 2006). At that time, it was known as attention deficit disorder (ADD) and classified as with or without hyperactivity. Around 1987, researchers began noticing that the hyperactivity and the impulse control associated with ADHD had a significant correlation with behavioral issues (Foley et al., 2004). It was then that ADHD started to break away from other disruptive disorders as its own condition based on the more frequently absent symptoms of hostility and aggression.

ADHD is characterized by inattention and/or hyperactivity-impulsivity that is more frequent and severe than what would be expected for that developmental state. For example, toddlers frequently present with excessive motor activity. However, many of these children will not go on to develop ADHD. Therefore, differentiating normal overactivity from hyperactivity becomes important.

Actual lifetime prevalence of ADHD is estimated at 9% in school-age children (aged 13–18 years), with prevalence of those with "severe" disorder at 1.8% (Merikangas et al., 2010). However, these rates can vary significantly depending on location, nature, and method of ascertainment of the population surveyed (APA, 2013).

The actual cause of ADHD is not known. However, considerable evidence exists to suggest a strong genetic influence, as siblings and children of individuals with ADHD

are more likely to have the disorder. Additionally, neurochemical studies show alterations in the neurotransmitter levels of dopamine, norepinephrine, and possibly serotonin—these alterations may be associated with disruptive symptoms. Pre-, peri-, and postnatal factors such as exposure to toxic substances, fetal hypoxia, and/or prematurity have also been implicated as potential causes but are nonspecific to ADHD (Thapar, Cooper, Jefferies, & Stergiakouli, 2011).

Formal diagnosis of ADHD usually is not made until the child starts school. At that time, maladjustment to the school environment, whether hyperactive or inattentive, is better observed. Many children will display behaviors seen in ADHD. Careful diagnostic strategies must be used to distinguish those children who would benefit from pharmacological and therapeutic treatment and those who would benefit more from increased parental guidance.

The diagnosis of ADHD has three possible subtypes: predominantly hyperactive–impulsive type (active, impulsive behavior), predominantly inattentive type (inability to pay attention), and the combined type (behavior from both types). Each subtype has specific criteria but are treated in a relatively similar way.

Inattention, hyperactivity, and impulsivity are characteristics of ADHD, which are usually not diagnosed until after the child starts school.

DISRUPTIVE, IMPULSE CONTROL, AND CONDUCT DISORDERS

Disruptive, impulse control, and CDs involve a pattern of behavior in which an individual consistently bends or breaks rules, as well as problems with self-control of emotions and behaviors. It is normal for children to test authority by breaking the rules and demonstrating oppositional behavior in childhood and adolescence. However, serious and routine oppositional defiance extend beyond normal. These disorders are closely linked with impulses (action without reflective thought of consequences) and the ability to manage or control those impulses (APA, 2013). These diagnoses include: CD, ODD, and intermittent explosive disorder (IED).

Conduct Disorder

Children with CD display a repetitive and persistent pattern of behavior that violates the rights of other people, age-appropriate societal norms, or rules (APA, 2013). The prevalence of CD has been on the rise over the past few years and is estimated to occur in anywhere from 2% to 10% of the population (APA, 2013). CD may be diagnosed as early as preschool and is one of the most frequently diagnosed conditions in child mental health facilities. A common precursor to childhood onset of CD is a diagnosis of ODD, which is typically diagnosed first and is reviewed as follows.

The underlying cause of CD is not known. However, like ADHD, similar neurological influences are possible but environmental influence from family, school, and peers appears to be stronger based on research trends and increased prevalence in urban areas. The impact of social groups on child development is remarkable as peers play an essential role in development of interpersonal and social skills. Poor family dynamics and home environment also have a tremendous effect on childhood behavior. Neurobiological studies suggest a compromised ability to associate behaviors with both positive and negative consequences, as they are less sensitive to punishment and reward (Matthys, Vanderschuren, Schutter, & Lochman, 2012). Primary factors contributing to the development of CD may include: parental rejection or neglect, low sociodemographic characteristics, parental psychopathology (antisocial personality and/or substance use), and co-occuring neurocognitive characteristics (ADHD, low IQ; Kim-Cohen et al., 2005)

Children with CD are more commonly males and often carry a diagnosis of ODD, reaching full CD criteria before reaching puberty. Children with child-onset subtype of CD are more likely to develop adult antisocial personality disorder (see Chapter 14 for more information on personality disorders) than those with adolescent-onset CD (see Chapter 22 for more information; Kim-Cohen et al., 2005).

Key features of children with CD include: aggression to people and animals, destruction of property, deceitfulness, theft, and serious violations of rules. Patterns of behavior will show across a variety of settings, creating an opportunity for clinicians to verify behaviors with teachers, police, and families (APA, 2013).

Conduct disorder involves behavior that violates the rights of others or major societal norms or rules. It typically involves aggressive behavior toward individuals or animals, property destruction, deceitfulness or lying, or serious violations of rules.

Oppositional Defiant Disorder

ODD is similar to CD and often precedes a CD diagnosis. The major difference between the two disorders is that ODD does not include more serious aspects of CD in which the rights of others or age-appropriate societal norms and rules are violated (APA, 2013). Individuals with ODD typically do not display aggression toward people and animals, destroy property, or show a pattern of theft or deceit—characteristics associated with CD. If a child meets the criteria for both CD and ODD, CD becomes the primary diagnosis (APA, 2013).

Rates of ODD range from 1% to 11% and vary greatly by population (APA, 2013). Like ADHD and CD, the cause of the disorder is not known. Like CD, environmental influence from family, school, and peers has been identified as a strong contributing factor. ODD, as with CD, has an increased prevalence in urban areas. Neurochemical influences are likely contributors but to a lesser degree.

Features of ODD vary with age and development. The most common characteristics appear to be mood liability, low frustration tolerance, swearing, and substance use (APA, 2013). Other common symptoms include running away, truancy, temper tantrums, and fighting. Appearance of these symptoms is first noted in the home environment, usually before the age of 8 years. Individuals with ODD may not display oppositional behavior in a clinical setting, but behavior may be observed when they interact with a parent or other authority figure.

Individuals with ODD typically do not display aggression toward people and animals, destroy property, or show a pattern of theft or deceit—characteristics associated with CD.

Intermittent Explosive Disorder

Once thought to be more of an adult diagnosis, recent data show that the onset of the impulsive, aggressive behaviors associated with IED is most common in childhood and adolescence, although symptoms continue for many years (APA, 2013). This disorder is associated with unpredictable and aggressive outbursts that represent inability to control impulses. The outbursts can be verbal (loud yelling, temper tantrums, tirades) or physical (aggression toward property, animals, or people) and come at a level grossly out of proportion to the provoking factor. The primary difference between IED and either ODD or CD is that these outbursts do not result in substantial damage to people or property. They are not premeditated or planned; rather, they both have a rapid onset and duration, and often cause significant distress to the child.

MOOD DISORDERS

Affective and anxiety disorders fall into the general category of mood disorders and affect children in precise ways. Common mood disorders observed in children include: depression, adjustment disorder, and posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD).

Although previously quite rare in childhood, the diagnosis of bipolar disorder in children has increased significantly since the late 1990s (Kessing, Vradi, & Andersen, 2014); however, it is largely unclear whether the increase in diagnosis is a result of increase in prevalence, overdiagnosing, or a combination of factors. Children with symptoms considered "manic," such as elated mood, behavioral dyscontrol, hyperverbal speech pattern, or irritability, are symptoms that may overlap with other disorders including ADHD. Children with these symptoms often do not meet diagnostic criteria for bipolar disorder later in life; instead, more often they develop unipolar depression or anxiety disorders (APA, 2013). In order to curtail this trend, the *DSM-5* lists a new diagnosis called disruptive mood dysregulation disorder (DMDD) to group children up to 12 years of age with persistent irritability and frequent episodes of behavioral dyscontrol out of proportion to the situation (APA, 2013). The new diagnosis allows more appropriate, evidence-based treatment, and observation of symptoms over time.

Depression

Depressive symptoms in children are often more subtle than adults, because children may be unable to express sadness, hopelessness, and despair in concrete terms. Instead, presence of negative/emotional temperament, ruminations, difficulties with attention and memory, and frequent somatic complaints (i.e., stomachaches), are more prevalent in childhood depression (Hankin, 2012). The symptom of irritability continues to be present in many children with depressed mood, although has become less predictive of a major depressive disorder (Stringaris et al., 2013).

The risk for depression in children increases with a family history of depression or other psychiatric disorders, as well as stressful life events often involving significant changes in family dynamic or lifestyle (Nanni, Uher, & Danese, 2012). In addition, childhood depression increases the risk for suicide. Although once believed that children with the inability to understand death could not attempt suicide, it is now realized that children as young as 6 years of age may attempt suicide as a way to escape painful situations or gain attention, whether or not they truly understand death. Younger children may believe that death is temporary or reversible. Frequent thoughts of suicide, nonsuicidal self-injury, and poor family function are predictive factors of

suicide attempts in children and adolescents (Wilkinson, Kelvin, Roberts, Dubicka, & Goodyer, 2011).

The criteria used to diagnose depression in children are the same as those used for adults. The criteria specify continuous symptoms for 2 weeks. However, children's symptoms often come and go over a period of time. The *DSM-5* has made an effort to highlight the importance of parents and family in making accurate diagnoses in children, as many of the symptoms are observed by others rather than reported by the child. This *DSM* change highlights the importance of patient-centered care, taking into consideration the values and cultural norms of the family who is observing the child and reporting symptoms. A respectful discussion about the family dynamics and cultural background is important before looking at symptom severity and diagnostic criteria.

Diagnosing depression in children can be difficult. Some practitioners believe that depression can develop at any time, including in infancy and early childhood, but instead of assigning a diagnosis of depression, terms such as *attachment disorder* or a *generalized failure to thrive* may be used. Some refer to withdrawal reaction, characterized by lack of motor activity, blank facial expression and/or limited eye contact, as symptoms of infant depression (Guedeney & Puura, 2011). However, due to the inability of the infant to describe symptoms, it becomes increasingly important to rule out medical conditions, abuse, or neglect before assuming infant depression. In addition, side effects of various medications or an underlying medical condition can be mistaken for depressive symptoms. The reverse is also true. Therefore, a careful, skilled assessment is important.

Posttraumatic Stress Disorder

PTSD results from the exposure to a stressor and is characterized by an extreme stressor with a specific constellation of symptoms. Stressors associated with PTSD must be extreme and traumatic and must involve exposure to or experience of actual or threatened death or serious injury, threat to one's physical integrity, or witnessing an event that involves death or significant injury. Response to the event involves fear, helplessness, and/or horror, and can be observed as disorganized or agitated behavior in children (APA, 2013).

Events preceding the development of PTSD in children usually involve sexual or physical abuse, natural or man-made disasters, or the witnessing of harm or death to loved ones (APA, 2013). Most younger children experience symptoms similar to those in adults, with some slight differences. Although children may have specific nightmares that repeat the traumatic event, generalized nightmares of monsters or other threats are more common. Rather than verbally describing the repetition of the event, art or play can elicit telling behaviors, such as inappropriately touching dolls to suggest sexual abuse, or repetitively crashing play cars together following a car accident. As with other childhood disorders, verbal description of symptoms is not likely, and therefore observation of changes in behavior, somatic complaints, and the waxing and waning of symptoms is common. The *DSM-5* added a subtype for children under the age of 6 years as the symptom presentation can vary significantly from older children and adults, and can often require different treatment approaches.

FEEDING AND EATING DISORDERS

A small group of disorders in childhood are characterized by persistent feeding and eating disturbances and include: pica, rumination disorder, and avoidant/restrictive food intake disorder. Traditional eating disorders of anorexia and bulimia are extremely rare in children until they reach puberty. (Chapter 19 provides information on these two eating disorders.)

Pica

PICA is characterized by persistent eating of one or more nonnutritive substances for a period of at least 1 month (APA, 2013). It is seen in all ages and cultures. Individuals affected by pica have an abnormal appetite for nonnutritive substances such as clay, soil, chalk, or soap, and may crave substances such as flour, starch, ice cubes, or salt that most consider food but still carry little nutritional value (Ellis & Pataki, 2014). The disorder most commonly affects small children, pregnant women, and those with mental retardation, obsessive-compulsive disorder, ASDs, and/or developmental disabilities. In some instances, the presence of pica is associated with a vitamin or a mineral deficiency, where the consumed substance is thought to contain the deficient material (APA, 2013).

The prevalence of pica varies from 8% to 25% and is higher in those with severe intellectual and developmental disabilities (Call, Simmons, Mevers, & Alvarez, 2015). The disorder is often unrecognized until accompanied by medical sequelae, such as electrolyte disturbances or intestinal obstruction or perforation, or parasitic or bacterial infections. Frequently, intervention by mental health professionals is not involved.

The danger of pica comes with consumption of toxic substances, such as lead paint, metal, or rocks that may contain sharp edges and cause stomach or intestinal damage, and animal droppings or dirt that may contain parasites or harmful bacteria. Diagnostically, the eating of nonnutritive substances associated with pica must be inappropriate to developmental level, meaning a toddler putting toys in his or her mouth and attempting to swallow them is not considered pica, even if continues for a prolonged period of time.

Pica involves the ingestion of substances such as clay, soil, chalk, soap, flour, starch, ice cubes, or salt, none of which are considered to have any nutritional value.

Rumination Disorder

Rumination disorder has existed in clinical documentation since the early 1600s. Although initially classified as a disorder for adults, it is now more commonly associated with infants, toddlers, and those with mental retardation or PDD. Rumination disorder is described as the repeated regurgitation and rechewing of food occurring after a feeding. Infants affected by rumination disorder generally display symptoms of irritation and hunger between feedings as a result of malnutrition. Weight loss, failure to thrive, and even death can occur if untreated (APA, 2013).

The vomiting associated with rumination is typically described as unforced and effortless, and not preceded by nausea. Because the food has been recently ingested (within 30 minutes of a meal), it lacks the odor and taste of stomach acid. Food that has been regurgitated is most commonly chewed and reswallowed, but can also be ejected (APA, 2013).

Generally, rumination is poorly understood. The most widely documented mechanism involves a learned, voluntary relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter, which allows food to effortlessly pass from the stomach to the mouth. Despite the voluntary relaxation, the overall process of rumination is believed to be psychological in nature, and involuntary (Ellis & Pataki, 2014). Rumination is commonly misdiagnosed as bulimia. However, the disorders differ based on cause and intention. Although symptoms may appear similar in adolescents, bulimia occurs as a result of a distorted body image, is self-inflicted, and is often hidden from others. Rumination is not self-inflicted and affected individuals are generally unable to control the reflex to vomit. The disorder is largely thought of as uncommon and usually spontaneously remits with age and maturity. In severe cases, rumination disorder can be continuous (APA, 2013).

The vomiting associated with rumination disorder is not self-inflicted and is not under the individual's voluntary control, making it different from the vomiting associated with bulimia nervosa.

Avoidant/Restrictive Food Intake Disorder

Significant weight loss or significant failure to gain weight as a result of inadequate eating can be attributed to various causes. Gastrointestinal or other medical conditions, poor living conditions with lack of available food, and malnutrition are some possibilities. The symptoms also may be associated with a psychological feeding disorder.

Approximately 1% to 5% of pediatric hospital admissions can be attributed to failure to thrive (lack of growth and development at a normal rate); approximately half of those admissions cannot be attributed to any general medical condition (APA, 2013). As a result, psychological issues may be involved. For example, in some cases of feeding disorders, parent–infant interaction is the primary predisposing factor. These interactions may be as innocent as inappropriately presenting food or responding inappropriately to the child's rejection of the food. The child may be unusually temperamental or have preexisting developmental impairments or psychological conditions that can explain the difficulty with feeding. With severe problems in parent–infant interaction, such as parental psychopathology, child abuse, and child neglect, the risk for long-term medical and developmental problems increases (APA, 2013). Most infants and young children diagnosed with feeding disorders experience improved growth over time, although they often remain smaller than normal through adolescence (APA, 2013).

Eating or feeding disturbances that result in failure to meet appropriate nutritional and energy needs, and are accompanied by weight loss, malnutrition/dehydration, or dependence on supplements or enteral feeding are considered problematic (APA, 2013). Children with food avoidance may not eat foods with unique smells or textures, and are often generalized as "picky eaters"; this is particularly common with autism (APA, 2013). However, inadequate food intake can result in symptoms including irritability and difficulty in consoling during feedings, apathy, withdrawal, and developmental delays (APA, 2013), and warrant treatment when nutritional and growth standards are not met.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Various treatment options may be used for childhood disorders. It is important to remember the various Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) initiatives when communicating with patients and implementing any of the various treatments. Patient-centered care, teamwork, and collaboration are particularly important when working with children. Treatment options may include play therapy, behavioral therapy, cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), family therapy, and psychopharmacology.

Play Therapy

PLAY THERAPY is a method of psychotherapy that uses fantasy and symbolic meanings expressed during play as a medium for communicating and understanding a child's behavior. It is an effective treatment for a broad range of children's problems from the loss of a pet to PTSD. Play therapy is most commonly seen in treatment of young children with aggressive behavior, self-isolation, and children who have experienced abuse, neglect, or loss of a family member (British Association of Play Therapists, 2013).

The goal of play therapy is to focus on the child as a guide for the course of play, not on the child's presenting problem. In other words, it is not meant to cure a disorder, but rather to ease the symptoms that the child finds most difficult in his or her life. Because of this method surrounding the therapy, it can be effective for essentially any child with overwhelming issues the child cannot manage on his or her own (British Association of Play Therapists, 2013). **Evidence-Based Practice 21-1** highlights a study evaluating the efficacy of play therapy.

Play therapy requires extensive knowledge of normal developmental and emotional stages and knowledge of behavior and cognition in children. Typical play therapy sessions last around 45 minutes and occur one or two times per week (British Association of Play Therapists, 2013). The therapist or counselor meets with the child alone for sessions and then holds separate sessions to update and inform the parents on progress. Parent meetings are important to gain information on the child's developmental, medical, and social history and the current progress that the patients are seeing at home, as well as to assist the parents with communication and parenting techniques.

A session of play therapy is child-led, that is, the child is told that he or she may play with whatever he or she would like. Because young children do not usually communicate thoughts and feelings verbally until later in childhood, patterns and themes expressed in play will likely express relevant issues better than the child would. Over time, the clinician helps the child to create a meaning when playing, subsequently helping the child handle the difficulties. Play is not guided, and statements made by the child require the clinician to use therapeutic communication techniques such as reflection and validation (British Association of Play Therapists, 2013). Play therapy is a successful treatment option that will often reduce or eliminate presenting problems, as well as improve functioning at school, home, and in social settings.

Play therapy provides children with a means of communicating thoughts and feelings that they are unable to put into words.

Behavioral Therapy

Operant and classical conditioning techniques described earlier in this chapter provide the foundation for the techniques used in behavioral therapy. Various techniques used include exposure and response, flooding, and systematic desensitization. However, the most commonly used technique is behavior modification, which involves positive and negative reinforcement for good or bad behavior. Positive reinforcement encourages repetition of good behavior and negative reinforcement discourages repetition of bad behavior. The technique of behavioral modification is often taught to parents to manage disruptive behavior disorders. Unfortunately, it may not be as useful a technique for depression or anxiety disorders.

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

CBT is one of the most popular techniques used with children. It arose in the second half of the 20th century when behavioral therapy was combined with cognitive therapy. The objective of this therapy is to identify thoughts, assumptions, and beliefs that are related to problematic emotions and further related to dysfunctional behaviors. After the negative thoughts are identified, resulting dysfunctional emotions and behaviors can be replaced with functional ones.

The primary technique of this therapy commonly used with children is journaling of significant events or thoughts with recording of corresponding emotions and behaviors. Depending on the age of the child, art may be used in place of written words using a similar theoretical focus as play therapy. This focus is that the expression of thoughts and feelings at certain ages may be expressed more clearly through art.

Family Therapy

Using family therapy with mentally ill children can be an extremely useful intervention because it emphasizes the importance of family relationships on a child's psychological state. Conflict within the family, inconsistencies in parenting, impact of the child's mental illness on the family dynamic, and maladaptive coping styles can be addressed during the family therapy session (Bowen, 1978). The broad range of issues addressed makes family therapy an effective treatment approach in almost every category of mental illness.

A typical family therapy course will begin with the therapist meeting with the entire family, parents, siblings, and affected child to get a feeling of how the family interacts at home. Accurate assessment of the family dynamics may require the creation of genograms to analyze roles that the family members serve and any existing conflicts that exist within the family unit. Psychoeducation about the identified illness, communication techniques, relationship building, coping techniques, and psychotherapy may be

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 21-1: NONPHARMACOLOGICAL INTERVENTIONS FOR ADHD

STUDY

Sonuga-Barke, E. J., Brandeis, D., Cortese, S., Daley, D., Ferrin, M., Holtmann, M.,…Sergeant, J.; European ADHD Guidelines Group. (2013). Nonpharmacological interventions for ADHD: Systematic review and met-analyses of randomized controlled trials of dietary and psychological treatments. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 170*(3), 275–289.

SUMMARY

A meta-analysis was conducted to explore evidence for efficacy of six types of nonpharmacological treatments in children and adolescents with ADHD. The six interventions reviewed included: dietary changes, such as restricted elimination diets, artificial food color exclusions, and free fatty acid supplementation, as well as psychological interventions of cognitive training, neurofeedback, and behavioral interventions. An electronic database search of children and adolescents diagnosed with ADHD was conducted and yielded 54 applicable records. Results indicated that supplementing diet with free fatty acids produced a small but significant reduction in ADHD symptoms, with artificial food color exclusion producing larger significance in reduction of symptoms. There was a lack of evidence for efficacy of psychological interventions, although many individual studies did show benefit of psychological interventions; this indicates a need for more randomized controlled trials for these interventions before they can be fully supported as treatment options for ADHD.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Many parents of ADHD children and adolescents are interested in nonpharmacological treatment interventions for their children. Dietary changes particularly have become a popular intervention for parents to try to manage symptoms. The meta-analytic review of dietary and psychological treatments for ADHD is important because it shows that dietary changes, done carefully and with review from a provider, could provide some benefit for children and adolescents with ADHD. It can be difficult to care for a child with ADHD, and parents and providers alike can be reluctant to use medications. This meta-analysis shows not only some support for dietary modifications, but also shows lack of evidence based support for many of the psychological/behavioral strategies that are frequently implemented in homes, schools, and hospitals.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How might a psychiatric-mental health nurse talk with parents of an ADHD child about interventions for their child, without crossing the professional lines of a psychiatric provider?*
2. *What types of patients would benefit most from a dual approach to treatment, nonpharmacological and pharmacological together?*

components addressed over the course of family therapy that can last anywhere from 5 to 20 sessions. The expectation is not that the individual will be cured, but rather that the family will be better able to cope effectively with the situation and solve problems that may occur as a result of poor family dynamics. (See Chapter 9 for a more in-depth discussion of family therapy.)

Psychopharmacology

Using psychiatric medications in children remains a controversial topic. As more medications are gaining Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for use in children, the controversy will likely continue. Growth of psychopharmacology in children is a result of increases in scientific knowledge about behavioral and emotional disorders in children, and the presence of more rigorous scientific studies testing medication use in younger age groups. Despite increasing scientific knowledge and outcome studies showing positive results, the controversy continues because there are very limited data on the safety of most medications in children. In most instances, the efficacy and expected side effects with medication use are based on research and experience in adults. Very few psychotropic medications are approved by the FDA for use in children, with even fewer approved for use in children under the age of 12 years.

The controversy is further fueled by the beliefs of some holistic parenting groups and providers. They believe that psychiatric medication use in children is never warranted because most behavioral and emotional symptoms are a result of growth and development, not symptomatic of a mental illness. Either way, treatment with psychotropic medications is monumentally more effective when combined with therapy.

Central nervous system stimulants are used to treat children with ADHD. They are the most commonly prescribed agents with certain age restrictions. Examples include methylphenidate (Ritalin, Concerta), amphetamine/dextroamphetamine (Adderall), lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse), and atomoxetine (Strattera). **Drug Summary 21-1** highlights these drugs. Additional medications that are prescribed include antidepressants, such as fluoxetine (Prozac) and sertraline (Zoloft); see Chapter 12 for more information. It cannot be stressed enough that combination treatment with medications and therapy will provide significantly better results than medication alone (National Institutes of Mental Health [NIMH], 2009).

Central nervous system stimulants are used as treatment for ADHD.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Children experiencing mental health problems may be seen in a variety of settings, such as acute care settings, day hospitalization programs, and community and outpatient facilities, as well as general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for children with mental health disorders.

In addition, nurses need a firm knowledge base about childhood development because different developmental age groups/stages represent a different stage of interpersonal relationship formation as defined by Hildegard Peplau (see Chapter 2 for more information). Peplau, drawing on the work of Sullivan (described earlier in this chapter), identified four age groups: infancy, toddlerhood, early childhood, and late childhood. Each of these groups corresponds with a stage of development and major developmental tasks in terms of relationships with others (Peplau, 1991). These age groups and tasks are summarized in **Table 21-5**. For example, late childhood typically involves children between the ages of 6 and 9 years, an age that frequently corresponds with the diagnosis of ADHD. In this stage, the child begins to develop skills of participation by learning to compromise, compete, and cooperate (Peplau, 1991). According to Peplau, how the child will progress through illness and treatment can be correlated to the stage of personality development. Thus, the psychological tasks related to the stages of personality development can be viewed as developmental lessons required for maturity. Although this section uses ADHD as an example, the concepts can be individualized to apply to any childhood disorder.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

During the assessment phase, the nurse implements a therapeutic use of self (an ability to understand and interpret one's own behavior) in order to understand the dynamics of others' behavior (Travelbee, 1971). The nurse integrates this understanding to facilitate recognizing a problem, so that an accurate assessment of the child's needs can be made. Various techniques can be used to develop a therapeutic relationship with the child and the family. **Therapeutic Interaction 21-1** provides an example of an interaction between the nurse and the mother of a child who has ODD.

During assessment, the nurse needs to demonstrate current knowledge about causes, symptoms, and treatments to help facilitate trust. This knowledge also provides the nurse with a framework for identifying key signs and symptoms in

DRUG SUMMARY 21-1: DRUGS USED TO TREAT ADHD

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
Methylphenidate (Ritalin, Concerta)	■ Ensure that the parents/child understand how to take the drug, which comes as capsules, tablets, and transdermal patch ■ If the child is using the patch form, instruct the child and parents to apply it to the child's hip and to alternate hips daily ■ Advise the parents and child that the drug may be discontinued periodically after responding to the therapy to assess the child's condition and need for continued therapy ■ Assist parents and child in measures to reduce the risk for insomnia; suggest that the last daily dose of tablet or capsule form be given several hours before bedtime ■ Reinforce the need to continue with specific interventions to address ADHD
Atomoxetine (Strattera)	■ Assist the child in understanding that the drug can cause problems with sleeping; work with the child and parents to develop an effective bedtime routine and to take the drug in a single morning dose or in divided half-doses in the morning and late afternoon or early evening ■ Encourage the parents to monitor the child for changes in mood and behavior ■ Urge parents to provide nutritious meals and snacks, including possible supplementation to help minimize or prevent weight loss ■ Suggest small frequent meals to reduce risk of gastrointestinal upset ■ Inform the parents that the drug has been associated with unusual changes in behavior (increased irritability, agitation) and suicidal thinking; encourage parents to monitor the child closely for changes and to contact the prescriber immediately if any occur ■ Reinforce the need to continue with specific interventions to address ADHD ■ Ensure that parents/child understand how to take the drug; work with them to develop a schedule that works best for the child
Amphetamine/dextroamphetamine (Adderall) lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse)	■ Urge parents and child not to administer the drug in the evening because it may interfere with sleep

(*cont.*)

DRUG SUMMARY 21-1: *(CONT.)* DRUGS USED TO TREAT ADHD

DRUG	IMPLICATIONS FOR NURSING CARE
Amphetamine/dextroamphetamine (Adderall) lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse) (*cont.*)	■ Advise the parents and child that the drug may be discontinued periodically after responding to the therapy to assess the child's condition and need for continued therapy ■ Encourage continued adherence to follow-up appointments to monitor the child's growth and weight ■ Inform parents that drug has been associated with unusual changes in behavior (increased irritability, agitation) and suicidal thinking; encourage parents to monitor the child closely for changes and to contact the prescriber immediately if any occur ■ Reinforce the need to continue with specific interventions to address ADHD ■ Encourage continued adherence to follow-up appointments to monitor the child's growth and weight ■ Urge parents to provide nutritious meals and snacks, including possible supplementation to help minimize or prevent weight loss ■ Inform parents that drug has been associated with unusual changes in behavior (increased irritability, agitation) and suicidal thinking; encourage parents to monitor the child closely for changes and to contact the prescriber immediately if any occur ■ Assist child in understanding that the drug can cause problems with sleeping; work with the child and parents to develop an effective bedtime routine and to take the drug in a single morning dose or in divided half-doses in the morning and late afternoon or early evening ■ Reinforce the need to continue with specific interventions to address ADHD

ADHD, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

TABLE 21-5: PEPLAU'S AGE GROUPS AND DEVELOPMENTAL TASKS

AGE GROUP	DEVELOPMENTAL TASK
Infancy	Reliance on others
Toddlerhood	Delay of satisfaction
Early childhood	Self-identification
Late childhood	Skill development for participation

the child. Additionally, the nurse needs to investigate which symptoms are most distressing as well as those that interfere with the child's daily functioning. For example, a child in the late childhood stage of interpersonal development begins to view himself or herself through the eyes of his or her peers. If the child is experiencing ADHD, behaviors such as fidgeting or squirming, difficulty playing or engaging in leisure activities, excessive talking, difficulty awaiting turn, and interrupting others may begin to negatively

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 21-1: WORKING WITH THE MOTHER OF A SON WHO HAS OPPOSITIONAL DEFIANT DISORDER

J. is a 10-year-old male recently diagnosed with ODD after a few years of disruptive behavior, and most recently a fight at school resulting in suspension. His mother felt he was getting too out of control and decided to admit him to a child/adolescent psychiatry unit for stabilization and respite. Staff felt that medications were not indicated and instead implemented a behavioral plan. The registered nurse (RN) is helping J.'s mom prepare to take him home.

RN: "Hello, my name is M., and I am an RN on the unit. I have been caring for J. over the past few days."	Introduction and declaration of role
Mom: "Hi, I hope J. hasn't been too much of a problem. I just didn't know what to do with him anymore."	Embarrassment of child's behavior, some guilt present with justification for bringing him to the hospital—common in parents of children with behavioral disorders
RN: "It sounds like it has been a difficult time. J. has been doing well here and has not been a problem."	Validation, empathy, as well as providing some reassurance that her son is capable of good behavior. Beginning to build trust
Mom: "Oh, thank goodness, but I still don't know what I should do at home."	Relief, hope
RN: "If you would find it helpful, I can help you understand how we have been working with J. on his behavior."	Offering self, working on establishing trust, but avoiding any judgment or negative terms
Mom: "That would be wonderful, thank you for taking time to help me."	Starting to feel connection and build trust with the nurse
RN: "This is something you can do at home with J., and it has been working well here. It is called a (behavioral plan). It rewards J.'s good behavior and discourages negative behavior."	Putting behavioral modification strategies into simple terms, avoiding complicated explanation
Mom: "Well, I try to do that at home, but nothing seems to work."	Displaying some continued frustration and justification about parenting, feeling that she has done something wrong (this is common)
RN: "It sounds like it has been frustrating for you and that you've been doing your best. What kinds of things does J. enjoy doing at home?"	Validation, support; redirection to focus on J., looking for tools to use in behavioral plan
Mom: "Well, he loves his bike, and his video games…but I don't like him to play it too much. He's also on a baseball team."	Continued justification but provides useful information

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 21-1: *(CONT.)*
WORKING WITH THE MOTHER OF A SON WHO HAS OPPOSITIONAL DEFIANT DISORDER

RN: "Those are all good things we can use to develop a plan for him. With this behavioral plan, you can give him (tokens) to reward good behavior, and take the tokens back for negative behavior. You can choose together what you would like to use as your tokens."	Validation—often more necessary to continuously validate parents who are displaying high amounts of "guilt" with justifying action. Avoiding using the word "bad" Education for developing behavioral plan
Mom: "Okay, that sounds simple, but I don't really understand."	Seeking clarification
RN: "Let's see if I can make it clearer. Some parents choose to put M&Ms in a jar each time their child demonstrates good behavior. When the M&Ms add to a certain number, he gains a reward such as more time on his bike."	Providing an example to help clarify concept in simple terms, using mother's words in example
Mom: "Oh, I see, so if he gets 20 M&Ms he gets 20 extra minutes on his bike?"	Further clarification, beginning to understand
RN: "Yes, that's a great example. For negative behaviors, M&Ms can be taken out of the jar and may indicate loss of privileges, such as the video game time."	Encouragement, validation, continued explanation
Mom: "Wow—that has really been working with him? I can certainly do it at home; it sounds so easy!"	Some surprise at effectiveness, but relief and hope about implementing
RN: "It works quite well with J., and you can definitely do it at home. You and J. can work together to develop the plan, and even pick the rewards together."	Continued encouragement, reassurance of plan working. Suggestion to spend time individually with J.—this will also help him invest in the plan
Mom: "Oh gosh, maybe I'll tell him that at 50 M&Ms, he can get a new baseball glove! He would be so happy about that."	Excitement, understanding, and building confidence
RN: "That sounds like a great idea! J. can go home today; you can work together developing your plan, and begin using it as soon as tonight."	Validating, solidification of confidence and mom's ability to implement
Mom: "I can't wait to take him home and work on this. Thank you."	Resolution, confidence

influence a child's relationship with siblings and peers. In addition, parents of mentally ill children often experience a level of pain and suffering that is difficult to express and difficult to understand themselves. Providing validation of the difficulty in raising a mentally ill child, as well as empathy for one's own unique experience and management, can build trust and rapport with families and facilitate therapeutic communication.

Another key aspect of assessment is self-awareness on the part of the nurse. The nurse needs to be aware of how he or she may respond to a child who is hyperactive or impulsive or one who is willfully destructive or continually defiant and hostile. These behaviors can engender strong negative feelings in others, including the nurse. Therefore, the nurse needs to identify these feelings and how they might interfere with the therapeutic relationship. Teamwork and collaboration become important in facilitating self-awareness. It is quite common for nurses to become frustrated with difficult patients, which can impact overall care. Recognizing one's own strengths and limitations, and being open to feedback from others, contributes to self-development as a nurse and improves potential as a member of a health care team.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

After completing the assessment, the nurse, child, and family proceed to develop a plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. The nurse can help the patient identify his or her needs and specific problems and begin a plan for recovery (Peplau, 1991). For example, target outcomes for a child with ADHD should address multiple areas: social skills, education, self-esteem, and motivation, and should be focused on management of the chronic condition over time (American Academy of Pediatrics [AAP], 2011).

Due to the wide range of assessment findings noted in and multiple problems faced by children with mental health disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses for the child with ADHD would include:

- *Risk for injury related to impulsive behavior*
- *Impaired social interaction related to intrusive behavior*
- *Noncompliance with task expectations related to short attention span*
- *Chronic low self-esteem related to impaired social and familial support system*

Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse, child, and parents collaboratively determine the outcomes to be achieved. For the child with ADHD, improvement in three to six behaviors is recommended initially and should include how the behavior is measured and what denotes success for the outcome. An example of an outcome for the child would be that he or she exhibits a decreased frequency of disruptive behaviors in peer groups.

A thorough understanding of childhood development is necessary when conducting an assessment of a child with a mental health disorder.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

Implementing mutually decided-on interventions again requires a therapeutic use of self. It is increasingly important during this stage that the timing and pacing of interventions meets expectations and abilities of the child, the family, and the provider. For the child with ADHD, stimulant medications or specific behavioral therapy may be instituted. Most children in the age range of 6 to 12 years respond favorably to stimulant medication use. However, it is not appropriate for every child with ADHD symptoms (AAP, 2011). The decision to use medication should be based on clinical judgment as well as the family beliefs and preferences. Behavioral modification therapy alone or in conjunction with medication is an effective treatment for ADHD.

Psychoeducation is a key intervention. The child and family need information about the disorder and how best to manage it. **Patient and Family Education 21-1** provides some helpful suggestions. The family also needs reliable information to dispel any myths or controversies associated with the child's disorder.

Throughout this phase, interventions are designed to help a child and family develop problem-solving skills to reach appropriate resolution. A child with ADHD in this stage of interpersonal/personality development must use interventions to help develop skills of competition, compromise, cooperation, consensual validation, and love of self and others.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

The nurse evaluates how much progress has been made toward achieving expected outcomes. For any goals not met, the nurse needs to self-reflect on anything he or she may have done differently while providing nursing care. During this phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse, child, and parents should reflect on progress made toward reaching the patient goals. Point out positives to the patient and family and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate. For example, the child with ADHD who is successful learns to participate collaboratively with others, demonstrating compromise, competition, and cooperation (Sullivan, 1953). If the initial treatment plan does not meet

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 21-1: IMPLEMENTING A BEHAVIORAL MODIFICATION PLAN USING A TOKEN REWARDS SYSTEM

- Use positive reinforcement to encourage continued repetition of good behavior. Use negative reinforcement for discouragement of bad behavior.
- To develop the plan, decide the theme together. Use your imagination and that of your child to make it fun and he or she is more likely to invest in and follow the plan. Together, decide what you will use as "tokens." You can use M&Ms in a jar, stickers on a chart, checkmarks, points, or whatever you decide.
- Every time a positive behavior is demonstrated (completing chores, good grade on an assignment, saying a nice thing, etc.), add a token. Every time a negative behavior is demonstrated (hitting, swearing, talking back, etc.), take a token away.
- Be creative in deciding rewards. One reward may be 10 tokens equals 10 extra minutes outside playing. Make sure the rewards are realistic and reachable. The plan will not work if your child has to obtain 500 tokens for 10 extra minutes of outside time.
- Depending on the age and maturity of the child, allow him or her to keep building tokens to gain bigger rewards. For example, 100 tokens equals a new baseball glove.
- Older children could use points how they want, so if they have 20 tokens, they can use 10 for some extra time outside, but save the other 10 to work toward the baseball glove. Again, make sure the reward can be produced.
- Younger kids may need smaller, more frequent rewards to stay interested. It is also a good idea to start with smaller and more frequent rewards at the beginning of any plan to build understanding and make the child want to continue following the plan.
- Set daily limits for negative reinforcement if the positive reinforcement does not seem to be doing enough. For example, 10 tokens removed in one day for bad behavior equals 10 less minutes of video game time.
- Be consistent! Hitting a sibling and removal of five tokens one day cannot turn into hitting a sibling and removal of 10 tokens the next day. The child will get confused and frustrated, and likely quit following the plan altogether. Make the expectations clear.

outcomes, the plan needs to be reevaluated to determine why, and appropriate changes must be made. Evaluation should include initial diagnosis, appropriateness of treatments, adherence to the treatment plan, and the possibility of coexisting conditions. In the case of the child with ADHD, if therapy alone was the family's choice, medication or a different form of therapy may need to be considered. If medication is not useful, trials of two to three different medications should be completed before considering a different class of medication (AAP, 2011).

Systematic follow-up and monitoring is important to assess continued progress toward target outcomes. Information continues to be gathered from parents, teachers, and the child. Additionally, ongoing and consistent communication between involved parties is incredibly important to accurately assess progress (AAP, 2011).

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

Working with children can be challenging. In particular, the nurse may find himself or herself in the role of the parent, therefore careful therapeutic aliment with both the parents/family/ and child is important. These following QSEN reminders may help:

- *Remove barriers to presence of families and other designated surrogates based on patient preferences*
- *Assess level of patient's decisional conflict and provide access to resources*
- *Engage patients or designated surrogates in active partnerships that promote health, safety and well-being, and self-care management.* Cronenwett et al. (2007)

SUMMARY POINTS

- Theories related to growth and development include: Piaget's theory of cognitive development; Erikson's theory of emotional and personality development; Freud's theory of psychosexual development; Sullivan's theory of interpersonal and personality development; and the behavioral theories of Pavlov and Skinner.
- ADHD is diagnosed once a child starts school and experiences problems with adjustment to the school environment.
- A child with CD is often diagnosed with ODD first. Environmental influences from family, school, and peers seem to play a key role in the development of both disorders.
- Mood disorders in children include affective disorders of depression and anxiety disorder of PTSD.
- Feeding and eating disorders in children include: pica, rumination disorder, and feeding disorder of infancy and early childhood. In some cases of feeding disorders, parent–infant interaction is the primary predisposing factor.
- Play therapy is commonly used to treat a wide range of mental health problems in children. It helps to ease the symptoms that the child finds most difficult.
- Other treatment options include: behavioral therapy, CBT, family therapy, and psychopharmacology.
- Caring for the child with a mental health problem requires a thorough understanding of growth and development, and collaboration with the child and family to establish an appropriate course of action.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nurse is observing the behavior of an 18-month-old child. The child is playing with a toy that involves placing different-shaped blocks into the appropriately shaped opening. The child is attempting to place a round block into the round hole. The nurse interprets this as indicating which of the following?

a. Circular reaction
b. Object permanence
c. Symbolic play
d. Magical thinking

2. The following tasks reflect the stages of growth and development as identified by Sullivan. Place them in the order in which they would occur beginning with infancy.

a. Self-identity development
b. Delayed gratification
c. Same-sex relationships
d. Oral gratification
e. Opposite-sex relationships
f. Peer relationships

3. The nurse is working with the parents of a child with a mental health problem in developing a system of rewards and punishments for the child's behavior. The nurse is demonstrating integration of which theorist?

a. Freud
b. Pavlov
c. Skinner
d. Erikson

4. A nurse is interviewing a child diagnosed with a conduct disorder. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess?

a. Repetitive, stereotypical behaviors
b. Difficulty organizing tasks
c. Lack of follow-through with directions
d. Bullying behaviors

5. A child is diagnosed with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). When reviewing the child's history, which of the following would the nurse expect to find?

a. Exposure to a traumatic event
b. Difficulty engaging in quiet leisure activities
c. Frequent losses of temper
d. Previous diagnosis of oppositional defiant disorder (ODD)

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP). (2011). ADHD: Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder in children and adolescents. *Pediatrics, 128*(5), 1–18.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: Author.

Anderson, G. M. (2015). Autism biomarkers: Challenges, pitfalls and possibilities. *Journal of Autism and Developmental Disorders, 45*(4), 1103–1113.

Baio, J. (2010). Prevalence of autism spectrum disorder among children aged 8 years. *Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network, 63*(SS02), 1–21.

Bornstein, M. H., & Lamb, M. E. (1999). *Developmental psychology* (4th ed.). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Bowen, M. (1978). *Family therapy in clinical practice*. New York, NY: Jason Aronson.

British Association of Play Therapists. (2013). *A history of play therapy*. Retrieved from http://www.bapt.info/play-therapy/history-play-therapy

Brown, A. S. (2012). Epidemiologic studies of exposure to prenatal infection and risk of schizophrenia and autism. *Developmental Neurobiology, 72*(10), 1272–1276.

Call, N. A., Simmons, C. A., Mevers, J. E., & Alvarez, J. P. (2015). Clinical outcomes of behavioral treatments for pica in children with developmental disabilities. *Journal of Autism and Developmental Disorders, 45*(7), 2105–2114.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and safety education for nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Ellis, C & Pataki, K. (2014). Pica. *Pediatrics: Developmental and Behavioral on eMedicine.com*. Retrieved from http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/914765-overview#a1

Foley, D. L., Eaves, L. J., Wormley, B., Silberg, J. L., Maes, H. H., Kuhn, J., & Riley, B. (2004). Childhood adversity, monoamine oxidase a genotype, and risk for conduct disorder. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 61*(7), 738–744.

Guedeney, A., & Puura, K., (2011). *Withdrawal behavior and depression in infancy. International Perspectives on Children and Mental Health*. Santa Barbara, CA: Praeger.

Gupta, V. B. (2004). *Autistic spectrum disorders in children*. London, England: Informa Health Care Publishing.

Hallmayer, J., Cleveland, S., Torres, A., Phillips, J., Cohen, B., Torigoe, T.,…Risch, N. (2011). Genetic heritability and shared environmental factors among twin pairs with autism. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 68*(11), 1095–1102.

Hankin, B. L. (2012). Future directions in vulnerability to depression among youth: Integrating risk factors and processes across multiple levels of analysis. *Journal of Clinical Child and Adolescent Psychology, 41*(5), 695–718.

Hitti, M. (2009). *Vaccine court rejects autism claims*. WebMD. Retrieved from http://www.webmd.com/brain/autism/news/20090212/vaccine-court-rejects-autism-claims

Kessing, L. V., Vradi, E., & Andersen, P. K. (2014). Are rates of pediatric bipolar disorder increasing? Results from a nationwide register study. *International Journal of Bipolar Disorders, 2*(10), 2–7.

Kim-Cohen, J., Arseneault, L., Caspi, A., Tomás, M. P., Taylor, A., & Moffitt, T. E. (2005). Validity of *DSM-IV* conduct disorder in 41/2–5-year-old children: A longitudinal epidemiological study. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 162*(6), 1108–1117.

Londrie, K. (2006). *History of ADHD*. Retrieved from http://ezinearticles.com/?History-of-ADHD&id=217254

Matthys, W., Vanderschuren, L. J., Schutter, D. J., & Lochman, J. E. (2012). Impaired neurocognitive functions affect social learning processes in oppositional defiant disorder and conduct disorder: Implications for interventions. *Clinical Child and Family Psychology Review, 15*(3), 234–246.

Merikangas, K. R., He, J. P., Burstein, M., Swanson, S. A., Avenevoli, S., Cui, L.,…Swendsen, J. (2010). Lifetime prevalence of mental disorders in U.S. adolescents: Results from the National Comorbidity Survey Replication–Adolescent Supplement (NCS-A). *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, 49*(10), 980–989.

Nanni, V., Uher, R., & Danese, A. (2012). Childhood maltreatment predicts unfavorable course of illness and treatment outcome in depression: A meta-analysis. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 169*(2), 141–151.

National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH). (2009). *What medications are used to treat ADHD?* Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Nordahl, C. W., Scholz, R., Yang, X., Buonocore, M. H., Simon, T., Rogers, S., & Amaral, D. G. (2012). Increased rate of amygdala growth in children aged 2 to 4 years with autism spectrum disorders: A longitudinal study. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 69*(1), 53–61.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Rioch, D. M. (1985). Recollections of Harry Stack Sullivan and of the development of his interpersonal psychiatry. *Psychiatry, 48*(2), 141–158.

Sadock, B., & Sadock, V. (2007). *Kaplan and Sadock's synopsis of psychiatry (10th ed.)*. New York, NY: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Sonuga-Barke, E. J., Brandeis, D., Cortese, S., Daley, D., Ferrin, M., Holtmann, M.,…Sergeant, J.; European ADHD Guidelines Group. (2013). Nonpharmacological interventions for ADHD: Systematic review and met-analyses of randomized controlled trials of dietary and psychological treatments. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 170*(3), 275–289.

Stringaris, A., Maughan, B., Copeland, W. S., Costello, E. J., & Angold, A. (2013). Irritable mood as a symptom of depression in youth: Prevalence, developmental, and clinical correlates in the Great Smoky Mountains Study. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, 52*(8), 831–840.

Sullivan, H. S. (1953). *Interpersonal theory of psychiatry*. New York, NY: William-Frederick Press.

Thapar, A., Cooper, M., Jefferies, R., & Stergiakouli, E. (2012). What causes attention deficit hyperactivity disorder? *Archives of Disease in Childhood, 97*(3), 260–265.

Travelbee, J. (1971). *Interpersonal aspects of nursing*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis.

Wilkinson, P., Kelvin, R., Roberts, C., Dubicka, B., & Goodyer, I. (2011). Clinical and psychosocial predictors of suicide attempts and nonsuicidal self-injury in the Adolescent Depression Antidepressants and Psychotherapy Trial (ADAPT). *American Journal of Psychiatry, 168*(5), 495–501.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 22

MENTAL HEALTH CONCERNS REGARDING ADOLESCENTS

Áine Horgan

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Discuss the major concepts associated with adolescent development
2. Identify normative versus nonnormative behavioral patterns in terms of developmental milestones for an adolescent
3. Describe the major areas to address when assessing an adolescent
4. Identify the common mental health problems found in the adolescent population
5. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective that addresses the care of adolescents with mental health problems

KEY TERMS

Binge drinking
Compulsions
Obsessions

Adolescence is characterized by a period of transition from childhood through puberty and on into adulthood. This transition brings with it physical and emotional challenges and is part of normal growth and development. During this period, the social world begins to have a greater influence and the importance of peers becomes evident. This transition period is taking longer than it did 50 years ago, with some suggesting that adolescence now extends into the mid- or late-20s (Steinberg, 2011). When problems occur in adolescence, particularly mental health problems, they often can be dismissed as part of normal development. Thus, appropriate intervention may not be offered. There is a perception that time will heal mental health problems in adolescents and they will "grow out" of the problem as they proceed into adulthood. However, it is important to highlight that many difficulties experienced by adolescents transcend into adulthood without appropriate intervention.

In the United States, up to 22% of children and adolescents are experiencing a mental illness (Merikangas et al., 2010). Furthermore, studies reveal that approximately 58.1% of those between the ages of 12 and 17 years in the United States have screened positive for at least one cluster of symptoms related to a psychiatric disorder (Chen, Killeya-Jones, & Vega, 2005). Adolescents in other countries are also at high risk of mental health problems. For example, in Australia the prevalence of mental health problems is greater among 16- to 24-year-olds than any other group across the life span (Australian Bureau of Statistics, 2007).

When problems in adolescence are not identified and treated, lifelong problems that may have serious consequences often result. In addition, stigma still surrounds the issue of mental health. This is particularly evident in adolescents, as they are searching for self-identity and trying to feel accepted by their peers. This commonly results in many adolescents failing to seek professional help.

This chapter reviews adolescent growth and development, including the important role of peer relationships, and describes important areas to be included in the assessment. The chapter addresses the most common disorders associated with this population and concludes with a discussion of the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective related to the care of an adolescent with a mental health problem.

ADOLESCENT DEVELOPMENT

The beginning of adolescence is unclear; however, it is generally associated with the onset of puberty. Adolescence is characterized emotionally as a period of searching for self-identity, finding meaning in life, and forming a unique personality separate from those of one's parents. It is a time of external conflict with those in authority and internal conflict with the adolescent struggling with life meaning. Adolescence is a time where confidence and self-esteem can develop or diminish. Conflict with parents is common and often centers on authority, autonomy, and responsibility. This conflict, however, is necessary to prepare adolescents for conflict resolution in later life.

Many theories and models attempt to explain the stages of development experienced by individuals. (See Chapter 21 for additional information on theories of growth and development.) One of the most common theories is that of Erikson (1968), in which he describes the identity crisis that adolescents face. During this crisis, adolescents attempt to discern who they are as they are faced with new feelings, a new body, and a new attitude. Their self-identity is built out of their perceptions of themselves and their relationships with others. Erikson argues that if they do not develop their own self-identity, then role confusion results.

Puberty and Self-Esteem

One of the major changes experienced by adolescents is puberty. Puberty is characterized by change and development in bodily functions. It usually begins around the age of 10 years, initially signaled with a growth spurt that continues into the late teenage years. During this time, young people compare themselves to others in terms of appearance and intellect. Sexual awareness also develops, which is often associated with increased self-awareness, which can affect self-esteem.

Self-esteem is important to overall well-being and has been associated with mental health problems in later life. Indeed, low self-esteem is associated with depression, eating disorders, and anxiety problems in adolescents. Levels of self-esteem change during adolescence, with it usually increasing with sexual maturity, but with the multitude of changes that happen during this period, healthy self-esteem may not develop until young adulthood.

Peer Relationships

Peer relationships develop in young children and play a significant role in overall development. As children become older and transition into adolescence, they spend more and more time with their peers. These relationships strongly influence an adolescent's development. Peer group membership can have a negative effect. For example, lack of acceptance by a peer group can lead to low self-esteem, a decrease in academic performance, and social rejection (Veronneau, Vitaro, Brendgen, Dishion, & Tremblay, 2010). In addition, peer group influence can lead adolescents to engage in delinquency and antisocial behaviors (Monahan, Steinberg, & Cauffman, 2009). Moreover, the absence of supportive peer relationships can lead to young

people living in a state of anxiety or fear, depression, or isolation. Research studies addressing peer relationships in adolescence suggest that stable peer relationships are related to high self-esteem (Birkeland, Breivik, & Wold, 2014) and that peer attachment can lead to life satisfaction in adolescence (Schwartz et al., 2012). Peer support was reported as protective against depressive symptoms if parental support was also present (Young, Berenson, Cohen, & Garcia, 2005), whereas peer rejection predicted the onset of depressive symptoms (Witvliet, Brendgen, Van Lier, Koct, & Vitavo, 2010).

Today, peer relationships are becoming more and more important related to the decline in the traditional family system. The numbers of single-parent families and mothers working outside the home have increased. Thus, adolescents are spending increased time with their peers. In addition, technological advances have led to more young people spending more time on computers and less time interacting face to face with their peers. This lack of physical interaction may lead to isolation from the community, resulting in adolescents failing to receive the necessary support to cope with the turbulence of this time of life. Adolescent participation in using social media has dramatically increased, leading more and more young people to communicate via texting or the Internet. Studies have indicated that it may affect self-esteem, both positively (Gonzales & Hancock, 2011) and negatively (Valkenburg, Peter, & Schouten, 2006). Specifically, they have been reported to reduce the stress of social exclusion (Chiou, Lee, & Liao, 2015), but to also lead to narcissism and low self-esteem the more they are used (Mehdizadeh, 2010). This increased use also has raised growing concern about adolescents being targeted by sexual predators online (Ybarra & Mitchell, 2008).

The development of self-esteem and identity are important developmental tasks in adolescence. Peer relationships play a major role in achieving these tasks.

ADOLESCENT ASSESSMENT

Assessment, essential to any patient and plan of care, must consider the needs of both the individual adolescent and his or her family. More than one meeting may be needed to fully assess the adolescent's needs and gain an accurate understanding of the problems.

Although the involvement of family is essential, assessing the adolescent, individually and by himself or herself, is important because there may be difficulties within the family. As a result, the adolescent may feel uncomfortable sharing information with the family present. In addition, meeting the adolescent alone can help foster the nurse–patient relationship and build trust. Many adolescents may be ambivalent about the difficulties they are facing or fearful of becoming stigmatized. Or they may be unable to articulate their problems or have issues with authoritative figures. Therefore, sensitivity is a major consideration.

When interviewing the adolescent individually, use appropriate language, remembering that the adolescent is neither a young child nor an adult. The adolescent is the primary concern and development of a therapeutic relationship is needed. Throughout the assessment, listen to the adolescent's view of the problem and try to understand the problem from his or her frame of reference, including eliciting their values and preferences for care. Direct the questions to obtain information about how the difficulties are interfering with his or her life and how he or she is coping in school (if attending). Ascertain the quality of the relationships with peers and family members. In addition, determine the adolescent's support system, the history of the difficulties, and any drug and alcohol use. To help focus the assessment, use the following questions as a guide:

- *How is the adolescent engaging with the assessment; is he or she forthcoming with answers: "How are you feeling about these questions?"*
- *What makes him or her feel anxious, happy, sad: "What types of things make you happy? Sad? Upset?"*
- *What is the adolescent's perception of his or her family: "How do you view your family?"*
- *How does he or she use leisure time: "What do you do for fun? For relaxation?"*
- *How does the adolescent view himself or herself: "How do you picture yourself?"*
- *Can he or she easily express his or her feelings: "How do you express your feelings? Do you talk about things? Do you keep things to yourself?"*
- *Does the adolescent want things to change: "When you look at your life, is there anything that you would like to change?"*
- *How does he or she want things to change: "You mentioned wanting to change_____. How would you go about changing this?"*

Assessment of the adolescent must include a family history addressing information on pregnancy, birth and early health history, medical history, school history, and family health problems. In conducting a family assessment, bear in mind that each family is different and has its own set of norms and internal dynamics. Identify the parenting style

of the family (authoritative, coercive, ambivalent, or abusive) and determine if and how it may be influencing the adolescent's behavior or mood.

Using the information from the assessment helps one to identify what the adolescent's strengths are, if the adolescent meets the diagnostic criteria for a clinical syndrome, and what intervention may be necessary.

Assessment of an adolescent requires sensitivity and use of appropriate language to determine the adolescent's view of the problem from his or her frame of reference.

COMMON MENTAL HEALTH PROBLEMS IN ADOLESCENCE

Adolescents can experience many of the mental health problems experienced by adults. However, some are more common, including depression, mania, self-harm, suicidal ideation, alcohol and drug use, eating disorders, and anxiety disorders such as obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD). These disorders will be addressed briefly here. (Refer to Chapters 12, 13, 15, and 19 for more in-depth discussions.)

Some adolescent mental health problems are classified in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fifth edition (*DSM-5*; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2014) and the *International Classification of Diseases*, 10th edition (*ICD 10-CM*; World Health Organization [WHO], 2011). However, adult classifications are used for most illnesses. Although both manuals have a section on problems in childhood and adolescence, the focus is on childhood and, in particular, on conduct and behavioral disorders. The *DSM-5* also discusses age-related disorders throughout the manual.

Many factors can influence the development of adolescent mental health problems, including adolescent pregnancy, socioeconomic disadvantage, bullying, and abuse and neglect. **Box 22-1** highlights some of the common forms of abuse. These difficulties can lead to a variety of emotional problems manifested by similar signs and symptoms. Therefore, avoiding assumptions and recognizing the signs are of the utmost importance.

Adolescents often experience mental health disorders that are the same as those in adults. Depression, mania, self-harm, suicidal ideation, alcohol and drug use, eating disorders, and anxiety disorders such as obsessive-compulsive disorder are common in adolescence.

Depression

Depression is the most prominent cause of disability and illness among 10- to 19-year-olds (WHO, 2014). Reports vary as to the prevalence of depression. However, it is believed that 3% to 8% of adolescents will experience a depressive

BOX 22-1: ADOLESCENT ABUSE: SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Abuse in adolescence may take several forms. It can range from bullying in school and by peer groups to sexual and physical abuse at home and by significant others.

- *Bullying:* Adolescents are usually bullied due to appearance or social status. Cyber bullying is becoming very common, with almost 50% of middle school and high school students reporting being bullied in this way (Mishna, Cook, Gadalla, Daciuk, & Solomon, 2010). Signs of bullying may include fear, anxiety, depression, social withdrawal, decreased self-esteem, and talk of revenge.
- *Sexual abuse:* Signs of sexual abuse in adolescents may include decreased self-esteem, social withdrawal, nightmares, changes in school performance, violence toward others, shame, guilt, and alcohol and drug use.
- *Physical abuse:* Signs of physical abuse may include aggression, deviancy, fear of adults, disruptive behavior, going to school early and leaving late, fearlessness, risk taking, being described as "accident prone," low academic achievement, wearing clothes that cover most of the body, decreased maturity, regression, and dislike of physical contact.

disorder before entering adulthood (Zalsman, Brent, & Weersing, 2006). Indeed, it is estimated that in the United States 2.2 million adolescents have had at least one major depressive episode in the previous year (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2013). In addition, children of parents with depressive disorders are at greater risk of developing depression. A combination of environment and genetic factors is believed to cause depression in adolescents. Little evidence exists to support a molecular link.

The classification of depressive disorders has been described in Chapter 12. In contrast to adults, adolescents often experience a higher comorbidity with other disorders, such as anxiety disorders, conduct disorders, and substance misuse. In addition, depression is not to be confused with feelings of sadness in adolescents. The turbulence of adolescence commonly causes feelings of sadness and despondence. These feelings are often short-lived and do not necessarily indicate the presence of a depressive illness.

Possible precipitating and predisposing factors for adolescent depression are varied, but may include (Aslund, Nilsson, Starrin, & Sjoberg, 2007; MacPhee & Andrews, 2006; Thapar, Collishaw, Pine, & Thapar, 2012):

- *Low self-esteem*
- *Relationship difficulties/break-up*
- *Academic difficulties, such as examination failure*
- *Abuse (sexual, emotional, and physical)*
- *Familial relationship problems/parental divorce*
- *Parental depression*
- *Parental rejection*
- *Bereavement*
- *Peer rejection*
- *Conduct problems*

The major symptoms of depression in adolescents are similar to those in adults and may include low mood, lack of energy, loss of pleasure, decreased self-esteem and confidence, guilt, feelings of worthlessness, decreased concentration, sleep difficulties, hopelessness, and tearfulness. However, depression may manifest itself a bit differently. For example, the adolescent may present with behavioral problems, such as poor school performance, running away from home, and aggression. These behavioral problems are commonly noted in younger adolescents. Depression may also present as physical pains, often as complaints of headaches.

The treatment of adolescent depression depends on the nature of the problems identified. It should focus on relieving the depressive symptoms, promoting emotional and social functioning, and working with the family. Supportive therapy can be helpful for mild depression, whereas more structured therapeutic approaches are needed for severe depression. Whatever approach is adopted, the adolescent needs to be the central decision maker about his or her care. In some instances, psychopharmacology with antidepressants has been used. Currently, antidepressant medications are recommended only as a last resort because they have been shown to increase the risk of suicidal behavior in adolescents (Richmond & Rosen, 2005), and as such, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has issued a blackbox warning. Assessment of suicidal ideation is essential. If it is present, it must be addressed and may require inpatient treatment.

Mania

Mania is often seen as part of bipolar disorder (see Chapter 12 for more information). It more commonly develops in later adolescence. Mania is characterized by:

- *Elevated mood*
- *Increased energy*
- *Increased activity*
- *Restlessness*
- *Rapid speech*
- *Flight of ideas*

Treatment usually involves a combination of structured therapy, family therapy, and psychopharmacology. According to the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (2007), mood-stabilizing agents such as lithium, carbamazepine, and valproic acid may be used. In addition, antipsychotic agents such as risperidone (Risperdal) may be prescribed during an acute manic phase. If the adolescent is prescribed lithium, careful monitoring is needed because lithium can be lethal if taken in an overdose. As a result, it may not be suitable if the adolescent lacks family support to supervise adherence. In addition, there is a lack of controlled trials on the use of antipsychotic medication with adolescents (Schapiro, 2005).

Self-Harm

The incidence of self-harm is very high in adolescents, conservatively estimated as affecting 5% to 8% of adolescents (Skegg, 2005). However, further studies have reported rates as high as 17% with a mean onset age of 15 years (Nixon, Cloutier, & Jansson, 2008). It is most common in young females. Self-harm is often associated with suicide. However, it can also occur without suicidal intent. Thus, a

distinction is needed so that appropriate intervention can be offered.

Self-harm without suicidal intent often manifests itself as superficial cuts to the body, minor burns, head banging, and insertion of foreign objects into the body. The reasons for this type of behavior are often multifaceted and not merely attempts to seek attention as many believe. Indeed, self-harm is often conducted in private without the knowledge of family, friends, or health care practitioners. This further adds to the unclear incidence rates, as it is often underreported.

The reasons an adolescent engages in self-harm are numerous. Some of the more common ones include:

- *Relief of emotional pain*
- *Self-punishment*
- *Stress relief*
- *Desire to feel physical pain*
- *Anger expression*
- *Need to feel in control*

Self-harm is believed to be a coping mechanism that an individual may use when experiencing distress. The distress is often related to certain triggers. These triggers are highly variable but may include bullying or peer rejection; sexual, emotional, or physical abuse or violence in the home; feelings of worthlessness, powerlessness, or loneliness; substance misuse; bereavement; or parental divorce. For some, self-harming behavior can become addictive and, subsequently difficult to control or stop. Therefore, the focus is on working with the adolescent in trying to find alternative coping strategies through problem solving.

An adolescent who engages in self-harm behaviors may or may not be experiencing suicidal ideation. Self-harm behaviors without suicidal intent result from a multitude of reasons and are not attempts to gain attention.

Suicide

Suicide is becoming increasingly common in adolescence, particularly in older adolescence. Reports show that of the 4 million suicide attempts around the world each year, 90,000 of those are completed by adolescents (Greydanus & Shek, 2009). Suicide is among the leading causes of death for adolescents worldwide and is ranked as the second-highest cause in the United States. Suicide attempts need to be taken seriously and require immediate intervention. Four out of five adolescents show warning signs before a suicide attempt. **Box 22-2** identifies some of the more common signs.

If suicidal signs are present, further assessment is warranted and needs to focus on the following:

- *The lethality of the method proposed or used if an attempt was made*
- *The place where the attempt took place, the likelihood of discovery, and precautions taken to avoid discovery*
- *Motives*
- *The presence of suicidal communication such as a suicide note or blog entry*
- *Previous attempts made*
- *Evidence of a psychiatric disorder*
- *The continued wish to die*

Information gathered about these issues will give an indication of the seriousness of the attempt and the likelihood that a future attempt may be made. Often, alcohol use is associated with suicide attempts and thus should be explored.

The causes of adolescent suicide attempts are often multifaceted and often a depressive illness is present. Many of the issues discussed as precipitating factors for depression and self-harm may also be present and thus should be explored during the assessment process. One of the most important features present in suicidal individuals is hopelessness and thus any treatment should focus on inspiring hope. The approach should be nonjudgmental and work

BOX 22-2: SUICIDE WARNING SIGNS IN ADOLESCENTS

- No longer interested in activities previously found enjoyable
- Problems at school
- Alcohol or drug use
- Withdrawal
- Acting out behavior
- Self-neglect
- Risk-taking behavior
- Stating "I want to die" or "I want to kill myself"
- Stating "I won't bother you or trouble you anymore"
- Stating "Nobody cares about me"
- Giving away possessions
- Signs of cheerfulness after a period of depression

should be conducted to develop a person's coping strategies and problem-solving techniques. Inpatient treatment may be necessary. A range of supportive therapies can be offered.

Typically, warning signs of suicide are present before an adolescent attempts suicide. Assessment focuses on the lethality of the method, location, motive, evidence of suicidal communication, previous attempts, and information related to a continued wish to die.

Eating Disorders

Anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa are frequently seen in adolescents, particularly in girls (Merikangas et al., 2010). Issues with identity formation and physical growth are common. Both anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa involve a preoccupation with food, weight, and body image. Anorexia nervosa has the highest death rate of all psychiatric illnesses, with mortality rates of up to 10% being reported (Huas et al., 2011). (Refer to Chapter 19 for a complete discussion of these disorders.)

Substance Misuse and Abuse

The use by adolescents of substances such as alcohol and illicit drugs is growing, with some research suggesting that up to 72.5% of high school students have engaged in drinking alcohol and 36.8% have used marijuana (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2010). However, decreases in these rates have been noted since 1999. Most adolescents who experiment with alcohol and drugs do not develop a problem with their use. However, this is dependent on the age of onset and the frequency of use.

The reasons for alcohol and drug use by adolescents are multifaceted and may relate to their personal circumstances, where substances may be used to mask a more deep-rooted problem or may be due to peer group pressure. Additionally, young people may use substances simply because they are available and find it exciting to do so. The exact cause of substance use and misuse is not known. However, several risk factors have been identified. These are highlighted in **Box 22-3**.

The most common mood-altering drug used by adolescents is alcohol, a central nervous system depressant. Numerous reasons may account for this increased use. Alcohol is more generally accepted because it is a legal drug. Also, alcohol promotes relaxation in social situations, making it appealing to an adolescent who is searching for identity. In recent years, society has changed its response to alcohol use. Its social acceptability and availability have increased due to peer pressure and family and media exposure. Research has reported a strong link between alcohol advertising and the uptake of drinking among young people (Anderson, deBruijn, Angus, Gordon, & Hastings, 2009).

Of special interest and growing concern in developing countries is **BINGE DRINKING** by adolescents. The CDC (2010) reported that 24% of high school students engage in binge drinking. Binge drinking occurs when copious amounts of alcohol are consumed over a short period of time. The effects on the adolescent can be fatal, resulting in a wide range of symptoms from complete loss of control to alcohol poisoning. Along with this loss of control comes impaired judgment. Thus, a person may engage in behavior that he or she would normally avoid, such as drunk driving, inappropriate sexual behavior, petty crime, vandalism, or social misconduct (McKay, Hatton, & McDougall, 2006). Physically, this type of behavior damages a number of systems in the body and can lead to long-term alcohol dependence.

Illicit drugs are also commonly used by adolescents, the most common of which include cannabis resin and amphetamines. Cocaine use in adolescents is also on the rise. It is estimated that 3% of high school students have used cocaine (CDC, 2010). These drugs can have a detrimental effect on adolescents because their bodies and minds are still developing.

It is important when working with adolescents to determine if their alcohol or drug use is experimental, recreational, or involves dependence. Alcohol and drugs often may be used to mask another mental health problem. Therefore, it is important to assess for other mental health issues.

BOX 22-3: RISK FACTORS FOR SUBSTANCE USE AND MISUSE

- Poor school performance
- Early behavioral problems
- Aggression
- Risk-taking behavior
- Low self-esteem
- Peer substance use
- Disadvantaged social environment
- Family history of substance misuse
- Lack of parental involvement, supervision, or discipline
- History of antisocial behavior

Primary prevention measures have been used to educate adolescents on alcohol and drug use, on making safe decisions, and on problem solving without resorting to alcohol or drug use. The use of alcohol by young people is receiving an increased amount of attention. Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD) is a program that works to reduce the social and retail availability of alcohol and supports the enforcement of underage drinking laws. Other initiatives include the Too Smart to Start initiative by the SAMHSA and the Drug Abuse Resistance Education (D.A.R.E.) organization. These programs work to teach young people to avoid drugs. Unfortunately, most programs of this nature have had limited success, as it remains "cool" to use alcohol and drugs.

When assessing an adolescent for drug and alcohol abuse, some common signs may be observed. These include problems at school, such as truancy, a drop in academic performance, and discipline problems; secrecy; withdrawal from family activities; and cigarette smoking. These signs may be a result of other problems; therefore, assessment for any other underlying mental health problems such as depression is necessary.

When an adolescent is using drugs experimentally or recreationally, the focus is on preventing dependency by highlighting the risks, offering real case examples, and trying to encourage the individual to abstain from the drug. When adolescents become dependent, the initial aim is to reduce harm to the individual.

When an adolescent is abusing or is dependent on alcohol or drugs, a family-centered approach is used. In addition, the adolescent's motivation to abstain from using the substance must be established. A period of detoxification may be necessary. (See Chapter 15 for a more in-depth discussion of substance disorders.)

Alcohol is the most common mood-altering drug used by adolescents. Cannabis and amphetamines are the most common illicit substances used.

Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is characterized by hyperactivity, impulsiveness, and inability to focus attention, inconsistent to the age of the individual. It develops in childhood and persists into adolescence and quite often into adulthood. (See Chapter 21 for additional information about ADHD in children.)

Working with an adolescent with ADHD involves a family-centered approach. Often, much of the work is conducted with the parents to assist them in understanding the difficulties and frustration the young person is experiencing. There is increasing evidence that the standard American adolescent diet may be harmful to a person with ADHD (Lavoie, 2009). Providing adolescents and their families with advice on nutrition is essential. It is recommended that protein be included in every meal and that omega-3 fatty acids, vitamin C, and vitamin B12 intake be increased. It is also recommended that consumption of processed, starch-based, and junk foods be decreased or eliminated.

Additional areas to address include helping the adolescent develop his or her social skills and coping strategies and to deal with any anger and frustration that may be associated with the problem. Communication with the adolescent's school is important because this is often where ADHD may first present. The adolescent may have difficulty in paying attention or sitting still in class and teachers may have reported problems. Communication is important to ensure that a comprehensive plan is in place to deal with the difficulties and to ensure there is continuity in the approach at home and at school.

Behavioral techniques have been helpful for the adolescent with ADHD. These include:

- *Identifying the problem behavior with the family*
- *Exploring the antecedents and consequences of the behavior*
- *Identifying what behavior would be more appropriate in the circumstance*
- *Working on rewards for appropriate behaviors while avoiding punishment for inappropriate behaviors*

Medication has also been successful with individuals with ADHD; however, it needs to be carefully monitored and controlled. Some current medications used include methylphenidate (Ritalin), dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine), and lisdexamfetamine dimesylate (Vyvanse). If the symptoms of ADHD are not severe, a medication-free period may be recommended, for example, during school holidays, to determine if the medication is still needed.

Conduct Disorders

Adolescent-onset conduct disorder is diagnosed when there have been no conduct problems before the age of 10 years. The disorder is usually classified as mild, moderate, or severe, depending on the number and intensity of symptoms present. (See Chapter 21 for a discussion of the signs and symptoms of conduct disorder.)

Conduct disorder must be differentiated from normal adolescent behavior. Adolescents will push boundaries as part of their development. Typically, conduct disorder involves more extreme behavior that violates the norms.

Several situations are associated with the development of conduct disorder. Inconsistent parenting is common in adolescents with conduct disorder; the family system requires enormous support when dealing with this type of behavior. Often the adolescent lacks self-esteem, which is reinforced by punishing parenting styles. Conduct disorders are also frequently seen in adolescents from disadvantaged areas that involve a wide range of social issues.

Treatment can involve a combination of parent training, family therapy, problem-solving therapy, cognitive therapy, and/or medication such as those used in the treatment of ADHD. Group therapy is usually not used because of the potential for copycat behavior to occur. Prognosis for recovery in adolescent onset of conduct disorder is better than in childhood onset.

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

OCD is an anxiety disorder. The first symptoms usually appear in adolescence. **OBSESSIONS** are recurring intrusive thoughts that the person finds distressing. Often, obsessions focus on fear of death, contamination, or harm to others. **COMPULSIONS** are physical repetitive acts that are carried out in an attempt to eliminate the obsession. For example, if the obsession is the fear of contamination, then the compulsion may be to wash the body excessively. Carrying out the compulsion usually reduces the anxiety in the adolescent and thus reinforces the behavior.

OCD in adolescents can have an enormous impact on the family. The family is commonly drawn into the compulsive behaviors of the adolescent to help alleviate his or her anxiety. OCD is treatable, with cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) being effective. Some antidepressants from the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) group, such as fluoxetine (Prozac) and sertraline (Zoloft), have been somewhat effective. However, this therapy should be used as a last resort in adolescents due to the increased risk of suicide.

Social Phobia

Social phobia is common in adolescents. For many, it will diminish naturally as the adolescent develops confidence and self-esteem. It is characterized by a fear of social situations that results from a fear of embarrassment or humiliation. (See Chapter 13 for a more in-depth discussion.) The fear of the social situation is not merely with adults; it is also with their peers. Thus, the adolescent may avoid social situations that will require interaction with others. As a result, the adolescent's development and maturation are impacted, leading to the development of poor social skills and low self-esteem. Social phobia is fully treatable but it can become progressively worse and continue into adulthood if not treated appropriately. Cognitive and behavior therapies are often used.

Social phobia can lead to the development of poor social skills and low self-esteem, thus affecting the adolescent's development.

TREATMENT OPTIONS

Various treatment options are available for the adolescent with mental health problems. These treatment strategies are the same as those used for adults. Several options are addressed here in relation to the adolescent as the patient. Nurses should reflect on their scope of practice in implementing these strategies, identifying their own abilities, strengths, and limitations in carrying them out. As with any treatment option, it is essential that strategies are evidence based, supported by recent relevant research, and are matched with the patient's values and beliefs.

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

CBT has been identified as a useful approach when working with adolescents with a number of different mental health problems, including depression and eating disorders. As the name implies, concepts include those of cognitive theorists and techniques of behavioral therapy and client-centered psychotherapy. CBT works best when combined with other therapies such as family therapy.

CBT assumes that core beliefs and assumptions that individuals develop in their early childhood are critical to understanding later perceptions of events. The premise is that if the adolescent has learned maladaptive behavior and coping strategies, then he or she can unlearn them. The practitioner and adolescent work together to identify and understand problems and the relationship between thoughts, feelings, and behaviors. CBT is designed to challenge negative beliefs. The focus is the here and now as individualized, usually time-limited, therapy goals are formulated. Various cognitive and behavioral interventions, such as role-play and modeling, are used to target symptoms, reduce distress, reevaluate thinking, and promote helpful behavioral responses. As the adolescent is supported to tackle problems, he or she begins to acquire psychological and practical skills to deal with them. The emphasis on putting what was learned into practice helps to promote change.

Family Therapy

Typically, many adolescents live within the family system. Thus, the problems and their solutions often involve the family. Family therapy examines what is going on within the family unit, its dynamics, and the types of interactions, both at the current time and in the past. It explores how family interactions affect the everyday lives of the members. (See Chapter 9 for a more in-depth discussion of family therapy.)

Each family is unique and has its own set of norms, interaction patterns, and connections. Patterns of behavior, beliefs, and communication develop over time and may be the cause of the adolescent's problem and may also provide the solution for the problem. A combination of approaches such as problem solving and behavioral and cognitive techniques can be used. The practitioner works with the family to identify any difficulties that may be present, helps the family to understand the adolescent's problems, and assists in changing any dynamics that are deemed unhelpful.

Parent Training

Parent training programs may be particularly helpful with parents or guardians of adolescents with ADHD or conduct disorders. However, they are more commonly used with parents of younger children. A number of approaches may be used including:

- Psychoeducation: *The parent(s) receive instruction on the nature of the adolescent's problems*
- Behavioral approach: *Focus is on the behavior of the parents and the adolescent*
- Support counseling-type approach: *Support provided to the parents to help them come to terms with their adolescent's problems; identification of positive and negative parenting styles with reinforcement of those that work well*
- Group work: *Parents of several adolescents coming together to share common experiences and decrease their sense of isolation*

Group Work

Group work can be an important part of holistic care for adolescents with mental health problems. For the adolescent population, groups are important to develop a positive identity and normalize experiences. Group work is a useful means of exploring thoughts, feelings, and beliefs and developing interpersonal skills.

To engage in group work, a careful assessment of the adolescent and his or her ability to interact in a group environment must occur. Additionally, the adolescent's suitability for the group needs serious consideration. Some adolescents may experience increased anxiety when interacting in a group, potentially worsening their mental health problems.

Another consideration is the level of the group members' functioning. This level may be influenced by age, maturity, and severity of mental health problems. For a group to work through the stages of group development, the level of functioning of all members must be similar. Additionally, as with facilitating any group, the timing and the skills of the facilitator need to be considered. Where possible, the groups should be time limited and closed, meaning that the group begins and ends on a specific date and no new members can join the group after it has begun.

Adolescents with mental health problems can be difficult to work with in a group environment. Therefore, it is essential to establish ground rules, such as respect for other members, from the outset. From there, each group will take on its own set of norms and progress in its own way.

The type of group used varies depending on the setting. For example, some groups may be illness focused, such as a group for adolescents with depression or ADHD. Others may be issue focused, such as a group learning to develop positive coping strategies. Still others may be activity focused, such as a group practicing social skills. Regardless of the type of group, a common goal must be identified for the members. (See Chapter 9 for additional information on group therapy.)

Ability to interact in a group environment, suitability for a group, and level of group functioning must be considered when determining if group work would be appropriate for an adolescent.

Inpatient Care

Ideally, an individual should be cared for in his or her own environment. Thus, adolescents should be cared for in the community setting as much as possible. However, when this is not feasible because of safety or the need for more intensive treatment, inpatient care may be required. The most common reasons for inpatient admission include the severity of the mental health problem; the family is no longer able to cope; the risk of suicide; or threat of violence to others.

Inpatient care, although more restrictive than community care, can be advantageous because it:

- *Provides ample opportunity for a thorough assessment over a period of time with careful observation and close supervision for changes in mood and behavior throughout the day,*

which is especially important for the adolescent at risk to himself or herself or others.

- *Permits close monitoring for effectiveness of the therapy as well as for potential side effects if psychopharmacology is being initiated.*
- *Allows the adolescent to meet other young people who may be experiencing similar difficulties, thus helping to normalize the experience and help reduce the stigma associated with mental health problems.*
- *Creates separation from family and/or friends in situations where these individuals are adding to the adolescent's stress or contributing to the mental health problems.*

Inpatient care also has disadvantages. It can further exacerbate mental health problems. Evidence suggests that copycat behaviors can occur in adolescent units. This occurs when a young person may imitate or copy abnormal behaviors exhibited by another young person, such as cutting themselves and noncompliance. These copycat behaviors add to the adolescent's current problems. As with adult inpatient care, the adolescent may become disempowered and become increasingly reliant on hospital support, finding it more and more difficult to integrate back into society on discharge. This may, in turn, have an effect on their normal development of independence and maturity.

Psychopharmacology

The use of medication to treat adolescents with mental health disorders is controversial. Although many medications have claimed to be safe for use in adolescents, critics argue that there are insufficient trials in certain areas to support this claim (Lader, 2007; Schapiro, 2005). The prescription of psychiatric medications for adolescents needs to be carefully considered and only used as a last resort if other treatment options have not worked. In addition, they should only be used as part of a comprehensive treatment plan wherein other interventions are also offered. Clear explanations of how the medication works and its potential side effects must be provided to both the adolescent and his or her parent or guardian. **Patient and Family Education 22-1** provides an example of information to include when teaching an adolescent about prescribed medications.

Psychopharmacology is considered only as a last resort when treating adolescents because of the increased risk of suicide.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

Adolescents experiencing mental health problems may be seen in a variety of settings, such as acute care settings, day hospitalization programs, and community and outpatient facilities, as well as general medical facilities, emergency departments, and specialty clinics. Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for adolescents with mental health disorders. In addition, nurses need to remain cognizant of adolescent development to provide an individualized person-centered plan of care. (See Chapter 21 for an example of a plan of care that can be adapted to the adolescent.)

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 22-1: TEACHING AN ADOLESCENT ABOUT ANTIDEPRESSANTS

- Take the medication exactly as your doctor has prescribed it.
- Be aware that it might take several weeks before you notice any changes in your symptoms. Continue to take the medication even if your symptoms do not subside.
- If you miss a dose, do not double up on the next dose.
- Do not stop the drug suddenly, because you might experience withdrawal symptoms.
- Use sugarless hard candy or gum or frequent sips of water if you experience dry mouth.
- Avoid activities that require you to be alert, such as driving, because you may experience drowsiness or dizziness.
- Check with your physician before taking any other medications, including over-the-counter medications and herbal preparations.
- Be alert for signs of worsening depression or suicide. Call your prescriber immediately if you experience any of these.

Therapeutic communication skills including active listening are essential to the development of the therapeutic relationship with an adolescent. The adolescent needs to be treated as an individual whose input is valued.

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: Therapeutic Use of Self

The development of a therapeutic relationship with an adolescent is the key to assessment. The nurse spends considerable time with the adolescent and occupies a unique position, communicating with and getting to know the adolescent. The therapeutic use of self allows the nurse to work with the adolescent collaboratively in exploring and understanding the lived experience of the adolescent's distress. During the assessment, this supportive therapeutic alliance is initiated by the nurse being genuine, honest, respectful, empathetic, and flexible. As the adolescent begins to trust the nurse, open and honest communication can occur, allowing the nurse to understand the problem from the adolescent's frame of reference.

Communicating with adolescents can be challenging. Although they are generally considered to be minors and decision making often will be made in conjunction with their parents or guardian, a person-centered approach is essential. The nurse needs to treat the adolescent as an individual, demonstrating that his or her input is valued. The nurse also needs to display an attitude that demonstrates that he or she is listening to the adolescent. It is easy to be dismissive, believing that, as minors, adolescents know little about the world and life. However, only the adolescent truly understands how and what he or she is feeling and experiencing. Through the use of therapeutic communication skills, most importantly, active listening, the nurse can develop an understanding of the adolescent's difficulties. As a result, the nurse can be in a better position to work with the adolescent in resolving these difficulties. **Therapeutic Interaction 22-1** provides a sample interaction with an adolescent. Reciprocity, mutuality, and trust are essential components to the relationship.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Adolescent's Focused Needs

After completing the assessment, the nurse and adolescent develop a plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. Through the continued development of the therapeutic relationship, the nurse will work with the adolescent to help identify his or her needs. Outcomes and goals should be realistic and time oriented, being identified and developed through open negotiation.

When working with the adolescent, the plan needs to be family centered, that is, it must consider the family's ideas and beliefs and address the strengths and weaknesses of the adolescent and family. Throughout the process, the nurse needs to listen carefully to the adolescent and be sensitive to his or her feelings and those of the family, thereby helping the adolescent to focus on recovery.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

A number of potentially effective interventions can be used with adolescents and their families. These include supportive counseling, CBT, group work, and family counseling. However, additional research is needed to determine the true effectiveness of these therapies with adolescents.

The exact method for how the plan of care will be delivered and achieved is highly variable and must be individualized to the adolescent. This individualization will determine when and how interventions are implemented. The nurse works collaboratively with the adolescent in a creative and flexible way to promote personal growth and self-awareness. The nurse inspires hope and optimism by maintaining the belief that everyone has the ability to grow and foster a positive idea of the future and by remaining grounded in understanding the current problem experienced by the adolescent. In addition, the nurse needs to focus on the adolescent's potential and his or her strengths. Throughout, continued mutual respect is necessary.

Failures and setbacks may occur during this stage. The nurse understands that these events may occur and works to accept them. The nurse also needs to be mindful of the effect that any failures or setbacks may have on the adolescent. The adolescent may experience a loss of confidence or self-esteem. Thus, the nurse continues to work with the adolescent, helping him or her to move past the difficulties and return to the path of recovery.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation, an ongoing process, addresses the adolescent's goal achievement. Throughout, the nurse encourages the adolescent to reflect on his or her own progress and identify achievements. The nurse can highlight the positives to the adolescent and his or her family and include a plan for aftercare as appropriate.

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 22-1: ACTIVE LISTENING WITH AN ADOLESCENT

The nurse is meeting with Jess, a 15-year-old, for the first time. Jess has reported experiencing depressive symptoms for the past 6 months. The nurse is trying to determine if there were any precipitating factors.

INTERACTION	RATIONALE
Nurse: "How did all this begin for you?" (establishes eye contact and sits at the patient's level)	Initiating the interaction using an open-ended question that allows the patient to direct the interaction. Eye contact and positioning on the same level demonstrate interest in the patient
Jess: "I suppose I began to feel bad about 6 months ago when I went back to school after my summer vacation."	Responds to open communication and interest of nurse
Nurse: "Did anything in particular happen during that time?" (leans forward toward the patient)	Seeking clarification about the connection between the symptoms and school; demonstrates interest in patient's response; leaning forward indicates interest in what patient has to say
Jess: "Not really; just the usual, you know, you go back to school and you haven't seen people in a while and everybody looks different from last term and people comment on each other. Like if you've put on weight, or lost weight, or got spots, or got taller, people notice. I just hate listening to all that stuff, it's so superficial, and everyone judges you by the way you look."	Beginning to open up about his feelings
Nurse: "So your classmates were passing comment on other classmates and judging them?"	Validating the patient's statement; demonstrating empathy, showing concern and interest for the patient
Jess: "Yeah."	Confirming previous communication
Nurse: "Do you feel they were judging you?"	Further exploration to gather information about patient's feelings; encouraging patient to share information
Jess: "Of course, I mean they do it to everyone."	Expressing distress with classmates' behavior

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 22-1: *(CONT.)* ACTIVE LISTENING WITH AN ADOLESCENT

INTERACTION	RATIONALE
Nurse: "Sounds like that would be tough. How did that make you feel?"	Acknowledging the patient's feelings, encouraging the patient to describe his feelings further
Jess: "I became paranoid, well Mom said I was paranoid anyway. I didn't hear what they said but I know I put on a little weight over the summer so I'd say they were talking about that. I could see them looking and sneering. It's horrible to be looked at like that, it made me so angry, how dare they?"	Expressing feelings; opening up to the nurse
Nurse: "That sounds like it must have been difficult. Ok, so what you're telling me is that you think this began when you went back to school after the summer vacation. When you felt that some of your classmates were talking about you and sneering at you because you put on some weight over vacation, this has made you angry. Is that right?"	Summarizing what patient has been saying and seeking clarification to ensure accurate interpretation

The nurse also needs to engage in self-reflection during this time, reflecting on the approach to care adopted and the interactions with the adolescent. The nurse explores his or her own thoughts and feelings, what was done well, and what needs to improve. Additionally, the nurse identifies any problems within the therapeutic relationship that may have impacted the care. For example, if an adolescent refuses to engage with the nurse or becomes angry, the nurse should reflect on why this may have happened, and try to understand it from the adolescent's perspective. The nurse can then explore how to approach the situation differently. These actions will help the nurse develop competence and a greater understanding of how to work with this population. It will also ensure continuous quality improvement on a daily basis.

It is also important to reflect on the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) criteria (Cronenwett et al., 2007; QSEN Institute, 2015). The QSEN criteria identify a number of knowledge fields, skills, and attitudes that should be developed during nurse education. Many of these have been discussed throughout the chapter. The first area relates to person-centered care. Within this, it is important for the nurse to reflect on his or her communication skills with adolescents, recognize the boundaries in the therapeutic relationship, and strive toward continuous improvement, while all the time ensuring that the preferences, values, and needs of the adolescent and his or her family are considered. The second area refers to teamwork and collaboration. As a reflective practitioner, the nurse should come up with a self-development plan; it is important for the nurse to become aware of his or her strengths and areas in need of improvement. The nurse should reflect not only on his or her communication style with the adolescent and his or her family, but also with colleagues. The third area focuses on evidence-based practice. Care plans should be based not only on patient values but also on clinical expertise and evidence. While working with adolescents, it is important to consider the rationale of routine approaches to care and to provide evidence for their effectiveness or lack of. The nurse should also examine the limitations of his or her own expertise. The fourth area focuses on quality improvement. The nurse needs to analyze situations and events as they occur through reflective practice; this will assist in identifying gaps in best practice. The final area relates to informatics. Within this, nurses should consider how patient information is managed within the adolescent services as well as ensure that they update their technology skills throughout their career.

Developing strong therapeutic alliances can be draining on the nurse and burnout can occur without appropriate supports. The nurse needs to learn how to be self-supportive and seek the support of colleagues. Advanced practice nurses work in a variety of settings with adolescents and can be an invaluable source of support for beginning nurses working with this population.

Evaluation is also part of the termination of the nurse–patient relationship. Many times a patient will have a setback due to feelings of loss of this relationship. Termination is accomplished in a stepwise fashion, with the adolescent gradually decreasing his or her dependence on the nurse. The nurse helps the patient to explore his or her feelings and ease this transition while maintaining boundaries (Peplau, 1991).

SUMMARY POINTS

- Mental health problems, when they occur in adolescence, can often be dismissed as part of normal development. The perception is that adolescents will "grow out" of the problem as they reach adulthood.
- Adolescence is a period characterized by a search for identity, finding meaning in life, and forming unique personalities separate from the parents. Peer relationships play a significant role in an adolescent's overall development.
- An adolescent should be assessed in private because he or she may be ambivalent about the difficulties being experienced, fearful of becoming stigmatized, unable to articulate the problems, or have issues with authority figures.
- Adolescents experience many of the same mental health problems experienced by adults. Common mental health disorders include depression, self-harm, suicidal ideation, alcohol and drug use, eating disorders, and anxiety disorders.
- Depression in adolescents should not be confused with the typical short-lived feelings of sadness during this stage.
- Self-harm is believed to be a coping mechanism used for distress in response to certain triggers, such as bullying, peer rejection, abuse, feelings of worthlessness, substance misuse, or parental divorce.
- One of the most important features associated with suicidal ideation in adolescents is a feeling of hopelessness.
- Binge drinking is a growing concern among adolescents, the results of which can be fatal.
- Adolescents with ADHD who are prescribed stimulants should periodically undergo a medication-free period to determine if the medication is still necessary.
- Treatment options are similar to those used with adults including CBT, family therapy, parent training, group work, and inpatient care.
- Communicating with an adolescent can be challenging. The nurse needs to treat the adolescent as an individual and demonstrate that his or her input is valued and respected.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about adolescence and mental health problems. Which of the following would the nurse expect to include?

a. Time typically heals any problems that adolescents experience.
b. Problems in adolescence can continue into adulthood if not addressed.
c. Adolescents primarily experience disorders that are uncommon in adults.
d. The stigma associated with mental disorders is seen less frequently with adolescents.

2. A nurse is interviewing an adolescent for indications of suicidal ideation. Which patient statement would be a cause for concern?

a. "Don't worry, I'm not going to be bothering anyone anymore."
b. "Sometimes I feel like my parents are dictators."
c. "I used to like to draw, but I've found music is more relaxing."
d. "School is okay but I'd much rather play sports."

3. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about substance abuse in adolescence. The

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

students demonstrate an understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as the most commonly abused substance in adolescence?

a. Cocaine
b. Cannabis
c. Alcohol
d. Amphetamines

4. The nurse is assessing a female adolescent who engages in self-harming behavior. Which of the following would the nurse identify as a possible trigger? Select all that apply.

a. Rejection by friends
b. Substance misuse
c. Feelings of power
d. Worthlessness
e. Parental divorce

5. When applying the therapeutic use of self during assessment, which of the following would be important for the nurse to demonstrate? Select all that apply.

a. Genuineness
b. Respect
c. Empathy
d. Adherence to rigid rules

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. (2007). Practice parameters for the assessment and treatment of children and adolescents with bipolar disorder. *Journal of the American Academy of Adolescent Psychiatry, 4691*, 107–125.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorder, fifth edition* (*DSM-5)*. Arlington, Virginia: Author.

Anderson, P., deBruijn, A., Angus, K., Gordon, R., & Hastings, G. (2009). Impact of alcohol advertising and media exposure on adolescent alcohol use: A systematic review of longitudinal studies. *Alcohol and Alcoholism, 44*(3), 229–243.

Aslund, C., Nilsson, K., Starrin, B., & Sjoberg, R. (2007). Shaming experiences and the association between adolescent depression and psychosocial risk factors. *European Child and Adolescent, 16*(5), 298–304.

Australian Bureau of Statistics. (2007). *National survey of mental health and wellbeing, summary of results*. Author.

Birkeland, M. S., Breivik, K., & Wold, B. (2014). Peer acceptance protects global self-esteem from negative effects of low closeness to parents during adolescence and early adulthood. *Journal of Youth and Adolescence, 43*, 70–80.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Youth risk behavior surveilliance, United States. *MMWR, 59*(SS-5), 1–142.

Chen, K., Killeya-Jones, L., & Vega, W. (2005). Prevalence and co-occurrence of psychiatric symptom clusters in the U.S. adolescent population using DISC predictive scales. *Clinical Practice and Epidemiology in Mental Health, 1*, 22.

Chiou, W., Lee, C., & Liao, D. (2015). Facebook effects on social distress: Priming with online social networking can alter the perceived distress due to social exclusion. *Computers in Human Behaviour, 49*, 230–236.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and Safety Education for Nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

Erikson, E. (1968). *Identity: Youth and crisis.* London, England: Faber and Faber.

Gonzales, A., & Hancock, J. (2011). Mirror, mirror on my Facebook wall: Effects of exposure to Facebook on self-esteem. *Cyberpsychology, Behaviour and Social Networking, 14*(1–2), 79–83.

Greydanus, D., & Shek, D. (2009). Deliberate self harm and suicide in adolescents. *The Keoi Journal of Medicine, 58*(3), 144–151.

Huas, C., Caille, A., Godart, N., Foulon, C., Pham-Scottez, A., Divac, S.,… Falissard, B. (2011). Factors predictive of ten-year mortality in severe anorexia nervosa patients. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica, 123*(1), 62–70.

Lader, M. (2007). Antidepressants and suicidality. *Clinical Risk, 13*, 85–88.

Lavoie, T. (2009). Holistic treatment approaches to ADHD: Nutrition, sleep and exercise. *EP Magazine,* April, 46–47.

MacPhee, A., & Andrews, J. (2006). Risk factors for depression in early adolescence. *Adolescence, 41*(163), 435–466.

McKay, D., Hatton, T., & McDougall, T. (2006). Substance misuse, young people and nursing. In T. McDougall (Ed.), *Child and adolescent mental health nursing* (pp. 188–206). Oxford, England: Blackwell.

Mehdizadeh, S. (2010). Self-presentation 2.0: Narcissim and self-esteem on Facebook. *Cyberpsychology, Behaviour and Social Networking, 13*(4), 357–364.

Merikangas, K. R., He, J-P., Burstein, M., Swanson, S. A., Avenevoli, S., Cui, L.,…Swendsen, J. (2010). Lifetime prevalence of

mental disorders in US adolescents: Results from the National Co-morbidity Study. Adolescent supplement (NCS-A). *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, 49*(10), 980–989.

Mishna, F., Cook, C., Gadalla, T., Daciuk, J., & Solomon, S. (2010). Cyber bullying behaviors among middle and high school students. *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry, 80*(3), 362–374.

Monahan, K., Steinberg, L., & Cauffman, E. (2009). Affiliation with antisocial peers, susceptibility to peer influence and antisocial behavior during the transition to adulthood. *Developmental Psychology, 45*(6), 1520–1530.

Nixon, M., Cloutier, P., & Jansson, S. (2008). Nonsuicidal self harm in youth: A population based survey. *CMAJ, 178*, 306–312.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing: A conceptual frame of reference for psychodynamic nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

QSEN Institute. (2015). *Pre-licensure KSAs*. Retrieved from http://qsen.org/competencies/pre-licensure-ksas

Richmond, T. K., & Rosen, D. S. (2005). The treatment of adolescent depression in the era of the black box warning. *Current Opinion in Paediatrics, 17*(4), 1466–1472.

Schapiro, N. (2005). Bipolar disorder in children and adolescents. *Journal of Pediatric Health Care, 19*(3), 131–140.

Schwartz, B., Mayer, B., Trommsdorf, G., Ben-Arieh, A., Friedlmeier, M., Lubiewska, K.,… Peltzer, K. (2012). Does the importance of parent and peer relationships for adolescents' life satisfaction vary across cultures? *Journal of Early Adolescence, 32*(1), 55–80.

Skegg, K. (2005). Self harm. *Lancet, 366*, 1471–1483.

Steinberg, L. (2011). *You and your adolescent. The essential guide for ages 10–25* (Chapter 1, p. 7). New York, NY: Simon & Schuster.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2013). *Results from the 2012 national survey on drug use and health: Mental health findings*. NSDUH Series H-47, HHS Publication No. 13–4805. Rockville, MD: Author.

Thapar, A., Collishaw, S., Pine, D., & Thapar, A. (2012). Depression in adolescence. *The Lancet, 379*(9820), 1056–1067.

Valkenburg, P., Peter, J., & Schouten, A. (2006). Friend networking sites and their relationship to adolescents' well-being and social self-esteem. *Cyberpsychology and Behaviour, 9*(5), 584–590.

Veronneau, M., Vitaro, F., Brendgen, M., Dishion, T., & Tremblay, R. (2010). Transactional analysis of the reciprocal links between peer experiences and academic achievement from middle childhood to early adolescence. *Developmental Psychology, 46*(4), 773–790.

Witvliet, M., Brendgen, M., Van Lier, P., Koct, H., & Vitavo, F. (2010). Early adolescent depressive symptoms: Prediction from clique isolation, loneliness and perceived social acceptance. *Journal of Abnormal Child Psychology, 38*(8), 1045–1056.

World Health Organization (WHO). (2011). ICD-10. *International Classification of Disease and Health Related Problems.* Geneva, Switzerland: WHO.

Ybarra, M., & Mitchell, K. (2008). How risky are social networking sites? A comparison of places online where youth sexual solicitation and harassment occurs. *Pediatrics, 121*(2), e350–e357.

Young, J., Berenson, K., Cohen, P., & Garcia, J. (2005). The role of parent and peer support in predicting adolescent depression: A longitudinal community study. *Journal of Research on Adolescence, 15*(4), 17.

Zalsman, G., Brent D. A., & Weersing, V. R. (2006). Depressive disorders in childhood and adolescence: An overview: Epidemiology, clinical manifestation and risk factors. *Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Clinics in North America, 15*(4), 827–841.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 23

ISSUES SPECIFIC TO THE ELDERLY

Kimberly S. McClane

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe the current demographics of the elderly population
2. Identify the impact of physical, emotional, and sociocultural issues influencing the mental health of the elderly patient
3. Discuss the most common mental health disorders associated with the elderly
4. Identify trends affecting mental health services provided to the elderly
5. Apply the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective for the care of an elderly patient with a mental health disorder

KEY TERMS

Activities of daily living
Emotional loneliness
Geropsychiatry
Insomnia
Loneliness
Polypharmacy
Quality of life
Social loneliness

The elderly are considered to be individuals older than 65 years. In 2013, 44.7 million Americans were older than 65 years, reflecting an increase of 24.7% since the late 1990s. In the next decade, a further increase in growth of 38% is projected to occur. The current life expectancy in the United States is predicted to be 85.3 years for women and 82.4 years for men. In looking at the entire U.S. population, approximately 12.6% of individuals are 65 years of age or older and the numbers continue to rise. For the first time in history, there will be more individuals older than 65 years than in any other age group. Additionally, there will be more elderly Americans than there will be Americans in the workforce (Administration on Aging [AoAna], 2014).

The World Health Organization (WHO, n.d.) estimates that 20% of all adults 60 years of age and older suffer from a mental or neurological health disorder that negatively impacts their quality of life (QOL). This does not include headaches (migraines) or depression.

This chapter addresses the mental health issues related to the elderly. It describes some of the current statistics related to the elderly population and factors impacting the mental health of the elderly. The chapter reviews the most common mental health disorders affecting the elderly population and trends affecting care delivery. The chapter concludes by applying the nursing process from an interpersonal perspective to the care of an elderly patient with a mental health disorder.

OVERVIEW OF THE ELDERLY POPULATION

In 2013, 21.2% of individuals were members of racial or ethnic minority populations: 8.6% were African Americans, 3.9% were Asian or Pacific Islander, 0.5% were Native Americans, 0.1% were Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, and 0.7% identified themselves as being of two or more races. Persons of Hispanic origin (who may be of any race) represented 7.5% of the older population (AoAna, 2014). The remaining 77.7% were identified as Caucasian (U.S. Census Bureau, 2015).

Quality of Life

Another frequent indicator that is used to measure the aging individual's mental and physical health is **QUALITY OF LIFE**. QOL, used as an indicator of health by the WHO, is defined as "a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being and not the absence of disease or infirmity" (WHO, 2014, p. 1). This reflects the strong association of physical and mental health in the aging individual. Mental health as a component of overall health needs to be recognized and treated as aggressively as any physical diagnosis in the aging individual.

In 2014, the WHO (2014) reframed the international mental health definition to be:

> Mental health is defined as a state of well-being in which every individual realizes his or her own potential, can cope with the normal stresses of life, can work productively and fruitfully, and is able to make a contribution to her or his community.

The positive dimension of mental health is stressed in WHO's definition of health as contained in its constitution:

> Health is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity. (p. 1)

Active Aging

Active aging is the process by which the aging individual is an active participant in society. This is not solely defined by physical abilities, but rather continence of practicing in their social, spiritual, cultural, and civic duties. These skills can be translated into volunteering, teaching, and family structure. This active lifestyle significantly influences a positive QOL in the elderly (WHO, n.d.)

Quality of life is a key indicator of an individual's overall health, but especially the overall health of an elderly individual.

Medicare

Providing adequate care to those older than 65 years requires identification of funding sources for mental health issues. The primary health insurance provider for many aging Americans is Medicare (Medicare & You, 2015). Medicare consists of four components for reimbursement. They are:

- *Medicare Part A: This covers partial reimbursement to the patient during hospitalization including room, services, and treatments.*
- *Medicare Part B: This segment of the plan covers outpatient treatment, supplies, or other services. Some of these services include a psychiatrist or other doctor; clinical psychologist, social worker, or nurse specialist; nurse practitioner; physician's assistant; group or individual therapy; counseling services; medication; and diagnostic services.*
- *Medicare Part C: This addition to governmental Medicare provides the client with the ability to purchase an insurance choice*

that covers more than the 80% that Medicare reimburses. The plan is based on an approved health maintenance organization (HMO) or a preferred physician organization (PPO) and includes all of parts A, B, and D. Some may offer other additional benefits and services.

- *Medicare Part D: This section is the drug reimbursement portion of the plan, which is based on a frequently updated national formulary (Medicare & You, 2015).*

FACTORS INFLUENCING MENTAL HEALTH IN THE AGING POPULATION

Merck (2015) has stated that, on average, individuals older than 65 years have at least six disorders, and their primary physician may be unaware of them. These disorders significantly impact their behavior, socialization, and mood. Factors specific to the aging population are addressed here.

Physical Changes

Multiple physical changes can impair the mental health of the aging individual. These changes include:

- *Acid-based imbalances*
- *Dehydration*
- *Electrolyte changes*
- *Hypothermia or hyperthermia*
- *Hypothyroidism*
- *Hypoxia*
- *Impaired mobility*
- *Incontinence*
- *Infection and sepsis*
- *Medications*
- *Sensory changes (Gallo & Bogner, 2006)*

The Maryland Coalition of Mental Health and Aging (MCMHA, n.d.) identified the biological changes related to:

- *A decrease in the number and the mass of nerve cells*
- *Changes in nerve conduction and alteration of the senses*
- *Increased rigidity, function, and decreased organ capacity that alter the function of one or more organs*

In many instances, individuals who are older than 65 years accept these physical changes as normal changes related to the aging process. However, these age-related changes, even if corrected, can negatively influence the individual's QOL. For example, a loss of physical function and mobility can lead to a loss of independence. This loss of independence can lead to social withdrawal, self-isolation, and anxiety or depression (Gagliardi, 2006).

Typically, physical changes in the elderly are dismissed as normal, age-related changes. However, they can significantly impact the person's mental health, leading to social isolation, anxiety, and depression.

Chronic Illness

Merck Manual Professional Version (2015) reports that an average individual older than 65 years has six diagnosable disorders. Having these conditions can be the basis of a multiple system disorder with an organ system influencing another. These may be sensory, physical, or mental components. Another issue complicating these issues is *social disadvantage* relating to the client's socialization, poverty, functional disorders, and economic status. There is a strong association between chronic illness and mental health, with chronic illnesses often leading to depression and other mental health problems (Chowdhury & Rasani, 2008).

Patients and family need education about the risk of depression or altered mental health issues with chronic illness. The illness itself may lead to problems, for example, decreased mobility leading to social isolation, withdrawal, and depression or cognitive changes interfering with the patient's ability to function independently. Ultimately, these changes can impact the patient's coping ability and self-esteem.

Additionally, prescribed or over-the-counter medications and herbs may produce side effects, such as confusion and disorientation, or interact with one another, predisposing the patient to an increased risk of mental health problems, such as depression or anxiety. The patient and family also need to be aware that a physical illness may exacerbate a previous mental health disorder and that a previous mental health disorder may worsen a physical illness. Thus, if a patient and family have adequate knowledge and understanding of the signs or changes that can be associated with mental health disorders, early interventions can be implemented, thereby diminishing the overall impact (Kramer, Beaudin, & Thrush, 2005).

Pain

Pain has been designated as the fifth vital sign (in addition to the four vital signs of temperature, pulse, respirations, and blood pressure). The estimated prevalence of pain ranges from 36% to 88% for those in the age group of 65 years and more. Pain related to bone and joint problems, chronic pain related to chronic illness or trauma experienced before age 65 years, or acute illnesses are frequently

underdiagnosed and undertreated. Self-reporting of pain may be viewed as drug-seeking behavior or minimized by the aging individual's primary care practitioner (PCP; Pratt et al., 2007).

The diagnosis of chronic pain in the elderly is associated with actual or potential damage to tissues/bones lasting more than 3 months, which may impair function and mobility and lead to social isolation, decreased participation in previously enjoyed activities, and increased risk of suicide (Kaye, Baluch, & Scott, 2010).

Additionally, the increased cost of health care, decreased QOL, and possible early retirement that could negatively influence finances are other concerns associated with pain. Moreover, chronic, unresolved pain has been associated with an increased risk of a mental health disorder such as depression, suicide, or anxiety (Blay, Andreoli, Dewey, & Gastal, 2007).

When pain occurs, medications such as acetaminophen and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are commonly used. However, these medications place the aging adult at risk of adverse drug reactions or drug–drug interactions. Opioids, commonly prescribed for pain relief, are not first-line choices for aging patients because of the potential for diminished cognition, mood disturbances, insomnia, constipation, and addiction.

The ultimate goal is to maximize pain relief with a minimum of side effects. For the elderly, treatment should include physical therapy or the addition of complementary and alternative therapies. Both patient and caregivers need education about pain management and how it might impact the older adult. Prescribing physical rehabilitation may be useful in increasing independence and function. Pain-related studies have shown a strong link among pain, aging, depression, and insomnia, necessitating that all these should be addressed simultaneously (Kaye et al., 2010; Merck & Co., 2006d).

The presence of pain, its effect on functioning, and the associated treatment can predispose the elderly patient to mental health problems such as changes in cognition, mood, and sleep patterns.

Insomnia

INSOMNIA is a symptom of a disease process and not a diagnosis. It is defined as an inability to initiate or maintain sleep and is classified as transient or short term (once to twice a week for 4 to 6 weeks); intermittent (varying over a time with no set pattern); and chronic (occurring two or more times a week for more than 1 month).

The aging individual may exhibit signs and symptoms of insomnia such as sleeping for short periods during the night, sleeping during times of normal social activities, arising early in the morning while others sleep, and experiencing daytime sleepiness. Other indicators may include increased irritability, decreased mental function, changes in short-term memory, and the need for frequent and lengthy naps during the day (Ancoli-Israel & Cooke, 2005).

Insomnia in the aging adult can be caused by several factors that can occur concomitantly. Examples of causes of chronic insomnia issues are highlighted in **Box 23-1**.

Medications such as antidepressants, antihistamines, antihypertensive agents, nasal decongestants, chemotherapeutic agents, and opioids can lead to insomnia. In addition, decreased melatonin, poor sleep hygiene, and lack of sunlight are other causes. Sunlight has been associated with insomnia in institutionalized populations who are not exposed to sunlight (Medical News Today, 2005; Merck & Co., 2006e).

Measures to combat insomnia include establishing a consistent bedtime and discontinuing or limiting napping during the day, increasing daily activity levels, limiting caffeine or other stimulants, using the bed for only sex and sleep, avoiding large meals close to bedtime, and not obsessing about falling asleep. If the individual does not fall

BOX 23-1: CAUSES OF CHRONIC INSOMNIA

ILLNESSES

- Depression (the most common cause)
- Chronic pain
- Arthritis
- Kidney disease
- Restless legs syndrome
- Heart failure
- Parkinson's disease
- Sleep apnea
- Asthma
- Dementias
- Benign prostrate hypertrophy

BEHAVIORAL ISSUES

- Anxiety about not being able to sleep
- Consuming alcohol before bedtime
- Consuming excessive amounts of caffeine
- Smoking cigarettes before bedtime
- Excessive napping in the afternoon or evening

asleep within one-half hour, meditation or other relaxing activities should be considered. Depending on the individual's physical health status, a sleep apnea study may be warranted (Merck & Co., 2008).

Often, insomnia is treated with medication, such as sedatives and hypnotics or antianxiety agents, before bedtime. Unfortunately, these drugs pose a risk for older adults and for people with breathing problems because they suppress the areas of the brain that control breathing. In addition, prescription insomnia medications are often habit forming, although their degree of addiction varies from person to person (Fetveit, 2009). In addition, herbal remedies may be used. Valerian root and melatonin are two common ones.

As with any medications used by older adults, the chronic use of drugs to promote sleep can produce undesirable side effects, including impaired memory and alertness, incontinence, daytime sleepiness, and alteration in metabolic or electrolyte imbalances. These side effects can exacerbate the patient's existing problems or create new ones.

Skilled nursing facilities frequently provide sleeping medications for their residents. Studies show that the use of sleeping medications increases the risk of falls. In addition, insomnia is increased in skilled nursing facilities due to the need for lights to be on at various locations and a louder-than-normal environment at night. Recent studies have shown that there is a decrease in insomnia in many of these residents if they are exposed to short periods of sunlight several times a week (Gobert & D'hoore, 2005). This exposure to natural light helps in the production of the necessary vitamins and chemoreceptors that enhance sleep.

Disabilities and Functional Decline

Preexisting health issues are often present before the age of 65 years. The aging person will bring his or her life's health histories, behaviors, and/or handicaps and disabilities to the need for health care. These comorbid conditions can be very significant in the QOL and mental health of the elderly. Thus, the many changes that occur with aging and the preexisting conditions together can significantly influence the overall health of the older person.

Individuals younger than 65 years usually have preexisting conditions that can be associated with a functional disability. Aging individual's functional decline may be attributed not only to previous functional disabilities but also to the accumulation of chronic diseases, and it is dynamic and may or may not be episodic (Colon-Emeric, Whitson, Pavon, & Hoenig, 2013).

Ferranti, Pasini, Murphy, Leo-Summers, and Gill (2015) have also identified that in an elderly client, who has a preexisting disability, at the outcome of a diagnosis of a critical disease there are changes in behavior and function. Another comorbidity that has significant impact is depression.

In another study, it was recognized that functional decline may be episodic, with the acceptance of intermittent versus chronic function. One important function that is associated with decline can be correlated with personal and residential independence (Colon-Emeric et al., 2013). Application of "an algorithm for evaluating new disability in an older adult" (p. 390) can be a potential method to evaluate the elder client.

Stress and Change

Many individuals who retire make plans for their finances, residence, activities, social and community connections, and resources. However, as one ages, major stresses may arise leading to altered mental health, especially depression or anxiety. Research has shown that increased stress in an aging individual increases the physical and mental aging processes. In addition, studies have shown that prolonged stress has been associated with decreased immune function and altered health status (MCMHA, n.d.; McClane, 2005).

Some of the identified situations associated with stress include:

- *Caregiving for another person*
- *Retirement*
- *Increased leisure or unstructured time*
- *Health changes*
- *Reliance on others*
- *Social adjustments*
- *Financial changes*
- *Loss of loved ones*
- *Pain or disability*
- *Relocation or housing changes*
- *Negotiating new systems (i.e., health care benefits)*
- *Medication use*
- *Sensory decline (hearing and vision)*
- *Mobility restrictions*
- *Change in appearance*
- *Cultural emphasis on the value of youth*

Two of the most common indicators of increased stress in the aging are social isolation and depression, viewed as an inability to manage stress in changed life circumstances. The aging individual may exhibit physical signs and symptoms such as fatigue, headaches, cold feet and hands, neck or back pain, and altered gastrointestinal functions. Many would consider these normal when experiencing stress.

However, if these are present more than 2 to 4 weeks, further evaluation is necessary.

Loss

Loss has a major influence on the mental health of the older adults. The loss of a spouse is considered a major risk factor for depression in the elderly. Other losses exerting an influence include loss of siblings, friends, or family pets. This loss can coexist with a change in living arrangements or increased health problems. Moreover, the older adult may be experiencing a loss of mobility, loss of sensory function, or loss of bladder control (incontinence), leading to feelings of decreased self-worth and depression (Chen & Fu, 2008). Any single loss or combination of losses can lead to social isolation and subsequently depression.

Elderly individuals experience a wide range of losses, both physical and emotional, that can occur as single or multiple events, placing them at risk of decreased self-esteem and depression.

Family Coping

The relationship, or lack thereof, with family is a factor that influences the quality of an elder's mental health. Factors such as loss of communication, lack of understanding between the elder and family members, an increased need for care of the elder that is not easily available, or lack of knowledge about conditions affecting the elderly can contribute to mental health problems. Historically, the eldest daughter or female relative assumed the caregiving responsibility for aging family members. However, today, with many families depending on dual incomes, the care responsibilities may fall on adolescents or ancillary family members. This situation, coupled with the factors mentioned, can negatively influence the mental health of the elder as well as cause disruptions in the household and the family unit itself (Ron, 2008).

Caregiver stress with associated depression or anxiety often occurs when a family member, often a partner, provides care for a spouse or significant other. Aside from the impact of the stress of the disorder on the patient's functioning, this caring role also takes a physical toll on the caregiver. The lack of access to care, underutilization of available resources, social isolation, or fear of separation can result in significant strain on the caregiver. Additionally, the caregiver may be unable to fully or safely provide care for the patient, creating a dangerous physical environment for both the patient and the caregiver (Son, Erno, Feemia, Zarit, & Stephens, 2007).

In 2015, Ejem, Drentea, and Olivio found an increase in mental health issues in the care recipient as well as the care provider. There were 1,340 caregiver/receiver dyads and there was a significant increase in both experiencing increased emotional stress and depression.

Family or caregiver coping can be enhanced by a referral to support groups for caregiving of specific diseases. As an example of services available, the California Department on Aging (CDA, 2015) provides family and individual agencies including the Family Caregiver Support Program, Community-Based Adult Services, Nutritional Services, and a Multipurpose Senior Services Program.

Loneliness

Peplau defined **LONELINESS** as "an unnoticed inability to do anything while alone" (1988, p. 256). The prevalence of loneliness in individuals older than 65 years has been estimated to range from 5% to 26%. Loneliness is an individual response to unfulfilled needs for intimacy or social contacts. Two forms of loneliness have been defined. The first, **SOCIAL LONELINESS**, is related to a loss of contact with peers, friends, or groups that have shared and supported the needs of the elderly individual. The second, **EMOTIONAL LONELINESS**, is associated with loss of intimacy with a partner, family member, or friend who can no longer support the emotional needs of the elder. Both of these classifications can be experienced alone or in conjunction with one another. There is no defining period for how long loneliness will last.

Wu and Penning (2015) investigated if immigration from other countries increases the risk of loneliness during aging. In a sample of more than 10,000 participants, immigrants of age 60 to 80 years had a higher incidence of loneliness than naturalized elders. There was no significant change in clients older than 80 years. This can be conjectured to be from neurosensory changes and impaired cognition.

Social loneliness has been associated with a loss of connectedness to friends, peers, family, or social activities within groups that supported the elder in his or her declining age in many facets of life. A major risk for social loneliness includes relocation of the person's residence, either geographically or to a new housing environment. Individuals who have relocated to assisted living or skilled nursing facilities often face this issue. Although they may have increased contact with other residents, this contact does not translate into the quality of relationships previously experienced (Drageset, 2002).

Social loneliness, according to Gierveld and Tilburg (2006), is an indicator of well-being and the feeling of loss in intimate relations or a previous social network. They devised both a one-item De Jong Gierveld Loneliness Scale and a six-question version. This questionnaire is easily

administered and provides important information on the status of a client, especially following relocation.

Emotional loneliness is experienced when an individual or group who provided intimacy and support to the elder no longer does so. As one ages, the loss of a partner, friends, or family increases while the ability to create new relationships decreases. The loss of these bonds and support systems negatively impacts the elderly. One specific group of elders that has reported slowly but increasing perceptions of loneliness is caregivers. The need to care for a partner or family member causes a loss of opportunities for socialization, creating social isolation, while the declining health of the individual in need of care may also reflect a decline in emotional support, creating emotional loneliness (Drageset, 2002).

Loneliness has a strong correlation with declining mental health of the aging individual, most commonly depression. Depression is a mental state associated with loneliness. However, not all elders experiencing depression have associated feelings of loneliness. One study reported that the risk of mortality was 2.1 times higher for those experiencing loneliness with depression (Stek et al., 2005). This study also identified other health risks as being associated with loneliness and depression including increased cognitive impairment, insomnia, impaired nutrition, hypertension, and other cardiac risk factors. An earlier study (Weeks, Michela, Peplau, & Bragg, 1990) correlated a relationship between loneliness and depression. However, this study defined both as separate mental health issues. More recently, O'Luanaigh and Lawlor (2008) discussed the connection between mental health and loneliness in the elderly, exploring physical responses to loneliness, including hypertension, insomnia, abnormal stress responses, and altered nutrition. Thus, the issue of loneliness in the elderly can have an associated morbidity to other elder health issues.

The assessment of loneliness as depression is often misdiagnosed, causing decreased QOL for the patient. Assessment can be confirmed by self-reporting and use of multiple assessment tools designed to improve the recognition of loneliness. The UCLA Loneliness Scale is one of the most commonly used tools. A knowledge base in assessing and then following through and providing resources for the lonely elder is important (Cornell & Waite, 2009).

Using the UCLA Loneliness Scale, Zebhauser et al. (2015) found that 70% of the elderly living alone were not lonely. Their conclusions indicated that loneliness was not reflected by income and level of education, and age-related limitations were not components of loneliness. The presence of a stable and functional social network was significant in determining their mood states and loneliness.

The treatment for loneliness is often based on other mental health symptoms such as anxiety or depression. A primary intervention for loneliness in the elderly is to expand contacts and relationships with family and close friends (Petigrew & Roberts, 2008). It was noted that the quality of social interactions rather than the quantity of interactions is important (Magai, Consedine, Fiori, & King, 2008). Improved life satisfaction also occurred in aging individuals with loneliness when they were introduced to the Internet (Patel, 2007). Electronic communication, especially with distant family and friends, has been associated with decreased levels of loneliness.

Jones, Ashurst, Atkey, and Duffy (2015) found that the use of the Internet reduced loneliness and improved mental health well-being. Once proficient on the computer, their next reported action was to become a tutor for other aging individuals. Senior Living.Org (2011) identified frequently used websites for the aging client. These include aging well, AARP, travel, health, technology, and humor. In assessing the elderly and their Internet use, ask for the sites/topics they frequently visit and evaluate if these are appropriate sites for the client. You can also refer the client to the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI, n.d.) for information on potential scams and how to avoid or report them to the FBI.

Loneliness, an individual response to unfulfilled needs for intimacy or social contacts, occurs in two forms: social loneliness, which is related to a loss of contact with peers, friends, or groups who have shared and supported the elderly individual's social needs; and emotional loneliness, which is associated with the loss of intimacy with a partner, family member, or friend who can no longer support the elderly individual's emotional needs.

Abuse and Neglect

The American Psychiatric Association (2015) estimated that there were 4 million cases of elder abuse or neglect in 2014, and for each identified case of neglect 23 cases go unrecorded. This rate may continue to increase with the aging population growth, with increased frailty and cognitive disorders.

Abuse and neglect can be inflicted on an aging individual or be self-imposed. The abuse patterns may involve a family member or caregiver who has some influence in the elder's daily life. Control is the overall issue, which can lead to depression, anxiety, and potentially life-threatening physical injuries. **Table 23-1** summarizes the five classifications

TABLE 23-1: CLASSIFICATIONS OF ABUSE IN THE ELDERLY

TYPE OF ABUSE	DESCRIPTION	IMPLICATIONS FOR THE AGING INDIVIDUAL
Physical	Result of physical force and violence leading to physical illness or trauma in the elder. Includes bodily injury and pain, physical impairment, or inappropriate restraints (chemical or physical).	No clear indicator of an elder being more or less at risk for this type of abuse. Perpetrators often associated with unmarried family members or caregivers living with the victim and relying on the elder's home and financial support; frequently substance abuse problem involved. Careful assessment of elderly patients for signs of unexplained injury or scars, frequent visits to the urgent care or emergency department.
Sexual	Any physical contact to which an individual does not consent. Includes rape, molestation, insertion of foreign objects, or any other unwanted sexual contact. Domestic violence if occurring between marital partners.	Those at risk: aging women, individuals unable to provide consent due to mental impairment, individuals who have poor social skills or are socially isolated, individuals residing in skilled care facilities (often at a higher risk for sexual abuse than those residing in family residences) (Edwards, 2005). Assessment of potential victims for any signs of bruises, injuries, or bleeding from the genitalia, inner thighs, or breast area; inability to walk or sit comfortably; frequent urinary tract infections or sexually transmitted diseases (NCPEA, 2008).
Psychological	Intentional infliction of mental or emotional anguish because of threats, humiliations, or other verbal or nonverbal conduct.	Perpetrators similar to those of physical abuse, as they may rely heavily on the resources of the aged. Indicators difficult to identify as they may result in a more rapid decline in the elder, such as weight loss, insomnia, or other indicators of stress.
Neglect	Failure of an individual to receive his or her daily needs and security. *Active* neglect is purposeful and calculated. *Passive* neglect is the result of the inability of the caregiver to provide the daily needs; possibly related to knowledge deficit, personal illness or disability, stress, or lack of resources.	Victim is dependent on assistance because of mental or physical disabilities; individuals requiring a high level of care. Possible substance abuse. Key indicators: poor nutrition; dehydration; unclean, disheveled appearance; and unhealed lesions or decubitus ulcers (NCPEA, 2008).
Self-neglect	Individual as the victim.	Socially isolated, living in an unkempt environment, possibly affecting members of the surrounding community. Indicators: hoarding; keeping large volumes of paper, food items, or large numbers of domestic animals. Refusal of assistance from family and outside agencies. Social services often are required to remove elder from personal environment—the last alternative for the elder, as reports have shown a very low survival rate of 6 months following the change (Dong et al., 2009).

of abuse that significantly impact the aging individual's mental health. However, all forms of elder abuse can be very threatening and frightening to the abused (Merck & Co., 2006a). (See Chapter 24 for a more in-depth discussion about elder abuse.)

Culture and Spirituality

Culture and spirituality, often closely related, provide a sense of purpose and view of the person's life and accomplishments. These two components play a variety of roles in the lives and activities of the elderly. Many people, as they age, find comfort and purpose by remaining closely affiliated with their beliefs. Others who may have earlier shed their cultural and spiritual beliefs find comfort and solace by returning to their roots. Others, with increasing physical and mental health issues, facing losses in their lives, and with diminished personal energies, reject their earlier beliefs and practices to become more isolated individuals in relation to family and community. Each individual will find the answer when challenged with aging and its personal challenges (Trask, Hepp, Settles, & Shabo, 2009).

COMMON MENTAL HEALTH PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ELDERLY

The elderly experience mental health problems similar to those experienced by adults in their younger years. However, several disorders require specific discussion because of their significant impact on the older adult.

Depression in the Elderly

Depression in the elderly is reaching epidemic proportions, with some estimates revealing that one in five individuals older than 65 years suffers from mild or major depression. In addition, at least 6 million aging Americans are experiencing depression, with less than 10% of them receiving treatment for the disorder. Depression has also been estimated to be the underlying factor associated with increased health care costs of the elderly. As both life expectancy increases and the overall population of individuals older than 65 years increases, the expected number of depressed elderly may more than double.

Depression must be differentiated from delirium and dementia. Together, these disorders are often referred to as the three Ds of **GEROPSYCHIATRY** (the study of psychiatric and mental illness in the aging population). These conditions are difficult to diagnose correctly in the elderly because their symptoms can be confused and more than one of the illnesses can be present in the same patient. **Table 23-2** summarizes the major aspects for each disorder.

The inability to correctly diagnose the condition can lead to increased length of hospital stays, inappropriate medications, further impairment of cognitive function, missed opportunities for treatment, and an overall diminished QOL. In their most acute forms, these syndromes are associated with 10% to 20% of acute hospitalizations of the elderly (Ski & O'Connell, 2005). One study proposed that the actual cases of delirium occurring in medical–surgical patients of age 65 years and more may be as high as 70% (van Zyl & Seitz, 2006). Projections also reveal that up to 60% of this population will be discharged with and continue to exhibit signs of cognitive impairment.

In 2003, the elderly comprised 12% of the population of the United States, but accounted for 16% of all reported suicides. In 2004, 14.3% of every 100,000 people aged 65 years or more died by suicide. The suicide rates for men rise with age, most significantly after the age of 65 years. The rate for men is seven times that for females who are 65 years of age and older. In addition, about 60% of elderly patients who take their own lives would have seen their primary care physician a few months before their death. Depression and chronic unrelieved pain are two significant issues related to suicide in the elderly (American Foundation for Suicide Prevention, 2011). Other contributory factors include chronic or terminal illnesses, social isolation, and access to the means of committing suicide (i.e., firearms in the home).

Once an elderly patient is diagnosed with depression, the potential for suicide needs to be recognized. This is a major health risk for the aging population who disproportionately has limited access or funding to mental health services (Harris, Cook, Victor, Dewilde, & Beighton, 2006).

Another major factor related to depression is the morbidity related to chronic illnesses. Depression is commonly associated with numerous medical diagnoses such as heart attack, Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, diabetes, cancer, and arthritis. In addition, depression can result from other situations that the elderly may experience, such as being a victim of a crime, a change in residence, death of a spouse or family member, poverty, and loneliness (Merck & Co., 2006b).

The signs and symptoms of depression in the elderly are as unique as each individual. The primary characteristics of depression in the elderly are frequently related to a chronic illness rather than a mental health disorder. Primary health care providers not trained in evaluating depression in the elderly often focus the treatment on the symptoms. As a result, the patient experiences a diminished QOL that could

TABLE 23-2: COMPARING DELIRIUM, DEMENTIA, AND DEPRESSION

	DELIRIUM	DEMENTIA	DEPRESSION
Definition	Rapid and often fluctuating levels of consciousness and disorganized cognitive processes that are temporary in duration Reversal of condition in approximately 10% to 30% of hospitalized elderly	A slowly progressive change in cognitive abilities including short-term memory loss, diminished language skills, and inability to perform activities of daily living	A moderate to rapid change in an individual's behavior or mood that can be related to loss of interest in normally satisfying activities that can also reflect short-term memory loss, altered communication patterns, or inability to perform activities of daily living for at least 14 days
Symptoms	Onset can be from hours or a few days Cognitive symptoms vary in the day, but may become worse during the night or on awakening Orientation is usually limited to person Behaviors can range from agitated and aggressive to confusion and lethargy Inability to focus on or remain focused on the present Altered perceptions including vivid illusions and hallucinations	A measurable impairment in two or more of the following: • Memory • Language • Personality • Emotional behaviors • Cognitive skills • Visual/spatial perceptions	Cognitive changes can be associated with altered mood May deny sadness/depression but report an increase of somatic disorders that may include: • Increased levels of pain that interfere with normal activities • Altered sleep patterns • Alteration in eating patterns /weight loss • Poor personal hygiene • Cognitive confusion related to specific rather than global activities • Mood alterations, from increased irritability to lethargy • Substance abuse
Thinking	Alterations in alertness, cognition, thinking patterns, perceptions	Cognitive impairment related to memory and one or more of the following: • Aphasia • Apraxia • Agnosia • Executive functioning	Reduced memory, level of consciousness, and thinking; as well as low self-esteem
Sleep	Disturbed without a pattern, changes nightly	Disturbed with a specific pattern	Disturbed with early morning awakening or hypersomnia
Causes	Underlying physical conditions including: • Urinary tract infections or retention • Cardiovascular events • Constipation • Viral or bacterial infections • Altered metabolic or endocrine states • Renal failure • Medications	Irreversible neurodegenerative diseases including: • Alzheimer's disease (60%–75%) • Lewy body dementia • Frontal lobe atrophy • Multi-infarct cerebral vascular accident • Substance-related atrophy • HIV/AIDS	Major causes of depression in the elderly can be related to: • Loss of spouse or significant others • Loneliness and isolation • Chronic illness or health-related issues • Medications • Substance abuse • Stress • Financial circumstances • Uncontrolled environmental issues
Screening tools	Confusion Assessment Method Algorithm (CAM) "I WATCH DEATH" causes of delirium	Folstein Mini Mental Exam with Clock Drawing Mini-Cog Dementia Screen Cohen-Mansfield Agitation Inventory	Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS 4 Short Form) Cornell Scale for Depression SIG E CAPS (*DSM-5* criteria) Assessment of Suicide Risk in the Older Adult

From Gagliardi (2006) and Toronto Best Practice in LTC Initiative (2007).

lead to an increased risk of suicide. Often the complaints of unexplained or aggravated aches and pains or insomnia are sometimes associated with drug-seeking behaviors rather than a component of the more serious diagnosis of depression.

Treatment of the elderly with depression commonly includes psychopharmacology, no pharmacological approaches, and electroconvulsive therapy (ECT; Kennedy, 2000; Kneisl, Wilson, & Trigoboff, 2004). (See Chapter 12 for additional information about depression and its treatment.)

Antidepressants are the first line of therapy used on the elderly with depression. Elderly patients typically respond well to the first medication used. In addition, psychotherapy, such as interpersonal psychotherapy and cognitive behavioral therapy, is used for aging individuals with depression. The patient may be referred to physical therapy to promote enhanced functioning and mobility and to occupational therapy to help promote feelings of self-worth, personal pride, and independence in **ACTIVITIES OF DAILY LIVING** (ADLs).

Reminiscence therapy may be of benefit to the elderly patient with depression. Several studies conducted in Taiwan (Chao, Wu, Jin, Chu, & Clark, 2006; Hsu & Wang, 2009; Huang, Li, Yang, & Chen, 2009; Moral, Sales, & Rodríguez, 2015) identified the use of reminiscence therapy in institutionalized elders as part of a group therapy structure. This therapy was used primarily with individuals who had both depression and dementia. Success on an individualized basis has not been established with large populations (Bohlmeijer, Smit, Onrust, & van Marwijk, 2009). However, the potential for reminiscence therapy cannot be diminished because it is a cost-effective treatment.

ECT plays a major role in the treatment of depression in the elderly. Patients selected to receive ECT are those elders who demonstrate a poor or lack of response to multiple medications, have had a psychotic element to their depression, have severe malnutrition, or are at imminent risk for suicide. With increased age and declining cardiovascular function, not all elders are candidates for these procedures. There is also temporary cognitive impairment immediately following the treatment, complicating the recovery process. Usually, ECT is given twice weekly for 8 to 12 sessions. Rhebergen et al. (2015) have replicated and agree with ECT therapy in a specific patient population.

In reference to the increased age of a client, it has been found that Yuen et al. (2015) have investigated the depression in late-life depressants. In the late-life depressant, depression is likely to be associated with no remission and disabling. In this patient, it is recommended that a combination of treatments be used.

Depression in the elderly is reaching epidemic proportions, with estimates indicating depression as the major underlying cause of the increased cost of health care in this population.

Generalized Anxiety Disorder in the Elderly

The prevalence of generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) is estimated to range from 3% to 10% of individuals older than 65 years. (See Chapter 13 for additional information about anxiety disorders.) Studies in the United States and Europe have noted that GAD more commonly appears between the ages of 20 and 50 years, with only 3% of those older than 65 years developing GAD. Approximately 32% of adults with GAD demonstrate a genetic predisposition to the disorder.

The symptoms of GAD also fluctuate in response to physical, mental, environmental, social, or other stresses. In comparison with depression, GAD in the elderly is more frequently associated with physical symptoms and less frequently with emotional disturbances. There is some indication that depression can be a component of GAD. For example, Golde et al. (2009) identified a relationship between GAD and loneliness in the community-dwelling elder. As the elder withdraws from social or personal relationships with increasing depression, loneliness can cause further loss of QOL, self-esteem, and mood changes. Studies also reveal an increased level of anxiety in elders with mild cognitive impairments (Rozzini et al., 2009).

Anxiety is frequently seen in individuals with mild-to-moderate cognitive impairment. Anxiety in the elderly can also be manifested as a new phobia, or a phobia previously experienced in the elderly person may intensify.

Various assessment tools can be used to diagnose anxiety in the elderly: the Generalized Anxiety Disorder Severity Scale, Geriatric Anxiety Inventory, and Anxiety Status Inventory (Weiss et al., 2009). Depending on the onset and severity of GAD in an elderly patient, a CT scan or MRI scan may be done (Merck & Co., 2006c).

Currently, there are two schools of thought regarding the treatment of the elder with GAD. One involves psychotherapy as the treatment of choice, with the incorporation of medication. The other promotes the use of cognitive behavioral therapy as the first choice, followed by medication if the therapy is not successful.

Due to the significant physical component to GAD, a complete physical examination should be carried out to identify any health issues that can be causing the anxiety.

In an elder with limited comorbidity, medications alone may provide relief for the patient (Flint, 2005; Rangari & Pelissolo, 2006).

Four antidepressants have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in the elderly. They include the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) escitalopram (Lexapro) and paroxetine (Paxil) and the serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) duloxetine (Cymbalta) and venlafaxine (Effexor). These medications have been associated with minimal side effects and interactions with other medications, and limited sedation in the elderly with GAD. Some individuals do, however, discontinue the medication.

Benzodiazepines, both long-acting agents such as diazepam (Valium) and clonazepam (Klonopin) and short-acting agents such as lorazepam (Ativan) and oxazepam (Serax), may be used in the case of the elderly. Benzodiazepines achieve a rapid response and may be used with other anxiolytic agents. These are also often affordable to elders on low incomes. Unfortunately, these agents, which are classified as anxiolytics, are associated with side effects including drug dependence, memory loss, impaired movement that can increase the risk of falls, and incontinence. These agents, if used in high doses and for prolonged periods, have been shown to worsen depression and also cause addiction. There have also been reports of accelerated cognitive impairment in patients with associated dementias.

Buspirone (BuSpar) is another agent that may be used in the elderly. It has fewer side effects and less interaction with other medications. However, it is not as effective in treating GAD in the elderly as other medications are.

Cognitive behavioral therapy is a major treatment modality for anxiety in the elderly. Other therapy may include alternative or complementary treatments such as chiropractic treatment; holistic treatments to treat the mind, body, and spirit; homeopathy; and the use of food supplements, vitamins, and herbs. Patients need to check with their health care provider before adding any of these modalities to their lifestyle (Flint, 2005).

In 2013, Lundervold, Ament, Holt, and Hunt's research found that in the elderly population, behavioral and cognitive therapy can be used for the GAD client's recovery. This has been repeated, and offers a nonpharmacological approach. This therapy can be done individually, in dyads, or in other small groupings.

Treatment of generalized anxiety disorder in the elderly typically involves psychotherapy with psychopharmacology, or cognitive behavioral therapy followed by psychopharmacology if not successful.

Mood Disorders in the Elderly

Mood disorders in the elderly share the characteristics of those in a younger population. These disorders may have been present before the age of 65 years, or may develop after that age. These disorders often include manic episodes with sustained excitement, euphoria, and hyperactivity; alterations of elations and depressions reflected as bipolar disorders; and major depression that may increase and extend for long periods of time. (See Chapter 12 for an in-depth discussion of these disorders.)

Although the elderly have disproportionately increased incidences of depression and increased risk of paranoia, there are no reports of a higher incidence of mood disorders in this population as compared with the younger population. Treatments for these disorders in the elderly mirror those used with a younger population. However, there are added concerns related to psychopharmacological interactions and side effects.

Substance Use and Abuse and the Elderly

Estimates on the frequency of substance abuse among the elderly have been reported to be as low as 2% or as high as 38% for individuals older than the age of 65 years. Research found that prescription drug abuse among the elderly may be as high as 12% to 15% in those seeking health care (Meyer, 2005). It is projected that this number will grow as the aging population increases. The most commonly abused substances in the elderly include alcohol, anxiolytics, nicotine, opioids, sedatives, and polysubstances. As the individual ages, the illegal substance consumption tends to decrease, being replaced by alcohol and prescription medications, especially opioids. The highest rates of substance abuse involve alcohol and nicotine, both of which are related to increased morbidity and mortality including cancer, chronic lung disease, and renal and liver disease. Substance abuse can also be associated with an increased risk of suicide. Studies reveal that unless there are major factors of safety to self or community, substance abuse problems in the elderly are frequently ignored (Benshoff, Harrawood, & Koch, 2003).

One major area of substance use in the elderly is related to **POLYPHARMACY**, defined as the use of multiple medications beyond the clinically identified needs of the individual (University of Chicago, n.d.). This includes prescribed, over-the-counter medications and herbal and homeopathic products. Elderly individuals account for the use of 30% or more of prescribed medications without including other potential products. Often the prime candidate for polypharmacy is a patient who is taking more than one

medication from a physician and not getting the response expected. Typically, polypharmacy is related to unresolved pain and depression or anxiety. In response, the elder may go to more than one physician for more than one prescription and have the medication filled at different pharmacies. In addition, drug-seeking behaviors identified in younger individuals may also be seen in the older adult. The use of multiple drugs places the elder at increased risk of side effects and addiction.

Patient education using a motivational context has reinforced the proper usage of prescribed medication, and herbal supplements have shown progress in assisting the elderly in compliance with self-administration of medication. The barrier in using this intervention is the availability and participation in face-to-face educational opportunities (Moral et al., 2015).

Beyond monitoring the elderly patient for medication use, drug interaction, or signs and symptoms of alcohol or substance abuse, assessment tools are available that can assist in the diagnosis. **Table 23-3** highlights some of these tools.

Polypharmacy is a major problem with the elderly population with the use of multiple medications commonly used to treat unresolved pain, depression, or anxiety.

PALLIATIVE AND END-OF-LIFE ISSUES WITH MENTALLY IMPAIRED ELDERS

The majority of deaths in the United States occur in the population of those who are 65 years of age and older. Causes are numerous and can be related to chronic illness, falls or trauma, and dementias. The passage of the Patient Self-Determination Act of 1991 emphasized the right of patients to participate in treatment and health care decisions and the use of advance directives for end-of-life care decisions. An advance directive such as a living will or durable power of attorney is essential for an individual with dementia, cognitive impairment, or chronic diseases. It provides health care providers with guidance as to what level of care the patient is seeking. The directive also includes the provision for palliative or hospice care.

Especially with the early diagnosis of dementia and associated depression, the aging patient needs to be educated and encouraged to draw up advanced directives, including a living will and durable power of medical attorney. These decisions need to be made within the family unit with agreement of all participating members. Braun, Beyth, Ford, and McCullough (2008) reported that end-of-life decisions by a surrogate, especially without advance directives, increases the burdens and anxiety in the decision-making individual.

Another concern involved with end-of-life issues is hospice care. In 2004, it was estimated that more than

TABLE 23-3: ASSESSMENT TOOLS FOR SUBSTANCE ABUSE IN THE ELDERLY

ALCOHOL CONSUMPTION	
Alcohol Related Problems Survey (ARPS)	60 Self-administered questions including medical and psychiatric conditions
Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT)	Brief, structured interview of 10 questions from the World Health Organization that can be incorporated into an assessment/history
Cut-down, Annoyed, Guilty and Eye-opener (CAGE) Questionnaire	Four specific questions; can be modified for the assessment of chemical abuse
Michigan Alcohol Screening Test–Geriatric (MAST-G)	24 (Yes/no) questions to be completed by the patient; can be modified for the assessment of chemical abuse
CHEMICAL/DRUG ABUSE	
Drug Use Questionnaire	20 Questions relating to previous 12 month's experiences from the Lawyers Assistance Program; British Columbia
Beer's List	National guidelines of the criteria for prescribing and use of medication in the elderly
Medication Appropriateness Index	National guidelines of the criteria for prescribing and use of medication in the elderly (computerized)

one million individuals use hospice and supportive care (McCasland, 2007). Approximately 1 in 17 elders was diagnosed with a variety of mental health issues including dementias, mood disorders, and depression. As many as 54,000 individuals received hospice care with a primary or associated mental illness. Due to the decreased cognitive ability of many individuals older than 65 years, patients and families need to be educated about this treatment option.

At this time, Oregon, Washington, and Vermont have legalized physician-assisted suicide (PAS). Finlay and George (2011) researched the Oregon population, and found several issues that were involved with the request for PAS and approval included:

- *Increased age*
- *Terminal or advanced chronic illness*
- *Depression*
- *Vulnerability*
- *General mental status of the applicant*

As of July, three patients have used the PAS. Thirty-one patients who have received prescriptions for the medication for PAS have an unknown status. Several have indicated that they are preparing for increased dependency, increased vulnerability, or social/familial care and input. There is no indication that there has been any economic gain by the participants and their families (patientsrights council.org, 2015).

TRENDS IN MENTAL HEALTH CARE FOR THE ELDERLY

Symptoms of depression, anxiety disorders, and other mental health problems are often manifested when older adults are admitted to an acute care unit for medical or surgical interventions. Thus, all nurses need to be able to assess and intervene with these individuals through the development of therapeutic relationships. In addition, there is an increased need for advanced practice nurses with geropsychiatric preparation to assist with and provide appropriate care.

Acute Care

In 2011, an estimated 20% of individuals 65 to 74 years of age and 27% of individuals older than 75 years sought treatment in the emergency department (ED), resulting with admission to acute care 40% of the time and critical care 6%. In association with acute issues, mental health components include alcohol abuse, adverse drug effects, alcohol abuse, depression, and mood disorders (Merck Manual Professional Version, 2015).

Another study found that more than two thirds of hospital beds are occupied by those older than 65 years, and that 30% to 60% will have a mental health disorder while hospitalized. The most frequently observed conditions are depression, delirium, and dementia. Due to the dual needs of this population, specialized units, such as the Acute Care for Elders (ACE) units, have been developed. These units include patient-centered nursing, regular review of medical and psychiatric care, a multidisciplinary task force, and discharge planning on an individual level to provide the best QOL for the elderly patient. On evaluation, these units have discharged patients earlier, have maintained as much independence and activities of daily living as possible, and decreased admission to skilled nursing facilities. There has also been a decrease in impaired cognitive functions. These specialty units are not designed as a one-time admission, but are available for the elders as often as necessary (Hanna, Woolley, Brown, & Kesavan, 2008).

Additionally, there has been a demonstrated need for geropsychiatric practitioners in acute psychiatric facilities. This need was based on a comparison of the acute psychiatric admission of a patient older than 65 years with that of a younger patient. Areas reviewed were participation in activities, lengths of stay, and admission to an acute care facility requiring care for other physical conditions. The future of geriatric mental health can be guided by specialty acute care and psychiatric units, but all support the need for mental health care following discharge.

Outpatient Services

The access to outpatient-based mental health care has been historically limited. Several factors affect the elderly seeking or receiving mental health services in the community (Chowdhury & Rasani, 2008). Four significant factors that have impacted this issue are related to (a) personal belief in and desire for mental health care services; (b) the ability to meet the costs of services; (c) physical access to the services; and (d) patient care to meet the changing needs of the aging population.

Factors influencing the elderly individual's use of mental health services in the community include the person's belief in and desire for the services, the ability to pay for the services, the ability to physically access the services, and the availability of programs to meet the changing needs of the elderly.

Personal Belief and Desire for Mental Health Care Services

Mental health and the need for care have been stigmatized in the health care environment. This can create a lack in seeking out of services because of personal or family beliefs. Culture also is a major component in whether an individual seeks out mental health services. The primary focus in overcoming these obstacles is education to create an increased awareness in both the public and health care arenas, emphasizing that mental health issues are experienced by all individuals, all cultures, and that mental health is a major component for both health and QOL. Helping to fuel this educational process is the Internet, which offers explanations, signs and symptoms, and resources to all. Professional education addresses the frequency and morbidity of mental health issues, fostering provision of the appropriate health care institution at the primary level of health care.

Ability to Meet the Costs of Services

As discussed, Medicare provides minimal reimbursement coverage (approximately 50%) for mental health services. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS, 2013) indicates that covered mental health services include a variety of in- and outpatient procedures, psychiatric diagnostic interviews, individual and interactive psychotherapy, family psychotherapy, pharmacological management, and treatment modalities. These services can be provided by medical physicians, osteopaths, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, independent practicing psychologists, and other designated providers.

The DHHS (2013) identifies services not covered to be geriatric day care centers, marriage or pastoral counseling, biofeedback services, and transportation to centers or meals.

Another form of coverage has been developed and evaluated. Although primarily available to individuals not on Medicare, the *Carve-out Managed Behavioral Health Care Organizations* (MBHOs) are showing revenue savings that may be extended to individuals receiving Medicare supplements (American Association of Geriatric Psychiatry Online, 2011). Reflecting cost savings and diminished duplication of services, this program is currently under review. These services continue to be evaluated and improved to meet the needs of the elderly.

Physical Access to Mental Health Services

One of the main focuses for *Healthy People 2020* is to improve access to health care for all aspects of health care needs for the United States. This includes disparity of services by either location or income, removing barriers that cause unmet health care needs or delays in service, and educating the participants of the program on what is available and covered, specifically "decreasing disparities and measuring access to care for diverse populations, including racial and ethnic minorities and older adults" (Office of Health Promotion and Disease Prevention: *Healthy People 2020,* 2014, p. 4).

A new program in San Francisco, On Lok, has 10 centers in California and was the foundation of the *Program of All-Inclusive Care for the Elderly* (PACE). These centers offer health care services, social interaction, and activities for both the elder and the family based on the concept of maintaining the elder in the home to facilitate QOL and safety. The PACE program is offered in 29 states with 61 programs (National PACE Association, 2002; On Lok Lifestyles, 2015).

Another program, the *Psychogeriatric Assessment and Treatment in City Housing Program,* has been offered in Baltimore, Maryland, for the past 20 years. This project, based on the premise of community health care, provides mobile psychiatric treatment to elders unable to access other programs (Blass et al., 2006; Johns Hopkins Health System, 2015).

A third program was developed that uses the all-inclusive care unit as a model to diminish functional loss in the acute care setting. The Indiana University for Aging Research spearheaded the development of the *Geriatric Resources for the Assessment and Care of Elders* (GRACE) to slow the physical and cognitive functional status of low-income elders. This program has also decreased acute health care admissions by focusing on maintaining the elderly in their homes rather than using nursing home placement (Counsell, Callahan, Buttar, Clark, & Frank, 2006). Another program, *ElderLynk*, developed in 1999, provides mental health care to rural elders. This community-based program has demonstrated a significant improvement of reported mental health function, reported levels of depression, and reported life satisfaction despite declines of mental status, activities of daily living, and overall health issues (McGovern, Lee, Johnson, & Morton, 2008).

Finally, Veterans Affairs (VA) has designed and continues to research a *telepsychology* program (also referred to as telepsychiatry or telemental health; Egede et al., 2009). The concepts of this program are based on the ability to reach elderly patients in rural areas, decrease stigmatization associated with traditional mental health services, and decrease issues of mobilization and transportation of individuals with a variety of physical limitations.

Programs to Meet the Needs of the Elder Population

A variety of *elder day care centers* are available in many regions to provide for daily or respite care to the families of aging individuals. They provide care to the cognitively impaired, frail, or physically impaired elder so the family is able to function as needed. This may include the ability

to work away from home, maintain the elder in the home environment, or provide for personal needs. Residential services also have expanded from independent living through extended care for the elderly. Some community, religious-based, or privately owned facilities provide guaranteed care from independence through skilled nursing services in one setting. These arrangements are often chosen by the elders themselves. And geriatric case management services, which offer a variety of services and levels of care, have been developed to ensure elders and their families that the care and safety of the elder are maintained through observation and use of resources, often convenient for geographically separated families. The types and costs of these services are highly variable.

Sutter Health Mills-Peninsula Health Services (2015) have developed a variety of senior mental health services for specialized and intensive outpatient care of the elderly. One service is an intensive outpatient mental health care that targets the elderly for depression, anxiety, coping, addictions, and substance abuse issues. This is presented as individual psychotherapy sessions to transition into weekly support groups.

APPLYING THE NURSING PROCESS FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

The nursing process in mental health nursing, as stated throughout this text, is a dynamic, interactive, and problem-solving process that is both systematic and individualized for the patient. The patient is an active participant in his or her plan of care. However, this participation can be a difficult process for the aging individual, especially when the individual is experiencing cognitive changes, such as memory loss or dementia, or other problems that can impact his or her functional status or decision-making ability. When this occurs, the focus shifts to include the patient, the caregiver, and the family.

The elderly patient may be seen in a variety of settings, such as acute care, day care centers, community and outpatient centers, and long-term care facilities, including assisted living communities and skilled nursing facilities. Many of the patients will have comorbidities that may predispose the patient to mental health problems. Or the patient may have a mental health problem that increases the patient's risk for a medical condition or exacerbates a current medical condition or chronic illness. (See Chapter 8 for additional information about the interface of mental health problems and medical illnesses.) Therefore, nurses need a firm understanding of the nursing process that integrates the interpersonal process when caring for elderly patients. (Refer to the specific chapters on the disorders for related plans of care.)

Strategies for Optimal Assessment: The Therapeutic Use of Self

Assessment begins as soon as possible, often with the first meeting of the patient. The nurse collects subjective data directly from the patient if possible. In some cases, the individual may be unable to communicate his or her feelings or personal needs and will need to rely on a family member or other individuals to provide the necessary information. The nurse can also gain additional data from previous medical records and any diagnostic testing. This information is especially important if there is concern about any metabolic or physiological changes in the patient such as oxygenation, altered serum electrolytes, glucose levels, and metabolic acidosis/alkalosis that may be impacting his or her abilities.

Objective data are gathered as the nurse carefully observes the communication and behavior of the patient. When a specific behavior is the focus, the nurse must identify the triggering behaviors, situations, or thought processes experienced by the elder.

Often, a more global assessment of the elderly patient's mental status is completed by using a measurement instrument to assess the QOL. One of the most commonly used assessment tools is the *Medical Outcomes Study—Short Form 36* (SF-36v2). This reliable and valid tool is applicable to individuals older than the age of 12 years and is available in more than 40 languages. Eight domains are measured by this tool and include physical functioning, role functioning, bodily pain, general health, vitality, social functioning, emotional role, and mental health. This one-page, self-administered test can provide health care providers with information on actual or potential issues influencing the mental, emotional, and physical status of the elder. This tool can be used initially to establish a baseline and then repeated weekly to monitor the patient's progress (Rand, n.d.).

Another assessment tool specifically for individuals older than 65 years was developed by De Leo et al. (1998) in conjunction with the Eastern European Branch of WHO. This tool was specifically designed to provide a more comprehensive evaluation of the elder individual (McClane, 2005). It has been translated in more than a dozen languages and consists of 49 self-administered questions. The information obtained from this assessment includes physical functioning, self-care, depression and anxiety, cognitive and social functioning, sexual functioning, and life satisfaction. The tool allows evaluation of the elder's QOL, providing an accurate identification of actual or potential concerns. Ideally, it is suggested that this tool be used with each individual seeking health care when turning age 65, and then annually or when a problem is suspected to aid in providing insight into the care of the elderly.

Throughout the initial assessment and interaction with the patient during this orientation phase, the nurse–patient

relationship is beginning to form. Information needs to be collected during this time, but the nurse must not remain isolated in doing so. Although the nurse and patient are strangers at this time, it is necessary for the nurse to interact with the patient on a humanistic level to begin forming the basis of trust between these two individuals (Peplau, 1994). Denying the elder the opportunity to interact with the nurse as self at this early period can negatively affect the therapeutic relationship.

Providing a safe, comfortable environment with minimal external stimulation is necessary to establish an atmosphere of trust. Minimizing stimulation and external stressors are also key to preventing the patient from becoming overwhelmed. If the patient is being admitted to an inpatient facility or acute care facility, investigate with the family about any objects or clothing that can be brought into the therapeutic environment of the aging patient to promote a familiar environment and adaptation to the new surroundings.

The nurse also fosters an atmosphere whereby the patient feels that there is genuine interest, acceptance, and positive regard. This is accomplished primarily through therapeutic communication techniques including restating, reflecting, and clarifying. (See Chapter 3 for more information on therapeutic communication.) In addition, when communicating with the patient, speak clearly and distinctly, and allow ample time for the patient to answer. If necessary, break up the assessment into small chunks to avoid overwhelming the patient. With persistence and creativity, the nurse enhances the elder's ability to understand his or her needs for help and altered mental health status, thereby expanding the newly formed therapeutic relationship as they move forward. **Therapeutic Interaction 23-1** highlights an interaction between a nurse and an elderly patient who is depressed.

When assessing the elderly individual, the nurse interacts with the patient on a humanistic level to promote trust and foster an atmosphere of genuine interest, acceptance, and positive regard.

Diagnosing and Planning Appropriate Interventions: Meeting the Patient's Focused Needs

Once a full assessment is completed the nurse, patient, and family proceed to develop a plan of care with mutual goals and expectations for outcomes. The nurse collaborates with the patient and family to identify their needs and specific problems and then begin a plan for care (Peplau, 1991). Focusing on the patient's strengths that were identified in the assessment stage is key when planning interventions. Doing so will also allow for an increased sense of collaboration on the part of the patient and family. Patient care needs are addressed in order of priority and realistic, achievable, measurable, and individualized goals and outcomes are established. Both short- and long-term goals are important.

Due to the wide range of assessment findings noted and multiple problems faced by patients with cognitive disorders, numerous nursing diagnoses would apply. Examples of possible nursing diagnoses would include:

- *Acute confusion related to cognitive impairment*
- *Chronic confusion related to cognitive impairment*
- *Disturbed sleep pattern related to restlessness*
- *Risk of injury related to environmental changes, wandering behavior*
- *Impaired memory related to cognitive impairment*
- *Caregiver role strain related to lack of support systems*
- *Compromised family coping related to lack of available resources and support*
- *Ineffective role performance related to caregiver fatigue*
- *Self-care deficit (bathing, dressing, feeding, and toileting) related to cognitive impairment*

These nursing diagnoses will also vary based on the acuity of the patient's illness, comorbidities, current treatment regimen, and sources of support. Based on the identified nursing diagnoses, the nurse and the patient collaboratively would determine the outcomes to be achieved. For example, to address the self-care deficit related to performing activities of daily living, the outcome would be to gradually increase the patient's participation in activities through collaboration.

Implementing Effective Interventions: Timing and Pacing

During implementation, the nurse continues to monitor the patient and maintain an ongoing assessment of the patient's behavior as interventions designed to promote a specific behavior or response in the patient are carried out. Above all, patient safety is the priority in maintaining and promoting the patient's optimal mental and physical health.

Depending on the cognitive ability and overall health of the elderly patient, interventions are implemented in a manner that allows for maximum effectiveness. Through the therapeutic use of self and the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse determines the appropriate timing and pacing of the interventions, keeping the patient's safety in the forefront. For example, if a patient is experiencing periods of confusion, the nurse would implement teaching at a time

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 23-1: WORKING WITH AN ELDER ADULT WHO IS DEPRESSED

Mr. B. has been a patient in the geropsychiatric inpatient unit for 24 hours. He was admitted by his family members who indicated that he was wandering outdoors without a sweater or coat in very frigid weather. He had a history of wandering; the family reported cognitive decline over the past 2 months as well as a lack of verbal interaction—he would often sit for hours in front of the TV. He also refused meals and/or ate very little.

Nurse: "Mr. B., I am the nurse who will be with you today."	Introduces self and begins development of interpersonal relationship; clearly communicates role
Mr. B.: (no verbal or nonverbal response; staring into space; has not touched breakfast tray that was delivered to his room)	Not communicative
Nurse: "Mr. B., I am here to help you with your care. First, I would like to help you with your breakfast. I will stay with you and help you."	Building on the relationship, the nurse reinforces his or her role Prepares breakfast tray for the patient
Mr. B.: (silence continues; still no verbal communication; takes a bite of toast).	Begins to show responsiveness to nurse's contact
Nurse: "Mr. B. (continues to stay with patient), can I help you prepare your tea?"	The nurse continues to develop therapeutic relationship and focuses on helping the patient accomplish small tasks
Mr. B.: "I am tired now. I would like to sleep."	Expresses fatigue and desire to avoid interaction
Nurse: "I will let you rest now. I will come back in 30 minutes to take you to the activity room."	Respects the patient's expressed need, but indicates time frame when the nurse will return to continue relationship

when the patient is more alert. If the patient is experiencing significant anxiety, the nurse would institute measures to reduce the patient's anxiety, such as administering prescribed medications and reducing external stimulation before attempting to engage the patient in a conversation about what is triggering the anxiety. Through the therapeutic use of self, the nurse maintains his or her presence with the patient to demonstrate trust and support.

During this time, as interventions are effective, the patient's role changes to one of greater independence, seeking out the nurse as a teacher and a socializing agent. For this to be successful, the nurse must be a willing and active participant and resource for the patient.

Evaluating: Objective Critique of Interventions and Self-Reflection

Evaluation is a very important process in the care of elderly patients. It occurs as a continuous, cyclical, dynamic, and ongoing process involving changes in the patient's status over time. It occurs throughout the phases of the nursing process as the nurse gathers new data, reevaluates nursing interventions, and modifies the plan of care.

During this phase, the nurse reviews all activities of the previous phases and determines whether outcomes identified with and for the patient have been met. Self-reflection is an important tool at this point. Questions such as, "Have I provided the best nursing practice for my patient?" and

"Is my patient better after the planned care?" are helpful in determining the effectiveness of the care.

The outcome of evaluation is the resolution phase in which the nurse–patient relationship comes to an end (Peplau, 1994). Many times patients will have a setback due to their feeling of loss of this relationship. The nurse's role is to help them explore their feelings and ease this transition while maintaining boundaries (Peplau, 1994). Ultimately, the goal is for the nurse to provide closure to terminate the relationship.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

QSEN competencies have been developed since the early 21st century and to provide guidance to nurses regarding patient-centered care, safety, collaboration, teamwork, incorporation of evidence-based practice, quality improvement, and informatics. These criteria of patient-focused care continue to be refined and implemented. Particularly relevant content is the education competencies for prelicensure education, resources and tools, and client advocacy.

Dolansky and Moore (2015) identified that a change in nursing care is a shift in focus. Identified were best practices/evidence-based practice patient care, pursuit of higher educational preparations, and a shift from a bedside-based nursing care to incorporating the provider (system) that develops patient care criteria. Pursuing this trajectory will accelerate and implement improvements of patient care, quality, safety, and financial accountability.

Following on the educational component of QSEN, geriatric competencies are resources and tools to facilitate the incorporation of care changes. The QSEN Institute (2014) provides a wide variety of components that can affect an individual's or system's incorporation of criteria. These include nursing education sites such as The Hartford Institute for Geriatric Nursing. The needs of the geriatric population is varied, including specific health care providers as well as the level of care. This need may include skilled nursing care to critical care. The Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ, 2014) provides both written material and videos to enhance the process of geriatric care and tools.

Finally, the role of the nurse (student) in patient advocacy is very important for geriatric care. We all have been involved with elders in both the community and health care setting and have experienced the diversity of the patients' various physical/mental statuses. It is because of this that individuals older than 65 years are considered overall a vulnerable group, with special needs for independence and function. The American Geriatrics Society (2015) has developed several publications to support both the patient in need of advocacy and the nurse providing the care.

SUMMARY POINTS

- With the increasing population of elderly individuals, quality of life (QOL) and the provision of adequate funding sources are important issues impacting the mental health of this population.
- An elderly individual's mental health can be affected by numerous physical, environmental, emotional, and social issues that may occur independently of each other or in combination with each other, which increase the risk of mental health problems.
- Physical changes in the elderly individual are often viewed as normal changes related to aging. However, these changes—even if corrected—can influence the person's mental health.
- Increased stress in an aging individual can increase the physical and mental aging processes. Prolonged stress may also lead to decreased immune function and altered health status.
- The majority of elderly individuals with depression seek treatment from a primary health care provider, often with complaints related to a chronic illness rather than a mental health problem.
- A major area related to substance use and abuse in the elderly is polypharmacy in which the individual uses multiple medications beyond those that are clinically needed.
- Elderly individuals typically do not seek out or use mental health services for various reasons: personal and family beliefs related to the stigma associated with mental health, limited reimbursement for services by Medicare, inability to physically access services, and availability of programs to meet the changing needs.
- The nurse must demonstrate respect, honesty, genuineness, empathy, interest, and positive regard when developing the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship with an elderly patient to promote the patient's ability to understand his or her needs for help and to develop an individualized realistic plan of care.
- The nurse must understand his or her role in the patient care arena, and be an advocate for the client's care and safety.
- The nurse must identify the mental status of an elderly client in the emergency setting as the aging client may be presenting with a major health concern or disease that may not fit the profile of a younger client.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. An elderly patient comes to the clinic complaining of difficulty sleeping, stating, "It just started about a week or so ago." When obtaining the patient's history, which of the following would the nurse identify as potentially contributing to the patient's complaint?
   a. Hypertensive agent added to his medications
   b. History of arthritis
   c. Dinner usually consumed at 5:30 p.m.
   d. Routine bedtime at 11:00 p.m.

2. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a senior citizen group about stresses that may affect their physical and mental health. Which of the following would the nurse least likely include as an effect of stress?
   a. Increased physiological aging
   b. Enhanced immune function
   c. Slowing of normal mental changes
   d. Increased risk of depression

3. An elderly patient is experiencing social loneliness. Which of the following most likely would be involved?
   a. Loss of contact
   b. Loss of intimacy
   c. Loss of independence
   d. Loss of support

4. An older adult patient is admitted to the acute care facility for treatment of bacterial pneumonia for which the patient is receiving oxygen therapy and antibiotics. When assessing the patient, the nurse notes that the patient has suddenly become confused and agitated and is having increasing difficulty staying focused. The nurse suspects which of the following?
   a. Depression
   b. Dementia
   c. Delirium
   d. Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD)

5. A group of students are reviewing medications used to treat depression in the older adult. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which agent as approved for use in the elderly?
   a. Escitalopram
   b. Paroxetine
   c. Duloxetine
   d. Aripiprazole

6. A nurse is preparing a presentation about polypharmacy to a local church group of seniors. Which of the following would the nurse least likely include as a common unresolved issue contributing to this problem?
   a. Depression
   b. Fear
   c. Anxiety
   d. Pain

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Administration on Aging (AoAna). (2014). *Department of Health and Human Services*. Retrieved from www.aoa.acl.gov/aging_statistics/index.aspx

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ). (2014). Retrieved from http://qsen.org/faculty-resources/practice/geriatrics/resources-and-tools

American Association of Geriatric Psychiatry Online. (2011). *Demographics of the elderly population*. Retrieved from http://www.aagpgpa.org/

American Foundation for Suicide Prevention. (2011). *Figures and facts: National statistics.* Retrieved from www.afsp.org/understanding-suicide/facts-and-figures

American Geriatrics Society. (2015). Retrieved from http://www.americangeriatrics.org/advocacy_public_policy

American Nurses Association. (1991). *Position statement on Patient Self-Determination Act*. Retrieved from http://www.nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/EthicsStandards/Ethics-Position-Statements/etpain14426.pdf

American Psychological Association. (2015). *Elder abuse and neglect: In search for solutions.* Retrieved from http:// www.apa.org/pi/aging/resources/guides/elder-abuse.aspx

Ancoli-Israel, S., & Cooke, J. R. (2005). Prevalence and comorbidity of insomnia and effect on functioning in elderly populations. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 53*, S264–S271.

Benshoff, J. J., Harrawood, L. K., & Koch, D. S. (2003). Substance abuse and the elderly: Unique issues and concerns. *Journal of Rehabilitation, 69*(2), 43–48.

Blass, D. M., Rye, R. M., Robbins, B. M., Miner, M. M., Handel, S., Carroll, J. L., & Rabins, P. V. (2006). Ethical issues in the mobile psychiatric treatment with homebound elderly patients: The psychogeriatric assessment and treatment in city housing experience. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 34*, 843–848.

Blay, S. L., Andreoli, S. B., Dewey, M. E., & Gastal, F. L. (2007). Co-occurrence of chronic physical pain and psychiatric morbidity

in a community sample of older people. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 22*, 902–908.

Bohlmeijer, E., Smit, F., Onrust, S., & van Marwijk, H. (2009, September 24). The effects of integrative reminiscence therapy on depressive symptomology and mastery of older adults. *Community Mental Health Journal*. Retrieved from http://preview.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19777348?itool=EntrezSystem2.PEntrez.Pubmed.Pubmed_ResultsPanel.Pubmed_RVDocSum&ordinalpos=2

Braun, U., Beyth, R., Ford, M. E., & McCullough, L. B. (2008). Voices of African-American, Caucasian, and Hispanic surrogates on the burden of making end-of-life decisions. *Journal of Internal Medicine, 23*(3), 267–274.

California Department on Aging. *Programs and services*. Retrieved from https://www.aging.ca.gov/Programs

Chen, S., & Fu, Y. (2008). Leisure participation and enjoyment among the elderly: Individual characteristics and sociability. *Educational Gerontology, 34*(10), 871–889.

Chao S. Y., Liu, H. Y., Wu, C. Y., Jin, S. F., Chu, T. L., Huang, T. S., Clark, M. J. (2006). The effects of group reminiscence therapy on depression, self esteem, and life satisfaction of elderly nursing home residents. *The Journal of Nursing Research, 14*(1), 36–45. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16547904

Chowdhury, A., & Rasania, S. K. (2008). A community based study of psychiatric disorders among the elderly living in Delhi. *Internet Journal of Health, 7*(1). Retrieved from http://www.ispub.com/journal/the_internet_journal_of_health/volume_7_number_1_5/article/a_community_based_study_of_psychiatric_disorders_among_the_elderly_living_in_delhi.html

Colon-Emeric, C. S., Whitson, H. E., Pavon, J., & Hoenig, H. (2013). Functional decline in the older adults. *American Family Physician, 88*, 6. Retrieved from http://www.aafp.org/afp/2013/0915/p388.html

Cornell, E. Y., & Waite, L. T. (2009). Measuring social isolation among older adults using multiple indicators from the NSHAP study. *Journals of Gerontology, Series B: Psychological Sciences & Social Sciences, 64*(Suppl. 1), i38–i46.

Counsell, S. R., Callahan, C. M., Buttar, A. B., Clark, D. O., & Frank, K. I. (2006). Geriatric resources for assessment and care of elders (GRACE): A new model of primary care for low-income seniors. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 34*, 1136–1141.

De Leo, D., Diekstra, R., Lonnqvist, J., Trabucchi, M., Cleirin, M., Frisoni, G. B., & Sampaio-Faria, J. (1998). LEIPAD, an internationally applicable instrument to assess quality of life in the elderly. *Behavioral Medicine, 24*(1), 17–27.

Department of Health and Human Services: Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Mental Health Services. (2013). Retrieved from https://www.cms.gov/about-cms/agency-information/performancebudget/downloads/cmsfy13cj-.pdf

Dong, X., Simon, M., Mendes De Leon, C., Fulmer, T., Beck, T., Heibert, L., & Evans, D. (2009). Elder self-neglect and abuse and mortality risk in a community-dwelling population. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 302*(5), 517–526.

Dolansky, M. A., & Moore, S. M. (2015). Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN): The key is systems thinking. *The Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 19*(3). Retrieved from http://www.nursingworld.org/Quality-and-Safety-Education-for-Nurses.html

Drageset, J. (2002). Loneliness at nursing homes—Does a network have any importance for loneliness among nursing home occupants? *Journal of Nursing Research and Clinical Studies, 22*(2), 9–14.

Edwards, D. E. (2005). Thinking about the unthinkable: Staff sexual abuse of residents. *Nursing Homes Long-Term Care Management, 54*(6), 44–47.

Egede, L. E., Frueth, C. B., Richardson, L. K., Acierno, R., Maudlin, P. D., Knapp, R. G., & Lejuez, C. (2009). Rationale and design: Telepsychology service delivery for depressed elderly veterans. *Trails, 10*, 22.

Ejem, B., Drentea, C., & Olivio, J. (2015). The effects of caregiver emotional stress on the depressive symptomatology of the care recipient. *Aging & Mental Health, 19*(1), 55–62. Retrieved from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/262681485_The_effects_of_caregiver_emotional_stress_on_the_depressive_symptomatology_of_the_care_recipient

Federal Bureau of Investigation. (n.d.). *Author*. Retrieved from https://www.fbi.gov/scams-safety/fraud/seniors

Ferranti, L. E., Pasini, M. A., Murphy, T. E., Leo-Summers, L. S., & Gill, T. M. (2015). Functional trajectories among older persons before and after critical illness. *Journal of the American Medical Association—Internal Medicine, 175*(4), 523–529. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25665067

Fetveit, A. (2009). Late life insomnia: A review. *Geriatrics & Gerontology International, 99*(3), 220–234.

Finlay, I. G., & George, R. (2011). Legal physician-assisted suicide in Oregon and The Netherlands: Evidence concerning the impact on patients in vulnerable groups—Another perspective on Oregon's data. *Journal of Medical Ethics, 37*(3), 171–174. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21071568

Flint, A. J. (2005). Generalized anxiety disorder in elderly patients: Epidemiology, diagnosis and treatment options. *Drugs & Aging, 22*(2), 101–114.

Gagliardi, J. P. (2006). Differentiating among depression, delirium, and dementia in elderly patients. *American Medical Association Journal of Ethics*/personal mentor.org. Retrieved from http://journalofethics.ama-assn.org/2008/06/cprl1-0806.html

Gallo, J. J., & Bogner, H. R. (2006). The context of geriatric care. In J. J. Gallo, H. R. Bogner, T. Fulmer, & G. J. Paveza (Eds.), *Handbook of geriatric assessment* (4th ed., pp. 3–12). Boston, MA: Jones and Barlett.

Gallop, R., & O'Brien, L. (2003). Re-establishing psychodynamic theory as foundational knowledge for psychiatric/mental health nursing. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 24*, 213–227.

Gierveld, J. D. J., & Tilberg, T. V. (2006). A 6-item scale for overall, emotional, and social loneliness. *Research on Aging, 28*(5), 582–598.

Gobert, M., & D'hoore, W. (2005). Prevalence of psychotropic drug use in nursing homes for the aged in Quebec and in the French-speaking area of Switzerland. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 20*, 712–720.

Golde, J., Conroy, R. M., Denihan, A., Greene, E., Kirby, M., & Lawler, B. A. (2009). Loneliness, social support networks, mood and well-being in community-dwelling elders. *International Journal of Geriatrics, 24*(7), 694–700.

Hanna, S. J., Woolley, R., Brown, L., & Kesavan, S. (2008). The coming of age of a joint elderly medicine-psychiatric ward: 18 Years' experience. *Clinical Practice, 62*(1), 148–151.

Harris, T., Cook, D. G., Victor, C., Dewilde, W., & Beighton, C. (2006). Onset and persistence of depression in older people—Results from a 2-year community follow-up study. *Age & Aging, 35*(1), 25–32.

Hsu, Y. C., & Wang, J. J. (2009). Physical, effective, and behavioral effects of group reminiscence on depressed institutionalized elders in Taiwan. *Nursing Research, 58*(4), 294–299.

Huang, S. L., Li, C. M., Yang, C.Y., & Chen, J. J. (2009). Application of reminiscence treatment on older people with dementia: A case study in Pingtung, Taiwan. *Journal of Nursing Research, 17*(3), 112–118.

Johns Hopkins Health System. (2015). *Psychogeriatric Assessment and Treatment in City Housing (PATCH)*. Retrieved from http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/psychiatry/specialty_areas/community_psych/patch.html

Jones, R. B., Ashurst, E. J., Atkey, J., & Duffy, B. (2015). Older people going online: Its value and before-after evaluation of volunteer support. *Journal of Medical Internet Research, 17*(5), e122. Retrieved from http://www.jmir.org/2015/5/e122

Kaye, A., Baluch, A., & Scott, J. T. (2010). Pain management in the elderly population: A review. *The Ochsner Journal, Fall 10*(3), 179–187. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3096211

Kennedy, G. J. (2000). *Geriatric mental health*. New York, NY: The Guilford Press.

Kneisl, C. R., Wilson, H. S., & Trigoboff, E. (2004). Elders. In *Contemporary psychiatric-mental health nursing* (pp. 638–659). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson, Prentice-Hall.

Kramer, T., Beaudin, C. L., & Thrush, C. R. (2005). Evaluation and treatment of depression (part I): Benefits for patients, providers, and payers. *Disease Management & Health Outcomes, 13*(5), 295–306.

Lundervold, D. A., Ament, P. A., Holt, P. S., & Hunt, L. S. (2013). Comparison of younger and older adults' acceptability of treatment for generalized anxiety disorder co-occurring with Parkinson's disease. *International Journal of Behavioral Consultation & Therapy, 8*(2), 20–22.

Magai, C., Consedine, N. S., Fiori, K. L., & King, A. R. (2008). Sharing the good, sharing the bad: The benefits of emotional self-disclosure among middle-aged and older adults. *Journal of Aging Health, 21*(2), 286–313.

Maryland Coalition on Mental Health and Aging. (n.d.). *Physical changes.* Retrieved from http://www.mhamd.org/aging/aging-considerations/stresschange.htm

McCasland, L. A. (2007). Providing hospice and palliative care to the seriously and persistently mentally ill. *Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing, 9*(6), 305–313.

McClane, K. S. (2005). A screening instrument for use in a complete geriatric assessment. *Clinical Nurse Specialist, 20*(4), 201–207.

McGovern, R. J., Lee, M. M., Johnson, J. C., & Morton, B. (2008). Elderlynk: A community outreach model for the integrated treatment of mental health problems in the rural elderly. *Aging International, 32*, 43–53.

Medical News Today. (2005). *Medicalnewstoday.com*. Can sunlight help elderly nursing home residents sleep better? Retrieved from http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/22592.php

Medicare & You. (2015). *Medicare*. Retrieved from http://www.medicare.gov/Pubs/pdf/10050.pdf

Merck & Co. (2006a). Chapter 15: Social issues. In M. H. Beers (Ed.), *Merck manual of geriatrics* (3rd ed., pp. 149–155). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2006b). Chapter 33: Depression. In M. H. Beers (Ed.), *Merck manual of geriatrics* (3rd ed., pp. 310–322). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2006c). Chapter 34: Anxiety and anxiety disorders. In M. H. Beers (Ed.), *Merck manual of geriatrics* (3rd ed., pp. 322–327). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2006d). Chapter 43: Pain. In M. H. Beers (Ed.), *Merck manual of geriatrics* (3rd ed., pp. 383–396). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2006e). Chapter 47: Sleep disorders. In M. H. Beers (Ed.), *Merck manual of geriatrics* (3rd ed., pp. 452–457). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2008). Insomnia and excessive daytime sleepiness. In K. Doghramji (Ed.), *Merck manual of patient symptoms* (18th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck & Co. (2015). *Evaluation of an elderly patient. Merck manual professional version.* Philadelphia, PA: Author.

Merck Manual Professional Version. (2015). *Hospital acute care of the elderly*. Retrieved from http://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/geriatrics/provision-of-care-to-the-elderly/hospital-care-and-the-elderly

Meyer, C. (2005). *Prescription drug abuse in the elderly*. Retrieved from http://www.associatedcontent.com/article/5731/prescription_drug_abuse_in_the_elderly.html?cat=5

Moral, F. B., Sales, G. A., & Rodríguez, T. (2015). Effect of integrative reminiscence therapy on depression, well-being, integrity, self-esteem, and life satisfaction in older adults. *Journal of Positive Psychology, 10*(3), 240–247.

Moral, R. R., Torres, L. A., Ortega, L. P., Larumbe, M. C., Villalobos, A. R., Roldán, J. A.,…Parras, P. (2015). Effectiveness of motivational interviewing to improve therapeutic adherence in patients over 65 years old with chronic diseases: A cluster randomized clinical trial in primary care. *Patient Education & Counseling, 98*(8), 977–983. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25858633

National Committee for the Prevention of Elder Abuse. (2008). *Elder abuse: What are the indicators?* Retrieved from http://www.preventelderabuse.org

National Institute of Mental Health. (2009). *Suicide in the United States: Statistics and prevention*. Retrieved from http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/suicide-a-major-preventable-mental-health-problem-fact-sheet/index.shtml

National PACE Association. (2002). *NPA shared services programs*. Retrieved from http://www.npaonline.org/website/article.asp?id=4

Office of Health Promotion and Disease Prevention: *Healthy People 2020*. (2014). *Author*. Retrieved from http://www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topics-objectives/topic/Access-to-Health-Services

O'Luanaigh, C., & Lawlor, B. A. (2008). Loneliness and the health of older people. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 23*, 1213–1221.

On Lok Lifestyles. (2015). Retrieved from http://www.onlok.org/Home

Patel, J. M. (2007). Loneliness and life—Satisfaction among the elderly. *Indian Journal of Gerontology, 20*(4), 405–416.

Patients Rights Council. (2015). Retrieved from patientsrightscouncil.org

Peplau, H. (1994). Psychiatric mental health nursing: Challenge and change. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 1*, 3–7.

Peplau, H. E. (1988). *Interpersonal relationships in nursing*. London, England: Palgrave Macmillan.

Peplau, H. E. (1991). *Interpersonal relationships in nursing: A conceptual framework of references for psychodynamic nursing*. New York, NY: Springer.

Petigrew, S., & Roberts, M. (2008). Addressing loneliness in later life. *Aging and Mental Health, 13*(3), 302–309.

Pratt, S. I., Kelly, S. M., Mueser, K. T., Patterson, T. L., Goldman, S., & Bishop-Horton, S. (2007). Reliability and validity of a performance-based measure of skills for communicating with doctors for older people with serious mental illness. *Journal of Mental Health, 16*(5), 569–579.

QSEN Institute. (2014). Geriatrics. Retrieved from http://qsen.org/faculty-resources/practice/geriatrics

Rand, J. E. (n.d.). *SF-36 health survey update*. Retrieved from http://www.sf-36.org/tools/sf36.shtml

Rangari, J., & Pelissolo, A. (2006). Anxiety disorders in the elderly: Clinical and therapeutic aspects. *Psychological Neuropsychiatry Veill, 4*(3), 179–187.

Rhebergen, D., Huisman, A., Bouckaert, F., Kho, K., Sienaert, P., Spaans, H. P., & Stek, M. (2015). Older age is associated with rapid remission of depression after electroconvulsive therapy: A latent class growth analysis. *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 23*(3), 274–282. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24951182

Ron, P. (2008). Offspring caring for their elderly parents: The effect of social support and gender-role orientation on these caregivers' well-being. *Illness, Crisis & Loss, 16*(3), 183–201.

Rozzini, L., Chilovi, B.V., Peli, M., Conti, M., Rozzini, R., Trabucchi, M., & Padovovani, A. (2009). Anxiety symptoms in mild cognitive impairment. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 24*, 300–305.

Senior Living.Org. (2011). Retrieved from www.seniorliving.org

Ski, C., & O'Connell, B. (2005). Mismanagement of delirium places patients at risk. *Australian Journal of Advanced Nursing, 23*(3), 42–46.

Son, J., Erno, A., Feemia, E. E., Zarit, S. H., & Stephens, M. A. (2007). The caregiver stress process and health outcomes. *Journal of Aging and Health, 19*(6), 871–887.

Stek, M. L.,Vinkers, D. J., Gussekaloo, J., Beekman, A. T., van der Mast, R. C., & Westendorp, R. G. (2005). Brief report: Is depression in old age fatal only when people feel lonely. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 162*, 178–180.

Sutter Health Mills-Peninsula Health Services. (2015). Personalized mental health services for seniors. Author. Retrieved from http://www.mills-peninsula.org

Toronto Best Practice in LTC Initiative. (2007). *3Ds: Assessment tools at your fingertips*. Retrieved from http://www.opadd.on.ca/Local%20Projects/documents/LocalProject-Educ.Training-3Dsassessmentguide.pdf

Trask, B. S., Hepp, B. W., Settles, B., & Shabo, L. (2009). Culturally diverse elders and their families: Examining the need for culturally competent services. *Journal of Comparative Family Studies, 40*(2), 293–303.

University of Chicago. (n.d.). *Polypharmacy in older patient*s. Retrieved from http://.bsd.uchicago.edu/Polypharmacy/index.html

U.S. Census Bureau. (2015). *Population profile of the United States: The elderly profile*. Retrieved from http://www.census.gov/population/www/pop-profile/elderpop.html

van Zyl, L. T., & Seitz, D. P. (2006). Delirium concisely: Condition is associated with increased morbidity, mortality, and length of hospitalization. *Geriatrics, 61*(3), 18–21.

Weeks, D. G., Michela, J. L., Peplau, L. A., & Bragg, M. E. (1990). Relation between loneliness and depression: A structural equation. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 39*(6), 1238–1244.

Weiss, B. J., Calleo, J., Rhoades, H. M., Novy, D. M., Kunik, M. E., Lenze, E. J., & Stanley, M. A. (2009). The utility of the generalized anxiety disorder severity scale (GADSS) with older adults in primary care. *Depression and Anxiety, 26*, E10–E15.

World Health Organization (WHO). (2014). *WHO definition of health*. Retrieved from http://www.who.int/about/definition/en/print.html

World Health Organization. (n.d.). *Wisdom years: Active aging.* Retrieved from http://wisdom.unu.edu/en/active-aging

Wu, Z., & Penning, M. (2015). Immigration and loneliness in later life. *Aging & Mental Health,* (4), 306–314. Retrieved from http://journals.cambridge.org/action/displayAbstract?fromPage=online&aid=9450459&fileId=S0144686X13000470

Yuen, G. S., Bhutani, S., Lucas, B. J., Gunning, M., Abdel, M., Seirup, J.,… Alexopoulos, G. S. (2015). Apathy in late-life depression: Common, persistent, and disabling. *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry, 23*(5), 488–494. Retrieved from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/263427901_Apathy_in_Late-Life_Depression_Common_Persistent_and_Disabling

Zebhauser, A., Baumert, J., Emeny, R. T., Ronel, J., Peters, A., & Ladwig, K. H. (2015). What prevents old people living alone from feeling lonely? Findings from the KORA-Age-study. *Aging & Mental Health*, (9), 773–780. Retrieved from https://jobs.liberty.edu/applicants/jsp/shared/position/JobDetails_css.jsp?postingId=176238

CHAPTER CONTENTS

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the various types of abuse
2. Discuss the historical perspectives and epidemiology related to abuse
3. Explain the psychodynamics influencing the victims, as well as the abusers, across the life span
4. Describe the signs and symptoms indicative of abuse and neglect, including the long-term impact of abuse and neglect
5. Describe the models used to explain abuse, including the cycle of violence wheel and the power and control wheel

CHAPTER 24

VICTIMS AND VICTIMIZERS

Loraine Fleming
Betty Jane Kohal

6. Identify possible barriers faced by the nurse during the assessment process, especially those related to emotional responses that may be experienced when working with victims of abuse as well as with the abusers
7. Describe the legal and ethical responsibilities of the nurse in reporting suspected abuse or neglect

KEY TERMS

Abuse
Abusive head trauma
Battering
Domestic violence
Elder abuse
Honor killings
Intimate partner violence
Neglect
Shaken baby syndrome
Stalking
Statutory rape

Although definitions may vary, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has made efforts to standardize definitions and currently refers to **ABUSE** as acts of commission or omission that result in harm, potential for harm, or threat of harm (Saul et al., 2014). Abusive behavior is used to gain or maintain power and control over another person and is the hallmark of **DOMESTIC VIOLENCE**. Domestic violence can be defined as:

- *Causing or attempting to cause physical or mental harm to a family or household member*
- *Placing a family or household member in fear of physical or mental harm*
- *Causing or attempting to cause a family or household member to engage in involuntary sexual activity by force, threat of force, or duress*
- *Engaging in activity toward a family or household member that would cause a reasonable person to feel terrorized, frightened, intimidated, threatened, harassed, or molested (Child Welfare Information Gateway, 2013, p. 1).*

Violence among spouses or domestic partners is referred to as **INTIMATE PARTNER VIOLENCE** and is included under the umbrella term of domestic violence. Violence is demonstrated through physical, sexual, economic, or psychological abuse, or a combination of methods. The abuse is used to dominate the person. The control can be manifested directly through use of force, or less directly through manipulation, humiliation, or guilt. Even threats can be used as a way to control others and are considered part of the pattern of abuse.

This chapter focuses on abuse and violence across the life span. It describes the types of abuse and provides an overview of the historical aspects and epidemiology related to abuse and violence. The chapter discusses the etiology related to abuse across the life span and describes the major models used to explain this behavior. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the nursing responsibilities from an interpersonal perspective when caring for victims of abuse and their victimizers.

Abuse reflects a means for exerting power and control over another person.

TYPES OF ABUSE

Abuse can come in many forms. It can be physical, emotional, sexual, or economic. Frequently, the abuser will use more than one method to achieve his or her goal of power and domination. The abuser may begin by using verbal criticism or emotional abuse and gradually move to physical abuse. The physical abuse may also begin with less injurious acts, such as slapping or pushing, and move on to more serious injuries, including infliction of fatal injuries.

Physical Abuse

Physical abuse involves an act of aggressive behavior that results in bodily injury, pain, or impairment to another. These actions or behaviors include hitting, **BATTERING** (striking someone repeatedly with violent blows), slapping, kicking, pushing, choking, pinching, hair pulling, or any other action that can cause bodily harm. Although it may involve use of an object or weapon, this is not required for physical abuse. It can also entail inflicting burn injuries such as using cigarettes or caustic chemicals. Typically, the physical abuse will become a pattern of interactions between the abuser and the victim, and the severity will increase over time.

Physical **NEGLECT** is another type of physical abuse. However, it is considered a nonviolent form of physical abuse. It involves withholding necessities from the victim, such as denying adequate food, clothing, or medical care and attention.

Sexual Abuse

Sexual abuse is also used as a way of gaining control over the victim. It can include any type of sexual activity inflicted on a person without his or her consent. Sexual abuse encompasses forcible intercourse, sadistic sexual acts against the victim aimed at causing humiliation, or other forms of sexual assault or molestation including inappropriate touching.

Emotional or Psychological Abuse

Emotional or psychological abuse involves verbal or nonverbal behaviors that are intended to demean or belittle a person, or cause anguish or distress. Examples of emotional or psychological abuse include insults or constant criticism directed at the person as a way of diminishing his or her self-esteem and self-worth. It can also include threats, intimidation, or harassment that the abuser uses to control the victim. For example, in a same-sex relationship, emotional abuse would be threatening to expose the other's sexual orientation if that fact is hidden. Isolating a victim from his or her family or friends is another way an abuse can inflict emotional distress. Although emotional or psychological abuse does not usually involve physical violence on the part of the abuser, it may involve violence directed at inanimate objects or pets as a way of demonstrating power or dominance and invoking fear. The abuser may also threaten to harm the victim or someone the victim

cares for as a way of exerting power without ever actually committing a violent act. Finally, the abuser may blame the victim for the consequences of the abuse, thereby causing guilt or shame and leaving the victim feeling responsible for the situation. Emotional and psychological abuse are extremely effective in reducing the victim's confidence and sense of autonomy, as well as enhancing the power and control of the abuser.

Economic Abuse

Economic abuse is another method of gaining authority or dominance over someone. Economic abuse is a tactic used to control a victim's finances, thereby preventing the victim from leaving the relationship. Sometimes, the abuser will not permit the victim to work or to maintain control of his or her earnings, thus ensuring dependency on the abuser. The abuser may also interfere with, or prevent, the victim from pursing an education, getting job training, or establishing his or her own credit. Sometimes, the abuser will take actions that jeopardize the victim's employment or credit status, causing him or her to lose a job or suffer financial losses. Lack of income is a common reason victims cite for staying in abusive relationships (Stylianou, Postmus, & McMahon, 2013). Confidence crimes, fraud, and scams, such as telemarketing scams for financial gain, are examples of economic or financial abuse found in the elderly population (James, Boyle, & Bennett, 2014). Elderly with limited financial and health literacy are at particular risk for falling prey to con artists (James et al., 2014). Financial exploitation is now considered the most common, yet least detected or reported form of elder abuse (Sullivan-Wilson & Jackson, 2014).

The four types of abuse are physical, emotional or psychological, sexual, and economic (or financial) abuse.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES

In many cultures throughout history, the value and rights of women and children were limited or nonexistent. During Roman times, the "paterfamilias," or male head of the household, had absolute power over his household and children. If his children angered him, he had the legal right to disown them, sell them into slavery, or even kill them. The head of the household also had power over his wife and her property and possessions (Fustel des Coulanges & Numa Denis, 1980). This was also true in many Asian cultures, where women were dominated by the male head of the family and had limited legal rights (Jejeebhoy, Santhya, & Acharya, 2014). In North America during Colonial times, the courts typically followed English common law. These laws stipulated that a married woman's property and possessions became her husband's after her marriage (Kerber & De Hart, 1995). Children were often viewed as part of this property and parents could do whatever they wished to their children.

The use of corporal punishment against children can be traced back to biblical times. The St. James version of the Bible states, "Spare the rod, spoil the child." This particular biblical passage has given many persons the "right" to physically hit the child.

American women in the 21st century are no longer legally limited by patriarchal views. However, many personal, religious, and cultural beliefs still influence the role of women and children and how they are treated in the home. Frequently, they are relegated to subservient or submissive positions. Over the years, women have frequently been referred to as the "weaker" sex, being considered physically and intellectually inferior to men.

These continuing attitudes have had an impact on the behaviors of some men, leading them to believe that they have the right to control their spouse or partner as well as to use corporal punishment with their children. In addition, historically, domestic violence has not been treated the same way other violent crimes were treated by law enforcement. Many people, including law enforcement personnel, viewed spousal abuse as a private matter. Until the 1950s, written police policies in many jurisdictions actually directed officers to "recognize the sanctity of the home" and to end the disturbance "without making an arrest" (Finesmith, 1983). A husband could even have sex with his wife against her will without being charged with rape.

Over the years, greater understanding of domestic violence created more pressure on law enforcement to change. Yet, the violence was still not considered criminal behavior. The abusers were seldom arrested and were rarely tried in court (Finesmith, 1983). It was not until 1994 that increasing public pressure to recognize domestic violence as a crime rather than a family problem resulted in the passage of the federal Violence Against Women Act (VAWA, 2013). This Act, and the 1996 additions to the Act, recognizes that domestic violence is a national crime. In 1994 and 1996, Congress also passed changes to the Gun Control Act making it a federal crime in certain situations for domestic abusers to possess guns.

Domestic violence is not just a female issue. Men can also be the victims of domestic violence. Estimating prevalence is difficult, however, because the literature presents conflicting information related to the numbers of events reported (Nowinski & Bowen, 2012). The conflicting information reported may be due in part to gender stereotypes that lead males to feel ashamed of being

subjected to abuse or to fear that no one will believe them because of society's view of men as more powerful (Domesticviolence.org.handbook). It is clear that violence against men is a problem that needs to be addressed. Intimate partner violence (IPV) also impacts nonheterosexual couples. Reported rates of abuse are comparable to those of heterosexual couples (Hellemans, Loeys, Buysse, Dewaele, & Smet, 2015).

Domestic abuse historically was viewed as a family problem. However, increasing public pressure has led to legislation recognizing domestic violence as a crime.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Abuse crosses all races, genders, socioeconomic status, religions, marital status, ages, and cultures. Anyone can be a victim of abuse or a victimizer. Abuse is a pervasive problem in society (Black et al., 2011). Interventions are required at primary as well as secondary and tertiary levels:

- *Primary interventions focus on efforts to prevent abuse from ever occurring*
- *Secondary interventions focus on identifying risk factors and providing early involvement to reduce negative consequences*
- *Tertiary interventions focus on repairing the consequences of abuse*

Determining the best approaches to identification and treatment of victims of abuse has been challenging. A recent Cochrane Review of screening programs to identify victims of violence has determined that screening activities do work in increasing recognition of victims; however, there is no indication that it has led to an increase in referrals to treatment (Taft et al., 2013). There is certainly a need for further evaluation and review to assist in determining the best course of action when working with victims of domestic violence.

Anyone can be the victim of domestic violence. Many victims suffer physical injuries ranging from cuts and bruises to death. However, not all abuse cases involve physical abuse. Domestic abuse can cause serious emotional and psychological harm. The stress that victims feel may also lead to depression and other psychiatric disorders. Some victims even consider and/or commit suicide.

The effects of abuse are far reaching and impact the entire family, not just the designated victim. Abuse leads to increased incidence of health problems, substance abuse, school truancy, and more violence (U.S. CDC, 2014). The Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACE) study conducted in 1998 (Fellitti et al.,1998) is one of the largest investigations ever conducted on the links between childhood maltreatment and later-life health and well-being. The findings suggest that ACEs are major risk factors for the leading causes of illness and death (Larkin, Shields, & Anda, 2012).

Child Abuse

Child abuse refers to the physical, emotional, and/or sexual abuse of persons younger than 18 years. Abuse against children occurs most frequently between the ages of 3 and 5 years, a time when a child is most vulnerable and expects to be protected by the parent and/or caregiver. Most children perceive the victimization as their fault and are often told that by the perpetrator.

The most frequently identified abuser of children between the ages of 3 and 5 years is someone the child knows, often the stepfather of the child. Victimized children are told "not to tell" or bad things will happen if they disclose their "secret." Numerous studies of adults who are survivors of child abuse reveal that they never disclosed their childhood trauma for fear that no one would believe them, or if they did disclose it, their mothers did not believe them. The result of the child not being trusted to have disclosed the truth is a revictimization of the child.

Physical neglect of children is defined as not providing those things children need to survive the elements, nourish their bodies, prevent disease, and treat illness when it occurs, and to educate them so they will be able to perform self-care. Parents neglect their children either as a mechanism to punish them or due to lack of resources or lack of knowledge.

Although reports indicate that more than 1,000 children younger than 15 years die from maltreatment (physical abuse and neglect) every year, this is considered an underestimation of the true number of victims due to the difficulty of case finding and accurate identification of maltreatment (Whitt-Woosley, Sprang, & Gustman, 2014). The risk of death by maltreatment is greatest for infants and very young children (Saul et al., 2014) and frequently involves head trauma or blunt force injury. The most common form of **ABUSIVE HEAD TRAUMA** is the result of shaking and is often referred to as **SHAKEN BABY SYNDROME** (March & Cabrera, 2015). For those who sustain nonlethal injuries due to abuse or neglect, the long-term impact of those injuries include an increased likelihood of chronic medical and psychiatric illness, such as cardiac disease, anxiety disorders, and depression (Loc, 2014). Finally, limited focus is placed on the occurrence of emotional abuse without co-occurring physical or sexual abuse or neglect; yet, this form of abuse can also have significant long-term effects including the development of behavioral problems, psychiatric

issues, substance use disorders, and future violence (Barlow, MacMillan, Macdonald, Bennett, & Larkin, 2013).

Intimate Partner Violence

Domestic violence remains a leading cause of injury to women between the ages of 15 and 44 years.

Domestic violence involving abuse (i.e., rape, sexual assault, robbery, and aggravated and simple assault) perpetrated by an intimate partner, immediate family member, or other relative accounted for more than one fifth of all nonfatal violent crime against victims during the aggregate period of 2003 to 2012. Violence perpetrated by the intimate partner accounted for the greatest percentage (15%), far in excess of that perpetrated by either immediate family members or other relatives. The majority of violence was committed against females (76%) compared with males (24%), and most acts (77%) occurred at or near the victim's home. Rates of IPV were greater for those persons who were separated (44.7 per 1,000) or divorced (11.4 per 1,000), compared with those who were never married (4.4 per 1,000), married (1.0 per 1,000), or widowed (0.6 per 1,000; Truman & Morgan, 2014).

Over a lifetime, almost one in four women has been subjected to severe physical violence by an intimate partner, whereas one in seven men has experienced the same. Women have also been the victims of stalking, with one in six experiencing this in their lifetime, compared with 1 in 19 men (Breiding et al., 2011).

Women who have experienced physical or sexual assault by an intimate partner or who have been stalked by any perpetrator in their lifetime were far more likely to experience medical issues such as asthma, diabetes and irritable bowel syndrome, frequent headaches, chronic pain, and sleep difficulties than women who had not experienced these forms of abuse (Black et al., 2011).

In 2011, the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) reported that males in incidents involving a single victim/single offender murdered almost 2,000 females. Of these homicides, where victim-to-offender relationship was ascertained, a male they knew murdered 94% of the victims. In 61% of the cases where the homicide victims knew their offenders, they were the wives or intimate acquaintances of their killers (Bureau of Justice Statistics, 2013). Most often, the victim was killed with a hand gun during the course of an argument (Violence Policy Center, 2013).

It is important to realize that victims of IPV are often subjected to more than one form of abuse, that is, a physically abused victim may also be sexually abused. The victim may also be subjected to abuse after leaving the relationship, through the experience of being stalked. **STALKING** involves the ongoing pursuit of the victim by the perpetrator, presumably to rekindle the relationship. The pursuit is considered to be stalking if it generates fear in the victim. There is evidence indicating that stalking is more likely to occur if a victim has experienced multiple forms of abuse, even if a restraining order against contact has been enacted (Katz & Rich, 2015).

Elder Abuse

For the elderly, abuse is often manifested through neglect, which involves failure to provide for the needs of the person, including basic needs of food and shelter as well as medical needs. It also includes physical, emotional, sexual, and financial abuse. Elderly patients with significant physical or cognitive impairment are at greater risk for experiencing abuse (Dong & Simon, 2014). A complicating factor encountered when caring for the elderly patient is self-neglect. Cognitive impairment, psychiatric disorders, and alcohol abuse are predisposing factors for self-neglect. Self-neglect can have a significant impact on a patient's health and well-being, leading to serious malnutrition and early mortality (Papaioannou, Räihä, & Kivelä, 2012). It is estimated that up to 5 million Americans are affected by **ELDER ABUSE** each year (Connolly, Brandl, & Breckman, 2014). However, it is felt that for every case of elder abuse, neglect, exploitation, or self-neglect that is reported, five more go unreported (Watson, 2013). (See Chapter 23 for additional information on elder abuse as a factor for mental health problems.)

Anyone can be a victim or perpetrator of abuse. However, reported victims are most often females and reported victimizers are most often males.

ETIOLOGY

Most experts believe that domestic violence is a learned behavior that is more common for individuals who have grown up in violent homes. It can also be reinforced by cultural beliefs that sanction the use of violence such as those that permit the so-called **HONOR KILLINGS**. Honor killings are based on the belief that women are the property of male relatives and embody the honor of the men to whom they "belong." The concepts of male status and family status are of particular importance in cultures where "honor killings" occur. If a woman or girl is accused or suspected of engaging in behaviors that could taint male and/or family status, it is the male's duty to maintain the family honor. The male will kill the alleged offender to maintain the family honor (Kulczycki & Windle, 2011). Honor killings,

although generally not officially sanctioned, continue to occur in many countries (Kiener, 2011). One recent study of adolescents in Jordan indicated that a significant number of both male and female adolescents consider that killing a woman who was considered to have dishonored her family was moral and justified (Eisner & Ghuneim, 2013).

The common belief surrounding abuse is that it is a learned behavior, occurring most commonly in households where individuals have grown up being exposed to violence.

Child Abuse

Adults who abuse children are often adult survivors of child abuse themselves. Commonly, adult survivors of abuse report never having dealt with the emotions surrounding their trauma. In many instances, the trauma has been repressed so they have no conscious awareness of the experience. Behavioral indicators of unresolved childhood trauma include self-destructive behavior, failure to complete tasks, unsatisfying intimate relationships, as well as being abusive to their own children. **Box 24-1** summarizes the types of abuse seen in children.

Intimate Partner Violence

IPV involves abuse by a current or former intimate partner or spouse. This type of violence can occur among heterosexual or same-sex couples. Current theories regarding domestic violence and IPV agree that it is not specifically caused by illness, genetics, substance abuse, anger, stress, or the history or behavior of the victim, although these factors may increase the risk of domestic violence (Breiding et al., 2011).

BOX 24-1: ABUSE IN CHILDREN

CHILD PHYSICAL ABUSE

- Bringing physical harm to a child with the intent of having power and control over the child
- *Examples*: Fractures, contusions, lacerations, concussions, burn marks from ropes and straps, and bite marks.

CHILD NEGLECT

- Both physical and emotional
- *Examples*: Not providing appropriate nourishment; not taking the child to a health care provider when ill; not ensuring the child attends school or, if truant, doing nothing to facilitate the child's attendance; not providing weather-appropriate clothing; leaving the child alone without a caregiver when the child is less than the age of 12 years.

EMOTIONAL ABUSE

- Occurs every time physical abuse is experienced
- *Examples*: Failing to provide the child with love and affection; not telling the child he or she is loved or cared for; and not providing appropriate touch
- *Other examples*: Talking to the child in a threatening manner; calling the child demeaning names; exposing the child to profanity.

CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

- Inappropriate touching of the genitals/breasts of a person less than the age of 12 years
- **STATUTORY RAPE**, that is, sexual intercourse with an adolescent between the ages of 13 and 18 years
- *Examples*: Inserting things into the vagina or penile penetration of the vagina; having oral or anal sex; having a child perform masturbation either on himself or herself or the perpetrator; exposing children to sexually explicit pictures or sexual acts.

Additional risk factors include:

- *Seeing or being a victim of violence as a child*
- *Unemployment or work-related stressors*
- *Poverty*
- *Personality disorders*
- *Stress disorders*

Elder Abuse

Some cases of elder abuse involve IPV, but many cases also involve abuse by an adult child of the victim. Abusers may be dependent on their victims for financial assistance due to personal issues, substance abuse issues, or psychiatric problems. The risk for the victim is higher when the abuser lives with the victim. Other factors that have been postulated to contribute to elder abuse include caregiver strain, the relationship between the caregiver and the patient, and the type of dependency experienced (the more difficult it is to provide care for the patients due to their disturbed behavior, dementia, character disorder, or the extensive nature of their care needs, the higher the risk of abuse). Determining risk factors for abuse, for example, cognitive impairment, physical impairment, social isolation, and depressive symptoms, may allow for early identification of elderly patients at risk (Dong & Simon, 2014).

PATTERNS OF VIOLENCE

A number of paradigms have been constructed to help describe the phenomenon of domestic violence. Three of these models are described here.

The Cycle of Violence

The cycle of violence was introduced in 1979 by L. Walker based on research she conducted with battered women. Walker concluded that there were three distinct phases involved in the pattern of domestic abuse. **Figure 24-1** illustrates this cycle.

The first phase is referred to as the tension-building phase. During this period, the abuser becomes increasingly hostile and agitated and more and more critical toward the victim. Victims frequently describe feeling as if they are "walking on eggshells" during the period. No matter what they try, they are unable to reduce the tension and appease the abuser. This phase is followed by the acute-battering phase or explosive phase, which involves an actual attack. At first the attack may be only verbal, but it usually progresses to physical violence. The final phase of the cycle is the honeymoon phase or the loving–contrition period. During this phase, the abuser tries to make amends, typically becoming affectionate and solicitous of the victim, often promising that the violence will "never happen again" (Walker, 2009). **Table 24-1** summarizes the behaviors of this cycle.

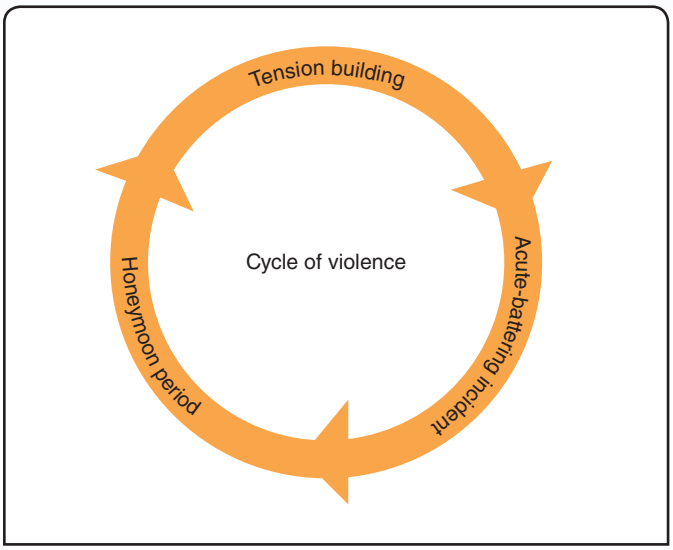


Figure 24-1 *The cycle of violence.*

The cycle of violence consists of three phases: tension-building phase, acute-battering (or explosive) phase, and the honeymoon (or loving-contrition) phase.

Certain advocacy groups have raised concern that Walker's model may reinforce the concept of "blaming the victim" because in this model, had the victim been able to alleviate the tension, the event would not have happened. There is also concern that the model implies that the "tension" is precipitated by something that can be misinterpreted as providing an "excuse" for the abuser.

Cycle of Abuse

In 1983, the antiviolence movement in Salem, Oregon, proposed another model for the cycle of domestic violence (Center for Hope and Safety, 1998). This is illustrated in **Figure 24-2**. The model defines six distinct phases in the cycle.

In the initial phases, the abuser fantasizes and plans the abuse, imagining all the things the victim has done wrongly, and plans how to make the victim pay for these actions. The abuser will then "set up" the scenario to perpetrate the abuse. Again, the abuse may be physical, emotional, economic, or sexual. Once the abusive episode is

TABLE 24-1: BEHAVIORS IN THE CYCLE OF VIOLENCE

TENSION BUILDING	ACUTE-BATTERING INCIDENT	HONEYMOON PERIOD
• Stress increases • Abuser becomes more and more agitated • Victim becomes fearful • Victim makes efforts to appease abuser	• Abuser becomes violent, either verbally or physically • Victim feels trapped and helpless • Victim is traumatized • Abuser blames victim for event	• Abuser become apologetic, loving, and solicitous • Victim feels ambivalent and responsible • Abuser promises it will never happen again • Victim minimizes event

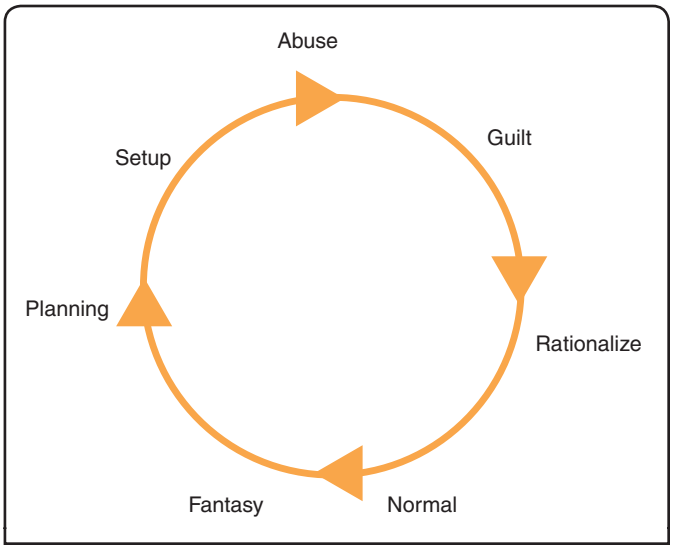


Figure 24-2 *Cycle of abuse.*

over, the perpetrator may experience guilt, but it is postulated that the guilt is not guilt due to the harm caused to the victims; rather, the guilt is caused by concerns regarding the consequences of the action. The abuser will become apologetic and solicitous to avoid any repercussions. The abuser will then rationalize the actions and blame the victim for creating the situation that precipitated the violence. The abuser will then return to life as "normal," as if nothing transpired.

The Power and Control Wheel emphasizes the responsibility of the individual abuser and the community for controlling the abuser.

The Power and Control Wheel

The Power and Control Wheel is another paradigm that helps explain the cycle of violence. It was developed by the Domestic Abuse Intervention Project (DAIP). **Figure 24-3** illustrates this model.

This model asserts that the primary responsibility of placing controls on abusers belongs to the community and the individual abuser, not the victim of abuse. Additionally:

- *Battering is a form of domestic violence that entails a patterned use of coercion; intimidation, including violence; and other related forms of abuse, whether legal or illegal (see the Power and Control Wheel). To be successful, initiatives must distinguish between and respond differently to domestic violence that constitutes battering and cases that do not adjust those interventions to the severity of the violence.*
- *Interventions must account for the economic, cultural, and personal histories of the individuals who become abuse cases in the system and should involve and coordinate services with the appropriate agencies (Pence & Eng, 2015).*
- *Both the victims and offenders are members of the community. While they must each act to change the conditions of their lives, the community must treat both with respect and dignity, recognizing the social causes of their personal circumstances (DAIP, 2015).*

The Power and Control Wheel delineates nine behaviors used by an abuser to control the victim. These are described in **Box 24-2**.

Most recently, the wheel has been modified to incorporate the fact that both men and women can be victims or perpetrators of abuse (DAIP, 2015).

NURSING RESPONSIBILITIES FROM AN INTERPERSONAL PERSPECTIVE

All health care providers need to be aware of the indicators of trauma and abuse so they can be identified and safety can be provided. Recognizing early warning signs is an important part of derailing the cycle of abuse. Therefore, public education efforts are essential. In addition, the nurse must be aware of the legal mandates for reporting each type of abuse.

When dealing with victims of abuse, nurses need to be aware of their own feelings about abuse, victims, and victimizers to prevent these feelings from interfering with the

Figure 24-3 *The Power and Control Wheel.*
From Domestic Abuse Intervention Project (2015).

patient's care. The nurse needs to remain nonjudgmental and employ the therapeutic use of self to establish trust and rapport with the patient.

Although providing care to victims of abuse is similar, the nurse's responsibilities are presented for the specific population affected. Nurses need to keep in mind that victims of abuse may be encountered at any point along the health care continuum.

Nurses typically provide care for both the victims of abuse and their victimizers. Therefore, self-awareness of feelings and responses for victims of abuse and victimizers is crucial to ensuring the development of a therapeutic relationship.

Child Abuse

The nurse needs to be alert for possible indicators of child abuse. Early warning signs of possible abuse of children may include frequent physical injuries, including fractures; multiple somatic complaints; behavior problems such as aggressiveness, lying, stealing, or extreme shyness; sexualized behavior on the part of young children; and excessive school absences. Once the abuse is identified, the child's safety is paramount.

Nurses and physicians are required by law to report suspected child abuse. Regulatory agencies generally require that reports of suspected abuse be filed within 24 hours or the clinician can risk losing his or her professional license. Nurses must familiarize themselves with all regulatory requirements in their region.

When abuse is suspected, the child should be examined outside the presence of the parents or caregiver because the child may fear consequences if he or she discloses the trauma. The nurse not only listens to what the child says, but carefully observes nonverbal communication because it can provide valuable information. For example, some possible nonverbal indicators of sexual abuse include the child being unable to sit without pain; or evidence of bloody underclothing, or a positive pregnancy test. A complete physical examination of the child, which may include photographs to document physical or sexual abuse, is required. Often further diagnostic studies including x-rays and laboratory tests are done to rule out the possibility of medical

BOX 24-2: BEHAVIORS ON THE POWER AND CONTROL WHEEL

COERCION AND THREATS:

- Making and/or carrying out threats to do something to hurt the victim
- Threatening to leave, commit suicide, or report the victim to welfare
- Making the victim drop charges
- Making the victim do illegal things

INTIMIDATION:

- Making the victim afraid by using looks, actions, and gestures
- Smashing things
- Destroying property, abusing pets, displaying weapons

EMOTIONAL ABUSE:

- Putting the victim down
- Making the victim feel bad about himself or herself
- Calling the victim names
- Making the victim think he or she is crazy
- Playing mind games
- Humiliating the victim
- Making the victim feel guilty

ISOLATION:

- Controlling what the victim does, sees, and reads; who he or she talks to; and where he or she goes
- Limiting the victim's outside involvement
- Using jealousy to justify actions

MINIMIZING, DENYING, AND BLAMING:

- Making light of the abuse and not taking concerns about it seriously
- Saying the abuse did not happen
- Shifting responsibility for abusive behavior
- Saying the victim caused it

USING CHILDREN:

- Making the victim feel guilty about the children
- Using the children to relay messages
- Using visitation to harass the victim
- Threatening to take the children away

ECONOMIC ABUSE:

- Preventing the victim from getting or keeping a job
- Making the victim ask for money
- Giving the victim an allowance
- Taking the victim's money
- Not letting the victim know about or have access to family income

MALE PRIVILEGE:

- Treating the woman like a servant
- Making all the big decisions, acting like the "master of the castle," being the one to define men's and women's roles (DAIP, 2015)

conditions causing the physical findings noted during the examination. A complete eye examination is indicated in all infants to evaluate for retinal hemorrhages associated with the shaken baby syndrome.

Nurses are legally mandated to report suspicions of child abuse, usually within 24 hours.

If the nurse suspects that the child is being abused in the home, he or she is responsible to provide for the safety of the child. Therefore, the nurse will not be able to release the child to return home. In these cases, the nurse must contact the local child protective services to provide emergency shelter while an investigation is completed. Planning for the immediate safety of the child is the priority.

When speaking with the child, questions need to be clear and simple. Reassure the child that no one has a right to hurt him or her. If a child has been victimized, he or she may talk in a very low voice and possibly demonstrate an exaggerated startle response when approached.

All children who are victims of trauma will need supportive psychotherapy to help them cope with the anger and rage that can stem from victimization. Treatment approaches will depend on the relationship of the child to the victimizer, the social and emotional support the child experiences within the family system, the mental status of the victim, and the availability of emotional resources within the family system. The time it takes to recover or heal from victimization may be protracted. The more frequent the episodes of victimization are, the longer it takes to heal.

If healing does not occur, victims may engage in many forms of self-destructive behavior, including self-mutilation and substance abuse. They may also experience difficulty establishing healthy interpersonal relationships throughout their lives. In addition, there is significant risk that they will perpetuate the abusive behavior with their own children. A child who has a successful response to treatment will demonstrate resiliency and the ability to form healthy relationships, thus refraining from becoming an abuser.

Intimate Partner Violence

Because the prevalence of domestic abuse is high, it is essential that the nurse always screens for abuse. The assessment of the possible victim should be a standard component of the patient interview. During the screening process, the nurse looks for indicators of possible IPV. These indicators may be verbalized specifically by the patient or implied by the victim's statements. Some of the early indicators that may signal potential domestic abuse include an intense whirlwind romance with the future abuser; becoming very possessive and jealous early in the relationship; a relationship that is intentionally kept exclusive, with efforts to isolate the possible victim from family, friends, and social interactions with others; sensitivity on the part of the impending abuser to what is perceived as a lack of interest or attention on the part of the other, thus, needing to be the focal point of the partner's attention; and finally, the latent abuser being unable to accept responsibility for his or her actions or feelings, blaming others for causing the jealousy, or not providing enough attention or affection, thereby demonstrating infidelity or lack of love. It is very common for the abuser to appear very caring and charismatic at the beginning of a relationship. Eventually, however, the need to control and dominate will be manifested through behaviors that are aimed at isolating the victim to diminish any external support network, making the potential victim dependent on the abuser. The abuser will also begin to focus fault and blame on the victim for all issues. The abuser will excuse all of his or her own negative actions as justified responses to what is described as the provocative actions of the victim.

Initially, victims frequently accept the responsibility placed on them by abusers. They will feel that they may deserve the criticism and will make efforts to meet the abusers' expectations. Because domestic abuse is not due to interpersonal conflicts, no efforts the victim makes can achieve the goal of reducing domestic violence. Therefore, the victim may voice feelings of failure, demonstrating low self-worth and poor self-esteem. The diminished sense of self will reinforce the victim's lack of confidence and fear of leaving the relationship, fostering dependence on the abuser.

Although assessing a victim of suspected IPV, nurses need to be aware of the possible discomfort the patient might experience in revealing abuse. Nurses should also be aware of any feelings they may have related to domestic violence because these feelings could interfere with establishing a therapeutic relationship with the patient. Help the victim describe the experience as specifically as possible. Offering examples of behaviors and situations may be helpful to reduce the discomfort the victim is experiencing in providing descriptions. Avoid using terms that may evoke strong emotional responses such as *rape* because these may inhibit the victim from further discussion of the events. Research indicates that victims are three times more likely to reveal abuse when questioned by a health care provider as compared with completing information on a form (McFarlane, Christoffel, Bateman, Miller, & Bullock, 1991). Therefore, the interview is an essential element of the assessment process.

When conducting the assessment, interview the victim and the abuser separately to help reduce the victim's fears. Avoid any judgmental remarks about the possible abuser because this may increase the victim's reluctance to provide information. As discussed, the victim frequently feels responsible for the abuse and still loving toward the abuser, making it difficult to be critical of the abuser. **Therapeutic Interaction 24-1** provides an example of an assessment interview with a victim of violence.

Use the same nonjudgmental, open approach when interviewing the abuser. It is not unusual for the nurse in this situation to experience his or her own feelings regarding both the victim and the abuser. The nurse may find it frustrating to hear the victim excuse the abuser or try to rationalize the event. The nurse may feel antagonism toward the abuser. Therefore, the nurse needs to be self-aware and confront his or her own reactions to ensure that they do not interfere with the therapeutic relationship.

When assessing a victim of intimate partner violence, the nurse interviews the victim separately from the victimizer.

Documentation of the assessment must include an exact description of the patient's account of how an injury happened. Because many victims are seen in the emergency department, the assessment should include a complete physical examination with a detailed description of injuries, and a specific body map indicating site, size, and character of injuries. If possible, photographs should be taken to provide helpful visual documentation of the injuries.

Many victims of abuse may deny abuse. Therefore, it is appropriate to document any inconsistency between the injury and the patient's explanation of how it happened using the patient's exact words. Also important is assessing for the patient's safety before discharge, including any suicidal and homicidal ideation because there is an increased risk of both. Also address other safety risks such as the presence of weapons in the home or the use or abuse of alcohol or drugs. Throughout the assessment, the nurse needs to remain cognizant of the impact of the patient's culture on the situation, the victim's potential experience of shame or embarrassment, and the fact that victims frequently minimize their experiences during the assessment process.

For the victim of IPV, the decision to seek help and leave the abusive relationship may not happen even if the victim has experienced repeated episodes of abuse. The victim of abuse may be reluctant to leave because he or she is hopeful the person may change, or he or she continues to feel committed to the relationship (Walker, 2009). Even after a decision is made, the victim may change his or her mind and return to the abusive situation. The decision to end an abusive relationship must be made by the victim when completely ready. Leaving an abusive relationship and pregnancy are two factors that actually increase the risk of further, and at times more serious, abuse.

Finally, if children are there in the home, assessment should also include an evaluation of possible child abuse. Obtain information about the children's behavior at home, including signs of problems, such as bedwetting or truancy, as well as any involvement with child protective services. If there is any suspicion of child abuse, mandatory reporting laws must be followed. Although mandatory reporting requirements vary in each jurisdiction, it is generally not mandatory or advisable to report injuries sustained by competent adults without their consent. If a person plans to return to the abusive partner, the report may enrage the abuser and actually lead to further abuse of the victim. However, because regulations vary, nurses should be familiar with the statutory regulations governing their region.

Once the assessment is completed, the nurse determines if the patient is at imminent risk of harm, either from the abuser or self-directed. If there is evidence to support this risk of harm, the nurse must work with the patient to provide immediate safety. If no immediate danger is assessed, the nurse may identify fear and anxiety related to the threat of harm.

Next, the nurse focuses on helping the patient identify relevant concerns and develop a safety plan. The safety plan involves very practical matters the victim should consider. For example, the victim should be advised to avoid being trapped in a room without an exit if a violent episode arises. In addition, the patient needs to be warned to avoid the kitchen and bath due to the presence of potential weapons in these rooms. Emphasize the need to try to access a phone and call 911.

The Internet also provides many resources for victims of domestic violence. The National Center on Domestic and Sexual Violence also provides a site with examples of personal safety plans to assist victims when they are preparing to leave an abusive situation (www.ncdsv.org/images/DV_Safety_Plan.pdf).

Victims need a safety plan that will provide protection; the protection must encompass more than just being safe from further physical abuse. It must take into consideration other aspects of the victim's life that have been threatened: for instance, financial stability; the well-being and safety of children, pets, and other loved ones; social status; psychological health; and the sense of self-worth and hope for the future that may be in jeopardy (Parker & Gielen, 2014). **Patient and Family Education 24-1** highlights some of the important information to include in a safety plan.

The victim should also be counseled to make certain preparations in advance so that if he or she does decide

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 24-1: INTERVIEWING A VICTIM OF ABUSE

Mrs. L. is a 32-year-old married female who presents to the emergency department with a broken arm and multiple bruises. She is accompanied by her husband who appears to be extremely anxious and overly concerned about his wife. The nurse is considering the possibility of spousal abuse during the assessment.

Nurse: "Mrs. L., I'll be performing an assessment now so I need to ask your family to step out."	Begins the process of assessment and provides for a private, safe environment to collect data
Mrs. L.: "That's OK. He wants to stay."	She is possibly deferring to her husband regarding decisions that pertain to control of information
Nurse: "I still need to have him step out. If I need to clarify anything with him I will do so later."	Establishes control of the situation by stating what the protocol is in a matter-of-fact manner
Mrs. L.: (very nervous) "OK, but this shouldn't take long, should it? I feel better with him here."	Is scared of the new structure of being away from husband and feels vulnerable
Nurse: "Each case is different; we will take only as long as needed to best determine how to help you."	Provides support and reassurance, yet still sticks to the structure of maintaining control of the situation
Nurse: (after husband goes to the waiting room, nurse pulls up a chair and sits by the patient) "Can you tell me how you got these injuries?"	Provides opportunity for patient to share her story
Mrs. L.: "I fell down the basement stairs; I am so clumsy, always bumping into things."	Possibly protecting husband and denying the abusive relationship
Nurse: "Some of these bruises are old. Others look more like blunt trauma injuries, such as being struck with something."	States the findings of her assessment in a matter-of-fact manner
Mrs. L.: "Like I told you I am always running into things."	Still protecting husband
Nurse: "Mrs. Long, I need to tell you that in my experience, I feel your injuries are consistent with injuries in victims of spousal abuse."	Provides psychoeducation and opportunity for client to discuss the abuse
Mrs. L.: (seems more anxious) "What are you saying? He would never intentionally hurt me."	Is feeling more vulnerable

(*cont.*)

THERAPEUTIC INTERACTION 24-1: *(CONT.)*
INTERVIEWING A VICTIM OF ABUSE

Nurse: "Our conversation is strictly confidential. I am asking you, based on my assessment, are you the victim of spousal abuse?"	Assures her of the confidentiality and again presents her with an opportunity to discuss the potential abuse
Mrs. L: "No."	Possibly in denial
Nurse: "Before we move forward with treating these wounds, I would like to give you a phone number and a website you can go to for more information regarding my concern."	Accepts that the patient is not yet ready to seek help. Offers information for her to consider later
Mrs. L.: "I guess so."	Accepts offer, possibly to bring the conversation to a close
Nurse: "This is the number of the local domestic violence shelter; this is their website for more information. Please put these in a private place and look into them at the next opportunity."	Provides instruction on how to access services and stresses privacy knowing that if she is the victim of domestic violence, she could be at higher risk if the abuser learns of this conversation

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION 24-1:
MAKING A SAFETY PLAN IN PREPARATION FOR LEAVING

- Begin to save money
- Copy important documents such as:
  - Identification forms such as birth certificates and passports
  - Insurance information
  - Financial information such as bank accounts, mortgages, and loans
- Legal documents that may be relevant such as custody or divorce papers
- Court documents
- Medical records
- Prepare a list of important phone numbers and addresses, including area shelters
- Identify a destination once you make the decision to leave
- Arrange travel plans
- Pack important items such as a child's favorite toy or family jewelry
- Do not take property that belongs to the abuser—this can lead to legal issues for you

to leave, he or she will be better equipped to manage the change. When assisting the victim in developing a personalized safety plan, be sure that the victim includes arrangements for a place to stay that will be safe from the abuser, a list of people who would be able to provide assistance, and information regarding counseling services available in the community. To provide effective assistance, the nurse working in this area must have a thorough knowledge of community resources, including contact information or referrals for shelters for victims of domestic violence, as well as an

understanding of the risks associated with a victim leaving an abusive relationship. In addition, the nurse needs a thorough knowledge and understanding of the cultural considerations related to both the victim and the abuser and the risks and obstacles the victim will face if he or she decides to leave the relationship. The nurse is responsible for educating the victim about this information, the patterns of abuse, the inherent dangers the victim may face, and the available resources in the community.

Although it may seem in the victim's best interest to leave an abusive relationship, it is never appropriate to pressure the victim to leave. The victim must make the decision to leave independently and must understand that the risk of violence increases after leaving the abusive situation. Nonjudgmental and empathic support is needed throughout the process to enhance the victim's sense of self-worth and autonomy and promote improved self-esteem. The nurse working with the victims of abuse needs to be aware of the myriad reasons that victims stay in abusive relationships. These can include real or perceived dependence on the abuser, both financial and emotional, fear, love, or shame (Walker, 2009).

A nurse must never force or coerce a victim of intimate partner violence to leave an abusive relationship. This decision is entirely the victim's choice.

Frequently, victims of domestic violence will also pursue legal protection through the courts. They may obtain emergency protective orders, or temporary or permanent restraining orders that direct the abuser to avoid contact with the victim. If the abuser does not adhere to the conditions of the order, he or she risks legal consequences.

After a victim of domestic violence leaves the abusive situation, it is not uncommon to experience ambivalence regarding the decision. Limited financial resources, lack of support from family and friends, as well as low self-esteem contribute to the victim's concern that leaving is a mistake. The fact that extended exposure to an abusive relationship also diminishes the victim's confidence and self-image will only reinforce this ambivalence. For those who have endured abuse over an extended period, the risk for posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is increased. The increased fear, anxiety, and depression associated with this disorder may negatively impact the victim's ability to successfully cope with newly achieved autonomy.

The victim needs support during this period, including mental health counseling and services necessary to avoid self-harm and to develop the coping skills necessary to sustain independence. The role of the nurse will include education regarding what a victim can realistically expect to experience, including the social, financial, and emotional responses that frequently accompany abuse and its aftermath. The nurse will also provide counseling regarding health maintenance and self-care activities, as well as stress reduction and assertiveness.

For victims experiencing PTSD, cognitive behavioral therapy may be used to achieve symptom resolution. Other programs for victims of abuse also may be available. For example, Walker (2009), in collaboration with a team of researchers, has developed a formal program specifically for abused women. It is called the Survivor Therapy Empowerment Program (STEP). The program consists of 12 units, each containing an educational, discussion, and skills-building component to foster increased knowledge regarding domestic violence, to recognize its impact on victims' lives, and to increase their ability to effectively manage the consequences (Walker, 2009).

Interventions for the perpetrators of abuse frequently involve legally mandated participation in intervention programs focused on changing the attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors of the abuser. It is generally accepted that domestic violence is not reduced through family and couples therapy.

Ultimately, the desired outcomes for the victim focus on:

- *Ending the cycle of abuse*
- *Promoting recovery from physical aspects of abuse*
- *Developing a positive self-image without guilt or self-blame*
- *Becoming financially self-sufficient*
- *Achieving a supportive social network*
- *Being able to engage in nonabusive relationships.*

For the abuser, the desired outcome is completion of a batterer intervention program that will lead to acceptance of responsibility for the violence, a significant change in his or her attitudes, and an elimination of violent and abusive behaviors.

Elder Abuse

As with other forms of abuse, recognition of potential indicators is important. Look for any indication that the victim has not received adequate care. Some obvious physical signs include poor physical hygiene, uncombed hair, dirty clothes, urine smell, signs of malnourishment, dehydration or bruises, scratches, burns, or pinch marks. The victim may also appear withdrawn, confused, or frightened. Take note of caregivers who restrict the elder's social contacts or who do not allow the elder to speak freely. If financial abuse is a possibility, try to ascertain changes in spending patterns, numerous unpaid bills, or unusual bank account activity (Knowles & Campbell, 2013). Financial exploitation is

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 24-1: ELDER ABUSE

STUDY

Friedman, B., Santos, E. J., Liebel, D.V., Russ, A. J., & Conwell,Y. (2015). Longitudinal prevalence and correlates of elder mistreatment among older adults receiving home visiting nursing. *Journal of Elder Abuse & Neglect, 27*(1), 34–64. doi:10.1080/08946566.2014.946193

SUMMARY

This study was conducted to identify the prevalence of elder mistreatment among a group of elderly receiving nursing care services in their home. The study also intended to determine the types of abuse the elderly experiences as well as factors that were associated with the abuse.

The nurses providing home care services collected data during their monthly visits. The data included incidents of maltreatment as evidenced by actual observation of events, reports by patient/family/friends, or indications assessed on physical examination of the patient. In addition, the nurse collected information related to risk factors such as social isolation, dementia, presence of depression or other mental illnesses, chronic medical conditions, and dependence on the abuser for care and daily activities. Data were collected for a 24-month period and involved 724 patients.

RESULTS

- It took a mean of 10.5 visits for the nurse to be able to determine the presence of elder maltreatment; no case was identified on initial visit
- More than 7% of the patients were subjected to abuse
- Half of the patients experiencing abuse were victims of neglect
- A significant number of patients experienced more than one form of abuse
- The perpetrator of abuse was very often a family member, including the victim's spouse
- Elderly patients needing assistance with activities of daily living are at greater risk of victimization.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Nurses providing home care services are in a unique position to identify elderly patients who are at risk of being victims of elder abuse. This study highlighted the fact that it may be difficult to assess elder abuse on initial contact and continued work with a patient may be necessary to adequately assess the patient. The need for continued observation and vigilance in observing for indications of abuse are essential. The nurse providing home care services must also ensure that he or she is knowledgeable about risk factors that increase the patient's vulnerability to abuse.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *While working with an elderly patient in her home, you notice multiple bruises on her arm. How would the information gained from this study help you to proceed?*
2. *A home health care aide at the agency where you work comes to you and says that she believes one of her elderly patients is being abused by the son and asks you to come with her on the next visit to assess for yourself. Which factors identified by the study would be important? What would your first response be to this aide?*

now considered the most common, yet least often reported form of elder abuse. It can happen to any elderly person, regardless of the financial status and often involves exploitation by family members or caregivers. It can also involve strangers who engage the elder in confidence scams and fraudulent telemarketing activities. Financial abuse of the elderly can have a significant impact on both the physical and emotional well-being of the victim (Sullivan-Wilson & Jackson, 2014).

When assessing the elderly patient, ask direct and simple questions in a nonjudgmental or nonthreatening manner. Conduct a portion of the interview with the patient in the presence of the caregiver to evaluate the nature of the patient–caregiver interaction. Also conduct a portion with the patient and caregiver individually to detect inconsistencies and to provide the elderly patient an opportunity to discuss possible abuse. If the caregiver expresses concerns related to the patient's self-neglect or stress due to multiple family issues, assisting with coordination of additional resources may be required. Be sure to allow adequate time and privacy so that the patient feels comfortable and safe.

A thorough physical examination is completed, including an evaluation of evidence of old injuries and/or pressure ulcers. During the physical examination, note the size, shape, and location of all injuries. Incorporate the use of body maps or diagrams when extensive injuries are present. If appropriate, photograph the injuries.

A key aspect of the plan of care for a victim of elder abuse is ensuring the patient's safety. Contacting adult protective services may be necessary. In addition, be knowledgeable about the state and local reporting requirements. In many jurisdictions, suspected elder abuse requires that the clinician report it to local authorities, while in other jurisdictions reporting is not mandatory. Although federal laws on child abuse and domestic violence fund services and shelters for victims, there is no comparable federal law on elder abuse. The Federal Older Americans Act of 1965 provides federal funds for the National Center on Elder Abuse (NCEA). This center is directed by the U.S. Administration on Aging and provides for certain elder abuse awareness and coordination activities in states and local communities. However, the center does not provide funds for shelters or victim services. The 2011 U.S. Congress did conduct special hearings on elder abuse to examine the issues related specifically to neglect and financial abuse. The report they produced, *Justice for All: Ending Elder Abuse, Neglect and Financial Exploitation* (U.S. Congress, 2011), delineates the problems and provides recommendations for future actions.

The nurse also works to make provisions to ensure that the elder's ongoing biopsychosocial and spiritual needs are met. This would include coordinating services with other providers, such as home care services, alternative residential placement, and respite care, based on the particular needs of the individual.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Abuse is an act designed to obtain and maintain power and control over another. It may be physical, emotional, sexual, or economic.
- Domestic violence is now considered a national crime due to enactment of the Violence Against Women Act (VAWA) of 1994 and its additions in 1996. In certain situations, it is against the law for a domestic abuser to have guns.
- Children between the ages of 3 and 5 years are most commonly abused; most children view the abuse as their fault. Domestic violence remains the leading cause of injury to women between the ages of 15 to 44 years. The majority of family violence victims are female, whereas approximately three fourths of the perpetrators are male. Elderly abuse is commonly manifested as neglect and often underreported.
- Various models have been developed to describe abuse and violence. The Cycle of Violence Model consists of three phases depicting the pattern of domestic abuse. The Cycle of Abuse Model consists of six phases. The Power and Control Wheel identifies nine specific behaviors used by an abuser.
- A nurse is responsible for reporting suspicions of abuse based on local and state laws. All nurses are mandated to report suspicions of child abuse within 24 hours. The nurse is also responsible for conducting a thorough assessment and for documenting findings clearly, often using body maps and possibly photographs.
- When caring for a victim of intimate partner violence (IPV), the nurse should assist the victim in developing a personalized safety plan as well as a plan if the victim decides to leave the relationship.
- As with any victim of abuse, safety, especially for the elderly abuse victim, is a priority. Adult protective services may need to be contacted.

Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN)

KNOWLEDGE	SKILLS	ATTITUDES
PATIENT-CENTERED CARE		
Recognize the signs and symptoms of domestic violence and implement appropriate interventions		
Understand issues related to domestic violence including: Signs of abuse and neglect across the life span Dynamics of the cycle of violence Issues related to caregiver burden Cultural issues that may impact family dynamics	Provide care in an empathic and nonjudgmental manner Use appropriate communication skills to successfully elicit information for patient assessment	Be aware of own attitudes and personal issues related to working with victims and perpetrators of domestic violence
TEAMWORK AND COLLABORATION		
Function effectively in collaboration with staff, regulatory agencies, community resources, and forensic practitioners to meet the patient needs		
Understand federal, state, and local regulations related to reporting suspected cases of abuse and/or neglect	Collaborate with appropriate agencies to ensure that appropriate referrals and follow-up care are arranged	Acknowledge own concerns/attitudes related to potential emotions including anger at the abuser and sympathy for the victim
EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE (EBP)		
Use best evidence related to identification and treatment for victims and victimizers in domestic violence situations		
Demonstrate knowledge of current practices to provide care to both victims and victimizers of domestic violence	Use therapeutic methods that have demonstrated efficacy	Value EBP principles and practices in the field of domestic violence
QUALITY IMPROVEMENT (QI)		
Use objective data to measure the outcomes of care and inform modifications in care planning		
Understand the data collection process and outcome measures related to domestic violence	Demonstrate ability to gather objective data from all sources	Maintain an objective stance when collecting data and recognize the importance of data to inform decisions
SAFETY		
Minimizes risk of injury and harm to victims of domestic violence		
Understand risks and safety plans related to domestic violence	Demonstrate skill in promoting patient acceptance of safety plan	Respect the patient's right to self-determination and recognize the desire to protect the patient
INFORMATICS		
Use information and technology to communicate, and objectively document relevant issues related to actual or suspected abuse and/or neglect		
Understand the documentation requirements of the organization and regulatory agencies	Demonstrate ability to capture relevant information without bias or prejudice	Appreciate the importance of relevant and unbiased documentation

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about abuse and violence. Which of the following would the nurse most likely include?
   a. Abuse is primarily seen in lower socioeconomic areas where poverty is rampant.
   b. Children typically are around the ages of 8 to 10 years when they suffer abuse.
   c. Abuse indicates an underlying mental health disorder that is out of control.
   d. An abuser frequently uses more than one method to achieve the goal.
2. A woman is brought by her husband to the emergency department. The woman has significant swelling surrounding her right eye and bruising over the right side of her face. She is also holding her right upper arm that is covering a large bruised area. The nurse suspects intimate partner violence (IPV). When interviewing the woman, which statement would indicate that the woman is in the honeymoon phase of the cycle of violence?
   a. "I feel like I'm walking on eggshells."
   b. "He said he was sorry and wouldn't do it again."
   c. "I need to make sure I don't make him angry."
   d. "It was my fault because I didn't have dinner ready on time."
3. When applying the Power and Control Wheel to evaluate a victimizer's behavior, which of the following would indicate intimidation?
   a. Calling the victim names
   b. Making the victim feel guilty
   c. Destroying property
   d. Controlling who the victim talks to
4. The following are phases identified by the model proposed by the antiviolence movement in Oregon. Place them in the proper sequence from beginning to end.
   a. Setup
   b. Fantasy
   c. Planning
   d. Abuse
   e. Rationalize
   f. Guilt
   g. Normal
5. When assessing an older adult for suspected abuse, the nurse interviews the victim together with the caregiver based on which rationale?
   a. To evaluate the patient and caregiver relationship
   b. To identify inconsistencies in their statements
   c. To confirm the patient's level of alertness
   d. To determine the need for adult protective services

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Barlow, J., MacMillan, H., Macdonald, G., Bennett, C., & Larkin, S. K. (2013). Psychological interventions to prevent recurrence of emotional abuse of children by their parents. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2013*(9), CD010725. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD010725

Black, M. C., Basile, K. C., Breiding, M. J., Smith, S. G., Walters, M. L., Merrick, M. T.,…Stevens, M. R. (2011). *The National Intimate Partner and Sexual Violence Survey (NISVS): 2010 Summary report*. Atlanta, GA: National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/pdf/nisvs_report2010-a.pdf

Breiding, M., Smith, S., Basile, K., Walters, M., Jieru, C., & Merrick, M. (2011). Prevalence and characteristics of sexual violence, stalking, and intimate partner violence victimization—National Intimate Partner and Sexual Violence Survey, United States. *MMWR Surveillance Summaries* [serial online], *63*(8), 1–18. Ipswich, MA. Retrieved from CINAHL Plus With Full Text.

Bureau of Justice Statistics. (2013). *U.S. Department of Justice*. Retrieved from http://www.bjs.gov/content/pub/pdf/ipvav9311.pdf

Center for Hope and Safety. (1998). *Fact sheet.* Washington, DC: National Center on Elder Abuse at American Public Human Services Association. Retrieved from http://hopeandsafety.org/learn-more/the-cycle-of-domestic-violence/NationalElderAbuseIncidenceStudy

Child Welfare Information Gateway. (2013). *Definitions of domestic violence.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Children's Bureau. Retrieved from https://www.childwelfare.gov/topics/systemwide/laws-policies/statutes/defdomvio

Connolly, M-T., Brandl, B., & Breckman, R. (2014). *The elder justice roadmap responding to an emerging health, justice, financial, & social crisis*. Retrieved from http://ncea.acl.gov/Library/Gov_Report/index.aspx

Domestic Abuse Intervention Project. (2015). *Duluth, Minnesota*. Retrieved from http://www.theduluthmodel.org

Domesticviolence.org.handbook. (2015). Retrieved from http://www.domesticviolence.org/who-are-the-victims

Dong, X., & Simon, M. A. (2014). Vulnerability risk index profile for elder abuse in a community-dwelling population. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 62*(1), 10–15. doi:10.1111/jgs.12621

Eisner, M., & Ghuneim, L. (2013). Honor killing attitudes amongst adolescents in Amman, Jordan. *Aggressive Behavior, 39*(5), 405–417. doi:10.1002/ab.21485

Fellitti, V. J., Anda, R. F., Nordenberg, D., Williamson, D. F., Spitz, A. M., Edwards, V., …Marks, J. S. (1998). Relationship of childhood abuse and household dysfunction to many of the leading causes of death in adults: The Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACE) Study. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 14*(4), 245–258. Retrieved from http://www.ajpm-online.net/article/PIIS0749379798000178/fulltext

Finesmith, B. K. (1983). *Police response to battered women: A critique and proposal for reform*. 14 Seton Hall Law. Rev. 74, 79.

Friedman, B., Santos, E. J., Liebel, D.V., Russ, A. J., & Conwell,Y. (2015). Longitudinal prevalence and correlates of elder mistreatment among older adults receiving home visiting nursing. *Journal of Elder Abuse & Neglect, 27*(1), 34–64. doi:10.1080/08946566.2014.946193

Fustel des Coulanges & Numa Denis. (1980). *The ancient city: A study of the religion, laws, and institutions of Greece and Rome.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Hellemans, S., Loeys, T., Buysse, A., Dewaele, A., & Smet, O. (2015). Intimate partner violence victimization among non-heterosexuals: Prevalence and associations with mental and sexual well-being. *Journal of Family Violence, 30*(2), 171–188. doi:10.1007/s10896–015-9669-y

James, B. D., Boyle, P. A., & Bennett, D. A. (2014). Correlates of susceptibility to scams in older adults without dementia. *Journal of Elder Abuse & Neglect, 26*(2), 107–122. doi:10.1080/08946566.2013.821809

Jejeebhoy, S. J., Santhya, K., & Acharya, R. (2014). Violence against women in South Asia: The need for the active engagement of the health sector. *Global Public Health, 9*(6), 678–690. doi:10.1080/17441692.2014.916736

Katz, J., & Rich, H. (2015). Partner covictimization and post-breakup stalking, pursuit, and violence: A retrospective study of college women. *Journal of Family Violence, 30*(2), 189–199. doi:10.1007/s10896–014-9665–7

Kerber, L. K., & De Hart, J. S. (Ed.). (1995). *Women's America: Refocusing the past.* NewYork, NY: Oxford University Press.

Kiener, R. (2011, April 19). Honor killings: Can murders of women and girls be stopped? *CQ Global Researcher, 5*(8), 183–208. Retrieved from http://www.sagepub.com/sageEdge/chambliss/files/pdf/cq_03honor.pdf

Knowles, M., & Campbell, A. (2013, May). Financial abuse in care homes: Do you know what to look out for? *Nursing & Residential Care* [serial online], *15*(5), 294–296. Ipswich, MA. Retrieved from CINAHL With Full Text.

Kulczycki, A., & Windle, S. (2011, November). Honor killings in the Middle East and North Africa: A systematic review of the literature violence against women. *Violence Against Women, 17*, 1442–1464. doi:10.1177/1077801211434127

Larkin, H., Shields, J. J., & Anda, R. F. (2012). The health and social consequences of adverse childhood experiences (ACE) across the lifespan: An introduction to prevention and intervention in the community. *Journal of Prevention & Intervention in the Community, 40*(4), 263–270. doi:10.1080/10852352.2012.7074

Loc, H. N. (2014). A public health response to data interoperability to prevent child maltreatment. *American Journal of Public Health, 104*(11), 2043–2048. doi:10.2105/AJPH.2014.302143

March, P., & Cabrera, G. (2015, April 24). *Shaken baby syndrome*. [Serial online]. Ipswich, MA. Retrieved from CINAHL Plus With Full Text.

McFarlane, J., Christoffel, K., Bateman, L., Miller, V., & Bullock, L. (1991). Assessing for abuse: Self-report versus nurse interview. *Public Health Nurse, 8*(4), 245–250.

Nowinski, S. N., & Bowen, E. (2012). Partner violence against heterosexual and gay men: Prevalence and correlates. *Aggression & Violent Behavior, 17*(1), 36–52. doi:10.1016/j.avb.2011.09.005

Papaioannou, E., Räihä, I., & Kivelä, S. (2012). Self-neglect of the elderly. An overview. *European Journal of General Practice, 18*(3), 187–190. doi:10.3109/13814788.2012.688019

Parker, E. M., & Gielen, A. C. (2014). Intimate partner violence and safety strategy use: Frequency of use and perceived effectiveness. *Women's Health Issues, 24*(6), 584–593. doi:10.1016/j.whi.2014.08.001

Pence, E., & Eng, D. (2015). *The blueprint for safety*. Praxis International. Retrieved from http://stpaulblueprintspip.org/download/GenericBlueprint.pdf

Saul, J., Valle, L., Mercy, J., Turner, S., Kaufmann, R., & Popovic, T. (2014, March 28). CDC grand rounds: Creating a healthier future through prevention of child maltreatment. *MMWR: Morbidity & Mortality Weekly Report* [serial online], *63*(12), 260–263. Ipswich, MA. Retrieved from CINAHL Plus With Full Text.

Stylianou, A. M., Postmus, J. L., & McMahon, S. (2013). Measuring abusive behaviors: Is economic abuse a unique form of abuse? *Journal of Interpersonal Violence, 28*(16), 3186–3204. doi:10.1177/0886260513496904

Sullivan-Wilson, J., & Jackson, K. L. (2014). Keeping older adults safe, protected, and healthy by preventing financial exploitation. *Nursing Clinics of North America, 49*, 201–212. Retrieved from http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cnur.2014.02.007

Taft, A., O'Doherty, L., Hegarty, K., Ramsay, J., Davidson, L., & Feder, G. (2013). Screening women for intimate partner violence in healthcare settings. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2013*(4), CD007007. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD007007.pub2

Truman, J. & Morgan, R. (2014). *Nonfatal Domestic Violence, 2003–2012.* U.S. Department of Justice, Office of Justice Programs, Bureau of Justice Statistics. Retrieved from: http://www.bjs.gov/content/pub/pdf/ndv0312.pdf

U.S. Center for Disease Control. (2014, September 5). Prevalence and characteristics of sexual violence, stalking, and intimate partner violence victimization—National Intimate Partner and Sexual Violence Survey, United States, 2011 Surveillance Summaries, *63*(SS08), 1–18. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/ss6308a1.htm?s_cid=ss6308a1_e

U.S. Congress. (2011). *Justice for all: Ending elder abuse, neglect and financial exploitation.* Retrieved from http://www.aging.senate

.gov/hearings/justice-for-all-ending-elder-abuse-neglect-and-financial-exploitation

Violence Against Women Act. (2013). Retrieved from http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/BILLS-113s47enr/pdf/BILLS-113s47enr.pdf

Violence Policy Center. (2013). *When men murder women: An analysis of 2011 homicide data*. Washington, DC: Author, p. 3. Retrieved from http://www.vpc.org/studies/wmmw2013.pdf

Walker, L. (2009). *The battered woman syndrome*. NewYork, NY: Springer.

Watson, E. (2013, October). Elder abuse: Definition, types and statistics, and elder abuse (mistreatment and neglect) laws. *Journal of Legal Nurse Consulting* [serial online], *24*(2), 40–42. Ipswich, MA. Retrieved from CINAHL Plus With Full Text.

Whitt-Woosley, A., Sprang, G., & Gustman, B. D. (2014). Lives at risk: Uncovering factors associated with fatal child maltreatment. *Children & Youth Services Review*, *47*, 307–313. doi:10.1016/j.childyouth.2014.10.007

SECTION V

Mental Health Care Settings

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 25

PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING ACROSS THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

Patricia Smythe Matos
Diane Oran

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define the *continuum of care*
2. Describe available treatment options and community-based resources for psychiatric-mental health patients
3. Correlate the adequacy of care settings as they relate to patient acuity and needs
4. Explain how the psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) applies the nursing process throughout the diverse settings within continuum of care
5. Discuss the specialized roles that PMHNs may assume within the continuum of care

KEY TERMS

Continuum of care
Forensic nursing
Least restrictive environment
Telehealth
Therapeutic milieu

Psychiatric-mental health nursing is a specialized area of nursing practice committed to promoting mental health through the assessment, diagnosis, and treatment of patients presenting with mental health problems and psychiatric disorders along a **CONTINUUM OF CARE** (an integrated system of settings, services, health care clinicians, and care levels spanning illness to wellness states [Boyd, 2005]) in a variety of health care settings (American Nurses Association [ANA], American Psychiatric Nurses Association, and International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing Practice, 2014). The practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing is based on the nursing process and operationalized through the scope and standards outlined by the ANA, the American Psychiatric Nurses Association, and the International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nurses (2014; see Chapter 1 for a description of the scope and standards of practice). These standards provide a firm basis for psychiatric-mental health nursing practice across all levels of care and span diverse settings, including inpatient units and community mental health clinics.

This chapter describes the various levels of care in which the psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) practices and the principles of practice are appropriate for each level of care. It also integrates the nursing process as the primary method for PMHNs in providing care to patients. The chapter concludes with a discussion of some of the specialized roles for PMHNs along the continuum of care.

PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING ACROSS THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

As stated earlier, the continuum of care spans from illness to wellness. It maximizes the coordination of care and services including nursing, medical, psychological, and social services. This coordination ensures that patients receive all appropriate services necessary for optimal health.

Psychiatric-mental health nursing employs the purposeful use of self as its art, based on Peplau's theory (1991). The science is based in nursing, psychosocial, and neurobiological theories and research evidence. PMHNs promote and provide the delivery of holistic, patient-centered, interpersonal, and comprehensive primary mental health services to patients and families within their communities. The nurse always remains cognizant of the need to practice evidence-based care, thereby avoiding the use of untested alternative therapies. The advanced practice nurse should not recommend or prescribe treatments that are not grounded in solid research.

The PMHN's role is diverse and encompassing. For example, PMHNs provide care in hospitals, outpatient clinics, and day treatment programs. They also develop health and wellness promotion programs addressing mental health issues, advocate for the prevention of mental health problems, and provide direct care and treatment to persons with psychiatric disorders. In addition, PMHNs may be employed in research, act as expert consultants, be self-employed and practice autonomously, or practice within a group practice.

PMHNs integrate the interpersonal process, incorporating the therapeutic use of self and the collaborative partnership between the nurse and patient (Peplau, 1991), and the nursing process to develop a plan of care for the patient with a psychiatric-mental health problem. In doing so, the PMHN is able to assist patients, their families, and their communities at all levels on the continuum of care, from the acutely unstable to the chronic, long-term care patient.

The continuum of care covers the range from illness to wellness and requires coordination of care and services for the patient to achieve optimal health.

Goal of the Least Restrictive Environment

The continuum of care is designed to ensure that treatment provided to a patient is one that allows the patient the highest level of functioning in the **LEAST RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT**, that is, in the safest environment with the minimum restrictions on personal liberty necessary to maintain the safety of the patient and the public, and to allow the patient to achieve independence in daily living as much as possible. Least restrictive environments respect the individual's personal needs for dignity and privacy while enhancing personal autonomy. In 1999, with the Olmstead decision, the Supreme Court affirmed that the unjustified institutionalization of a person with disabilities is discriminatory. The decision also affirmed that such an action violates the Americans with Disabilities Act. As a result, psychiatric-mental health treatment is more often delivered in community settings rather than in highly restrictive inpatient hospital settings (ANA, 2014).

Consultation-Liaison Services

When a patient requires psychiatric-mental health care in a setting other than a psychiatric service setting, such

as a medical hospital unit, nursing home, and rehabilitation facility, a PMHN, typically at the advanced level of practice, may be called on to provide consultation-liaison services. In this role, the nurse assesses the patient's mental health needs and makes recommendations for nursing interventions in the setting in which the patient is being treated. These recommendations are carried out by the staff in that medical setting. The consultation-liaison nurse also provides education for the staff as needed, provides follow-up visits to assess the patient's response to the nursing intervention, and/or makes recommendations to modify the interventions based on this evaluation.

LEVELS OF CARE

Care is provided in a variety of different settings along the continuum of care and ranges from acute emergency treatment to long-term chronic care. Many factors, including current research findings, cost-effectiveness, level of reimbursement, social factors, and the availability of pharmacological treatments, influence which level of care is appropriate for the patient.

Psychiatric Emergency Care

Psychiatric emergency care is similar to medical emergency care. Both often involve life and death situations. Patients may be a danger to themselves or others. Their thinking or judgment may be so impaired that they cannot safely care for themselves.

If a patient is receiving individual treatment with an advanced practice nurse such as a nurse practitioner or other mental health practitioner, the first step is to ensure that the patient and those around him or her are safe. The nurse assesses the patient for suicidal or homicidal ideation and for the ability to maintain control. Once the nurse has identified the problems, the nurse must then decide which setting is most appropriate and develop a plan for providing that level of care. Some communities have mobile crisis teams that come to the setting and provide emergency treatment to the patient in crisis. These teams also may transport the patient to a safer setting. Other communities may depend on 911 or police emergency systems. The nurse considers the urgency of the situation as well as community resources in developing the plan.

Communicating pertinent clinical information (diagnosis, psychiatric history, current medications, current concern/risk, etc.) to the providers at the next level of care is essential, especially in an emergency situation. In addition, the nurse remains available to those providers throughout the patient's care and discharge. Following any patient emergency, the nurse reviews the case with the collaborating physician and/or treatment team to evaluate the treatment plan and develop new interventions if needed on the patient's return to outpatient care.

Like medical emergency care, psychiatric emergency care often involves life and death situations. The safety of the patient and those around him or her is the priority.

Acute Inpatient Care

Inpatient care for the psychiatric-mental health patient is most often acute and short term. The inpatient unit may be in a general medical hospital or psychiatric hospital. The goal of inpatient care is stabilization of symptoms and discharge to a safe and therapeutic living environment with the appropriate level of outpatient treatment. Inpatient treatment is reserved for patients who cannot be safely treated outside of the hospital setting and require a 24-hour nursing supervision and care.

On admission, the nurse completes a full assessment of the patient. Assessment tools, although variable from facility to facility, generally incorporate medical, nursing, and social assessments. Based on these assessments, an interdisciplinary treatment plan is developed and shared with the patient and family as appropriate. Behavioral outcomes that are clear and measurable are included. Inclusion of the patient's preferences based on ethnic, cultural, and family values ensures that the nurse is providing patient-centered care that is respectful of diversity. For instance, primary language must be assessed and a plan for a professional interpreter services developed.

The PMHN develops a plan of care that includes interventions addressing the biological, psychosocial, and spiritual needs of the patient. Patient and family education about the diagnosis, treatment, and strategies to improve and maintain health are an essential part of this plan.

Typically, a **THERAPEUTIC MILIEU** is created on the inpatient unit. A therapeutic milieu involves a focus on creating a climate and environment that is therapeutic and conducive to psychiatric healing within a structured group setting that encompasses the elements of trust, safety, peer support, and repetition of recovery psychoeducation to enable patients to work through psychological issues. This milieu is designed to promote healing for all of the patients on that unit. The nurse is responsible for providing the structure necessary to maintain this environment. In collaboration with other health care providers, families,

and patients, groups and activities are prescribed based on the patient's assessment and cultural background. The nurse provides orientation and education for expected behaviors and interpersonal relationships. The nurse also ensures that safety for all is maintained in the least restrictive environment.

The PMHN continuously communicates an evaluation of the patient's response to treatment and progress toward goals to other members of the interdisciplinary team. This communication is a collaborative process and is ongoing throughout the patient's inpatient stay. Changes in treatment and interventions are based on the patient's response and are used to develop appropriate discharge plans.

When a patient is admitted to an acute inpatient facility, discharge planning begins on admission. Collaboration occurs among all parties involved, such as the patient, family, interdisciplinary team, and outpatient provider. The nurse is a leader in the discharge planning process and coordinates the care needed to ensure that the patient is discharged to a safe living environment and has adequate resources for care and support.

Intermediate- or Long-Term Inpatient Care

Intermediate- or long-term inpatient care is required for patients who cannot be stabilized in an acute setting; for example, patients who are chronically self-destructive, psychotic, or unsafe to others in the community. These patients may spend many months or years in a chronic care facility such as a state hospital. However, over the past 20 years, the trend has been toward discharging these patients to the community. In some cases, patients may require a specialized treatment program, such as drug or alcohol rehabilitation, necessitating a longer length of stay (typically 28 days but it may be up to 6 months), or an eating disorder program. Although the length of stay may be different than acute inpatient hospitalization, application of the nursing process, the interpersonal process, and standards of practice remain the same.

Partial Hospitalization/ Day Treatment

Partial hospitalization is an intense, ambulatory mental health program for patients who require a structured treatment program during the day, but are stable enough to return to their living environment at night. These programs can be designed for treatment ranging from 3 to 5 days per week. The time frame for the program can be for a full or half day. Patients appropriate for this setting generally cannot function autonomously on a daily basis. However, with the structure and the support of this type of program, the patient is deemed safe to be in treatment outside of an inpatient setting. Partial hospitalization may be used as an alternative to inpatient admission or as a transition from inpatient to outpatient care. Treatment provided includes individual and group therapy, psychopharmacological treatment as needed, and education. Individualized plans are developed by the interdisciplinary treatment team and may include social skills groups, illness and relapse prevention education, time management classes, and expressive and supportive psychotherapy. The nurse implements the nursing process for each patient, incorporating it into the interdisciplinary treatment plan.

The PMHN is involved in discharge planning and coordination of care, ensuring that the patient's medical, financial, and housing needs are met. He or she also provides education to the family or nighttime caregiver as needed. Discharge to a less intensive level of care, such as an outpatient mental health clinic or private practitioner, is usually the goal. Unfortunately, some patients may require inpatient treatment if symptoms worsen or the living environment becomes unstable.

A partial hospitalization program provides a structured treatment program during the day, with the patient returning to his or her living environment at night.

Residential Services

The search for nonhospital-based options for psychiatric patients requiring acute care has become a focus in light of current efforts to control medical costs. Residential facilities combine and provide mental health treatment and residential care to the seriously and persistently mentally ill population who may be diagnosed with persistent and unremitting psychotic and mood disorders and/or substance use disorders. These facilities may be publicly or privately owned and funded. Intensive residential services provide patients with a place to stay in conjunction with supervised care over a 24-hour period. Length of stay may be brief (ranging from days to weeks)

or extended (ranging from months to years). Medical, nursing, psychosocial, recreational, and other support services are available. In addition, assistance with vocational training and activities of daily living training are provided.

The PMHN is in a unique position and plays an important role in the care of persons with severe and persistent mental illness who require residential services. The Scope and Standards of Psychiatric Mental Health Nursing provides a guide for nurses in the delivery of patient care in this setting (ANA, 2014). PMHNs assess and provide supportive services to patients and provide psychoeducation about diagnosis, symptom management, anger management, and prescribed medication. The PMHN also assesses the patient's level of motivation to treatment and tailor appropriate interventions while emphasizing the importance and benefit of adherence to treatment. Supervised self-administration and management of medication also is provided.

Rehabilitation is often a goal for residential treatment facilities. A return to independent living and work life with psychosocial supports in place has been achieved for many persons diagnosed with mental illness.

Residential services are used for patients experiencing seriously persistent mental illness, such as persistent and unremitting psychotic or mood disorders.

Community-Based Care

Community-based psychiatric-mental health care covers a wide range of services. PMHNs provide care in partnership with patients within the community as an effective method of responding to the mental health needs of individuals, families, and groups. Care may be delivered in the patient's home, on the worksite, or at a school mental health clinic. Community mental health care is also provided in clinics, health maintenance organizations (HMOs), day treatment programs, homeless shelters, crisis centers, senior centers, group homes, and churches. Regardless of where the community mental health care is delivered, it is provided in a manner that respects the cultural and spiritual diversity of the patient and the community.

The PMHN assumes various roles within community-based care. In general, PMHNs identify and assess the mental health needs of the group and design programs and educational health and wellness outreach activities to target vulnerable populations. In the school setting, PMHNs engage in primary prevention and early intervention to promote good future health. They provide psychoeducation to students, parents, and teachers; assess and evaluate students for mental health difficulties; and provide psychiatric services, such as therapy and psychopharmacological interventions, to students.

Psychiatric Rehabilitation Programs

Psychiatric rehabilitation, also known as psychosocial rehabilitation or psych rehab, is a collaborative, patient-centered approach that promotes individual empowerment, community integration, and improved quality of life for patients diagnosed with mental health conditions. Recovery is a critical component of outpatient and psychiatric rehabilitation treatment programs and focuses on helping individuals develop the skills to assist them in sustaining relationships, employment, and housing (Anthony, Cohen, Farkas, & Cagne, 2002). Services provided include psychopharmacological management, social skills, vocational training, and access to leisure activities. Physicians, nurse practitioners, social workers, nurses, and other mental health workers work collaboratively with patients toward, the goals of empowerment, social inclusion, decreased stigma, and psychosocial recovery. The roles of the PMHN in these programs include psychopharmacological management, psychoeducation, group facilitation, and case management.

Assertive Community Treatment

Assertive community treatment (ACT) offers services that are customized to the individual needs of the consumer, delivered by a team of practitioners to the patients where they live, and are available 24 hours a day. The goal of ACT is to prevent hospitalization and to develop skills for living in the community. The constant availability of practitioners provides support and assistance to patients and families whenever a crisis arises. Patients are provided emergency contact numbers; when a crisis occurs, mobile treatment teams provide outreach crisis prevention services. Linkage to appropriate services are negotiated and arranged. ACT teams have been effective in reducing service costs and decreasing inpatient hospital admissions (Kane & Blank, 2004).

Clubhouse Model

The clubhouse model was created in 1947 by a group of patients recovering from mental illness. They believed

that they could support each other through recovery and return to productive lives in society. This group, "We Are Not Alone" or WANA, eventually developed and became the Fountain House in Manhattan (www.fountainhouse.org). The clubhouse model differs from day treatment programs in that it is primarily a self-help model. The members hire the professional staff and partner with them to provide daily structure and support services as needed. The role of the PMHN in this setting differs from other health care settings in that the nurse does not directly care, but rather partners with the patients to encourage usage of coping techniques and interpersonal skills. The PMHN assists the patient to develop independent skills for problem solving and provides health care teaching as needed. Patients are considered as club members and share chores and duties. They may join work units within the clubhouse. As they become more skilled and socially adept, the members may transition to paid employment. There is no time limit on membership (*Clubhouse model*, n.d.).

Respite Care

Respite care is available to families who are the primary caregivers of a person with a psychiatric-mental illness, and who endure high levels of stress in the caregiving role. It provides short-term relief to families by supplying short-term housing for the patient. This type of service can dramatically lower stress for the family. PMHNs act as family advocates, assisting families in connecting with available services and providing psychological support. Unfortunately, accessing respite care can be problematic due to several obstacles, such as expense, a shortage of trained providers and quality programs, restrictive eligibility, and fragmented, duplicative systems.

Nursing Homes

Downsizing of psychiatric institutions in the 1970s combined with the aging of the United States population have resulted in increased numbers of patients with psychiatric-mental health disorders residing in nursing homes. After deinstitutionalization, many psychiatric-mental health patients were unable to live independently. Thus, they were discharged from state hospital facilities to intermediate and skilled-care nursing facilities. Nursing homes and equivalent settings have become an increasingly common residence for patients with mental illness in the later stages of life.

Facilities primarily engaged in the assessment, diagnosis, treatment, and care of mental health disorders are designated by the federal government as an institution of mental disease (IMD).

The holistic care and treatment of patients in intermediate and skilled nursing facilities incorporates the physical, emotional, social, and spiritual aspects of patient care. Generalist PMHNs working in these settings are in a unique position to advocate for patients in need of increased services for psychiatric-mental health issues. Advanced practice PMHNs assess, diagnose, and provide psychopharmacological and psychotherapeutic treatments to psychiatric-mental health residents in intermediate and skilled nursing facilities.

Outpatient Care

Along the continuum of care, patients discharged from inpatient settings are generally referred for outpatient follow-up. Outpatient services promote optimal symptom management and patient functioning while integrating the patient back into the community. This follow-up care and treatment, which may be intensive, daily, weekly, or monthly, involves supportive services including individual and/or group psychotherapy, medication management, substance abuse treatment, and skills training. In addition, many outpatient programs have developed specific tracts to address diagnostic and symptom-specific problems such as depression, anxiety, posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), and substance abuse.

With outpatient care, the patient's symptoms are managed as he or she is integrated back into the community.

Outpatient therapy affords the PMHN time not available during the course of time-limited inpatient hospitalization to employ the nursing process. Advanced practice PMHNs assess, diagnose, and provide psychotherapeutic treatments to outpatients in the clinic setting, often for a prolonged period of time. A variety of psychotherapies may be implemented to address specific mental disorders; for example, cognitive behavioral therapy or interpersonal therapy for depression, dialectical behavior therapy for borderline personality disorder, and cognitive rehabilitation for schizophrenia. Advanced practice PMHNs also collaborate with the physician and prescribe medications (based on the prescriptive privileges of the state in which they are practicing).

Research identifies that psychiatric patients have an increased risk of medical comorbidities including obesity, hyperlipidemia, hypothyroid, respiratory conditions hypertension, and diabetes and die on an average 25 years sooner than others (Piatt, Munetz, & Ritter,

2010). Due to the unique trusting therapeutic relationship developed with patients and the need for all patients receiving psychopharmacological therapy to have frequent metabolic monitoring, advanced practice PMHNs often use evidence-based models of integrated physical and mental health models of care to improve health outcomes (Solomon, Hanrahan, Hurford, DeCesaris, Josey, 2014).

Moreover, advanced practice PMHNs often assume the case manager role in the outpatient setting, acting as leaders, resources, teachers, surrogates, counselors, and technical experts in advocating for and assisting patients in negotiating the sometimes complex tasks of obtaining benefits, resolving legal issues, arranging medical appointments and transportation, and helping to manage conflict-intense relationships and unstable housing.

At times, a patient may present as a danger to self or others. Therefore, the level of care needs to be increased. In such situations, many advanced practice PMHNs working in the outpatient setting have also established liaisons with emergency services and inpatient psychiatric facilities to assist with hospitalization in the event of a crisis situation or decompensation in a patient's condition.

Home Care

Patients unable to attend outpatient services due to debilitating physical or psychiatric conditions are treated at home. Programs such as Visiting Nurse Service address the assessment, diagnosis, and treatment management of home care patients. PMHNs provide case management services to assess and address needs for psychiatric stabilization, medical follow-up, medication management, and compliance.

Primary Care

Simple uncomplicated cases of depression, anxiety, and substance abuse are more often treated in primary care settings due to recent changes in the health care system, stigma related to behavioral health treatment, and fiscal concerns (Olfson, Tobin, Cassells, & Weissman, 2003). The role of the PMHN, at the basic or advanced level of practice, is one of expert collaboration and consultation. The Affordable Care Act has improved access to care for millions of Americans. Along with this increase in access, the coordination of care delivery has shifted to the new patient-centered medical home model of care (Jardow, 2014). Primary care providers often request consultation or referral for challenging and complex cases. Many practice sites employ basic and advanced practice PMHNs as providers of direct mental health care within the primary care setting to provide psychoeducation about mental health issues, symptom management, and relaxation techniques via individual and/or group modality.

Primary care is often used to treat uncomplicated cases of depression, anxiety, and substance abuse.

HOUSING SERVICES

A stable living environment is an important factor in the ongoing recovery process of the psychiatric-mental health patient. Homelessness increases stress on the individual, contributes to a decline in physical health and noncompliance with psychiatric-mental health treatment, and increases the risk of substance abuse, illegal activity, and arrest (Boyd, 2005). A large percentage of homeless people have been identified as mentally ill. Successful reintegration into the community necessitates appropriate living situations for patients with psychiatric-mental health disabilities. The importance of adequate living situations was emphasized by the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA) in 2011. SAMHSA issued a report documenting the following findings regarding homeless populations:

- *34.7% have chronic substance use issues*
- *30% report some form of mental health problem, and 26.2% meet criteria for serious mental illnesses*
- *60% report having experienced lifetime mental health problems*
- *80% have experienced lifetime alcohol and/or drug problems*
- *Their symptoms are often active and untreated, making it extremely difficult for them to meet basic needs for food, shelter, and safety*
- *These individuals are impoverished, and many are not receiving benefits for which they may be eligible*
- *Up to 50% have co-occurring mental illness and substance use disorders*
- *People with serious mental illnesses have greater difficulty exiting homelessness than others. They are homeless more often and for longer periods of time than other homeless populations. Many have been on the streets for years*

- *More than 92% of mothers who are homeless have experienced severe physical and/or sexual abuse during their lifetime*
- *Children who are homeless experience higher rates of emotional and behavioral problems than low-income housed children, 97% move as many as three times a year, 25% witness violence*

Assessment of the patient's living situation is a key responsibility of the PMHN at any level of care. Appropriate referral for services and advocacy for individuals without stable housing must be part of the nurse's practice. The PMHN, in collaboration with other mental health professionals such as social workers, assesses the patient's need for housing and makes referrals to the appropriate level of care. Although not usually employed in alternative housing settings, the nurse would be responsible for maintaining communication and collaborating with the staff of these settings to ensure that the patient is receiving optimum care and services.

Personal Care Homes

Personal care homes are residences that provide shelter, meals, supervision, and assistance with personal care tasks. These residences typically accept the elderly, individuals with physical or mental disabilities, or those who for other reasons cannot care for themselves but do not require medical or nursing home care. Although most of these homes are licensed by the state, this varies from area to area. Many provide assistance with medication administration to help maintain medication compliance

Supervised Apartments

This form of housing is appropriate for patients who are fairly independent with activities of daily living. The patient, or the patient and a roommate, live in an apartment and have regular visits from a supervisor who offers support as needed.

Therapeutic Foster Care

In this living situation, specially trained families take children or adults with psychiatric-mental health disorders into their homes and provide a stable, family-oriented living environment. The patient is expected to contribute to completion of daily chores. In most cases, he or she is also involved in some form of treatment program. Family members are trained to deal with medication supervision and crisis management.

Board and Care/Room and Board Homes

Board and care homes are privately owned homes that are usually licensed by state agencies who provide a room (usually shared), meals, provision of medication monitoring and round-the-clock supervision. Room and board homes are unlicensed by the state and provide a room (usually shared) and meals. There is little to no supervision other than preparation of meals.

Halfway House/Sober House

A halfway house is similar to a group home but generally has more staff supervision and an active treatment program running throughout the day. Residents receive intensive individual and group counseling. Halfway houses designed solely for the treatment of substance abuse issues are generally referred to as sober houses. Again, there is an active rehabilitation program in place while the patient secures new employment, housing, and a support network. **How Would You Respond? 25-1** provides an example for this type of housing situation.

Personal care homes are most often used for patients who are elderly, have physical or mental disabilities, or cannot care for themselves but would not require medical or nursing home care.

THE CONTINUUM OF AMBULATORY BEHAVIORAL HEALTH SERVICES

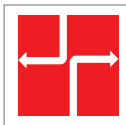
SAMHSA (2015) provides current information regarding a wide array of current evidence-based treatments in the ambulatory setting. They can be reached at SAMHSA's National Registry of Evidence-based Programs and Practices (NREPP). The Association for Ambulatory Behavioral Health care (AABH) has developed a model for the movement of patients along the continuum of available services to the most clinically appropriate and cost-effective level of care. The model addresses variables related to services and to patients.

Ambulatory Level 1 services are inclusive of partial hospital programs and other intensive hospital diversion services, including home-based crisis intervention or stabilization services (ACT teams, mobile crisis teams). Patients appropriate for this level of care demonstrate

disabling to severe symptoms resulting from either an acute illness or exacerbation of a chronic illness. The goal of treatment is to stabilize the crisis and reduce acute symptoms. This level may also include a less intensive residential component such as the family treatment home for children. **Table 25-1** summarizes the service and patient variables for the three levels of ambulatory behavioral health care.

Ambulatory Level 2 services are characterized by active treatment with rehabilitation and transitional services that incorporate a stable, staff-supported milieu extending beyond the treatment setting and into the patient's community. Level 2 patients may function adequately in other structured settings, such as school or work. Milieu-based intensive outpatient programs, day treatment programs, and vocational training programs in which patients are guided to achieve work goals and given the opportunity to work in a community setting are examples of Level 2 services.

Ambulatory Level 3 services are offered under the direction of a coordinated treatment plan. However, these services do not necessarily include a stable patient community or structured program activities. This level also represents a step up from outpatient care for individuals who may need a more intensive array of services. Level 3 services are differentiated from outpatient care by the number of hours of daily and weekly involvement, the multimodal approach, and the availability of specified crisis intervention services 24 hours per day. Patients treated at this level of care either maintain their role functioning in several areas or have adequate family and/or community support such that they do not require a sense of community solely from treatment.



HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 25-1: A PATIENT'S EXPERIENCE ALONG THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

The patient is a 34-year-old single male with a history of paranoid schizophrenia diagnosed shortly after leaving home to attend college when he was 20 years old. Although living away from home for the first time, the patient became increasingly suspicious of his dormmates. He gradually became delusional that they were plotting against him and became too fearful to leave his dorm room. Campus counseling services evaluated him and he was hospitalized for the first time. He did not return to college. He returned to live with his mother who is described as "odd" and extremely controlling. She discourages the patient from having social relationships and demands that he stay at home with her.

She does not believe in medication and has encouraged the patient to stop taking his antipsychotic medication on several occasions. He was hospitalized three more times over the years, related to stopping his medication and becoming psychotic and homebound.

The patient is currently hospitalized on an inpatient, general psychiatric unit. He presented with the same symptoms and medication noncompliance. He has been amenable to education about his illness and medications and states that he feels "better" when taking medication. He expressed fear that if he returns to live with his mother, he will decompensate again. He describes feeling lonely, isolated, and "useless." His current aftercare plan includes returning home and seeing a therapist twice a month.

As his nurse, you are attending a discharge planning meeting regarding this patient. In addition to you, the meeting will include his physician, social worker, and psychiatric rehabilitation therapist. How would you respond?

CRITICAL THINKING QUESTIONS

1. *What concerns will you share with the team?*
2. *Will you recommend any changes to his discharge plan?*
3. *Would you recommend a meeting to involve the patient's mother? Anyone else?*

HOW WOULD YOU RESPOND? 25-1: (*CONT.*)
APPLYING THE CONCEPTS

As his nurse, you need to present a coherent assessment of the patient and the problems that must be addressed in the discharge plan. These problems include: continuing isolation, lack of meaningful life goals, inability to cope with mother's demands/influence, and medication noncompliance. Based on the failure of similar aftercare plans and subsequent rehospitalizations, you will need to suggest alternative discharge plans.

Ideally, the patient should be referred to a halfway house. This would allow the patient to separate from his mother, but unlike his attempt at college, he would have intense support in terms of individual and group counseling. In addition, he would be less isolated with the opportunity to develop social relationships. Because halfway houses also incorporate active rehabilitation programs, the patient could develop skills that would lead to employment. This might also help the patient achieve meaningful life goals.

The major obstacle to healthy functioning identified by the patient is his mother. Any plans for the patient not including the mother are likely to fail. The patient must be reassured that the mother has participated in the planning and supports it. If the mother is resistant, you and the team must make all efforts to support the patient's decision. In addition to the mother, the patient's current therapist must be included in the planning. The therapist can serve as an ally and advocate for the patient after discharge.

Finally, as his nurse, you should plan on making at least two postdischarge phone calls to the patient. The purpose of these calls is therapeutic, not social, and this should be clarified with the patient before discharge. The purpose of the calls is to complete the nursing process stage of evaluation. You will want to find out how the plan is working, if the interventions succeeded, and if there are any adjustments needed to the plan. Your assessment of the plan should be shared with the patient's current treatment team.

Behavioral ambulatory care is classified into three levels, with Level 1 being appropriate for patients experiencing disabling to severe symptoms.

SPECIALIZED ROLES OF PMHNS WITHIN THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

PMHNs assume a wide variety of roles within the continuum of care. Some of the more specialized roles are described here.

Self-Employment

The practice of self-employed advanced practice PMHNs is governed by the individual state's licensing and/or health and public safety laws. The requirements and scope of practice for all advanced practice nurses are further defined in these statutes. Differences among state statutes result in differences in the level of independent practice, presence or absence of prescription privileges, and legislative authorization for reimbursement.

Advanced practice PMHNs provide direct patient mental health services, including psychotherapy and psychopharmacological treatments to individuals, families, and groups. When in private practice, these nurses treat self-pay patients and contract with insurance companies, managed care companies, home care agencies, and Employee Assistance Program (EAP) services. In addition, nurse entrepreneurs form nurse-owned corporations providing mental health service contracts to industries and employers.

Applying the nursing process, the self-employed advanced practice PMHN performs a thorough assessment of the patient based on interviews, behavioral observations, and corroborative information provided by the patient's family, employers, and/or friends. A diagnosis is formulated with the patient and a treatment plan is developed and implemented. Periodic evaluation and revision of the

TABLE 25-1: SERVICE AND PATIENT VARIABLES FOR THE LEVELS OF AMBULATORY CARE

SERVICE VARIABLE	AMBULATORY LEVEL 1	AMBULATORY LEVEL 2	AMBULATORY LEVEL 3
Service function	Crisis stabilization and acute symptom reduction; serves as alternative to and method to prevent hospitalization	Stabilization, symptom reduction, and prevention of relapse	Coordinated treatment for prevention of decline in functioning where outpatient services cannot adequately meet patient need
Scheduled programming	Minimum of 4 hours per day scheduled and intensive treatment over 4–7 days	Minimum of 3–4 hours per day, at least 2–3 days per week	A minimum of 4 hours per week
Crisis backup availability	An organized and integrated system of 24-hour crisis backup with immediate access to current clinical and treatment information	A 24-hour crisis and consultation service	A 24-hour crisis and consultation service
Medical involvement	Medical supervision	Medical consultation	Medical consultation available
Accessibility	Capable of admitting within 24 hours	Capable of admitting within 48 hours	Capable of admitting within 72 hours
Milieu	Preplanned, consistent, and therapeutic; primarily within treatment setting	Active therapeutic within both treatment setting and home and community	Active therapeutic; primarily within home and community
Structure	High degree of structure and scheduling	Regularly scheduled, individualized	Individualized and coordinated
Responsibility and control	Staff aggressively monitors and supports patient and family	Monitoring and support shared with patient, family, and support system	Monitoring and support placed primarily with patient, family, and support system
Service examples	Partial hospitalization programs; day treatment programs; intensive in-home crisis intervention; outpatient detoxification services	Psychosocial rehabilitation; intensive outpatient programs; behavioral aids; assertive community treatment; 23-hour observation beds	23-hour respite beds; multimodal outpatient services; aftercare; clubhouse programs; in-home services
Level of functioning	Severe impairment in multiple areas of daily life	Marked impairment in at least one area of daily life	Moderate impairment in at least one area of daily life
Psychiatric signs and symptoms	Severe to disabling symptoms related to acute condition or exacerbation of severe/persistent disorder	Moderate to severe symptoms related to acute condition or exacerbation of severe/persistent disorder	Moderate symptoms related to acute condition or exacerbation of severe/persistent disorder
Risk/dangerousness	Marked instability and/or dangerousness with high risk of confinement	Moderate instability and/or dangerousness with some risk of confinement	Mild instability with limited dangerousness and low risk for confinement
Commitment to treatment/follow-through	Inability to form more than initial treatment contract requires close monitoring and support	Limited ability to form extended treatment contract requires frequent monitoring and support	Ability to sustain treatment contract with intermittent monitoring and support
Social support system	Impaired ability to access or use caretaker, family, or community support	Limited ability to form relationships or seek support	Ability to form and maintain relationships outside of treatment

Source: From Association for Ambulatory Behavioral Healthcare (AABH) (2010).

plan of care and patient response to treatment is essential to achieve and sustain optimal patient outcomes.

Telehealth

TELEHEALTH refers to psychiatric intervention via telecommunications such as phone or video conferencing. It provides an expanded means of communication that promotes access to health care for patients living in rural communities or communities without adequate mental health services. Problems with access to care may be related to numerous factors, such as clinician shortages, lack of transportation, or poverty. Access to psychiatric-mental health services can be improved and the reach of clinicians can extend beyond the walls of a traditional psychiatric facility, thus expanding continuity of care. A wide variety of assessment and treatment interventions, including tools to assess and manage symptoms, medication adherence checks, and the provision of support and psychoeducation can be delivered to patients using remote monitoring systems.

The PMHN may use electronic means of communication such as telephone consultation, computers, e-mail, and interactive video sessions to establish and maintain a therapeutic relationship with patients by creating an alternative sense of nursing presence, a way of continuing to be present in the patient's life when actual physical presence is not an option. For example, research suggests that a nurse-assisted online cognitive-behavioral self-management intervention for war-related PTSD helped to reduce PTSD symptoms (Engel et al., 2015). **Evidence-Based Practice 25-1** highlights this study. Additional research shows that an integrated telehealth nurse intervention (I-TEAM) helped to improve chronic illness and comorbid depression in a home health care setting (Gellis, Kenaley, & Ten Have, 2014). **Evidence-Based Practice 25-2** highlights this study.

Telehealth needs to be differentiated from telemedicine. *Telemedicine* often refers only to the provision of clinical services, whereas the term *telehealth* can refer to clinical and nonclinical online services including education, administration, and research. Issues related to confidentiality may arise with telehealth encounters. PMHNs need to be aware of state, federal, and international regulations about this issue when engaging in telehealth services, and take measures to ensure patient confidentiality and the integrity of all transmitted documentation.

Telehealth includes services provided by telephone, computers, e-mail, and interactive video sessions.

Case Management

Case management is the coordination of integrated care that may be provided to individuals, families, and specific populations who require health care services. The goal of case management is to decrease fragmentation of care and ensure access to appropriate, individualized, and cost-effective treatment along the continuum of care.

PMHN case managers use a holistic approach in treating individuals, families, and communities that is cognizant and respectful of cultural and spiritual norms and values.

To operate complex case management systems effectively, team leaders must be experienced, trained mental health professionals (Rapp, 1998). PMHNs have been identified as a key ingredient for achieving positive patient outcomes in case management teams (McGrew & Bond, 1995), with a knowledge of systems and an ability to work among systems, connecting patients to services, and serving as an important safety net in the event of service gaps (ANA, 2014).

PMHN case managers may function as direct care providers and/or may coordinate care delivered by others. They locate providers, coordinate primary care and mental health appointments, and ensure that the patient receives the treatment and care necessary to maintain optimum health. These points of connection among agencies are vital to the realization of individualized recovery plans (SAMHSA, 2012). Barriers to care may be identified, addressed, and overcome to maximize patient outcomes. In addition, the PMHN case manager must be highly proficient and knowledgeable about psychopathology, group and individual psychotherapies, family systems theory, psychopharmacology, community resources, and crisis intervention.

A form of case management, called intensive case management, is available to adults and children requiring care for serious mental illness and emotional disturbances. The seriously and persistently mentally ill may require this type of service. PMHN intensive case managers generally have a lesser case load and higher levels of proficiency with this population. See Chapter 7 for an in-depth discussion of psychiatric-mental health case management.

Disaster Response

Psychiatric-mental health nurses have mobilized and responded to recent man-made and environmental disasters, including the 9/11 terrorist attacks, the Haitian earthquake, and Hurricane Katrina in New Orleans. Both basic and advanced practice PMHNs provided mental health counseling, debriefing, and support services to survivors,

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 25-1: NURSE-ASSISTED ONLINE SELF-MANAGEMENT FOR PTSD IN PRIMARY CARE

STUDY

Engel, C., Litz, B., Macruder, K., Harper, E., Gore, K., Stein, N.,…Coe, R. (2015). Delivery of self-training and education for stressful situations (DESTRESS-PC: A randomized trial of nurse assisted online self-management for PTSD in primary care). *General Hospital Psychiatry, 37*(4), 323–328. doi:dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2015.04.007

SUMMARY

The researcher used a randomized controlled trial examining the effectiveness of a nurse-assisted online cognitive-behavioral self-management intervention (DESTRESS-PC) for war-related PTSD, compared with usual primary care of PTSD treatment to reduce PTSD symptoms.

Individuals in the online group showed a significant decrease in PTSD compared with the usual treatment group. The more logins the online group treatment had, the more the treatment group had significant symptom improvement.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

The findings suggest that DESTRESS-PC may be a promising intervention and provide another treatment method for primary care patients with PTSD. Future research to improve adherence of treatment was suggested to improve lasting outcomes.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *What are the elements of cognitive behavioral interventions?*
2. *What other disorders might this online intervention be helpful for?*

families, and emergency workers. The Red Cross offers disaster certification training to prepare PMHNs for disaster response. In addition, the American Nurses Credentialing Center (ANCC) is currently developing an interprofessional National Healthcare Disaster Certification.

Forensic Nursing

FORENSIC NURSING refers to specialty practice that provides services to the legal and criminal system. Research confirms a high rate of psychiatric-mental health disorders in the prison population (Fazel & Danesh, 2002). Forensic PMHNs at the basic and advanced practice level provide mental health services within the prison system by assessing, diagnosing, and treating the forensic population. Forensic nurses may become certified by the ANCC. As in all other psychiatric-mental health settings, advanced practice PMHNs provide psychiatric treatment, including therapy and psychopharmacological interventions. PMHNs, both at the generalist and advanced practice level, provide education to prison staff about psychiatric-mental health issues. (See Chapter 26 for additional discussion of forensic nursing.)

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 25-2:
INTEGRATED TELEHEALTH FOR OLDER ADULTS REDUCES DEPRESSION AND DECREASES EMERGENCY ROOM VISITS

STUDY

Gellis, Z. D., Kenaley, B. L., & Ten Have, T. (2014). Integrated telehealth care for chronic illness and depression in geriatric home care patients: The Integrated Telehealth Education and Activation of Mood (I-TEAM) study. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 62*(5), 889–895.

SUMMARY

The researchers used a randomized control trial design with medically frail older homebound patients to evaluate the depression, health, and problem solving using an intervention (I-TEAM) whereby a telehealth nurse conducted daily telemonitoring of symptoms, body weight, and medication use; provided 8 weekly sessions of problem-solving treatment for depression; and provided communication with physicians, who prescribed antidepressants. Control participants were allocated to usual care with in-home nursing plus psychoeducation. All patients had congestive heart failure or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The results at both 3 and 6 months showed a 50% lower depression score in the I-TEAM group and significantly improved their problem-solving skills and self-efficacy in managing their medical condition. The I-TEAM group also had significantly fewer ED visits but did not have significantly fewer days in the hospital at 12 months after baseline.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

The I-TEAM intervention can be used by nurses to improve clinical and health care outcomes for medically ill depressed older adults in a home care setting across urban, suburban, and rural home care settings. The authors state that the future of telehealth services is encouraging as 42 states offer Medicaid coverage and 14 states have private insurance coverage for telehealth services. The Department of Veterans Affairs is a national telehealth provider.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How might telehealth improve access to care for other populations?*
2. *How might the results of this study affect the cost of health care?*

SUMMARY POINTS

- The continuum of care involves a system of integrated settings, services, health care clinicians, and care levels covering the range from illness to wellness.
- The least restrictive environment is the guiding principle underlying the concept of the continuum of care.
- The level of care is influenced by factors such as current research findings, cost-effectiveness, reimbursement levels, social factors, and the availability of pharmacological interventions.
- Acute inpatient care is typically short term, with the goal of stabilizing the patient's symptoms for discharge to a safe and therapeutic living environment with an appropriate level of outpatient treatment. The therapeutic milieu is the key component of acute inpatient care.
- Community-based care is provided in various settings, such as in the patient's home, worksite, school, clinics, HMOs, homeless shelter, senior centers, group homes, and churches.
- ACT offers customized services for an individual via a team of practitioners who are available 24 hours a day.
- The clubhouse model is primarily a self-help model in which members hire the professional staff and partner with them to provide daily structure and support services.
- Examples of housing services include: personal care homes, supervised apartments, and halfway houses.
- Ambulatory behavioral health services are categorized into three levels based on service and patient variables.
- Nurses can assume specialized roles along the continuum of care, including self-employment, telehealth, case management, disaster response, and forensic nursing.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. What is meant by "least restrictive environment?"

a. An unlocked unit
b. Outpatient setting
c. The level of care that provides needed safety measures with the least limitation of freedom
d. Involuntary admission

2. Psychiatric-mental health nursing employs the purposeful use of self as its art, based on whose nursing theory?

a. Peplau
b. Nightingale
c. Watson
d. Swanson

3. When a patient is hospitalized on a medical unit but requires psychiatric care as well, this is generally provided by:

a. The unit nurses
b. The unit physicians
c. The psychiatric consultation/liaison team
d. The case manager

4. A patient admitted to an inpatient unit is assessed by the nurse as requiring a Spanish language interpreter. What are the nurse's options?

a. A family member
b. A certified Spanish language interpreter
c. A visitor
d. A mental health assistant

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

5. A patient is being referred for a Level 2 ambulatory behavioral health care service. Which of the following might the nurse expect to be used?

- **a.** Partial hospitalization program
- **b.** Assertive community treatment
- **c.** Day treatment program
- **d.** Clubhouse program

6. A PMHN is working with patients with psychiatric-mental health disorders who are incarcerated. The nurse is engaging in which of the following?

- **a.** Forensic nursing
- **b.** Disaster response
- **c.** Case management
- **d.** Telehealth

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Nurses Association (ANA), American Psychiatric Nurses Association, and International Society of Psychiatric-Mental Health Nursing Practice. (2014). *Psychiatric-mental health nursing: Scope and standards practice*. Silver Spring, MD: American Nurses Publishing. Retrieved from nursebooks.org

Anthony, W. Cohen, M., Farkas, M., & Cagne, C. (2002). *Psychiatric rehabilitation* (2nd ed.). Boston, MA: Center for Psychiatric Rehabilitation.

Association for Ambulatory Behavioral Healthcare (AABH). (2010). *A position paper from the Association for Ambulatory Behavioral Healthcare*. Retrieved from www.aabh.org/content/continuum-ambulatory-behavioral-health-services

Boyd, M. A. (2005). *Psychiatric nursing contemporary practice* (4th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Clubhouse model of service for adults with mental illness. (n.d.). Retrieved from http://www2.nami.org/factsheets/supportedemployment_clubhousemodelFS.pdf

Engel, C., Litz, B., Macruder, K., Harper, E., Gore, K., Stein, N., … Coe, R. (2015). Delivery of self-training and education for stressful situations (DESTRESS-PC: A randomized trial of nurse assisted online self-management for PTSD in primary care). *General Hospital Psychiatry, 37*(4), 323–328. doi:dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2015.04.007

Fazel, S., & Danesh, J. (2002). Serious mental disorder in 23000 prisoners: A systematic review of 62 surveys. *Lancet (London, England), 359*(9306), 545–550.

Gellis, Z. D., Kenaley, B. L., & Ten Have, T. (2014). Integrated telehealth care for chronic illness and depression in geriatric home care patients: The Integrated Telehealth Education and Activation of Mood (I-TEAM) study. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 62*(5), 889–895.

Jardow, R. L. (2014). Patient-centered medical homes: Presenting a role for the advanced practice mental health nurse. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services, 52*, 3, 26–32.

Kane, C. F., & Blank, M. B. (2004). NPACT: Enhancing programs of assertive community treatment for the seriously mentally ill. *Community Mental Health Journal, 40*(6), 549–559.

McGrew, J. H., & Bond, G. R. (1995). Critical ingredients of assertive community treatment: Judgments of the experts. *Journal of Mental Health Administration, 22*(2), 113–125.

Olfson, M., Tobin, J. N., Cassells, A., & Weissman, M. (2003). Improving the detection of drug abuse, alcohol abuse, and depression in community health centers. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved, 14*(3), 386–402.

Peplau, H. (1991). *Interpersonal relations in nursing a conceptual frame of reference for psychiatric nursing.* New York, NY: Springer Publishing Company.

Piatt, E. E., Munetz, M. R., & Ritter, C. (2010). An examination of premature mortality among decedents with serious mental illness and those in the general population. *Psychiatric Services (Washington, D.C.), 61*(7), 663–668.

Rapp, C. A. (1998). The active ingredients of effective case management: A research synthesis. *Community Mental Health Journal, 34*(4), 363–380.

Solomon, P., Hanrahan, N. P., Hurford, M., DeCesaris, M., & Josey, L. (2014). Lessons learned from implementing a pilot RCT of transitional care model for individuals with serious mental illness. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 28*(4), 250–255.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2011). *Current statistics on the prevalence and characteristics of people experiencing homelessness in the United States.* Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov/homelessness-resource-center

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2012). Retrieved from www.integration.samhsa.gov/health-wellness/wellness-strategies/wellness.pdf

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2015). *SAMHSA's national registry of evidence-based programs and practices NREPP*. Retrieved from http://www.samhsa.gov/nrepp

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 26

VULNERABLE POPULATIONS AND THE ROLE OF THE FORENSIC NURSE

Melanie S. Lint

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify certain populations as being legally classified as vulnerable
2. Describe the role of nurses in working with these populations
3. Demonstrate understanding of the challenges experienced by vulnerable populations related to care access and provision
4. Explain the specialty practice of forensic nursing
5. Informed consent

KEY TERMS

Developmental disability
Disparity
Forensic nursing
Homeless person
Informed consent
Intellectual disability
Transinstitutionalization
Vulnerable populations

VULNERABLE POPULATIONS are those groups typically defined by race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, geography (urban or rural), gender, age, disability status, and risk status related to sex and gender. These populations are highly visible throughout society and include, but are not limited to, children, elderly, minority groups, those with intellectual disabilities, the homeless, and those who are incarcerated. The demographics of these populations, highlighted in **Box 26-1,** are constantly changing and it is difficult to determine at any point in time which group consists of the largest numbers. For example, the numbers of homeless individuals actually may be higher than that for minority groups, but due to lack of reporting about the homeless population, minority groups may be identified as being larger. Regardless of the numbers, vulnerable populations experience **DISPARITY**, or lack of equality, when it comes to health and health care.

According to *Healthy People 2020*, the term *disparities* often refers to racial or ethnic disparities. However, disparities can result from additional conditions such as age; socioeconomic status; geographic location; cognitive, sensory, or physical disability; religion; mental health; sexual identity; and gender. According to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS; 2010), "if a health outcome is seen in a greater or lesser extent between populations, there is disparity."

Vulnerable populations and health disparities were addressed in the plan for transforming the mental health care system by the President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health (2003). One of the major goals identified was to eliminate disparities in mental health care. Specifically, the report identified concerns about the involvement of people with mental disorders in the criminal justice system and about the homelessness among those with mental disorders as national priorities (McNeil, Binder, & Robinson, 2005). In addition, various governmental agencies such as the Office of Minority & Health Disparities (OMHD), Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), Institute of Medicine (IOM), the Surgeon General's National Prevention Strategy, and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) are working to eliminate health disparities for vulnerable populations in the hopes of reducing the impact of these disparities on the overall health of the U.S. population. The National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI) also helps to advocate for elimination of barriers to mental health treatment for vulnerable populations.

All nurses, in all areas of practice and all settings, are ethically bound to provide care to patients regardless of their level of functioning, age, race, medical or mental health diagnoses, or economic status in life. When working with vulnerable populations, the nurse plays a major role in advocating for vulnerable patients because they may be unable to do so themselves. When the patient can do for himself or herself, the nurse allows him or her to do so. When the patient has physical or mental limitations, the nurse helps the patient with what he or she needs and assumes the responsibility to protect those who cannot protect themselves.

Psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs), at the basic or advanced practice level, frequently interact with patients belonging to vulnerable population groups. One example of an advanced practice role in working with a vulnerable population is that of the forensic nurse. The forensic nurse most commonly works with individuals involved with the criminal justice system and with their families.

This chapter describes the vulnerable populations most often encountered by PMHNs. It addresses the major mental health issues commonly involved and the nurse's role when working with each of these populations. This chapter also explores the specialty practice of forensic nursing, describing the requirements for practice and the forensic nurse's roles and functions.

BOX 26-1: SELECTED VULNERABLE POPULATIONS

- Children
- Elderly
- Minority groups
- Individuals with intellectual disabilities
- Homeless individuals
- Individuals who are incarcerated

When working with vulnerable populations, nurses function as advocates for those populations and work to ensure the safety of all involved.

CHILDREN AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Children are vulnerable because they often are not old enough to advocate for themselves. In some cases, they

may grow up in foster care settings without one or both biological parents able to care and advocate for them. They may be born to homeless parents or live with parents who become homeless due to illness, loss of jobs, or loss of housing. Mental health care services may be inadequate and/or inaccessible for lower income families or those who lack any income. Children may not receive mental health services due to the stigma of mental illness. Sometimes, youth are not diagnosed and treated for mental health issues until they enter the criminal justice system. In addition, many states have a shortage of psychiatrists and advanced practice PMHNs who specialize in treatment of children and adolescents. Often their mental health concerns go untreated. Unfortunately, psychiatric conditions can become chronic and recur if they go untreated.

Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is a disorder that often comes to mind when thinking about mental health issues in children. However, children also suffer from anxiety disorders, depression, conduct disorders, and intellectual and developmental disabilities. Children are also victims of physical, emotional, and sexual abuse. Adolescents are increasingly more likely to become involved with substance use and abuse.

Nurse's Role When Working With Children

The nurse works to gather information about the child, the child's family, and his or her functioning ability in school if the child is old enough for school. In addition, the nurse gathers information about the child's social relationships. For example, how does the child get along with his or her peers? Is the child's behavior appropriate for his chronological and developmental age? Does the child shrink, retreat, or appear frightened when adults approach? Also, information about the child's growth and development is important. Has the child reached his or her appropriate milestones? Has the child shown any regression in development? For example, a child who was previously toilet-trained begins wetting the bed. This information may provide clues to possible abuse. School nurses as well as teachers are excellent resources because they are often in a position to observe a child's functioning in school and with their peers. If abuse is suspected, nurses are ethically and legally bound to report suspected child abuse. (See Chapters 21 and 22 for an in-depth discussion of mental health issues related to children and adolescents.)

AGING INDIVIDUALS AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Another vulnerable population that nurses in all areas of practice will encounter is the elderly. People aged 65 years and older are at the highest risk of completed suicide. In 2002, older adults accounted for 25% of completed suicides, yet they only accounted for 12% of the U.S. population. White men older than 85 years have an especially high rate of suicide (59 per 100,000; Ellson, 2007). Older Asian American women have the highest suicide rate among all women older than 65 years in the United States (Office of Minority Health, DHHS). The possible risk factors for higher suicide rates in later life include: older age; male gender; living alone; mental illness; access to firearms; social isolation; loneliness; depression; recently widowed, divorced, or separated; multiple chronic illnesses; alcohol or substance abuse; hoarding of medications; need for multiple medications; and feelings of hopelessness and worthlessness (Ellson, 2007). In addition, older adults are more vulnerable to abuse because of social isolation and mental impairment such as dementia or Alzheimer's disease. Elder abuse can affect people of all ethnic backgrounds and social status and affect both men and women. Family members are more often the abusers than any other group. Spouses and adult children are the most common abusers of family members. Elder abuse is a family issue. (See Chapter 23 for an in-depth discussion of issues related to the elderly; Chapter 24 for additional information on elder abuse; and Chapter 16 for an in-depth discussion of cognitive disorders such as dementia of the Alzheimer's type.)

Nurse's Role When Working With the Elderly

The role of the nurse when working with the elderly is diverse. It may involve helping to improve the patient's overall health and mental health well-being. Activities may include conducting depression screening or screening for dementia and for suicide risk at a nearby senior center or assisted living community, possibly in conjunction with other screening programs, such as hypertension and diabetes screening. Nurses visiting elderly patients in the home assess for depression and suicidal thoughts. They can also teach patients and families about the signs and symptoms that need to be identified. This is important as "older adults with depression have a high suicide attempt and success rate" (Shawler, 2010). PMHNs might be involved in individual, group, and family therapies to assist patients who

are struggling with symptoms of anxiety and/or depression. They may help patients set up weekly medication boxes to ensure that they are more likely to remember to take their medications.

The PMHN also is ever vigilant in assessing for possible abuse. If abuse is suspected, laws in most states require health care providers to report suspected abuse or neglect to appropriate law enforcement agencies and adult protective services. (See Chapter 24 for more information about the nurse's role in elder abuse.)

Specialized educational opportunities are available for registered nurses who provide direct care to vulnerable older adults in various settings. One course developed by the International Association of Forensic Nurses (IAFN) provides nurses with the essential knowledge and skills for responding appropriately to elder mistreatment. More information for those interested can be obtained from the IAFN website, www.iafn.org.

Populations at the opposite ends of the age spectrum, that is, children and the elderly, are considered vulnerable.

MINORITY GROUPS AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Racial and ethnic minority groups are identified based on federal categories. These categories include: African Americans (Blacks), American Indians and Alaska Natives, Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders, and White Americans (Whites). Hispanic American (Latino) is an ethnicity and may apply to a person of any race.

According to the report *Mental Health: Culture, Race, and Ethnicity: A Supplement to Mental Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*, minorities have less access to and availability of mental health services (DHHS, 1999). In addition, minorities in treatment often receive a poorer quality of mental health care. For example, errors in diagnoses are made more often for African Americans than Whites for certain disorders such as schizophrenia and mood disorders. Moreover, minorities are underrepresented in mental health research.

The African American Community Mental Health Fact Sheet published by the NAMI (www.nami.org) states that "African Americans in the United States are less likely to receive diagnoses and treatments for their mental illnesses than Caucasian Americans." Reasons cited for this disparity include stigma and misunderstanding about mental illness in the African American community; cultural biases against health care and mental health care professionals by African Americans; reliance on family, religious, and social communities for social support rather than health care professionals; and lack of health insurance for both medical and mental health care in this population.

The NAMI (2004) also cites that some mental illnesses are more prevalent in the African American population when compared with other cultures in the United States. For example, in a study investigating suicide rates over a 15-year period, the rate of suicide among African Americans was dramatically increased when compared with that of White Americans for the same age group. The suicide rate increased 233% for African Americans (NAMI, 2004). The study also showed that African Americans somaticize or manifest physical illness related to mental health problems more often than White Americans. Moreover, some studies suggest that African Americans metabolize medications more slowly than White Americans but they often receive higher doses of psychotropic medications, which may result in an increase in side effects and a decrease in medication compliance (NAMI, 2004). Genetic variation, exposure to different diets and environments, and other medications in use contribute to ethnic differences in metabolism of psychotropic medications and the effects of drugs on target organs (Flaskerud, 2000).

Data for other minority groups also reveal disparities. For example, American Indian/Alaska Natives are five times more likely to die of alcohol-related causes than Whites. The suicide rate in this population is 50% higher than the national rate. The availability of mental health services is severely limited by the rural, isolated location of many of these communities.

Nearly half of Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders have problems with availability of mental health services because of limited English proficiency and lack of providers with appropriate language skills. Refugees from Southeast Asian countries are at risk for posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) as a result of trauma and terror preceding their immigration to the United States. Because of the difference in their rates of drug metabolism, some Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders may require lower doses of certain drugs than those prescribed for Whites.

Moreover, Hispanic American youth are at a significantly higher risk for poor mental health than White youth by virtue of higher rates of depressive and anxiety symptoms, as well as higher rates of suicidal ideation and suicide attempts (DHHS, 1999).

Access to and availability of mental health services are limited for many minority groups.

Nurse's Role When Working With Minority Groups

One of the recommendations of the President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health is to help provide better access to mental health services for members of minority groups and people in rural areas and to provide culturally competent care (President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health, 2003). When working with members of minority groups, the nurse must be sensitive to the traditions and customs of people of that minority group, especially related to health care in general as well as mental health care. According to Hill (2006), cultural differences between the professional nurse and their patients increase the complexity of providing care within the health care environment. Thus, to improve the health status of ethnic minority populations, nurses must first reflect on their own beliefs and values to assist them to respect the individuality of their patients and to provide culturally competent care (Hill, 2006).

INDIVIDUALS WITH INTELLECTUAL DISABILITIES AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY, formerly known as mental retardation, is a term used when a person's ability to learn at an expected level and function in daily life are limited. It is classified in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (5th ed.; *DSM–5*; American Psychiatric Association [APA], 2013), with specific criteria.

Intellectual disabilities are caused by a problem that begins prior to birth up until the child turns 18. The cause is unknown in many children. However, intellectual disabilities may result from injury, disease, or a problem in the brain. Examples of common causes of intellectual disability include Down's syndrome, fetal alcohol syndrome, genetic conditions, and infections that happen before birth (CDC, 2005). The level of intellectual disability can vary greatly from a problem that is very severe to one that is slight. Individuals may have trouble taking care of themselves and letting others know their wants and needs. Sometimes the disabilities coexist with physical illnesses as well.

Intellectual disabilities are a type of **DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITY**, a diverse group of severe chronic conditions that are due to physical and/or mental impairments. Individuals with developmental disabilities have problems with major activities of daily living such as mobility, learning, language, self-help, and independent living. These disabilities begin at any time, from development through 22 years of age. They often last a lifetime (CDC, 2004).

Nurse's Role When Working With Individuals With Intellectual Disabilities

Nurses may provide care for children or adults with developmental and intellectual disabilities in settings such as group homes, adult care homes, home health care, hospitals, sheltered workshops, or jails or prisons, among other places. Some individuals have triple diagnoses of serious mental illness, substance abuse, and intellectual disabilities. It is essential for nurses to help protect the rights of these vulnerable individuals who may easily be victimized by others.

Individuals with intellectual disabilities vary in their functional ability. Regardless of the severity of the disability, the nurse advocates for the individual and works to protect the rights of the individual.

THE HOMELESS AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

A **HOMELESS PERSON**, first identified by Public Law 100–77 (more commonly known as the "McKinney Act"), is described as one who lacks a fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence; that is, a supervised publicly or privately operated shelter, a temporary residence for individuals intended to be institutionalized, or a public or private place not ordinarily used as a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings (National Coalition for Homeless Veterans, 2009). The numbers on the homeless are staggering. **Box 26-2** highlights some of the general statistics.

The correlation between homelessness and mental health problems is significant. Approximately 22% of the American population suffers from mental illness. A small

BOX 26-2: DATA ON HOMELESSNESS

- It is estimated that 800,000 persons are considered homeless every day; 200,000 of these individuals are children.
- As many as 2.3 to 3.5 million persons are homeless at some point during an average year; of these, 33% are represented by families with children (Amerson, 2008).
- Hunger and homelessness are among the most pressing issues faced by U.S. cities.
- The number of people experiencing homelessness in major U.S. cities increased by an average of 2% in 2010 (City Mayors Society, 2010).

percentage of the 44 million people who have a serious mental illness are homeless at any given point in time (National Coalition for the Homeless, 2009a). Additionally, an average of 16% of the single adult homeless population suffers from some form of severe and persistent mental illness.

A significant portion of the homeless population is veterans, accounting for approximately 26% of the homeless population; about 33% of the male homeless population is veterans (National Coalition for Homeless Veterans, 2009). Due to the nature of homelessness, accurate numbers of homeless veterans based on specific community reports are not available. However, the Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) estimates that nearly 196,000 veterans are homeless on any given night. According to the Community Homelessness Assessment, Local Education and Networking Groups (VA CHALENG) Report, approximately 400,000 veterans experience homelessness during a year (National Coalition for Homeless Veterans, 2009).

Impact on Mental Health

The homeless population is affected by a complex set of factors that impact the overall health of the individuals who are homeless. According to the National Coalition for the Homeless (2009c,d), a number of factors contribute to homelessness, including:

- *Foreclosures on homes*
- *Poverty*
- *Eroding work opportunities*
- *Decline in public assistance*
- *Lack of affordable housing and limited scale of housing assistance programs*
- *Lack of affordable health care*
- *Domestic violence, addiction disorders, and mental illness*

Homelessness is a problem that is experienced by some individuals with severe mental illness. For example, individuals with serious mental illnesses sometimes have difficulty carrying out basic activities of daily living such as self-care and household management, for example, paying bills on time and keeping a house or apartment clean. Also, they may have difficulty forming and maintaining relationships with family, friends, and caregivers who might be able to provide support so that the individual might be able to live independently. Or the mentally ill person may have worn out his or her welcome with various family members who no longer want the individual to live with them. Sometimes suspiciousness, paranoia, and irrational thinking contribute to the individual losing his or her housing.

Moreover, those who have serious mental illnesses may often neglect their physical health. It may have been years since the individual has seen a dentist or had his vision examined. Medications can often contribute to weight gain, elevated cholesterol, and elevated blood sugar, in combination with patients' already poor eating habits. They may choose high calorie foods such as sweets, fried snack foods, hamburgers, and french fries, and supersized drinks that are loaded with sugar and caffeine. Those individuals who are mentally ill and homeless and living in close quarters with others may be more likely to develop skin infections, or respiratory illnesses, and have exposure to HIV or tuberculosis (National Coalition for the Homeless, 2009b). Inadequate hygiene in the homeless is also a contributing factor. Individuals who are homeless and mentally ill often suffer from drug and alcohol abuse or dependence as well. Use of street drugs by mentally ill individuals in an attempt to self-medicate can lead to disease transmission from use of unclean needles. In addition, a large number of displaced and at-risk veterans live with the lingering effects of PTSD.

Veterans account for a significant number of homeless individuals. These veterans often experience the effects of PTSD.

Nurse's Role When Working With the Homeless Population

When working with the homeless population, as with any patient population, a caring, nonjudgmental approach is necessary. PMHNs care for homeless patients in varied settings, such as homeless shelters, outreach vans from mental health agencies, and meeting the patient on his or her own turf, wherever there might be groupings of homeless individuals living in tents, abandoned buildings, or in cardboard boxes under freeway overpasses. PMHNs also may encounter homeless individuals when working in free health care clinics run by churches or local health departments staffed by doctors and nurses from local hospital systems. Homeless patients may be admitted to psychiatric or general hospitals. If the nurse works with individuals who have recently been released from jail or prison for reentry into the community, some of these individuals could be homeless.

Although the PMHN might be focused primarily on providing mental health care to homeless individuals (such as giving a patient a long-acting antipsychotic injection), patients who are homeless are likely to have a number of untreated medical illnesses such as high blood pressure, diabetes, or skin or foot problems as well. Thus, the PMHN addresses these needs, and may play a role in helping the patient explain his or her current symptoms to an emergency department staff member or clinic physician.

Issues involving medication are prevalent for patients who are homeless. Although a physician orders the appropriate medication for the patient's mental health or physical health issues, the patient may have no way to pay for the prescriptions. Therefore, nurses working in outpatient settings may be in a position to assist the patient who has no medical insurance to apply for patient assistance programs that may be available for certain mental health medications. These programs are available through various pharmaceutical companies, often helping the patient to obtain the medication at no cost.

INDIVIDUALS WHO ARE INCARCERATED AND MENTAL HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Individuals who are incarcerated have been involved with the criminal justice system, which includes jails, prisons, juvenile detention centers, substance abuse treatment facilities, and other facilities (American Nurses Association [ANA], 2007). Jails, prisons, correctional centers, and juvenile detention facilities house individuals who are among the most vulnerable populations in society—those who are impoverished, marginalized, and subject to discrimination and stigmatization (Peternelj-Taylor, 2003).

Jails and prisons are probably two of the most commonly known facilities associated with incarceration. Although similar, they are different in terms of length of stay, mental health services provided, location, offenses (crimes), and governance. Jails, which are locally governed, typically house individuals for a shorter period of time and offer few mental health services. Prisons, which are generally under state or federal jurisdiction, generally house individuals incarcerated for longer time frames, possibly even for life, and access to mental health and social services is somewhat improved. **Table 26-1** highlights these differences.

TABLE 26-1: COMPARING JAILS AND PRISONS

	JAILS	PRISONS
Length of stay (sentence)	Shorter stays, usually under 1 year	Sentences generally greater than 1 year to life
Institutional community	Little	Organized and stable
Mental health services	Few; unsophisticated Custody officers with little mental health training	Better access to mental health, educational, and social services
Location	Near inmate's community	Usually farther away from inmate's hometown
Organized gang presence	Limited	Common and routine
Offenses	All types of crimes and allegations	Felonies, although crimes highly variable
Danger of patient exploitation	Moderate	Moderate to very high (especially for those with mental illness or intellectual disability)
Governance	Local	State or federal

Source: U.S. Department of Justice; American Jail Association (www.aja.org).

Impact of Incarceration on Mental Health

Individuals who are incarcerated experience the stigma associated with being a "criminal." In addition, many individuals who are incarcerated also experience the stigma of mental illness. Estimates indicate that between 10% and 16% of people in state prisons can be considered to have a mental illness (Metraux, 2008). Thus, these individuals suffer a double stigma, further underscoring their vulnerability.

Estimates related to the number of incarcerated individuals experiencing mental illness are based on numbers resulting from deinstitutionalization and transinstitutionalization. Deinstitutionalization of state mental hospitals in 1955 led to 560,000 patients being released into the community. In 2007, this number dropped to 70,000. **TRANSINSTITUTIONALIZATION** denotes the transfer of this care to jails and prisons where there are three times more patients with mental health problems than in mental hospitals, and where one in six detainees is diagnosed with a mental illness. For example, due to the numbers in the Los Angeles County jail, it has been hailed as the largest mental health system in the world (Keltner & Vance, 2008).

Nurse's Role When Working With Incarcerated Patients

Correctional nursing is the practice of nursing and the delivery of patient care within the unique and distinct environment of the criminal justice system. The ANA has developed a Scope and Standards of Practice Guide for Corrections Nursing (2007) that provides guidance to nurses working in this field.

PMHNs often provide group therapy to inmates in prisons and jails. Examples of groups are highlighted in **Table 26-2**.

PMHNs or medical nurses administer psychotropic medications to incarcerated inmates. Advanced practice nurses or psychiatrists evaluate and prescribe psychotropic medications for inmates in jails and prisons. Often, due to budget constraints, medications must be listed on a special formulary or restricted list. Typically, medications that appear on the formulary are those that are available in a generic form.

Some nurses may work in the medical department of a correctional facility. They may be responsible for tasks such as drawing blood; conducting sick call each day for inmates who are experiencing acute physical health problems; following up with inmates who have chronic health problems; distributing medications at prescribed times of the day; treatments such as dressing changes; and providing health teaching on topics such as hepatitis C, HIV, diabetes, hypertension, asthma, and sexually transmitted infections.

Several issues are unique to working with this highly vulnerable population. One is the maintenance of professional boundaries, which is essential in the corrections environment. The nurse needs to act in the best interest of the patient's medical or mental health condition, but must maintain a safe and secure environment at the same time. Nurses who cross professional boundaries place themselves, the patients, other health care workers, and custody staff in a position of compromised personal safety and security (ANA, 2007). Nurses need to treat each patient with dignity and respect, regardless of their circumstances.

A second issue is the therapeutic relationship. In the correctional setting, the therapeutic relationship becomes more complex. It is also important for nurses working in a correctional setting to be open-minded, nonjudgmental, and self-aware, particularly when dealing with sex offenders or murderers. Poor nurse–patient relationships are often due to boundary violations, where boundary formation within the relationship is stressed by the patient's likely lifelong patterns of exploitation, intimidation, pathological manipulation, and perverted intimacy (Cashin, Newman,

TABLE 26-2: EXAMPLES OF GROUPS FOR INCARCERATED PATIENTS

SKILL BUILDING/INFORMATION	INSIGHT DEVELOPMENT/PEER SUPPORT	DISORDER SPECIFIC
Anger management	12-step meetings such as Alcoholics Anonymous/Narcotics Anonymous (AA/NA)	Coping with schizophrenia
Communication skills	Victim awareness	Depression management
Problem solving	Family relations (for sex offenders)	Understanding anxiety disorders
Medication education	Grief/bereavement	Substance abuse programs
Life skills/social skills		Bipolar management group
Relaxation and stress management		

Eason, Thorpe, & O'Discoll, 2010). For example, inmates may sometimes report mental health symptoms that they do not really have in order to spend more time with female staff members or in an attempt to get psychotropic medication that will help them sleep or that they can sell to get some other commodity that they need.

Nurses need to be particularly vigilant when working with inmates in jails and prisons, because these individuals can be at high risk for suicide attempts and completed suicides.

Usually, inmates are assessed for previous history of suicidal thoughts and suicide attempts as well as current suicidal thoughts, plans, and intents. The initial screening might be done by a corrections officer and/or a nurse. Prior risk of suicide is strongly related to future risk (Hayes, 2007).

Medical forensic nurses working in correctional facilities administer psychopharmacology, engage in groups, perform medical functions such as drawing specimens for testing, follow up with individuals with chronic illnesses, perform treatment, and provide education.

FORENSIC NURSING

The IAFN and the ANA define **FORENSIC NURSING** as "the application of forensic science combined with the biopsychological education of a registered nurse in scientific investigation, evidence collection, preservation, and analysis, and prevention and treatment of trauma and/or death-related medical-legal issues." For example, a forensic nurse may provide care to patients who have experienced abuse or violence. Additionally, integrating his or her specialized knowledge of the legal system, a forensic nurse may be involved in evidence collection, provide medical testimony in court, and/or serve as a consultant to legal authorities.

Forensic nursing practice works with vulnerable populations, most often those involved with the criminal justice system. Subspecialties of forensic nursing include:

- *Forensic psychiatric nurses*
- *Correctional nurses*
- *Legal nurse consultants*
- *Forensic sexual assault nursing examiners (SANEs)*
- *Nurse attorneys*
- *Nurse coroners*
- *Forensic nurses trained to work in the area of mass disasters*
- *Forensic nurses working in the area of elder mistreatment*
- *Forensic nurse death investigators*
- *Interpersonal violence specialists who may work in trauma, transplant, emergency, critical care nursing, and primary care clinics*

Educational Preparation

Educational programs for forensic nurses are usually at the graduate level, but certificate programs also are available. Schools may have master's degree programs, specialty programs for forensic clinical nurse specialists or adult nurse practitioners, as well as certificate programs for forensic nursing and legal nurse consulting. Training programs to become a forensic SANE also are available. Nurses learn about proper care of victims of both physical and sexual assault by recognizing, collecting and preserving evidence, and interviewing the patient. A minimum of 40 hours of classroom training are recommended (www.iafn.org). Other programs require a certain number of clinical hours as well.

Forensic nurses typically require a graduate level education and work as forensic psychiatric nurses; correctional nurses; legal nurse consultants; forensic sexual assault nursing examiners (SANEs); nurse attorneys; nurse coroners; death investigators; and clinical nurse specialists in trauma, transplant, emergency, and critical care.

Forensic nurses also may become members of the professional organization, the IAFN. Canada has a forensic nurses' society (Forensic Nurses Society of Canada [FNSC]) that attempts to bridge the gap between forensic nurses as well as paramedics, physicians, nursing students, legal professionals, social workers, police, and scientists.

Roles of the Forensic Nurse

As stated previously, forensic nurses work directly with individual patients and their families, most often those of vulnerable populations involved with the criminal justice system. They also work as consultants to other nurses and

to medical and legal agencies. They function as expert witnesses providing court testimony related to the adequacy of service delivery, in areas dealing with trauma, and in specialized diagnoses or specific conditions related to nursing (www.iafn.org). In the emergency or trauma setting, forensic nurses work with victims of automobile accidents, suicide attempts, disasters (such as earthquakes or hurricanes), work-related injuries, and traumatic injuries. In addition, they work in the public health and safety arena with food and drug tampering, drug or alcohol abuse, environmental hazards, and tissue or organ donation. In the area of interpersonal violence, the forensic nurse may work with victims of domestic violence or sexual assault, child or elder abuse, human trafficking, and physical or psychological abuse. In patient-care facilities such as hospitals or nursing homes, they may help investigate accidents, injury, neglect, and inappropriate medication or other treatments.

Forensic nurses may also work in correctional institutions, coming face-to-face with unique challenges in their attempt to deliver nursing care to stigmatized individuals within a custodial environment (Cashin et al., 2010). In all cases, nurses focus on therapy and caring. In correctional institutions, they also work alongside corrections or custodial officers whose primary focus is on security and maintaining order and discipline. As corrections officers often supervise nursing procedures, interference with professional "caring" can arise. For example, confidentiality and the development of trust necessary for the nurse–patient relationship may be hindered by the need for supervision by corrections and custodial staff. In addition, the correctional environment and surroundings can lead to suspiciousness. Inmates, already feeling isolated because of the incarceration, may fear being further stigmatized by a mental illness. Nurses working in the correctional setting often are suspicious of inmates, which can lead to alienation and burnout among nursing staff (Cashin et al., 2010).

The practice of forensic nursing is challenging. Often, forensic nurses working in correctional settings are faced with numerous, often emotionally charged issues. In this setting…

> The common experience of caring for and working with this vulnerable population has forced forensic psychiatric nurses to examine the obvious health issues that society has tried to hide behind prison walls—issues such as interpersonal and family violence, childhood sexual abuse, the criminalization of mental illness and substance abuse, poverty, homelessness, lack of education and meaningful employment, and the abandonment of older adults. (Peternelj-Taylor, 2003)

Thus, forensic nurses need to be ever vigilant in monitoring personal reactions to these issues.

INFORMED CONSENT

INFORMED CONSENT is the process by which the treating health care provider discloses appropriate information to a competent patient so that the patient may make a voluntary choice to accept or refuse treatment. It originates from the legal and ethical right the patient has to direct what happens to his or her body and from the ethical duty of the physician or advanced practice nurse to involve the patient in his or her health care. The elements of fully informed consent include a discussion on the following elements:

- *The diagnosis, if known*
- *The nature of the decision/procedure*
- *Reasonable alternatives to the proposed intervention*
- *The relevant risks, benefits, and uncertainties related to each alternative*
- *Assessment of patient understanding*
- *The acceptance of the intervention by the patient*

In various mental health settings, the nurse can assist in clarifying information regarding what the patient has questions about. For example, the nurse might explain the purpose of a new medication that is being started and its common side effects. In an outpatient office or community mental health setting, or in home health care, the nurse might assist the patient/client to set up his or her medications in a day of the week medication box. This in turn will help the patient to have a better understanding of how to take his medication and to set up his or her medications in a day of the week medication box. This helps the patient/client to have a better understanding of how to take his or her medication and to be as independent as possible.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Vulnerable populations are defined as groups based on ethnicity/race, socioeconomic status, geography, gender, age, disability status, and risk status secondary to sex and gender. Common vulnerable populations that nurses deal with include the homeless, minorities, the elderly, children, the intellectually disabled, and the incarcerated.
- All nurses are ethically bound to provide care to patients regardless of their level of functioning, age, race, or status in life. Advocacy is a key role.
- Homeless individuals are at risk for mental health issues; individuals with mental health problems, specifically those with serious and persistent disorders, are at risk for homelessness.
- Minorities have decreased access to and availability of mental health services. Disparities may be the result of stigma, misunderstandings, cultural biases, reliance on family for support, and lack of health insurance.
- Older adults are at increased risk for suicide, abuse, social isolation, and mental impairment.
- The mental health problems of children and adolescents often go untreated, which can lead to chronic and recurrent problems.
- Intellectual disability (mental retardation) is a type of developmental disability. Nurses play a key role in protecting the rights of these individuals because they are easily victimized.
- Two issues associated with working with incarcerated individuals are the maintenance of professional boundaries and the therapeutic relationship.
- Forensic nursing is a specialty area of practice that often involves scientific investigation, evidence collection, preservation and analysis, and prevention and treatment of trauma and/or death-related medical-legal issues.
- The forensic nurse works directly with individuals (including incarcerated persons), acts as consultant and expert witness, works with victims of emergency or trauma, works in the public health and safety arena, works with victims of interpersonal violence, and acts as investigator in patient-care facilities.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. When describing vulnerable populations to a group of students, which of the following would the nursing instructor include?
   - **a.** They typically experience increased risks for depression.
   - **b.** Advocacy is a primary nursing role.
   - **c.** The patient is usually completely dependent on the nurse.
   - **d.** Children are more vulnerable than the elderly.

2. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about health care disparities and minorities. The nurse uses the African American population as an example. Which of the following would the nurse include in the presentation?
   - **a.** They are more likely to receive a diagnosis for mental health conditions.
   - **b.** The rates of suicide are lower in this population.
   - **c.** They tend to report physical complaints related to mental illness.
   - **d.** Lower doses of psychotropic medications are commonly prescribed.

3. The nurse is assessing an elderly patient. The nurse determines that the patient is at risk for suicide based on which of the following? Select all that apply.
   - **a.** Female gender
   - **b.** Living alone
   - **c.** History of diabetes, arthritis, and stroke
   - **d.** Polypharmacy
   - **e.** Recent death of spouse

4. A nurse is thinking about working in a correctional facility. Which characteristic would be important for the nurse to have?
   - **a.** Self-awareness
   - **b.** Prejudice
   - **c.** Cultural bias
   - **d.** Inflexibility

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

5. A nurse working at a homeless shelter in a large downtown area should be aware that there are many factors that contribute to homelessness of the mentally ill. Which of the following would the nurse identify as potentially contributing to homelessness? Select all that apply.

a. Substance abuse
b. Poverty
c. Inadequate housing
d. Low-paying jobs
e. Rise in public assistance
f. Affordable health care

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Jail Association. Retrieved from www.aja.org

American Nurses Association (ANA). (2007). *Corrections nursing scope and standards of practice.* Silver Spring, MD: Nursebooks .org.

American Psychiatric Association (APA). (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author.

Amerson, R. (2008). Mental illness and homeless families. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners, 4*(2), 109–113.

Bell, C. (2005). Correctional psychiatry. In B. Sadock and V. Sadock (Eds.), *Kaplan & Sadock's comprehensive textbook of psychiatry,* Vol. II (8th ed.). Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.

Cashin, A., Newman, C., Eason, M., Thorpe, A., & O'Discoll, C. (2010). An ethnographic study of forensic nursing culture in an Australian prison hospital. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 17*(1), 39–45.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)—Office of Minority & Health Disparities (OMHD). Retrieved from www .cdc.gov/omhd/About/about.htm

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)—Department of Health and Human Services. *Intellectual disability fact sheet.* Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/actearly

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)—Department of Health and Human Services. (2004). *Developmental disabilities.* Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/dd/dd1.htm

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2005). *National center on birth defects and developmental disabilities*. Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/ddmr2.htm

City Mayors Society. (2010). *City mayors: Hunger and homelessness in American cities. Information based on 2010 report Hunger and Homelessness in US Cities by the US Conference.* Retrieved from www.city mayors.com/features/uscity_poverty.html

Ellson, N. W. (2007). Suicide in older adults. A priority concern. *Advance for Nurse Practitioners, 15*(12), 53–54, 68.

Flaskerud, J. H. (2000). Ethnicity, culture, and neuropsychiatry. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 21*(1), 5–29.

Forensic Nurses' Society of Canada (FNSC). Retrieved from www .forensicnurse.ca

Hayes, L. M. (2007). *Guiding principles to suicide prevention in correctional facilities.* Retrieved from http://www.nciatnet.org/suicideprevention/publications/guidingprinicples.asp

Hill, D. L. (2006). Sense of belonging as connectedness, American Indian worldview, and mental health. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 20*(5), 210–216.

International Association of Forensic Nurses (IAFN). Retrieved from http://www.iafn.org

International Association of Forensic Nurses (IAFN). *What is forensic nursing?* Retrieved from www.iafn.org/displaycommon .cfm?an=1&subarticlenbr=137

Keltner, N. L., & Vance, D. E. (2008). Biological perspectives incarcerated care and quetiapine abuse. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 44*(3), 202–206.

McNeil, D. E., Binder, R. L., & Robinson, J. C. (2005). Incarceration associated with homelessness, mental disorder, and co-occurring substance abuse. *Psychiatric Services (Washington, DC), 56*(7), 840–846.

Metraux, S. (2008). Examining relationships between receiving mental health services in the Pennsylvania prison system and time served. *Psychiatric Services (Washington, DC), 59*(7), 800–802.

National Alliance on Mental Illness (NAMI). (2004). *African American community mental health fact sheet.* Retrieved from www.nami .org

National Coalition for the Homeless. (July 2009a). *NCH fact sheet—How many people experience homelessness?* Retrieved from www .nationalhomeless.org/factsheets

National Coalition for the Homeless. (July 2009b). *NCH fact sheet—Mental illness and homelessness.* Retrieved from www.national-homeless.org/factsheets

National Coalition for the Homeless. (July 2009c). *NCH fact sheet—Who is homeless?* Retrieved from www.nationalhomeless.org/factsheets

National Coalition for the Homeless. (July 2009d). *NCH fact sheet—Why are people homeless?* Retrieved from www.nationalhomeless .org/factsheets

National Coalition for Homeless Veterans. (2009). *Homeless veterans fact sheet.* Retrieved from www.nchv.org

National Committee for the Prevention of Elder Abuse (NCPEA). Retrieved from www.preventelderabuse.org

Nies, M. A., & McEwen M., (2007). *Community/public health nursing: Promoting the health of populations.* St. Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier.

Office of Minority Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. *Mental health data/statistics from a variety of government reports from 2001–2009.* Retrieved from minorityhealth.hhs.gov

Ohio Department of Mental Health Coordinating Centers of Excellence. Retrieved from mentalhealthohio.gob/what-we-do/promote/coordinating-centers-of-excellence.shtml

Peternelj-Taylor, C. (2003). Incarceration of vulnerable populations. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, *41*(9), 4–5.

President's New Freedom Commission on Mental Health. (2003). *Final report to the president.* Retrieved from www.mentalhealthcommission.gov

Reid, W. H., M. D. (2000). Offenders with special needs. *Journal of Psychiatric Practice, 6*(5), 280–283.

Shawler, C. (2010). Assessing and maintaining mental health in elderly individuals. *The Nursing Clinics of North America*, *45*(4), 635–650, vii.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1999). *Executive summary—Mental Health: Culture, race, and ethnicity—A supplement to mental health: A report of the surgeon general.* Rockville, MD. Retrieved from www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/mentalhealth/cre/execsummary-7.html

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *Healthy People 2020 objectives*. Retrieved from www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/overview.aspx?topicid=28

U.S. Department of Justice, Office of Justice Programs, Bureau of Justice Statistics. *What is the difference between jails and prisons.* Retrieved from www.ojp.usdoj.gov

Williams, C. L., & Tappen, R. M. (1999). Can we create a therapeutic relationship with nursing home residents in the later stages of Alzheimer's disease? *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, *37*(3), 28–35.

SECTION VI

Cultural, Ethical, Legal, and Professional Aspects of Mental Health Care

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 27

CULTURAL, ETHNIC, AND SPIRITUAL CONCEPTS

Vicki P. Hines-Martin
Karen P. Black
Karen Singleton

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify the core concepts associated with culture
2. Describe the impact of ethnic and cultural factors on the delivery of patient-centered mental health care
3. Explain the concept of spirituality as it relates to health, including mental health
4. Integrate concepts of cultural competence into interpersonal modes of practice
5. Demonstrate culturally sensitive and congruent care to different patient populations
6. Identify key elements of collaboration within an interprofessional team to provide patient-centered mental health care

KEY TERMS

Cultural competence
Cultural congruence
Culture
Diversity
Enculturation
Ethnicity
Interprofessional team
Linguistic competence
Patient-centered mental health care
Race
Religiosity
Spirituality

The constitution of the World Health Organization (WHO) states that the enjoyment of the highest attainable standard of health is one of the fundamental rights of every human being without distinction of race, religion, political belief, or economic or social condition (WHO, 1948). More than 60 years after this constitution was adopted, wide variations in health still exist. In 2009, the WHO stated that

> Globalization is putting the social cohesion of many countries under stress, and health systems, as key constituents of the architecture of contemporary societies, are clearly not performing as well as they could and as they should.... Few would disagree that health systems need to respond better—and faster—to the challenges of a changing (and diverse) world. (WHO, 2009)

Psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs) must be cognizant of the impact of globalization on health care and be prepared to intervene appropriately with patients who are culturally, ethnically, and spiritually different. Yet, we must also understand that the process of globalization is blurring the differences between cultures and groups. It is most important to heed the words of psychiatrist Harry Stack Sullivan (1947, p. 7) who noted, "we are all more basically human than otherwise." There is a common nature among all human beings and the belief that we are all more alike than different should pervade our mental health understandings and work (Sullivan, 1947).

Within the context of understanding that the similarities are more important than the differences among individuals and cultural groups, we must not lose sight of individuals as distinct beings, each with unique values, cultural practices, and spiritual beliefs. To provide optimal person-centered care that respects cultural, spiritual, and ethnic differences, nurses must empower patients to act as full partners in the health care process to improve their health outcomes (Cronenwett et al., 2007). The Institute of Medicine (IOM) report, *Unequal Treatment*, stressed the importance of cultural competence in eliminating racial and ethnic health care disparities (Smedley, Stith, & Nelson, 2002).

This chapter discusses the relationship among culture, ethnicity, spirituality, and health, and identifies the influence these factors have on mental health and illness. It also describes the essential need for nurses to continuously strive toward cultural competence when providing mental health care.

CORE CONCEPTS

It is important to have an understanding of the key concepts related to **CULTURE** and diversity. **Box 27-1** presents the definitions for the major concepts. These definitions have been formulated from the current literature and are widely accepted in nursing and health care. The constructs of diversity and patient-centered care are essential perspectives that will frame the discussion within this chapter and frame the core concepts, which provide the context for culturally, spiritually, and socially appropriate care in mental health (as well as other nursing specialties). The approach to delivery of mental health care has consistently involved an interprofessional style and has been typified by collaboration of professional teams (nursing, medicine, psychology, psychiatry, social work, and others) to meet patient needs. Therefore, this chapter stresses the need for interprofessional team collaboration to address the needs of diverse populations.

DIVERSITY is defined narrowly to include age, race, gender, ethnicity, religion, and sexual orientation. Most comprehensively, diversity also includes variations in identity, community/geography, privilege, power, social context, and economic circumstance. Diversity may be reflected in a broad spectrum of demographic and philosophical differences.

Patient-Centered Care

The IOM report, *Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century*, emphasized the necessity for patient-centered care as one of the six goals for high-quality care (IOM, 2001). Patient-centered care recognizes "the (person) or their designee as the source of control and (a) full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for patient's preferences, values, and needs" (Cronenwett et al., 2007, p. 123). Furthermore, nurses must value seeing the health care encounter through the eyes of their patient. The nurse supports the patient's preferences even when the nurse has conflicting points of view. The nurse advocates for the patient when the patient's cultural and/or spiritual practices and values conflict with the prescribed medical regimen (Campinha-Bacote, 2011). Patients and families must be empowered throughout the health care encounter in order for shared decision making to occur. With this multidimensional approach, patient-centered care is realized (Cronenwett et al., 2007).

Interprofessional Teamwork and Collaboration

The essentials for baccalaureate nursing education recognize that interprofessional communication and collaboration are critical to safe high-quality care and for improving patient health outcomes (American Association of Colleges of Nursing [AACN], 2008).

BOX 27-1: DEFINITIONS OF IMPORTANT CONCEPTS

CULTURAL COMPETENCE: A set of congruent behaviors, attitudes, and policies that come together in a system, agency, or among professionals, and enables that system, agency, or those professionals to work effectively in multicultural situations and with diverse social groups. It emphasizes effectively operating in different cultural/social contexts. It is a developmental process that evolves over an extended period. Both individuals and organizations are at various levels of awareness, knowledge, and skills along the cultural competence continuum.

ETHNICITY: Selected cultural characteristics used to classify people into groups or categories considered to be significantly different from others. In some cases, ethnicity involves merely a loose group identity with little or no cultural traditions in common. In contrast, some ethnic groups are coherent subcultures with a shared language and body of tradition. Newly arrived immigrant groups often fit this pattern.

ENCULTURATION: Process by which a person learns the requirements of the culture with which he or she is surrounded, and acquires values and behaviors that are appropriate or necessary in that culture. As part of this process, the influences that limit, direct, or shape the individual (whether deliberately or not) include parents, other adults, and peers. If successful, enculturation results in competence in the language, values, and rituals of the culture.

LINGUISTIC COMPETENCE: Capacity to communicate effectively, and convey information in a manner that is easily understood by diverse audiences, including persons with limited English proficiency, those who have low literacy skills or are not literate, and individuals with disabilities that impair communication and comprehension.

RACE: Biological characteristics and variations within humans, originally consisting of a more or less distinct population with anatomical traits that distinguish it clearly from other races. Increasingly, it has been identified that biological differences are limited among populations. In addition, the term *race* has included the political and social history that impact the collective and individual experiences of people identified as part of that racial group.

RELIGIOSITY: Specific behavioral and social characteristics that reflect religious observance within an identified faith.

SPIRITUALITY: Cognitions, values, and beliefs that address ultimate questions about the meaning of life, God, and transcendence, which may or may not be associated with formal religious observance.

INTERPROFESSIONAL TEAM: Teams consisting of nursing and other pertinent health care disciplines that work together to integrate diverse knowledge and skills in the planning of patient care. Disciplines may include but are not limited to chaplaincy nursing, medicine, psychiatry, psychology, and social work to provide comprehensive mental health care.

PATIENT-CENTERED MENTAL HEALTH CARE: Focus on empowering the patient or patient's representative to actively participate as a full partner in the health care process. Understanding cultural, ethnic, racial, religious, and social backgrounds is essential in integrating the patient's preferences, values, and self-defined needs into plans of care.

Cronenwett et al. (2007) defined *teamwork* and *collaboration* as the ability to "function effectively within nursing and inter-professional teams, fostering open communication, mutual respect, and shared decision-making to achieve quality patient care" (p. 125). In order to achieve effective teamwork, nurses must first recognize their personal contributions to the team and the significance of their collaboration in support of culturally and spiritually appropriate mental health care. Collaboration can only be realized through respect for the varying points of view of each team member. Each member of the team brings a unique perspective of, and expertise regarding, his or her clinical practice area. Nurses must value the communication style of patients and families as well as other members

of the team. Nurses function as valuable team members but also can effectively assume the critical role of team leader (Cronenwett et al., 2007).

Interprofessional collaboration is not without challenges. Chong, Aslani, and Chen (2013) described perceived barriers of shared decision making and interprofessional collaboration among members of health care teams that included both mental health and non–mental health professionals. The stigma of mental illness was a perceived barrier to collaboration with non–mental health care colleagues. Chong et al. (2013) found that team members who experienced low levels of satisfaction with interprofessional collaboration believed that the interprofessional views of all members were not valued equally and that there appeared to be a predominance of influence from non-mental health providers. Chong et al. (2013) also identified that a key facilitator of shared decision making was a willing attitude on the part of the health care providers (HCPs) to involve the patient in the decision-making process. The investigators found that HCPs' personal attitudes and beliefs, professional role, knowledge, and skills were associated with interprofessional collaboration. Good interprofessional collaboration was supported through mutual respect, knowledge, and shared goals. Successful interprofessional collaboration is even more important when health care professionals are working with individuals who may require mental health strategies different from those to which they are accustomed.

GLOBALIZATION AND HEALTH CARE DISPARITIES

The world is viewed as a global community, and as part of that global community, the U.S. population has become increasingly diverse. Although some literature indicates significant progress in the U.S. health care system for racial, ethnic, and cultural minority groups (Collins et al., 2002; Martinez, Arriola, & Corvin, 2015), evidence exists identifying that the need for equitable health services among racial, ethnic, and cultural groups is still high (Collins et al., 2002; Kaiser Family Foundation, 2011; Smedley et al., 2002).

In addition, the United States is experiencing an increase in people coming from economically developing countries and/or countries experiencing military or political strife. These groups are particularly at risk of poor health care services due to unfamiliarity with the U.S. health care system, lack of health care coverage and/or limited access, and language barriers. Research with a variety of populations, such as African, Arabic, Asian, Australian, British, and Caribbean, have identified that understanding culture, religion, and social and political forces are critical to adequately meet the health care needs of individuals and groups (Kim, Atkinson, & Umemoto, 2001; Kohrt et al., 2015; Morgan et al., 2005; Owen & Khalil, 2007; Scheffler et al., 2011; Steel et al., 2006).

The Health Care Quality Survey study, completed by the Commonwealth Fund in 2001, was performed to evaluate health care quality from the perspective of patients who received care. The study found that minority Americans reported a lower level of health care quality when compared to American European counterparts (Collins et al., 2002).

As with other areas of health care, disparities in the provision of mental health care have also been clearly identified (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS], 2001). Research in the United States has shown lower rates of mental health service usage by ethnic, racial, cultural, and social (including religious) minorities. Additionally, when these minority individuals use care, it is more likely to be poor in quality (DHHS, 2001). As a result, ethnic, racial, cultural, and social minority groups carry a greater burden from unmet mental health needs. Therefore, it is important to understand how mental health services are provided to meet special sociocultural needs of these identified groups (Kim et al., 2001; Kirmayer, Groleau, Guzder, Blake, & Jarvis, 2003; Rostain, Ramsey, & Waite, 2015; Shin, 2002; Sorsdahl et al., 2009; Wang, Berglund, & Kessler, 2001; Woodward et al., 2008).

Ethnic, racial, cultural, and social minorities use mental health services to a lesser degree and, when used, the services tend to be poorer in quality.

RACE, ETHNICITY, AND CULTURE AND MENTAL HEALTH

Race, ethnicity, and culture are a significant part of the context in which each individual exists. Therefore, they have influence on perceptions of well-being and illness, health care decision making and help seeking, and health service usage.

Racial, Ethnic, and Cultural Diversity

Diversity in race, ethnicity, and culture affects three areas of functioning that influence mental health and mental health care delivery. These three areas are cognitive styles, negotiation strategies, and value systems. **Table 27-1** explains these three areas.

TABLE 27-1: IMPACT OF CULTURE, RACE, AND ETHNICITY

- Cognitive styles
- How we organize and process information
- Negotiation strategies
- What we accept as evidence for change
- Value systems
- The basis for behavior
  - Locus of decision making
  - Sources of anxiety/anxiety reduction
  - Issues of equality/inequality

Consider the area of value systems and decision making. Some cultural groups view decision making as a role to be assumed by the designated family head or leader rather than the affected individual. When health decisions must be made, the providers and the patient must include the family leader before any decision is made. Although very different from most experiences in the United States, this process is one that is common in other cultural groups. Awareness of this family dynamic on the part of the nurse is essential in helping individuals to think through a problem, determine what is and is not appropriate or acceptable based on their value system, and decide on a course of action. Nurses and other HCPs must assess the impact of these influences with each patient, and assist the patient by providing information and support for the decision-making process.

Studies have shown that ethnic and racial groups with histories of inequality and who are experiencing current disadvantaged socioeconomic circumstances are at a higher risk for mental health conditions (Giurgescu et al., 2015; Pearson et al., 2014). However, despite these risks for emotional distress and mental illness, diverse ethnic, racial, and cultural groups also demonstrate protective factors that mediate risks for mental illness. The literature has identified the role of family, closely held beliefs, group identity, and community and mutual support as external mediators against stress and mental illness.

Despite potential increased risks for emotional distress and mental illness among diverse ethnic, racial, and cultural groups, protective factors such as family, group identity, mutual support, and closely held beliefs help to reduce these risks.

Language Variations

Variations in language may also influence how mental health and illness are discussed. For example, research has shown that in some racial or ethnic groups such as Iranian, Rwandan, and Eastern Indian, mental and physical health are encompassed into one word or emotional distress is reflected through descriptions of the "body" being sick (Khandelwal, Jhingan, Ramesh, Gupta, & Srivastava, 2004; Martin, 2009; Summerfield, 2005). In addition, studies have identified that cultural and ethnic or racial groups may avoid using the word *mental illness* and use other terms such as *nerves*, *feeling down or blue*, and *emotional problems*. PMHNs who become aware of the language that is and is not used by diverse patient groups are better able to respond appropriately when counseling, educating, or referring individuals for treatment. Because there is stigma associated with the term *mental illness*, using more culturally or socially acceptable terms may avoid an unintended barrier to mental health care.

Gender Roles, Gender Identity, and Family Expectations

Cultural precepts related to gender roles and expectations differ from culture to culture. Some cultural groups assign specific daily tasks and responsibilities according to whether the person is female or male. Many identify who makes important family decisions based on gender. Although in most Western philosophy societies these gender roles and expectations vary and are not as clearly defined, these beliefs can significantly affect mental health within societies that have long-held traditions as part of daily living (Shafer & Wendt, 2015). The focus on gender and mental health has also been expanded to focus on important considerations related to gender identity and sexual orientation. The National Alliance on Mental Illness (www.nami.org) identifies that although there has been increasing recognition and understanding of the social factors that impact the mental health of these populations, and the removal of these populations from the list of mental health pathology, there continues to be disparities in access to mental health care and adequate numbers of culturally and socially competent mental HCPs (Bostwick, 2007; Willging, Salvador, & Kano, 2006).

Within the United States, Native American populations hold views and expectations that may vary, and have great impact on customs, values, and beliefs that influence spiritual healing and holistic health. Traditional mental health care within this country identifies that there is significant incongruence between the importance of family and community, and spiritual harmony as perceived by these

populations. The path to wellness (a combination of physical, mental, and spiritual health) is seen as one that is a partnership and is a complex interaction of significant others (Moghaddam, Momper, & Fong, 2015). The historical trauma experienced by people within these populations and the socioeconomic disparities that still exist for members of these tribal groups serve as risk factors for negative mental health outcomes.

Consider the traditional perspectives of many within the Asian culture. Traditional Asian group values include collectivism, conformity to norms, deference to authority, emotional self-control, family recognition through achievement, filial piety, humility, compliance, and avoidance of shame based on hierarchical relationships (Cheung, 2009; Kim et al., 2001). "Saving face" (*chemyun* in Korean culture) or honor is critically important. Thus, being exposed to circumstances that threaten one's ability to "save face" can affect emotional health.

Increasing evidence reveals that many cultures focus on the family and identified significant others as a collective unit whereby important decisions are made, with all relevant individuals engaging in or influencing the decision-making process. The emphasis in Western culture is on individual decision making, which may be in stark contrast to other cultural groups; as a result, it may act as a barrier to care (Goodkind, Gorman, Hess, Parker, & Hough, 2015; Mir et al., 2015; Morgan et al., 2005; Steel et al., 2006).

Differences in language as well as gender roles, gender identity, and group expectations can influence how mental health and illness are discussed and how decisions are made in this area.

Immigration

Experiences related to refugee and immigrant status add stressors to an individual or group. These stresses may be related to clashes of culture and the process of acculturation into a different society and its accompanying norms; that is, adapting to a culture other than one's own. Research conducted with African, Korean, Mexican, and Yugoslavian immigrant populations have identified a cluster of factors affecting the mental health of those who flee from or leave their country of origin, and now find themselves part of a minority population elsewhere (Borges et al., 2009; Fozdar, 2009; Shin, 2002). **Box 27-2** lists these risk factors.

BOX 27-2: IMMIGRATION AND RISK FACTORS FOR POOR MENTAL HEALTH

- Social distance related to low English proficiency
- Cultural beliefs leading to lack of interface with new culture
- Acculturation stress resulting from culture shock
- Social isolation secondary to family separation and absence of support system
- Unemployment or underemployment
- Experiencing prejudice and discrimination
- Prior trauma or persecution (refugees)

Risk factors for mental illness in immigrant populations include: social exclusion due to low English language proficiency, decreased interaction with the new culture, culture shock, family or social isolation, employment difficulties, prejudice and discrimination, and feelings of persecution due to prior trauma.

Mental Health, Mental Illness, and Mental Health Service Use Among Ethnic, Racial, and Cultural Groups

Although the overall incidence of mental health conditions is similar among and between racial and ethnic groups, some variability does exist for different types of disorders. For example, some studies have found higher rates of depressive disorders among Latinos than non-Latino Whites in U.S. population-based studies (Mental Health America, 2014; Dunlop, Song, Lyons, Manheim, & Chang, 2003; Minsky, Vega, Miskimen, Gara, & Escobar, 2003). Mexican nationals who have family members working within the United States have higher rates of suicidal ideation and are at increased risk for alcohol and substance abuse (Borges et al., 2009). Immigrant Mexican American youth reported significantly higher social anxiety and loneliness than U.S.-born Mexican American youth (Polo & López, 2009). However, the literature also identifies that risks for mental health conditions and negative mental health outcomes that are

described are significantly influenced by social, contextual, and economic factors (or social determinants of health) as culturally diverse populations navigate within new environments (American Psychological Association Presidential Taskforce on Immigration, 2011).

Approximately 7.5 million African Americans have a diagnosed mental illness. Their risk for depression is higher, in part due to socioeconomic factors such as urban living and risk for exposure to traumatic events. African Americans also are less likely than Whites to use outpatient mental health services and to find antidepressant medication acceptable. In fact, only 32% of African Americans with mental health disorders have been found to use professional services, with 48% of those with severe major depressive symptoms receiving treatment (Williams et al., 2007). Moreover, African American men are less likely to use mental health services than their female counterparts.

Use of mental health services by minority children and adolescents also varies. The use of crisis care by African American and Native American children and youth is greater than that by Whites. In addition, studies reveal that Latino and Asian youth used intensive crisis services to a higher degree. However, access to non-crisis services by minority youth is less than that of White youth. Moreover, African American adolescents received less mental health treatment, including outpatient care, than White adolescents, and Latino children received fewer counseling sessions and specialty mental health services than White children (Pumariega & Rothe, 2003; Snowden, Masland, Libby, Wallace, & Fawley, 2008; Snowden & Yamada, 2005).

Much of the current literature has identified stigma as a critical barrier to seeking mental health services among individuals from minority groups (Roh et al., 2015). Research on the Asian culture reveals influences on mental health and illness and accessing mental health care. For example, those who hold traditional Asian values believe that each individual should be able to resolve his or her own mental health problems by using inner resources and willpower (Kim et al., 2001, Shin, 2002). Thus, mental health problems are best addressed through moderating one's emotions and behavior, controlling troublesome thoughts, and seeking inner peace. For some Asians, the need for mental health assistance is a sign of weakness. Asian Americans and Asian immigrants have been shown to underuse mental health services. In addition, they typically wait longer before accessing treatment than African Americans and White Americans (Park, Chesla, Rehm, & Chun, 2011; Shin, 2002).

Research among Pakistani Muslim populations indicate that facilitators and barriers to mental health service use include language, acculturation, family dynamics, community networks, and religious identity (Gater et al., 2010; Mir et al., 2015; Naeem et al., 2015; Rahman, Malik, Sikander, Roberts, & Creed, 2008). Variations in perspectives among diverse populations are complex and discussion is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, in-depth understanding of the culturally, religiously, and socially diverse populations with whom one works is essential for nurses who address mental health needs regardless of the setting (Broman, 2012; Cheon & Chiao, 2012).

In Latin American countries, information about mental health is limited (Razzouk et al., 2008). However, in one study examining the Brazilian population, 9% of the population older than 16 years sought mental health treatment in the previous year. Most of these individuals used public mental health services (de Toledo Piza Peluso, de Araujo Peres, & Blay, 2008). Unfortunately, understanding of mental illness is still poor and most individuals who express having mental health concerns do not seek treatment.

Information about mental health in developing and low- and middle-income countries lags behind what has been written about high-income countries but is becoming more available (Padmavati, 2005; Patel & Bloch, 2009; Stein & Sedat, 2007). Although conditions such as depression, anxiety, and posttraumatic stress disorder are widespread and have been identified by WHO, research articulating the extent of these conditions and perceptions of mental health is limited. For example, studies from India identify that the prevalence of mental illness ranges from 9.5 per 1,000 to 370 per 1,000 people within the general population. Among the homeless (beggars) in India, mental illness ranges from 22.6 to 131 per 1,000. Most recent estimates of mental health conditions in India indicate that approximately 12.5% to 18.9% of primary care patients have a mental health condition. Of these conditions, affective disorders, neuroses, and alcohol and drug disorders rank the highest (Khandelwal et al., 2004).

New studies from South Africa indicate that approximately 30% of adults have experienced a mental health disorder in their lifetimes. Anxiety disorders account for 16% of the disorders, mood disorders account for 10%, while substance abuse disorders account for 13% (Jack et al., 2014; Stein et al., 2008). In areas where traditional African belief systems predominate, many individuals believe that mental health problems result from bewitchment or current influences exerted on them by their dead ancestors, such as feelings of being cursed, punished, or controlled by them (Abdool & Ziqubu-Page, 2004).

Stigma is often an important barrier affecting whether an individual from another racial or ethnic group seeks mental health services.

Implications for PMHN

Although each of the diverse populations discussed reflects some differences in relation to mental health beliefs, mental health factors, and mental health service use, they all demonstrate the need for better understanding to address their mental health needs. Disparity exists in circumstances surrounding risks for mental illness, and access and use of mental health services. Addressing such disparities requires care strategies that demonstrate awareness of the nurses' and clients' perceptions, social context, needs, and resulting mental health care approaches (**Evidence-Based Practice 27-1**).

SPIRITUALITY, RELIGION, AND MENTAL HEALTH

As with other components of one's culture, spirituality and religion influence mental health. Although the terms *religion* and *spirituality* are sometimes used interchangeably, they are different in their focus. Spirituality focuses on the cognitions, values, and beliefs that address ultimate questions about the meaning of life, God, and individual existence. Examples include "Why are we here?" or "Where do we go after this life?" which may or may not be associated with formal religious observance or rituals. Religion encompasses a set of prescribed beliefs concerning the cause, nature, and purpose of the universe, which includes the belief in a supernatural entity or entities from which all life originates. In addition, religion usually involves devotional and ritual observances, and often contains a moral code that governs how humans should and should not behave in accordance with their religious beliefs.

The difference between spirituality and religion to a large degree has to do with uncertainty and certainty about life, individual purpose, origins of the universe, and how we should behave. Religion provides more certainty in all those areas for those who hold religious beliefs. Despite these differences, religion and spirituality influence coping, the causes of mental illness, and the symptoms presented.

Influence on Coping

Use of spirituality and religion has been integrally associated with coping during periods of emotional distress. Both reflect deep-rooted internal aspects of an individual that can provide a connection to a larger community, a sense of meaning and understanding of one's life and world, and a core foundation offering guidance and a framework for decision making. Studies have found that religiosity can be either a positive or negative coping strategy when individuals and families experience psychological crises (Hackney & Sanders, 2003). Variations in spiritual beliefs and practices come into play as individuals cope with mental illness.

Research on spirituality and religion has identified diverse results related to racial, ethnic, and cultural groups. One study examined religious coping when dealing with stressful situations among African Americans, Caribbean Blacks, and non-Hispanic Whites (Chatters, Taylor, Jackson, & Lincoln, 2008). Results revealed that African Americans and Caribbean Blacks reported higher use of religious coping when compared to non-Hispanic Whites. Other studies examined the help-seeking process for Korean immigrants and Muslims with depression (Mir et al., 2015; Shin, 2002). Findings identified the use of multiple steps and stages for Koreans:

- *Stage 1 included prayer and faith.*
- *Stage 2 involved reliance on family and friends.*
- *Stage 3 included (among other strategies) traditional Asian practitioners and counseling from ministers.*
- *Stage 4 involved consideration of mental health services.*

Muslim individuals have been identified as relying on family and community networks and incorporating the religious identity into the healing process.

In a South African national study that included Blacks, colored (mixed race), Indian/Asian, and White citizens who sought services for mental and physical health conditions, 7% sought assistance from spiritual or religious advisors. Blacks were more likely to seek these services as well as the services of traditional healers (Sorsdahl et al., 2009). In India, religion also plays a major role. The Shaman is a religious healer that may be used to address mental health issues. Hindu priests may be consulted when mental health issues arise because certain Hindu deities are believed to guard against evil powers. Sufi shrines of Islamic saints are visited by many people in India for answers to mental health concerns. In addition, nonreligious traditional healers, such as herbalists, witchcraft practitioners, and faith healers, may be used to address mental health problems (Khandelwal et al., 2004).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 27-1: PATIENT-CENTERED CARE AND MENTAL HEALTH CARE

STUDY

Schwind, J. K., Lindsay, G. M., Coffey, S., Morrison, D., & Mildon, B. (2014). Opening the black-box of person-centered care: An arts-informed narrative inquiry into mental health education and practice. *Nurse Education Today, 34*(8), 1167–1171.

SUMMARY

Nursing practice is both an art and a science. Although knowledge is primarily obtained from science, the application of knowledge requires a degree of art. How students construct nursing values and knowledge may be lost when they are placed in complex clinical environments and cannot "see" how nurses apply knowledge in practice. The researchers used "black-box" as a metaphor for nursing knowledge that is "integral, yet invisible, with no continued inquiry; solidifying it as an 'opaque object of fact'" (Schwind, Lindsay, Coffey, Morrison, & Mildon, 2014, p. 1167). When students and nurses assume that they already know everything about a patient, it interferes with the development of the therapeutic relationship and precludes patient-centered care.

The researchers reconceptualized patient-centered care as person-centered care to emphasize the nurse as a person who interacts with the patient as a person. Nurses must be aware of their own life's story and care for themselves to interact with patients as persons with life stories, unique values, and points of view.

The research question posed by the authors was "how do students and nurses construct and enact person-centred care in mental health nursing education and practice?" (p. 1168). The researchers used narrative inquiry and an arts-informed approach over four sessions to explore "their experiences of being cared for and caring for others" (p. 1168) and the use of artistic modes of expression such as lifelines, stories, metaphors, and poems to elicit knowledge that is unreachable by words ("black-box" knowledge).

During the sessions, students' language changed from diagnosis-oriented to person-specific language. The researchers theorized "the students move from conceptualizing patients as 'others', to patients as people to partner in a person-nurse relationship" (p. 1169). Nurses realized how their life stories influenced how they cared for their patients.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

This approach to discover tacit knowledge through arts-informed activities enlightened nurses to the "shared humanness" and partnership of the nurse-patient relationship (Schwind et al., 2014, p. 1170). Self-awareness and reflection on practice should be emphasized in education as it helps the student develop the nursing identity and knowledge. Relationships between nursing faculty and students fostered skills that are transferrable to and enhance nurse–patient relationships. This perspective is particularly important in mental health nursing. The nurse is the primary instrument by which the client develops a therapeutic relationship, and the nurse demonstrates empathy and facilitates communication. A solid foundation for caring and treatment is formed when the nurse uses other approaches to knowing themselves and others.

(*cont.*)

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 27-1: *(CONT.)*
PATIENT-CENTERED CARE AND MENTAL HEALTH CARE

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *Why does the provision of patient-centered care require self-reflection by the student/nurse?*
2. *How is person-centered care different from patient-focused care in this situation?*
3. *How are cultural, ethnic, and spiritual attributes of patients' integral components of care that is focused on the person?*
4. *How can this perspective be used in your clinical experiences?*

Influence on the Etiology of Mental Illness

Even as religious beliefs can assist in coping with mental illness, it can also be used to explain the origins of mental illness. For example, in traditional Islam, it is common to hear of a *jinn* (race of beings who can transform and possess others) and *sihr* (magic, sorcery, or witchcraft). These entities can cause lethargy, illness, bad dreams, hearing voices, anger or sadness, and bizarre body movements that are associated with psychosis. Some Christian faiths believe in spiritual possession of the body resulting in bizarre thoughts and behavior. Belief in witchcraft as an influence in mental illness is found in many societies such as in Africa, Asia, the South Pacific, and the Caribbean. The belief that spiritual ailments that manifest themselves as mental illnesses result from spells and possessions are also held in Western societies. Many cultures believe that the "evil eye" or bringing attention to one's self or family in a prideful manner can lead to both physical and mental health disorders. Conversely, many Native American Indian tribal groups focus on spiritual healing methods to promote mental well-being. These include talking circles, sweat lodges, and smudging. Traditional healing focuses on maintaining harmony against such things as stress, addiction and disease (Ally & Laher, 2008; Martin, 2009; Moghaddam et al., 2015).

Influence on Mental Illness Symptomatology

Mental illness presentations are strongly influenced by cultural and religious meanings. Mental health conditions that affect cognition, such as psychotic disorders that result in delusions and hallucinations, may have religious content. For example, religious themes in delusions and hallucination have been reported in all cultures and are influenced by the norms of the group to which the individual belongs. Yamada, Barrio, Morrison, Sewell, and Jeste (2006) found no significant differences among African American, Latinos, and Whites with respect to the prevalence of religious content. However, another study found that mental health professionals in the United States gave lower ratings of pathology for individuals who had delusions or hallucinations reflecting Catholic or Mormon beliefs, whereas religious content reflecting the views of the Muslim faith was seen as more pathological by mental health professionals (O'Connor & Vandenberg, 2005).

In Western culture, especially the United States, Christian religious beliefs are more familiar to the general population, including mental health professionals. As a result, these beliefs are perceived as acceptable even when there is an intense focus on these beliefs in the patient's communication within a mental health setting. Adherents to these beliefs are seen as "religious expression" rather than "delusional or pathological content." This disparity in diagnosis supports the need for cultural competence in the provision of equitable mental health care.

Religion and spirituality can influence an individual's coping methods, beliefs about the causes of mental illness, and how symptoms are manifested.

BARRIERS TO MENTAL HEALTH SERVICES

Regardless of the types of professional mental health services that diverse populations seek, barriers exist that need to be overcome. These obstacles occur at the individual, environmental, and institutional levels. Individual obstacles originate from within the individual, such as mistrust and lack of knowledge, which inhibit help seeking. Environmental barriers reflect factors that occur within the milieu of the affected individual and inhibit attempts toward seeking help, such as stigma. When individual and environmental barriers are overcome, institutional obstacles such as HCP and service barriers result in significant obstacles (DHHS, 2001).

Barriers to mental health services occur at three levels: individual, environmental, and institutional.

Overcoming Barriers

Access or pathways to mental health care use has been studied in a variety of populations in the United States and worldwide (Lee et al., 2014; Morgan et al., 2005; Park et al., 2011; Shin, 2002; Steel et al., 2006). Most studies focused in this area examine institutional barriers that may impede an individual's entrance into the health care system for mental health care. Increasing evidence has identified the individual and environmental barriers affecting the choices people make before accessing service and when they make initial contact seeking access.

Access and Use of Services

As demonstrated within this chapter, access and use of mental health services are greatly influenced by cultural and religious perspective, as well as ethnic and social identification. Increasing research has demonstrated that these perspectives can function as barriers and facilitators to mental health service access. In addition, mental health service delivery can also function as a facilitator or barrier to mental health service access and result in culturally congruent care or disparities in mental health care and mental health outcomes. The literature also demonstrates that internal and environmental factors frequently result in mental health concerns that are of long standing before access to care. An individual's ability to perform work, engage in interpersonal relationships, and participate in daily living can be significantly impaired as he or she encounters barriers to mental health care (Pearson et al., 2015). Distress becomes heightened and illness behaviors increased, leading to an increasing loss of normalcy.

Individuals may also experience multiple episodes in which they fluctuated between a state of marginal living and a higher level functioning. Factors that influenced these episodes included the participants' knowledge level about mental health services and their beliefs and values about service use. However, the most important influencing factor was the impact of family and significant others. These individuals function as facilitators for or barriers to seeking mental health services for a solution. An individual will come to an understanding of what is occurring based on his or her belief system. Next, the individual uses family and social networks to evaluate and seek help to address the problem. Accessing formal mental health services is generally done as a last option when doing so is viewed as congruent with the individual's perceptions, culture, and language. Many of these aspects were identified in studies involving African Americans, Asians, African Caribbean and Black African, Australian, Vietnamese, Chinese, Native American Indian, Latino, and Arabic populations. The results all indicate that individual, environmental, and service barriers to care exist and must be addressed (Akinsulure-Smith, 2014; Bignall, Jacquez, & Vaughn, 2014; Hines-Martin, Brown-Piper, Kim, & Malone, 2003; Hines-Martin, Malone, Kim, & Brown-Piper, 2003; Lee, 2014; Morgan et al., 2005; Roh et al., 2015; Shin, 2002; Steel et al., 2006; Tyson, Arriola, & Corvin, 2015).

Implications for PMHNs

These studies underscore the need to address barriers with diverse populations. Therefore, to promote access to services, individual barriers such as beliefs and knowledge, environmental barriers such as family and social networks, and service barriers such as culture and language must be addressed. Increasingly, nurses have been identified as having an important role in health care leadership. The American Academy of Nursing, the American Nurses Association, and others have promoted "Nurses leading the way." This perspective is exceptionally important for nurses to demonstrate their leadership in providing culturally competent, patient-centered mental health care (Pearson et al., 2014, 2015). Taking the lead in assisting individuals and families to overcome barriers to mental health care can be accomplished in any setting because all health concerns have mental health implications. The following can be used to assist patients and their families to overcome barriers:

- *Be aware of potential cultural or religious differences between one's self and the patient.*

- *Recognize signs and symptoms of emotional or mental distress during patient interactions regardless of the setting.*
- *Use evidence-based practice to be informed of conditions that may have a high incidence of mental health comorbidity, such as diabetes and cardiovascular disease, and use that knowledge for a more thorough mental health assessment, as well as patient and family education.*
- *Identify terms for mental health concerns, which are sensitive to the patient's cultural perspective.*
- *Be knowledgeable of resources that can be used to address mental health needs for your patient population.*
- *Bring in the cultural expertise of others when needed to encourage and support the patient's access to mental health care.*

Regardless of the population involved, overcoming barriers to accessing mental health care is a priority.

CULTURALLY COMPETENT AND CONGRUENT CARE

The globalization of the world and the diversity of populations demonstrate the need for all PMHNs to provide culturally competent and congruent mental health care. This need is further emphasized by the Surgeon General's Report (DHHS, 2001), the WHO, and professional nursing organizations such as the International Society of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nurses and the American Psychiatric Nurses Association. Culturally competent care requires provider competence and organizational competence.

Provider competence is based on understanding the theoretical basis for professional development and the use of resources to better understand the populations for which mental health care is being provided. Nursing has several frameworks on which to base professional development in cultural and linguistic competence. These include Leininger, Giger-Newman and Davidhizar, Purnell, and others. Nurses also have additional resources to assist with culturally appropriate assessment of immigrants and refugees (Congress, 1994, 2004; National Center for Cultural Competence, 2009; Pearson et al., 2015). Additional areas for assessment with immigrant and refugee populations include reasons for relocation, legal status, crisis events, and prior trauma, especially with refugees. Developing provider competence does not occur overnight. Rather, it develops over a period of time and requires awareness and knowledge of the various cultures to develop specific skills for each culture.

Organizational competence requires nurses and other providers to work within their service settings to develop mental health services and resources to address the needs of diverse populations using these services. The National Center for Cultural Competence identifies the following principles for service organizations:

- *Cultural competence is achieved by identifying and understanding the needs and help-seeking behaviors of individuals and families.*
- *Culturally competent organizations design and implement services that are tailored or matched to the unique needs of the individuals, children, families, organizations, and communities served.*
- *Practice is driven in service delivery systems by the patient's preferred choices, not by culturally blind or culturally free interventions.*
- *Culturally competent organizations have a service delivery model that recognizes mental health as an integral and inseparable aspect of primary health care (National Center for Cultural Competence, 2009; Pearson et al., 2015).*

Organizations that strive for cultural competence must focus on delivery of services that are culturally congruent. **CULTURAL CONGRUENCE** has been defined as the distance between the cultural competence characteristics of a health care organization and the patient's perception of those same competence characteristics as they relate to the patient's cultural needs (Costantino, Malgady, & Primavera, 2009). In other words, congruence is the degree of match between what the health care setting provides and what the patients perceive that they need. In order to establish and maintain appropriate congruence between the health care organization and the patients that they serve, there must be constant growth and development through partnership, with the diverse populations that seek services within that setting. An exemplar illustrating how mental health services can increase cultural congruence is the Center of Excellence in Culturally Competent Mental Health (http://nyculturalcompetence.org).

Provider and organizational cultural competence is necessary to meet the needs of the diverse populations being served.

Addressing and deceasing mental health service disparities have been identified as goals by the Office of the U.S.

Surgeon General, the National Institutes of Health, and the WHO. Accomplishing those goals requires a better understanding of the experience of individuals from diverse ethnic, racial, social, and cultural backgrounds as they seek assistance with mental health concerns. Nurses need to be knowledgeable about the culturally based values and beliefs related to the meaning of mental health and illness, and about help seeking from the perspective of individuals from diverse groups. This awareness provides a firm knowledge foundation about the pathways used to access services and what and how self-care decisions are made. As a result, nursing care strategies can be tailored to meet the needs of diverse population groups and individuals to achieve optimal mental health outcomes.

SUMMARY POINTS

- The attainment of the highest level of health is a fundamental right of each person regardless of race, religion, political belief, or economic or social condition. As the population of the United States is becoming increasingly diverse, the need for equitable health care for all is also increasing.
- Empowering patients to be active participants in their care is a patient-centered approach that encompasses diversity and requires the nurse to be culturally competent.
- Collaboration among the health care team leads to the integration of diverse knowledge and skills that results in safe high-quality patient outcomes and assists patients in achieving personal health care goals.
- Race, ethnicity, and culture are significant parts of the context in which an individual lives, influencing the person's perception of well-being and illness, health care decisions, and health services use.
- Differences in ethnicity, race, and culture impact cognitive styles, negotiation strategies, and value systems.
- Many cultures focus on the family as a collective decision-making unit, contrasting Western culture that emphasizes individual decision making.
- Different racial and ethnic groups experience some variability in incidence and prevalence rates for different mental health disorders, which may derive from economic and social experiences.
- Spiritual or religious advisers, traditional healers, religious healers, priests, and religious settings may be sought out by different cultural groups as a means to address mental health concerns. Religious beliefs may be used to explain the causes of mental illness or may be evidenced in symptoms that are manifested.
- Individual barriers such as mistrust and lack of knowledge, environmental barriers such as attitudes and stigma, and institutional barriers such as HCPs and services can interfere with one's access to mental health services.
- Providing culturally competent and congruent care is essential to meet the needs of the diverse populations being served to promote achievement of optimal outcomes.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. The nurse is working with a group of patients who have immigrated to the United States from several Latin American and South American countries and is reviewing the situation for possible barriers to accessing mental health services. Which of the following would the nurse identify as an environmental barrier?

a. No translator on staff at the facilities
b. Knowledge about the mental health problems
c. Availability of family support
d. Beliefs of mental illness caused by demon

2. A nurse is interviewing a patient who came to the area after she fled her home country during a political revolution. When assessing the patient, the nurse notes that the patient has adopted several of the local customs of the area. The nurse identifies this as which of the following?

a. Ethnicity
b. Enculturation
c. Spirituality
d. Religiosity

(*cont.*)

NCLEX-PREP* (*CONT.*)

3. A nurse is working in an area that has a high concentration of Asian immigrants and is developing a plan to minimize possible risk factors for poor mental health. Which of the following would the nurse least likely address?
   a. Social isolation
   b. Interaction with new culture
   c. Feelings of persecution
   d. Stress of acculturation

4. A nurse is providing an in-service presentation for staff members of a clinic about how the clinic is promoting culturally competent care among the providers. Which of the following would the nurse include?
   a. Emphasis on mental health as a separate entity from primary health care
   b. Services that are broad in scope, reflecting general cultural concepts
   c. Services that are focused primarily on the major cultural groups within the United States.
   d. Focus on the help-seeking behaviors of the unique populations being served

5. A group of students are reviewing information about the impact of culture, race, and ethnicity on mental health and mental health care delivery. The students demonstrate understanding when they identify which of the following as reflecting cognitive styles?
   a. Methods for processing information
   b. Information denoting evidence for change
   c. Primary locus of decision making
   d. Sources of anxiety and anxiety reduction

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

Abdool, K., & Ziqubu-Page, T. (2004). *Bridging the gap: Potential for a health care partnership between African traditional healers and biomedical personnel in South Africa: South African Medical Association*. Retrieved from http://www.samedical.org

Akinsulure-Smith, A. M. (2014). Displaced African female survivors of conflict-related sexual violence: Challenges for mental health providers. *Violence Against Women, 20*(6), 677–694.

Ally, Y., & Laher, S. (2008). South African Muslim Faith Healers perceptions of mental illness: Understanding, aetiology and treatment. *Journal of Religion and Health, 47*(1), 45–56.

American Association of Colleges of Nursing (AACN). (2008). *The essentials of baccalaureate education for professional nursing practice*. Retrieved from www.aacn.nche.edu/education-resources/BaccEssentials08.pdf

American Psychological Association Presidential Taskforce on Immigration. (2011). *Crossroads: The psychology of immigration in the new century*. Retrieved from http://www.apa.org/topics/immigration/report.aspx

Bignall, W. J. R., Jacquez, F., & Vaughn, L. M. (2014). Attribution of mental illness: An ethnically diverse community perspective. *Community Mental Health Journal, 51*(5), 540–545. doi:10.1007/s10597–014-9820-x

Borges, G., Breslau, J., Su, M., Miller, M., Medina-Mora, M. E., & Aguilar-Gaxiola, S. (2009). Immigration and suicidal behavior among Mexicans and Mexican Americans. *American Journal of Public Health, 99*(4), 728–733.

Bostwick, W. (2007). *Disparities in mental health treatment among GLBT populations*. Retrieved from www.nami.org

Broman, C. L. (2012). Race differences in the receipt of mental health services among young adults. *Psychological Services, 9*(1), 38–48.

Campinha-Bacote, J. (2011, May 31). Delivering patient-centered care in the midst of a cultural conflict: The role of cultural competence. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing, 16*(2), 5. doi:10.3912/OJIN.Vol16No02Man05

Chatters, L. M., Taylor, R. J., Jackson, J. S., & Lincoln, K. D. (2008). Religious coping among African Americans, Caribbean Blacks and Non-Hispanic Whites. *Journal of Community Psychology, 36*(3), 371–386.

Cheon, B. K., & Chiao, J. Y. (2012). Cultural variations in implicit mental illness stigma. *Journal of Cross-Cultural Psychology, 43*(7), 1058–1062.

Cheung, M. (2009). Asian male domestic violence victims; services exclusively for men. *Journal of Family Violence, 24*(7), 447–462.

Chong, W. W., Aslani, P., & Chen, T. F. (2013). Shared decision-making and interprofessional collaboration in mental healthcare: A qualitative study exploring perceptions of barriers and facilitators. *Journal of Interprofessional Care, 27*(5), 373–379.

Collins, K. S., Hughes, D. L., Doty, M. M., Ives, B. L., Edwards, J. N., & Tenney, K. (2002). *Diverse communities, common concerns:*

Assessing health care quality for minority Americans. New York, NY: The Commonwealth Fund.

The Commonwealth Fund. (2001). *Health quality care survey*. Retrieved from http://www.cmwf.org

Congress, C. W. (2004). Cultural and ethical issues in working with culturally diverse patients and their families: The use of the culturagram to promote cultural competent practice in the health care setting. In A. Metteri (Ed.), *Social work visions from around the globe: Citizens, methods and approaches*. Hawthorne, NJ: Hawthorne Press.

Congress, E. P. (1994). The use of culturagrams to assess and empower culturally diverse families. *Families in Society, 75*(9), 531–538.

Costantino, G., Malgady, R. G., & Primavera, L. H. (2009). Congruence between culturally competent treatment and cultural needs of older Latinos. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 77*(5), 941–949.

Cronenwett, L., Sherwood, G., Barnsteiner, J., Disch, J., Johnson, J., Mitchell, P.,…Warren, J. (2007). Quality and Safety Education for Nurses. *Nursing Outlook, 55*(3), 122–131.

de Toledo Piza Peluso, E., de Araujo Peres, C., & Blay, S. L. (2008). Public conceptions of schizophrenia in urban Brazil. *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology, 43*, 792–799.

Dunlop, D. D., Song, J., Lyons, J. S., Manheim, L. M., & Chang, R. W. (2003). Racial/ethnic differences in rates of depression among preretirement adults. *American Journal of Public Health, 93*(11), 1945–1952.

Fozdar, F. (2009)."The golden country": Ex-Yugoslav and African refugee experiences of settlement and "depression." *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies, 35*(8), 1335–1352.

Gater, R., Waheed, W., Husain, N., Tomenson, B., Aseem, S., & Creed, F. (2010). Social intervention for British Pakistani women with depression: Randomised controlled trial. *British Journal of Psychiatry, 197*(3), 227–233.

Giurgescu, C., Misra, D. P., Sealy-Jefferson, S., Caldwell, C. H., Templin, T. N., Slaughter-Acey, J. C., & Osypuk, T. L. (2015). The impact of neighborhood quality, perceived stress, and social support on depressive symptoms during pregnancy in African American women. *Social Science & Medicine (1982), 130*, 172–180.

Goodkind, J. R., Gorman, B., Hess, J. M., Parker, D. P., & Hough, R. L. (2015). Reconsidering culturally competent approaches to American Indian healing and well-being. *Qualitative Health Research, 25*(4), 486–499.

Hackney, C. H., & Sanders, G. S. (2003). Religiosity and mental health: A meta-analysis of recent studies. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion, 42*(1), 43–55.

Hines-Martin, V., Brown-Piper, A., Kim, S., & Malone, M. (2003). Enabling factors of mental health service use among African Americans. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 17*(5), 197–204.

Hines-Martin, V., Malone, M., Kim, S., & Brown-Piper, A. (2003). Barriers to mental health care access in an African American population. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 24*(3), 237–256.

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health system for the 21st century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Jack, H., Wagner, R. G., Peterson, I., Thom, R., Newton, C. R., Stein, A.,…Hofman, K. (2014). *Closing the mental health treatment gap in South Africa: A review of costs and cost-effectiveness—epidemiological transitions special issue*. Retrieved from http://www.globalhealthaction.net

Kaiser Family Foundation. (2011). *Kaiser's monthly update on minority health disparities*. Retrieved from http://www.kff.org/minorityhealth/report.cfm

Khandelwal, S. K., Jhingan, H. P., Ramesh, S., Gupta, R. K., & Srivastava, V. K. (2004). India mental health country profile. *International Review of Psychiatry (Abingdon, England), 16*(1–2), 126–141.

Kim, B. S., Atkinson, D. R., & Umemoto, D. (2001). Asian cultural values and the counseling process: Current knowledge and directions for future research. *The Counseling Psychologist, 29*(4), 570–603.

Kirmayer, L. J., Groleau, D., Guzder, J., Blake, C., & Jarvis, E. (2003). Cultural consultation: A model of mental health service for multicultural societies. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry, 48*(3), 145–153.

Kohrt, B. A., Jordans, M. J., Rai, S., Shrestha, P., Luitel, N. P., Ramaiya, M. K.,… Patel, V. (2015). Therapist competence in global mental health: Development of the ENhancing Assessment of Common Therapeutic factors (ENACT) rating scale. *Behaviour Research and Therapy, 69*, 11–21.

Lee, E. J., Ditchman, N., Fong, M. W. M., Piper, L., & Feigon, M. (2014). Mental health service seeking among Korean international students in the United States: A path analysis. *Journal of Community Psychology, 42*(6), 639–655.

Martin, S. S. (2009). Healthcare-seeking behaviors of older Iranian immigrants: Health perceptions and definitions. *Journal of Evidence-Based Social Work, 6*(1), 58–78.

Martinez Tyson, D., Arriola, N. B., & Corvin, J. (2015). Perceptions of depression and access to mental health care among Latino immigrants: Looking beyond one size fits all. *Qualitative Health Research*, 1–14. Retrieved from http://qhr.sagepub.com/content/early/2015/06/01/1049732315588499.full.pdf+html

Mental Health America. (2014). *Latino/Hispanic Communities and mental health fact sheet*. Retrieved from http://www.mentalhealthamerica.net/issues/latinohispanic-communities-and-mental-health

Minsky, S., Vega, W., Miskimen, T., Gara, M., & Escobar, J. (2003). Diagnostic patterns in Latino, African American, and European American psychiatric patients. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 60*(6), 637–644.

Mir, G., Meer, S., Cottrell, D., McMillan, D., House, A., & Kanter, J. W. (2015). Adapted behavioural activation for the treatment of depression in Muslims. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 180*, 190–199.

Moghaddam, J. F., Momper, S. L., & Fong, T. W. (2015). Crystalizing the role of traditional healing in an urban Native American health center. *Community Mental Health Journal, 51*(3), 305–314.

Morgan, C., Mallett, R., Hutchinson, G., Bagalkote, H., Morgan, K., Fearon, P.,…Leff, J.; AESOP Study Group. (2005). Pathways to care and ethnicity. 2: Source of referral and help-seeking. Report from the AESOP study. *The British Journal of Psychiatry, 186*, 290–296.

Naeem, F., Gul, M., Irfan, M., Munshi, T., Asif, A., Rashid, S., …Ayub, M. (2015). Brief culturally adapted CBT (CaCBT) for depression: A randomized controlled trial from Pakistan. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 177*, 101–107.

National Center for Cultural Competence. (2009). *Cultural competence in service organizations*. Retrieved November 2, 2009, from http://nccc.georgetown.edu/information/organizations.html

O'Connor, S., & Vandenberg, B. (2005). Psychosis or faith? Clinicians' assessment of religious beliefs. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 73*(4), 610–616.

Owen, S., & Khalil, E. (2007). Addressing diversity in mental health care: A review of guidance documents. *International Journal of Nursing Studies, 44*(3), 467–478.

Padmavati, R. (2005). Community mental health care in India. *International Review of Psychiatry (Abingdon, England), 17*(2), 103–107.

Park, M., Chesla, C. A., Rehm, R. S., & Chun, K. M. (2011). Working with culture: Culturally appropriate mental health care for Asian Americans. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 67*(11), 2373–2382.

Patel, V., & Bloch, S. (2009). The ethical imperative to scale up health care services for people with severe mental disorders in low and middle income countries. *Postgraduate Medical Journal, 85*(1008), 509–513.

Pearson, G. S., Evans, L. K., Hines-Martin, V. P., Yearwood, E. L., York, J. A., & Kane, C. F. (2014). Promoting the mental health of families. *Nursing Outlook, 62*(3), 225–227.

Pearson, G. S., Hines-Martin, V. P., Evans, L. K., York, J. A., Kane, C. F., & Yearwood, E. L. (2015). Addressing gaps in mental health needs of diverse, at-risk, underserved, and disenfranchised populations: A call for nursing action. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 29*(1), 14–18.

Polo, A. J., & López, S. R. (2009). Culture, context, and the internalizing distress of Mexican American youth. *Journal of Clinical Child and Adolescent Psychology, 38*(2), 273–285.

Pumariega, A. J., & Rothe, E. (2003). Cultural considerations in child and adolescent psychiatric emergencies and crises. *Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Clinics of North America, 12*(4), 723–744, vii.

Rahman, A., Malik, A., Sikander, S., Roberts, C., & Creed, F. (2008). Cognitive behaviour therapy-based intervention by community health workers for mothers with depression and their infants in rural Pakistan: A cluster-randomised controlled trial. *Lancet (London, England), 372*(9642), 902–909.

Razzouk, D., Gallo, C., Olifson, S., Zorzetto, R., Fiestas, F., Poletti, G., …Mari, J. J. (2008). Challenges to reduce the "10/90 gap": Mental health research in Latin American and Caribbean countries. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica, 118*(6), 490–498.

Roh, S., Brown-Rice, K. A., Lee, K. H., Lee, Y. S., Yee-Melichar, D., & Talbot, E. P. (2015). Attitudes toward mental health services among American Indians by two age groups. *Community Mental Health Journal, 51*(8), 970–977.

Rostain, A. L., Ramsay, J. R., & Waite, R. (2015). Cultural background & barriers to care for African American adults. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry, 76*(3), 279–283.

Scheffler, R. M., Bruckner, T., Fulton, B., Yoon, J., Shen, G., Chisholm, … Saxena, S. (2011). *Human resources for mental health: Workforce shortages in low, and middle income countries*. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO.

Schwind, J. K., Lindsay, G. M., Coffey, S., Morrison, D., & Mildon, B. (2014). Opening the black-box of person-centered care: An arts-informed narrative inquiry into mental health education and practice. *Nurse Education Today, 34*(8), 1167–1171.

Shafer, K., & Wendt, D. (2015). Men's mental health: A call to social workers. *Social Work, 60*(2), 105–112.

Shin, J. K. (2002). Help-seeking behaviors by Korean immigrants for depression. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 23*(5), 461–476.

Smedley, B. D., Stith, A. Y., & Nelson, A. R. (2002). *Unequal treatment: Confronting racial and ethnic disparities in health care*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Snowden, L. R., Masland, M. C., Libby, A. M., Wallace, N., & Fawley, K. (2008). Ethnic minority children's use of psychiatric emergency care in California's public mental health system. *American Journal of Public Health, 98*, 118–124.

Snowden, L. R., & Yamada, A. (2005). Cultural differences in access to care. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology, 1*, 143–166.

Sorsdahl, K., Stein, D. J., Grimsrud, A., Seedat, S., Flisher, A. J., Williams, D. R., & Myer, L. (2009). Traditional healers in the treatment of common mental disorders in South Africa. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease, 197*(6), 434–441.

Steel, Z., McDonald, R., Silove, D., Bauman, A., Sandford, P., Herron, J., & Minas, I. H. (2006). Pathways to the first contact with specialist mental health care. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry, 40*, 347–354.

Stein, D. J., & Seedat, S. (2007). From research methods to clinical in psychiatry: Challenges and opportunities in the developing world. *International Review of Psychiatry, 19*(5), 573–581.

Stein, D. J., Seedat, S., Herman, A., Moomal, H., Heeringa, S. G., Kessler, R. C., & Williams, D. R. (2008). Lifetime prevalence of psychiatric disorders in South Africa. *British Journal of Psychiatry, 192*, 112–117.

Sullivan, H. S. (1947). *Conceptions of modern psychiatry.* Washington, DC: William Alanson White Psychiatric Foundation.

Summerfield, D. (2005). "My whole body is sick …my life is not good": A Rwandan asylum-seeker attends a psychiatric clinic in London. In D. Ingleby (Ed.), *Forced migration and mental health: Rethinking the care of refugees and displaced persons* (pp. 97–114). New York, NY: Springer Science.

Tyson, D. M., Arriola, N. B., & Corvin, J. (2015). Perception of depression and access to mental health care among Latino immigrants: Looking beyond one size fits all. *Qualitative Health Research,* 1–14. doi:10.1177/1049732315588499

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). (2001). *Mental health: Culture, race, and ethnicity—A supplement to mental health: A report of the Surgeon General*. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, Center for Mental Health Services.

Wang, P., Berglund, P., & Kessler, R. (2001). Recent care of common mental disorders in the United States. *Journal of General Internal Medicine, 15*(5), 284–292.

Willging, C. E., Salvador, M., & Kano, M. (2006). Pragmatic help-seeking: How sexual and gender minority groups access mental health care in a rural state. *Psychiatric Services, 57*, 871–874.

Williams, D. R., González, H. M., Neighbors, H., Nesse, R., Abelson, J. M., Sweetman, J., & Jackson, J. S. (2007). Prevalence and distribution of major depressive disorder among African Americans, Caribbean blacks and non-Hispanic whites: Results from the national survey of American life (SNAL). *Archives of General Psychiatry, 64*, 305–315.

Woodward, A. T., Taylor, R. J., Bullard, K. M., Neighbors, H. W., Chatters, L. M., & Jackson, J. S. (2008). Use of professional and informal support by African Americans and Caribbean Blacks with mental disorders. *Psychiatric Services, 59*(11), 1292–1298.

World Health Organization (WHO) (1948). Constitution of the World Health Organization—Basic document, World Health Assemblies, p. 1. Retrieved from http://apps.who.int/gb/bd/PDF/bd47/EN/constitution-en.pdf?ua=1

World Health Organization (WHO). (2009). *The world health 2008 report*. Retrieved from http://www.who.int/

Yamada, A. M., Barrio, C., Morrison, S. W., Sewell, D., & Jeste, D. V. (2006). Cross-ethnic evaluation of psychotic symptom content in hospitalized middle-aged and older adults. *General Hospital Psychiatry, 28*, 161–168.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

Ethics

Legal Issues

Nursing Responsibilities

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Identify ethical theories that may be used when providing care to psychiatric-mental health patients
2. Analyze the steps of the ethical decision-making process, applying them to nursing processes
3. Describe the rights and responsibilities of psychiatric-mental health patients across the continuum of care
4. Compare the similarities and differences between voluntary and involuntary admission for mental health care
5. Describe the concepts of competency and self-determination as they apply to the psychiatric-mental health patient

CHAPTER 28

ETHICAL AND LEGAL PRINCIPLES

Katherine R. Casale

6. Explain the methods for ensuring patient safety when implementing restraint and seclusion
7. Discuss the responsibilities of the psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs) in providing ethical and legal nursing care

KEY TERMS

Autonomy
Beneficence
Competence
Ethics
Fidelity
Involuntary commitment
Justice
Kantianism
Nonmaleficence
Seclusion
Self-determination
Social justice
Utilitarianism
Veracity
Voluntary admission

Psychiatric-mental health nurses (PMHNs) make critical decisions about patient care every day. To make the best decisions, they must reflect on principles of good and bad as well as consider which choices benefit the individual as well as the group. Ethical and legal decision-making situations are seldom black or white, and this is especially true in psychiatric-mental health nursing. Therefore, PMHNs need a firm understanding of ethical theories and legal tenets that form the foundation from which to make ethical and legal decisions to protect their patients and themselves.

This chapter discusses the major ethical theories used as a foundation for ethical decision making and presents an example of the process based on the nursing process. The chapter describes the legal issues involved in psychiatric-mental health nursing care and treatment, and addresses the nursing responsibilities necessary to ensure the ethical and legal provision of care.

ETHICS

ETHICS is a collection of philosophical principles that examine the rightness and wrongness of decisions and conduct as human beings. Ethicists, including nursing scholars and clinical ethics consultants, use various approaches to address practical moral dilemmas (Pagan, 2014). Personal moral convictions of PMHNs serve as a foundation to reflect on ethical quandaries that arise in their daily work (Cleary & Horsfall, 2013, Park, Jeon, Hong, & Cho, 2014). Nurses who are engaged in providing care to patients with mental illnesses face unique challenges that can test their moral and ethical reasoning. Thus, an understanding of ethical theories and principles is important in determining the proper decision.

The scope of responsibility as well as the rights and standards of practice for professional nurses is clearly delineated in the American Nurses Association (ANA) *Code of Ethics for Nurses With Interpretive Statements* (2001). This code is a written statement of the expected behaviors and practices of every nurse every day. The practice of nursing requires ethical conduct and moral decision making during the care of patients; the Code of Ethics is updated regularly to guide nurses in their daily duties, whether providing direct or indirect care to those patients.

The ANA *Code of Ethics* and the International Council of Nurses (ICN) Code of Ethics for Nurses both specifically address nursing behavior in the workplace. Behavior among coworkers and colleagues has recently been spotlighted as a result of increasing incidences of incivility and bullying among nursing colleagues. PMHNs must recognize the elements that comprise uncivil professional behavior and correlate these behaviors with the related ethical and legal issues. Nurses who witness or participate in incivility violate ethical principles of nonmaleficence, beneficence, and justice and breach the character virtues of compassion and integrity (Matt, 2012).

The mental health of care providers must also be ensured, as they provide routine care and also because they respond to natural and man-made disasters. In addition to risking physical harm and injuries, first responders to disasters are at increased risk for psychological harm at the time of the event and also for months and years into the future. Rutkow, Gable, and Links (2011) reference studies that uncovered increased incidences of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) as well as depression, anxiety, and stress-related illnesses in first responders including mental health workers. Additionally, responders with existing mental health conditions may suffer exacerbations as a result of repeated or long-term exposure to public health emergencies and disasters (Call, Pfefferbaum, Jenuwine, & Flynn, 2012).

In the face of ever-changing technology, nurses encounter increased responsibilities and increased stress. First and foremost, the nurse has a primary responsibility to protect the rights, health, and safety of the patient. However, exactly how does the nurse act ethically to protect the patient? **Evidence-Based Practice 28-1** summarizes two important studies related to doing the right thing and the ethical nursing practice.

Ethics involves the principles that address right and wrong.

Ethical Theories and Principles

Several ethical theories and principles mold the professional practice of psychiatric-mental health nursing and provide a firm foundation to guide professional decision making.

UTILITARIANISM professes that decisions should be based on producing the best outcome or the greatest happiness for the greatest number of people. Proponents of utilitarianism believe that the end justifies the means, whereas opponents might argue that the interests of the minority and of individuals who lack assets and access to health care should not be ignored (Thompson, 2014).

The ethical principle of **KANTIANISM** is in contrast to utilitarianism. It focuses primarily on performing one's duty rather than the "rightness" or "wrongness" of the outcome. This theory explores the concepts of **AUTONOMY** (capacity to make decisions and act on them), **BENEFICENCE** (doing what is best), **NONMALEFICENCE** (doing no harm), **JUSTICE** (fair and equal treatment), **VERACITY** (honesty and truthfulness), and **FIDELITY** (acting as promised).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE 28-1: ETHICAL PRACTICE

STUDIES

Catlett, S., & Lovan, C. (2011). Being a good nurse and doing the right thing: A replication study. *Nursing Ethics, 18*(1), 54–63.

Smith, K.V., & Godfrey, N. S. (2002). Being a good nurse and doing the right thing: A qualitative study. *Nursing Ethics, 9*(1), 301–312.

SUMMARY

This qualitative research effort that was undertaken in 2002 and replicated almost a decade later identifies four areas in which nurses are characterized as ethical and good practitioners. Philosophers define *ethical behavior* as being morally sound with virtuous actions. In nursing, this is translated into caring practice. Both Smith and Godfrey's original research and Catlett and Lovan's reexamination of the topic reinforced the concept of intentional ethical caring as an essential quality of the good nurse. Participants described good nurses who consistently do the right thing in four general areas: "personal traits and attributes, technical skills and management of care, work environment and co-workers, and caring and caring behaviors" (Catlett & Lovan, 2011, p. 58). Organizations can use these findings to hire nurses who demonstrate these skills and can provide continuing education to reinforce and strengthen these essential attributes. Working in an ethical environment improves job satisfaction, strengthens retention, and minimizes job turnover.

APPLICATION TO PRACTICE

Findings from both studies demonstrate the complexity of training needed to develop ethical, caring nurses. The nurse's ability to perform technical tasks efficiently and safely is only one trait of the good nurse. This knowledge has a significant impact on professional nursing education, as students must focus on developing character traits in addition to clinical competence. Characteristics such as trustworthiness, caring, honesty, and empathy can be learned and reinforced in the classroom. Nursing students can hone and perfect the interpersonal skills that make nurses among the most trusted professionals in the workforce through the use of case studies, simulation, and clinical practice. Students who struggle with making ethical choices can learn to do so by observing peer mentors and faculty.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. *How has the health care environment changed since the original study was conducted?*
2. *Consider the following: You are one of two registered nurses working nightshift on a mental health unit. A patient on the unit is prescribed diazepam 5 mg every 8 hours as needed for anxiety. You observe that the patient is calm and relaxed in bed at 11:00 p.m. At 11:05 p.m., you note that the other registered nurse pulls a dose of diazepam for the patient, but does not bring it to the patient's room. How would you handle this situation?*

Beneficence and nonmaleficence focus on patient advocacy; that is, doing what is best for the patient and not doing anything that will harm him or her. These two principles go hand in hand. Beneficence forms the foundation for all care decisions. For example, beneficence is demonstrated by administering antidepressant medications to a patient experiencing depression, providing emotional support to patients experiencing anxiety, and identifying signs that a patient is being abused. Nonmaleficence expands the principle of beneficence and involves actions that are proactive. For example, in the case of abuse, the nurse reports this abuse to reduce the risk for recurrence. Nonmaleficence is also at the core of nursing research; research informed consent asserts a promise to not intentionally harm participants (Murray, 2014; Tsitsis, 2014).

Doing the "right" thing implies that every individual has the ability to make an informed choice (autonomy). However, this concept of autonomy is flawed when one considers the decision-making abilities of certain subpopulations, such as infants and patients who are considered legally incompetent. PMHNs must recognize that individuals with serious, uncontrolled mental illness may not be capable of making an independent choice. In that instance, it is the responsibility of the mental health care team to make certain that the rights of each patient are protected by an appointed representative. At times, to preserve the safety of the patient and those around him or her, a patient may lose the right of **SELF-DETERMINATION** (freedom to make decisions without consulting others). In addition, PMHNs constantly use critical thinking to ensure a balance between autonomy and beneficence. At times, the difficulty lies in deciding which ethical principle should have the highest priority.

Nursing theorist Hildegard Peplau proposed that a primary role of the PMHN is that of patient advocate and supporter. She emphasized that nurses should provide education about patients' rights, choices, and access to services (Merritt & Procter, 2010).

The concept of justice refers to distributing resources equally to all patients and combating discrimination of any type. The just PMHN treats all patients fairly and equally. Promoting **SOCIAL JUSTICE** may prove difficult in societies where there is distinction between people who have resources and easy access to all levels of health care and those who lack resources and access. Many of our patients have shortened life expectancies and decreased quality of life resulting from health care inequity (Pearson, 2012; Thompson, 2014). Nurses fight these injustices with caring commitment to all patients; recent nursing literature emphasizes the importance of nursing practices that promote social health equity and justice. Passage of the Affordable Care Act in the United States has provided reasonably priced health care coverage to previously uninsured individuals to promote health equity and social justice (Shaffer, 2013).

Veracity and fidelity, being honest and faithful, are two similar ethical principles that may be difficult to maintain. Lachman (2008) noted: "Because of cost and access constraints in today's health care environment, the virtues of honesty and integrity are constantly under assault. Integrity can be preserved only if nurses' actions are consistent with the values and ethics of the profession." **Box 28-1** lists the ethical principles and theories and how the PMHN applies them.

Model for Ethical Decision Making

Throughout the educational experience, nursing students are encouraged to engage in the nursing process for clinical decision making. Peplau, known for her work with the interpersonal process (see Chapter 2), identified four phases of the nurse–patient relationship that have been correlated to the nursing process. Both can be integrated and adapted for use as a guide for ethical decision making in psychiatric-mental health nursing. The following example demonstrates the steps of the decision-making process for a PMHN who encounters an ethical dilemma. It also incorporates several ethical principles that the nurse needs to consider during the process. Ethical principles evolved from theories of human morality. Nurses may face instances in which immediate benefit and long-term benefit may conflict or when limited resources are available and decisions must be made to weigh which decision will promote the greatest positive impact (Ivanov & Oden, 2013). PMHNs have a strong voice to influence beneficent care of patients while maintaining safety and promoting quality (Kangasniemi,Vaismoradi, Jasper, & Turunen).

Ethical theories and principles provide the foundation from which the PMHN integrates the nursing process to make an ethical decision when faced with an ethical dilemma.

Orientation/Assessment Phase

George is a 22-year-old recent college graduate with a degree in international business. He is in excellent health except for a recent depressed mood. George has $60,000 in unpaid student loans, which are coming due. He has been unable to find a job during the last 4 months since graduation. He has depleted his meager savings and is sleeping on a friend's couch and eating meals at a homeless shelter.

BOX 28-1: APPLYING ETHICAL THEORIES AND PRINCIPLES TO PSYCHIATRIC-MENTAL HEALTH NURSING

Ethical principle	The nurse adheres to the ANA *Code of Ethics*.
Utilitarianism	The nurse collaborates with other health professionals and the public in promoting community, national, and international efforts to meet health needs.
	The nurse participates in the advancement of the profession through contributions to practice, education, administration, and knowledge development.
Kantianism	The nurse participates in establishing, maintaining, and improving health care environments and conditions of employment conducive to the provision of quality health care and consistent with the values of the profession through individual and collective action.
Autonomy	The nurse promotes, advocates for, and strives to protect the health, safety, and rights of the patient.
Beneficence and nonmaleficence	The profession of nursing, as represented by associations and their members, is responsible for articulating nursing values, for maintaining the integrity of the profession and its practice, and for shaping social policy.
Justice	The nurse, in all professional relationships, practices with compassion and respect for the inherent dignity, worth, and uniqueness of every individual, unrestricted by considerations of social or economic status, personal attributes, or the nature of health problems.
Veracity	The nurse owes the same duties to self as to others, including the responsibility to preserve integrity and safety, to maintain competence, and to continue personal and professional growth.
Fidelity	The nurse's primary commitment is to the patient, whether an individual, family, group, or community.

From the American Nurses Association (2001).

George knows he will need to find new living arrangements soon. He has been diagnosed with situational depression at the local community health clinic and has been taking fluoxetine (Prozac) for 2 weeks. He is treated by Jamal, a psychiatric advanced practice nurse.

On the Internet, George discovers a private clinic in Mexico that is searching for voluntary organ donors. The advertisement states that the clinic will pay $75,000 for a kidney donated from a person with type AB blood. George has type AB blood and becomes excited about the possibility of selling one of his kidneys. He can pay off his loan and be able to afford to rent and furnish an apartment of his own. He shows the advertisement to Jamal and asks his advice.

Identification Phase/Nursing Diagnoses and Planning

Based on the assessment, some possible nursing diagnoses might be:

- *Ineffective community coping related to deficits in financial resources*
- *Fear related to financial and potential health stressors*
- *Powerlessness related to community and financial stressors*
- *Risk for compromised human dignity related to potential change in body integrity*
- *Risk for complicated grieving related to lack of job and potential loss of body part*
- *Risk for infection related to surgery at illegal private clinic*
- *Anxiety related to psychological conflict and situational depression*

George asks Jamal for his professional nursing opinion about the positives and negatives of deciding to travel to another country to sell a kidney. Jamal uses his training in ethical considerations to help George.

First, they consider the ethical principle of utilitarianism, which states that actions are good if they produce happiness and bad if they cause unhappiness. George notes that selling a kidney would bring him happiness because the $75,000 he earns will improve his financial security. Jamal questions his thinking by asking how happy George would be if the surgery was performed incorrectly and caused renal failure, or if George developed a life-threatening infection after surgery.

Second, they consider the principle of Kantianism, which is centered on making choices based on a sense of duty and morality. Jamal points out that this surgery is technically unlicensed and unregulated, and therefore morally wrong. George argues that it is his kidney and his body, and no one should have the power to tell him what he can do with it, illustrating the principle of autonomy.

The discussion moves on to the ethical concepts of beneficence and nonmaleficence. Jamal, in his role as nurse, advocates for George's best interests. He teaches George about all of the potential complications of a nephrectomy (removal of a kidney), including hemorrhage, infection, pneumothorax, and azotemia, and points out that George may be making the decision based on his current depression. As noted by Peplau, advocacy is an essential role of the nurse (Merritt & Procter, 2010).

Using the principle of veracity, which is truthfulness, Jamal expresses his concerns about George making this life-changing decision. George argues that he has been taking antidepressant medications and is no longer depressed. He states that selling a kidney is the only way to move forward in his life without being a burden on society. Jamal explains that the fluoxetine may not have reached peak effectiveness or the dose might need to be increased. He believes that George should make the final decision about how to proceed, but only when his depression is resolved and he has all the facts.

Exploitation Phase/Implementation

During the next 2 weeks, George considers Jamal's points. He researches the patient outcomes of organ sellers who have used the private Mexican clinic, and learns that 50% of patients suffered postoperative complications and several have died. As the fluoxetine reaches full therapeutic effectiveness, George's depression lifts and he intensifies his job search. He realizes that he has three options.

First, he can ignore Jamal's concerns and travel to Mexico for the nephrectomy. Choosing this option meets his desire for autonomy. He will benefit financially but risks his health because of the 50% complication rate. He is also negating Jamal's efforts of beneficence and nonmaleficence.

Second, he can elect to take no action, which is an action in itself. In this case, George does not travel to Mexico, so he does not risk his health (nonmaleficence). He does not find employment and is left homeless, which does not lead to utilitarianism (the greatest good).

Third, he can decide to find a new solution to his financial and housing problems. He can move in with his parents, who will offer emotional and financial support, and look for job opportunities in his home town.

Resolution Phase/Evaluation

George continues to believe in ethical autonomy, that is, individuals should have the right to sell their own body organs if they choose. He notes that in many states, people can sell their blood. George believes that selling one of duplicate organs is an extension of that right.

However, he also believes in respecting moral and ethical laws (Kantianism). He is concerned that the clinic is unlicensed and unregulated. George also questions the outcome of a procedure in which half the participants experience complications. He realizes that the surgery may not be in his best interest and decides to contact his legislators to support a bill that will make the sale of one's own body organs legal within the United States.

Meanwhile, George selects option 3. He moves in with his parents, which temporarily relieves his housing and financial dilemmas and enables him to maintain a healthy professional relationship with Jamal. After an extensive job search, George finds an entry-level business position, and is able to build his savings with a long-term plan of buying a home. He is weaned off the antidepressant medication and his health remains excellent, with both kidneys intact.

LEGAL ISSUES

Like any nurse, PMHNs also are faced with legal issues related to patient care. However, these legal issues take on even greater importance because of the situations involved in caring for patients with mental health disorders, such as competency and involuntary admission.

Bill of Rights for Mental Health Patients

The Mental Health Systems Act of 1980 outlined a Bill of Rights for Mental Health Patients. The intent of this document was to ensure the rights of patients who might be unable to speak for themselves. **Box 28-2** highlights these rights.

The Bill of Rights for Mental Health Patients is designed to protect the rights of any mentally ill patient who is unable to speak for himself or herself. Each patient has the right to the most supportive care in the least restrictive environment.

BOX 28-2: BILL OF RIGHTS FOR MENTAL HEALTH PATIENTS

1. The right to the most supportive treatment in the least restrictive environment.
2. The right to participate in developing and revising an individualized written plan of care.
3. The right to receive explanations of treatment decisions and processes.
4. The right to refuse any treatment except in times of emergency or as indicated by law.
5. The right to refuse to participate in experimental unproven treatment.
6. The right to remain unrestrained and unsecluded except in emergency situations.
7. The right to privacy, humane treatment, and protection from harm.
8. The right to confidentiality of information and written records.
9. The right to access personal medical records, except when access may harm the patient's health.
10. The right to communicate with visitors via mail, telephone, and personal visits, except when such communication would be detrimental to the patient's health.
11. The right to receive clear comprehensible communication of these rights.
12. The right to make a grievance when rights are withdrawn.
13. The right to be referred to other levels of mental health services on discharge.

Adapted from Mental Health Systems Act, 1980.

Voluntary and Involuntary Admission

When psychiatric-mental health patients require inpatient treatment, their admission may be either voluntary or involuntary. A **VOLUNTARY ADMISSION** is, as the term implies, when the patient agrees or consents to admission. The majority of mental health patients apply for service voluntarily and stay for as long as the treatment team feels it is necessary. In addition, a patient may request treatment at an inpatient psychiatric facility. The facility may accept the person as a voluntary patient if the hospital agrees that the individual needs treatment. The hospital may require the person to sign a written request for hospital treatment. This is called a voluntary paper. When a patient is admitted to the hospital under voluntary status, he or she may ask to leave at any time. If the patient did not sign a voluntary paper, the hospital must release the patient when he or she asks to leave (C.G.S. 17a-5066(b)). If an individual did sign a voluntary paper, his or her request to leave must be made in writing. The hospital can keep a patient for 5 business days after a request to leave (C.G.S. 17a-506(a)). During this time, the hospital may file an application for civil commitment with the probate court. The hospital may then keep the patient for up to 10 more days if the probate court orders the commitment. The hospital may not continue to hold a patient if the probate judge rules that the patient does not meet the standards for civil commitment.

With involuntary hospitalization, also termed **INVOLUNTARY COMMITMENT** or involuntary admission, the patient is admitted against his or her wishes. In other words, the patient may be sent to a facility even though he or she does not want to go. This can occur via two mechanisms. A medical doctor can sign an emergency certificate if the doctor thinks the patient requires immediate treatment. This is called emergency certification. This patient may also be sent to the facility by a judge after a hearing in probate court. This is called civil commitment. How long a patient can be kept in a hospital if he or she does not want to be there depends on whether the patient was admitted through voluntary admission, emergency certification, or civil commitment. **Box 28-3** identifies the four situations in which involuntary commitment may occur.

Involuntary commitment is usually initiated by family members, friends, health care providers, police, or firefighters who encounter a patient with ineffective community coping. While involuntary commitment restricts an individual's rights, the referral is made for the protection of the patient. The court oversees the process, ensuring that all decisions are made in the patient's best interest.

A patient who is admitted voluntarily can ask to leave at any time. Conversely, a patient who is involuntarily admitted cannot. If this admission restricts the patient's rights, the court assumes responsibility to ensure that the patient is protected and decisions made are in his or her best interests.

BOX 28-3: SITUATIONS THAT CAN RESULT IN INVOLUNTARY COMMITMENT

Emergency commitment	• Patient's behavior is dangerous to self or others • Time limited—usually court hearing within 72 hours • Court may order involuntary commitment for 7 to 21 days
Mentally ill person in need of treatment	• Patient defined as mentally ill and unable to make health care decisions or manage personal needs • Likely to harm self or others
Involuntary outpatient commitment	• Court-ordered outpatient treatment • Without treatment patient is likely to deteriorate and require inpatient care • Severe persistent mental illness limits ability to understand importance of compliance with treatment
Gravely disabled patient	• Unable to provide for basic needs (shelter, food, clean clothing) • Lacks ability to use available community and personal resources • Court may order guardian or conservator

Competency

COMPETENCE is determined by the legal system and the definition may vary from state to state. Most health care providers define *competence* as the degree to which a patient possesses the cognitive ability to understand and process information. A patient may have periods of competence interspersed with episodes of incompetence.

Competence is the underlying theme for consent and the right to self-determination. The ANA *Code of Ethics* dictates that patients have the right to self-determination and autonomy. This overarching priority of advocating for patients' rights is echoed in the American Hospital Association's The Patient Care Partnership, which states that patients have the right to confidentiality, privacy, participation in the plan of care, and to choose or refuse treatment. Simply stated, patients have the right to receive or refuse medical information, treatment, and medications, and should be involved in planning their own health care to the extent possible (American Hospital Association, n.d.). This includes the right to informed consent about anything that will be done to the patient. For example, the effects and side effects of medications should be explained in words that the patient understands. Any prescribed treatments, such as electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), should also be discussed and the patient should have the right to select or reject these interventions. Thus, the PMHN is challenged to uphold the patient's right to autonomy in a complex era of conflicting priorities, fiscal limitations, staffing shortages, and litigation risks.

On December 1, 1991, the federal Patient Self-Determination Act (PSDA) took effect across the United States, requiring health care institutions to ask all adults admitted as inpatients whether they have an advance directive and to inform them of their right to refuse treatment. The PSDA and advance directive statutes assume that lay people want, need, and can appreciate information about medical technological intervention. It further assumes that health professionals and institutions will respect those decisions (Hunsaker & Mann, 2013). For the patient with mental health problems, this means that an individual, when competent, can make health care decisions that will be honored in the event of evolving incompetence, when symptoms impair sound decision making (Kirshner, 2013; McElroy, 2011).

Consent and the right to self-determination are based on a person's competency.

Least Restrictive Environment

It is essential that nurses understand the concept of the right to treatment in the least restrictive environment. In

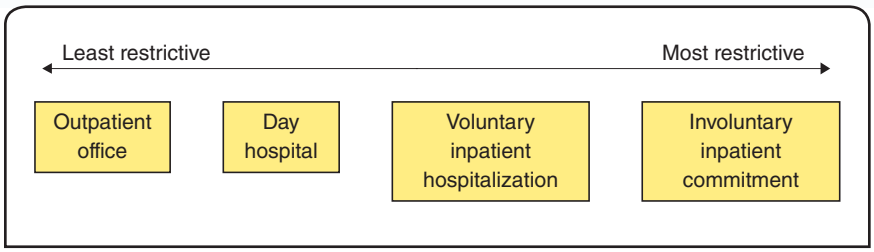


Figure 28-1 *Visualizing the continuum of mental health care.*

1975, as an outcome of the legal case of *Dixon v. Weinberger*, a person committed for mental health treatment won the right to receive treatment in the least restrictive environment as well as the right to refuse medications (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2010).

Consider the environment of psychiatric-mental health care as mapped along a visual continuum to apply the concept of the least restrictive environment. **Figure 28-1** depicts this continuum. Whenever possible, patients are offered individual or group therapies in a community setting. If that is not feasible, the next level of care is at outpatient day hospitals or community centers. When appropriate, patients may voluntarily admit themselves for inpatient mental health treatment. The most restrictive level of care is involuntary hospitalization or commitment.

Similarly, the types of treatments offered progress from less to more restrictive. For example, treatment first begins with talk therapy and progresses to behavioral therapy, to involuntary medication interventions, seclusion, and physical restraint. Although the goal for most psychiatric-mental health care providers is to attain a restraint-free environment, this must be balanced with protecting the patient, staff, and other patients. On occasion, nurses may be unable to de-escalate a patient's behavior using supportive verbal interventions. Physical restraints and seclusion, when used in a caring and empathetic manner, may maintain safety while protecting the dignity of the patient (Moylan, 2009).

Restraints and Seclusion

Of the practical moral problems inherent in psychiatric-mental health nursing, one of the most debated is the use of restraints and other restrictions on individual freedom. Restraining a patient presents PMHNs with potential legal and ethical dilemmas. For example, what is reasonable force and when is it appropriate (Abma, 2008)?

During the past decade, there has been a concerted movement among mental health practitioners to decrease the use of restraints. Although restricting movement or behavior may violate patients' autonomy, there are circumstances under which it may be legally and ethically appropriate or necessary to protect the safety of the client, fellow patients, and staff.

Restrictions to patient restraint and seclusion were also addressed in the Mental Health Act of 2001, instituted in the United Kingdom. Section 69 of that Act notes that a person may not be bodily restrained or secluded in an isolation room unless it is absolutely necessary to maintain safety and security. Sivak (2012) comments, "no evidence supports the therapeutic value of seclusion and restraint" (p. 26) and recommends alternatives such as offering access to a comfort room.

The Bill of Rights for mental health patients as well as the U.S. Constitution reinforce the right of individuals to freedom from restraint or seclusion except in emergency situations. Professional judgment is necessary to establish when a patient's behavior has become unsafe and out of control to the point of imminent danger. In these instances, patients may require assistance of chemical or mechanical restraints to regain personal control and safety. Chemical restraints include medications, ordered by the treatment team, that are administered to diminish agitation or assist the patient to regain personal control. Mechanical restraints include straps that are placed on the arms and legs of an agitated patient to protect from injury to self, others, or the environment until the patient is able to regain self-control. Restraints are never to be used as punishment or for staff convenience. **SECLUSION**, which means placing the patient in a safe room alone, may also be used to diminish agitation and external stimulation.

Restraints and seclusion are used only when there is an emergency and it is determined that the patient's behavior is unsafe and there is imminent danger.

Organizations such as Crisis Prevention Institute (CPI) were established to address the need for standardized training in safe, respectful, noninvasive methods for patient restraint. CPI is an international training organization that focuses on prevention through education

and empowerment of professionals (CPI, 2011). Training programs teach all levels of mental health caregivers to manage disruptive and assaultive behavior in a manner that is compatible with the staff's duty to provide the best possible care.

When a situation arises, the staff must take prompt action when safety is in jeopardy. Several trained employees converge to safely control the patient as well as to ensure the safety of everyone on the unit. The team approaches in a unified manner, and explains that they are there to help and will not allow the patient to harm anyone. This convergence of several professionals also conveys a message of determination to take control of an uncontrolled situation. On occasion, this action may be sufficient to de-escalate the patient's behavior to a manageable level. If not, the team may restrain the patient at both wrists and ankles to a bed. A waist restraint may be added if needed. Restraints are snug enough so that the patient cannot slip them off, but loose enough so as not to impede circulation. Within 1 hour of this action, the nurse obtains an order for restraint and a physician will assess the patient in person.

Health care professionals around the world have participated in CPI education to learn these proven strategies for safely resolving situations when confronted by anxious, hostile, or violent behaviors, while still maintaining the therapeutic relationships with those in their care.

Seclusion may also be used to diminish agitation and external stimulation. The room is locked for the safety of the patient, staff, and other patients on the unit. The patient is continuously monitored through a window or video monitor. Any patient who is placed in seclusion or restraints retains basic personal rights. The patient's physical and emotional well-being are carefully monitored. If any injuries were sustained in the takedown, the patient receives prompt first aid. Medications are administered as ordered, and vital signs are taken. Staff members remove the restraints at specified intervals to allow range of motion and change of position. As indicated, patients receive hydration and nutrition, and are given the opportunity for normal elimination.

The Joint Commission (JC), formerly the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO), has established restraint and seclusion standards, and revises them on an ongoing basis. As of July 1, 2009, current standards include the following:

- *A restraint order that is being used for violent or self-destructive behavior has a definite time limit associated with it (see Standard PC.03.05.05, EP4).*
- *Unless state law is more restrictive, orders for the use of restraint or seclusion for the management of violent or self-destructive behavior that jeopardizes the immediate physical safety of the patient, staff, or others may be renewed within the following limits:*
  - *4 hours for adults 18 years of age or older*
  - *2 hours for children and adolescents, 9 to 17 years of age*
  - *1 hour for children younger than 9 years*
  - *Orders may be renewed according to the time limits for a maximum of 24 consecutive hours.*

The JC mandates go on to state:

- *The physician or licensed independent practitioner evaluates the patient in person within 1 hour of the initiation of the restraints.*
- *A registered nurse or a physician assistant may conduct the in-person evaluation within 1 hour of the initiation of restraint or seclusion if this person is trained in accordance with requirements in Standard PC.03.05.17, EP3.*
- *If the 1-hour face-to-face evaluation is completed by a trained nurse or trained physician assistant, he or she would consult with the attending physician or other licensed independent practitioner responsible for the care of the patient after the evaluation, as determined by hospital policy (PC.03.05.11 EP2).*

Some states may have statute or regulation requirements that are more restrictive than the requirements in this standard. PMHNs are required to adhere to the most stringent of the standards. To ensure patient and staff safety, PMHNs should be educated about restraint and seclusion policies and procedures. Ongoing assessment and respectful care throughout its duration, including frequent monitoring of vital signs, cardiorespiratory status, skin status, hydration, elimination, and privacy, are essential (Winship, 2006). Patients are visually observed either continuously or every 10 to 15 minutes, per institution policy.

Despite strict regulations, both adults and children can be injured during restraint and seclusion. There are numerous documented instances of injuries and even deaths resulting from inappropriate actions taken by the restrainers and secluders. A Government Accountability Office (GAO) study found:

> hundreds of cases of alleged abuse and death related to the use of these methods on school children during the past two decades. Examples of these cases include a 7 year old purportedly dying after being held face down for hours, 5 year olds allegedly being tied to chairs with bungee cords and duct tape and suffering broken arms and bloody noses, and a 13 year old reportedly hanging himself in a seclusion room after prolonged confinement. (GAO-090719T, May 19, 2009)

If restraints are used, they must be applied so that circulation is not restricted and the patient cannot slip out of them. Ongoing monitoring is necessary to ensure the patient's safety.

NURSING RESPONSIBILITIES

Nurses are legally responsible to protect the private health information of all patients through federal laws and through regulations prescribed by the State Board of Examiners for Nursing of the state in which they practice. These laws and rules protect the rights of all patients. Patients with mental health problems and those with substance abuse issues have even more rules to protect their privacy. Thus, PMHNs need to be ever vigilant in providing care that adheres to these ethical and legal principles.

Confidentiality

As with all patients, confidentiality is a priority. However, because PMHNs communicate with patients in an intensely personal way, maintaining confidentiality of the patient's private thoughts and feelings is essential when establishing a therapeutic nurse–client relationship. Doing so establishes trust and rapport necessary to proceed. The communication is protected by law and also by the ethical concept of nondisclosure. It is an ethical breach of confidentiality to disclose or share patient information without permission. For example, it would be an ethical breach to share medical information with a patient's adult child unless the nurse obtained permission from the patient (Abma, 2008).

The emergence and prevalence of social media in contemporary society lead to a need for increased awareness of potential electronic breaches of patient privacy. Nurses must develop and promote guidelines specifying appropriate use of social media while maintaining privacy and confidentiality. State Boards of Nursing, health care organizations, and the federal government have all enacted policies to monitor and regulate the use of social media to maintain alignment with ethical principles (Henderson & Dahnke, 2015).

The U.S. federal government enacted the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA). Part of this legislation provides legal protection to privacy and confidentiality of patient information. Patients must give written permission for release of records that deal with psychiatric-mental health treatment. The patient also must agree to exactly what part of the medical record will be released, the purpose for sharing the information, and who will have access to the information.

However, there are also laws that protect members of society from unsafe actions by people with illnesses that affect behavior. Nursing professionals may, in certain instances, be legally required to break confidentiality and disclose information without the patient's permission. An example of this is a patient disclosing to the home-care PMHN about a plan to shoot the mailman when he makes his next delivery. When there are clear threats of other-directed violence, the nurse is legally required to report the threat to authorities. This is sometimes known as a mandate to inform, or the Tarasoff decision. This court case (*Tarasoff vs. Regents of the University of California*) involved a college student who shared his obsession about another student, Tatiana Tarasoff, with a university psychologist. The college student then proceeded to murder Ms. Tarasoff. The ultimate ruling was that mental health professionals are responsible to exercise reasonable care in protecting potential victims of patients' violent intentions (Borum & Reddy, 2001).

Maintaining confidentiality is a priority. However, if a patient clearly threatens violence to another, a nurse is legally responsible to report this information.

Legal Liability

As with other practice areas, psychiatric-mental health care can pose legal liability for PMHNs. However, PMHNs can avoid legal liability by adhering to standards of nursing practice and by practicing within the appropriate scope of practice. Malpractice, which includes practicing outside the scope and standards of psychiatric-mental health nursing, can result from unprofessional behaviors. Inappropriately sharing confidential patient information can lead to breach of confidentiality or defamation of character lawsuits. If the breach is oral, slander occurs; if the breach is written, libel occurs.

In addition, psychiatric-mental health nursing differs from other forms of nursing in the degree of personal touch between nurse and patient. If a mentally ill patient is touched without his or her permission other than for routine nursing care, the nurse may be charged with medical battery. If the nurse indicates an intent to touch the patient without permission, a charge of assault may be made.

The majority of mental health patients voluntarily seek admission and treatment. These individuals sign consents for treatment, which is considered a contract for care for which PMHNs provide an important component. PMHNs can reduce the risk for legal liability by adhering to the highest standards of nursing practice while simultaneously advocating for the patient.

SUMMARY POINTS

- Ethical theories and principles used in ethical decision making include: utilitarianism, Kantianism, autonomy, beneficence, nonmaleficence, justice, veracity, and fidelity.
- When faced with an ethical dilemma, the psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) applies the ethical principles and theories integrating the nursing process and the therapeutic nurse–patient relationship to arrive at an ethical decision.
- A Bill of Rights for mental health patients has been established to protect the rights of patients who might be unable to speak for themselves.
- Psychiatric-mental health patients may be admitted for inpatient treatment voluntarily or involuntarily (against his or her wishes).
- Competency is a legal determination and typically involves the degree to which a patient has the cognitive abilities to understand and process information. It is essential for consent and the right to self-determination.
- Every psychiatric-mental health patient has the right to treatment in the least restrictive environment.
- When a patient requires restraints, a physician's order must be obtained within 1 hour of initiating the restraints.
- Communication between a PMHN and a psychiatric-mental health patient is protected by law and the concept of nondisclosure. It is an ethical breach to disclose or share patient information without the patient's permission. However, if there is a clear threat of violence to another, the nurse is legally required to breach confidentiality and report the information.
- A PMHN can be charged with medical battery if he or she touches a mentally ill patient without his or her permission for other than routine nursing care. A PMHN may be charged with assault if there is an intent to touch the patient without permission.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. A group of nursing students are reviewing ethical principles and theories. They demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify utilitarianism as which of the following?
   - **a.** Honesty
   - **b.** Fair and equal treatment
   - **c.** Doing no harm
   - **d.** Greater good
2. A psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) is engaged in advocacy for patients of a local clinic. The nurse is employing which ethical principle?
   - **a.** Beneficence
   - **b.** Fidelity
   - **c.** Kantianism
   - **d.** Veracity
3. Which of the following patients would be least likely to require involuntary commitment?
   - **a.** Patient convicted of substance abuse required to undergo treatment
   - **b.** Patient who is actively experiencing suicidal ideation
   - **c.** Patient with depression who is in need of treatment
   - **d.** Patient deteriorating from a severe, persistent mental illness
4. The following are examples of therapy that may be used with a patient experiencing a psychiatric-mental health problem. Place the treatments in the proper order based on the concept of the least restrictive environment.
   - **a.** Talk therapy
   - **b.** Involuntary medication administration
   - **c.** Behavioral therapy
   - **d.** Seclusion
5. A situation with a patient is escalating and the staff determines that restraints are necessary. Which of the following would occur first?
   - **a.** Explaining that the staff is there to help
   - **b.** Approaching the patient slowly as a unit
   - **c.** Taking down the patient to apply the restraints
   - **d.** Obtaining an order for the restraints
6. A nurse breaches a patient's confidentiality and shares this confidential information in writing. The nurse would most likely be charged with which of the following?
   - **a.** Slander
   - **b.** Medical battery
   - **c.** Libel
   - **d.** Assault

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

American Hospital Association. (n.d.). *The Patient Care Partnership.* Retrieved from http://www.aha.org/content/00-10/pcp_english_030730.pdf

American Nurses Association. (2001). *Code of ethics for nurses with interpretive statements.* Silver Spring, MD: American Nurses Publishing. Retrieved from http://www.nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/EthicsStandards/CodeofEthicsforNurses.aspx

Borum, R., & Reddy, M. (2001). Assessing violence risk in Tarasoff situations. *Behavioral Science and the Law, 19*(3), 375–386.

Call, J. A., Pfefferbaum, B., Jenuwine, M. J., & Flynn, B. W. (2012). Practical legal and ethical considerations for the provision of acute disaster mental health services. *Psychiatry, 75*(4), 305–322.

Catlett, S., & Lovan, C. (2011). Being a good nurse and doing the right thing: A replication study. *Nursing Ethics, 18*(1), 54–63.

Cleary, M., & Horsfall, J. (2013). Integrity and mental health nursing: Factors to consider. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing, 34*(9), 673–677.

Crisis Prevention Institute. (2011). *Crisisprevention.com*. Retrieved from http://www.crisisprevention.com/About-CPI

Henderson, M., & Dahnke, M. D. (2015). The ethical use of social media in nursing practice. *Medsurg Nursing, 24*(1), 62–64.

Hunsaker, A. E., & Mann, A. (2013). An analysis of the Patient Self-Determination Act of 1990. *Journal of Human Behavior in the Social Environment, 23*(7), 841–848.

Ivanov, L. L., & Oden, T. L. (2013). Public health nursing, ethics and human rights. *Public Health Nursing, 30*(3), 231–238.

Kangasniemi, M., Vaismoradi, M., Jasper, M., & Turunen, H. (2013). Ethical issues in patient safety: Implications for nursing management. *Nursing Ethics, 20*(8), 904–916.

Kirshner, H. S. (2013). Determination of mental competency, a neurological perspective. *Current Neurology and Neuroscience Reports, 13*(6), 1–356.

Lachman, V. D. (2008). Ethical choices: Weighing obligations & virtues. *Nursing, 38*(10), 43–46.

Matt, S. B. (2012). Ethical and legal issues associated with bullying in the nursing profession. *Journal of Nursing Law, 15*(1), 9–13.

McElroy, A. (2011). Fundamental aspects of legal, ethical and professional issues in nursing. *Nursing Management, 18*(6), 13.

Merritt, M. K., & Procter, N. (2010). Conceptualising the functional role of mental health consultation-liaison nurse in multi-morbidity, using Peplau's nursing theory. *Contemporary Nurse: A Journal for the Australian Nursing Profession, 34*(2), 158–166.

Moylan, L. B. (2009). Physical restraint in acute care psychiatry. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing, 47*, 41–47.

Murray, J. S. (2014). Recognizing ethical issues in research. *Clinical Scholars Review, 7*(1), 63–69.

Pagan, L. S. (2014). Nursing ethics in everyday practice. *Care Management Journals, 15*(2), 97–98.

Park, M., Jeon, S. H., Hong, H., & Cho, S. (2014). A comparison of ethical issues in nursing practice across nursing units. *Nursing Ethics, 21*(5), 594–607.

Pearson, G. S. (2012). The concept of social justice for our psychiatric nursing practice. *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care, 48*(4), 185–186.

Rutkow, L., Gable, L., & Links, J. M. (2011). Protecting the mental health of first responders: Legal and ethical considerations. *Journal of Law, Medicine & Ethics, 39*(1), 56–59.

Shaffer, E. R. (2013). The Affordable Care Act: The value of systemic disruption. *American Journal of Public Health, 103*(6), 969–972.

Sivak, K. (2012). Implementation of comfort rooms to reduce seclusion, restraint use, and acting-out behaviors. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing & Mental Health Services, 50*(2), 24–34.

Smith, K. V., & Godfrey, N. S. (2002). Being a good nurse and doing the right thing: A qualitative study. *Nursing Ethics, 9*(1), 301–312.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2010). *Mental Health, United States, 2008. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 10–4590*. Rockville, MD: Center for Mental Health Services, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Thompson, J. L. (2014). Discourses of social justice: Examining the ethics of democratic professionalism in nursing. *Advances in Nursing Science, 37*(3), E17–E34.

Tsitsis, N. (2014). Ethical and legal aspects of nursing care: A focus on the Greek legislation. *International Journal of Caring Sciences, 7*(1), 1–5.

U.S. Government Accountability Office. (2009, May 19). Seclusions and restraints: Selected cases of death and abuse as public and private schools and treatment centers, GAO-09–719T. Retrieved from http://www.gao.gov/new.items/d09719t.pdf

Winship, G. (2006). Further thoughts on the process of restraint. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 13*, 55–60.

CHAPTER CONTENTS

CHAPTER 29

POLICY, POLICY MAKING, AND POLITICS FOR PROFESSIONAL PSYCHIATRIC NURSES

Barbara Cohen

EXPECTED LEARNING OUTCOMES

After completing this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define key terms related to the legislative and political processes affecting health care
2. Describe the connections between health care policy and quality and quantity of available mental health services
3. Identify policy issues affecting the scope of professional psychiatric nurses' practice
4. Evaluate avenues open to psychiatric nurses to increase professional growth and advocacy skills
5. Discuss means of strengthening the practices of professional psychiatric nurses through best educational practices

KEY TERMS

Cloture
Lobbying
Nonconnected committees
Policy
Political action committee
Politics
Separate Segregated Funds (SSFs)

This chapter begins with an overview of the structure and function of the three branches of the U.S. government as created by the constitution. In the legislative branch, elected officials create and enact laws, rules, and regulations. The chapter continues with definitions of legislative politics, policy, political action, and lobbying; examinations of the intersection of policy, political action, lobbying, and the provision and quality of mental health services; and a discussion of the impact of nurses' roles in the political arena. The active involvement of psychiatric nurses in protecting the rights of those facing mental illness and homelessness, with or without additional substance abuse challenges, is encouraged; furthermore, the chapter highlights the importance of political activism to promote uniform advanced practice across the country. The chapter considers means of achieving policy changes through grassroots, community-based initiatives, as well as through the support of or direct involvement in the legislative process. Interdisciplinary collaboration is encouraged, given the increased role and power of psychiatric nurses, advanced practice registered nurses (APRNs), patients, and families involved in psychiatric care and treatment. The chapter concludes with a review of the "call to action" by the Institute of Medicine (IOM) and an educational and professional roadmap for baccalaureate-prepared psychiatric nurses, including entry to practice and advanced practice educational issues.

AN OVERVIEW OF THE STRUCTURE OF THE U.S. GOVERNMENT

The Constitution

The Constitution of the United States of America is the "law of the land." There is no higher law in the country. All federal and state laws, rules, and regulations must be in compliance with Constitutional rights and responsibilities. Based on the structure of checks and balances set forth in the Constitution, the U.S. government is divided into three branches: the executive branch (the Office of the President), the judicial branch (the Supreme Court), and the legislative branch (Congress, composed of the Senate and House of Representatives). Each branch has been granted powers to ensure that no one branch takes action without the cooperation and agreement of the other branches. For example, if Congress passes a bill that the president does not want to support, the president has the right to veto that bill. Furthermore, if Congress delays action on a bill proposed by the president, the president may issue an executive action on the matter. For example, President Barack Obama issued an executive order implementing the national HIV/AIDS strategy for the United States for 2015 to 2020 (HIV/AIDS, 2015, July 30, retrieved January 27, 2015, https://www.whitehouse.gov/the-press-office/2015/07/30/executive-order-implementing-national-hivaids-strategy-united-states. If there is opposition to an executive order that provides rights to a particular group, the Supreme Court may be asked to review the executive order and can nullify it, if the court determines it to be in violation of the U.S. Constitution.

Congress (The Legislative Branch)

Congress is composed of the 100-member Senate and the 435-member House of Representatives. Senators serve 6-year terms; Representatives serve 2-year terms. Congress appropriates funds, approves the federal budget, and authorizes military action, among other powers. For the purposes of this chapter, the most important power of Congress is to "make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for the carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States" (Article I, Section 8, Clause 18). The legislative process also provides for a variety of checks and balances.

The Office of the President of the United States (The Executive Branch)

The president is the commander-in-chief of the armed forces and chief executive of the United States. The president may exercise his legislative power in conjunction with Congress. The president has the power to veto legislation passed by Congress, first by the House of Representatives and then by the Senate.

The Supreme Court (The Judiciary)

The Supreme Court provides oversight of Congress and the president through review of laws, determining whether or not statutes, laws, rules, and regulations are consistent with the requirements of the Constitution. The president nominates candidates when any one of the nine seats on the Supreme Court fall vacant; however, Congress must approve nominations to the Court. As the nine justices determine the constitutionality of laws that have an impact on the rights and privileges of those involved in the mental health system, the appointment and confirmation of judges knowledgeable in the area of health, and mental health in particular, is an important issue.

THE LEGISLATIVE PROCESS: HOW A BILL BECOMES A LAW

The legislative process (see **Figure 29-1**, https://www.congress.gov/content/legprocess/legislative-process-poster

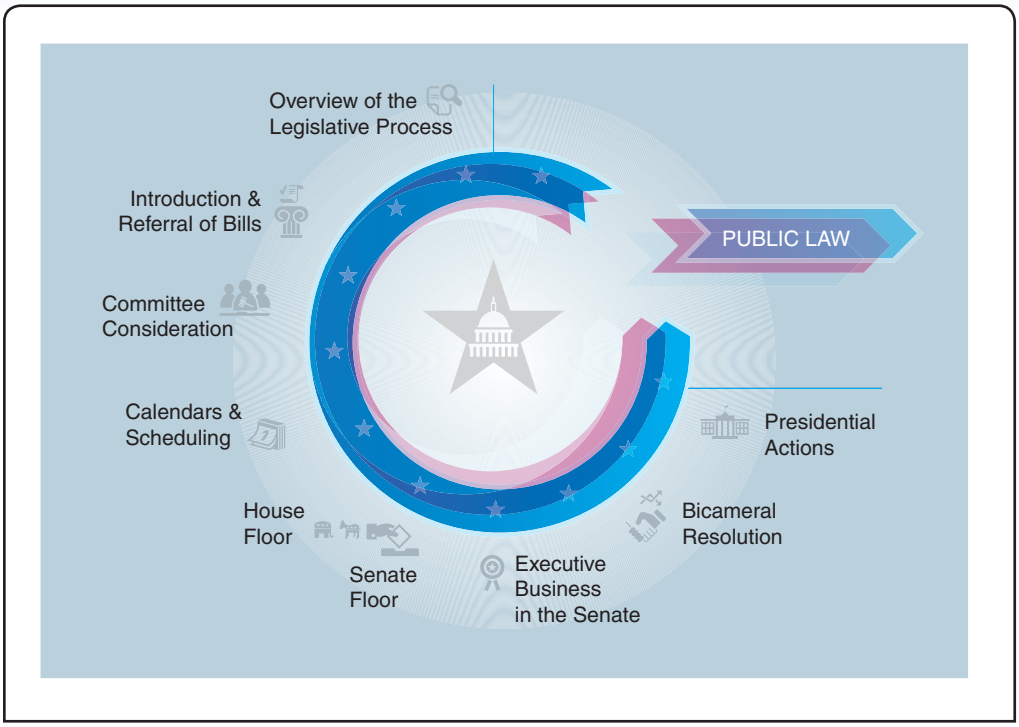


Figure 29-1 *Legislative process.*

.pdf) on federal and state levels is a multistep process in which interested parties are provided with opportunities to influence the passage of legislation. Both the House of Representatives and the Senate (the chambers of Congress) must agree on the terms of a bill before it is sent to the president for signing into law. Bills or joint resolutions can become laws. There is little difference between a bill and a joint resolution, however, the Constitution may only be amended through use of a joint resolution. "A joint resolution is a legislative proposal that requires the approval of both the House and Senate and the signature of the President…to have the force of law" (About Joint Resolutions, retrieved from http://www.lexisnexis.com/help/CU/Serial_Set/About_Bills.htm#joi).

Assisted by staff, Representatives and Senators draft bills; attorneys in each chamber's Legislative Council advise staff on the correct language for policy proposals. However, as we discuss later in this chapter, lobbyists may also influence the wording of a bill. A sponsor of a bill may circulate the proposed bill to obtain cosponsors, thereby demonstrating support for the bill during the legislative process.

Bills are given a designated number and letters that indicate where they were submitted for consideration. Those beginning in the House are given the letters H.R. or H.J. Res. (bills or Joint Resolutions); those in the Senate are given the letters S. or S.J. Res.

The Speaker of the House refers bills to committees that may have jurisdiction on sections of the bill. However, in the Senate, it is usual to refer a bill to the committee that has jurisdiction over the largest number of issues in a bill. Some bills might be placed directly on the Senate's Calendar of Business, instead of going through a committee. The Senate Majority leader exercises this fast-tracking option.

Committee Actions

The committee chair identifies any issues in a bill that require further attention. A committee may hold a hearing about a bill so that members and the public can hear about the bill's strengths and weaknesses; such hearings put the issues under a spotlight. Witnesses called to the hearings will testify about a bill's pros and cons, and may submit their own versions to the committee.

Mark-Up

After the hearings, the committee will mark-up a bill with suggestions for changes to the language, if needed. The committee "mark-up" is finished when the committee reports the bill to the House or Senate; alternately, a bill may be sent to a subcommittee for further discussion about policy, if necessary.

Calendar

A bill that has been reported is placed on one of the individual chamber's calendars. Some bills will never proceed

to the floor of the chamber because it did not survive referral to committee.

Consideration of a Bill

The majority party leadership decides which bills the House will consider and in what order. In the Senate, after a motion to proceed with respect to a bill is made by a Senator (normally the majority leader), there is a debate on whether to proceed with the bill. If the motion passes by a majority, the Senate can consider the bill.

When members of the House of Representatives are considering a bill, they first decide on the rules for consideration of each bill, after which the bill itself is considered. After any amendments to a bill are considered and passed, the "Committee of the Whole" will report to the full House any recommended amendments for approval. There will be a brief debate and vote on a motion to recommit. In the House of Representatives, most votes are recorded electronically.

During the full Senate debate on the bill, amendments may be offered for consideration. As Senate rules do not impose a time limit on debates, moving to a final vote can be very difficult. Through an extended debate or filibuster, Senators may thwart holding a vote. The **CLOTURE** rule permits a supermajority of the Senate (three fifths of the Senate or 60 Senators) to limit debate on bills, amendments, or motions. Although a simple majority can pass a bill in the Senate, a supermajority is required to first end debate; thus, in actuality, three fifths of the Senate must favor a bill before it can be passed. Reaching a final vote on a bill can take a week of Senate floor time. The Senate votes by roll call, as it does not have an electronic voting system. The voting records of members of Congress can be found at the Senate's home website at the U.S. Senate, retrieved from www.senate.gov/index.htm.

Both chambers must agree on a bill in the same form before it is sent to the president. Once passed in a chamber, a bill is engrossed (prepared in official form) and sent to the other chamber. If the second chamber agrees to the exact text as passed by the first, Congress has completed its job with respect to the bill. If, however, amendments have been proposed, the bill may be sent back and forth between chambers for discussion until there is an agreement. A conference committee can be formed to negotiate a proposal to which both chambers can agree.

Presentation of a Bill to the President of the United States

After the bill passes in both chambers of Congress, it is enrolled (prepared in its final official form) and presented to the president. The president has 10 days, excluding Sundays, to sign or veto a bill. Bills that are signed within those 10 days become law. If the president neither signs nor vetoes the bill, then it becomes law without his signature. If the president vetoes the bill, it is returned to its original chamber where the veto could be overridden by a two thirds majority vote. If the vote is successful, the other chamber can consider an override vote as well.

Publication of a Law

Bills that are enacted into law are delivered to the Office of the Federal Register at the National Archives. After the public law number has been assigned, the law is included in the next edition of the "United States Statutes at Large" with all other laws enacted during that session of Congress.

THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN A LAW, A RULE, AND A REGULATION

Bills become laws after they are agreed on by Congress and signed into law by the president of the United States. Laws provide guidance to regulatory agencies; regulations are made by federal agencies to apply the laws. The agencies have subdivisions (such as offices) to handle the actions necessary to enforce the regulations that have been developed to implement the laws. These offices have rules that establish procedures to which individuals and business entities must adhere. All federal agency regulations are contained in the paper Code of Federal Regulations (CFR). An unofficial version of the CFR as an e-version is also available (Electronic CFR, 2016, January 26, retrieved January 27, 2015, http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/ECFR?page=browse).

An example of a state law that addresses the requirements to become a nurse may be found in the New York State Education Law, Title VIII, Article 139, Section 6900–6910 (2010, June 18, http://www.op.nysed.gov/prof/nurse/article139.htm.). These sections define diagnosing, treating, and human responses, as well as a definition of the practice of nursing, a description of the composition of the State Board for Nursing, requirements for licensure as a registered professional nurse, and definitions of who may be considered a registered nurse, a licensed practical nurse, a nurse practitioner, and a clinical nurse specialist, among other consideration. The Regulations of the Commissioner of Health apply the laws passed by the New York State Legislature; they are contained in Sections 6900–6910 and can be found in Part 64 of the Commissioner's Regulations (2006, August 17, www.op.nysed.gov/prof/nurse/part64.htm). Part 64 provides minute, detailed requirements concerning the actual detailed practice of nursing, scope of practice for nurse practitioners, and a review of the duties of clinical nurse specialists. The rules of the Office of Professional Discipline, which manage misconduct hearings for nurses whose conduct fails to meet the regulations,

are in Sections 6900–6910 and can be found in Part 29 of the Rules of the Board of Regents, the body that hears and rules on professional misconduct matters (2011, October 5, http://www.op.nysed.gov/title8/part29.htm). Part 29 describes in detail individual instances of professional misconduct. In sum, laws provide the overall substance that must be obeyed. The regulations are provisions by which the law is enforced. The rules are established to assist in the implementation of the regulations.

OTHER SENATE EXECUTIVE BUSINESS

The Senate conducts such other executive business as confirmations of presidential nominees to the federal judiciary and certain executive branches, as well as approving treaties. Confirmation of presidential nominees is a critical function, as the judiciary ultimately decides on the constitutionality of bills passed by Congress and signed into law by the president. Decisions of the Supreme Court can be influenced by the judges' conservative or liberal viewpoints with regard to the application of Constitutional law.

The proposal of and contents of bills, and the timing of their submission to Congress or to the legislatures of individual states, can be influenced by political action and lobbying with regard to numerous issues.

POLICY, POLITICS, POLITICAL ACTION, AND LOBBYING SHAPE THE PROVISION OF MENTAL HEALTH SERVICES

Birkland (2014) defines **POLICY** as "a statement by government—at whatever level-of what it intends to do about a public problem. Such statements can be found in the Constitution, statutes, regulation, case law (that is, court decisions), agency or leadership decisions, or even in changes in the behavior of government officials at all levels." Examples of policies shaped by government are those regulations that provide for consumer safety, that provide consequences for driving while intoxicated, or that provide subsidies for use of electronic health records. "Social policy, in particular, provides the means to ensure the provision of basic necessities such as food, shelter, healthcare, and education" (Nickitas, Middaugh, & Aries, 2011, p. 7). Health policy is found within the realm of social policy. Health policy provides guidelines as to how access to health care is to be distributed. Health policy details the quality of health care to be provided to a population and can define quality and access by the haves and have-nots based on economic success of a particular group of people.

POLITICS has been defined as "activities that relate to influencing the actions and policies of a government or getting and keeping power in a government." The term *politics* has also been described as "the art or science of government" (Merriam Webster, 2015). We are familiar with politics insofar as we participate as citizens in the electoral process, or in voting for various referendums concerning budget or other items.

Political Action

Political action has been defined as an "action designed to attain a purpose by the use of political power or by activity in political channels" (Merriam Webster, online dictionary, n.d.).

POLITICAL ACTION COMMITTEES or PACs provide a mechanism for the collection of funds that may be necessary to push and publicize the need for political change. The Federal Election Committee defines two types of PACs: "**SEPARATE SEGREGATED FUNDS (SSFs)** and nonconnected committees." SSFs are political committees established and administered by corporations, labor unions, membership organizations, or trade associations. An SSF "can only solicit contributions from individuals associated with, connected or sponsoring organizations." **NONCONNECTED COMMITTEES** are not sponsored or connected to any of the previously mentioned entities. These committees are free to solicit contributions from the general public (SSFs and Nonconnected PACS, May 2008, www.fec.gov/pages/brochures/ssfvnonconnected.shtml).

For example the American Nurses Association (ANA) PAC was established to "promote the improvement of the health care system in the United States by raising funds from C/SNAs (Constituent/State Nursing Associations) members and contributing to support worthy candidates for federal office who have demonstrated their belief in the legislative and regulatory agenda of the American Nurses Association" (ANA, 2015). A recent call to change nursing education policy was issued to New York Nurses by Karen Ballard, president of ANA-NY, urging nurses to contact Senators on the committee considering the BS in Ten bill to vote for the bill, thus supporting the BSN as the entry to practice for nurses and requiring nurses without a BSN to obtain the same within 10 years of the passage of the legislation: An act to amend the education law, in relation to the educational preparation for practice of professional nursing Senate Bill 02145 (2011). The bill did not make it out of the Senate education committee in the 2015 session.

Lobbying

The National Conference of State Legislatures provides information as to how each state defines lobbying; there are more than 50 versions of lobbying laws. The basic definition throughout each is that **LOBBYING** is an

attempt to influence government action and it includes written and oral communications. States have defined a lobbyist as someone who receives any amount of compensation or reimbursement to lobby (How states define lobbying and lobbyist, March 4, 2015, http://www.ncsl.org/research/ethics/50-state-chart-lobby-definitions.aspx). In their definition of lobbying, Delaware, Kansas, and Texas include providing entertainment, recreational events, and/or food and beverages to legislators. Not generally included in the definition of lobbying are such actions as testifying at committee hearings, meetings, writing letters, and having casual conversations with lawmakers (National Conference of State Legislatures, 2014). Numerous specific rules and regulations pertain to lobbying activities and address conflicts of interest, financial disclosures, restrictions on gifts, regulation of lobbyists, and ethical considerations.

The National Conference of State Legislatures brings representatives from the Democratic and Republican parties together to monitor legislation and matters of general public interest and welfare, for example, an itemized description of each state's legislation concerning prescription drugs and biological medicines (2015 Prescription Drug Legislation Database, April 2015, National Conference of State Legislatures, www.ncsl.org/research/health/pharmaceuticals-fact-policies-and-ncsl-resources.aspx). Legislation addressing mental health issues that may arise in the foster care system is also being monitored by the National Conference of State Legislators (Mental Health and Foster Care, May 20, 2015, www.ncsl.org/research/human-servcies/mental-health-and-foster-care.aspx).

Policy and politics on global, national, and local levels affect the provision of and type of mental health services provided to those affected by mental illness and their families.

THE CROSSROADS OF POLICY, POLITICAL ACTION, LOBBYING, AND THE PROVISION AND QUALITY OF MENTAL HEALTH SERVICES

Psychiatric nurses need to be acutely aware of the political process and prevailing policies. Psychiatric nurses provide services to clients who may not be competent to protect their own best interests. These clients may need an advocate to monitor adverse policy developments that may affect fragile, underserved persons such as those facing the challenges of mental illness, homelessness, and/or such physical issues as polysubstance abuse. Psychiatric nurses can choose to engage in the political process and in policy given that those processes have an impact on the ability of psychiatric nurses to practice nursing on entry and advanced practice levels. Licensure requirements and rules and regulations covering scope of practice, particularly for APRNs such as clinical nurse specialists and psychiatric nurse practitioners, are hotbeds of political action. Psychiatric nurses can choose to engage in community activism, particularly given the history of deinstitutionalization of mental health services and the growth of community-based supportive services such as housing and clubhouses.

The courts may fail to provide individuals facing the significant challenges of severe mental illness with appropriate services; furthermore, mentally ill persons have been reported as being both endangered and dangerous while being retained in the criminal court system. Additionally, policy making and legislative issues involve psychiatric nurses who provide care and assistance to children, teens, and their families so that appropriate treatment and educational services are obtained, as well as the necessary financial support for these services.

The American Psychiatric Nurses Association (APNA) houses an Institute for Mental Health Advocacy whose main purpose is to monitor legislative, regulatory, and policy matters affecting mental health. The institute informs psychiatric mental health nurses of developments and coordinates organizational responses. Matters are addressed such as proposed APRN's compact model legislation as well as positions on seclusion and restraint (www.apna.org).

Current Mental Health Policy Efforts Worldwide

Worldwide policy efforts are being made to improve the lives and health of those challenged by severe mental illness. Mental health policies underlie legislation that addresses access to and quality of mental health care, consent to treatment, freedom from abusive treatment, freedom from discrimination, and human rights protections (Morris, McBain, & Saxena 2012). Nonetheless, to this day, many countries lack substantial services for those with mental illness. For example, as of 2012 in Ghana, population of 25,000,000 (www.ghanaembassy.org/index.php?page=population), there were "18 psychiatrists, 19 psychologists, 31 other medical officers and 1,200 nurses working in mental health field in Ghana" (Asare, 2012, citing *WHO-AIMS report, Ghana* [WHO, 2011]). Saleh (2012) reported that as of 2009, Ghana had a total of three psychiatric hospitals with a mean number of 395 beds (Saleh, 2012, p. 163).

The World Health Organization (WHO) surveyed 184 of 193 Member States and Associate Territories. The

survey results covered 98% of the world's population. Two key messages from the WHO's Mental Health Atlas Project are:

1. "Resources to treat and prevent mental disorders remain insufficient. Globally, spending on mental health is less than two US dollars per person per year and less than 25 cents in low income countries. Almost half of the world's population lives in a country where, on the average, there is one psychiatrist or less to serve 200,000 people."
2. "Resources for mental health are inequitably distributed. Only 36% of people living in low income countries are covered by mental health legislation. In contrast, the corresponding rate for high income countries is 92%. Outpatient mental health facilities are 58 times more prevalent in high income compared with low income countries. User/consumer organizations are present in 83% of high income countries in comparison to 49% of low income countries." (Mental Health Atlas, 2011)

United Nations Enable is the official website of the Secretariat for the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (SCRPD) in the Division for Social Policy and Development (DSPD) of the Department of Economic and Social Affairs (DESA) at the United Nations Secretariat (About Us, http://www.un.org/disabilities/default.asp?id=17). The Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (CRPD) was adopted on December 13, 2006, at the United Nations Headquarters in New York and entered into force on May 3, 2008. This comprehensive document delineates sweeping protections to be afforded on a global level to patients with mental illness. Basic human rights such as equal recognition in the legal process, liberty, security, freedom from inhuman treatment and exploitation, independence, respect for privacy, home, family, health, education, work and employment, and equal participation in political, public, cultural, recreation, leisure, and sports life are addressed as vital to the lives of those facing mental illness.

The impact of psychiatric nurses as the mainstay of patient care on a global level in the arena of psychiatric nursing cannot be underestimated. Morris et al. (2012, p. 13) notes, "globally, nurses represented the largest professional group working in the mental health sector. The median rate of nurses in this sector, 5.8 per 100,000, is greater than the median rate of all other human resource groups combined." Despite the major role that nursing plays in the care of psychiatric patients, prescriptive authority for nurses is severely curtailed, such that 71% of countries do not allow nurses to prescribe or continue to prescribe medication for mental or behavioral disorders (Morris et al., 2012).

DEVELOPMENT OF U.S. POLICIES REGARDING THOSE WHO FACE THE CHALLENGES OF MENTAL ILLNESS

The United States' policies regarding management of individuals who have been diagnosed as mentally ill have moved dramatically from the long-term institutionalization and mandatory treatment modalities used in the 1950s, 1960s, and 1970s to a significantly more community-based, supportive living, hands-off environment.

In the 1950s, 1960s, and 1970s, health care policies promoted long-term institutionalization of those suffering from significant mental illness challenges such as schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and major depression. Large state hospital complexes were the norm for the patients diagnosed with these illnesses. Long-term institutionalization was an accepted choice and overcrowding of institutions was not uncommon (Asylumprojects.org, www.asylumprojects.org/index.php?title=Main_Page, n.d.).

Long-term institutionalization may have removed individuals with chronic mental illnesses from the community, thus providing some protection for society from random, unexpected violence. At the same time, long-term institutionalization of individuals also led to ongoing mistreatment of this group of vulnerable patients, including children, all of whom were completely unable to defend themselves from abuse. One of the most infamous, long-term institutions was the Willowbrook State School, also known as the Staten Island Development Center, which housed approximately 5,000 patients in 1973 (www.asylumprojects.org 2015, September 13). A year before, in January 1972, Geraldo Rivera, a reporter for television station WABC, found that between 1956 and 1971, Willowbrook residents were infected with live hepatitis to develop a vaccine. Desperate parents gave consent in order to obtain acceptance of their children to the already overcrowded facility. Rivera's investigation led to a federal class-action lawsuit, which was filed against the State of New York in March 17, 1972; the case was settled on May 5, 1975, with a mandate for reforms. However, many years passed before the violations were corrected. As a result of the publicity generated by this case, a federal law was passed titled the Civil Rights of Institutionalized Persons Act of 1980. The last of the children left Willowbrook in 1987 (www.asylumprojects.org 2015, September 13). Newly built psychiatric facilities bear no resemblance to the "Willowbrooks" of the past.

In contrast, in 2014, a $38 million psychiatric facility was completed in Berlin, Vermont. The 53,000 square foot facility has four wards, two large and two small, for a total of 25 patients. "The facility's design includes an open plan, warm colors, windows that open, smooth stone sculptures and benches, two courtyards, a fountain and basketball court,

a walking track, a library, computer room, greenhouse, and exercise room, intended to create an environment in which patients can recover" (True, 2014). Patient-to-staff ratios are 5:1, with a cost of $1,000 more per patient, per day, than other Vermont state psychiatric facilities. Despite this extraordinary building and patient–staff ratios, Vermont, like many other states, is still lacking intensive residential treatment centers, which results in longer hospitalizations than that which patients may need.

As the years have passed, additional legislation has been passed to expand the rights of those who have been labeled by the medical community as mentally ill. Two examples are: "The Wellstone Domenici Mental Health Parity and Addiction Equity Act of 2008 (MHPAEA, 2010 [45CFR146]) requiring mental health and addictions services to be offered under equivalent terms of coverage to those services covered for medical conditions" (Ulmer, McFadden, & Cacace, 2011, p. 73). The Affordable Care Act (ACA) has also provided major support for provision of mental health services.

Section 1302 of the Patient Protection and ACA addresses the need for essential health benefits (EHBs). One of the 10 categories of care included was care for mental health and substance abuse disorder services, including behavioral health (Ulmer et al., 2011, p. 71)."Prior to the ACA, over 11 million (24%) of U.S. adults were affected by mental illness and lacked health coverage" (Ogundipe et al., 2015, p. 58). More individuals will be able to obtain mental health services through the expansion of Medicaid under the ACA. The ACA also focuses on "preventative care, alcohol misuse screening and counseling for adults; depression screening of adults and teens; domestic and interpersonal violence screening and counseling for all women, and other preventative services aimed at children from toddlerhood through adolescence" (Ogundipe et al., 2015, p. 58).

CIVIL LIBERTIES VERSUS PUBLIC AND PATIENT SAFETY

Although social policy demanded an end to institutionalization and community supports expanded, there are insufficient resources to provide effective treatment to all those in need. As deinstitutionalization progressed and as patients began to be known as consumers or clients and their families made ever-greater advocacy efforts to promote strong privacy, anti-labeling, and anti-stereotyping policies, there has been an increase in concern for public safety.

Steinberg's *New York Times* Op-Ed contribution (2012) highlights the policies of privacy, labeling, and stereotyping, and concern with the civil liberties of mentally ill individuals in the context of such violence as mass shootings at schools, malls, movie theaters, and other public venues. Steinberg notes the occurrence of random violence perpetrated by individuals with untreated chronic, severe mental illness against individuals. For example, the perpetrator of the Virginia Tech massacre, Seung-Hui Cho, had experienced significant mental health difficulties over several years. Mr. Cho was referred to the campus counseling center and he was committed on an overnight basis to a psychiatric hospital. He did not receive any formal follow-up care over the next 16 months (Harris, 2014, p. 82). Mr. Cho's parents were not informed of his declining mental health nor any of the associated behaviors including his possession of a knife nor the stalking of female students due to the university's interpretation of the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA) of 1974 in combination with the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996 (Office for Civil Rights [OCR], 2000, 2003 governing the privacy and sharing of personal health information, as forbidding the transmission of this information, Harris, 2014).

BREATHING LEGISLATIVE LIFE INTO HEALTH CARE POLICY AIMED AT ENHANCING TREATMENT OPTIONS FOR MENTAL HEALTH CHALLENGES

Social policies must be considered from the psychiatric nurse's perspective: Laws concerning involuntary hospitalizations and Assisted Outpatient Treatment (AOT) have been shaped by policies designed to address the societal impact of behaviors of those who are mentally ill and in need of assistance. This includes, but is not limited to, the impact of the behaviors of mentally ill, homeless individuals living in open community settings; it also includes, but is not limited to, the impact of the criminal system on those who are mentally ill and commit small and large crimes as an effort to obtain assistance through Court Based Intervention and Resource Teams (CIRT, http://www.eacinc.org/court-based-intervention-and-resource-teams-cirt). When there is massive interpersonal violence or unexpected deaths or injuries related to the behaviors of persons with mental illness, social policy demands legal changes such as Kendra's Law in New York mandating AOT (Kendra's Law, 1999, New York Mental Hygiene Law, sec. 9.60). The mass killings at Virginia Tech, Connecticut, and Arizona have raised outcries about such policies as FERPA, which guards students' privacy and can prevent a school or university from communicating with the parents or guardians of students who are still financially dependent on their parents.

THE PSYCHIATRIC NURSE AS POLITICAL ACTIVIST AND PATIENT ADVOCATE

Psychiatric nurses today can greatly contribute to the advancement of the profession, and can add to a body of knowledge for other professional nurses. In England, for example, because many health care workers in primary care may not be aware of new developments in the field of mental health, mental health nurses delivered trainings to practice (general) nurses. Both the practice nurses and the mental health nurses felt that their nursing practice would be improved by participating in this educational program (Hardy & Kingsnorth, 2015).

Mentally ill patients involved in the criminal justice system would benefit from regular, appropriate treatment. Community mapping of available services to provide continuity of care is critical for people with mental health problems after incarceration or forensic hospitalization. Provision of adequate services would enhance mental health recovery and decrease criminal recidivism. Although individuals in need of mental health services may improve due to treatment received while they were incarcerated, that improvement can be lost when patients are released into the community without adequate support services. Nurses who are knowledgeable about policy and legislation could help to change laws and regulations so that when mentally ill incarcerated individuals are released from prison they can retain their standing for affordable housing and to provide processing for income benefits, such as food stamps or public assistance, when they are released from prison. Nurses can advocate for continued relationships with patients who have been incarcerated, particularly for short periods.

Psychiatric nurses working with children are in a position to advocate for children with mental illness, so that children placed in foster care receive adequate therapeutic services. The National Conference on Legislatures is monitoring bills concerning the receipt of services by children in foster care, and psychiatric nurses may choose to become involved in such efforts through contact with their Congressional representatives.

Single mothers who reside in Single Room Occupancy (SROs) hotels as a result of losing their housing are at risk for severe psychiatric disorders, such as depression. Nurses' actions on behalf of this population could increase funding for supportive living complexes in residential communities (Knight et al., 2014). SROs tend to house individuals with coexisting drug abuse and mental illness. Women without stable housing who also use drugs have high rates of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), anxiety, and depression when compared with women who have stable housing situations (Knight et al., 2014). SROs are generally "mental health risk environments" (Knight et al., 2014) and women may choose homelessness over living in such environments that adversely affect their mental health. The problems caused by SROs require a large shift in housing policy to facilitate the construction of safe homes that are conducive to stable mental health. The authors contend that even in an environment rife with sex trade, as well as drug use and sales, if the supportive environment is constructed in a safe, clean, and well-managed manner, the mental health of the residents is likely to remain stable (Knight et al., 2014). Psychiatric nurses who work in community mental health and supportive living environments can consider advocating for improved public policy and increased funding to promote the construction and management of appropriate facilities with the goal of reducing homelessness and victimization of individuals with a history of drug abuse and/or mental illness.

The ongoing stigma associated with seeking assistance for mental and behavioral health and the House and Senate Appropriations Committees in support of Defense Health Programs have addressed the lack of mental health access for service members for fiscal year 2014. These issues are also the focus of the ANA and First Lady Michelle Obama's *Joining Forces* campaign. Psychiatric nurses must be aware of the toll of PTSD, depression, and alcohol abuse facing service personnel when they return from tours of duty (Gibbons, Migliore, Convoy, Greiner & Deleon, 2014). Gibbons et al. (2014) echo the call in President Obama's executive order calling for "Improving Access to Mental Health Services for Veterans, Serve Members, and Military Families" (August 31, 2012, https://www.whitehouse.gov/the-press-office/2012/08/31/executive-order-improving-access-mental-health-services-veterans-service) by urging providers to be "champions" who educate military members and families about available resources. Table 1 by Gibbons et al. (2014, p. 370) provides nurse practitioners with a "champion's toolbox" and provides invaluable resources and suggestions for improving the mental health status of veterans and their families. Gibbons et al. (2014, table 2, p. 371) suggest structures for local, regional, and national advocacy for nurses who want to assist military personnel and their family members by reducing the stigma related to the need for mental health services and by advocating for legislative change for measures aimed at improving military mental health. There are other areas in mental health in which psychiatric nurses might improve patients' treatment and choices.

Several developments have moved psychiatric care and support from provider-based support to more family and "consumer," also known as patient-managed endeavors. The National Alliance for Mental Illness (NAMI; www.nami.org) describes itself as the "nation's

largest grassroots mental health organization dedicated to building better lives for the millions of Americans affected by mental illness." NAMI provides education and support for individuals and their families affected by mental illness. NAMI also works to shape public policy with respect to measures affecting these members of society. Another rapidly growing consumer (patient)-based movement is Clubhouse International (www.iccd.org/). "Now over 300 worldwide, Clubhouses are community-based centers that offer members opportunities for friendship, employment, housing, education, and access to medical and psychiatric services through a single caring and safe environment, so members can achieve a sense of belonging and become productive members of society" (www.iccd.org). Patients, known in this environment as consumers, are active in all levels of clubhouse life from administration, to running of food services, to participation in activities. Psychiatric nurses provide support to individuals in this community-based environment. Other Internet resources have been compiled providing a plethora of resources for individuals living with mental illness and their families and significant others (Jaffe, 2011).

Psychiatric nurses are in a knowledgeable position to advocate for the creation of psychiatric treatment advance directives, similar to the first ones implemented in the nation by the State of Virginia. This innovative idea began with consensus building that would provide patient empowerment to select treatment options during times in which they were judged to be incompetent. The consensus-building effort took 2 years and was spearheaded by Virginia's Commission on Mental Health Law Reform. This commission took an inclusive position and involved consumers, families, health care providers, administrators, peer and advocacy agencies, and officials from all three branches of the state's government (Zelle, Kemp, & Bonnie, 2015). These efforts resulted in a major overhaul of the state's Health Care Decisions Act in 2009 to 2010. Efforts continue to embed the execution of psychiatric advance directives into routine mental health care (Zelle et al., 2015).

AN ACTIVIST'S EDUCATIONAL ROADMAP FOR BACCALAUREATE-PREPARED PSYCHIATRIC NURSES

The IOM (Future of Nursing, 2010) has called for an 80% baccalaureate-prepared nursing workforce by 2020. Patient safety is improved when nurses with a higher education background give care (Haverkamp & Ball, 2013). Baccalaureate psychiatric nurses can consider supporting the BSN as the entry point into the profession.

Nursing faculty teaching baccalaureate nursing students can support the expansion of clinical experiences to enhance baccalaureate students' perceptions of working in mental health nursing (Thongpriwan et al., 2015). It is recommended that clinical experiences provided to psychiatric nursing students go beyond inpatient psychiatric units. Experiences in supportive living environments, outpatient mental health treatment centers, prisons and jails, foster care services, drug treatment and rehabilitation centers, and clubhouses run largely by patients, are options that expose students to many work options focused on mental health. Aggregate care such as senior centers and medical model day-care centers for the developmentally challenged can offer baccalaureate nursing students varying viewpoints on the practice of mental health nursing.

Baccalaureate-prepared psychiatric nursing students and nurses may choose to join professional networks and organizations and begin to participate in the process of social change for the good of mental health and behavioral health patients and their families. Baccalaureate-prepared psychiatric nurses may affect the quantity and quality of services provided to families and individuals at risk through paid or volunteer work with local community boards and federal and state Congressional representatives. Enhanced advocacy may result in enhanced meeting of needs of vulnerable populations including those with incarceration issues, long-standing mental health issues, substance abuse issues, homelessness, and/or a history of military service or foster care.

We recommend that baccalaureate psychiatric nursing students begin to network via organizations such as the APNA, ANA, their state nurses association, and the National Student Nurses Association. Volunteer efforts at the community level would allow psychiatric nursing students to become involved in policy changes at the grassroots level. Some examples of involvement include participating in advocacy efforts for safer housing for those suffering from mental illness or volunteering in innovative court-based advocacy efforts on behalf of individuals with mental illness who are involved in or incarcerated in the criminal justice system. An example of such efforts is taking place in the New York State Court System via Mental Health Courts System (www.nycourts.gov/courts/problem_solving/mh/home.shtml).

We further recommend that baccalaureate-prepared psychiatric nursing students join in advocating for the national adoption of the Consensus Model for APRN Regulation: Licensure, Accreditation, Certification and Education (LACE), providing a national standard for uniform advance practice nursing.

CONCLUSION

This chapter has reviewed the functions of government, the enactment of laws, and the role of regulatory and administrative rules and regulations. It has also discussed briefly the definitions of policy, politics, political action, and lobbying. The global, national, and local impact of baccalaureate-prepared mental health nurses was examined. Recent public policy trends examining the heightened involvement of patients and families in search of quality mental health services was also addressed. The needs of vulnerable populations and the ability of the baccalaureate-prepared mental health nurse to advocate for and provide services to these populations was also encouraged.

SUMMARY POINTS

- The Constitution of the United States is the law of the land. All federal and state laws, rules, and regulations must be in compliance with constitutional rights and responsibilities.
- The U.S. government is composed of three branches, Congress (the legislative branch), the office of the president (the executive branch), and the Supreme Court (the judiciary). Each of these branches provides oversights and checks and balances for the other branches.
- Bills are enacted into law after Congress agrees on them and the president of the United States signs them into law. Laws are published in the latest edition of the *United States Statutes at Large*, retrieved January 25, 2016, https://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/browse/collection.action?collectionCode=STATUTE.
- Policy is a statement by government on what is to be done about a public problem. Social policy is intended to provide basic necessities to the population such as food, shelter, health care, and education.
- Politics are activities that relate to influencing the actions and policies of a government or getting and keeping power in government.
- Political action funds can be collected in a variety of ways. Political action committees (PACs) provide a way to collect funds that can be used to push and publicize the need for political change. Separated segregated funds (SSFs) can only solicit contributions from individuals associated with connected or sponsoring organizations. Nonconnected committees are free to solicit contributions from the general public.
- Lobbyists attempt to influence actions taken by government through written or oral communication. Lobbying is a highly regulated industry so as to avoid undue influence.
- Psychiatric nurses can help shape the scope of practice for entry and advanced practice levels, becoming involved with the development of licensure requirements, rules, and regulations.
- Psychiatric nurses may provide advocacy services to clients facing the challenges of mental illness, homelessness, and/or polysubstance abuse.
- Community activism on national and local levels by psychiatric nurses can improve supportive living services. This same activism can help decrease use of the criminal justice system and involuntary hospitalizations to treat those affected by mental illness.
- Psychiatric nurses can advocate for improved services for marginalized groups such as children with mental illness, single parents residing in single-room-occupancy hotels, and veterans affected by service-connected injuries.
- Advocacy is needed on a global level by psychiatric nurses given the drastic insufficiency of resources to provide care to those individuals and families dealing with mental illness.
- Psychiatric nurses can promote patient-led initiatives, such as Clubhouse International and the National Alliance for Mental Illness (NAMI), and assist with implementation of psychiatric advanced directives.
- Involvement in professional organizations beginning with nursing students' baccalaureate education through advanced professional development is a key factor in advancing professional practice and patient-care agendas.

NCLEX-PREP*

1. The branches of the United States government include:
   a. Legislative, Executive, Judiciary
   b. Legislative and Political
   c. Legislative, Political and Executive
   d. None of the above

2. Bills become laws after:
   a. The public votes on the bills
   b. The legislature approves the bill and the appropriate executive signs the law
   c. The executive branch votes on the bill
   d. A legal nurse consultant is contacted to review the bill
   e. None of the above

3. Current local, national, and global mental health policy efforts are focused on:
   a. Improving the lives of those challenged by mental illness
   b. Obtaining additional public resources to prevent and treat mental illnesses
   c. Protecting the rights of those with mental illnesses
   d. Addressing safety issues related to violence in communities
   e. All of the above

4. The psychiatric nursing role in policy includes:
   a. Patient advocate
   b. Political activist
   c. Assuring patient medication compliance
   d. a and c
   e. a and b

**Answers to these questions appear in the Answers to NCLEX Prep Questions section at the back of this book.*

REFERENCES

About Joint Resolutions. Retrieved from www.lexisnexis.com/help/CU/Serial_Set/About_Bills.htm#joi

American Nurses Association (ANA). (2015). *What is ANA-PAC? NursingWorld*. Retrieved from www.nursingworld.org/anapac

Asare, J. B. (2012). Comment: A historical survey of psychiatric practice in Ghana (1962). *Ghana Medical Journal, 46*(3), 114–115.

Birkland, T. A. (2014). *An introduction to the policy process: Theories, concepts, and models of public policy making*. New York, NY: Routledge.

Electronic CFR. (2016, January 26). Retrieved from http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/ECFR?page=browse

Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act Regulations. (1974). *34 CFR Part 99*. Retrieved from www2.ed.gov/policy/gen/guid/fpco/pdf/ferparegs.pdf

Gibbons, S. W., Migliore, L., Convoy, S. P., Greiner, S., & DeLeon, P. H. (2014). Military mental health stigma challenges: Policy and practice considerations. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners, 10*(6), 365–372. Retrieved from dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.nurpra.2014.03.021

Hardy, S. A., & Kingsnorth, R. (2015). Mental health nurses can increase capability and capacity in primary care by educating practice nurses: An evaluation of an education programme in England. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing, 22*(4), 270–277. doi:10.1111/jpm.12208

Harris, J. C. (2014). *The Virginia tech massacre: Strategies and challenges for improving mental health policy on campus and beyond.* In A. G. Sood & R. Cohen (Eds.), *Developmental perspectives in psychiatry.* Oxford: Oxford University Press. Retrieved from http://alltitles.ebrary.com/docDetail.action?docID=10913434

Haverkamp, J. J., & Ball, K. (2013). BSN in 10: What is your opinion? *AORN Journal, 98*(2), 144–152.

Institute for Mental Health Advocacy. (2015). *American Psychiatric Nurses Association*. Retrieved from http://www.apna.org/i4a/pages/index.cfm?pageid=3627

Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2010). *The future of nursing: Leading change, advancing health.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

Jaffe, D. J. (2011). Retrieved from www.mentalillnesspolicy.org

Kendra's Law. (1999). New York Mental Hygiene Law, sec. 9.60.

Knight, K. R., Lopez, A. M., Comfort, M., Shumway, M., Cohen, J., & Riley, E. D. (2014). Single room occupancy (SRO) hotels as mental health risk environments among impoverished women: The intersection of policy, drug use, trauma, and urban space. *International Journal on Drug Policy, 25*(3), 556–561.

Mental Health Atlas. (2011). *WHO Press*. Retrieved from www.who.int/mental_health_/publications/mental_health_atlas_2011/en/

Merriam-Webster Online Dictionary. (n.d.). Retrieved from www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/political%20action

Morris, J., Lora, A., McBain, R., & Saxena, S. (2012). Global mental health resources and services: A WHO survey of 184 countries. *Public Health Rev, 34*(2). Retrieved from http://www.publichealthreviews.eu/upload/pdf_files/12/00_Morris.pdf

National Conference of State Legislatures. (2014). *How states define lobbying and lobbyist*. Retrieved from www.ncsl.org/research/ethics/50-state-chart-lobby-definitions.aspx

Nickitas, D. M., Middaugh, D. J., & Aries, N. (Eds.), (2011). *Policy and politics for nurses and other health professionals.* Sudbury, MA:

Jones and Bartlett. Retrieved from http://www.amazon.com/reader/0763756598/ref=rdr_sb_li_hist_1&state=01111

Ogundipe, B., Alam, F., Gazula, L., Olagbemiro, Y., Osiezagha, K., Bailey, R. K., & Richie, W. D. (2015). Remaking the American health care system: A positive reflection on the Affordable Care Act with emphasis on mental health care. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved, 26*(1), 49–61.

Saleh, K., (2012). *Health sector in Ghana: a comprehensive assessment.* Herndon, VA: World Bank Publications. Retrieved from http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en/2012/12/17081818/health-sector-ghana-comprehensive-assessment

Steinberg, P. (2012). Our failed approach to schizophrenia. *New York Times*, December 26, p. A25. Retrieved from www.nytimes.com/2012/12/26/opinion/our-failed-approach-to-schizophrenia.html?ref=topis&r=0

Thongpriwan, V., Leuck, S. E., Powell, R. L., Young, S., Schuler, S. G., & Hughes, R. G. (2015). Undergraduate nursing students' attitudes toward mental health nursing. *Nurse Education Today, 35*(8), 948–953.

True, M. (May 28, 2014). *New state psychiatric hospital brings care into the 21st century*. VTDigger.org. Retrieved from http://vtdigger.org/2014/05/28/new-state-psychiatric-hospital-brings-care-21st-century

Ulmer, C., McFadden, B., & Cacace, C. (2011). *Perspectives on essential health benefits: Workshop report.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press. Retrieved from http://www.nap.edu/catalog/13182/perspectives-on-essential-health-benefits-workshop-report

U.S. Department of the Treasury, DOL, and HHS. (2010). *45 CFR 146.* Interim final rules under the Paul Wellstone and Pete Domenici Mental Health Parity and Addiction Equity Act of 2008. 45 CFR 146. Retrieved from www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2010–02-02/pdf/2010–2167.pdf

Willowbrook State School. (2015, September 13). Retrieved from www.asylumprojects.org/indes.php?title=Willowbrook_State_School

World Health Organization (WHO). (2011). The World Health Organization assessment instrument for mental health systems. *WHO-AIMS report on mental health systems in Ghana.* Retrieved from www.who.int/mental_health/who_aims_country_reports/ghana_who_aims_report.pdf

Zelle, H., Kemp, K., & Bonnie, R. J. (2015). Advance directives for mental health care: Innovation in law, policy, and practice. *Psychiatric Services, 66*(1), 7–9. Retrieved from dx.doi.org/10.1176/appi.ps.201400435

APPENDIX A

NANDA NURSING DIAGNOSES 2015–2017

CODE	STATEMENT
00001	Nutritional imbalance: excess
00002	Nutritional imbalance: by default
00003	Risk of nutritional imbalance: excess
00004	Risk of infection
00005	Risk of imbalance in body temperature
00006	Hypothermia
00007	Hyperthermia
00008	Ineffective thermoregulation
00009	Autonomic dysreflexia
00010	Risk of autonomic dysreflexia
00011	Constipation
00012	Constipation subjective
00013	Diarrhea
00014	Fecal incontinence
00015	Risk of constipation
00016	Impaired urinary elimination
00017	Stress Urinary Incontinence
00018	Reflex urinary incontinence
00019	Urge incontinence
00020	Functional urinary incontinence
00021	Total urinary incontinence
00022	Risk of urinary incontinence emergency
00023	Urinary retention
00024	Ineffective tissue perfusion (renal, cerebral, cardiopulmonary, gastrointestinal, peripheral)
00025	Risk for fluid volume imbalance
00026	Excess fluid volume
00027	Fluid volume deficit
00028	Risk for fluid volume deficit
00029	Decreased cardiac output
00030	Impaired gas exchange
00031	Cleaning ineffective airway
00032	Ineffective breathing pattern
00033	Impairment of spontaneous respiration
00034	Dysfunctional response to weaning from the ventilator
00035	Risk of injury
00036	Choking hazard
00037	Risk of poisoning
00038	Risk of injury
00039	Risk of aspiration
00040	Risk for disuse syndrome
00041	Allergic response to latex
00042	Risk of allergic response to latex
00043	Ineffective protection
00044	Impaired skin integrity
00045	Impairment of oral mucosa
00046	Impairment of skin integrity
00047	Risk for impaired skin integrity
00048	Deterioration of the dentition
00049	Decreased intracranial adaptive capacity
00050	Disruption of the energy field
00051	Impaired verbal communication
00052	Impaired social interaction
00053	Social isolation
00054	Risk of loneliness
00055	Ineffective role performance
00056	Parental impairment
00057	Parental risk of deterioration
00058	Risk of deterioration of the relationship between parent and infant/child
00059	Sexual dysfunction

(*cont.*)

Note: In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA nursing diagnoses, it is essential that nurses refer to definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

CODE	STATEMENT
00060	Interrupted family processes
00061	Fatigue in the caregiver role performance
00062	Risk of fatigue in the caregiver role performance
00063	Dysfunctional family processes: alcoholism
00064	Parental role conflict
00065	Ineffective sexual patterns
00066	Spiritual distress
00067	Risk for spiritual distress
00068	Readiness for enhanced spiritual well-being
00069	Ineffective coping
00070	Impaired adaptation
00071	Defensive coping
00072	Inefficient negation
00073	Family coping disabling
00074	Compromised family coping
00075	Readiness for enhanced family coping
00076	Readiness for enhanced community coping
00077	Coping infective community
00078	Ineffective management of therapeutic regimen
00079	Failure of treatment (specify)
00080	Ineffective management of therapeutic regimen familiar
00081	Ineffective management of therapeutic regimen of the community
00082	Effective management of therapeutic regimen
00083	Decisional conflict (specify)
00084	Generating health behaviors (specify)
00085	Impaired physical mobility
00086	Risk of peripheral neurovascular dysfunction
00087	Perioperative risk of injury
00088	Impaired ambulation
00089	Impaired wheelchair mobility
00090	Impaired ability for translation
00091	Impaired bed mobility
00092	Activity intolerance
00093	Fatigue
00094	Risk for activity intolerance
00095	Impaired sleep pattern
00096	Sleep deprivation
00097	Deficit recreation
00098	Impaired home maintenance
00099	Ineffective health maintenance
00100	Delayed surgical recovery
00101	Inability to maintain adult development
00102	Self-care deficit: feeding
00103	Impairment of swallowing
00104	Ineffective breastfeeding
00105	Interruption of breastfeeding
00106	Effective breastfeeding
00107	Inefficient feeding pattern of infants
00108	Self-care deficit: bathing/hygiene
00109	Self-care deficit: dressing/grooming
00110	Self-care deficit: using the toilet
00111	Delayed growth and development
00112	Risk of developmental delay
00113	Risk of disproportionate growth
00114	Relocation stress syndrome
00115	Risk of infant disorganized behavior
00116	Infant disorganized behavior
00117	Willingness to improve the organization of infant behavior
00118	Body image disorder
00119	Chronic low self-esteem
00120	Situational low self-esteem
00121	Identity disorder
00122	Disorder of sensory perception (visual, auditory, kinesthetic, gustatory, tactile, olfactory)
00123	Unilateral neglect
00124	Hopelessness
00125	Impotence
00126	Deficient knowledge (specify)
00127	Syndrome deterioration of interpreting the environment
00128	Acute confusion
00129	Chronic confusion
00130	Disorder of thought processes
00131	Memory impairment
00132	Sharp pain
00133	Chronic pain
00134	Nausea
00135	Dysfunctional grieving
00136	Anticipatory grief
00137	Chronic grief
00138	Risk of violence directed at others
00139	Risk of self-harm
00140	Self-directed violence risk
00141	Posttraumatic syndrome
00142	The rape trauma syndrome
00143	The rape trauma syndrome: compound reaction
00144	Rape trauma syndrome: silent reaction
00145	Risk of posttraumatic syndrome
00146	Anxiety
00147	Death anxiety
00148	Fear
00149	Risk of relocation stress syndrome
00150	Suicide risk

(*cont.*)

Note: In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA nursing diagnoses, it is essential that nurses refer to definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

CODE	STATEMENT	CODE	STATEMENT
00151	Self-mutilation	00160	Readiness for enhanced fluid volume balance
00152	Risk of impotence	00161	Readiness for enhanced knowledge (specify)
00153	Risk situational low self-esteem	00162	Readiness for enhanced therapeutic regimen management
00154	Wandering	00163	Willingness to improve nutrition
00155	Risk of falls	00164	Readiness for enhanced parenting role
00156	Syndrome risk of sudden infant death	00165	Willingness to improve sleep
00157	Willingness to improve communication	00166	Readiness for enhanced urinary elimination
00158	Readiness for enhanced coping	00167	Readiness for enhanced self-concept
00159	Readiness for enhanced family processes		

Note: In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA nursing diagnoses, it is essential that nurses refer to definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in this work.

APPENDIX B

EQUIVALENT CANADIAN DRUGS

GENERIC NAME	U.S. TRADE NAME	CANADIAN TRADE NAME
acamprosate calcium	Campral	Campral
alprazolam	Xanax	Apo-Alpraz, Apo-Alpraz TS, Novo-Alprazol, Nu-Alpraz, Xanax TS
amitriptyline	Elavil	Levate, Novatriptyn
amoxapine	Asendin	Asendin
amphetamine/dextroamphetamine	Adderall	Dexedrine
aripiprazole	Abilify	Abilify
asenapine	Saphris	Saphris
atomoxetine	Strattera	Strattera
buprenorphine	Buprenex, injectable; Suboxone	Subutex
bupropion	Wellbutrin, Wellbutrin XR, Zyban	Wellbutrin, Zyban
buspirone	BuSpar	Apo-Buspirone, Buspirex, Gen-Buspirone, Lin-Buspirone, Nova-Buspirone
carbamazepine	Atretol, Tegretol	Apo-Carbamazepine, Novo-Carbamaz, Nu-Carbamazepine, PMS-Carbamazepine, Taro-Carbamazepine
chlordiazepoxide	Librium	Apo-Chlordiazepoxide
chlorpromazine	Thorazine	Chlorprom
citalopram	Celexa	Celexa
clomipramine	Anafranil	Anafranil, Apo-Clomipramine, Gen-Clomipramine,
clonazepam	Klonopin	Apo-Clonazepam, Clonapam, Gen-Clonazapem, Rivotril
clonidine	Catapres	APO-Clonidine, Dixarit, Novo-Clonidine, Nu-Clonidine
clozapine	Clozaril	Clozapine, Clozaril, Gen-Clozapine, Rhoxal
desipramine	Norpramin	Apo-Desipramine, Norpramin, Nova-Desipramine, Nu-Desipramine,
desvenlafaxine	Pristiq	Pristiq
diazepam	Valium	Apo-Diazepam, Diastat, Diazemuls, Valium, Valium Roche Oral

(*cont.*)

GENERIC NAME	U.S. TRADE NAME	CANADIAN TRADE NAME
disulfiram	Antabuse	Antabuse
divalproex sodium	Depakote	Alti-Valproic, Apo-Divalproex, Apo-Valproic Acid, Epival, Gen-Valproic, Nu-Divalproex, PMS-Valproic Acid, PMS-Valproic Acid E.C., ratio-Valproic, Sandoz Valproic
donepezil	Aricept	Aricept
doxepin	Sinequan	Alti-Doxepin, Apo-Doxepin, Triadapin, Zonalon
duloxetine	Cymbalta	Cymbalta
escitalopram	Lexapro	Cipralex
flibanserin	Girosa, Addyi	Addyi
fluoxetine	Prozac	Alti-Fluoxetine, Apo-Fluoxetine, FXT, Gen-Fluoxetine, Novo-Fluoxetine, PMS-Fluoxetine, Prozac, Rhoxal-Fluoxetine
fluphenazine	Prolixin	Modecate, Moditen, PMS-fluphenazine
fluvoxamine maleate	Luvox	Alti-Fluvoxamine, Apo-Fluvoxamine, Luvox, Novo-Fluvoxamine, Nu-Fluvoxamine, Prozac, Rhoxal-Fluvoxamine
gabapentin	Neurontin	Apo-Gabapentin, CO Gabapentin, Gen-Gabapentin, Novo-Gabapentin, PMS-Gabapentin, ratio-Gabapentin
galantamine	Reminyl	Reminyl, Reminyl ER
haloperidol	Haloperidol	Apo-Haloperidol, Haloperidol LA, Nova-Peridol, Peridol
iloperidone	Fanapt	Fanapt, Fanapta
imipramine	Tofranil	Apo-Imipramine, Impril, Tofranil
isocarboxazid	Marplan	Marplan
lamotrigine	Lamictal	Apo-Lamotrigine, Lamictal, PMS-Lamotrigine, ratio-Lamotrigine
lisdexamfetamine	Vyvanse	Vyvanse
lithium carbonate	Lithobid, Lithotabs, Lithonate	PMS-Lithium Carbonate
lorazepam	Ativan	Apo-Lorazepam, Ativan, Nova-Lorazem, Nu-Loraz, Riva-Lorazepam
loxapine	Loxitane	Apo-Loxitane, Loxapac, Nu-Loxitane, PMS-Loxapine
lurasidone	Latuda	Latuda
maprotiline	Ludiomil	Nova-Maprotiline
memantine	Namenda	Namenda
methadone hydrochloride	Methadone	Metadol
methylphenidate	Ritalin, Concerta	Riphenidate
mirtazapine	Remeron	Remeron
naloxone	Narcan	Naloxone Hydrochloride
naltrexone	Vivitrol, Injectable; Revia; Depade, Oral	ReVia, Vivitro

(*cont.*)

GENERIC NAME	U.S. TRADE NAME	CANADIAN TRADE NAME
naltrexone hydrochloride	Trexan, Vivitrol	ReVia
nortriptyline	Aventyl, Pamelor	Apo-Nortriptyline, Aventyl, Gen-Nortriptyline, Norvently, Nu-Nortriptyline, PMS-Nortriptyline
olanzapine	Zyprexa	Zydis, Zyprexa
oxcarbazepine	Trileptal	Apo-Oxcarbazepine, Trileptal
paliperidone	Invega	Invega
paroxetine	Paxil	Apo-Paroxetine, CO Paroxetine, Gen-Paroxetine, Novo-Paroxetine, PMS-Paroxetine, ratio-Paroxetine, Sandoz Paroxetine
perphenazine	Trilafon	Apo-Perphenazine, Phenazine
phenelzine sulfate	Nardil	Nardil
phenobarbital	Phenobarbital	PMS-Phenobarbital
prazosin	Minipress	Apo-Prazo
pregabalin	Lyrica	Lyrica
propranolol	Inderal	Apo-Propranolol
quetiapine	Seroquel	Seroquel
quetiapine fumarate	Seroquel	Seroquel
rimonabant	Zimulti	Acomplia
risperidone	Risperdal	Apo-Risperidone, CO-Risperidone, Gen-Risperidone, Novo-Risperidone, PMS-Risperidone, ratio-Risperidone, Risperdal, Sandoz Risperidone
rivastigmine	Exelon	Exelon
sertraline	Zoloft	Apo-Sertraline, Gen-Sertraline, Novo-Sertraline, Nu-Sertraline. PMS-Sertraline, ratio-Sertraline, Zoloft
sildenafil	Viagra	Novo-Sildenafil
tadalafil	Cialis	Cialis
thioridazine	Mellaril	Apo-thioridazine, Mellaril
thiothixene	Navane	Navane
topiramate	Topamax	Apo-Topiramate, CO Topiramate, Gen-Topiramate, PMS-Topiramate, ratio-Topiramate, Sandoz Topiramate, Topamax
tranylcypromine	Parnate	Parnate
trazodone	Desyrel	Apo-Trazodone, Apo-Trazodone D, Gen-Trazodone, PMS-Trazodone, ratio-Trazodone
trifluoperazine	Stelazine	Apo-trifluoperazine, Terfluzine
vardenafil	Levitra	Levitra
varenicline	Chantix	Champix
venlafaxine	Effexor and Effexor XR	Effexor, Novo-Venlafaxine XR
ziprasidone	Geodon	Geodon, Zeldox

GLOSSARY

ABUSE: Acts of commission or omission that result in harm, potential for harm, or threat of harm. *See also* Drug Abuse

ABUSIVE HEAD TRAUMA: Involves injury to the brain resulting from a forceful traumatic impact, violent shaking, or a combination of the two actions

ACTIVE LISTENING: A concentrated effort on the part of the nurse to pay close attention to what the patient is saying, both verbally and nonverbally

ACTIVITIES OF DAILY LIVING: Activities that include personal hygiene, dressing, eating, mobility, and toileting

ADDICTION: A chronic, relapsing brain disease that is characterized by compulsive drug seeking and use, despite harmful consequences

ADDICTIVE DISORDER: Compulsive drug seeking and use despite harmful consequences

AFFECTIVE DISORDER: A term frequently used interchangeably with depressive or mood disorders; predominantly involves a persistent disturbance in mood

AFFECTIVE FLATTENING: Restricted range and intensity of emotion

AGORAPHOBIA: The fear of being in a place or situation where escape might be difficult or help unavailable in the event of a panic

ALOGIA: Decreased production of speech

AMBIVALENCE: A state of conflicting or opposing ideas, attitudes, or emotions

ANHEDONIA: Inability to feel pleasure or joy from life

ANOREXIA NERVOSA: Refusal or inability to maintain a minimally normal body weight

ANOSOGNOSIA: Poor insight

ANXIETY: A vague feeling involving some dread, apprehension, or other unknown tension

ASSISTED SUICIDE: Providing a person with an available means for death such as pills or weapons, with the knowledge of the person's intent to use those means to die but without acting as the direct agent for the death

ATTITUDES: General feelings or that which provides a frame of reference for an individual

AUTISM: Literally, "living in self"; inability to relate to people and situations, and failure to learn to speak or convey meaning to others through language

AUTONOMY: The capacity to make decisions and act on them

AVOIDANT/RESTRICTIVE FOOD INTAKE DISORDER: Avoidance or restriction of food intake manifested by clinically significant failure to meet requirements for nutrition or insufficient energy intake through oral intake of food

AVOLITION: A diminished goal-directed activity

BAD NEWS: Any new information that the patient interprets as representing significant loss

BATTERING: Striking someone repeatedly with violent blows

BEHAVIORAL PSYCHOLOGY THEORY: A scientific approach that limits the study of psychology to measurable or observable behavior

BENEFICENCE: An ethical principle involving doing what is best

BINGE DRINKING: Copious amounts of alcohol consumed over a short period of time

BINGE EATING DISORDER: Characterized by episodes of binge eating; that is, eating in a discrete period of time an amount of food that is larger than most other people would eat in a similar period under comparable circumstances

BIOFEEDBACK: Also referred to as *applied psychophysiological feedback;* the process of displaying involuntary or subthreshold physiological processes, usually by electronic instrumentation, and learning to voluntarily influence those processes by making changes in cognition

BIOLOGICAL PSYCHOLOGY THEORY: The study of human or animal psychology using a biological approach in order to understand human behavior; involves brain physiology, genetics, and evolution as means for understanding behavior

BOUNDARIES: The professional spaces between the nurse's power and the patient's vulnerability

BOUNDARY CROSSING: A transient, brief excursion across a professional boundary. The action may be inadvertent, unconscious, or even purposeful and done to meet a specific therapeutic need

BOUNDARY VIOLATION: A situation resulting when there is confusion between the needs of the nurse and those of the patient; allows nurse to meet his or her own needs rather than the patient's needs

BROKER CASE MANAGEMENT MODEL: A case management model in which single individuals (brokering case managers) are responsible for referral, placement, and monitoring of patients

BULIMIA NERVOSA: Repeated episodes of binge eating followed by compensatory behaviors

CASE MANAGEMENT: An outcome-oriented process that coordinates care and advocates for patients and patient populations across the health care continuum

CHEMICAL CASTRATION: A hormone medication that reduces testosterone and therefore sexual urges

CIRCULAR REACTIONS: Motor reflexes, such as thumb sucking and hand grasping, that then develop into object manipulation that invokes a response from people or the environment (rattle shaking)

CLASSICAL CONDITIONING: The learned associative behavioral stimulus–response discovered by Pavlov

CLINICAL CASE MANAGEMENT: A worker-intensive, clinical case management model where the individuals commonly have the greatest need for services

CLOTURE: This rule permits a supermajority of the Senate (three fifths of the Senate or 60 Senators) to limit debate on bills, amendments, or motions

COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT: One's ability to understand the world, including interaction with stimuli and objects in the environment, social interactions related to thinking patterns, and how one receives and stores information

COGNITIVE DISORDERS: A group of disorders in which a person experiences a disruption in areas of mental function. These areas include orientation, attention, logic, awareness, memory, intellect, language, abstract thinking, and reasoning

COGNITIVE DISSONANCE: The inability of the human mind to contain two disparate, conflicting thoughts or beliefs simultaneously. It also includes the process of how a person will engage in rationalization, change beliefs or behaviors to eliminate the tension or imbalance associated with cognitive dissonance, and restore cognitive or mental balance

COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY THEORY: The study of higher mental processes such as attention, language use, memory, perception, problem solving, and thinking

COGNITIVE RESTRUCTURING TECHNIQUES: A strategy that helps a person recognize how his or her thoughts and feelings are contributing to the behavior and then assists the patient in reshaping this thinking to result in more appropriate behaviors and emotions

COLORADO MODEL: The continuum of care model of psychiatric case management that combines focused therapy, assertive community treatment, and family-centered interventions

COMMUNICATION: The transmission of information or a message from a sender to a receiver

COMPASSION FATIGUE: The emotional and physical burnout that may interfere with caring

COMPETENCE: The degree to which a patient possesses the cognitive ability to understand and process information

COMPLEMENTARY AND INTEGRATIVE THERAPIES: Provide healing strategies that target the psychoneuroimmunological basis for health and illness

COMPULSIONS: Repetitive behaviors (e.g., hand washing, ordering, checking) or mental acts (e.g., praying, counting, repeating words silently) that a person feels driven to perform in response to an obsession or according to rules that must be applied rigidly

CONFRONTRATION: A technique used to help the patient take note of a behavior and then examine it

CONSERVATION: The ability to recognize that despite something changing shape, it maintains the characteristics that make it what it is (e.g., clay)

CONTINUUM OF CARE: An integrated system of settings, services, health care clinicians, and care levels spanning illness to wellness states

COUNTER-TRANSFERENCE: An occurrence when the health care professional develops a positive or negative emotional response to the patient's transference

COURAGEOUS CONVERSATIONS: Conversations held at certain turning points so that the patient and family are able to successfully navigate the predictable and sometimes not-so-predictable pitfalls that accompany illness journeys

CRISIS: A time-limited event, usually lasting no more than 4 to 6 weeks, that results from extended periods of stress unrelieved by adaptive coping mechanisms

CRISIS INTERVENTION: A time-limited professional strategy designed to address an immediate problem, resolve acute feelings of distress or panic, and restore independent problem-solving skills

CRITICAL INCIDENT DEBRIEFING: A formally recognized program with trained staff that allows staff to vent and process feelings in a structured way after particularly stressful patient contacts

CRITICAL THINKING: A purposeful method of reasoning that is systematic, reflective, rational, and outcome oriented

CRITICAL THINKING INDICATORS™ (CTIs™): Behaviors that demonstrate the knowledge, characteristics, and skills needed to promote critical thinking for clinical decision making

CULTURAL COMPETENCE: A set of congruent behaviors, attitudes, and policies that come together in a system, agency, or among professionals and enables that system, agency or those professionals to work effectively in multicultural situations and with diverse social groups

CULTURAL CONGRUENCE: The distance between the cultural competence characteristics of a health care organization and the patient's perception of those same competence characteristics as they relate to the patient's cultural needs

CULTURE: An integrated pattern of human behavior that includes thought, communication, actions, customs, beliefs, values, lifestyles, and institutions of racial, ethnic, religious, or social groups

CURATIVE FACTORS: Common factors operating in all types of groups that describe the patterns of interaction in a therapeutic group

DEBRIEFING: A method used following a crisis incident to allow staff to verbalize their feelings and thoughts about the event

DEINSTITUTIONALIZATION: A movement of patients in mental health institutions back into the community

DELIRIUM: An acute disruption in consciousness and cognitive function

DELUSION: Erroneous false, fixed beliefs; a misinterpretation of an experience

DEMENTIA: A group of conditions that involve multiple deficits in memory and cognition

DEPENDENCY: The final stage of substance use and refers to a maladaptive pattern of behavior characterized by progression, tolerance, withdrawal, preoccupation with the behavior regardless of any consequences, and has the potential to be fatal

DEPRESSION: A serious medical condition in which a person feels very sad and hopeless and has no or little interest in activities that were once enjoyable

DETOXIFICATION: The process of managing a patient during withdrawal. Detoxification is composed of three components: evaluation, stabilization, and readiness for treatment

DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITY: A diverse group of severe chronic conditions that are due to physical and/or mental impairments

DIALECTICAL BEHAVIOR THERAPY (DBT): A form of cognitive behavioral therapy that helps individuals take responsibility for their own behaviors and problems; teaches individuals how to cope with conflict, negative feelings, and impulsivity, thereby enhancing capabilities and improving motivation, which lead to a decrease in dysfunctional behavior

DIALOGUE: A uniquely suited process for bringing recovery to self and others

DISPARITY: Lack of equality, usually in reference to health and health care

DISPOSITIONS: The way a person approaches life and living

DIVERSITY: Reality created by individuals and groups from a broad spectrum of demographical and philosophical differences; narrowly, includes age, race, gender, ethnicity, religion, and sexual orientation

DOMESTIC VIOLENCE: Causing or attempting to cause physical or mental harm to a family or household member; placing a family or household member in fear of physical or mental harm; causing or attempting to cause a family or household member to engage in involuntary sexual activity by force, threat of force, or duress; engaging in an activity toward a family or household member that would cause a reasonable person to feel terrorized, frightened, intimidated, threatened, harassed, or molested

DRUG ABUSE: The initial stage of substance use where the individual may have recurrent substance use that leads to failure to meet obligations, puts the individual in hazardous situations, causes legal problems, or results in social, interpersonal, or professional problems

EATING DISORDER: A serious disturbance in behaviors associated with eating

ECHOLALIA: Parrot-like repetition of another's words

ECHOPRAXIA: Involuntary imitation of another's movements and gestures

EGO DEFENSE MECHANISMS: Conscious and unconscious tools used to protect and defend the ego

ELDER ABUSE: Any knowing action or omission of an action on the part of a caregiver or other responsible person that causes harm to an older adult. Harm can include physical, sexual, emotional, or financial harm

EMERGING IDENTITIES: The phase of Travelbee's model characterized by the nurse and the ill person each perceiving the other as unique individuals. The bond of a relationship is beginning to form

EMOTIONAL LONELINESS: Loneliness associated with loss of intimacy with a partner, family member, or friend who can no longer support the emotional needs of the elder

EMPATHETIC LINKAGES: The ability to feel in oneself the emotions experienced by another person in the same situation

EMPATHY: The phase of Travelbee's model characterized by the ability to share in the other person's experience; putting yourself in the other person's shoes, or seeing the world through the other person's eyes

ENCULTURATION: A process by which a person learns the requirements of the culture by which he or she is surrounded, and acquires values and behaviors that are appropriate or necessary in that culture

ENDORPHINS: Chemicals in the body that are responsible for increasing the sense of well-being; potent mood elevators

ENRICHED MODEL OF DEMENTIA: A model, which acknowledges that the primary cause of problems for the person with dementia stems from the person's neurological impairment

ETHICS: A collection of philosophical principles that examine the rightness and wrongness of decisions and conduct as human beings

ETHNICITY: Selected cultural characteristics used to classify people into groups or categories considered to be significantly different from others

EXPLOITATION PHASE: The phase of Peplau's nurse–patient relationship where the bulk of the work is accomplished with the patient taking full advantage of the nursing services offered. This phase encompasses all of the therapeutic activities that are initiated to reach the identified goal

FAMILY THERAPY: An insight-oriented therapy with the goal of altering interactions between or among family members, thus improving the functioning of the family as a unit or any individual within the family

FEAR: Feelings consistent with panic and phobias

FEEDING DISORDER: Persistent disturbance of eating or eating-related behavior

FIDELITY: An ethical principle focusing on acting as promised

FLOODING: A technique that exposes the patient to the anxiety-provoking or feared situation all at once

FORENSIC NURSING: Specialty practice that provides services to the legal and criminal system; forensic science is combined with the biopsychological education of registered nurses in scientific investigation, evidence collection, preservation and analysis, and prevention and treatment of trauma- and/or death-related medical–legal issues

GAMBLING DISORDER: Persistent maladaptive gambling behavior

GENOGRAM: A tool developed to show a map of the multigenerational family structure and process, geography (urban or rural), gender, age, disability status, and risk status related to sex and gender

GEROPSYCHIATRY: The study of psychiatric and mental illness in the aging population

GESTALT: Human experience of being whole

GRAND THEORIES: Theories that are the most abstract and broad in scope

GRANDIOSE: Delusions of inflated worth, power, or knowledge; possibly involving special relationships with a deity or a famous person

GROUP: Any collection of two or more individuals who share at least one commonality or goal, such that the relationship is interdependent

GROUP DYNAMICS: Forces that produce patterns within the group as the group moves toward its goals

GROUP PROCESS: An interaction among group members

GROUP THERAPY: A process by which group leaders with advanced educational degrees and experience provide psychotherapy with members to improve their interpersonal functioning

HALLUCINATION: Most commonly auditory or visual but erroneous or false sensory perceptions

HOMELESS PERSON: One who lacks a fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence; this can be a supervised, publicly or privately operated shelter, a temporary residence for individuals intended to be institutionalized, or a public or private place not ordinarily used as a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings

HONOR KILLINGS: Killings based on the belief that women are the property of male relatives and embody the honor of the men to whom they "belong"

HOPE: A mental state characterized by the desire to gain an end or accomplish a goal combined with some degree of expectation that what is desired or sought is attainable

HUMAN BEING: Unique irreplaceable individual, a onetime being in this world, like yet unlike any person who has ever lived or ever will live

HUMAN SEXUALITY: Understanding how people experience themselves as sexual beings

HUMANISTIC PSYCHOLOGY THEORY: A group of psychologies that includes early and emerging orientations and perspectives, including Rogerian, existential, transpersonal, phenomenological, hermeneutic, feminist, and other psychologies

HYPOMANIA: A sublevel of mania

HYSTERIA: Greek for uterus; term used to describe anxiety and anxiety-related disorders specifically in women in the 17th and 18th centuries

IDENTIFICATION PHASE: The second phase of Peplau's nurse–patient relationship in which the patient recognizes his or her needs for health care for which the nurse can provide assistance

IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDER: Several psychiatric conditions characterized by behavior seeking a small, short-term gain at the expense of a large, long-term loss. Individuals are not able to resist the impetuous behavior

INFORMED CONSENT: The process by which the treating health care provider discloses appropriate information to a competent patient so that the patient may make a voluntary choice to accept or refuse treatment

INPATIENT PSYCHIATRIC CASE MANAGEMENT MODEL: Case management model involving the use of a managed care agent to perform the initial assessment and develop an initial treatment plan

INSOMNIA: Difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep

INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY: Mental retardation; term used when a person's ability to learn at an expected level and function in daily life are limited

INTERMITTENT EXPLOSIVE DISORDER: The failure to resist aggressive impulses leading to serious property destruction or assaults

INTERPERSONAL MODELS: Models that focus on the interaction of the person with others

INTERPERSONAL RELATIONSHIP: The connection that exists between two or more individuals with observation, assessment, communication, and evaluation skills serving as the foundation

INTERPROFESSIONAL TEAM: Teams consisting of nursing and other pertinent health care disciplines that work together to integrate diverse knowledge and skills in the planning of patient care

INTIMATE PARTNER VIOLENCE: Violence among spouses or domestic partners

INTOXICATION: Reversible substance-specific syndrome with central nervous system response and related behavioral and psychological changes after exposure or ingestion of a substance

INVOLUNTARY COMMITMENT: Involuntary admission; the patient admitted against his or her wishes

JUSTICE: An ethical principle focusing on fair and equal treatment

KANTIANISM: An ethical theory focusing on performing one's duty rather than the "rightness" or "wrongness" of the outcome

KLEPTOMANIA: Recurrent failure to resist the impulse to steal

LEAST RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT: The safest environment with the minimum restrictions on personal liberty necessary to maintain safety of the patient and the public, and to allow the patient to achieve independence in daily living as much as possible

LIBIDO: The driving force behind pleasure-seeking behavior

LIMIT SETTING: Specific parameters for what a person can and cannot do

LINES OF RESISTANCE: Internal factors that an individual uses to help defend against stressors

LINGUISTIC COMPETENCE: Capacity to communicate effectively and convey information in a manner that is easily understood by diverse audiences including persons with limited English proficiency, those who have low literacy skills or are not literate, and individuals with disabilities that impair communication and comprehension

LOBBYING: Any action undertaken by an individual or group to influence the thinking and decision making of an elected official at any level of government

LONELINESS: An unnoticed inability to do anything while alone

MAGICAL THINKING: A belief that thoughts are all powerful

MALIGNANT SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY: The damaging effects of the negative attitudes and prejudices of other people on someone's personhood

MANAGED CARE AGENT: An individual who performs an initial assessment and initiates a treatment plan

MANAGED CARE ORGANIZATION: Agencies providing case management, such as insurance companies

MANIA: Mental disturbances such as elevated mood, grandiosity, difficulty with attention span

MATURATIONAL CRISIS: Crisis that occurs during an individual's normal growth and development, at any point of change

MELANCHOLIA: A term (literal meaning, "black bile") used by Hippocrates to describe sad or dark moods noted in patients with depression

MENTAL ILLNESS: Mental disorders that are diagnosable conditions characterized by abnormalities in cognition, emotion, or mood, or the highest integrative aspects of behavior, such as social interactions or planning of future activities

MICRO-LEVEL THEORIES: Theories that are the least abstract and narrow in scope

MIDDLE-RANGE THEORIES: Theories that are less abstract than grand theories; more concrete

MILIEU MANAGEMENT: The provision and assurance of a therapeutic environment that promotes a healing experience for the patient

MOOD: A person's overall emotional status

NEGLECT: A form of abuse that entails a failure on the part of the caregiver or responsible person to provide for the needs of the dependent person. Neglect can involve physical, emotional, medical, educational, and safety and welfare needs

NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS: A group of disorders in which a person experiences a disruption in areas of mental function

NEUROFIBRILLARY TANGLES: Thick clots of protein that reside inside damaged neurons and are made from a protein called tau

NEUROLEPTIC MALIGNANT SYNDROME: A syndrome where the patient displays muscle rigidity, high fever, unstable blood pressure, diaphroesis, pallor, delirium, tachycardia, tachypnea, and rapid deterioration of mental status

NONCONNECTED COMMITTEES: Political action committee not sponsored or connected to corporations, labor unions, membership organizations, or trade associations

NONMALEFICENCE: A ethical principle focusing on doing no harm

NORMAL LINE OF DEFENSE: A usual response to stressors, represents the individual's usual state of wellness

NURSING PROCESS: A Systematic method of problem solving that provides the nurse with a logical, organized framework from which to deliver nursing care

OBESITY: A body mass index (BMI) greater than or equal to 30 (kg/m^2). *See also* Overweight

OBJECT PERMANENCE: The ability of the child to realize that an object is no longer visible despite the fact that it still exists

OBSESSIONS: Recurrent and persistent thoughts, impulses, or images experienced at some time during the disturbance that are intrusive and inappropriate, causing marked anxiety or distress

OPERANT CONDITIONING: Also called instrumental conditioning; differs from Pavlov's classical conditioning in that it addresses consequences (or responses) and the modification of future behavior based on the (positive or negative) reinforcement, punishment, or extinction associated with the consequence (response)

ORIENTATION PHASE: The first phase of Peplau's nurse–patient relationship that includes the initial contact that the nurse has with the patient

ORIGINAL ENCOUNTER: The first phase of Travelbee's model characterized by first impressions by the nurse of the ill person and by the ill person of the nurse. Both the nurse and the ill person perceive each other in stereotypical or traditional roles

OVERWEIGHT: A body mass index (BMI) greater than or equal to 25 (kg/m^2). *See also* Obesity

PANIC DISORDER: Sudden, intense, and unprovoked feelings of terror and dread

PARAPHILIAS: Sexual disorders involving recurrent, intense sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors involving unusual objects, activities, or situations

PARAPHILIC DISORDERS: They are more characterized by recurrent, intense sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors involving certain activities or situations

PATHOLOGICAL GAMBLING: Persistent maladaptive gambling behavior

PATIENT-CENTERED MENTAL HEALTH CARE: This focuses on empowering the patient or patient's representative to actively participate as a full partner in the health care process

PERSONALITY: Who a person is and how that person behaves, which influences an individual's thoughts, feelings, attitudes, values, motivations, and behaviors

PERSONALITY DISORDERS: A long-term maladaptive way of thinking and behaving that is ingrained and inflexible

PERSONALITY TRAITS: Distinct set of qualities demonstrated over an extended period of time that characterize an individual

PHOBIA: Intense fear about certain objects or situations

PICA: Persistent eating of one or more nonnutritive substances for a period of at least 1 month

PLAY THERAPY: A method of psychotherapy that uses fantasy and symbolic meanings expressed during play as a medium for communicating and understanding a child's behavior

POLICY: In institutions, agencies and governments, policy is the sets of rules, guidelines, procedures, and processes that allow workers or officials to know how to go about conducting their daily tasks

POLITICAL ACTION: Accomplished by people organizing themselves into a group to influence others to make changes

POLITICAL ACTION COMMITTEE: Organization providing a mechanism for collection of funds to push and publicize the need for political change

POLITICS: The process of influencing the allocation of resources, whether these are time, money, energy, services, and so on

POLYPHARMACY: The use of multiple medications beyond the clinically identified needs of the individual, including prescribed medications, over-the-counter medications, and herbal and homeopathic products

POSITIVE PERSON WORK: Means of how one could uphold the personhood of an individual with dementia

PRIMARY PREVENTION: Interventions that delay or avoid the onset of illness

PROCESS GROUPS: A traditional form of psychotherapy where deep feelings, reactions, and thoughts are explored and processed in a structured way

PROCESS RECORDING: The written report of an interaction between the patient and nurse, recorded verbatim to the extent possible and includes both verbal and nonverbal communication of both parties. The content of the interaction is analyzed for meaning and pattern of interaction

PROGRESSIVELY LOWERED STRESS THRESHOLD (PLST): A model that proposes that a person has a stress threshold firmly established by adulthood but which can be temporarily altered during times of illness, or permanently altered during episodes of brain damage such as in dementia

PROTECTIVE FACTOR: A characteristic, variable, or trait that guards against or buffers the effect of risk factors

PSYCHODYNAMIC THEORY: Theories that focus on the unconscious and assert that underlying unconscious or repressed conflicts are responsible for conflicts, disruptions, and disturbances in behavior and personality

PSYCHOEDUCATIONAL GROUPS: Groups designed at imparting specific information about a select topic such as medication

PSYCHOEDUCATIONAL INTERVENTION: Interventions that include a significant educational component

PSYCHOMIMETIC DISORDERS: Medical disorders that mimic psychiatric disorders

PSYCHONEUROIMMUNOLOGY: The study of the connection among the immune, nervous, and endocrine systems

PSYCHOPHARMACOLOGY: Use of drugs to treat mental illness and its symptoms

PSYCHOSIS: Condition involving hallucinations, delusions, or disorganized thoughts, behaviors, or speech

PYROMANIA: Fire-setting for pleasure and gratification

QUALITY OF LIFE: A state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being and not the absence of disease or infirmity

RACE: Biological characteristics and variations within humans, originally consisting of a more or less distinct population with anatomical traits that distinguish that population clearly from others

RAPPORT: Nursing actions that alleviate an ill person's distress; a concern and an active interest in others; a belief in the worth, dignity, uniqueness, and irreplaceability of each individual human being; and an accepting, nonjudgmental approach

REALITY ORIENTATION: A technique used to improve the quality of life of confused older adults by assisting them to gain a more accurate understanding of their surroundings by regularly presenting confused persons with information about time, place, and so on, in an effort to orient them to the here and now

RECOVERY: A process that includes a person's lifestyle, work, and aspirations

RELIGIOSITY: Specific behavioral and social characteristics that reflect religious observance within an identified faith

REMINISCENCE THERAPY: The discussion of past activities, events, and experiences with another person or group of people

RESILIENCE: The process of adapting well in the face of adversity, trauma, tragedy, threats, or even significant sources of stress

RESOLUTION PHASE: Last phase of Peplau's nurse–patient relationship occurring when the patient's needs have been met through the collaborative work of nurse and patient

RESONATING: Connecting to someone's mind, body, and spirit by appealing to a person's emotions

REVERSIBILITY: Concept in which a child realizes that certain things can turn into other things and then back again, such as water and ice

RISK FACTORS: Issues that increase an individual's chance for developing an illness

RUMINATION DISORDER: Repeated regurgitation of food occurring after feeding or eating over a period of at least 1 month

SCHIZOPHRENIA: Diagnostic category within the group of schizophrenia spectrum disorders

SECLUSION: Placement of the patient in a safe room alone

SECONDARY PREVENTION: Interventions focusing on treatment including identifying persons with disorders and standardizing treatment for disorders

SELF: The entire person of an individual; an individual's typical character and temporary behavior; the union of elements (body, emotions, thoughts, and sensations) that constitute the individuality and identity of a person

SELF-AWARENESS: The process of developing an understanding of one's own values, beliefs, thoughts, feelings, reactions, motivations, biases, strengths, and limitations and recognizing their effect on others

SELF-DETERMINATION: Freedom to make decisions without consulting others

SELF-DISCLOSURE: A nurse revealing genuine feelings or personal information about him- or herself

SELF-EFFICACY: The beliefs persons hold about their ability to accomplish something and about what the outcomes will be

SELF-REFLECTION: A process of becoming conscious of largely tacit or intuitive knowledge, motives, and attitudes that underlie a professional interpersonal interaction

SENILE DEMENTIA: Memory loss as part of normal aging

SENSATE FOCUS: A therapy involving a progression of sexual intimacy typically over the course of several weeks, eventually leading to penetration and orgasm

SEPARATE SEGREGATED FUNDS (SSFs): Political committees established and administered by corporations, labor unions, membership organizations, or trade associations

SEROTONIN SYNDROME: A life-threatening situation due to an overactivity of serotonin or disruption in the neurotransmitter's metabolism manifested by fever, sweating, agitation, tachycardia, hypotension, and hyperreflexia

SEXUAL DISORDERS: Also called paraphilias; recurrent, intense sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors involving unusual objects, activities, or situations

SEXUAL DYSFUNCTIONS: Conditions characterized by a disturbance in the processes involved in the sexual response cycle

SEXUAL FUNCTIONING: The actual act of expressing yourself sexually either for pleasure or for reproductive purposes

SEXUAL HEALTH PROMOTION: The integration of the somatic, emotional, intellectual, and social aspects of sexual beings in ways that are positively enriching and that enhance personality, communication, and love

SHAKEN BABY SYNDROME: A form of abusive head trauma that involves violent shaking of an infant or young child, typically under 5 years of age. The violent shaking causes the brain to bounce back against the skull leading to hemorrhaging in the brain, often resulting in severe brain damage or death

SITUATIONAL CRISIS: Crisis that stems from an unanticipated life event that threatens one's sense of self or security

SOCIAL CRISIS: Also called an adventitious crisis; crisis that results from an unexpected and unusual social or environmental catastrophe that can either be natural or man made

SOCIAL JUSTICE: Emphasizing societal equality when allocating resources, providing health care services, and furnishing opportunities, while simultaneously supporting cultural diversity.

SOCIAL LONELINESS: Loneliness due to loss of contact with peers, friends, or groups that have shared and supported the needs of the elderly individual

SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGICAL THEORY: The study of the effect of social variables on individual behavior, attitudes, perceptions, and motives

SOMATIC: Referring to the body

SPECIFIC PHOBIA: Marked and persistent fear and avoidance of a specific object or situation

SPIRITUALITY: Cognitions, values, and beliefs that address ultimate questions about the meaning of life, God, and transcendence, which may or may not be associated with formal religious observance

SPLITTING: Viewing reality in polarized categories

STALKING: Ongoing pursuit of the victim by the perpetrator, presumably to rekindle the relationship

STATUTORY RAPE: Sexual intercourse with an adolescent between the ages of 13 and 18 years

STRESS: An increase in an individual's level of arousal created by a stimulus

STRESS-VULNERABILITY-COPING MODEL: One way of understanding how risk factors are involved with the development of psychiatric-mental health disorders; identification of risk factors according to three categories: biological, personal, and environmental

SUBSTANCE ABUSE: Recurrent substance use that leads to failure to meet obligations, puts the individual in hazardous situations, causes legal problems, or results in social, interpersonal, or professional problems

SUBSTANCE DEPENDENCE: Maladaptive pattern of behavior characterized by progression, tolerance, withdrawal, and preoccupation with the behavior regardless of any consequences, which has the potential to be fatal

SUBSTANCE USE DISORDER: A condition in which the use of one or more substances or behaviors leads to clinically significant impairment or distress.

SUFFERING: Feeling of displeasure that range from simple transitory mental, physical, or spiritual discomfort to extreme anguish, and to those phases beyond anguish, namely, the malignant phase of despairful not caring and the terminal phase of apathetic indifference

SUICIDAL IDEATION: Intruding thoughts of harming one's self

SUICIDE: Taking of one's own life; a behavior, not a disorder; an act of ambivalence often resulting from an affective disorder

SYMBOLIC PLAY: A child's ability to separate behaviors and objects from their actual use and instead use them for play

SYMPATHY: A phase of Travelbee's model occurring when the nurse desires to alleviate the cause of the patient's illness or suffering

SYSTEM: Any group of components sufficiently related to identify patterns of interaction

SYSTEMATIC DESENSITIZATION: A process in which a subject is gradually introduced to the source of a fear or anxiety, over the course of time and under controlled conditions

TELEHEALTH: A psychiatric intervention via telecommunications such as phone or video conferencing

TEMPERAMENT: Innate aspects of personality that determine how a person tends to respond to the world; distinctive behavior involved with activity and adaptation

TERTIARY PREVENTION: Interventions focusing on maintenance including decreasing relapse or recurrence, and providing rehabilitation

THEORY: An organized set of concepts that explains a phenomenon or a set of phenomena

THERAPEUTIC COMMUNICATION: Patient-focused interactive process involving verbal and nonverbal behaviors

THERAPEUTIC GROUPS: Groups used to promote psychological growth, development, and transformation

THERAPEUTIC MILIEU: A climate and environment that is therapeutic and conducive to psychiatric healing within a structured group setting; it encompasses the elements of trust, safety, peer support, and recovery psychoeducation to enable patients to work through psychological issues

THOUGHT DISORDER: Broad term applying to illnesses involving disordered thinking and disturbances in reality orientation and social involvement

TIME-OUT: A situation in which the nurse allows the patient to get away from the area and go to a safe, non-stimulating place to regain emotional control

TOLERANCE: The need for markedly increased amounts of a substance to achieve the desired effect; conversely, a markedly diminished effect with continued use of the same amount of a substance

TRANSFERENCE: A psychodynamic term to describe the patient's emotional response to the health care provider

TRANSINSTITUTIONALIZATION: The transfer of mental health care from mental hospitals to jails and prisons where there are three times more mental health patients than in mental hospitals and where one in six detainees is diagnosed with a mental illness

TRICHOTILLOMANIA: Recurrent pulling out of one's hair for pleasure or tension relief

UTILITARIANISM: A ethical theory in which decisions should be based on producing the best outcome or the greatest happiness for the greatest number of people

VALIDATION THERAPY: A popular psychosocial intervention involving the affirmation of the person's feelings and the adoption of a nonjudgmental approach on the part of the caregiver

VERACITY: An ethical principle focusing on honesty and truthfulness

VOLUNTARY ADMISSION: Patient agrees or consents to admission

VULNERABLE POPULATIONS: Groups of individuals typically defined by race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, geography (urban or rural), gender, age, disability status, and risk status related to sex and gender

WITHDRAWAL: A substance-specific syndrome with significant physical and psychological distress and impairment in areas of functioning that occur after reducing or stopping heavy and prolonged use of the substance

WORRY: A term indicative of symptoms such as anxious misery, apprehensive expectations, and obsessions

ANSWERS TO NCLEX PREP QUESTIONS

Chapter 1
1. c; **2.** d; **3.** b; **4.** c; **5.** a

Chapter 2
1. c; **2.** c; **3.** a; **4.** d; **5.** b; **6.** a

Chapter 3
1. a; **2.** c; **3.** b; **4.** b; **5.** d

Chapter 4
1. c; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** d; **5.** b

Chapter 5
1. b; **2.** d; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** b

Chapter 6
1. a; **2.** c; **3.** d; **4.** c; **5.** a

Chapter 7
1. c; **2.** a; **3.** b; **4.** c; **5.** d

Chapter 8
1. c; **2.** a, b, e; **3.** d; **4.** b; **5.** a

Chapter 9
1. a; **2.** b; **3.** c; **4.** d; **5.** c; **6.** b; **7.** b

Chapter 10
1. c; **2.** a; 3. d; **4.** c; **5.** b

Chapter 11
1. d; **2.** b; **3.** c; **4.** a, b, d; **5.** d; **6.** d; **7.** a

Chapter 12
1. b; **2.** c; **3.** b; **4.** a; **5.** b

Chapter 13
1. c; **2.** b; **3.** d; **4.** b; **5.** a; **6.** b

Chapter 14
1. b, d; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** d; **6.** a

Chapter 15
1. a; **2.** b; **3.** c; **4.** b; **5.** b, c, d

Chapter 16
1. b; **2.** d; **3.** c; **4.** b; **5.** a; **6.** c, e, f

Chapter 17
1. a; **2.** c; **3.** d; **4.** a, b, d, e; **5.** c

Chapter 18
1. b and d; **2.** d; **3.** b; **4.** a; **5.** b, d, c, a

Chapter 19
1. d; **2.** c; **3.** d; **4.** c; **5.** a

Chapter 20
1. c; **2.** c, a, e, d, b; **3.** a; **4.** d; **5.** b

Chapter 21
1. a; **2.** d, b, f, c, e, a; **3.** c; **4.** d; **5.** b

Chapter 22
1. b; **2.** a; **3.** c; **4.** a, b, e; **5.** a, b, c, e

Chapter 23
1. a; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** d; **6.** b

Chapter 24
1. d; **2.** b; **3.** c; **4.** b, c, a, d, f, e, g; **5.** a

Chapter 25
1. d; **2.** b; **3.** a; **4.** c; **5.** b; **6.** a

Chapter 26
1. b; **2.** c; **3.** b, c, d, e; **4.** a; **5.** a, b, c, d, e

Chapter 27
1. c; **2.** b; **3.** b; **4.** d; **5.** a

Chapter 28
1. d; **2.** a; **3.** c; **4.** a, c, b, d; **5.** b; **6.** c

Chapter 29
1. a; **2.** c; **3.** b; **4.** a

NCLEX REVIEW

1. A group of nursing students in a psychiatric-mental health rotation are reviewing information about various theorists associated with self, therapeutic use of self, and the therapeutic relationship. The students demonstrate understanding of the materal when they identify which theorist as having identified three core conditions for a therapeutic relationship?
   - **a.** Hildegard Peplau
   - **b.** Phil Barker
   - **c.** Carl Rogers
   - **d.** Joyce Travelbee

2. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about theories of mental illness. The students demonstrate a need for additional review when they attribute which of the following as a concept identified by Albert Bandura?
   - **a.** Reciprocal determination
   - **b.** Behavior modeling
   - **c.** Cognitive dissonance
   - **d.** Self-efficacy

3. The most important reason why a full physical health assessment is warranted for patients with depressive symptoms is that:
   - **a.** they are less likely to complain about their physical health and may have an undiagnosed medical problem.
   - **b.** physical health complications are likely to arise from antidepressant therapy.
   - **c.** the attention afforded to the patient during the assessment is beneficial in decreasing social isolation.
   - **d.** physiological changes may be the underlying cause of depression, and, if present, must be addressed.

4. Which of the following would the nurse identify as a major issue involved with intermittent explosive disorder?
   - **a.** Fear of discovery
   - **b.** Ineffective health maintenance
   - **c.** Injury
   - **d.** Substance abuse

5. The nurse is providing care to a patient with frontotemporal dementia. The nurse develops a plan of care for this patient, integrating knowledge about which of the following?
   - **a.** The patient has a much shorter life expectancy.
   - **b.** The patient has probably experienced multiple ministrokes.
   - **c.** The patient's memory will remain intact.
   - **d.** The patient is at risk for falls due to muscle rigidity.

6. A nurse is integrating Travelbee's theory of the nurse–patient relationship into the care being provided to a patient. Which of the following is demonstrated when the nurse implements actions to alleviate the ill person's distress?
   - **a.** Emerging identities
   - **b.** Empathy
   - **c.** Sympathy
   - **d.** Rapport

7. When providing care to individuals involved in a community disaster, which of the following would be the priority?
   - **a.** Food and water
   - **b.** Safety
   - **c.** Shelter
   - **d.** Referrals

8. The following are the steps of Bailey's Journey of Grief Model. Place the steps in their proper sequence after the experience of loss.
   - **a.** Searching
   - **b.** Reinvestment
   - **c.** Protest
   - **d.** Reorganization
   - **e.** Despair

9. Influencing means using one's persuasive powers. Psychiatric nurses are well-equipped to participate in the political process because they are skilled at:
   a. Influencing people to change their views, consider new options, have new perspectives and open their minds to new ideas
   b. Developing treatment plans that affect change for the individual
   c. Understanding personalities and personality disorders
   d. Juggling multiple facets of a person's care and tend to think holistically

10. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about systems theory. The students demonstrate the need for additional review when they identify which of the following?
   a. The interactions of a system are viewed in a linear fashion.
   b. The parts of a closed system are isolated from the environment.
   c. A change in one component affects other components.
   d. An open system is dynamic and constantly changing.

11. When describing the concept of self, which of the following would be most appropriate to include?
   a. Discovery of personal identity throughout life
   b. A typically positive process of feedback
   c. The similarities shared with others in the environment
   d. An interaction among two or more individuals

12. A patient states, "I get so anxious sometimes. I just don't know what to do." The nurse responds by saying, "You should try to do some exercise when you start to feel this way. I know it helps me when I get anxious." The nurse is using which of the following?
   a. Clarifying
   b. False reassurance
   c. Validating
   d. Giving advice

13. A patient with schizophrenia is about to start medication therapy with clozapine. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do?
   a. Obtain a baseline white blood cell count
   b. Monitor the patient for high fever
   c. Suggest the use of hard candy to alleviate dry mouth
   d. Assess for cogwheel rigidity

14. Which of the following best depicts a psychiatric-mental health nurse case manager acting in the role of a consultant?
   a. Instructing the patient about the need for adhering to his medication schedule.
   b. Promoting patient access to the least restrictive treatment method.
   c. Recommending possible vocational services that would be appropriate.
   d. Proactively identifying potential barriers that may affect the patient.

15. A nurse is providing an in-service presentation for staff members of a clinic about how the clinic is promoting culturally competent care. Which of the following would the nurse include?
   a. Emphasis on mental health as a separate entity from primary health care
   b. Services that are broad in scope, reflecting general cultural concepts
   c. Services that are focused primarily on the major cultural group
   d. Focus on the help-seeking behaviors of the unique populations being served

16. When applying Maslow's hierarchy of needs, which needs category would be the highest level to be achieved?
   a. Safety
   b. Self-actualization
   c. Love
   d. Self-esteem

17. When describing Travelbee's view of suffering to a class, which of the following would the instructor include?
   a. It is confined to situations involving physical illness.
   b. It is easily controlled through communication.
   c. It can range from simple discomfort to extreme anguish.
   d. It determines how a person will survive.

18. A group of psychiatric-mental health nurses are preparing an inservice presentation about stress and crisis. Which of the following would the group most likely include in the presentation?
   a. Crisis can be a chronic situation due to stress.
   b. An unknown stimulus is responsible for the crisis.
   c. The stress associated with crisis must be real.
   d. Crisis is not considered a mental illness.

19. A mother and her adult daughter are experiencing a conflict. As a result, the mother turns to her sister and focuses her attention on her. The adult daughter then begins to focus on her work role. Applying the Bowen Family Systems Model, which of the following is present?
   a. Differentiation of self
   b. Emotional triangle
   c. Multigenerational transmission
   d. Corrective recapitulation of the primary family group

20. A nurse assesses a patient and determines that the patient is in the alarm stage of responding to stress. Which of the following would the nurse most likely assess?
   a. Pupil constriction
   b. Decrease in heart rate
   c. Rapid respirations
   d. Dry skin

21. A nursing instructor is developing a class for a group of students about the theories of mental health and illness. When gathering information for a discussion on cognitive theories, which of the following would the instructor most likely include?

- **a.** Development of psychoanalytic theory
- **b.** Thorndike
- **c.** Seligman
- **d.** Beck
- **e.** Bandura

22. A nursing instructor is preparing a class for a group of students about case management in psychiatric-mental health nursing. Which of the following would the instructor most likely include about psychiatric-mental health case management?

- **a.** It is a method of care delivery that is unique to psychiatric-mental health nursing.
- **b.** It is a health care financing strategy aimed at reducing costs.
- **c.** It involves multidisciplinary collaboration to achieve outcomes.
- **d.** It involves reducing fragmentation of care during illness episodes.

23. A patient has been severely depressed and expressing suicidal thoughts. She was started on antidepressant medication four days ago. She is now more energized and communicative. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do?

- **a.** Allow the patient to have unsupervised passes to her home.
- **b.** Encourage the patient to participate in group activities.
- **c.** Increase vigilance with the patient's suicidal precautions.
- **d.** Recognize that the patient's suicidal potential has decreased.

24. Travelbee identifies three major concepts for her theory. Which concept provides the nurse with the most powerful intervention?

- **a.** Hope
- **b.** Suffering
- **c.** Human being
- **d.** Empathy

25. A patient is being admitted to the inpatient unit with a diagnosis of borderline personality disorder. When preparing to assess this patient, which of the following would the nurse need to keep in mind?

- **a.** The patient is likely to demonstrate behaviors to get attention.
- **b.** The patient's behavior typically reflects a need to prevent abandonment.
- **c.** The patient most likely has a history of involvement with law enforcement.
- **d.** The patient will exhibit an extreme suspiciousness about others.

26. A psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) is working with patients with psychiatric-mental health disorders who are incarcerated. The nurse is engaging in which of the following?

- **a.** Forensic nursing
- **b.** Disaster response
- **c.** Case management
- **d.** Telehealth

27. A patient is brought to the emergency department by an emergency medical team because the patient was behaving violently. When talking with the patient, the nurse notices that he suddenly shifts the conversation from one topic to another but the topics are completely unrelated. The nurse would document this finding as which of the following?

- **a.** Delusion
- **b.** Hallucination
- **c.** Neologism
- **d.** Loose association

28. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about substance abuse in adolescence. The students demonstrate an understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as the most commonly abused substance in adolescence?

- **a.** Cocaine
- **b.** Cannabis
- **c.** Alcohol
- **d.** Amphetamines

29. A patient with an anxiety disorder is asked to imagine specific aspects of the feared situation while engaged in relaxation. The nurse identifies this as which of the following?

- **a.** Flooding
- **b.** Systematic desensitization
- **c.** In vivo exposure
- **d.** Implosion therapy

30. After reviewing information related to the symptoms of schizophrenia, a group of nursing students indicate the need for additional review when they identify which of the following as a positive symptom?

- **a.** Delusion
- **b.** Hallucination
- **c.** Affective flattening
- **d.** Echolalia

31. When engaging in critical thinking, the psychiatric-mental health nurse draws a reasonable conclusion after looking at the evidence and proposing alternatives. The nurse is using which cognitive skill?

- **a.** Evaluation
- **b.** Explanation
- **c.** Interpretation
- **d.** Inference

32. The psychiatric-mental health nurse is using the Cut-down, Annoyed, Guilty and Eye-opener (CAGE) assessment tool to screen for alcohol abuse. Which question would the nurse ask first?

- **a.** "Have you ever had a drink first thing in the morning to steady your nerves?"
- **b.** "Have people annoyed you by criticizing your drinking?"
- **c.** "Have you ever felt you should cut down on your drinking?"
- **d.** "Have you ever felt bad or guilty about your drinking?"

33. The nurse is preparing to assess a patient with acute psychosis for the first time. Which of the following would be a priority?

- **a.** Providing a gentle touch to calm the patient
- **b.** Taking as long as necessary to gather all the information
- **c.** Focusing on the type of delusions the patient is experiencing
- **d.** Assessing for indications of suicidal ideation

34. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess in a patient who is diagnosed with an obsessive-compulsive personality disorder?

- **a.** Preoccupation with details
- **b.** Suspiciousness of others
- **c.** Exaggerated sense of self-importance
- **d.** Unwillingness to get involved with others

35. During an interpersonal relationship, a patient identifies that a nurse reminds him of his grandmother and begins to respond to the nurse as he would his grandmother. The nurse recognizes this as which of the following?

- **a.** Boundary testing
- **b.** Transference
- **c.** Boundary crossing
- **d.** Counter-transference

36. A nursing instructor is preparing a class on anxiety disorders and the biological influences associated with this group of illnesses. Which of the following would the instructor include as a primary neurotransmitter involved in the anxiety response?

- **a.** Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)
- **b.** Serotonin
- **c.** Dopamine
- **d.** Norepinephrine

37. Which statement by a patient with bipolar disorder would indicate the need for additional education about his prescribed lithium carbonate therapy? "I will:

- **a.** drink about 2 liters of liquids daily."
- **b.** restrict my intake of salt."
- **c.** take my medications with food."
- **d.** have my blood drawn like the doctor ordered."

38. A psychiatric-mental health patient requires level two case management services. Which of the following most likely would be involved?

- **a.** Crisis prevention
- **b.** Extensive services
- **c.** Crisis management
- **d.** Supportive services

39. A patient with alcohol intoxication and a blood alcohol level of 190 mg percent is exhibiting signs of withdrawal. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Restlessness
- **b.** Visible hand trembling
- **c.** Hypersensitivity to light
- **d.** Auditory hallucinations
- **e.** Pulse rate less than 89 beats per minute
- **f.** Seizures

40. After teaching a group of students about housing services along the continuum of care, the instructor determines that the students need additional teaching when they identify which of the following as an example?

- **a.** Halfway house
- **b.** Psychiatric home care
- **c.** Supervised apartment
- **d.** Therapeutic foster care

41. A group of nursing students are reviewing ethical principles and theories. They demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify utilitarianism as which of the following?

- **a.** Honesty
- **b.** Fair and equal treatment
- **c.** Doing no harm
- **d.** Greater good

42. A psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) is engaged in advocacy for patients of a local clinic. The nurse is employing which ethical principle?

- **a.** Beneficence
- **b.** Fidelity
- **c.** Kantianism
- **d.** Veracity

43. A patient with anorexia nervosa disorder engages in binge eating and purging behaviors. Which of the following would the patient be least likely to use for purging?

- **a.** Diuretics
- **b.** Enemas
- **c.** Laxatives
- **d.** Antiemetics

44. A group of nursing students are reviewing the various risk factors associated with psychiatric-mental health disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as a family risk factor?

- **a.** Poverty
- **b.** High crime rate
- **c.** Placement in foster care
- **d.** Temperament

45. A nurse is assessing a patient with an eating disorder for complications. Which of the following might the nurse assess?

- **a.** Hypertension
- **b.** Increased muscle strength
- **c.** Cold intolerance
- **d.** Tachycardia

46. During a group session, the group leader notices that a member is boasting about his accomplishments in an effort to get the group to focus on him rather than focus on the task of the group. The leader would identify this behavior as reflecting which role?

- **a.** Encourager
- **b.** Energizer
- **c.** Recognition seeker
- **d.** Standard setter

47. When integrating critical thinking, clinical decision making, the interpersonal relationship, and the nursing process, which of the following would be of primary importance?

- **a.** Nurse's self-awareness
- **b.** Setting for care
- **c.** Patient's needs
- **d.** Achievement of outcomes

48. A nurse is interviewing an adolescent for indications of suicidal ideation. Which patient statement would be a cause for concern?

- **a.** "Don't worry, I'm not going to be bothering anyone anymore."
- **b.** "Sometimes I feel like my parents are dictators."
- **c.** "I used to like to draw, but I've found music is more relaxing."
- **d.** "School is okay but I'd much rather play sports."

49. The same student nursing government organization (SNGO) meets to decide on its first approach to taking political action. They agree to lobby select administrators for the changes they feel are important. How would they initially be most effective?

- **a.** Buy radio time to get their message across.
- **b.** Put up flyers around the campus.
- **c.** Meet with the administrators individually.
- **d.** Send out college wide emails.

50. A group of nursing students are reviewing information about Peplau's phases of the nurse–patient relationship and how they apply to the nursing process. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of Peplau's phases as correlating to the implementation step of the nursing process?

- **a.** Orientation
- **b.** Identification
- **c.** Exploitation
- **d.** Resolution

51. The nurse is reviewing the medical record of a patient, that reveals that the patient experiences intense sexual arousal when being bound and humiliated. The nurse interprets this information as characteristic of which of the following?

- **a.** Sexual masochism
- **b.** Sexual sadism
- **c.** Frotteurism
- **d.** Fetishism

52. The psychiatric-mental health nurse is working with a patient diagnosed with alcohol abuse and is describing the 12-step program of Alcoholics Anonymous. Which of the following would the nurse include?

- **a.** Participants are selected based on their ability to attend meetings.
- **b.** The desire to quit drinking is the underlying concept.
- **c.** Sponsors are selected by the leader of the group meeting.
- **d.** Sobriety requires that the person focus on future events.

53. A group is in the orientation phase of development. The group facilitator would be involved with which of the following?

- **a.** Keeping the group on task
- **b.** Clarifying what is happening in the group
- **c.** Reviewing group accomplishments
- **d.** Describing group expectations

54. A nurse is observing the behavior of an 18-month-old child. The child is playing with a toy that involves placing different shaped blocks into the appropriately shaped opening. The child is attempting to place a round block into the round hole. The nurse interprets this as indicating which of the following?

- **a.** Circular reaction
- **b.** Object permanence
- **c.** Symbolic play
- **d.** Magical thinking

55. A student nursing government organization (SNGO) has become aware of an important issue needing addressed at the college. The SNGO decides that they can address the issue through political action because:

- **a.** It is a group of people organizing themselves to influence others to make changes.
- **b.** They can threaten a lawsuit if their demands are not met.
- **c.** They want to proceed cautiously to avoid upseting the administration.
- **d.** They do not want to damage their future careers as nurses.

56. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is a member of several groups. Which of the following would be considered an informal group?

- **a.** Treatment team
- **b.** Specialty nursing association
- **c.** Friends from work
- **d.** Nurses working on the unit

57. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about abuse and violence. Which of the following would the nurse most likely include?

- **a.** Abuse is primarily seen in lower socioeconomic areas where poverty is rampant.
- **b.** Children typically are around the ages of 8 to 10 years when they suffer abuse.
- **c.** Abuse indicates an underlying mental health disorder that is out of control.
- **d.** An abuser frequently uses more than one method to achieve the goal.

58. A psychiatric-mental health nurse case manager is reviewing a patient's assessment information and determines that more information is needed to determine why the patient stopped coming to the clinic for his medication prescription. The nurse is demonstrating which of the following?

- **a.** Communication
- **b.** Critical thinking
- **c.** Negotiation
- **d.** Collaboration

59. During a group session, a member states that she feels embarrassed about being arrested for trying to steal clothing from a department store. Several other group members then share similar feelings about their involvement with law enforcement, which then leads to a discussion about thinking about consequences and learning from the experience. The leader interprets this interaction as reflecting which curative factor?

- **a.** Instillation of hope
- **b.** Universality
- **c.** Altruism
- **d.** Imitative behavior

60. A nursing instructor is creating a teaching plan for a class about critical thinking. Which of the following would the instructor be least likely to include as a necessary cognitive skill?

- **a.** Analysis
- **b.** Creativity
- **c.** Inference
- **d.** Self-regulation

61. A patient is receiving a second-generation antipsychotic agent. Which of the following might this be?

- **a.** Chlorpromazine
- **b.** Haloperidol
- **c.** Fluphenazine
- **d.** Aripiprazole

62. A patient with panic disorder is prescribed venlafaxine. The nurse identifies this agent as which of the following?

- **a.** Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI)
- **b.** Serotonin/norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor (SNRI)
- **c.** Benzodiazepine
- **d.** Atypical antipsychotic

63. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is working as a case manager and has a caseload of 120 patients. The nurse is responsible for assessing the patients' needs and arranging for services. The nurse is functioning within which case management model?

- **a.** Broker case management
- **b.** Clinical case management
- **c.** Intensive case management
- **d.** Continuum of care

64. The following tasks reflect the stages of growth and development as identified by Sullivan. Place them in the order in which they would occur beginning with infancy.

- **a.** Self-identity development
- **b.** Delayed gratification
- **c.** Same-sex relationships
- **d.** Oral gratification
- **e.** Opposite-sex relationships
- **f.** Peer relationships

65. The nurse is assessing a patient in whom pathological gambling is suspected. Which statement(s) would the nurse interpret as reflecting the diagnostic criteria for this condition? Select all that apply.

- **a.** "I find myself going back to the casino the next day to get even."
- **b.** "I started out with small amounts, but now I'm using half of my paycheck."
- **c.** "I might bet $5 on a football pool every so often."
- **d.** "I'm going to hit the jackpot again, like I did once before."
- **e.** "I went to the racetrack after I told my wife I had to work late."

66. A nurse is providing primary prevention to a local community group about psychiatric-mental health disorders. Which of the following would the nurse include as a protective factor? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Flexibility
- **b.** High intelligence
- **c.** Limited social relationships
- **d.** Absence of recreational activities
- **e.** Adequate economic resources

67. The nurse is conducting an interview with a patient diagnosed with schizophrenia. Throughout the conversation, the patient responds to questions and statements with, "okay." The nurse interprets this as reflecting which of the following?

- **a.** Affective flattening
- **b.** Alogia
- **c.** Avolition
- **d.** Anhedonia

68. The psychiatric nurse understands that dysthymia differs from a major depression episode in that dysthymia:

- **a.** Typically has an acute onset.
- **b.** Involves delusional thinking.
- **c.** Is a chronic low-level depression.
- **d.** Does not include suicidal ideation.

69. A nurse working at a homeless shelter in a large downtown area should be aware that there are many factors that contribute to homelessness of the mentally ill. Which of the following would the nurse identify as potentially contributing to homelessness? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Substance abuse
- **b.** Poverty
- **c.** Inadequate housing
- **d.** Low-paying jobs
- **e.** Rise in public assistance
- **f.** Affordable health care

70. While interacting with a patient, the patient says, "How about we meet later after you are done with work and go grab a cup of coffee and talk?" Which response by the nurse would be most appropriate?

- **a.** "That sounds like fun but I'm busy after work."
- **b.** "Remember, I'm here as a professional to help you."
- **c.** "Don't be silly. I can't meet you after work."
- **d.** "Okay, but this needs to be our secret."

71. When assessing an older adult for suspected abuse, the nurse interviews the victim together with the caregiver based on which rationale?

- **a.** To evaluate the patient and caregiver relationship
- **b.** To identify inconsistencies in their statements
- **c.** To confirm the patient's level of alertness
- **d.** To determine the need for adult protective services

72. A situation with a patient is escalating and the staff determines that restraints are necessary. Which of the following would occur first?

- **a.** Explaining that the staff is there to help
- **b.** Approaching the patient slowly as a unit
- **c.** Taking down the patient to apply the restraints
- **d.** Obtaining an order for the restraints

73. A group of nursing students is reviewing the different types of drugs that may be used to treat dementia of the Alzheimer's type. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following as an example of a cholinesterase inhibitor?

- **a.** Donepezil
- **b.** Rivastigmine
- **c.** Galantamine
- **d.** Atorvastatin

74. A nurse is working in an area that has a high concentration of Asian immigrants and is developing a plan to minimize possible risk factors for poor mental health. Which of the following would the nurse least likely address?

- **a.** Social isolation
- **b.** Interaction with new culture
- **c.** Feelings of persecution
- **d.** Stress of acculturation

75. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about the interpersonal theorists, Peplau and Travelbee. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which person as a key influence on Peplau?

- **a.** Harry Sullivan
- **b.** Victor Frankl
- **c.** Ida Orlando
- **d.** Sigmund Freud

76. The nurse is assessing an elderly patient. The nurse determines that the patient is at risk for suicide based on which of the following? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Female gender
- **b.** Living alone
- **c.** History of diabetes, arthritis, and stroke
- **d.** Polypharmacy
- **e.** Recent death of spouse

77. When describing the possibility of developing a psychiatric-mental health disorder related to a medical condition, which disorder would the nurse identify as most common and problematic?

- **a.** Schizophrenia
- **b.** Acute stress disorder
- **c.** Personality disorder
- **d.** Depression

78. A group of students are reviewing information about the impact of culture, race, and ethnicity on mental health and mental health care delivery. The students demonstrate understanding when they identify which of the following as reflecting cognitive styles?

- **a.** Methods for processing information
- **b.** Information denoting evidence for change
- **c.** Primary locus of decision making
- **d.** Sources of anxiety and anxiety reduction

79. A group of nursing students are reviewing information related to impulse control disorders. The students demonstrate an understanding of the information when they identify which behavior as characteristic of trichotillomania?

- **a.** Fire setting
- **b.** Stealing
- **c.** Pulling out of hair
- **d.** Property destruction

80. A nurse is preparing a presentation about polypharmacy to a local church group of seniors. Which of the following would the nurse least likely include as a common unresolved issue contributing to this problem?

- **a.** Depression
- **b.** Fear
- **c.** Anxiety
- **d.** Pain

81. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about health care disparities and minorities. The nurse uses the African American population as an example. Which of the following would the nurse include in the presentation?

- **a.** They are more likely to receive a diagnosis for mental health conditions.
- **b.** The rates for suicide are lower in this population.
- **c.** They tend to report physical complaints related to mental illness.
- **d.** Lower doses of psychotropic medications are commonly prescribed.

82. The nurse is developing a teaching plan for a patient with an impulse control disorder. The nurse integrates knowledge of which of the following in this plan?

- **a.** An increase in tension leads to an increase in arousal.
- **b.** The act immediately leads to feelings of regret.
- **c.** A need for pleasure is the driving force for acting.
- **d.** Increased arousal leads to a rise in stress.

83. When describing vulnerable populations to a group of students, which of the following would the nursing instructor include?

- **a.** They typically experience increased risks for depression.
- **b.** Advocacy is a primary nursing role.
- **c.** The patient is usually completely dependent on the nurse.
- **d.** Children are more vulnerable than the elderly.

84. In planning care for a patient newly admitted with severe major depressive disorder, the primary nursing intervention would be to:

- **a.** Avoid a stressful situation by asking for the patient's participation in the plan.
- **b.** Teach the patient about relapse and the signs and symptoms of mania.
- **c.** Assess if the patient has more than two weeks worth of medication.
- **d.** Evaluate the patient's cognitive functioning and ability to participate in planning care.

85. A nurse is preparing an in-service presentation about sexual dysfunction for a group of nurses involved in a continuing education course. As part of the presentation, the nurse is planning to describe the classic male sexual response cycle. Place the phases of the cycle in the order in which the nurse would present the information.

- **a.** Resolution
- **b.** Desire
- **c.** Orgasm
- **d.** Excitement

86. A patient who is exhibiting acute psychotic symptoms is determined to be of threat to himself. Which level of care would be most appropriate for the patient to receive?

- **a.** Acute inpatient care
- **b.** Partial hospitalization
- **c.** Psychiatric emergency care
- **d.** Residential services

87. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a senior citizen group about stresses that may affect their physical and mental health. Which of the following would the nurse least likely include as an effect of stress?

- **a.** Increased physiologic aging
- **b.** Enhanced immune function
- **c.** Slowing of normal mental changes
- **d.** Increased risk for depression

88. When describing the results of integrating interpersonal models in psychiatric-mental health nursing, which of the following would be least appropriate to include?

- **a.** Therapeutic communication
- **b.** Milieu management
- **c.** Psychopharmacology
- **d.** Process groups

89. While performing a routine health check-up on a teenager who is 5 feet tall and 100 lbs, a nurse begins to suspect that a patient may be experiencing an eating disorder. Which statement by the patient would lead the nurse to suspect this?

- **a.** "Look at me, look at how fat I am."
- **b.** "My last period was about 6 weeks ago."
- **c.** "I just lost 5 pounds so I could fit into my prom dress."
- **d.** "I usually like to swim about 3 times a week."

90. A nursing instructor is preparing a class discussion about the development of mental health care over time. Which of the following would the instructor include as occurring first?

- **a.** Development of psychoanalytic theory
- **b.** Establishment of the National Institute of Mental Health
- **c.** Use of medical treatments such as bloodletting and immobilization
- **d.** Emphasis on supportive, sympathetic care in a clean, quiet environment

91. The nurse is working with the parents of a child with a mental health problem in developing a system of rewards and punishments for the child's behavior. The nurse is demonstrating integration of which theorist?

- **a.** Freud
- **b.** Pavlov
- **c.** Skinner
- **d.** Erikson

92. A patient is being referred for a Level 2 ambulatory behavioral health care service. Which of the following might the nurse expect to be used?

- **a.** Partial hospitalization program
- **b.** Assertive community treatment
- **c.** Day treatment program
- **d.** Clubhouse program

93. A nursing instructor is preparing a class lecture about impulse control disorder. When describing kleptomania, which of the following would the instructor include?

- **a.** The patient needs the item for personal use.
- **b.** The item is too expensive for the patient to purchase.
- **c.** The object reflects an expression of anger.
- **d.** The person lacks a need for the object.

94. A patient with anorexia is admitted to the in-patient facility because of cardiovascular problems. The patient's minimal normal acceptable weight is 125 pounds. Which weight would the nurse interpret as indicative of anorexia?

- **a.** 118 pounds
- **b.** 112 pounds
- **c.** 107 pounds
- **d.** 100 pounds

95. A nurse is working with a patient diagnosed with dementia to foster the patient's personhood. Which of the following would be appropriate to use? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Intimidation
- **b.** Labeling
- **c.** Acceptance
- **d.** Objectification
- **e.** Collaboration
- **f.** Recognition

96. When describing physical boundaries to a group of nursing students, which of the following would the instructor use as an example of this type of boundary?

- **a.** Feelings
- **b.** Choices
- **c.** Touching
- **d.** Spirituality

97. A patient with dementia of the Alzheimer's type is demonstrating increasing problems with wandering. In addition, the patient's caregiver reports that the patient has wandered into the kitchen during the night and left the stove on several times over the past few weeks. Which of the following would be a priority nursing diagnosis for this patient?

- **a.** Chronic confusion related to effects of dementia
- **b.** Risk for injury related to increased wandering
- **c.** Deficient knowledge related to effects of illness
- **d.** Disturbed sleep pattern related to frequent nighttime awakenings

98. A nurse is planning to implement complementary and alternative medicine therapies with a patient. In which of the following would the nurse include energy biofield therapies?

- **a.** Meditation
- **b.** Visualization
- **c.** Aromatherapy
- **d.** Acupuncture

99. When applying the Power and Control Wheel to evaluate a victimizer's behavior, which of the following would indicate intimidation?

- **a.** Calling the victim names
- **b.** Making the victim feel guilty
- **c.** Destroying property
- **d.** Controlling who the victim talks to

100. A patient is diagnosed with schizophrenia, catatonic type. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Stereotyped movements
- **b.** Mutism
- **c.** Absence of delusions
- **d.** Echopraxia
- **e.** Odd beliefs

101. A patient is brought to the emergency department by a friend who states, "He's been in a lot of pain and has been using oxycodone quite a bit lately." Which of the following would lead the nurse to suspect that the patient is experiencing intoxication?

- **a.** Tachycardia
- **b.** Pinpoint pupils
- **c.** Rhinorrhea
- **d.** Gooseflesh

102. A psychiatric-mental health nurse identifies a nursing diagnosis of defensive coping for a patient being treated for alcohol intoxication. Which statement would support this diagnosis?

- **a.** "I really just drink when my life gets really stressful."
- **b.** "My employer said I might lose my job if things don't change."
- **c.** "I just can't do anything right, I'm such a failure."
- **d.** "My family just seems to be falling apart lately."

103. During the orientation phase of the nurse–patient relationship, the nurse focuses communication on which of the following?

- **a.** Reason for the patient seeking help
- **b.** The patient as a whole
- **c.** Expected routines
- **d.** Time frame for interaction

104. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local senior citizen group about dementia and delirium. When describing delirium, which of the following would the nurse include?

- **a.** It occurs gradually over a period of time.
- **b.** It is usually due to an underlying medical condition.
- **c.** It requires medication to slow its progression.
- **d.** It remains fairly constant throughout the day.

105. A group of nurses in the emergency department (ED) are discussing a patient who has been admitted almost every holiday with suicide ideation. One of the nurses stated that the patient is not serious about hurting himself and should not be admitted the next time he comes in. Which response by the charge nurse would be most appropriate?

- **a.** "Telling him we cannot see him may be the answer to stop this behavior."
- **b.** "Each episode must be individually evaluated and all options explored."
- **c.** "He obviously needs support that he is not getting elsewhere."
- **d.** "We should avoid showing any emotion to him the next time he comes in."

106. A group of nursing students are reviewing the different classes of antidepressants. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify sertraline as exerting its action on which neurotransmitter?

- **a.** Serotonin
- **b.** Dopamine
- **c.** Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)
- **d.** Norepinephrine

107. When assessing a patient with dyspareunia, which of the following would the nurse expect the patient to report?

- **a.** Inability to attain adequate lubrication in response to sexual excitement
- **b.** Recurrent pain in the genital area with sexual intercourse
- **c.** A deficient last of desire for sexual activity
- **d.** An avoidance for engaging in sexual activity

108. A nursing instructor is preparing a teaching plan for a class about nursing theories. Which of the following would the instructor include when describing the Neuman Systems Model?

- **a.** The person is an energy field continually interacting with the environment.
- **b.** Each patient has a central core that includes survival factors common to all.
- **c.** A proper environment is necessary to promote the patient's reparative powers.
- **d.** The nurse and patient engage in an interpersonal process to reach a desired goal.

109. After engaging in an argument with a friend at work, a person becomes angry. Moments later, on returning to his or her office, he punches the wall. The person is demonstrating which defense mechanism?

- **a.** Suppression
- **b.** Rationalization
- **c.** Denial
- **d.** Displacement

110. A group of students are reviewing information about the classification of addictive disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which of the following as a substance use disorder?

- **a.** Substance dependence
- **b.** Substance-induced disorder
- **c.** Susbstance intoxication
- **d.** Substance withdrawal

111. The following are phases associated with a crisis. Which of the following occurs first?

- **a.** Distress occurs as every method of coping fails.
- **b.** Anxiety increases as past coping methods are ineffective.
- **c.** Exposure to a stressor leads to use of past coping mechanisms.
- **d.** New and different coping strategies are tried.

112. An elderly patient comes to the clinic complaining of difficulty sleeping, stating,"It just started about a week or so ago."When obtaining the patient's history, which of the following would the nurse identify as potentially contributing to the patient's complaint?

- **a.** Hypertensive agent added to his medications
- **b.** History of arthritis
- **c.** Dinner usually consumed at 5:30 p.m.
- **d.** Routine bedtime at 11:00 p.m.

113. After teaching a group of students about risk and protective factors, the nursing instructor determines that additional teaching is needed when the students state which of the following about resilience?

- **a.** "Everyone is born with resilience but not everybody uses it."
- **b.** "It is a protective factor that helps balance out the risk factors."
- **c.** "Individuals need time to develop resilience."
- **d.** "Resilience promotes better coping with trauma or stress."

114. A nurse is in the resolution phase of the interpersonal relationship with a patient. The nurse would also be engaged in which step of the nursing process?

- **a.** Assessment
- **b.** Planning
- **c.** Implementation
- **d.** Evaluation

115. An elderly patient is experiencing social loneliness. Which of the following most likely would be involved?

- **a.** Loss of contact
- **b.** Loss of intimacy
- **c.** Loss of independence
- **d.** Loss of support

116. A nurse breaches a patient's confidentiality and shares this confidential information in writing. The nurse would most likely be charged with which of the following?

- **a.** Slander
- **b.** Medical battery
- **c.** Libel
- **d.** Assault

117. When engaging in critical thinking, which of the following would the nurse ask first?

- **a.** "What would be the best course of action?"
- **b.** "What is the issue at hand?"
- **c.** "What could have been missed?"
- **d.** "What factors might be affecting the patient?"

118. A group of nursing students is reviewing class information about the different types of personality disorders. The students demonstrate understanding of this information when they identify which of the following as a Cluster A personality disorder? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Borderline personality disorder
- **b.** Paranoid personality disorder
- **c.** Avoidant personality disorder
- **d.** Schizoid personality disorder
- **e.** Narcissistic personality disorder
- **f.** Antisocial personality disorder

119. An older adult patient is admitted to the acute care facility for treatment of bacterial pneumonia for which the patient is receiving oxygen therapy and antibiotics. When assessing the patient, the nurse notes that the patient has suddenly become confused and agitated and is having increasing difficulty staying focused. The nurse suspects which of the following?

- **a.** Depression
- **b.** Dementia
- **c.** Delirium
- **d.** Generalized anxiety disorder

120. A patient with posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is exhibiting hypervigilence. Which statement would the nurse interpret as indicating this?

- **a.** "I'm having trouble sleeping at night."
- **b.** "I've been really irritable and angry."
- **c.** "I always have to watch my back."
- **d.** "I just can't seem to relax."

121. A group of students are reviewing medications used to treat depression in the older adult. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which agent as approved for use in the elderly?

- **a.** Escitalopram
- **b.** Paroxetine
- **c.** Duloxetine
- **d.** Aripiprazole

122. A child is diagnosed with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). When reviewing the child's history, which of the following would the nurse expect to find?

- **a.** Exposure to a traumatic event
- **b.** Difficulty engaging in quiet leisure activities
- **c.** Frequent losses of temper
- **d.** Previous diagnosis of oppositional defiant disorder

123. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about adjustment disorders in children. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following as a possible stressor?

- **a.** Witness to the death of a parent
- **b.** Moving away of a close friend
- **c.** Parental divorce
- **d.** Bullying by a classmate

124. A group of students are reviewing information related to the variables associated with the levels of ambulatory behavioral care. The students demonstrate understanding when they identify which of the following as a service variable?

- **a.** Risk/dangerousness
- **b.** Social system support
- **c.** Level of functioning
- **d.** Milieu

125. The following are phases identified by the model proposed by the anti-violence movement in Oregon. Place them in the proper sequence from beginning to end.

- **a.** Setup
- **b.** Fantasy
- **c.** Planning
- **d.** Abuse
- **e.** Rationalize
- **f.** Guilt
- **g.** Normal

126. Which of the following patients would be least likely to require involuntary commitment?

- **a.** Patient convicted of substance abuse required to undergo treatment
- **b.** Patient who is actively experiencing suicidal ideation
- **c.** Patient with depression who is in need of treatment
- **d.** Patient deteriorating from a severe, persistent mental illness

127. The following are examples of therapy that may be used with a patient experiencing a psychiatric-mental health problem. Place the treatments in the proper order based on the concept of the least restrictive environment.

- **a.** Talk therapy
- **b.** Involuntary medication administration
- **c.** Behavioral therapy
- **d.** Seclusion

128. A nurse is interviewing a patient who came to the area after she fled her home country, during a political revolution. When assessing the patient, the nurse notes that the patient has adopted several of the local customs of the area. The nurse identifies this as which of the following?

- **a.** Ethnicity
- **b.** Enculturation
- **c.** Spirituality
- **d.** Religiosity

129. A patient comes to the clinic for a routine checkup and is to have laboratory testing completed. During the assessment, the patient reveals that he is afraid of needles and begins to hyperventilate. The patient also becomes diaphoretic and complains of a lump in his throat. The nurse would suspect which of the following?

- **a.** Generalized anxiety disorder
- **b.** Posttraumatic stress disorder
- **c.** Acute stress disorder
- **d.** Specific phobia

130. Applying Freud's theory, which of the following stages would occur first in the development of personality?

- **a.** Oral
- **b.** Phallic
- **c.** Latency
- **d.** Anal

131. A patient is experiencing heroin withdrawal and develops hypertension. Which of the following would the nurse expect to administer?

- **a.** Phenobarbital
- **b.** Diazepam
- **c.** Clonidine
- **d.** Acamprosate

132. A nurse is working in the community and is preparing a presentation for a local group of parents about child abuse. Which of the following would the nurse most likely include in this presentation?

- **a.** Physicians are the individuals responsible for reporting suspected child abuse.
- **b.** Child abuse primarily involves emotional and sexual abuse.
- **c.** The perpetrator is commonly someone the child knows.
- **d.** When children do reveal abuse, they experience revictimization.

133. The three primary concerns targeted by health care reform are:

- **a.** Source, prevention, and waste
- **b.** Quality, access, and value
- **c.** Limitation, categorization, and chronicity
- **d.** Ageism, comprehensiveness, and expense

134. When applying the therapeutic use of self during assessment, which of the following would be important for the nurse to demonstrate? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Genuineness
- **b.** Respect
- **c.** Empathy
- **d.** Adherence to rigid rules
- **e.** Honesty

135. A group of students are reviewing information about the numerous issues that impact the mental health of physically ill patients. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following?

- **a.** Unhealthy lifestyle practices as an adult can be traced to negative events in childhood.
- **b.** Grief is an abnormal response that interferes with a person's ability to heal.
- **c.** Neuropeptides and their actions are addressed with psychoneuroimmunology.
- **d.** Pain causes increased secretion of cortisol, which disrupts the immune system.

136. The roots of theory building and policy generation are very similar because:

- **a.** Both can be a very politically influenced.
- **b.** There are multiple levels, each with a different implication.
- **c.** Neither can ever be proven as fact.
- **d.** Both start with observation of repeated instances of things that are puzzling or processes that seem to be wrong or in need of repair.

137. The nurse is assessing a patient and determines that the patient is experiencing a normal grief response based on which of the following?

- **a.** Openly expresses anger
- **b.** Nonintact reality testing
- **c.** Persistent sleeping problems
- **d.** Consistently dysphoric

138. A psychiatric-mental health nurse (PMHN) is preparing a presentation for a group of student nurses about psychiatric-mental health nursing. Which statement would the nurse include in the presentation about this specialty?

- **a.** A PMHN needs to obtain a graduate level degree for practice.
- **b.** Advanced practice PMHNs can engage in psychotherapy.
- **c.** Basic level PMHNs mainly focus on the patient's ability to function.
- **d.** PMHNs primarily work in acute in-patient settings.

139. The nurse is implementing validation therapy with a patient diagnosed with dementia of the Alzheimer's type. Which of the following would the nurse do?

- **a.** Confirm the patient's version of reality
- **b.** Place cards on the bathroom and bedroom doors
- **c.** Repeatedly tell the patient what day it is
- **d.** Have the patient discuss past events

140. A patient with addiction is undergoing treatment that focuses on redirecting dysfunctional thought processes. The patient is involved in which of the following?

- **a.** Motivational enhancement therapy
- **b.** Cognitive behavioral therapy
- **c.** Mindfulnesss
- **d.** Community reinforcement

141. A group of students are reviewing information about eating disorders. The students demonstrate an understanding of the topic when they identify which of the following as being associated with bulimia nervosa?

- **a.** Greater occurrence in males
- **b.** Use of severe fasting rituals
- **c.** More common in women in their 20s and 30s
- **d.** High correlation with overweight and obesity

142. The nurse is assessing a female adolescent who engages in self-harming behavior. Which of the following would the nurse identify as a possible trigger? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Rejection by friends
- **b.** Substance misuse
- **c.** Feelings of power
- **d.** Worthlessness
- **e.** Parental divorce

143. When developing the plan of care for a patient who has attempted suicide, an understanding of which of the following would be most critical for the nurse to integrate into the plan?

- **a.** Patients who attempt suicide and fail will not try again.
- **b.** The more specific the plan, the greater the risk of suicide.
- **c.** People who talk about suicide rarely go ahead and attempt it.
- **d.** People who attempt suicide and fail do not really want to die.

144. A nurse who will be providing care to a psychiatric-mental health patient is in the orientation phase of the relationship. The nurse would most likely assume which role?

- **a.** Counselor
- **b.** Teacher
- **c.** Stranger
- **d.** Surrogate

145. A group of nursing students are reviewing information on boundaries, boundary crossings, and boundary violations. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they state which of the following?

- **a.** "Most times, a boundary crossing will lead to a boundary violation."
- **b.** "Boundary violations can be therapeutic in some instances."
- **c.** "Boundaries are unnecessary if the patient and nurse view each other as equals."
- **d.** "Boundary crossings can result in a return to established boundaries."

146. A nurse is thinking about working in a correctional facility. Which characteristic would be important for the nurse to have?

- **a.** Self-awareness
- **b.** Prejudice
- **c.** Cultural bias
- **d.** Inflexibility

147. A nurse is establishing boundaries with a patient who is coming to a community mental health center for treatment. Which of the following would be least appropriate to do during the orientation phase?

- **a.** Give the patient some information about the nurse's personal life.
- **b.** Explain to the patient the reason for the nurse being there.
- **c.** Describe what it is that the nurse can provide for the patient.
- **d.** Discuss the time, place, and frequency for the meetings.

148. A group of nursing students is reviewing information about anxiety disorders. The students demonstrate a need for additional study when they identify which of the following as a compulsion?

- **a.** Hearing voices that tell a person he is the king
- **b.** Repeatedly washing hands
- **c.** Touching the door knob three times before leaving
- **d.** Walking in a specific pattern when entering a room

149. A nurse is engaged in assessing a male patient and has determined that it is appropriate to move on to assessing the patient's sexual history. Which of the following would be most important for the nurse to do first?

- **a.** Make sure that the nurse and patient are alone
- **b.** Ask the patient about whether or not he is sexually active
- **c.** Question the patient about any history of sexual abuse
- **d.** Obtain the patient's permission to ask him questions about this area

150. A nurse is interviewing a child diagnosed with a conduct disorder. Which of the following would the nurse expect to assess?

- **a.** Repetitive, stereotypical behaviors
- **b.** Difficulty organizing tasks
- **c.** Lack of follow-through with directions
- **d.** Bullying behaviors

151. A patient with antisocial personality disorder is observed taking an other patient's belongings. Which initial nursing intervention would be most appropriate?

- **a.** Tell the patient's primary nurse what happened
- **b.** Obtain an order for an antipsychotic medication
- **c.** Confront the patient about his behavior
- **d.** Encourage the patient to discuss his angry feelings

152. A psychiatric-mental health nurse is engaged in a therapeutic dialogue with a patient. The patient states, "I've been feeling so down lately." Which of the following would the nurse identify as being congruent with the patient's statement?

- **a.** Wide facial grin
- **b.** Low tone of voice
- **c.** Fidgeting
- **d.** Erect posture

153. A group of students are reviewing information about the various types of sexual disorders and dysfunctions. The students demonstrate understanding of this topic when they identify which of the following as examples of sexual disorders? Select all that apply.

- **a.** Vaginismus
- **b.** Exhibitionism
- **c.** Pedophilia
- **d.** Premature ejaculation
- **e.** Male erectile disorder

154. A group of nursing students are reviewing information related to the development of psychiatric-mental nursing. The students demonstrate understanding of the information when they identify which person as emphasizing the use of the interpersonal process?

- **a.** Florence Nightingale
- **b.** Linda Richards
- **c.** Dorothea Dix
- **d.** Hildegard Peplau

155. While working with a patient diagnosed with an antisocial personality disorder, the nurse notes that the patient is beginning to exhibit signs that he is losing emotional control. The nurse assists the patient in moving to a safe, quiet area to regain his control. The nurse is using which of the following?

- **a.** Time out
- **b.** Limit setting
- **c.** Confrontation
- **d.** Cognitive restructuring

156. The nurse is working with group of patients who have immigrated to the United States from several Latin American and South American countries and is reviewing the situation for possible barriers to accessing mental health services. Which of the following would the nurse identify as an environmental barrier?

- **a.** No translator on staff at the facilities
- **b.** Knowledge about the mental health problems
- **c.** Availability of family support
- **d.** Beliefs of mental illness caused by demon

157. When engaging in therapeutic communication for the initial encounter with the patient, which of the following would be most appropriate for the nurse to use?

- **a.** Silence
- **b.** "What would you like to discuss?"
- **c.** "Are you having any problems with anxiety?"
- **d.** "Why do you think you came here today?"

158. When implementing secondary prevention strategies, which of the following would the psychiatric-mental health nurse do first?

- **a.** Conduct community screening
- **b.** Identify existence of risk factors
- **c.** Teach about coping skills
- **d.** Make referrals for immediate treatment

159. The nurse is developing a plan of care for a patient diagnosed with a schizotypal personality disorder. Which of the following would be most appropriate to include in the plan?

- **a.** Setting specific boundaries for behavior
- **b.** Teaching problem-solving techniques
- **c.** Fostering decision-making skills
- **d.** Implementing social skills training

160. A woman is brought by her husband to the emergency department. The woman has significant swelling surrounding her right eye and bruising over the right side of her face. She is also holding her right upper arm that is covering a large bruised area. The nurse suspects intimate partner violence. When interviewing the woman, which statement would indicate that the woman is in the honeymoon phase of the cycle of violence?

- **a.** "I feel like I'm walking on eggshells."
- **b.** "He said he was sorry and wouldn't do it again."
- **c.** "I need to make sure I don't make him angry."
- **d.** "It was my fault because I didn't have dinner ready on time."

161. Which statement would the nurse expect a newly admitted married patient with mania to make? "I can:

- **a.** not do anything right anymore."
- **b.** manage our finances better than any accountant."
- **c.** understand why my spouse is so upset that I spend so much money."
- **d.** not understand where all our money goes."

162. A nurse is preparing a presentation for a local community group about adolescence and mental health problems. Which of the following would the nurse expect to include?

- **a.** Time typically heals any problems that adolescents experience.
- **b.** Problems in adolescence can continue into adulthood if not addressed.
- **c.** Adolescents primarily experience disorders that are uncommon in adults.
- **d.** The stigma associated with mental disorders is seen less frequently with adolescents.

163. Deinstitutionalization occurred as a result of which of the following?

- **a.** Mental Retardation Facilities and Community Mental Health Centers Act
- **b.** National Mental Health Act
- **c.** Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA)
- **d.** The Surgeon General's Report on Mental Health

164. While interviewing a middle-aged woman who has come to the mental health care facility, the woman states, "My oldest son just left for college last week. I'm so lost without him. The house seems so empty."The nurse would interpret the woman's statement as suggesting which type of crisis?

- **a.** Maturational
- **b.** Situational
- **c.** Social
- **d.** Adventitious

ANSWERS TO NCLEX REVIEW

1. c
2. c
3. d
4. c
5. c
6. d
7. a
8. c, a, e, d, b
9. a
10. a
11. a
12. d
13. a
14. c
15. d
16. b
17. c
18. d
19. b
20. c
21. c
22. c
23. c
24. a
25. b
26. a
27. d
28. c
29. b
30. c
31. d
32. c
33. d
34. a
35. b
36. a
37. b
38. d
39. b, c, d
40. b
41. d
42. a
43. d
44. c
45. c
46. c
47. c
48. a
49. c
50. c
51. a
52. b
53. d
54. a
55. a
56. c
57. d
58. b
59. b
60. b
61. d
62. b
63. a
64. d, b, f, c, e, a
65. a, b, d, e
66. a, b, e
67. b
68. c
69. a, b, c, d, e
70. b
71. a
72. b
73. d
74. b
75. a
76. b, c, d, e
77. d
78. a
79. c
80. b
81. c
82. a
83. b
84. d
85. b, d, c, a
86. c
87. b
88. c
89. a
90. c
91. c
92. b
93. d
94. d
95. c, e, f
96. c
97. b
98. d
99. c
100. a, b, d
101. b
102. a
103. b
104. b
105. b
106. a
107. b
108. b
109. d
110. a
111. c
112. a
113. a
114. a
115. a
116. c
117. b
118. b, d
119. c
120. c
121. d
122. b
123. a
124. d
125. b, c, a, d, f, e, g
126. c
127. a, c, b, d
128. b
129. d
130. a
131. c
132. c
133. b
134. a, b, c, e
135. b
136. d
137. a
138. b
139. a
140. b
141. c
142. a, b, e
143. b
144. c
145. d
146. a
147. a
148. a
149. d
150. d
151. c
152. b
153. b, c
154. d
155. a
156. c
157. b
158. b
159. d
160. b
161. b
162. b
163. a
164. a

INDEX